unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

v91

Exodus

Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Date: 2026-09-26
Version: v91
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
Date: 2026-09-26
Version: v91
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
Date: 2026-09-26
Version: v91
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
Date: 2026-08-14
Version: v3.0.0
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
Date: 2026-09-26
Version: v91
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Date: 2026-09-26
Version: v91
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links
Date: 2026-09-26
Version: v91
Published by: unfoldingWord®

Generated with: Door43 Preview **Version:** 1.4.10 **Date:** 2026-09-26

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes - Exodus **17**

Exodus Introduciton 17
Exodus 1 22
Exodus 2 55
Exodus 3 93
Exodus 4 138
Exodus 5 187
Exodus 6 222
Exodus 7 260
Exodus 8 293
Exodus 9 342
Exodus 10 391
Exodus 11 430
Exodus 12 446
Exodus 13 508
Exodus 14 538
Exodus 15 574
Exodus 16 615
Exodus 17 656
Exodus 18 676
Exodus 19 708
Exodus 20 738
Exodus 21 766
Exodus 22 808
Exodus 23 842
Exodus 24 883
Exodus 25 905
Exodus 26 949
Exodus 27 988
Exodus 28 1011
Exodus 29 1061
Exodus 30 1113
Exodus 31 1158

Exodus 32 1180
Exodus 33 1222
Exodus 34 1254
Exodus 35 1307
Exodus 36 1351
Exodus 37 1392
Exodus 38 1422
Exodus 39 1456
Exodus 40 1501

Appendex: unfoldingWord® Translation Academy 1540

Abstract Nouns 1541
Active or Passive 1545
Aside 1549
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information 1552
Background Information 1558
Biblical Distance 1563
Biblical Money 1568
Biblical Volume 1572
Biblical Weight 1579
Blessings 1583
Collective Nouns 1587
Connect — Background Information 1592
Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions 1596
Connect — Contrast Relationship 1602
Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship 1606
Connect — Hypothetical Conditions 1611
Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship 1615
Connect — Sequential Time Relationship 1619
Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship 1623
Connecting Words and Phrases 1626
Copy or Borrow Words 1632
Direct and Indirect Quotations 1635
Double Negatives 1638
Doublet 1643
Ellipsis 1647
End of Story 1652
Euphemism 1655

Exclamations 1658
Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ 1662
First, Second or Third Person 1664
Forms of You 1667
Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural 1669
Forms of ‘You’ — Singular 1672
Fractions 1675
Generic Noun Phrases 1679
Go and Come 1682
Hebrew Months 1686
How to Translate Names 1691
Hyperbole 1698
Hypothetical Situations 1705
Idiom 1709
Information Structure 1713
Introduction of a New Event 1717
Introduction of New and Old Participants 1724
Irony 1729
Kinship 1734
Litany 1738
Litotes 1742
Merism 1745
Metaphor 1748
Metonymy 1758
Nominal Adjectives 1762
Numbers 1765
Order of Events 1770
Ordinal Numbers 1774
Parallelism 1778
Personification 1783
Poetry 1787
Possession 1793
Pronouns 1800
Pronouns — When to Use Them 1803
Quotations and Quote Margins 1807
Quote Markings 1811
Quotes within Quotes 1816

Reflexive Pronouns 1820
Rhetorical Question 1825
Simile 1832
Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups 1836
Symbolic Action 1840
Synecdoche 1844
Textual Variants 1846
Translate Unknowns 1850
Verse Bridges 1856
When Masculine Words Include Women 1859
When to Keep Information Implicit 1863

Appendex: unfoldingWord® Translation Words 1865

Aaron 1866
abomination, abominable 1868
Abraham, Abram 1869
admonish, warned, aware 1871
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress 1872
adversary, enemy 1874
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels 1875
afflict, affliction, distress 1876
age, era, time 1878
alien, foreigner, sojourn 1879
Almighty 1880
altar 1881
altar of incense, incense altar 1883
Amalek, Amalekite 1884
Amorite 1885
angel, archangel 1887
anguish 1889
anoint, anointed, anointing 1890
appoint, appointed 1892
ark 1893
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh 1894
Asher 1895
Asherah, Asherah pole, Ashtoreth 1896
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community 1897

atonement lid 1899
atonement, atone, atoned 1900
authority 1901
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance 1903
barley 1905
barren, dry 1906
bear, bearer, bore, borne, produce, produced 1907
beast 1908
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief 1909
Benjamin, Benjaminite 1912
blemish, unblemished, defect 1913
bless, blessed, blessing 1914
bloodshed 1916
blot out, wipe out 1917
Book of Life 1918
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee 1919
bread 1921
breastplate, breastpiece 1922
bribe, bribery, payoff, payoffs 1923
bridegroom, groom 1924
bronze 1925
burnt offering, offering by fire 1926
call, called, call out, called out 1927
camel 1928
Canaan, Canaanite 1929
captive, captivate, captivity, catch 1931
cast out, driving out, throw out 1933
chariot, charioteer 1934
cherub, cherubim 1935
chief, leader 1937
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect 1938
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision 1940
clan 1943
column, pillar 1944
companion, fellow worker, friend 1945
compassion, compassionate 1946
conceive, conceived, conception 1947

consecrate, consecrated, consecration 1948
consume, devour 1949
contempt, contemptible, not worth listening to 1951
corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness 1952
corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved 1953
covenant 1954
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love 1957
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox 1958
create, created, creation, creator 1960
cry, cry out, outcry 1962
curse, cursed, cursing 1963
curtain 1965
Dan 1967
day 1968
deceive, lie, deception, illusion 1970
declare, proclaim, announce 1972
defile, defiled, desecrate 1974
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, delivered 1976
descend, descendant 1978
desert, wilderness 1980
desolate, desolated, desolation, deserted, desolator 1981
destroy, destruction, annihilate 1983
devour 1984
disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed 1985
donkey, mule 1986
doorpost 1987
drink offering 1988
earth, land 1989
Edom, Edomite, Idumea 1991
Egypt, Egyptian 1992
elder 1994
Eleazar 1995
Enoch 1996
ephod 1997
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever 1998
Euphrates River, the River 2001
evil, wicked, wickedness, unpleasant 2002

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin 2004
exalt, exalted, exaltation 2006
faith 2007
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy 2009
famine 2011
favor, favorable, favoritism 2012
fear, afraid, frighten 2014
festival, feast, celebrate 2016
firstborn 2018
firstfruit, firstfruits 2020
flock, herd 2021
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned 2022
forsake, forsaken, leave 2024
foundation, founder, founded 2026
fountain, source, spring 2027
frankincense 2028
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty 2029
freewill offering 2031
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful 2032
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out 2033
furnace 2035
Gad 2036
gate, gate bar, gatekeeper, gatepost, gateway 2037
generation 2038
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around 2039
glory, glorious, glorify 2040
goat, goatskin, scapegoat, kid 2043
God 2045
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness 2048
gold, golden 2050
good, right, pleasant, better, best, goodness 2051
Goshen 2053
grace, gracious 2054
grain offering 2056
grave, gravedigger, tomb, burial place 2057
guilt, guilty 2059
hail, hailstone, hailstorm 2061

hard, harder 2062
harvest, reap 2063
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly 2065
Hebrew 2067
Hittite 2068
Hivite 2069
holy place 2070
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred 2072
honey, honeycomb 2075
honor 2076
horn, horned, shofar 2078
horse, warhorse, horseback, stallion, steed, mare 2079
horseman 2080
house 2081
humble, humbled, humility 2082
I am Yahweh 2084
image, carved image, cast metal image, figure, carved figure, statue 2087
incense 2089
inherit, inheritance, heir 2090
iniquity 2092
innocent 2093
inquire, inquiry 2095
instruct, instruction, instructor 2096
Isaac 2097
Israel, Israelites 2099
Issachar 2101
Jacob, Israel 2102
jealous, jealousy 2104
Jebus, Jebusite 2105
Jethro, Reuel 2106
Joseph (OT) 2107
Joshua 2109
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad 2111
Judah 2113
Judea, Judah 2114
judge, judgment 2116
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification 2118

king, kingship 2121
kingdom 2123
kiss 2125
know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish 2126
Korah, Korahite 2128
labor, labors, labored, laboring, laborer, work, hard work 2129
lamb, Lamb of God 2130
lamp 2132
lampstand 2133
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God 2135
law, principle 2137
Levi, Levite 2138
livestock, animals 2140
locust 2141
loins 2142
lord, Lord, master, sir 2143
love, beloved 2146
magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits 2149
majesty 2150
manna 2151
memorial, memorial offering 2152
messenger 2153
Midian, Midianite 2154
might, mighty, mighty works 2156
miracle, wonder, sign 2158
Miriam 2160
Moab, Moabite 2161
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock 2162
month, monthly 2164
Moses 2165
mourn, mourner, weeping 2167
multiply, multiplied, multiplication 2168
myrrh 2169
Naphtali 2170
nation 2171
neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring 2173
Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile 2174

oath, vow, swear, swearing, swear by, sworn 2176
oil 2178
olive 2179
ordinance, regulation, requirement, strict law, custom 2180
oversee, overseer, keeper 2181
overtake 2183
palace, house 2184
palm 2185
Passover 2186
peace offering 2188
peace, peaceful, peacemaker 2189
Pentecost, Festival of Weeks 2191
people of God 2192
perfect, complete 2194
perish 2195
Perizzite 2197
perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, dishonest, distortion 2198
Pharaoh, king of Egypt 2200
Philistia 2202
Philistines 2203
Phinehas 2204
pit, pitfall, trench, cistern 2205
plague 2206
plea, plead, please, beg, implore 2207
pledge 2208
plow, plower, plowman, plowmen, plowshare, unplowed 2209
pomegranate 2210
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess 2211
praise, praised, praiseworthy 2213
pray, prayer 2215
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation 2217
priest, priesthood 2220
profane, profaned 2222
promise, promised 2223
Promised Land 2225
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess 2227
prostitute, harlot, whored 2229

prostrate 2230
prostrate, bow down, worship 2231
proud, pride, prideful, boast, boastful, boasting 2233
pure, purify, purification 2235
purple 2237
ransom, ransomed 2238
redeem, redeemer, redemption 2240
reed 2242
reign, rule 2243
remnant 2244
repent, repentance 2245
report, reported, tell, reputation 2247
restore, restoration 2248
Reuben 2250
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness 2251
robe, robed 2254
ruin, ruins, ruined 2255
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader 2256
Sabbath 2258
sacrifice, offering 2260
sanctuary 2262
sandal 2264
Saul (OT) 2265
save, saved, safe, salvation, rescue 2266
Sea of Reeds, Red Sea 2269
seed 2270
seek, search, look for 2271
seize, seizure, capture 2272
serpent, snake, viper 2273
servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women 2274
shepherd, herder, pastor 2276
shrewd, cunning 2278
sign, proof, reminder 2279
silver 2281
Simeon 2282
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning 2283
Sinai, Horeb 2286

slaughter, slaughtered 2288
slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder 2289
snare, ensnare, entrap, trap, trapped, pitfall 2290
soldier, warrior 2291
sorcerer, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft, magician 2292
soul, self 2293
sow, sower, plant, planted, replanted, transplanted 2295
spirit, wind, breath 2297
splendor 2299
staff, clubs 2300
statute 2301
stone, stoning 2302
Succoth 2303
sword, swordsmen 2304
tabernacle 2306
tent of meeting 2308
tent, tentmaker 2309
terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic 2310
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire 2311
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence 2313
the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea 2316
throne, enthroned 2317
tongue, language 2318
transgress, transgression 2320
tremble, shake, shaken, quake 2321
tribe, tribal, tribesmen 2322
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity 2323
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness 2325
tunic 2327
understand, understanding, thinking 2328
unleavened bread 2329
veil, veiled, unveiled 2331
vineyard 2333
virgin, virginity 2334
watch, guard, take heed, beware 2335
wheat 2336
wine, wineskin, new wine 2337

wise men, advisor 2339
wise, wisdom 2341
womb 2343
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture 2344
wrath, fury 2347
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful 2348
Yahweh, Yah 2349
year 2352
yeast, leaven, unleavened 2353
Zebulun 2355

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes - Exodus

Introduction to Exodus

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Exodus

1. Israel in Egypt; preparing to depart from slavery (1–11)
    - First genealogy (1:1–6)
    - Israel as slaves in Egypt (1:7–22)
    - Moses' history to the time of the Exodus (2:1–4:26)
    - Israel suffers in Egypt (4:27–6:13)
    - Second genealogy (6:14–27)
    - Moses and Aaron go to Pharaoh (6:28–7:25)
    - The plagues (8:1–11:10)
2. Instructions for celebrating the Passover (12:1–30)
3. From Egypt to Mount Sinai (12:31–18:27)
    - The Passover; preparing to leave Egypt; leaving Egypt (12:31–50, 13:1–22)
    - Journey from Egypt to Mount Sinai (14:1–18:27)
4. Mount Sinai and the Law (19–40)
    - Preparing for the covenant (19:1–25)
    - The Ten Commandments (20:1–17)

- The covenant described (20:18–23:33)
- The people agree to the covenant; Moses returns to Mount Sinai (24:1–18)
- Design of the Dwelling and its furnishings; what was required of those who serve in it; dwelling functions (25:1–31:18)
- The golden calf; Moses prays for the people (32:1–33:22)
- The covenant described again (34:1–35)
- Making of the ark and its furnishings (35:1–38:31) and priestly garments (39:1–43, 40:1–33)
- The cloud (40:34–38)

What is the book of Exodus about?

Exodus continues the story of the previous book, Genesis. The first half of Exodus is about how Yahweh made Abraham's descendants into a nation. This nation, which would be called "Israel," was meant to belong to Yahweh and worship him. The second half of Exodus describes how God gave the Israelites his law through Moses. The law of Moses told the Israelites how to obey and worship Yahweh properly.

The book of Exodus tells how the Israelites were to build the Dwelling. The Dwelling was a tent where Yahweh would be among his people. The Israelites worshiped and sacrificed animals to Yahweh at the Dwelling. (See: law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God; and tabernacle)

How should the title of this book be translated?

"Exodus" means "exit" or "departure." Translators may translate this title in a way that can communicate its subject clearly, for example, "About the Israelites Leaving Egypt" or "How the Israelites Left the Land of Egypt." (See: How to Translate Names)

Who wrote the book of Exodus?

The writers of both the Old and New Testaments present Moses as being very involved with writing the book of Exodus. Since ancient times, both Jews and

Christians have thought that Moses wrote Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy.

Why did Moses write so much about God delivering or rescuing the people of Israel?

Moses wrote much about God rescuing his people from the Egyptians to show that Yahweh is very powerful. Egypt was a very powerful nation in the region at that time, but Yahweh was still able to free the Israelites from the Egyptians. Also, by rescuing the Israelites, Yahweh showed that he had chosen them as his people and that they should worship him.

How does the book of Exodus show the fulfillment of the promises given to Abraham?

The book of Exodus shows God beginning to fulfill his promise to Abraham. In Genesis, God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants and that they would become a large nation. When God rescued the Israelites from the Egyptians, he took them to Mount Sinai. There he made a covenant with them, and they became the nation that belonged to Yahweh.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What was the Jewish Passover?

The Jewish Passover was a religious festival. Yahweh commanded the Israelites to celebrate it every year. Passover was a time to remember how God rescued Israel from the Egyptians. The first Passover meal was eaten in the evening just before they left Egypt. (See: Passover)

What was the law of Moses to the people of Israel?

The law of Moses instructed the people of Israel about what Yahweh required them to do as his people. In the law, God told the people how they should live so that they would honor him. He also instructed them about their need to offer animal sacrifices. God required these sacrifices so that he could forgive their sins and continue living among them. The law also described the duties of the priests and told how to build the Dwelling.

What did it mean that Israel was to be a "kingdom of priests and a holy nation" (19:6 ULT)?

Israel was a holy nation because Yahweh separated them from all other nations to belong to him. They were to honor and worship him only. This made them different from all the other nations of the world; the other nations worshiped many false gods.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Thus says Yahweh

This phrase is used many times in the Old Testament to introduce Yahweh's speech. Your team should pick a standard translation. See Chapter 4 Introduction for more information.

Pharaoh's stubborn heart

Between chapters 4 and 14, there are 18 cases where Pharaoh's heart is described as strong (11x), heavy (6x), or hard (1x), and one case where the Egyptians' hearts are described as strong. These are metaphors for being stubborn, that is, being unwilling to obey Yahweh or even to do what is clearly in his own and Egypt's best interest. Many cultures have similar metaphors, but not all will use the same body part. Within these cases, six times there is a neutral description that Pharaoh was stubborn, without saying anyone made him so (7:13, 7:14, 7:22, 8:19, 9:7, 9:35); three times Pharaoh makes himself stubborn (8:15, 8:32, 9:34); and ten times Yahweh makes Pharaoh/the Egyptians stubborn (4:21, 7:3, 9:12, 10:1, 10:20, 10:27, 11:10, 14:4, 14:8, 14:17).

Why are the details of the construction of the Dwelling in Exodus 25–32 repeated in Exodus 35–40?

In Exodus 25–32, God describes exactly how the Dwelling was to be built. The details were repeated in Exodus 35–40 in the description of the actual construction. This showed that the people were careful to do exactly as God commanded.

Are the events in the order that they actually happened?

Most, but not all, of the events in the book of Exodus are told in the order that they actually happened. Translators may need to make it clear when the events are in an unusual order.

What does it mean that God “lived” among his people?

The book of Exodus presents God as living in the Dwelling among the nation of Israel. God is everywhere, but he lived among the Israelites in a special way. God dwelled with the Israelites because they belonged to him. He promised to lead them and bless them. In return, the people were to worship him and honor him.

Exodus 1

Exodus 1 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter is intended to form a smooth transition from the last chapter of the book of Genesis.

- v. 1–7: Jacob's family grows
- v. 8–22: Pharaoh oppresses the Israelites and tries to limit the Israelites' growth

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Israel's growth

Israel grew in number. This was the beginning of God's fulfilling his promises to Abraham. It also caused the Pharaoh to worry that there would be more Israelites than Egyptians, with the result that the Egyptians would be unable to defend themselves against so many people. Pharaoh tried to kill all of the male babies so they would not become soldiers who fought against him. (See: fulfill, fulfilled, carried out; and covenant)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

- "All of the descendants of Jacob were 70 in number"

This number included both Jacob's children and grandchildren. It may cause confusion, but it is important to remember Jacob only had 12 sons.

- Starting from verse 7, the terms **Hebrews** and **sons of Israel** both refer to the Israelite nation or people group.
- God blesses the Hebrew midwives for lying to the wicked Pharaoh. Translators should not attempt to hide this. They showed that they feared God by disobeying a wicked order in order to preserve the lives of God's people.
- Pharaoh is a specifically Egyptian word for their kings (and queens).

Exodus 1:1

ULT	UST
And these are the names of the sons of Israel, the ones who came to Egypt. They came in with Jacob, a man and his house:	*These are the names of Israel's sons who went into Egypt with Jacob and their families:*

Note:

Verses 1–7 are background information for the story. Use the natural form in your language for expressing background information.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **the ones who came … They came in**
UST who went
(הַבָּאִים & בָּאוּ)

The words translated as **came in** could also be translated as "went in." Use whichever form is most natural in your language.

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **Israel … Jacob**
UST Israel's sons … Jacob
(יִשְׂרָאֵל & יַעֲקֹב)

Jacob and **Israel** are two names for the same man.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and his house**
UST and their families
(וּבֵיתוֹ)

Here, **house** refers to all of the people who live together, usually a large family with servants. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and his household]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel's sons
to Egypt	into Egypt
Jacob	Jacob
and his house	and their families

Exodus 1:2

ULT	UST
Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah,	*Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Reuben	Reuben
Simeon	Simeon
Levi	Levi
and Judah	Judah

Exodus 1:3

ULT	UST
Issachar, Zebulun, and Benjamin,	*Issachar, Zebulun, Benjamin,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Issachar	Issachar
Zebulun	Zebulun
and Benjamin	Benjamin

Exodus 1:4

ULT	UST
Dan, and Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.	*Dan, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Dan	Dan
and Naphtali	Naphtali
Gad	Gad
and Asher	and Asher

Exodus 1:5

ULT	UST
And all the lives going out of the loins of Jacob, were 70 lives. And Joseph was in Egypt.	*{At that time}, Jacob had 70 total descendants (including Joseph {and his sons} who were already in Egypt.)*

ULT And all the lives going out of the loins of Jacob, were 70 lives
UST {At that time}, Jacob had 70 total descendants
(וַיְהִי כָּל־נֶפֶשׁ יֹצְאֵי יֶרֶךְ־יַעֲקֹב שִׁבְעִים נָפֶשׁ)

Here, **lives** refers to people (specifically, men); **going out of the loins of Jacob** is a reference to these people as being in his seed or semen and produced through his sexual acts–therefore meaning they are his descendants. See also Hebrews 7:9–10. Alternate translation: [And all the male descendants of Jacob numbered 70.]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the lives	total
Jacob	Jacob
And Joseph	including Joseph {and his sons} who
in Egypt	in Egypt

Exodus 1:6

ULT	UST
And Joseph and all his brothers and all that generation died.	*{After some time,} Joseph and his brothers and everyone else in their family who lived at that time died.*

ULT And … died
UST After some time … died
(וַיָּמָת)

They did not die immediately. Jacob and his sons spent the rest of their lives in Egypt and died there. If necessary, use a transition word that conveys that some time passed.

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT and all his brothers
UST and his brothers
(וְכָל־אֶחָיו)

All his brothers includes ten older brothers and one younger brother. If your language has different words for those, you can say, “his ten older brothers and his younger brother”

Support Reference: Kinship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
generation	in their family who lived at … time

Exodus 1:7

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel were fruitful and propagated and multiplied and were mighty, with great greatness, and the land was filled with them.	*{Jacob's} descendants gave birth to many children. The number of his descendants grew, and they became extremely strong. {As a result, there were so many of them that} they were everywhere in Egypt.*

ULT **And the sons of Israel**
UST {Jacob's} descendants
(וּבְנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל)

This is the first of many times in this book that **sons of Israel** refers to the Israelite nation or people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And the people of Israel] or [And the Israelites]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **were fruitful and propagated and multiplied and were mighty**
UST gave birth to many children. The number of his descendants grew, and they became … strong
(פָּרוּ וַיִּשְׁרְצוּ וַיִּרְבּוּ וַיַּעַצְמוּ)

All of these verbs mean similar things; they are used together to emphasize that the Israelites became very numerous. If your language does not have as many words that mean the same thing, you can use fewer words and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [had many children and became strong]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **were fruitful … and multiplied … and the land was filled**
UST gave birth to many children. The number of his descendants grew … As a result, there were so many of them that … were everywhere in Egypt
(פָּרוּ & וַיִּרְבּוּ & וַתִּמָּלֵא הָאָרֶץ)

Compare your translation of **fruitful … and multiplied … and the land was filled** here to Genesis 1:28, 9:1, and 9:7, and especially Genesis 35:11 where God renamed Jacob to be called Israel.

> ULT **were fruitful and propagated**
> UST gave birth to many children
> (פָּרְ֥וּ וַיִּשְׁרְצ֖וּ)

The birth of children to the Israelites is spoken of as if they were plants that were producing fruit and causing new plants to grow around them. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [had many children] or [gave birth to many children]

Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **with great greatness**
> UST extremely
> (בִּמְאֹ֥ד מְאֹ֖ד)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **greatness** in another way. Alternate translation: [and were very great]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **and the land was filled with them**
> UST {As a result, there were so many of them that} they were everywhere in Egypt
> (וַתִּמָּלֵ֥א הָאָ֖רֶץ אֹתָֽם)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and they filled the land]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **with great greatness**
> UST extremely
> (בִּמְאֹ֥ד מְאֹ֖ד)

Here the same word is used twice to emphasize how many the Israelite people had become. If your language does not repeat words like this, express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [with much power]

Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **with them**
> UST they
> (אֹתָם)

Here, **them** refers to the Israelites.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Jacob's
were fruitful	gave birth to many children
and multiplied	The number of his descendants grew
and were mighty	and they became … strong
the land	in Egypt

Exodus 1:8

ULT	UST
And a new king arose over Egypt, who did not know Joseph.	*{However, sometime later,} a new king began to rule in Egypt. He did not know about {all the good things} Joseph {had done for the people of Egypt}.*

ULT And … arose
UST However, sometime later … began
(וַיָּקָם)

This introduces a new event that happened some time after the events the story has just related. The story does not say how long after those events this new event happened. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT a new king
UST a new king
(מֶלֶךְ־חָדָשׁ)

The story begins with the new king. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new character.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT And a new king arose over Egypt
UST {However, sometime later,} a new king began to rule in Egypt
(וַיָּקָם מֶלֶךְ־חָדָשׁ עַל־מִצְרָיִם)

Here, **Egypt** refers to the place and the people of Egypt. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And a new king began to rule over the Egyptians and the country of Egypt]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT did not know Joseph
UST did not know about {all the good things} Joseph {had done for the people of Egypt}
(לֹא־יָדַע אֶת־יוֹסֵף)

Here, **Joseph** refers to both the person Joseph and to all of the good things that he did for Egypt. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. See the UST.

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a … king	a new king
Egypt	in Egypt
did … know	did … know
Joseph	about {all the good things} Joseph {had done for the people of Egypt}

Exodus 1:9

ULT	UST
And he said to his people, "Behold, the people of the sons of Israel are many and mighty compared to us.	*He said to his people, "Look {at what has happened}! There are so many Israelites that they outnumber us Egyptians!*

ULT Behold
UST Look {at what has happened}
(הִנֵּה)

Behold draws special attention to what is about to be said. Use a way of drawing people's attention that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Listen]

Support Reference: Exclamations

ULT his people
UST his people
(עַמּוֹ)

The people whom the king rules over and who are also part of his group (probably shared ethnicity, tribe, or clan) rather than the Israelite group are spoken of as if they belonged to the king. This is an instance of the possessive of social relationship.

Support Reference: Possession

ULT his people
UST his people
(עַמּוֹ)

There is some ambiguity as to whom exactly Pharaoh was addressing. It could have been: (1) the people who lived in Egypt, the Egyptians or (2) some group of "his people" like his advisors, generals, nobles, or friends and family. Even if option 1 is meant, it is quite possible that he actually spoke to some smaller group of representatives, as in option 2.

ULT compared to us
UST that they outnumber us Egyptians
(מִמֶּנּוּ)

Use a way that is natural in your language to compare non-specific sizes of groups of people. Alternate translation: [and much greater than us]

ULT **Behold**
UST Look {at what has happened}
(הִנֵּה)

Beginning from **behold** and extending to the end of 1:10 is a direct quotation of what the king said. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening first-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation. There may be other quotations in this chapter; they will be marked by the same punctuation, but they will not have their own notes.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
and mighty	that they outnumber us Egyptians

Exodus 1:10

ULT	UST
Come, let us act wisely toward him, lest he multiplies, and it happens that a battle occurs, and he even adds himself onto the ones hating us, and he fights with us, and he leaves from the land."	*We must find a way to control them! If we do not do that, there will be more of them. Then, if enemies attack us, the Israelites will join with our enemies and fight against us, and they will escape from our land."*

ULT **let us act wisely … the ones hating us … with us**
UST find a way to control … our enemies … against us
(נִתְחַכְּמָה & שֹׂנְאֵינוּ & בָּנוּ)

The word **us** is inclusive and refers to the king and his people, the Egyptians. Your language may require you to mark these forms.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **toward him … he multiplies … and he … adds himself … and he fights … and he leaves**
UST them … there will be more of them … the Israelites will join … and fight … and they will escape
(לוֹ & יִרְבֶּה & וְנוֹסַף & הוּא & וְנִלְחַם & וְעָלָה)

Here, **him, he**, and **himself** refer to the Israelite people. The pronouns agree grammatically with the singular "people" in the original. This occurs in many places in Exodus. If this is confusing in your language, you can use the plural, as in the UST.

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **lest he multiplies, and it happens that a battle occurs**
UST If we do not do that, there will be more of them. Then, if enemies attack us
(פֶּן־יִרְבֶּה וְהָיָה כִּי־תִקְרֶאנָה מִלְחָמָה)

The king suggests a combination of two hypothetical events: 1. There are even more Israelites, 2. There is a battle. These are followed by a series of undesirable consequences: 3. The Israelites join an enemy, 4. The Israelites attack the Egyptians, 5. The Israelites leave Egypt. While the series of consequences is also technically hypothetical, the king's language indicates that if 1–2 happen, then 3–5 are certain. Use language that makes it clear that the first two events are hypothetical and that the next three are consequences that could be expected if the first two events happen.

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

> ULT **and he leaves from the land**
> UST and they will escape from our land
> (וְעָלָה מִן־הָאָרֶץ)

Alternate translation: [and he leaves Egypt]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
let us act wisely	find a way to control
he multiplies	there will be more of them
the land	our land

Exodus 1:11

ULT	UST
And they set over him overseers of labor gangs in order to afflict him by their burdens. And he built Pithom and Rameses, cities of storage for Pharaoh.	*So the king and his officials put masters over groups of Israelite workers to cause them to suffer very much by making them work very hard. So the Israelites built the cities Pithom and Rameses to store goods for the king.*

ULT **overseers of**
UST masters over groups of Israelite workers
(שָׂרֵי)

Overseers were Egyptians whose job it was to force the Israelites to do hard work.

ULT **labor gangs**
UST masters over groups of Israelite workers
(מִסִּים)

Here the plural means groups. Alternate translation: [work crews]

ULT **in order to afflict him by their burdens**
UST to cause them to suffer very much by making them work very hard
(לְמַעַן עַנֹּתוֹ בְּסִבְלֹתָם)

Alternate translation: [to force the Israelites to do hard work for the Egyptians]

ULT **cities of storage**
UST the cities … to store goods
(עָרֵי מִסְכְּנוֹת)

These were places where the leaders put away food and other important things to keep them safe. Alternate translation: [cities in which to put away things to keep them safe]

ULT **cities of storage**
UST the cities … to store goods
(עָרֵי מִסְכְּנוֹת)

The possessive is objective; storage of goods is what occurs in the cities. Alternate translation: [cities for storing things]

Support Reference: Possession

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
overseers of	masters over groups of Israelite workers

ULT	UST
afflict him	them to suffer very much
for Pharaoh	for the king

Exodus 1:12

ULT	UST
And insofar as they afflicted him, thus he multiplied and thus he spread out. And they felt a sickening dread from the face of the sons of Israel.	*But the more the Egyptians treated the Israelites badly, the more the Israelites had children, and the more they spread throughout Egypt. Therefore, the Egyptians were distressed because of the Israelites.*

ULT **And insofar as they afflicted him, thus he multiplied and thus he spread out**
UST But the more the Egyptians treated the Israelites badly, the more the Israelites had children, and the more they spread throughout Egypt
(וְכַאֲשֶׁר יְעַנּוּ אֹתוֹ כֵּן יִרְבֶּה וְכֵן יִפְרֹץ)

This sentence expresses a result that is the opposite of what the king expected. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast.

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **And they felt a sickening dread from the face of**
UST Therefore, the Egyptians were distressed because of the Israelites
(וַיָּקֻצוּ מִפְּנֵי)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **dread** in another way. Alternate translation: [And they were very afraid of the face of]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **from the face of the sons of Israel**
UST because of the Israelites
(מִפְּנֵי בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Here, **face** means the presence of a person. The phrase means that the Egyptians were afraid of the Israelites' existence in their country. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [of the growing Israelite population]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
they afflicted	the Egyptians treated … badly
he multiplied	the Israelites had children
Israel	because of the Israelites

Exodus 1:13

ULT	UST
And the Egyptians enslaved the sons of Israel with rigor.	*The Egyptians ruthlessly made the Israelites work*

> ULT **And the Egyptians enslaved the sons of Israel with rigor**
> UST The Egyptians ruthlessly made the Israelites work
> (וַיַּעֲבִדוּ מִצְרַיִם אֶת־בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל בְּפָרֶךְ׃)

Here, **rigor** is a noun used to modify the verb **enslaved**. **Rigor** could refer either to how hard the work was or how unkindly the Egyptians treated the Israelites. If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind it in another way. Alternate translation: [And the Egyptians made the sons of Israel work very hard] or [And harshly, the Egyptians made the sons of Israel work]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Egyptians	The Egyptians
And … enslaved	made … work
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 1:14

ULT	UST
And they embittered their lives by hard slavery, by mortar and by bricks, and by all kinds of slave labor in the fields; all their work with which they worked for them was with rigor.	*and made their lives miserable by forcing them to work hard. The Israelites built with bricks and mortar and did all sorts of agricultural work. The Egyptians ruthlessly gave them all sorts of work.*

ULT And they embittered their lives
UST and made their lives miserable
(וַיְמָרְרוּ אֶת־חַיֵּיהֶם)

The difficult lives of the Israelites are spoken of as if their daily lives were bitter food that was difficult to eat. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And they made their lives very difficult]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT by hard slavery
UST by forcing them to work hard
(בַּעֲבֹדָה קָשָׁה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind **slavery** in another way. Alternate translation: [by making them work hard as slaves]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT by mortar
UST The Israelites built with bricks and mortar
(בְּחֹמֶר)

Mortar is a mixture of lime with cement, sand, and water, used in building to bond bricks or stones.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT and by bricks
UST The Israelites built with bricks and mortar
(וּבִלְבֵנִים)

Bricks are blocks made of clay or mud with straw in them. They are hardened in the sun or in another manner before they are used for building.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **all their work with which they worked for them was with rigor**
UST The Egyptians ruthlessly gave them all sorts of work
(אֵת כָּל־עֲבֹדָתָם אֲשֶׁר־עָבְדוּ בָהֶם בְּפָרֶךְ)

See how you translated this in 1:13. Alternate translation: [the Egyptians made them work very hard] or [the Egyptians forced them to work very hard]

ULT **And they embittered … for them**
UST and made … miserable … The Egyptians … gave them
(וַיְמָרְרוּ & בָהֶם)

Here, **they** and **them** refer to the Egyptians.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **their lives … their work … they worked**
UST their lives … The Egyptians … gave them all sorts of work
(אֶת־חַיֵּיהֶם & עֲבֹדָתָם & עָבְדוּ)

Here, **their** and **they** refer to the Israelites.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **was with rigor**
UST ruthlessly
(בְּפָרֶךְ)

See how you translated **rigor** in the previous verse.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
hard	hard
by … slavery	by forcing them to work
slave labor	and did all sorts of agricultural work
their work	all sorts of work

Exodus 1:15

ULT	UST
And the king of Egypt spoke to the Hebrew midwives, of whom the name of the one was Shiphrah, and the name of the second was Puah.	*Now there were two Hebrew midwives named Shiphrah and Puah. The king of Egypt said to them,*

Note:

This sentence introduces a new event in the story. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **to the … midwives**
UST Hebrew midwives … to them
(לַֽמְיַלְּדֹ֔ת)

Midwives were women who helped a pregnant woman give birth to a baby.

ULT **was Shiphrah … was Puah**
UST Shiphrah … Puah
(שִׁפְרָ֣ה & פּוּעָ֑ה)

Shiphrah and **Puah** are women's names.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **was Shiphrah … was Puah**
UST Shiphrah … Puah
(שִׁפְרָ֣ה & פּוּעָ֑ה)

The midwives are introduced here as new participants in the story. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new character.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king of	The king
Egypt	of Egypt
Hebrew	Hebrew midwives … to them

Exodus 1:16

ULT	UST
And he said, "When you assist the Hebrew women as midwives and you see on the birth stool, if he is a son, then you shall cause him to die, but if she is a daughter, then she shall live."	*"When you help a Hebrew woman have a baby, pay attention right as the baby is born. If the baby is a boy, you must kill him. If the baby is a girl, you may let her live."*

ULT **And he said**
UST When you help … have a baby
(וַיֹּאמֶר)

In the UST, the phrase and **the king said**, is combined with "spoke" from 1:15 (ULT) because the verb for "say" is used twice before he speaks. Having two speech verbs may be strange in some languages. If it would be unnatural to say that the king spoke or said words twice, you may leave one off.

ULT **When you assist … as midwives and you see … then you shall cause … to die**
UST When you help … have a baby, pay attention … you must kill
(בְּיַלֶּדְכֶן & וּרְאִיתֶן & וַהֲמִתֶּן)

The king is speaking to the two midwives, so the form of **you** is plural. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a dual or plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **on the birth stool**
UST right as the baby is born
(עַל־הָאָבְנָיִם)

Women sat on this short stool as they gave birth. Therefore, it was associated with birth. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in the birthing process]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **if he is a son, then you shall cause him to die, but if she is a daughter, then she shall live**

UST If the baby is a boy, you must kill him. If the baby is a girl, you may let her live
(אִם־בֵּ֥ן הוּא֙ וַהֲמִתֶּ֣ן אֹת֔וֹ וְאִם־בַּ֥ת הִ֖יא וָחָֽיָה)

These two statements are hypothetical conditions (starting at **if**) with instructions for what the midwives should do in each situation (starting at **then**). Use a natural form in your language for hypothetical situations connected to instructions.

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Hebrew women	a Hebrew woman

Exodus 1:17

ULT	UST
But the midwives feared God and did not do according to what the king of Egypt spoke to them, and they let the sons live.	*But the midwives were afraid {to disobey} God. So they did not obey what the king told them to do. They allowed the baby boys to live.*

ULT But … feared
UST But … were afraid {to disobey} … they
(וַתִּירֶאןָ)

But introduces a contrast to what was expected. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast.

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
But … feared	But … were afraid {to disobey} … they
God	God
the king of	the king
Egypt	the king

Exodus 1:18

ULT	UST
And the king of Egypt called out to the midwives, and he said to them, "Why have you done this thing, and let the sons live?"	*So the king summoned the two midwives and asked them, "Why are you doing this? Why are you letting the baby boys live?"*

ULT to the midwives
UST the two midwives
(לַֽמְיַלְּדֹ֣ת)

Women whose work is to help other woman give birth to a baby are called **midwives**. See how you translated this in Exodus 1:15.

ULT and he said to them, "Why have you done this thing, and let the sons live
UST and asked them, "Why are you doing this? Why are you letting the baby boys live
(וַיֹּ֣אמֶר לָהֶ֔ן מַדּ֥וּעַ עֲשִׂיתֶ֖ן הַדָּבָ֣ר הַזֶּ֑ה וַתְּחַיֶּ֖ינָה אֶת־הַיְלָדִֽים)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could translate this quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [and he asked them why they were letting the sons live.]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT Why have you done this thing, and let the sons live
UST Why are you doing this? Why are you letting the baby boys live
(מַדּ֥וּעַ עֲשִׂיתֶ֖ן הַדָּבָ֣ר הַזֶּ֑ה וַתְּחַיֶּ֖ינָה אֶת־הַיְלָדִֽים)

Alternate translation: [Why have you not killed the baby boys?]

ULT have you done
UST are you doing
(עֲשִׂיתֶ֖ן)

This **you** is plural. The king is speaking to the two midwives. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a dual or plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king of	the king
Egypt	the king

ULT	UST
And … called out	So … summoned

Exodus 1:19

ULT	UST
And the midwives said to Pharaoh, "Because the Hebrew women are not like the Egyptian women: for they are lively, and, before the midwife comes to them, they have given birth."	*One of the midwives replied to the king, "{We have not been able to obey you} because the Hebrew women are not like the Egyptian women. Because they are energetic, the Hebrew women have their babies before we arrive to help them."*

ULT **Because the Hebrew women are not like the Egyptian women: for they are lively, and, before the midwife comes to them, they have given birth**

UST {We have not been able to obey you} because the Hebrew women are not like the Egyptian women. Because they are energetic, the Hebrew women have their babies before we arrive to help them

(כִּי לֹא כַנָּשִׁים הַמִּצְרִיֹּת הָעִבְרִיֹּת כִּי־חָיוֹת הֵנָּה בְּטֶרֶם תָּבוֹא אֲלֵהֶן הַמְיַלֶּדֶת וְיָלָדוּ)

The midwives give a reason, **the Hebrew women are not like the Egyptian women**, and then they expand on that reason, **for they are lively** (or energetic), with the result that **before the midwife comes to them, they have given birth**.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And the midwives said**

UST One of the midwives replied

(וַתֹּאמֶרְנָה הַמְיַלְּדֹת)

Here, **midwives said** means that a midwife spoke representing the thoughts of the group. It may not make sense in your language to say that multiple people said something, so you may need to translate it in the singular (See: UST).

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **the midwives**

UST One of the midwives

(הַמְיַלְּדֹת)

These were women who helped a woman give birth to a baby. See how you translated this in Exodus 1:15.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
the Hebrew women are	the Hebrew women
Egyptian	the Egyptian women

Exodus 1:20

ULT	UST
And God caused good to the midwives. And the people multiplied and became very mighty.	*Therefore, the {Hebrew} people became numerous and very strong. God acted kindly to the midwives*

ULT to the midwives
UST to the midwives
(לַמְיַלְּדֹת)

These were women who helped a woman give birth to a baby. See how you translated this in Exodus 1:15.

ULT And the people multiplied and became very mighty
UST Therefore, the {Hebrew} people became numerous and very strong
(וַיִּרֶב הָעָם וַיַּעַצְמוּ מְאֹד)

This sentence gives background information about the events at the time. Use the natural form in your language for expressing background information.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT And … multiplied and became very mighty
UST Therefore … became numerous and very strong
(וַיִּרֶב & וַיַּעַצְמוּ מְאֹד)

These words mean similar things and are used together to emphasize their numeric growth. If your language does not have as many words that mean the same thing, you can use fewer words and express the emphasis in another way.

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT And God caused good to the midwives
UST God acted kindly to the midwives
(וַיֵּיטֶב אֱלֹהִים לַמְיַלְּדֹת)

This phrase is more logically connected to the statements in verse 21. It describes the result of the midwives fearing God with a general statement. If it would be more natural in your language, you could rearrange verses 20–21 so that the reason (verses 21) comes before both the general and specific results.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God

ULT	UST
And … caused good	acted kindly
And … multiplied	Therefore … became numerous
and became … mighty	and … strong

Exodus 1:21

ULT	UST
And it came about, since the midwives feared God, that he made houses for them.	*because they were afraid {to disobey} him. He gave them each a husband and children.*

ULT since the midwives feared God
UST because they were afraid {to disobey} him
(כִּֽי־יָרְא֣וּ הַֽמְיַלְּדֹ֔ת אֶת־הָאֱלֹהִ֖ים)

This is the reason for what God did. If it would be more natural in your language, you could rearrange verses 20–21 so that the reason (verses 21) comes before both the general and specific results.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT that he made houses for them
UST He gave them each a husband and children
(וַיַּ֥עַשׂ לָהֶ֖ם בָּתִּֽים)

This describes the result of the midwives fearing God with a specific statement. If it would be more natural in your language, you could rearrange verses 20–21 so that the reason (verses 21) comes before both the general and specific results.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT houses
UST a husband and children
(בָּתִּֽים)

Alternate translation: [households]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
feared	were afraid {to disobey}
God	him
houses	a husband and children

Exodus 1:22

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh commanded to all of his people, saying, "You shall throw every newborn son into the river, but every daughter you shall let live."	*Then the king ordered all the Egyptian people, "Throw every {Hebrew} baby boy that is born into the Nile River! However, you can allow the baby girls to live."*

ULT **You shall throw every newborn son into the river**
UST Throw every {Hebrew} baby boy that is born into the Nile River
(כָּל־הַבֵּן הַיִּלּוֹד הַיְאֹרָה תַּשְׁלִיכֻהוּ)

This order was given in order to drown the male Hebrew children. The full meaning of this may be made explicit. Alternate translation: [You must dispose of each new baby boy in the river so he will drown] or [Drown each baby boy in the river when he is born]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And Pharaoh commanded to all of his people, saying, "You shall throw every newborn son into the river, but every daughter you shall let live**
UST Then the king ordered all the Egyptian people, "Throw every {Hebrew} baby boy that is born into the Nile River! However, you can allow the baby girls to live
(וַיְצַו פַּרְעֹה לְכָל־עַמּוֹ לֵאמֹר כָּל־הַבֵּן הַיִּלּוֹד הַיְאֹרָה תַּשְׁלִיכֻהוּ וְכָל־הַבַּת תְּחַיּוּן)

From **You shall** to the end of the verse is a direct quote of Pharaoh's speech. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with first-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. However, it could be translated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [And Pharaoh commanded all of his people to throw every baby boy into the river, but to let every girl live.]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **You shall throw … you shall let live**
UST Throw … you can allow … to live
(תַּשְׁלִיכֻהוּ & תְּחַיּוּן)

The uses of the word **you** here refer to all the Egyptians. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
into the river	into the Nile River

Exodus 2

Exodus 2 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–10: Moses' birth and early life
- v. 11–15: Moses' attempted intervention and flight
- v. 16–22: Moses settles in Midian
- v. 23–25: God sees the Israelites' plight

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Covenant

At the end of the chapter, God begins to relate to the Israelites based on his covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Identification of participants

- Moses is the only participant named in most of this chapter. This is because many of the participants play very minor roles and because this part of the story is focusing on Moses' life.

Moses' heritage

In the first part of this chapter, Pharaoh's daughter recognizes Moses as being a Hebrew, but in the last part of this chapter, the Midianites believe him to be an Egyptian.

Ironic situations

- While Pharaoh tried to diminish the power of the Israelites by killing all of their baby boys, God used Pharaoh's own daughter to save Moses.

- Moses believes he is meant to be the rescuer of his people, but they reject him. Ultimately, Moses was correct, but the people rejected him at this point (See: Acts 7).

Exodus 2:1

ULT	UST
And a man from the house of Levi went and took a daughter of Levi.	*Now there was a man who was a descendant of Jacob's son Levi. He married a woman who was also a descendant of Levi.*

ULT **And … went**
UST Now there was
(וַיֵּלֶךְ)

A new scene begins here. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **a man … a daughter of**
UST a man … a woman who was also a descendant of
(אִישׁ & אֶת־בַּת)

These are new participants. They remain unnamed until Exodus 6:20 where they are identified as Amram and Jochebed. For now it is best to leave them unnamed in your language, if possible.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **and took a daughter of Levi**
UST He married a woman who was also a descendant of Levi
(וַיִּקַּח אֶת־בַּת־לֵוִי)

Here, **took a daughter** is an idiom for marrying. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your language.

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from the house of	who was a descendant of
Levi	Jacob's son Levi
Levi	Levi

Exodus 2:2

ULT	UST
And the woman conceived, and she birthed a son. And she saw him, that he was good, and she hid him three months.	*She became pregnant and had a baby boy. When she saw that he was a healthy baby, she {wanted to keep him alive, so she} hid him for three months.*

ULT good
UST was a healthy baby
(טֹוב)

Alternate translation: [pleasing] or [fine]

ULT And she saw … and she hid him
UST When she saw … she {wanted to keep him alive, so she} hid him
(וַתֵּרֶא & וַתִּצְפְּנֵהוּ)

Hiding the boy was a result of seeing that he was good. Alternate translation: [Since she saw … she hid him]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT three
UST for three
(שְׁלֹשָׁה)

3

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And … conceived	became pregnant
good	was a healthy baby
months	months

Exodus 2:3

ULT	UST
And she was not able to hide him still, and she took for him an ark of papyrus reeds and she daubed it with bitumen and with pitch. And she placed the child in it, and she placed it in the reeds along the shore of the river.	*When she was unable to hide him any longer, she got a basket made from tall reeds. She covered the basket with tar {so it would float in water}. Then she put the baby in the basket and put the basket in the water. It was at the edge of the Nile River, in the middle of the tall reeds.*

ULT **an ark of papyrus reeds**
UST a basket made from tall reeds
(תֵּבַת גֹּמֶא)

The **ark** is a basket made from a tall grass (**papyrus reeds**) that grows by the Nile River in Egypt.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and she daubed it with bitumen and with pitch**
UST She covered the basket with tar {so it would float in water}
(וַתַּחְמְרָה בַחֵמָר וּבַזָּפֶת)

You could explicitly state that this was to keep out water. Alternate translation: [and she daubed it with bitumen and with pitch to keep water from getting into it]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and she daubed it**
UST She covered the basket
(וַתַּחְמְרָה)

This means that she applied a waterproof coating.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **with bitumen**
UST with tar {so it would float in water}
(בַחֵמָר)

This is a sticky black substance made from oil. It can be used to keep out water. Alternate translation: [with tar]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and with pitch**
UST with tar {so it would float in water}
(וּבַזָּפֶת)

This is a sticky brown or black substance that can be made from tree sap. It too can be used to keep out water. Alternate translation: [and with tar] or [and with resin]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **in the reeds**
UST in the middle of the tall reeds
(בַּסּוּף)

These **reeds** were a type of tall grass with wide blades that formed a flat surface when woven together. They grew in flat, wet areas.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an ark of	a basket
in the reeds	in the middle of the tall reeds
the river	the water … the Nile River

Exodus 2:4

ULT	UST
And his sister stationed herself at a distance to know what would be done to him.	*His {older} sister hid nearby so she could find out what would happen to him.*

ULT And his sister stationed herself at a distance
UST His {older} sister hid nearby
(וַתִּתְיַצַּב אֲחֹתוֹ מֵרָחֹק)

This means she stood far enough away so that she would not be noticed, but close enough to see the ark. Use a word that expresses this sort of distance in your language.

ULT at a distance
UST nearby
(מֵרָחֹק)

This probably means somewhere in the reeds where she could see the basket, but no one would see her. If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **distance** in another way. Alternate translation: [not far away]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT his sister
UST His {older} sister
(אֲחֹתוֹ)

Here, the actions of **his sister** show that she was older. If your language uses a different term for siblings based on their relative ages or the gender of the siblings or both, use one that means “a boy’s older sister.”

Support Reference: Kinship

ULT to know what would be done to him
UST so she could find out what would happen to him
(לָדַעַת מַה־יֵּעָשֶׂה לוֹ)

This is her purpose in being close by. Use a natural way in your language for indicating purpose. Alternate translation: [in order to learn what would happen to him]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to know	so she could find out

Exodus 2:5

ULT	UST
And a daughter of Pharaoh came down to wash at the river, and her young women were walking along the hand of the river. And she saw the ark in the middle of the reeds, and she sent her slave woman, and she took it	*Soon the king's daughter went down to the river to take a bath. Her female servants walked along the riverbank. She saw the basket in the tall reeds in the river, so she sent one of her servants to get it. {When the servant brought it back,} the king's daughter took it from her*

ULT **And … came down**
UST Soon … went down
(וַתֵּרֶד)

Came down may be literal or figurative, as important places are often considered to be in a higher place. This means she came from her home, probably Pharaoh's palace. If a perspective is required for Pharaoh's daughter, you may choose go or come as works best in your language. "Come" is better as the scene is at the river and she comes to the scene location. However, you also need to consider your language's way of introducing new participants.

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **And a daughter of Pharaoh came down**
UST Soon the king's daughter went down
(וַתֵּרֶד בַּת־פַּרְעֹה)

The **daughter of Pharaoh** is introduced here as a new participant. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new character.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **and her young women**
UST Her female servants
(וְנַעֲרֹתֶיהָ)

These women are introduced here as new participants; however, they are not mentioned again after this verse.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **along the hand of the river**
UST along the riverbank
(עַל־יַד הַיְאֹר)

Here, **hand** is a metaphor for side or, as relating to a river, shore. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could simply translate the meaning.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and her young women**
UST Her female servants
(וְנַעֲרֹתֶיהָ)

These were the young women whose job it was to be with her and make sure nothing bad happened to her.

ULT **and she took it**
UST {When the servant brought it back,} the king's daughter took it from her
(וַתִּקָּחֶהָ)

It is not clear who is meant by **she** here, either Pharaoh's daughter or the servant. It is likely that Pharaoh's daughter remains the subject. Alternate translation: [and she took the ark from her slave]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king's
the river	the river
and her young women	Her female servants
the river	the riverbank
the ark	the basket
the reeds	the tall reeds in the river
her slave woman	one of her servants to get it

Exodus 2:6

ULT	UST
and opened, and she saw him, the child—and behold, a crying boy. And she had compassion on him, and she said, "This one is from the children of the Hebrews."	*and she opened it and was surprised to see a baby inside that was crying. She pitied him and said, "This must be a Hebrew baby."*

ULT **and behold**
UST was surprised
(וְהִנֵּה)

The word **behold** signals the surprising information that follows.

Support Reference: Exclamations

ULT **And she had compassion on him**
UST She pitied him
(וַתַּחְמֹל עָלָיו)

The text does not state exactly what caused her to have compassion on the baby. If a reason must be provided in your language, it should be connected to either his crying (this is the better option) or that he was a "good" baby (2:2).

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **This one is from the children of the Hebrews**
UST This must be a Hebrew baby
(מִיַּלְדֵי הָעִבְרִים זֶה)

This is a direct quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with first-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. It seems to have been said loud enough for the baby's sister to hear. There may be other quotations in this chapter; they will be marked by the same punctuation, but they will not have their own notes.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
crying	was crying
a … boy	that
And she had compassion	She pitied
the Hebrews	a Hebrew

Exodus 2:7

ULT	UST
And his sister said to the daughter of Pharaoh, "Should I go and call for you a nursing woman from the Hebrews? And she could cause the child to nurse for you."	*Then the baby's {older} sister {walked up} to the king's daughter and said, "Do you want me to go and find a Hebrew woman who will be able to nurse the baby for you?"*

ULT and call for you a nursing woman from the Hebrews
UST Do you want me to go and find a Hebrew woman who will be able to nurse
(וְקָרָאתִי לָךְ אִשָּׁה מֵינֶקֶת מִן הָעִבְרִיֹּת)

This is a suggestive question. The child's sister is hopeful that Pharaoh's daughter does not yet have a plan for the baby beyond saving his life. However, it is still a true question, for without Pharaoh's daughter's permission, the child's sister will not be able to fetch the woman. If your language has a way of forming questions that are also suggestions, use it here.

ULT nursing … And she could cause … to nurse
UST who will be able to nurse
(מֵינֶקֶת & וְתֵינַק)

Here, **nursing** or **to nurse** means to feed with milk from the breast.

ULT And she could cause the child to nurse for you
UST who will be able to nurse the baby for you
(וְתֵינַק לָךְ אֶת־הַיָּלֶד)

This is the purpose of the sister's proposal. Use a natural way in your language for indicating purpose. Alternate translation: [And she could nurse the infant for you]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king's
and call	and find
the Hebrews	a Hebrew woman

Exodus 2:8

ULT	UST
And the daughter of Pharaoh said to her, "Go." And the girl went and called the mother of the child.	*The king's daughter said to her, "Yes, go and find one." So the girl went and found the baby's mother {and brought her to the king's daughter}.*

ULT Go." And … went

UST Yes, go and find one." So … went

(לֵ֣כִי וַתֵּלֶךְ)

The girl left Pharaoh's daughter to go to the child's mother. The girl was almost certainly on foot. Use verbs of motion that express this.

Support Reference: Go and Come

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the … Pharaoh	The king's daughter
and called	and found … and brought her to the king's daughter

Exodus 2:9

ULT	UST
And the daughter of Pharaoh said to her, "Take this child and cause him to nurse for me, and I shall give your wages." And the woman took the child and caused him to nurse.	*The king's daughter said to the mother, "Please take this baby and nurse him for me. I will pay you for doing that." So the baby's mother {agreed,} took him, and nursed him.*

ULT **to her**
UST to the mother
(לָהּ)

The child's mother is reintroduced as a participant. Use the natural form in your language for reintroducing a character. Alternate translation: [to the baby's mother]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **your wages**
UST will pay you for doing that
(אֶת־שְׂכָרֵךְ)

This refers to payment that Pharaoh's daughter would give to the mother in exchange for her service of nursing the baby.

ULT **And … took … and caused him to nurse**
UST So … {agreed,} took … and nursed him
(וַתִּקַּח & וַתְּנִיקֵהוּ)

The mother's acceptance of the deal is implied. You could make it explicit, as in the UST.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the … Pharaoh	The king's daughter

Exodus 2:10

ULT	UST
And the child grew older, and she brought him to the daughter of Pharaoh, and he became as a son to her. And she called his name Moses, and she said, "For out of the water I drew him."	*When he had gotten bigger, his mother brought the boy to the king's daughter. She adopted him and said, "I pulled him out of the water, so I will call him Moses."*

ULT **And the child grew older, and she brought him**
UST When he had gotten bigger, his mother brought the boy
(וַיִּגְדַּל הַיֶּלֶד וַתְּבִאֵהוּ)

And the child grew older marks an unspecified amount of time. He would have stayed with his mother at least until he was weaned (no longer feeding on his mother's milk).

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT **and he became as a son to her**
UST She adopted him
(וַיְהִי־לָהּ לְבֵן)

Alternate translation: [and he became the adopted son of Pharaoh's daughter]

ULT **and he became as a son to her. And she called his name Moses**
UST She adopted him … I will call him Moses
(וַיְהִי־לָהּ לְבֵן וַתִּקְרָא שְׁמוֹ מֹשֶׁה)

These events were likely simultaneous, because her act of naming him may have been what made him become **as a son to her**. Consider using a conjunction that does not make a great separation between these events.

Support Reference: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

ULT **Moses, and she said, "For out of the water I drew him**
UST and said, "I pulled him out of the water, so … Moses
(מֹשֶׁה וַתֹּאמֶר כִּי מִן־הַמַּיִם מְשִׁיתִהוּ)

Translators may add a footnote that says, "The name Moses sounds like the Hebrew word that means 'draw out.'"

ULT **and she said, “For out of the water I drew him**
UST and said, “I pulled him out of the water, so
(וַתֹּ֣אמֶר כִּ֥י מִן־הַמַּ֖יִם מְשִׁיתִֽהוּ)

For begins a direct quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with first-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [because she said she drew him out of the water]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	to the king’s daughter
And she called	I will call him
Moses	Moses

Exodus 2:11

ULT	UST
And it happened in those days that Moses had grown up. And he went out to his brothers and saw their burdens. And he saw an Egyptian man striking a Hebrew man from his brothers.	*One day, after Moses had grown up, he went out {of the palace area} to see the hard work his people had to do. He also saw an Egyptian beating one of his people, the Hebrews.*

ULT **And it happened in those days that Moses had grown up. And he went out**
UST One day, after Moses had grown up, he went out {of the palace area}
(וַיְהִי ׀ בַּיָּמִים הָהֵם וַיִּגְדַּל מֹשֶׁה וַיֵּצֵא)

A significant amount of time has passed; later texts state that Moses was 40 years old at this point. Alternate translation: [Many years later, once Moses was grown, he went out]

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT **And it happened in those days**
UST One day
(וַיְהִי ׀ בַּיָּמִים הָהֵם)

This introduces a new event in the story. In your language, use a phrase that indicates a new event occurring after significant time has passed.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **And he went out**
UST he went out {of the palace area}
(וַיֵּצֵא)

The UST supplies a probable location that he **went out** from; it could also have been simply out from the Egyptian area or out to the work area or cities. Use go or come as appropriate in your language.

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **striking a Hebrew man**
UST beating … the Hebrews
(מַכֶּה אִישׁ־עִבְרִי)

Alternate translation: [hitting a Hebrew] or [beating a Hebrew]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in … days	One day
Moses	Moses
Egyptian	an Egyptian

ULT	UST
Hebrew	the Hebrews

Exodus 2:12

ULT	UST
And he turned this way and that way, and he saw that there was no man, and he struck the Egyptian, and he hid him in the sand.	*He looked around {to see if anyone was watching}. Seeing no one, he killed the Egyptian man and buried his body in the sand.*

ULT **And he turned this way and that way**
UST He looked around {to see if anyone was watching}
(וַיִּפֶן כֹּה וָכֹה)

These two opposite directions have the combined meaning of "everywhere." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language.
Alternate translation: [He looked all around]

Support Reference: Merism

ULT **and he struck**
UST he killed
(וַיַּךְ)

The context makes clear that Moses struck the Egyptian hard enough or repeatedly until Moses killed him. Consider using a word that indicates a deadly blow.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and he struck	he killed
the Egyptian	the Egyptian man

Exodus 2:13

ULT	UST
And he went out the second day, and behold, two Hebrew men were fighting. And he said to the guilty one, "Why are you striking your companion?"	*The next day he was out again. He was surprised to see two Hebrew men fighting each other. He said to the man who started the fight, "Why are you hitting your fellow Hebrew?"*

ULT **And he went out**
UST he was out again
(וַיֵּצֵא)

See how you translated this in Exodus 2:11.

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **second**
UST The next
(הַשֵּׁנִי)

The ordinal number here could mean "the next day" (UST) or simply on some day following the events of the previous verse.

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **and behold**
UST He was surprised to see
(וְהִנֵּה)

Here, **behold** shows that Moses was surprised by what he saw. You can use a word in your language that will give this meaning.

Support Reference: Exclamations

ULT **to the guilty one**
UST to the man who started the fight
(לָרָשָׁע)

Based on Moses' question, this means the aggressor or the man wrongfully attacking his neighbor. Alternate translation: [the man who was guilty of starting the fight]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the … day	day
Hebrew	Hebrew
to the guilty one	to the man who started the fight

ULT	UST
your companion	your fellow Hebrew

Exodus 2:14

ULT	UST
And he said, "Who set you as the ruler man and judge over us? Are you saying to kill me like you killed the Egyptian?" And Moses feared and said, "Certainly the thing is known."	*The man replied, "No one put you in charge of judging us! Do not think you {will get away with} killing me like you killed that Egyptian yesterday!" Then Moses was afraid, because he thought, "Everyone knows what I did."*

ULT **Who set you as the ruler man and judge over us**
UST No one put you in charge of judging us
(מִי שָׂמְךָ לְאִישׁ שַׂר וְשֹׁפֵט עָלֵינוּ)

The man is not asking a question, he is using this question to rebuke Moses for intervening in the fight. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [You are not our leader and have no right to judge us!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Are you saying to kill me like you killed the Egyptian**
UST Do not think you {will get away with} killing me like you killed that Egyptian yesterday
(הַלְהָרְגֵנִי אַתָּה אֹמֵר כַּאֲשֶׁר הָרַגְתָּ אֶת־הַמִּצְרִי)

The man used a question here to be sarcastic. Alternate translation: [We know that you killed an Egyptian yesterday. You had better not kill me!]

Support Reference: Irony

ULT **Are you saying to kill me like you killed the Egyptian**
UST Do not think you {will get away with} killing me like you killed that Egyptian yesterday
(הַלְהָרְגֵנִי אַתָּה אֹמֵר כַּאֲשֶׁר הָרַגְתָּ אֶת־הַמִּצְרִי)

Again, the man asks a question that is intended to make a statement. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [Do you think you could kill me without anyone finding out? We know what you did to the Egyptian]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Are you saying to kill me**
UST Do not think you {will get away with} killing me
(הַלְהָרְגֵנִי אַתָּה אֹמֵר)

Alternate translation: [Are you planning to kill me] or [Are you threatening to kill me]

ULT **and said**
UST because he thought
(וַיִּאמֶר)

Certainly the thing is known was likely something Moses said to himself, that is, he thought it to himself rather than speaking to the men in front of him. If this would be confusing in your language, you might introduce it as a thought. Alternate translation: [and thought]

Support Reference: Aside

ULT **and said, "Certainly the thing is known**
UST because he thought, "Everyone knows what I did
(וַיֹּאמֶר אָכֵן נוֹדַע הַדָּבָר)

It may be clearer to present what was likely a thought Moses had as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation (as indirect quotation): [because he thought that everyone knew what he had done]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ruler	put you in charge
and judge	of judging
Are … to kill me	killing me
you killed	you killed
the Egyptian	that Egyptian yesterday
Moses	Moses
And … feared	Then … was afraid
is known	Everyone knows

Exodus 2:15

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh heard this thing, and he sought to kill Moses. And Moses fled from the face of Pharaoh. And he dwelt in the land of Midian, and he sat down by a well.	*When the king heard that Moses killed an Egyptian, he ordered {his soldiers} to kill Moses. But Moses ran away from the king {and left Egypt. He traveled east} to the region of Midian and started to live there. {One day as} Moses was sitting beside a well,*

ULT **and he sought to kill Moses**
UST he ordered {his soldiers} to kill Moses
(וַיְבַקֵּשׁ לַהֲרֹג אֶת־מֹשֶׁה)

Pharaoh most likely delegated this task. Alternate translation: [and he sought to have Moses killed] (note that the passive form will not work in every language)

ULT **from the face of**
UST from
(מִפְּנֵי)

His **face** means his presence. Alternate translation: [from]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And he dwelt … and he sat down**
UST and started to live … {One day as} Moses was sitting
(וַיֵּשֶׁב & וַיֵּשֶׁב)

In Hebrew, these are the same verb. In English, they could be translated as “settle,” which can mean to dwell in a certain place, but it can also mean to lower one’s body into a seated position. This could mean: (1) Moses lived in Midian. He sat by this well one day. This may have been the well for the town he lived in. (2) Moses lived in Midian. His home was by this well. (3) Moses was a wanderer. He was in Midian and sat by this well when the next event occurred.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
and he sought	he ordered {his soldiers}
to kill	to kill
Moses	Moses
Moses	Moses
Pharaoh	the king

ULT	UST
the … Midian	to the region of Midian … there

Exodus 2:16

ULT	UST
And the priest of Midian had seven daughters. And they came and drew and filled up the troughs to cause the flock of their father to drink water.	*seven women came to the well. They were all the daughters of the man who was the priest for the Midianites. They got water and filled the troughs in order to give water to their father's sheep and goats.*

ULT **And the priest of Midian had seven daughters**
UST seven women … They were all the daughters of the man who was the priest for the Midianites
(וּלְכֹהֵן מִדְיָן שֶׁבַע בָּנוֹת)

This sentence is background information. Use the natural form in your language for expressing background information.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **And the priest of Midian had seven daughters**
UST seven women … They were all the daughters of the man who was the priest for the Midianites
(וּלְכֹהֵן מִדְיָן שֶׁבַע בָּנוֹת)

This sentence marks a scene transition. However, the last clause of the previous verse ("and he sat down by a well") seems to be related to this new scene, so you may want to make your transition before that, as is done in the UST.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **daughters**
UST women … They were all the daughters of
(בָּנוֹת)

The **daughters** are new participants. Use the natural form in your language for introducing new characters.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **And they came**
UST came to the well
(וַתָּבֹאנָה)

The perspective of the narrative is set at the well. The daughters came from elsewhere to the well. They were probably on foot. Here each language will need to choose the appropriate motion word.

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **seven**
UST seven
(שֶׁבַע)

7

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **and drew**
UST They got water
(וַתִּדְלֶּינָה)

This means that they brought up water from a well.

ULT **the troughs**
UST the troughs
(אֶת־הָרְהָטִים)

The **troughs** were long, narrow, open containers for animals to eat or drink out of.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And the priest of … had	the man who was the priest for the Midianites
Midian	the man who was the priest for the Midianites
the flock of	sheep and goats

Exodus 2:17

ULT	UST
And the men who were shepherding came and drove them away, but Moses arose and saved them and caused their flock to drink water.	*Some shepherds came and {started to} chase them away. But Moses got up and rescued them and helped their sheep and goats to drink.*

ULT And … came
UST came
(וַיָּבֹאוּ)

A group of **men came**. They may not have been far away before coming and driving the women away. Use an appropriate form of moving verb.

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT the men who were shepherding
UST Some shepherds
(הָרֹעִים)

These are new characters only seen briefly.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT but … arose
UST But … got up
(וַיָּקָם)

Use an expression that communicates that what Moses did was unexpected.

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the men who were shepherding	Some shepherds
and drove them away	and {started to} chase them away
Moses	Moses
and saved them	and rescued them
their flock	their sheep and goats

Exodus 2:18

ULT	UST
And they came to Reuel their father, and he said, "Why have you hurried coming today?"	*When his daughters returned {home}, their father {Jethro} ({who people also called} Reuel) asked them, "How did you get back {from taking care of the sheep} so quickly today?"*

ULT **And they came**
UST When his daughters returned
(וַתָּבֶאנָה)

The daughters came from the well to their father, probably on foot. You can use either come or go, whichever is more natural.

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **Reuel**
UST home … {Jethro} ({who people also called} Reuel
(רְעוּאֵל)

Reuel, a name or perhaps a title, is used of the man only here and in Numbers 10:29. He is otherwise called "Jethro."

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Reuel**
UST home … {Jethro} ({who people also called} Reuel
(רְעוּאֵל)

The priest of Midian was mentioned in v. 16 in a background statement but is a new character starting here. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new character.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **and he said, "Why have you hurried coming today**
UST asked them, "How did you get back {from taking care of the sheep} so quickly today
(וַיֹּאמֶר מַדּוּעַ מְהַרְתֶּן בֹּא הַיּוֹם)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [and he asked how they were able to return so quickly that day]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **coming**
UST get back {from taking care of the sheep}
(בָּא)

Alternate translation: [in returning]

Support Reference: Go and Come

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Reuel	home … {Jethro} ({who people also called} Reuel

Exodus 2:19

ULT	UST
And they said, "An Egyptian man rescued us from the hand of the men who were shepherding. And he even drew especially for us and caused the flock to drink water."	*They replied, "A man from Egypt kept the other shepherds from chasing us away. He also got water for us from the well and gave water to the sheep."*

ULT An Egyptian man
UST A man from Egypt
(אִישׁ מִצְרִי)

Jethro's daughters assume Moses was Egyptian. When you translate it, you should be clear that this refers to Moses.

ULT from the hand of
UST kept … from chasing us away
(מִיַּד)

Here, **hand** refers to the power, control, or actions of the shepherds. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from the strength of] or [from the harm of]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT he … drew especially
UST He … got water … from the well
(דָּלֹה דָלָה)

This expresses surprise or emphasizes the magnitude of Moses' act of kindness to the women. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your language.

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
An Egyptian	from Egypt
rescued us	kept … from chasing us away
the men who were shepherding	the other shepherds
the flock	to the sheep

Exodus 2:20

ULT	UST
And he said to his daughters, "And where is he? What is this? You left the man? Call him and he shall eat bread!"	*He said to his daughters, "By leaving him at the well, you did not show this man that we welcome strangers or even repay his kind act. Invite him in so that he can have something to eat!" {So they did, and Moses ate with them.}*

ULT **And where is he? What is this? You left the man**
UST By leaving him at the well, you did not show this man that we welcome strangers or even repay his kind act
(וַאַיּוֹ֙ לָמָ֣ה זֶּ֔ה עֲזַבְתֶּ֖ן אֶת־הָאִ֑ישׁ)

These questions are a mild rebuke to the daughters for not inviting Moses into their home according to the normal hospitality of that culture. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [You should not have left this man at the well!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **him**
UST him
(לֽוֹ)

Here, **him** refers to Moses.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **bread**
UST something
(לָ֖חֶם)

Here, **bread** is used to refer to food in general. If this would be misunderstood in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: [food]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
You left	By leaving … at the well, you did not show … that we welcome strangers or even repay his kind act
Call	Invite … in … So they did
bread	something

Exodus 2:21

ULT	UST
And Moses was willing to dwell with the man, and he gave Zipporah his daughter to Moses.	*Jethro {invited Moses} to stay with his family and Moses accepted {his offer}. Jethro gave Moses his daughter Zipporah {to be his wife}.*

ULT And Moses was willing to dwell with the man

UST Jethro {invited Moses} to stay with his family and Moses accepted {his offer}

(וַיּוֹאֶל מֹשֶׁה לָשֶׁבֶת אֶת־הָאִישׁ)

Alternate translation: [Moses agreed to live with Reuel]

ULT Zipporah

UST Zipporah

(אֶת־צִפֹּרָה)

Zipporah is Reuel's (Jethro's) daughter.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
to Moses	Moses … to be his wife

Exodus 2:22

ULT	UST
And she birthed a son, and he called his name Gershom; for he said, "I have become a foreigner in a foreign land."	*When she gave birth to {their first} son, Moses said, "I am a foreigner living in a place foreign to me, so I will name him Gershom."*

> ULT **I have become a foreigner in a foreign land**
> UST I am a foreigner living in a place foreign to me
> (גֵּר הָיִיתִי בְּאֶרֶץ נָכְרִיָּה)

Only this portion is a quotation. As a possibility for clarity, the UST includes both speech events as one quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with first-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

> ULT **Gershom**
> UST Gershom
> (גֵּרְשֹׁם)

His name, **Gershom**, sounds somewhat like the Hebrew for "a stranger here." You may consider using a footnote to explain that.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

> ULT **I have become a foreigner in a foreign land**
> UST I am a foreigner living in a place foreign to me
> (גֵּר הָיִיתִי בְּאֶרֶץ נָכְרִיָּה)

Alternate translation: [stranger in a foreign land]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and he called	I will name him
a foreigner	foreigner
foreign	foreign to me
in a … land	in a place

Exodus 2:23

ULT	UST
And it happened in these many days that the king of Egypt died. And the sons of Israel groaned from the slavery. And they cried out, and their plea ascended to God from their slavery.	*Many years went by. During that time, the king of Egypt died. The Israelites in Egypt were still groaning because of the hard work they had to do as slaves. They cried to God in heaven because of the work.*

ULT **And it happened in these many days that the king of Egypt died**
UST Many years went by. During that time, the king of Egypt died
(וַיְהִי֙ בַּיָּמִ֣ים הָרַבִּ֔ים הַהֵ֖ם וַיָּ֣מָת מֶ֣לֶךְ מִצְרָ֑יִם)

This introduces a new section and series of events. A large amount of time went by. According to Stephen's sermon in Acts 7:30, Moses was in Midian 40 years. Alternate translation: [This is what happened during the many days Moses was in Midian. The king of Egypt died.]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

Note:

Verses 23–25 give a summary of what happened in Egypt and with the Israelites and God while Moses was in exile. These verses give background information to set the scene. Use the natural form in your language for expressing background information.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **And … groaned**
UST were still groaning
(וַיֵּאָנְח֥וּ)

They **groaned** because of their sorrow and misery. Alternate translation: [sighed deeply]

ULT **and their plea ascended to God**
UST They cried to God in heaven
(וַתַּ֥עַל שַׁוְעָתָ֖ם אֶל־הָאֱלֹהִֽים)

The **plea** of the Israelites are spoken of as if they were a person and were able to travel up to where God is. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and God heard their pleading]

Support Reference: Personification

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in … days	Many years went by. During that time

ULT	UST
the king of	the king
Egypt	of Egypt
Israel	The Israelites in Egypt
the slavery	of the hard work they had to do as slaves
And they cried out	They cried … in heaven
their plea	They cried … in heaven
God	God
their slavery	the work

Exodus 2:24

ULT	UST
And God heard their groaning, and God remembered his covenant with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob.	*When he heard them groaning, he thought about his promise to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.*

ULT and God remembered
UST he thought about
(וַיִּזְכֹּר אֱלֹהִים)

This a common biblical way of saying that God thought about what He had promised. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your language. Alternate translation: [and God recalled]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	he
God	he
his covenant	his promise
Abraham	to Abraham
Isaac	Isaac
Jacob	Jacob

Exodus 2:25

ULT	UST
And God saw the sons of Israel, and God knew.	*God saw {how the} Israelites {were being badly treated}, and he comprehended.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Israel	{ … the} Israelites
God	he
and … knew	and … comprehended

Exodus 3

Exodus 3 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter is one conversation in which Yahweh begins to commission and send Moses to rescue the Israelites.

This chapter records one of the most important events in the history of the Israelite people: the revelation of the name Yahweh at the burning bush.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

God's holiness

God is so holy that people cannot look upon him without dying. This is why Moses covered his eyes. It is also why he took off his shoes. (See: holy, holiness, unholy, sacred; and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Yahweh

The name Yahweh is the personal name of God, which he revealed to Moses. Yahweh is probably related to the phrase "I am" which he tells Moses in verse 14. Some translations use all capitals to set this apart: "I AM." Great care must be taken in translating the phrase "I am that I am." (See: Yahweh, Yah)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Participants

"The angel of Yahweh," "Yahweh," and "God" all appear to be speaking to Moses and interacting with him from the burning bush. Furthermore, God says that his name is "I AM." (See note above on Yahweh and I AM.) Yahweh and God are the same, while there is speculation about who the angel of Yahweh is.

Exodus 3:1

ULT	UST
And Moses was shepherding the flock of Jethro his father-in-law, the priest of Midian. And he led the flock beyond the wilderness, and he came to the mountain of God, to Horeb.	*Moses, on the other hand, was taking care of the sheep that belonged to Jethro (his father-in-law who was a priest to the Midianite people.) One day, he took the flock to the far side of the wildland. He came to a mountain where God {would reveal himself to Moses and later to the Israelites} called Horeb.*

ULT **And Moses was shepherding**
UST Moses, on the other hand, was taking care
(וּמֹשֶׁה הָיָה רֹעֶה)

This phrase brings the story focus back to Midian and Moses. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

Note:

Verse 1 provides immediate background context, setting the scene for Moses' interaction with Yahweh. Use the natural form in your language for expressing background information.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **the priest of Midian**
UST who was a priest to the Midianite people
(כֹּהֵן מִדְיָן)

This is a possessive of social relationship. **Jethro** is a **priest** who serves the Midianites.

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and he came to**
UST He came to
(וַיָּבֹא אֶל)

Alternate translation: [and he arrived at]

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **the mountain of God**
UST a mountain where God {would reveal himself to Moses and later to the Israelites}
(הַר הָאֱלֹהִים)

This is an associative possessive. This mountain was associated with God in some way. In Exodus 3:12 God tells Moses that he and the Israelites will serve him on this mountain. Later in the story, this promise is fulfilled, and it is where God makes his covenant with Israel and gives them the 10 Commandments. So it may have been called **the mountain of God** in retrospect (as Moses probably wrote this book sometime after the Israelites were wandering in the wilderness). However, it is possible that the mountain was already somehow associated with God's presence or worship before Moses went there with the flock.

Support Reference: Possession

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And Moses	Moses, on the other hand
shepherding	taking care
the flock of	of the sheep
Jethro	that belonged to Jethro
the priest of	who was a priest
Midian	to the Midianite people
the flock	the flock
the wilderness	the wildland
God	God
to Horeb	called Horeb

Exodus 3:2

ULT	UST
And the angel of Yahweh appeared to him in a flame of fire from the middle of a bush. And he looked, and behold, the bush was burning in the fire, but the bush was not being consumed.	*While he was there, Yahweh's messenger appeared to Moses as a fire inside a bush. Moses stared at the burning bush, amazed that the fire was not burning it completely to ashes.*

ULT **And the angel of Yahweh appeared to him in a flame of fire from the middle of a bush**

UST While he was there, Yahweh's messenger appeared to Moses as a fire inside a bush
(וַיֵּרָא מַלְאַךְ יְהוָה אֵלָיו בְּלַבַּת־אֵשׁ מִתּוֹךְ הַסְּנֶה)

This is a summary of what happened. The next few verses tell the story of how this happened and how Moses discovered what was happening.

ULT **and behold, the bush was burning in the fire, but the bush was not being consumed**

UST at the burning bush, amazed that the fire was not burning it completely to ashes
(וְהִנֵּה הַסְּנֶה בֹּעֵר בָּאֵשׁ וְהַסְּנֶה אֵינֶנּוּ אֻכָּל)

The word **behold** here shows that Moses saw something that was very different from what he expected. He expected the bush to be burnt up completely by the fire. Consider using an interjection in your language that expresses that what follows is a surprise.

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **being consumed**

UST was … burning … completely to ashes
(אֻכָּל)

Here, **being consumed** means being eaten completely until gone. In the case of fire, this is a metonym for burning completely until gone. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [destroyed by the fire]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the angel of	messenger
Yahweh	Yahweh's
being consumed	was … burning … completely to ashes

Exodus 3:3

ULT	UST
And Moses said, “Let me turn aside and see this great sight! Why does the bush not burn up?”	*He thought, “I will go closer to see this strange thing! Why is the bush not burning up?”*

ULT **Let me turn aside and see this great sight! Why does the bush not burn up**
UST I will go closer to see this strange thing! Why is the bush not burning up
(אָסֻרָה־נָּא וְאֶרְאֶה אֶת־הַמַּרְאֶה הַגָּדֹל הַזֶּה מַדּוּעַ לֹא־יִבְעַר הַסְּנֶה)

This is a direct quote. It’s not specified who Moses spoke to; he may have been alone or with a group of shepherds or his family. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with first-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. There may be other quotations in this chapter; they will be marked by the same punctuation, but they will not have their own notes unless there is something unique about them.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **great sight**
UST strange thing
(אֶת־הַמַּרְאֶה הַגָּדֹל)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for something strange that someone sees, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **sight** in another way. Alternate translation: [unusual thing that I see]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	He

Exodus 3:4

ULT	UST
And Yahweh saw that he had turned aside in order to look, and God called to him from the middle of the bush, and he said, "Moses, Moses." And he said, "Behold me!"	*When Yahweh saw Moses coming for a closer look, he called out from the bush, "Moses, Moses!" "Yes!" Moses replied.*

ULT Yahweh … God
UST Yahweh … he
(יְהוָה & אֱלֹהִים)

These terms both refer to the same being, since God's name is Yahweh.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	he
and … called	called out
Moses	Moses
Moses	Moses

Exodus 3:5

ULT	UST
And he said, "You must not come close to here. Take your sandals off from on your feet, for the place on which you are standing, it is holy ground."	*Yahweh said, "Take off your sandals {to honor me} before you come any closer, because you are standing on ground that is sacred {because it is near me.}*

ULT **for the place on which you are standing, it is holy ground**
UST because you are standing on ground that is sacred {because it is near me … }
(כִּי הַמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה עוֹמֵד עָלָיו אַדְמַת־קֹדֶשׁ הִוא)

This is the reason Moses must stop coming close to the burning bush and take off his sandals. If it would be more natural in your language, you could put the reason before the commands, as in, "The place on which you are standing, it is holy ground, so you must not come close to here. Take your sandals off from on your feet."

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your sandals	Take off your sandals {to honor me}
holy	that is sacred {because it is near me … }

Exodus 3:6

ULT	UST
And he said, "I am the God of your father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob." And Moses hid his face, for he was afraid from staring toward God.	*I am God, the one that your father, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob all worshiped." Moses was afraid {that God would kill him if he} looked at him, so he covered his face.*

ULT **I am the God of your father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob**

UST I am God, the one that your father, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob all worshiped
(אָנֹכִי֙ אֱלֹהֵ֣י אָבִ֔יךָ אֱלֹהֵ֖י אַבְרָהָ֑ם אֱלֹהֵ֥י יִצְחָ֖ק וֵאלֹהֵ֥י יַעֲקֹ֛ב)

All of these men worshiped the same God. Alternate translation: [the God of your father, of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Jacob]

ULT **I am the God of your father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob**

UST I am God, the one that your father, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob all worshiped
(אָנֹכִי֙ אֱלֹהֵ֣י אָבִ֔יךָ אֱלֹהֵ֖י אַבְרָהָ֑ם אֱלֹהֵ֥י יִצְחָ֖ק וֵאלֹהֵ֥י יַעֲקֹ֛ב)

This a direct quotation. The UST continues the quotation from verse 5 rather than including an additional "he said." This may be more natural in some languages. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate the direct quotation with first-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **your father**

UST the one that your father … all worshiped
(אָבִ֔יךָ)

This could mean (1) "your father," if it means "your father," then it refers to Moses' own father (2) "your ancestor," if it means "your ancestor," then the phrases following it clarify who "your father" refers to: it refers to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. In most cases, it will be best to translate it as "your father," i.e. Amram, Moses' father.

ULT **And Moses hid his face, for he was afraid from staring toward God**
UST Moses was afraid {that God would kill him if he} looked at him, so he covered his face
(וַיַּסְתֵּר מֹשֶׁה פָּנָיו כִּי יָרֵא מֵהַבִּיט אֶל־הָאֱלֹהִים)

Reason: **for he was afraid from staring toward God** Result: **And Moses hid his face** If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. (See also: Exodus 33:20)

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the God of	God
the God of	Abraham
Abraham	Abraham
the God of	Isaac
Isaac	Isaac
and the God of	and Jacob
Jacob	and Jacob
Moses	Moses … he
he was afraid	was afraid {that … } … would kill him
God	God … him

Exodus 3:7

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said, "I have certainly seen the affliction of my people who are in Egypt. And I have heard their cries from the faces of those who oppress him. I surely know his anguish.	*Then Yahweh said, "I have watched closely how badly the Egyptians are treating my people in Egypt. I have heard my people shouting despairingly because of what the slave drivers are making them do. I am most certainly informed about how my people are suffering.*

ULT **And Yahweh said**
UST Then Yahweh said
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָֹה)

After this phrase, a direct quote begins that continues through the end of 3:10. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening first-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **I have certainly seen**
UST I have watched closely
(רָאֹה רָאִיתִי)

The Hebrew practice of verb repetition for intensification cannot be directly translated into English. Here, "see" is repeated in Hebrew. This expresses the intensity, certainty, or clarity of Yahweh's having **seen** how his people were suffering. Use a natural form of strengthening a verb from your language.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the affliction of my people**
UST how badly the Egyptians are treating my people
(אֶת־עֳנִי עַמִּי)

There are two possessives here: (1) "affliction of … people": This is an event-related possessive where the people are the objects of affliction. They are treated badly as slaves. (2) "my people": This one is more difficult as it involves both ownership and the possessive of social relationship. God views his people as his possession, and he is also in relationship with them as their God because they are descended from Abraham, though at this time they may not know God as theirs.

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the affliction of my people who are in Egypt**
UST how badly the Egyptians are treating my people in Egypt
(אֶת־עֳנִ֣י עַמִּ֔י אֲשֶׁ֖ר בְּמִצְרָֽיִם)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **affliction** in another way. Alternate translation: [how my people who are in Egypt are afflicted] or [how the Egyptians afflict my people]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **from the faces of those who oppress him**
UST because of what the slave drivers are making them do
(מִפְּנֵ֣י נֹגְשָׂ֑יו)

Here, **faces** refers to the whole person or the presence of the person(s) who were oppressing the Israelites. If this image is used in your language, you may translate it. If a similar image is used, you may consider using it. If neither is the case, you may omit the word “face” and translate the meaning.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **those who oppress him**
UST what the slave drivers are making them do
(נֹגְשָׂ֑יו)

Alternate translation: [his oppressors]

ULT **surely**
UST most certainly
(כִּ֥י)

Here, **surely** is intensifying the expression of Yahweh’s knowledge. Your translation should express Yahweh’s knowing with certainty or strength.

ULT **those who oppress him … his anguish**
UST what the slave drivers are making them do … about how my people are suffering
(נֹגְשָׂיו & אֶת־מַכְאֹבָיו)

These pronouns, **him** and **his**, refer to the Israelites as a group in the singular. They agree with "people" as a collective noun earlier in this verse. Some languages may have to use plural pronouns. Others may have to match the pronoun's gender to the grammatical gender of the word for "people" in their language. If necessary, change "him" to "them" or change "his" to "hers" or "its" (depending on grammatical gender of "people.") Alternate translation: [those who oppress them … their anguish]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **his anguish**
UST about how my people are suffering
(אֶת־מַכְאֹבָיו)

This is an event-related possessive where the people (as a group: **his**) are the subjects of **anguish**. Your translation should express that they are deeply distressed.

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **his anguish**
UST about how my people are suffering
(אֶת־מַכְאֹבָיו)

It is implied that they are deeply distressed because they are treated badly as slaves. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [his anguish from his slavery]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **his anguish**
UST about how my people are suffering
(אֶת־מַכְאֹבָיו)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **anguish** in another way. Alternate translation: [how distressed they are]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
the affliction of	how badly the Egyptians are treating
are in Egypt	in Egypt

ULT	UST
their cries	my people shouting despairingly
I … know	I am … informed
his anguish	about how my people are suffering

Exodus 3:8

ULT	UST
And I have come down to deliver him from the hand of the Egyptians and to bring him up from that land to a good and wide land, to a land flowing with milk and honey; to the place of the Canaanites and the Hittites and the Amorites and the Perizzites and the Hivites and the Jebusites.	*I am coming down from heaven to rescue them from being slaves to the Egyptians. I will lead them from Egypt to a fertile land with plenty of room. It will be very good for raising livestock and growing crops. The peoples called the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites live there now.*

Note:

Verse 8 contains God's intended result from his acts of seeing and hearing, expressed in both verses 7 and 9. You may need to expressly mark this, for instance by introducing verse 8 with something like "Therefore," and verse 9 with something like "Again, because."

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And I have come down**
UST I am coming down from heaven
(וָאֵרֵד)

God is expressing that he is descending from heaven to earth to intervene. God is always everywhere, but this phrase means that his special attention will be directed to this situation. Use whatever form of come or go is appropriate in your language for this.

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **to deliver him … and to bring him up**
UST to rescue them … I will lead them
(לְהַצִּילוֹ & וּלְהַעֲלֹתוֹ)

Here, **him** refers in the singular to the Israelites as a group. It is agreeing with "people" as a collective noun in 3:6. Some languages may have to use plural pronouns. Others may have to match the pronoun's gender to the grammatical gender of the word for "people" in their language. See what you did in the previous verse.

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **from the hand of**
UST from being slaves
(מִיַּד)

Someone's **hand** is a common Biblical metaphor for power and control. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from the hand of the Egyptians**
UST from being slaves to the Egyptians
(מִיַּד מִצְרַיִם)

This is a possessive where the Egyptians are the subject of **the hand**, which means power. The Egyptians used their power and control to oppress the Israelites. Use a phrase in your language that expresses the idea of a group of people having power.

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **to a good and wide land, to a land flowing with milk and honey**
UST to a fertile land with plenty of room. It will be very good for raising livestock and growing crops
(אֶל־אֶ֣רֶץ טוֹבָ֔ה וּרְחָבָ֑ה אֶל־אֶ֣רֶץ זָבַ֥ת חָלָ֖ב וּדְבָ֑שׁ)

There are multiple levels of parallelism here. First, the statements, **to a good and wide land** and **to a land flowing with milk and honey** are in parallel with each other. Within each of those, **good** and **wide** are in parallel with each other, and **milk** and **honey** are in parallel with each other. Each of these levels is meant to reinforce and expand upon one another. These are not examples of synonymous parallelism, and each part of the statement should be translated.

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **milk and honey**
UST raising livestock and growing crops
(חָלָ֖ב וּדְבָ֑שׁ)

Here, **milk** is a metonym for domestic animals and the food products obtained from them; **honey** is a metonym for the food obtained from growing plants. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. The next note explains further.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **a land flowing with milk and honey**
UST It will be very good for raising livestock and growing crops
(אֶרֶץ זָבַת חָלָב וּדְבָשׁ)

God spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. If this metaphor makes sense in your language, you may translate it. If your language has metaphors that mean a land is good for producing healthy livestock and good crops, you may consider using those. If neither is the case, you may translate the meaning. See UST.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **flowing with**
UST very good for
(זָבַת)

Alternate translation: [full of] or [with an abundance of]

ULT **milk**
UST raising livestock
(חָלָב)

Since milk comes from cows and goats, this represents food produced by livestock. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [food from livestock]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and honey**
UST and growing crops
(וּדְבָשׁ)

Since honey is produced from flowers, this represents food from crops. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [food from crops]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to deliver him	to rescue them
the Egyptians	to the Egyptians
land	from Egypt
good	fertile
a … land	a … land
a land	It will be

ULT	UST
and honey	and growing crops
the Canaanites	the Canaanites
and the Hittites	Hittites
and the Amorites	Amorites
and the Perizzites	Perizzites
and the Hivites	Hivites
and the Jebusites	and Jebusites

Exodus 3:9

ULT	UST
And now, behold, the cry of the sons of Israel has come to me. And moreover, I have seen the oppression with which the Egyptians are oppressing them.	*Truly, I have now heard the Israelites crying. I have also seen how badly the Egyptians treat them.*

Note:

This verse parallels 3:7. Yahweh is restating that the Israelite's plight has gotten his attention. This creates emphasis and connection to what Yahweh will do with what Moses will do as Yahweh's appointed leader. If this repetition would confuse your readers consider a paragraph break at the start of this verse to separate the two parallel statements or use some other strategy of emphasis and connection that is natural in your language.

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **behold**
UST Truly
(הִנֵּה)

This is a term meant to focus the attention of the listener on what the speaker is about to say. If there is not a good way to translate this term in your language, this term can be omitted from the translation, or you can use an alternate translation like "certainly."

Support Reference: Exclamations

ULT **the cry of the sons of Israel has come to me**
UST I have … heard the Israelites crying
(צַעֲקַת בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל בָּאָה אֵלָי)

Here, **the cry** is spoken of as if it were a person who is capable of moving on his own. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I have heard the cries of the people of Israel]

Support Reference: Personification

ULT **I have seen the oppression with which the Egyptians are oppressing them**
UST I have … seen how badly the Egyptians treat them
(רָאִיתִי אֶת־הַלַּחַץ אֲשֶׁר מִצְרַיִם לֹחֲצִים אֹתָם)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **oppression** in another way. Alternate translation: [I have seen how the Egyptians are oppressing them]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the cry of	crying
of Israel	the Israelites
the Egyptians	the Egyptians

Exodus 3:10

ULT	UST
And now go, and I shall send you to Pharaoh, and bring out my people, the sons of Israel, from Egypt.”	*So now I will send you to do this: Go to the king of Egypt and lead my people, the Israelites, out of Egypt.”*

ULT **And now**
UST So now
(וְעַתָּה)

And now functions as a discourse marker expressing logical conclusion. “So then,”

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king of Egypt
Israel	the Israelites
from Egypt	out of Egypt

Exodus 3:11

ULT	UST
And Moses said to God, "Who am I, that I should go to Pharaoh, and that I should bring out the sons of Israel from Egypt?"	*But Moses said to God, "I am not important enough to go to the king in order to bring the Israelites out of Egypt."*

ULT Who am I, that I should go to Pharaoh, and that I should bring out the sons of Israel from Egypt

UST I am not important enough to go to the king in order to bring the Israelites out of Egypt
(מִי אָנֹכִי כִּי אֵלֵךְ אֶל־פַּרְעֹה וְכִי אוֹצִיא אֶת־בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל מִמִּצְרָיִם)

Moses uses this question to tell God that he, Moses, is not the right person for the task. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way.

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
God	God
Pharaoh	the king
Israel	the Israelites
from Egypt	out of Egypt

Exodus 3:12

ULT	UST
And he said, "I shall certainly be with you, and this will be the sign for you that I have sent you: when you bring the people out from Egypt, you all will serve God on this mountain."	*God said, "Even so, you can trust that I will be with you. When you bring my people out of Egypt, all of you will worship me right here on this mountain. That will prove to you that I am the one who sent you to them."*

ULT **you all will serve**
UST all of you will worship
(תַּעַבְדוּן)

If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the sign	will prove
from Egypt	out of Egypt
you all will serve	all of you will worship
God	me

Exodus 3:13

ULT	UST
And Moses said to God, "Behold, I am about to go to the sons of Israel, and I will say to them, 'The God of your fathers has sent me to you.' And they will say to me, 'What is his name?' what should I say to them?"	*Moses said to God, "If I go to the Israelites and say to them, 'The God whom your ancestors worshiped has sent me to you,' they will ask me, 'What is his name?' Then what should I say to them?"*

ULT **Behold, I am about to go to the sons of Israel, and I will say to them, 'The God of your fathers has sent me to you.' And they will say to me, 'What is his name**
UST If I go to the Israelites and say to them, 'The God whom your ancestors worshiped has sent me to you,' they will ask me, 'What is his name
(הִנֵּה אָנֹכִי בָא אֶל־בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל וְאָמַרְתִּי לָהֶם אֱלֹהֵי אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם שְׁלָחַנִי אֲלֵיכֶם וְאָמְרוּ־לִי מַה־שְּׁמוֹ)

Moses presents God with a hypothetical situation here. The three events (**go … say to them … say to me**) are part of one hypothetical event. You should translate this in a way that makes it clear that this is a future, not-yet-real event.

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **Behold**
UST If
(הִנֵּה)

Behold is a term meant to focus the attention of the listener on what the speaker is about to say. In this case, Moses uses it to introduce what he views as a probable future occurrence. Alternate translation: [Now]

ULT **am about to go**
UST go
(בָא)

In your language, use **go** or "come" as makes most sense for Moses' hypothetical action of going from the mountain to where the Israelites are.

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **The God of your fathers has sent me to you**
UST The God whom your ancestors worshiped has sent me to you
(אֱלֹהֵי אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם שְׁלָחַנִי אֲלֵיכֶם)

This is a second-level quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by marking it with second-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation inside a quotation. However, you may also choose to translate it as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [that the God of their fathers has sent me to them]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **The God of your fathers**
UST The God whom your ancestors worshiped
(אֱלֹהֵי אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם)

Here, **fathers** means "ancestors." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your language or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [The God of your ancestors] or [The God whom your ancestors worshiped]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **what should I say to them**
UST Then what should I say to them
(מָה אֹמַר אֲלֵהֶם)

Moses is asking God what he should do as a result of the hypothetical situation he presented (see earlier note). Use a natural form in your language for introducing a situation that could happen. Alternate translation: [If that happens, what should I say to them]

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
God	God
Israel	the Israelites
The God of	The God

Exodus 3:14

ULT	UST
And God said to Moses, "I AM WHO I AM." And he said, "You shall speak this way to the sons of Israel, 'I AM sent me to you.'"	*God replied to Moses, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell the Israelites that the God whose name means 'I AM' sent you to them."*

ULT **I AM WHO I AM**
UST I AM WHO I AM
(אֶהְיֶה אֲשֶׁר אֶהְיֶה)

This is God's response to Moses' question about God's name. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: [God said to Moses, "Tell them that God says his name is 'I AM WHO I AM.'"]

ULT **I AM WHO I AM**
UST I AM WHO I AM
(אֶהְיֶה אֲשֶׁר אֶהְיֶה)

This could mean: (1) this whole sentence is God's name or (2) God is not telling his name but something about himself. By saying this, God is teaching that he is eternal; he has always lived and always will live.

ULT **I AM … I AM … I AM**
UST I AM … I AM … the God whose name means 'I AM
(אֶהְיֶה & אֶהְיֶה & אֶהְיֶה)

Languages that do not have an equivalent to the verb "am" may need to render this as "I LIVE" or "I EXIST."

ULT **And he said**
UST Tell … that
(וַיֹּאמֶר)

This indicates that God is still speaking. It may make more sense to omit this in some languages.

ULT **I AM sent me to you**
UST the God whose name means ‘I AM’ sent you to them
(אֶהְיֶה שְׁלָחַנִי אֲלֵיכֶם)

This is a second-level quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by marking it with second-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation inside a quotation. However, you may also choose to translate it as an indirect quotation, as in the UST.

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Moses	Moses
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 3:15

ULT	UST
And God also said to Moses, "You shall speak this way to the sons of Israel: 'Yahweh, the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, sent me to you. This is my name forever, and this is my memorial from generation to generation.'	*God also said to Moses, "You must say this to the Israelites, 'Yahweh has sent me to you. He is the God Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and your other ancestors worshiped. Yahweh is my eternal name, and this is the name by which people living at any time must remember me.'*

ULT And God also said to Moses
UST God also said to Moses
(וַיֹּאמֶר עֹוד אֱלֹהִים אֶל־מֹשֶׁה)

As God is still speaking, it may make more sense to omit this in some languages.

ULT to Moses
UST to Moses
(אֶל־מֹשֶׁה)

After this phrase, a direct quotation begins that continues until the end of chapter 3 at verse 22. This section contains four levels of quotations as God tells Moses to tell the Israelite elders a specific message from God. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening first-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **Yahweh, the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, sent me to you. This is my name forever, and this is my memorial from generation to generation**
UST Yahweh has sent me to you. He is the God Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and your other ancestors worshiped. Yahweh is my eternal name, and this is the name by which people living at any time must remember me
(יְהוָ֗ה אֱלֹהֵי֙ אֲבֹתֵיכֶ֔ם אֱלֹהֵ֥י אַבְרָהָ֖ם אֱלֹהֵ֣י יִצְחָ֑ק וֵאלֹהֵ֣י יַעֲקֹ֔ב שְׁלָחַ֥נִי אֲלֵיכֶ֖ם זֶ֣ה־שְּׁמִ֣י לְעֹלָ֑ם וְזֶ֖ה זִכְרִ֥י לְדֹ֖ר דֹּֽר׃)

This is a second-level quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening second-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation within a quotation. It may be possible to translate it as an indirect quotation, but you will need to be careful to correctly change the pronoun persons. Alternate translation: [You must tell the Israelites that Yahweh, the God of their fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, sent you to them. This is his name forever, and this is his memorial from generation to generation.]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **the God of your fathers**
UST He is the God … and your other ancestors worshiped
(אֱלֹהֵי֙ אֲבֹתֵיכֶ֔ם)

Here, **fathers** means "ancestors." Alternate translation: [the God of your ancestors] or [the God whom your ancestors worshiped]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **from generation to generation**
UST people living at any time
(לְדֹ֖ר דֹּֽר׃)

The repetition of **generation** is indicating "to each and every generation" which means "for all people at all times." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language.

Support Reference: Merism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Moses	Moses
Israel	the Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh
the God of	He is the God
the God of	Abraham

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
the God of	Isaac
Isaac	Isaac
and the God of	Jacob
Jacob	Jacob
forever	eternal
from generation	people living at any time
to generation	people living at any time

Exodus 3:16

ULT	UST
Go and gather the elders of Israel, and say to them, 'Yahweh, the God of your fathers, appeared to me, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, to say, "I have certainly attended to you and what is being done to you in Egypt,	*Go call a meeting with all the Israelite leaders. Tell them, 'Yahweh appeared to me. He is the God Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and your other ancestors worshiped. He said: "I have come down to carefully watch {and do something about} what the Egyptians are doing to you.*

ULT **Yahweh**
UST Yahweh
(יְהוָֹה) (3:16-17)

This begins a second-level quotation that continues until the end of 3:17. It contains a third-level quotation that begins at "I have certainly" and also continues to the end of verse 17. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening second-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation within a quotation. The closing marks for both the second and third-level quotations should not occur until the end of verse 17.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **the God of your fathers**
UST He is the God … and your other ancestors worshiped
(אֱלֹהֵי אֲבֹתֵיכֶם)

Here, **fathers** means "ancestors." Alternate translation: [the God of your ancestors] or [the God whom your ancestors worshiped]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob**
UST Abraham, Isaac, Jacob
(אַבְרָהָם יִצְחָק וְיַעֲקֹב)

Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob were three of the Israelites' ancestors. They all worshiped the same God.

ULT **I have certainly attended**
UST I have come down to carefully watch {and do something … }
(פָּקֹד פָּקַדְתִּי)

This begins a third-level quotation that continues until the end of 3:17. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening third-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation within a quotation that is within a quotation. The closing marks for both the second-level and third-level quotations should not occur until the end of verse 17.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **I have certainly attended**
UST I have come down to carefully watch {and do something … }
(פָּקֹד פָּקַדְתִּי)

The word translated **attended** often means God is coming to take action. Translate this phrase in a way that communicates God's focused, caring observation.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **I have certainly attended**
UST I have come down to carefully watch {and do something … }
(פָּקֹד פָּקַדְתִּי)

Here, **attended** is repeated in Hebrew. The Hebrew practice of verb repetition for intensification cannot be directly translated into English. This expresses the intensity, certainty, or clarity of Yahweh's having **attended to** how his people were suffering. Use a natural form of strengthening a verb from your language.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to you**
UST I have come down to … watch {and do something … }
(אֶתְכֶם)

The word **you** refers to the people of Israel. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **what is being done**
UST { … about} what … are doing
(הֶעָשׂוּי)

The focus of this passive is the mistreatment being **done to** the Israelites, not on who is doing it. In fact, **in Egypt** further dissociates the actors from this sentence. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language, as in the UST.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **in Egypt**
UST the Egyptians
(בְּמִצְרָיִם)

The phrase **in Egypt** is a metonym for the Egyptian oppressors. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [by the Egyptians]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and gather	call a meeting
the elders of	with all the … leaders
Israel	Israelite
Yahweh	Yahweh
the God of	He is the God
the God of	Abraham
Abraham	Abraham
Isaac	Isaac
and Jacob	Jacob
in Egypt	the Egyptians

Exodus 3:17

ULT	UST
and I said, ‘I will bring you up from affliction in Egypt to the land of the Canaanites and the Hittites and the Amorites and the Perizzites and the Hivites and the Jebusites, to a land flowing with milk and honey.’”’	*I promise that I will rescue you from the Egyptians who treat you badly. I will take you to the land where the peoples called the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites live now. The land is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops.”’*

Note:

If you are using direct quotations, at the end of this verse you should have three closing markers. In English, it looks like **’ ” ’** (without spaces).

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **I will bring you up from affliction in Egypt to the land of the Canaanites and the Hittites and the Amorites and the Perizzites and the Hivites and the Jebusites, to a land flowing with milk and honey**

UST I will rescue you from the Egyptians who treat you badly. I will take you to the land where the peoples called the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites live now. The land is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops

(אַעֲלֶה אֶתְכֶם֙ מֵעֳנִ֣י מִצְרַ֔יִם אֶל־אֶ֖רֶץ הַֽכְּנַעֲנִ֑י וְהַֽחִתִּ֣י וְהָאֱמֹרִ֗י וְהַפְּרִזִּי֙ וְהַֽחִוִּ֣י וְהַיְבוּסִ֔י אֶל־אֶ֕רֶץ זָבַ֖ת חָלָ֥ב וּדְבָֽשׁ)

This is a fourth-level quotation. It should be marked in some manner that distinguishes it from the outer three levels. Alternatively, it can be translated as an indirect quotation, as in the UST.

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **I will bring … up**

UST I will rescue … I will take

(אַעֲלֶה)

Regardless of the geographic realities, to **bring up** does not primarily have a literal meaning. Rather, it means to bring the Israelites into a better situation. God promised to bring them up from their low status as slaves to a place where they would be the masters of a good land. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your language.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from affliction**
UST from … treat you badly
(מֵעֳנִי)

See how you translated **affliction** in 3:7. Alternate translation: [from being afflicted]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **milk and honey**
UST for raising livestock and growing crops
(חָלָב וּדְבָשׁ)

Here, **milk** is a metonym for domestic animals and the food products obtained from them; **honey** is a metonym for the food obtained from growing plants. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. The next note explains further.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **a land flowing with milk and honey**
UST The land is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops
(אֶרֶץ זָבַת חָלָב וּדְבָשׁ)

God spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. See how you translated this in Exodus 3:8. Alternate translation: [a land that is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops] or [a land where milk and honey flow]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **flowing with**
UST is excellent
(זָבַת)

Alternate translation: [full of] or [with an abundance of]

ULT **milk**
UST for raising livestock
(חָלָב)

Since milk comes from cows and goats, this represents food produced by livestock. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [food from livestock]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and honey**
UST and growing crops
(וּדְבָ֑שׁ)

Since honey is produced from flowers, this represents food from crops. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [food from crops]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from affliction	from … treat you badly
in Egypt	the Egyptians who
the land of	the land where the peoples called … live now
the Canaanites	the Canaanites
and the Hittites	Hittites
and the Amorites	Amorites
and the Perizzites	Perizzites
and the Hivites	Hivites
and the Jebusites	and Jebusites
a land	The land
and honey	and growing crops

Exodus 3:18

ULT	UST
And they will listen to your voice. And you and the elders of Israel will go to the king of Egypt, and you all will say to him, 'Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, has met with us. And now please let us go a journey of three days into the wilderness, and let us sacrifice to Yahweh, our God.'	*The leaders will do what you say. Then you and the leaders will go to the king of Egypt, and you will say to him, 'Yahweh, the God whom we Hebrews worship, has made a special visit to us. Please allow us to travel for a few days to a place in the wilderness in order that there we may offer sacrifices to Yahweh, the God we worship.'*

ULT **And they will listen to your voice**
UST The leaders will do what you say
(וְשָׁמְעוּ לְקֹלֶךָ)

Listen often means "hear and do/obey." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your language. Alternate translation: [And they will pay attention to your voice]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to your voice … you**
UST what you say … you
(לְקֹלֶךָ & אַתָּה)

Here, **your** and **you** refers to Moses.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to your voice**
UST what you say
(לְקֹלֶךָ)

This phrase means the elders will listen to the message Moses brings from God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to your message] or [to my message which you tell them]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **and the elders of Israel**
UST and the leaders
(וְזִקְנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל)

This is a possessive of social relationship. Alternate translation: [elders in charge of the Israelites]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **Israel**
UST and the leaders
(יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Israel is a collective noun that refers to all the Israelites. If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. Alternate translation: [the Israelites] or [the Israelite people]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **Egypt**
UST the king of Egypt
(מִצְרַיִם)

Here, **Egypt** refers to the Egyptian nation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the Egyptians]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and you all will say**
UST and you will say
(וַאֲמַרְתֶּם)

If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **with us … let us go … and let us sacrifice**
UST to us … allow us to travel … in order that there we may offer sacrifices
(עָלֵינוּ & נֵלֵכָה & וְנִזְבְּחָה)

These instances of **us** are exclusive; they include Moses, the elders, and all the Israelites, but exclude the king of Egypt. Your language may require you to mark these forms.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **three**
UST for a few days
(שְׁלֹשֶׁת)

Alternate translation: [3]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and the elders of	and the leaders
Israel	and the leaders
the king of	the king of Egypt

ULT	UST
Egypt	the king of Egypt
Yahweh	Yahweh
the God of	the God whom we Hebrews worship
the Hebrews	the God whom we Hebrews worship
please	Please
days	for a few days
into the wilderness	to a place in the wilderness
and let us sacrifice	in order that there we may offer sacrifices
to Yahweh	to Yahweh
our God	the God we worship

Exodus 3:19

ULT	UST
And I know that the king of Egypt will not permit you to go, and not with a strong hand.	*But I know that the king of Egypt will not allow you to go; not even by force.*

ULT **and not with a strong hand**
UST not even by force
(וְלֹא בְיָד חֲזָקָה)

The word **hand** is a metonym for the power of the owner of the hand. There are two further difficulties: (1) Whose hand (power) is being referred to, (2) does the negative mean "not unless" or "not even?" Possible meanings include: (1) "only if he sees that he has no power to do anything else," where the **hand** belongs to Pharaoh (2) "only if I force him to let you go," where the **hand** belongs to Yahweh, taking "not unless" for the negative (3) "not even if I force him to let you go," where the **hand** belongs to Yahweh, taking "not even" for the negative

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	know
the king of	the king
Egypt	of Egypt

Exodus 3:20

ULT	UST
And I shall send out my hand, and I shall strike Egypt with all my wonders, which I shall do within him. And after that, he will send you out.	*So I will act very powerfully, and I will hurt the Egyptians with very bad things that only I can do. Then he will chase you away.*

ULT And I shall send out
UST So I will act … powerfully … hurt
(וְשָׁלַחְתִּי)

God says this will be a result of the king of Egypt's stubbornness. Alternate translation: [Therefore, I will send out]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT And I shall send out my hand
UST So I will act … powerfully … hurt
(וְשָׁלַחְתִּי אֶת־יָדִי)

Here, **hand** refers to God's power. Alternate translation: [I will use my strength]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT Egypt
UST the Egyptians
(אֶת־מִצְרַיִם)

Egypt refers to both the land and the people group, and then, by extension, to Pharaoh as well.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT Egypt … within him
UST very … and I will … the Egyptians with very bad things that only I can do
(אֶת־מִצְרַיִם & בְּקִרְבּוֹ)

Here, **him** refers to Egypt as a collective.

ULT my wonders
UST very … and I will … with very bad things that only I can do
(נִפְלְאֹתַי)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **wonders** in another way. Alternate translation: [my amazing acts]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **And after that**
UST Then
(וְאַחֲרֵי־כֵן)

Here the sequential nature of these happenings is emphasized. Consider using a stronger sequential connective term than usual here.

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT **he will send**
UST he will chase … away
(יְשַׁלַּח)

Here, **he** refers to the Pharaoh, the king of Egypt.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **you out**
UST you
(אֶתְכֶם)

Here, **you** refers to the Israelites. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egypt	the Egyptians
my wonders	very … and I will … with very bad things that only I can do

Exodus 3:21

ULT	UST
And I shall give this people favor in the eyes of the Egyptians, and it will be that when you go, you will not go emptily.	*When this happens, I will cause the Egyptians to be willing to help you Hebrews so that, when you leave Egypt, you will not go out like poor slaves.*

ULT **favor in the eyes of the Egyptians**
UST the Egyptians to be willing to help
(אֶת־חֵן בְּעֵינֵי מִצְרָיִם)

In the eyes of the Egyptians is an idiom for the Egyptian's feelings. **Favor** means those feelings are positive. Taken together, this means that when the Egyptians see the Israelites (Hebrews) leaving Egypt, they will gladly help them (because they want them to leave so badly due to the Egyptians suffering under God's judgment). If your language has the same or a similar idiom, you can translate or use it. Otherwise, you can translate the meaning.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **in the eyes of the Egyptians**
UST the Egyptians
(בְּעֵינֵי מִצְרָיִם)

This is a part-whole possessive. Also, if your language uses a specific form of the possessive for things one cannot lose, it would be appropriate to use that form here.

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **this people**
UST you Hebrews
(הָעָם־הַזֶּה)

Alternate translation: [you]

ULT **when you go, you will … go**
UST when you leave Egypt, you will … go out
(תֵּלֵכוּן & תֵּלֵכוּ)

If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **when you go, you will … go**
UST when you leave Egypt, you will … go out
(תֵּלֵכוּן & תֵּלֵכוּ)

Alternate translation: [leave] or [go out] or [come out]

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **not … emptily**
UST not … like poor slaves
(לֹא & רֵיקָם)

The double negative, **not … emptily** is used to mean "full." If this double negative would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [go with many things]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **you will not go emptily**
UST you will not go out like poor slaves
(לֹא תֵלְכוּ רֵיקָם)

Here Yahweh uses a figure of speech that expresses a strong positive meaning by using a negative word together with a word that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If this is confusing in your language, you can express the meaning positively. Alternate translation: [you will go with your hands full of good things] or [you will go with many valuable things]

Support Reference: Litotes

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
favor	to be willing to help
the Egyptians	the Egyptians

Exodus 3:22

ULT	UST
And a woman will ask from her neighbor and from one sojourning in her house for items of silver and items of gold and clothing. And you will put them on your sons and on your daughters, and you will plunder the Egyptians.”	*At that time, each Hebrew woman will ask the women living or visiting nearby for things made from silver and gold and for clothing. You will be able to have your children wear the things they give you. That is how you will take everything from the Egyptians.”*

ULT **and from one sojourning in her house**
UST or visiting
(וּמִגָּרַת בֵּיתָהּ)

The word, **sojourning** means living somewhere other than one’s native land, usually temporarily. It is unclear both who the sojourning (visiting) women are and in whose house they are sojourning, leaving several possibilities. Most translations which make a decision about who they are identify both the temporary resident and her host home as Egyptian. This makes sense as the Israelites will be plundering the Egyptians. If it is possible to leave this ambiguous in your translation, that would be best.

ULT **And you will put them on your sons and on your daughters, and you will plunder**
UST You will be able to have your children wear the things they give you. That is how you will take everything from
(וְשַׂמְתֶּם עַל־בְּנֵיכֶם וְעַל־בְּנֹתֵיכֶם וְנִצַּלְתֶּם)

Each of these is a plural **you**. If your language uses different forms of “you” depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural

ULT **the Egyptians**
UST the Egyptians
(אֶת־מִצְרָיִם)

After this phrase, the direct quote of Yahweh’s word which started in 3:15 ends. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with a closing first-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the end of a quotation.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from her neighbor	the women living … nearby
in her house	or visiting

ULT	UST
silver	for things made from silver and gold
gold	for things made from silver and gold
the Egyptians	the Egyptians

Exodus 4

Exodus 4 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–17: Moses hesitates to obey so Yahweh gives Moses signs to prove his commission
- v. 18–28: Moses goes back to Egypt
- v. 29–31: Moses and Aaron meet with the Israelite leaders and tell them what Yahweh said

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Quotations

- There is a difficult transition between 4:4 and 4:5 because the quotation stops in the middle to inject a bit of narrative. When it resumes in 4:5, the sentence seems incomplete (even if merged directly with the quotation fragment in 4:4). (See: Ellipsis)
- Yahweh's instructions to Moses are complex, and there are up to four levels of quotations in this chapter. Translators will need to decide if some of these need to become indirect quotations (if that is possible in their language) and take great care to use the proper quotation markings in the proper locations.

Order of events

- The order of events is not always clear. In 4:14 Yahweh tells Moses that Aaron is coming to meet him, but Yahweh telling Aaron to go meet Moses in the wilderness is not recorded until 4:27.
- The timing of the events in 4:18–27, especially verses 18–19 and 27 in relation to the rest of the events of the chapter, is unclear.

Thus says Yahweh

The first of over 400 occurrences throughout the Old Testament of a standard phrase used to introduce direct, authoritative instruction from Yahweh occurs in 4:22. It occurs ten times in the book of Exodus; nine of these are between chapters 4–11. It would be good for your team to have a standard way to translate this that makes it clear that the words that come next are directly from God. If your language has a standard way of introducing a new message from your leader that alerts the hearers that these are the words of the leader, that would be a good phrase to consider.

Yahweh's attempt to kill someone

The encounter recorded from 4:24 to 4:26 is one of the strangest and most difficult passages in the entire book. Difficulties include:

- To whom do the pronouns refer? Masculine pronouns are used throughout the section, but there are two possible antecedents, Moses (who is not named in the narrative) and Zipporah's son (who was presumably also Moses' son, but this is how he is referred to in this text. For why, see below on why Yahweh did this). Most commentators believe the pronouns refer to Moses.
- Circumcision is described in fairly graphic detail. Different cultures will need to approach this differently. Some may have terms for circumcision, while others may be comfortable translating mostly literally, and others will need to use euphemisms or other strategies to translate. (See: circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision)
- The meaning of the phrase **a bridegroom of blood** (ULT) is unknown.
- Why did Yahweh attack Moses? Many commentators conclude that Moses had neglected to circumcise one of his sons because it displeased Zipporah, and Yahweh was holding Moses responsible before he returned to lead the Israelites (who should have been circumcised). When Zipporah repented by circumcising the son herself and touching the foreskin to Moses' feet, Yahweh relents. These conclusions should help inform translation but should not be made explicit in the text.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Children of God

This chapter introduces the concept that Israel, the people group, is the chosen people of God and God's firstborn son. (See: chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect; and people of God; and firstborn)

Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart

Scholars are divided over how to understand this statement. There is debate over how Pharaoh has an active or passive role in the hardening of his own heart. Translators should simply follow the text. In Exodus 4–14 there are ten statements that Yahweh hardens Pharaoh's heart, and ten statements that Pharaoh hardens his own heart. (See: Active or Passive)

Exodus 4:1

ULT	UST
And Moses answered and said, "But look, they will not believe me, and they will not listen to my voice; for they will say, 'Yahweh has not appeared to you.'"	*Moses replied to God, "They will completely disbelieve me and ignore me because they will think, 'Yahweh did not appear to you.'"*

ULT **And Moses answered and said**
UST Moses replied to God
(וַיַּעַן מֹשֶׁה וַיֹּאמַר)

Here, **answered and said** is a Hebrew expression which does not convey any extra information. Unless your language naturally uses a similar structure, it is better to translate one verb and omit the other. Alternate translation: [Moses answered]

ULT **But look, they will not believe me, and they will not listen to my voice; for they will say, 'Yahweh has not appeared to you**
UST They will completely disbelieve me and ignore me because they will think, 'Yahweh did not appear to you
(וְהֵן לֹא־יַאֲמִינוּ לִי וְלֹא יִשְׁמְעוּ בְקֹלִי כִּי יֹאמְרוּ לֹא־נִרְאָה אֵלֶיךָ יְהוָה)

This is a direct quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by marking it with first-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. There may be other quotations in this chapter; they will be marked by the same punctuation, but they will not have their own notes unless there is something unique about them.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **to my voice**
UST me
(בְּקֹלִי)

See 3:18. Alternate translation: [to what I say]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Yahweh has not appeared to you**
UST Yahweh did not appear to you
(לֹא־נִרְאָה אֵלֶיךָ יְהוָה)

This is a second-level quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by marking it with second-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation within a quotation. However, you could translate it as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [that Yahweh has not appeared to me]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **But look**
UST completely
(וְהִנֵּה)

This is a term meant to focus the attention of the listener on what the speaker is about to say. If there is not a good way to translate this term in your language, this term can be omitted from the translation, or you can use an alternate translation like “Listen to me.”

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses replied to God
they will … believe	They will … disbelieve
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 4:2

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to him, “What is that in your hand?” And he said, “A staff.”	*Yahweh said to him, “What is that in your hand?” Moses answered, “A staff.”*

> ULT **to him … And he said**
> UST to him … Moses answered
> (אֵלָיו & וַיֹּאמֶר)

Here, **him** and **he** refer to Moses. Alternate translation: [to Moses … And Moses said]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
A staff	A staff

Exodus 4:3

ULT	UST
And he said, “Throw it to the ground.” And he threw it to the ground, and it became a snake. And Moses fled from its face.	*Yahweh said, “Throw it down on the ground!” So Moses threw the staff on the ground. It became a snake and Moses ran away from it.*

ULT from its face
UST from it
(מִפָּנָיו)

Here, “face” represents the snake itself. Alternate translation: [from the snake]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to the ground	on the ground
to the ground	on the ground
a snake	a snake
Moses	Moses

Exodus 4:4

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Reach out your hand and take it by its tail"—and he reached out his hand and he caught it to him, and it became a staff in his palm—	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Pick up the snake by its tail." So Moses picked up the snake by the tail, and it became a staff in his hand again.*

ULT and take it by its tail
UST Pick up the snake by its tail
(וְאֶחֹז בִּזְנָבוֹ)

Alternate translation: [and pick it up by the tail] or [and grasp it by the tail]

ULT Reach out your hand and take it by its tail
UST Pick up the snake by its tail
(שְׁלַח יָדְךָ וְאֶחֹז בִּזְנָבוֹ)

This direct quotation is interrupted by Moses obeying Yahweh. This is probably a tightly ordered sequence of events where Yahweh paused and then continued speaking immediately after Moses obeyed. The quote resumes in 4:5, and there is more discussion there about how to translate the quotation resumption.

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT and it became a staff
UST and it became a staff … again
(וַיְהִי לְמַטֶּה)

Alternate translation: [and it turned into a rod] or [and it changed into a staff]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
a staff	a staff

Exodus 4:5

ULT	UST
“in order to cause them to believe that Yahweh appeared to you, the God of their fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.”	*{Yahweh said,} “{Do the same thing in front of the Israelite elders} in order that they may believe that I, Yahweh, the God that Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and your other ancestors worshiped, truly appeared to you.”*

ULT **in order to cause them to believe that Yahweh appeared to you, the God of their fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob**
UST {Yahweh said,} “{Do the same thing in front of the Israelite elders} in order that they may believe that I, Yahweh, the God that Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and your other ancestors worshiped, truly appeared to you
(לְמַעַן יַאֲמִינוּ כִּי־נִרְאָה אֵלֶיךָ יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵי אֲבֹתָם אֱלֹהֵי אַבְרָהָם אֱלֹהֵי יִצְחָק וֵאלֹהֵי יַעֲקֹב)

This continues the direct quotation from the first part of 4:4. It may be more natural to reorganize verses four and five to keep the quote together. If you rearrange like this, Moses picking up the snake/staff should come after the full quotation. However, it is better to do something similar to the UST, which restates that Yahweh is speaking and provides some implied directives from Yahweh to make a complete sentence.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **in order to cause them to believe that Yahweh appeared to you, the God of their fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob**
UST {Yahweh said,} “{Do the same thing in front of the Israelite elders} in order that they may believe that I, Yahweh, the God that Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and your other ancestors worshiped, truly appeared to you
(לְמַעַן יַאֲמִינוּ כִּי־נִרְאָה אֵלֶיךָ יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵי אֲבֹתָם אֱלֹהֵי אַבְרָהָם אֱלֹהֵי יִצְחָק וֵאלֹהֵי יַעֲקֹב)

This quote is not a complete sentence; the UST provides a clarification. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words from the context.

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **cause them to believe … their fathers**
UST {Yahweh said,} “{Do the same thing in front of the Israelite elders} in order that they may believe … and your other ancestors worshiped
(יַאֲמִינוּ & אֲבֹתָם)

Here, **them** and **their** refer either to the Israelites or to the Israelite elders. God had instructed Moses to gather and speak to the elders; if you make this participant explicit, elders is a better option.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to you**
UST to you
(אֵלֶיךָ)

Here, **you** refers to Moses.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the God of their fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob**
UST the God that Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and your other ancestors worshiped
(אֱלֹהֵי אֲבֹתָם אֱלֹהֵי אַבְרָהָם אֱלֹהֵי יִצְחָק וֵאלֹהֵי יַעֲקֹב)

Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob were three of their ancestors. They all worshiped the same God.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cause them to believe	{Yahweh said,} "{Do the same thing in front of the Israelite elders} in order that they may believe
Yahweh	I, Yahweh
of … the God	the God that
Abraham	Abraham
the God of	Isaac
Isaac, and	Isaac
the God of	Jacob
Jacob	Jacob
the God of … the God of	the God that Abraham

Exodus 4:6

ULT	UST
And Yahweh also said to him, "Put your hand in your bosom." And he put his hand in his bosom. And he brought it out, and behold, his hand was being struck with a skin disease like snow.	*Yahweh gave Moses another instruction: "Put your hand on your chest inside your robe." Moses put his hand into his robe. When he brought his hand out, it had a disease that made the skin look as white as snow.*

ULT **and behold**
UST had
(וְהִנֵּה)

This word, **behold**, is used to create an exclamation, showing surprise.

Support Reference: Exclamations

ULT **like snow**
UST look as white as snow
(כַּשָּׁלֶג)

The word **like** (ULT) or "as" (UST) here is used to compare how Moses' hand looked. You may not have a word for snow in your language. If so, consider an alternative that describes something very white. You may need to make the whiteness explicit. Alternate translation: [that made it look white like wool] or [that made it look white like the sand on the beach]

Support Reference: Simile

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 4:7

ULT	UST
And he said, “Return your hand into your bosom.” And he returned his hand into his bosom, and he brought it out from his bosom, and behold, it was restored like his flesh.	*Then Yahweh said, “Put your hand in your robe again.” Moses put his hand back inside his robe. This time when he brought it out, amazingly, the skin on his hand looked like the rest of his skin again.*

ULT **and behold**
UST amazingly
(וְהִנֵּה)

This word is used to create an exclamation, showing surprise.

Support Reference: Exclamations

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
it was restored	again

Exodus 4:8

ULT	UST
“And it will be, if they do not believe you, and they do not listen to the voice of the first sign, then they will believe the voice of the following sign.	*{Yahweh said,} “{You can do that in front of the Israelite people, too.} And if they do not believe you or listen to you after seeing the first miracle, they will believe you when you perform the second miracle.*

ULT **and they do not listen to the voice of the first sign, then they will believe the voice of the following sign**

UST or listen to you after seeing the first miracle, they will believe you when you perform the second miracle

(וְלֹא יִשְׁמְעוּ לְקֹל הָאֹת הָרִאשׁוֹן וְהֶאֱמִינוּ לְקֹל הָאֹת הָאַחֲרוֹן)

Here each **sign** is spoken of as if it had a **voice** with which it could speak. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning plainly that makes explicit that the signs are meant to be proof that God sent Moses. Alternate translation: [and are not convinced that God has appeared to you by seeing the first sign, then they will be convinced by seeing the second sign.]

Support Reference: Personification

ULT **they do … believe … they do … listen … then they will believe**

UST they do … believe … listen … they will believe

(יַאֲמִינוּ & יִשְׁמְעוּ & וְהֶאֱמִינוּ)

Here, **they** refers either to the Israelites or to the Israelite elders. God had instructed Moses to gather and speak to the elders; if you make this participant explicit, elders is the better option, but be sure to do the same as you did in 4:5.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **they do not believe … then they will believe**

UST they do not believe … they will believe

(לֹא יַאֲמִינוּ & וְהֶאֱמִינוּ)

Alternate translation: [they do not acknowledge … then they will acknowledge] or [they do not accept … then they will accept]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
they do … believe	they do … believe
the … sign	after seeing … miracle
the … sign	when you perform … miracle

Exodus 4:9

ULT	UST
And it will be, if they do not believe even these two signs, and they do not listen to your voice, then you shall take from the water of the river and you shall pour it on the dry land. And it will happen, the water which you take from the river, that it will become blood on the dry land."	*But if they do not believe you or listen to what you say even after you show them these two miracles, get some water from the Nile River, and pour it on the dry ground. When you do that, the water that you pour on the dry ground will become blood."*

ULT **they do … believe … they do … listen**
UST they do … believe you … listen
(יַאֲמִ֣ינוּ & יִשְׁמְע֔וּן)

Here, **they** refers either to the Israelites or to the Israelite elders. God had instructed Moses to gather and speak to the elders; if you make this participant explicit, elders is the better option, but be sure to do the same as you did in 4:5.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to your voice**
UST to what you say
(לְקֹלֶ֑ךָ)

See 3:18. Alternate translation: [to what you say]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
they do … believe	they do … believe you
signs	miracles
the river	the Nile River
the river	that you pour

Exodus 4:10

ULT	UST
And Moses said to Yahweh, "Oh my Lord, I am not a man of words; not since yesterday, nor since three days ago, nor since you spoke to your servant. For I am heavy of mouth and heavy of tongue."	*Then Moses said to Yahweh, "But Lord, I am not good at speaking to people. I have never been and you talking to me has not made me better. I speak slowly and never know what to say."*

ULT **Oh**
UST But
(בִּי)

This word is used by a speaker to beg a superior to allow him to speak. Alternate translation: [Please]

ULT **I am not a man of words; not since yesterday, nor since three days ago**
UST I am not good at speaking to people. I have never been
(לֹא אִישׁ דְּבָרִים אָנֹכִי גַּם מִתְּמוֹל גַּם מִשִּׁלְשֹׁם)

Alternate translation: [I have never been an excellent speaker, not now, not before]

ULT **a man of words**
UST good at speaking to people
(אִישׁ דְּבָרִים)

This expression means "a man who uses words well," in other words, an eloquent man who can speak well and convincingly.

ULT **not since yesterday, nor since three days ago**
UST I have never been
(גַּם מִתְּמוֹל גַּם מִשִּׁלְשֹׁם)

These phrases simply mean "in the past." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language.

Support Reference: Merism

ULT **your servant**
UST me
(עַבְדֶּךָ)

Moses refers to himself as God's servant to lower his status before God (and perhaps by doing so to make his argument of inability stronger). If this is confusing in your language, you can make who he means plain. Alternate translation: [me, your servant]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **heavy of mouth and heavy of tongue**
UST speak slowly and never know what to say
(כְּבַד־פֶּה וּכְבַד לָשׁוֹן)

These phrases mean basically the same thing. Moses uses them to emphasize that he is not a good speaker. If your language does not use repetition in this way, you can combine these phrases. Alternate translation: [not good at public speaking]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **tongue**
UST and never know what to say
(לָשׁוֹן)

Here, **tongue** refers to Moses' ability to speak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [speech]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
my Lord	Lord
your servant	me
tongue	and never know what to say

Exodus 4:11

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to him, "Who put a mouth in mankind, or who makes a mute or a deaf or a seeing or a blind? Is it not I, Yahweh?	*Then Yahweh said to him, "Do not forget that I, Yahweh, make people's mouths! I make people unable to speak, or unable to hear, or able to see or not to see!*

ULT **Who put a mouth in mankind**
UST that … make people's mouths
(מִי שָׂם פֶּה לָאָדָם)

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he is the Creator who makes it possible for people to speak. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [Is it not I, Yahweh, who created the human mouth and the ability to speak]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **who makes a mute or a deaf or a seeing or a blind**
UST make people unable to speak, or unable to hear, or able to see or not to see
(מִי־יָשׂוּם אִלֵּם אוֹ חֵרֵשׁ אוֹ פִּקֵּחַ אוֹ עִוֵּר)

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he is the one who decides if people can speak and hear, and if they can see. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [make people able to speak or hear or to see or to be blind]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Is it not I, Yahweh**
UST Do not forget … I, Yahweh … I
(הֲלֹא אָנֹכִי יְהוָה)

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he alone makes these decisions. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [I, Yahweh, am the one who does this!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 4:12

ULT	UST
And now go! And I shall be with your mouth, and I shall teach you what you will speak.”	*So go now, and I will help you speak, and I will tell you what to say.”*

> ULT **And I shall be with your mouth**
> UST and I will help you speak
> (וְאָנֹכִי אֶֽהְיֶה עִם־פִּ֔יךָ)

Here, **mouth** refers to Moses’ ability to speak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [I will give you the ability to speak]

Support Reference: Metonymy

Exodus 4:13

ULT	UST
And he said, “Oh my Lord, please send by a hand you send.”	*But Moses replied, “Oh Lord, I ask you, please choose anyone else to send!”*

ULT Oh
UST Oh
(בִּ֥י)

This word is used by a speaker to beg a superior to allow him to speak. See what you did in 4:10. Alternate translation: [Please]

ULT please send by a hand you send
UST I ask you, please choose anyone else to send
(שְׁלַח־נָ֖א בְּיַד־תִּשְׁלָֽח)

In translating this phrase, it is important to make clear that Moses is asking Yahweh to send someone else. Here he is not accepting Yahweh’s commission.

ULT by a hand
UST choose anyone else
(בְּיַד)

This phrase means “by a person.” The figure is of a person taking Yahweh’s message in his hand to the Israelites and Pharaoh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the meaning plainly.

Support Reference: Synecdoche

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
my Lord	Lord

Exodus 4:14

ULT	UST
And the nose of Yahweh burned at Moses, and he said, "Is not Aaron, the Levite, your brother? I know that he can speak well. And even more, behold, he is coming to meet you, and he will see you and he will be glad in his heart.	*Then Yahweh became angry with Moses and said to him, "What about your brother Aaron, the descendant of Levi? I know he is a good speaker. He is on his way here right now. When he sees you, he will be very happy.*

ULT **And the nose of Yahweh burned**
UST Then Yahweh became angry
(וַיִּֽחַר־אַ֣ף יְהוָ֔ה)

This means that Yahweh is angry. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [Yahweh became angry]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he said**
UST and said to him
(וַיֹּ֖אמֶר)

Here, **he** refers to Yahweh. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh said]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Is not Aaron, the Levite, your brother**
UST What about your brother Aaron, the descendant of Levi
(הֲלֹ֣א אַהֲרֹ֤ן אָחִ֙יךָ֙ הַלֵּוִ֔י)

Yahweh uses this rhetorical question to suggest an alternative to Moses. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [I know you have a brother, Aaron the Levite.]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **your brother**
UST your brother
(אָחִ֙יךָ֙)

Aaron is older than Moses. If your language uses a different term for the sibling relationship based on gender and age order, choose the appropriate one.

Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **can speak well**
UST is a good speaker
(דַּבֵּר יְדַבֵּר)

In Hebrew, the word **speak** is repeated. This means he speaks well. English cannot convey this by doubling, so the meaning of the repetition was translated in the ULT in this case. If your language can say something like “speaking speaks” to mean “speaks well,” consider it; otherwise, translate the meaning similarly to the ULT or UST.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **behold**
UST right now
(הִנֵּה)

Here, **behold** is used to draw attention to surprising information that follows. If your language has a term that functions in that way (“Listen!” or “Look!” or “Pay Attention!”), use it here.

ULT **is coming**
UST is on his way
(יֹצֵא)

Yahweh says Aaron is coming from Egypt to Midian to find Moses. He is probably on foot. Depending on the language, the required form of go or come may vary.

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **and he will be glad**
UST he will be very happy
(וְשָׂמַח)

Aaron will be glad because he sees Moses. Consider a conjunction or other form that expresses result. Alternate translation: [and because he sees you, he will have joy]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **in his heart**
UST he will be very happy
(בְּלִבּוֹ)

Here, **heart** refers to inner thoughts and emotions. If the heart is not a body part your culture uses to refer to a person’s thoughts and emotions, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image.

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the … Yahweh	Yahweh
at Moses	with Moses
Aaron	Aaron
the Levite	the descendant of Levi
I know	I know
and he will be glad	he will be very happy

Exodus 4:15

ULT	UST
And you shall speak to him, and you shall put the words in his mouth. And I am with your mouth and with his mouth, and I will teach you both what you should do.	*You will tell him what to say. I will help you both to speak and will tell you both what to do.*

ULT **the words**
UST what to say
(אֶת־הַדְּבָרִים)

Words here are spoken of as if they were something that can be physically placed in a person's mouth. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the message that he is to repeat]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And I am with your mouth and with his mouth**
UST I will help you both to speak
(וְאָנֹכִי אֶהְיֶה עִם־פִּיךָ וְעִם־פִּיהוּ)

The word **mouth** here represents Moses' and Aaron's choice of words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And I will be with you as you speak and with him as he speaks]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **you both … you should do**
UST you both … to do
(אֶתְכֶם & תַּעֲשׂוּן)

These refer to Moses and Aaron. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a dual form if you have one or, if not, use a plural.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

Exodus 4:16

ULT	UST
And he will speak to the people for you. So it will be, he will be like a mouth for you, and you will be like God to him.	*He will speak for you to the Israelite people. He will be your spokesman, and he will think of you as if you were me.*

ULT **like a mouth**
UST spokesman
(לְפֶה)

This phrase compares Aaron to a mouth because he will be the one to actually vocalize to the Israelites and Pharaoh what Moses tells him to say. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the one to say what you tell him to say]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **will be like God to him**
UST he will think of … as if you were me
(תִּהְיֶה־לּוֹ לֵאלֹהִים)

The word **like** here means Moses would represent the same authority to Aaron as God did to Moses. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you will speak to Aaron with the same authority with which I speak to you]

Support Reference: Simile

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
like God	as if you were me

Exodus 4:17

ULT	UST
And you shall take in your hand this staff, with which you will do the signs.”	*Be sure to take your staff with you, because you will perform miracles with it.”*

ULT **And … this staff**
UST your staff
(וְאֶת־הַמַּטֶּה הַזֶּה)

Yahweh assumes that Moses will know that by **this staff**, he means the one that Moses said he had in his hand in 4:2 and with which God told him to do a miracle in 4:3–4. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And … staff	your staff
the signs	miracles

Exodus 4:18

ULT	UST
And Moses went and returned to Jethro his father-in-law, and he said to him, "Please let me go, and let me return to my brothers who are in Egypt and see whether they are still alive." And Jethro said to Moses, "Go in peace."	*Moses went back to his father-in-law, Jethro, and said to him, "Please let me go back to my relatives in Egypt to see if they are well." Jethro said to Moses, "You may go. Be safe."*

ULT **Jethro**
UST Jethro
(יִתְרֹ֣)

Jethro is reintroduced as a participant in the narrative here. Use the natural form in your language for reintroducing a character.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **And … went**
UST went
(וַיֵּלֶךְ)

Because the setting has shifted back to Jethro's home, some languages may need to use "come" here.

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **his father-in-law**
UST his father-in-law
(חֹתְנֹ֔ו)

This refers to the father of Moses' wife. If your language uses a different term for the husband's or wife's father use the one for wife's father.

Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **and he said**
UST and said
(וַיֹּ֣אמֶר)

Here, **he** refers to Moses. Alternate translation: [and Moses said]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to him**
UST to him
(לוֹ)

Here, **him** refers to Jethro. Alternate translation: [to Jethro]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **my brothers**
UST my relatives
(אַחַי)

Here the term **brothers** refers more broadly to all of Moses' people group, those he is related to. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [my relatives]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and see whether they are still alive**
UST to see if they are well
(וְאֶרְאֶה הַעוֹדָם חַיִּים)

Later in the Bible we are told that Moses was in Midian for 40 years. Moses' request may have been literal or an idiom that meant he wanted to know how they were doing. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Go in peace**
UST You may go. Be safe
(לֵךְ לְשָׁלוֹם)

This is a phrase of assent and blessing. It may be necessary for some languages to explicitly add, "Yes," to the beginning of Jethro's response.

Support Reference: Blessings

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Jethro	Jethro
are in Egypt	in Egypt
Jethro	Jethro
to Moses	to Moses
in peace	Be safe

Exodus 4:19

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses in Midian, "Go! Return to Egypt! For all the men who were seeking your life are dead."	*{While he was still} in Midian, Yahweh told Moses {again}, "Go back to Egypt now, for everyone trying to kill you is now dead."*

ULT And Yahweh said to Moses
UST Yahweh told Moses {again}
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֶל־מֹשֶׁה)

The timing and situation for Yahweh speaking to Moses here is not specified. Some conjecture that it was part of the narrative of the encounter with Yahweh from the previous verses but placed after his request to Jethro for an unknown reason. Another speculation is that Moses delayed returning to Egypt (either by his own choice, Yahweh's instructions, or someone else delaying him) and Yahweh came and told him again (the UST explicitly offers this optional translation).

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT who were seeking your life
UST trying to kill you
(הַמְבַקְשִׁים אֶת־נַפְשֶׁךָ)

This means they were seeking to end his life, that is, to kill him.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
in Midian	{While he was still} in Midian
to Egypt	to Egypt
who were seeking	trying

Exodus 4:20

ULT	UST
And Moses took his wife and his sons and caused them to ride on a donkey, and he returned toward the land of Egypt. And Moses took the staff of God in his hand.	*So Moses put his wife and sons on a donkey and started going toward Egypt. He took the staff with him {as} God {had told him to do}.*

ULT **and his sons**
UST and sons
(וְאֶת־בָּנָיו)

Moses' second son is not introduced until 18:4 but had already been born before they left Midian. It is not necessary to make this explicit here, if it would confuse your readers you could add a footnote.

Support Reference: When to Keep Information Implicit

ULT **and he returned toward the land of Egypt**
UST and started going toward Egypt
(וַיָּשָׁב אַרְצָה מִצְרָיִם)

It is clear from 4:24 and 25 that Moses' family went with him. If this is confusing in your language, you may need to change from **he** to "they" **returned**.

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and he returned toward the land of Egypt**
UST and started going toward Egypt
(וַיָּשָׁב אַרְצָה מִצְרָיִם)

After the incident on the road in verses 24–26. Moses' family is not mentioned again until 18:2, which says that Moses sent them back, so it may be better to make a translation similar to the UST, which only commits to the family starting on the way to Egypt. This option has the further benefit of allowing for the several events that happen before Moses gets to Egypt. The ULT's **toward** is another way of giving space in the translation for the next several events.

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT **the staff of God**
UST the staff … as} God {had told him to do}
(אֶת־מַטֵּה הָאֱלֹהִים)

The phrase **the staff of God** refers to the staff that God told Moses to take with him in 4:17. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the staff of God**
UST the staff … as} God {had told him to do}
(אֶת־מַטֵּה הָאֱלֹהִים)

The book describes this staff as **the staff of God** because God appointed it as his instrument so that Moses could do miraculous works through it. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Make sure your translation does not lead people to think the staff was a magic wand or shaman's staff that had its own power or power from Moses or that the staff gave Moses the ability to command God. In every instance where miracles happened, first God told Moses to do something with the staff, then Moses obeyed, and then God caused a miracle. Alternate translation: [the staff that God had told him to bring because God intended to work powerfully through it when Moses stretched it out.]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
a donkey	So … put … on a donkey
toward the land of	toward Egypt
Egypt	toward Egypt
Moses	He
the staff of	the staff
God	as} God {had told him to do}

Exodus 4:21

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "While you are going to return to Egypt, see all the miracles that I put in your hand, and do them before the face of Pharaoh. But as for me, I shall strengthen his heart, and he will not let the people go.	*Yahweh spoke to Moses again, "When you get to Egypt, be sure to do all the miracles that I have given you power to do in front of the king. But I will make him reject you so that he will not let the Israelites leave Egypt.*

ULT **While you are going**
UST When you get
(בְּלֶכְתְּךָ)

This begins a direct quotation that continues to the end of 4:23. It contains up to fourth-level quotations. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening first-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **see**
UST be sure
(רְאֵה)

Most translations and interpretations of the verb **see** take it to mean something like "see that you do."

ULT **all the miracles that I put in your hand**
UST all the miracles that I have given you power to do
(כָּל־הַמֹּפְתִים אֲשֶׁר־שַׂמְתִּי בְיָדֶךָ)

Here the miracles are spoken of as if they were items Moses could carry. In part, this may be because the three signs already given to Moses involved the use of his hand. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [all the wonders I have authorized you to perform]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **before the face of Pharaoh**
UST in front of the king
(לִפְנֵי פַרְעֹה)

This time, while **before the face of** still has the standard figurative meaning of "in the presence of," it is a much more literal use here. Moses is to actually do the miracles in front of Pharaoh so he can see them. Alternate translation: [so Pharaoh can see them]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **But as for me, I shall strengthen**
UST But I will make him reject you
(וַאֲנִי֙ אַחֲזַ֔ק)

Referring to himself in the opening of this sentence serves to emphasize a contrast between what might normally be expected and what will actually happen. Translate this in a way that clearly contrasts the performance of miracles before Pharaoh (which might be expected to lead to him releasing the Israelites) with what Yahweh says Pharaoh will do.

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **But as for me, I shall strengthen his heart**
UST But I will make him reject you
(וַאֲנִי֙ אַחֲזַ֔ק אֶת־לִבּ֖וֹ)

This means that God will make him stubborn. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart would be made stronger. If the heart is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. Alternate translation: [But as for me, I will cause Pharaoh to be stubborn]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and he will not let the people go**
UST so that he will not let the Israelites leave Egypt
(וְלֹ֥א יְשַׁלַּ֖ח אֶת־הָעָֽם)

Make it clear in your translation that this is a result of God hardening Pharaoh's heart.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
to Egypt	to Egypt
the miracles	the miracles

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king

Exodus 4:22

ULT	UST
And say to Pharaoh, ‘Thus says Yahweh: “Israel is my son, my firstborn,	*Then say to him, ‘This is what Yahweh says: “Israel is like my firstborn son,*

ULT Thus says Yahweh
UST This is what Yahweh says
(כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָֹה)

This is the first of hundreds of occurrences throughout the Old Testament of a standard phrase, **Thus says Yahweh**, used to introduce direct, authoritative instruction from Yahweh. It would be good for your team to have a standard way to translate this that makes it clear that the words that come next are directly from God. If your language has a standard way of introducing a new message from your rulers that alerts the hearers that these are the words of the rulers, that would be a good phrase to consider.

ULT Thus says Yahweh
UST This is what Yahweh says
(כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָֹה)

This begins a second-level quotation that continues until the end of 4:23. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening second-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation within a quotation. However, you may want to translate this as an indirect quotation in order to reduce the levels of quotations in this passage. Alternate translation: [that Yahweh says]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT Israel is my son, my firstborn
UST Israel is like my firstborn son
(בְּנִי בְכֹרִי יִשְׂרָאֵל)

This is the beginning of a third-level quotation that continues until the end of 4:23. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening third-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation within a quotation within a quotation. (If you chose to translate, “Thus says Yahweh,” as an indirect quote, this will be a second- level quotation.)

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **my son**
UST is like my … son
(בְּנִי)

Yahweh expresses his affection for the Israelites by calling them his **son**. Some languages may need to change the metaphor here into a simile. See the UST.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Israel is**
UST Israel
(יִשְׂרָאֵל)

The word **Israel** here represents all the people of Israel as a group. It is important to keep the singular reference to Israel as son rather than change it to something like ‘the Israelites are my children,’ because God is making a particular contrast here between his son and Pharaoh’s son. Some languages may not be able to use “Israel” as a collective noun and may need to choose a translation like “the nation of Israel” or “the Israelite nation.”

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **Israel is**
UST Israel
(יִשְׂרָאֵל)

The Israelite nation is often referred to simply by the name of the patriarch. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [The Israelites are]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	him
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel is	Israel
my firstborn	firstborn

Exodus 4:23

ULT	UST
and I said to you, ‘Let my son go that he may serve me.’ But you have refused to let him go. Behold, I shall kill your son, your firstborn.”’”	*and when I told you, ‘Let my son go, so that he may worship me,’ you refused. Therefore, I will kill your firstborn son!”’”*

ULT **Let my son go that he may serve me**
UST Let my son go, so that he may worship me
(שַׁלַּח אֶת־בְּנִי וְיַעַבְדֵנִי)

This is a fourth-level quotation. It should be marked in some manner that distinguishes it from the outer levels. (If you chose to translate “Thus says Yahweh” as an indirect quote, this will be a third-level quotation.)

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **and I said to you, ‘Let my son go that he may serve me.’ But you have refused**
UST and when I told you, ‘Let my son go, so that he may worship me,’ you refused
(וָאֹמַר אֵלֶיךָ שַׁלַּח אֶת־בְּנִי וְיַעַבְדֵנִי וַתְּמָאֵן)

The fourth-level quotation here may be a good one to translate as an indirect quotation in order to reduce the levels of quotations in this passage. Alternate translation: [and I told you to let my son go that he may serve me. But you have refused]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **my son**
UST my son
(אֶת־בְּנִי)

Yahweh continues to metaphorically speak of Israel as **my son**. See how you translated it in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [the Israelite nation, which is like a son to me]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **that he may serve me … to let him go**
UST so that he may worship me,’ you refused
(וְיַעַבְדֵנִי & לְשַׁלְּחוֹ)

The pronouns **he** and **him** agree with “son.” What you use may depend on how you translated son in the previous verse.

Support Reference: Pronouns

ULT **Behold**
UST Therefore
(הִנֵּה)

This is used to draw attention to surprising information that follows. Alternate translation: [Know this]

ULT **your son**
UST your … son
(אֶת־בִּנְךָ)

Here, **your son** refers to the actual son of Pharaoh.

ULT **your son, your firstborn**
UST your firstborn son
(אֶת־בִּנְךָ בְּכֹרֶךָ)

After this phrase, the three levels of direct quotations end, bringing a complete close to all quotations that started in verses 21 and 22. If you are using direct quotations, at the end of this verse you should have three closing markers: third level, second level and first level. In English, it looks like **“ ’ ”** (without spaces).

Support Reference: Quote Markings

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
that he may serve me	so that he may worship me
shall kill	will kill
your firstborn	firstborn

Exodus 4:24

ULT	UST
And it happened on the road, in the lodging-place, that he encountered Yahweh, and he sought to kill him.	*One night, as they were camping on the way to Egypt, Yahweh confronted {Moses} in order to kill him.*

ULT And it happened
UST One night
(וַיְהִי)

This introduces a new event. Mark the transition in a natural way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT that he encountered … to kill him
UST confronted {Moses} … kill him
(וַיִּפְגְּשֵׁהוּ & הֲמִיתוֹ)

Here, it is not clear who **him** refers to. Most commentators believe it refers to Moses, but it could refer to the son, though that is less likely. If it is necessary to choose for your translation, use Moses.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT and he sought
UST in order to
(וַיְבַקֵּשׁ)

Here, **he** refers to Yahweh.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
and he sought	in order to
to kill him	kill him

Exodus 4:25

ULT	UST
And Zipporah took a flint, and she cut off the foreskin of her son, and she touched it to his feet, and she said, "Surely you are a bridegroom of blood to me."	*Then {Moses' wife,} Zipporah, took a sharp stone knife and cut off the foreskin of their firstborn son. Then she touched the foreskin to {Moses'} feet and said, "You are really my husband by blood."*

ULT **Zipporah**
UST {Moses' wife,} Zipporah
(צִפֹּרָה)

Zipporah is the name of Moses' wife. See how you translated it in 2:21.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Zipporah**
UST {Moses' wife,} Zipporah
(צִפֹּרָה)

Zipporah is introduced here as a new character. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new character.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **a flint**
UST a sharp stone knife
(צֹר)

This was a flake or a sharp piece of a hard gray rock that was used as a knife.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the foreskin of**
UST the foreskin
(אֶת־עָרְלַת)

The **foreskin** is the retractable fold of skin which covers and protects the end of the penis.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **to his feet**
UST to {Moses'} feet
(לְרַגְלָיו)

It is possible that the word **feet** may have been a more respectful way to refer to the genital area of the body. However, that possibility is not high enough that you should translate it either literally as genitals or with another euphemism meaning genitals in your language. If you have a word that means primarily feet or legs, but could in some cases also euphemistically mean genitals, you may consider it.

Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **Surely you are a bridegroom of blood to me**
UST You are really my husband by blood
(כִּי חֲתַן־דָּמִים אַתָּה לִי)

The meaning of this metaphor is unclear. It was probably a known saying in that culture. Alternate translation: [You are related to me by this blood] or [You are my husband because of blood]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a bridegroom of	are … husband by blood

Exodus 4:26

ULT	UST
And he relented from him. That was when she said, "bridegroom of blood" because of the circumcision.	*She said, "a husband by blood," because she had cut off their son's foreskin. So Yahweh did not harm anyone.*

ULT And he relented
UST So Yahweh did not harm anyone
(וַיִּרֶף)

God **relented** as a result of Zipporah's action. Consider a conjunction or other form that expresses result, as in the UST.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT And he relented
UST So Yahweh did not harm anyone
(וַיִּרֶף)

Here, **he** refers to Yahweh. Alternate translation: [Yahweh relented]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT from him
UST So Yahweh did not harm anyone
(מִמֶּנּוּ)

As in 4:24, **him** could refer to either Moses or the son, but most commentators think it is still Moses. The UST uses "anyone" to preserve ambiguity. Alternate translation: [from Moses]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT bridegroom of blood
UST a husband by blood
(חֲתַן דָּמִים)

This is a unique quotation because Zipporah probably does not speak again; rather, the quotation refers back to her statement in 4:25. Use a form from your language for quoting a portion of what someone previously said. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as an indirect quotation.

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **bridegroom of blood” because of the circumcision**
UST a husband by blood,” because she had cut off their son’s foreskin
(חֲתַן דָּמִים לַמּוּלֹת)

It is not clear if the quotation includes **because of the circumcision** or if that is a comment explaining the quotation. Translations are divided in where they end the quotation, but most exclude **because of the circumcision**, and it is best to follow that unless a locally respected translation includes it.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bridegroom of	a husband by blood
because of the circumcision	because she had cut off their son’s foreskin

Exodus 4:27

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Aaron, "Go into the wilderness to meet Moses." And he went, and he met him at the mountain of God, and he kissed him.	*Meanwhile, Yahweh said to Aaron, "Go into the desert to meet Moses." So Aaron went and met Moses at the mountain where God met Moses and greeted him by kissing him.*

ULT **And … said**
UST Meanwhile … said
(וַיֹּאמֶר)

You may want to add a word that marks the beginning of a new part of the story, as the UST does.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **Aaron**
UST Aaron
(אַהֲרֹן)

Aaron is introduced as a new participant. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new character.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **at the mountain of God**
UST at the mountain where God met Moses
(בְּהַר הָאֱלֹהִים)

See how you translated this in 3:1.

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and he kissed**
UST and greeted … by kissing
(וַיִּשַּׁק)

This was a traditional way of greeting which showed love. You can make this explicit, as in the UST.

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Aaron	Aaron
into the wilderness	into the desert
Moses	Moses

ULT	UST
the … God	where God met Moses
and he kissed	and greeted … by kissing

Exodus 4:28

ULT	UST
And Moses told Aaron all the words of Yahweh that he had sent him and all the signs that he commanded him.	*Moses told Aaron everything that Yahweh had sent him {to Egypt to say to the king and the Israelites} and all the miracles that Yahweh had instructed him {to do}.*

ULT **he had sent him … he commanded him**
UST everything … had sent him {to Egypt to say to the king and the Israelites} … Yahweh had instructed him {to do}
(שְׁלָחוֹ & צִוָּהוּ)

These are a bit awkward to translate in English, so the UST adds more information. Other languages may not have the same difficulty.

ULT **he had sent him … he commanded him**
UST everything … had sent him {to Egypt to say to the king and the Israelites} … Yahweh had instructed him {to do}
(שְׁלָחוֹ & צִוָּהוּ)

Here, the pronoun **he** refers to Yahweh, and **him** refers to Moses. Alternate translation: [Yahweh sent Moses … Yahweh commanded Moses]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
Yahweh	Yahweh
the signs	the miracles

Exodus 4:29

ULT	UST
And Moses and Aaron went, and they gathered all of the elders of the sons of Israel.	*When Moses and Aaron arrived in Egypt, they called a meeting with all the Israelite leaders.*

ULT And … went
UST When … arrived in Egypt
(וַיֵּלֶךְ)

This begins a new event which you may need to mark in your translation with a transitional word like the UST's "When."

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
and Aaron	and Aaron
and they gathered	they called a meeting
the elders of	with all the Israelite leaders
Israel	with all the Israelite leaders

Exodus 4:30

ULT	UST
And Aaron spoke all of the words that Yahweh had spoken to Moses. And he did the signs before the eyes of the people,	*Aaron told them everything that Yahweh had told Moses and performed the miracles as the leaders watched.*

ULT And he did
UST and performed
(וַיַּעַשׂ)

Here, **he** could refer to either Aaron or Moses. Alternate translation: [and Aaron did] or [and Moses did]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT before the eyes of the people
UST as the leaders watched
(לְעֵינֵי הָעָם)

Here, **before the eyes** means he did the signs so they could see them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in their sight]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT the people
UST the leaders
(הָעָם)

Context suggests that **people** refers to the leaders gathered in 4:29.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
the signs	the miracles

Exodus 4:31

ULT	UST
and the people believed. And they heard that Yahweh had attended to the sons of Israel and that he had seen their affliction, and they bowed and prostrated themselves.	*The leaders believed Aaron and Moses. Because they heard that Yahweh had seen how miserable the Israelites were and had come down to help them, the leaders bowed down to worship him.*

ULT **the people**
UST The leaders
(הָעָם)

Context suggests that **people** refers to the leaders gathered in 4:29.

ULT **had attended … the sons of Israel**
UST the Israelites … had come down to help them
(פָּקַד & בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Alternate translation: [saw the Israelites] or [was concerned about the Israelites]

ULT **and they bowed and prostrated themselves**
UST the leaders bowed down to worship him
(וַיִּקְּדוּ וַיִּשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ)

This action was an expression of thankful worship. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [they bowed their heads in awe] or [they bowed down low in reverence.]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and … believed	believed Aaron and Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	the Israelites
their affliction	how miserable … were
and they bowed	the leaders bowed down
and prostrated themselves	to worship him

Exodus 5

Exodus 5 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–5: Moses gives Pharaoh Yahweh’s message
- v. 6–21: Pharaoh makes the Israelites work harder
- v. 22–23: Moses asks Yahweh why things went badly

Exodus 5:1

ULT	UST
And afterward, Moses and Aaron went in and said to Pharaoh, "Thus says Yahweh, the God of Israel: 'Let my people go, and they shall celebrate me in the wilderness.'"	*Then Moses and Aaron went to the king. They said to him, "The God {named} Yahweh, whom we Israelites worship, says this to you: 'Let my people go to the desert so that they may have a feast to honor me!'"*

ULT **And afterward, Moses and Aaron went in and said to Pharaoh**
UST Then Moses and Aaron went to the king. They said to him … to you
(וְאַחַר בָּאוּ מֹשֶׁה וְאַהֲרֹן וַיֹּאמְרוּ אֶל־פַּרְעֹה)

The time phrase, **and afterward**, marks a transition in the narrative. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: [After that]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **And afterward, Moses and Aaron went in and said to Pharaoh**
UST Then Moses and Aaron went to the king. They said to him … to you
(וְאַחַר בָּאוּ מֹשֶׁה וְאַהֲרֹן וַיֹּאמְרוּ אֶל־פַּרְעֹה)

It is unclear how long Moses and Aaron waited before they went to see Pharaoh.

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT **went in**
UST went
(בָּאוּ)

In this instance, depending on how they have to set scenes, some languages may need to use "came in."

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **Pharaoh**
UST the king … him … you
(פַּרְעֹה)

Pharaoh is reintroduced as a participant in the narrative for the first time since chapter two. Use the natural form in your language for reintroducing a character.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **Thus says Yahweh, the God of Israel: 'Let my people go, and they shall celebrate me in the wilderness**
UST The God {named} Yahweh, whom we Israelites worship, says this … Let my people go to the desert so that they may have a feast to honor me
(כֹּה־אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל שַׁלַּח אֶת־עַמִּי וְיָחֹגּוּ לִי בַּמִּדְבָּר)

This is a direct quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by marking it with first-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. There is a second-level quotation fully contained within this portion which is addressed elsewhere. There may be other quotations in this chapter; they will be marked by the same punctuation, but they will not have their own notes unless there is something unique about them.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **Thus says Yahweh**
UST {named} Yahweh … says this
(כֹּה־אָמַר יְהוָה)

This quotation formula is used to introduce commands from Yahweh. See Chapter 4 Introduction for more information.

ULT **and they shall celebrate**
UST so that they may have a feast
(וְיָחֹגּוּ)

This is a celebration to worship Yahweh. Alternate translation: [so they can worship me with eating and drinking]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
and Aaron	and Aaron
Pharaoh	the king … him … you
Yahweh	{named} Yahweh
the God of	The God … whom we Israelites worship
Israel	The God … whom we Israelites worship
and they shall celebrate	so that they may have a feast
in the wilderness	to the desert

Exodus 5:2

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh, that I should listen to his voice to let Israel go? I do not know Yahweh, and moreover, I shall not let Israel go."	*But the king said, "Who is Yahweh? I have never heard of him, so why should I obey what he demands? I will certainly not let the Israelites go!"*

ULT And … said
UST But … said
(וַיֹּאמֶר)

The result here is exactly as God has said; therefore, a contrastive transition word is reasonable but not required, given the immediate human context.

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT Who is Yahweh, that I should listen to his voice to let Israel go
UST Who is Yahweh … so why should I obey what he demands
(מִי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר אֶשְׁמַע בְּקֹלוֹ לְשַׁלַּח אֶת־יִשְׂרָאֵל)

This is not a rhetorical question, though Pharaoh may have spoken with contempt. Pharaoh would have considered himself a god. The Egyptians had several gods, and most people groups were assumed to have their own gods. Therefore, Pharaoh had truly not heard of Yahweh (who has just revealed his name to Moses).

ULT Israel … Israel
UST what he demands … the Israelites
(אֶת־יִשְׂרָאֵל & אֶת־יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Here the nation is spoken of as an individual. If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. Alternate translation: [the nation of Israel]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT to his voice
UST what he demands
(בְּקֹלוֹ)

Here, **his voice** represent the words God spoke. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [to what he says]

Support Reference: Metonymy

> ULT **and moreover**
> UST certainly
> (וְגַם)

This functions to strengthen Pharaoh's statement about his decision. Alternate translation: [and most definitely]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	what he demands
I do … know	I have … heard of
Yahweh	him
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 5:3

ULT	UST
And they said, "The God of the Hebrews has met with us. Please, let us go a journey of three days into the wilderness, and let us sacrifice to Yahweh our God, lest he come upon us with the plague or with the sword."	*Moses and Aaron replied, "The God we Hebrews worship has made a special visit to us. Please allow us to travel for a few days to a place in the wilderness in order that there we may offer sacrifices to Yahweh, our God. If we do not do that, he will cause us to die from diseases or from attacks by our enemies."*

ULT **And they said**
UST Moses and Aaron replied
(וַיֹּאמְרוּ)

It may not make sense in all languages for multiple people to speak. Alternate translation, since Aaron was appointed as Moses' spokesman: [Aaron replied]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **The God of the Hebrews**
UST The God we Hebrews worship
(אֱלֹהֵי הָעִבְרִים)

This term, **The God of the Hebrews**, is also used for Yahweh, the Israelites' God.

ULT **with us … let us go … and let us sacrifice … he come upon us**
UST to us … allow us to travel … in order that … we may offer sacrifices … he will cause us to die from
(עָלֵינוּ נֵלֵכָה & וְנִזְבְּחָה & יִפְגָּעֵנוּ)

Here, **us** (or "we" in UST) refers to the Hebrew people (the Israelites). It excludes Pharaoh and his people. Your language may require you to mark these forms.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **with the sword**
UST from attacks by our enemies
(בַּחֶרֶב)

Here, **sword** represents war or an attack by enemies. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [cause our enemies to attack us]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The God of	The God we Hebrews worship
the Hebrews	The God we Hebrews worship
days	for a few days
into the wilderness	to a place in the wilderness … there
and let us sacrifice	in order that … we may offer sacrifices
to Yahweh	to Yahweh
our God	our God
with the plague	diseases
with the sword	from attacks by our enemies

Exodus 5:4

ULT	UST
And the king of Egypt said to them, "Moses and Aaron, why are you causing the people to leave off from their tasks? Go to your burdens."	*But the king of Egypt said to them, "Moses and Aaron, it is pointless for you to distract the Israelites from their work. Get back to work, all of you!"*

ULT **Moses and Aaron, why are you causing the people to leave off from their tasks**
UST Moses and Aaron, it is pointless for you to distract the Israelites from their work
(לָמָּה מֹשֶׁה וְאַהֲרֹן תַּפְרִיעוּ אֶת־הָעָם מִמַּעֲשָׂיו)

Pharaoh uses this rhetorical question to express his anger toward Moses and Aaron for taking the Israelites away from their work. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [Stop distracting the people from doing their work!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Go to your burdens**
UST Get back to work, all of you
(לְכוּ לְסִבְלֹתֵיכֶם)

This **your** could refer to Moses and Aaron, or it could mean "all you Israelite people." The second meaning is more likely. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a dual or plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king of	But the king of Egypt
Egypt	But the king of Egypt
Moses	Moses
and Aaron	and Aaron

Exodus 5:5

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh said, "Behold, the people of the land are now many, and you have caused them to rest from their burdens."	*Then the king said, "Look, there are too many Israelites in Egypt for you to encourage them to just stop working."*

ULT **And Pharaoh said**
UST Then the king said
(וַיֹּאמֶר פַּרְעֹה)

It is unusual for the same speaker to be reintroduced like this. Some translations omit the repetition, but there is another option. This statement may be more connected to the next couple of verses, so it might be appropriate to make a minor break before this verse.

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **And Pharaoh said, "Behold, the people of the land are now many, and you have caused them to rest from their burdens**
UST Then the king said, "Look, there are too many Israelites in Egypt for you to encourage them to just stop working
(וַיֹּאמֶר פַּרְעֹה הֵן־רַבִּים עַתָּה עַם הָאָרֶץ וְהִשְׁבַּתֶּם אֹתָם מִסִּבְלֹתָם)

This statement by Pharaoh may have been him commenting to himself, or he may have only thought this statement silently; either way, it led to his next actions. If this would be confusing in your language, consider stating it in a way that clarifies that his statement or thoughts here impacted his next actions.

Support Reference: Aside

ULT **Behold**
UST Look
(הֵן)

Behold is a term meant to focus the attention of the listener on what the speaker is about to say.

ULT **and you have caused … to rest**
UST for you to encourage … to just stop
(וְהִשְׁבַּתֶּם)

Here, **you** means Moses and Aaron. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a dual form if you have one, or if not, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
the land	in Egypt

Exodus 5:6

ULT	UST
And on that day, Pharaoh ordered the taskmasters among the people and officers, saying,	*That same day the king commanded the Egyptian slave drivers and the Israelite bosses who directed the slaves,*

ULT **And … Pharaoh ordered the taskmasters among the people and officers, saying**
UST the king commanded the Egyptian slave drivers and the Israelite bosses who directed the slaves
(וַיְצַו פַּרְעֹה & אֶת־הַנֹּגְשִׂים בָּעָם וְאֶת־שֹׁטְרָיו לֵאמֹר)

Pharaoh may have sent a messenger or messengers to the taskmasters and officers or spoken to one or a few representatives of them at his court rather than speaking to them directly. Alternate translation: [And … Pharaoh gave an order to the taskmasters among the people and officers. He said,]

ULT **the taskmasters**
UST the Egyptian slave drivers
(אֶת־הַנֹּגְשִׂים)

Taskmasters were Egyptians whose job it was to force the Israelites to do hard work. These are probably the same as the "overseers" of labor gangs from Exodus 1:11, but here the term is harsher. Alternate translation: [oppressors]

ULT **and officers**
UST and the Israelite bosses who directed the slaves
(וְאֶת־שֹׁטְרָיו)

Officers were probably Israelite slaves who were in charge of the other Israelites but who answered to the Egyptian taskmasters.

ULT **saying**
UST commanded
(לֵאמֹר)

Here, **saying** is a way of introducing a direct quotation in Hebrew; most translations can omit it without harm.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
on … day	day

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king

Exodus 5:7

ULT	UST
“Do not continue to give straw to the people to make bricks as yesterday and the day before yesterday. They shall go and gather straw for themselves.	*“Stop giving the Israelites straw for making bricks. From now on, they will have to go get it themselves.*

ULT Do not continue
UST Stop
(לֹא תֹאסִפוּן)

This command was given to multiple people; if your language distinguishes between singular and plural forms when giving commands, make sure this is a plural form.

Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural

ULT as yesterday and the day before yesterday
UST From now on
(כִּתְמוֹל שִׁלְשֹׁם)

This is a Hebrew idiom meaning “in the past.” If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [as you used to do] or [as was done previously]

Support Reference: Idiom

Exodus 5:8

ULT	UST
But you shall put on them the quota of the bricks which they were making yesterday and the day before yesterday; do not diminish from it. For they are idle. Therefore they are crying, saying, 'Let us go, let us sacrifice to our God.'	*However, still force them to make the same number of bricks that they did before. Do not lower the number at all. They do not want to work. That is why they are asking me to let them go {into the wilderness} to worship their god.*

ULT you shall put
UST still force … to make
(תָּשִׂ֥ימוּ)

If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT the bricks
UST bricks
(הַלְּבֵנִ֔ים)

Bricks are blocks made of clay or mud with straw in them. They are hardened in the sun or in another manner before they are used for building. See how you translated in 1:14.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT yesterday and the day before yesterday
UST before
(תְּמ֣וֹל שִׁלְשֹׁ֑ם)

This is a Hebrew idiom meaning "in the past." See how you translated this in 5:7. Alternate translation: [before] or [previously]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
are crying	are asking me
let us sacrifice	to worship
to our God	their god

Exodus 5:9

ULT	UST
Let the slavery be heavy on the men so they shall do it and shall not gaze at words of lies.”	*Make the men work harder so that they will be too busy to listen to lies {from their leaders}!”*

ULT and shall not gaze at words of lies
UST so that they will be too busy to listen to lies {from their leaders}
(וְאַל־יִשְׁעֲו֖וּ בְּדִבְרֵי־שָֽׁקֶר)

Here words are spoken of as if they could be looked upon. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [and not listen to words that are lies]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the slavery	Make the men work harder
lies	to lies {from their leaders}

Exodus 5:10

ULT	UST
And the taskmasters of the people and officers went out and said to the people, saying, "Thus says Pharaoh: 'I am not giving straw to you.	*So the slave drivers and Israelite bosses went to where the Israelites were and said to them, "The king has said that he will no longer give you any straw.*

ULT **And … went out**
UST So … went
(וַיֵּצְא֗וּ)

This begins a new scene, which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **the taskmasters of**
UST the slave drivers
(נֹגְשֵׂי)

Taskmasters were Egyptians whose job was to force the Israelites to do hard work. See how you translated this in 5:6.

ULT **Thus says Pharaoh**
UST The king has said that
(כֹּה אָמַר פַּרְעֹה)

This is the same quotation introduction as is used when Yahweh gives a direct command. See Chapter 4 Introduction for more information.

ULT **and said to the people, saying, "Thus says Pharaoh**
UST to where the Israelites were and said to them, "The king has said that
(וַיֹּאמְרוּ אֶל־הָעָם לֵאמֹר כֹּה אָמַר פַּרְעֹה)

It might be helpful in some languages to translate **thus says Pharaoh** as an indirect quote so that his conveyed command is not a quote within a quote. Alternate translation: [and told the people that Pharaoh says]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **I … not**
UST he will no longer
(אֵינֶנִּי)

This is the beginning of a second-level quotation that continues until the end of verse 11. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening second-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the start of a quotation within a quotation. However, you could also translate this as an indirect quote. See UST.

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **I am not giving straw to you**
UST he will no longer give you any straw
(אֵינֶנִּי נֹתֵן לָכֶם תֶּבֶן)

The structure of this phrase and the one that opens the next verse create a strong contrast between what **I** (Pharaoh) and **you** (you all, the Israelites) will do. Translate this in a way that emphasizes, if possible, the contrast between **I** and **you**. Alternate translation: [It is not I who will give you straw.]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **I am not giving straw to you**
UST he will no longer give you any straw
(אֵינֶנִּי נֹתֵן לָכֶם תֶּבֶן)

Pharaoh uses **I** to refer to his ownership and commands. Pharaoh does not physically give the Israelites straw. Rather, he had commanded his servants to take straw that belonged to Pharaoh and give it to the Israelites. Now he told his servants to stop providing straw. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [My servants will no longer give you my straw]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to you**
UST you
(לָכֶם)

You is plural and refers to the Israelite people. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	The king

Exodus 5:11

ULT	UST
You go and get your own straw from wherever you might find it, for there will be no reducing of things from your slavery.'"	*So you must go yourselves and get straw where you can find it. But you must keep working to make the same number of bricks."*

ULT You go and get your own straw from wherever you might find it
UST So you must go yourselves and get straw where you can find it
(אַתֶּם לְכוּ קְחוּ לָכֶם תֶּבֶן מֵאֲשֶׁר תִּמְצָאוּ)

The structure of this phrase serves as the opposing side of the contrast Pharaoh sets up in the last phrase. By explicitly using a pronoun with a command, he is emphasizing who will go get straw. If possible, translate this in a way that emphasizes the contrast between **I** and **you**. See the previous verse. Alternate translation: [Rather, it is you yourselves who must go get straw from wherever you might find it]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT You
UST yourselves
(אַתֶּם)

Here, **you** is plural and refers to the Israelite people. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT You … your own
UST yourselves
(לָכֶם & אַתֶּם)

The repetition of **you** (as **your**) emphasizes that the Egyptians will no longer help the slaves. See the UST.

Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

ULT for there will be no reducing of things from your slavery
UST But you must keep working to make the same number of bricks
(כִּי אֵין נִגָּרַע מֵעֲבֹדַתְכֶם דָּבָר)

If this double negative would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [for you must continue to make the same number of bricks as before]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
of … from your slavery	you must keep working to make

Exodus 5:12

ULT	UST
So the people dispersed throughout all the land of Egypt to gather stubble for straw.	*So the Israelites scattered all over Egypt to collect leftover grain stalks to use for straw.*

ULT throughout all the land of Egypt
UST all over Egypt
(בְּכָל־אֶרֶץ מִצְרָיִם)

This is a generalization used to show the extra effort Israel made to meet Pharaoh's demands. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your language that means many places. Alternate translation: [to many places throughout Egypt]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT stubble
UST leftover grain stalks
(קַשׁ)

Stubble is the part of a plant that is left over after harvest.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
So … dispersed	So … scattered
the land of	all over
Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 5:13

ULT	UST
Now the taskmasters were hastening them, saying, "Finish your work, the task of day by day, as when there was straw."	*As for the slave bosses, they kept harassing them by saying, "Do all the work we assign to you each day. Make the same number of bricks as you did before, when we gave you straw!"*

ULT **Now the taskmasters**
UST As for the slave bosses, they
(וְהַנֹּגְשִׂים)

Taskmasters were Egyptians whose job it was to force the Israelites to do hard work. See how you translated this in Exodus 5:6.

ULT **Now the taskmasters**
UST As for the slave bosses, they
(וְהַנֹּגְשִׂים)

The change of subject is emphasized here. If your language has a way of specifically focusing on the actor in a narrative, use it here. See the UST for how that is done in English.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **the task of day by day**
UST the work we assign to you each day
(דְּבַר־יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ)

Day by day means "daily." Alternate translation: [the daily task]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your work	the work we assign to you
day	day
by day	each

Exodus 5:14

ULT	UST
And the officers of the sons of Israel, whom the taskmasters of Pharaoh had put over them, were beaten, saying, "Why have you not finished your required brick making like yesterday and the day before yesterday, neither yesterday nor today?"	*{When they were not able to make enough bricks,} the king's slave drivers beat the bosses they had put in charge of the Israelites. They told them, "This is because your work teams have not been able to make the same number of bricks in the last couple of days as they did before."*

ULT **the taskmasters of**
UST the king's slave drivers
(נֹגְשֵׂי)

Taskmasters are Egyptians whose job it was to force the Israelites to do hard work. See how you translated this in Exodus 5:6.

ULT **And the officers of the sons of Israel … were beaten**
UST When they were not able to make enough bricks … beat the bosses they had put in charge of the Israelites
(וַיֻּכּוּ שֹׁטְרֵי בְנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל)

The text does not specify who beat the officers. It was probably either the taskmasters or someone the taskmasters ordered to beat the officers. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And the taskmasters beat the officers of the sons of Israel]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Why have you not finished your required brick making like yesterday and the day before yesterday, neither yesterday nor today**
UST This is because your work teams have not been able to make the same number of bricks in the last couple of days as they did before
(מַדּוּעַ לֹא כִלִּיתֶם חָקְכֶם לִלְבֹן כִּתְמוֹל שִׁלְשֹׁם גַּם־תְּמוֹל גַּם־הַיּוֹם)

The taskmasters used this question to show they were angry with the lack of bricks. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [You are not producing enough bricks, either yesterday or today, as you did in the past!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **have you … finished your required**
UST your work teams have … been able … the same number of … they did
(כְּלִיתֶם חָקְכֶם)

Here, **you** and **your** are plural. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **have you not finished your required**
UST your work teams have not been able … the same number of … they did
(לֹא כְלִיתֶם חָקְכֶם)

Here, **you** and **your** do not simply refer to the officers; they refer to the groups of Israelite workers the officers are in charge of. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [have your teams not finished their required]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **like yesterday and the day before yesterday**
UST as … before
(כִּתְמוֹל שִׁלְשֹׁם)

This is a Hebrew idiom meaning "in the past." Here it specifically refers to the time before the Egyptians stopped giving the Israelites straw. See how you translated this in 5:7. Alternate translation: [before] or [previously]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **neither yesterday nor today**
UST in the last couple of days
(גַּם־תְּמוֹל גַּם־הַיּוֹם)

This time expression refers to more recent days, ones since the Egyptians stopped providing the straw to the Israelites.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
of Israel	the bosses they had put in charge of the Israelites
Pharaoh	the king's slave drivers
today	in the last couple of days

Exodus 5:15

ULT	UST
And the officers of the sons of Israel came in and cried to Pharaoh, saying, "Why are you doing this to your servants?	*Then the Israelite bosses went in {to the palace} and complained to the king, "Why are you treating us this way?*

ULT **And … came in**
UST Then … went in {to the palace}
(וַיָּבֹאוּ)

This begins a new scene, which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language. The officers have gone to where Pharaoh is.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **And … came in**
UST Then … went in {to the palace}
(וַיָּבֹאוּ)

You will need to decide if go or come is the better translation in your language.

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **to your servants**
UST us
(לַעֲבָדֶיךָ)

Here, the Israelite officers use the term **your servants** to refer to themselves in the third person as a way of showing humility. It is also possible that they mean to include all the Israelites. Either option is valid if your language must state who is meant by "your servants." Alternate translation: [to us]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelite
and cried	and complained
Pharaoh	the king
to your servants	us

Exodus 5:16

ULT	UST
No straw is being given to your servants. And they are saying to us, 'Make bricks!' And behold, your servants are beaten, but it is the sin of your people."	*Your slave drivers are not giving us any straw for making bricks, but they keep telling us, 'Make the same number of bricks!' They are even beating us. But it is your own slave drivers that are keeping us from making enough bricks."*

ULT **No straw is being given to your servants**
UST Your slave drivers are not giving us any straw for making bricks … Make … bricks
(תֶּבֶן אֵין נִתָּן לַעֲבָדֶיךָ)

The text does not specify who is not giving them straw. From the context, the taskmasters and, by implication, Pharaoh himself are the ones not doing this. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [You are not giving your servants any straw.]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to your servants … your servants**
UST Make … bricks … us
(לַעֲבָדֶיךָ & עֲבָדֶיךָ)

Here, the Israelite officers use the term **your servants** to refer to themselves in the third person as a way of showing humility. It is also possible that they mean to include all the Israelites. Either option is valid if your language must state who is meant by "your servants." Alternate translation: [to us]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **they are saying**
UST but they keep telling
(אֹמְרִים)

Here, **they** refers to the Egyptian taskmasters.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And behold**
UST even
(וְהִנֵּה)

And behold is used to draw attention to surprising information that follows.

ULT **your servants are beaten**
UST They are … beating us
(עֲבָדֶיךָ מֻכִּים)

The text does not specify who beat the officers. It was probably either the taskmasters or someone the taskmasters ordered to beat the officers. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **but it is the sin of your people**
UST But it is your own slave drivers that are keeping us from making enough bricks
(וְחַטָּאת עַמֶּךָ)

The Israelites are indirectly accusing Pharaoh of doing wrong. To translate this, consider polite or indirect ways of making accusations in your culture.

Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **but it is the sin of**
UST But it is your own slave drivers that are keeping us from making enough bricks
(וְחַטָּאת)

Alternate translation: [but it is the wrongdoing of]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to your servants	Make … bricks
your servants	us
but it is the sin of	But it is your own slave drivers that are keeping us from making enough bricks

Exodus 5:17

ULT	UST
And he said, "You are lazy! Lazy! That is why you are saying, 'Let us go sacrifice to Yahweh.'	*But the king said, "You are lazy and do not want to work! That is why you keep saying, 'Allow us to go {to the desert} to worship Yahweh.'*

ULT You are … you
UST You are lazy and do not want to work … you
(אַתֶּם & אַתֶּם)

These uses of **you** are plural. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT You are lazy! Lazy
UST You are lazy and do not want to work
(נִרְפִּים אַתֶּם נִרְפִּים)

Pharaoh repeats himself for emphasis. In your translation, make sure the idea of laziness or idleness is repeated or strengthened in a way that is natural. Alternate translation: [You are extremely lazy]

Support Reference: Exclamations

ULT Let us go sacrifice to Yahweh
UST Allow us to go {to the desert} to worship Yahweh
(נֵלְכָה נִזְבְּחָה לַיהוָה)

Here the king is quoting another person's speech. This is a second-level quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by marking it with second-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation within a quotation.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sacrifice	to worship
to Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 5:18

ULT	UST
And now go! Work! And straw will not be given to you, but you will give the set quantity of bricks."	*Get back to work right now! We are not going to give you any straw, but you must keep making the same number of bricks!"*

ULT **And straw will not be given to you**
UST We are not going to give you any straw
(וְתֶבֶן לֹא־יִנָּתֵן לָכֶם)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The subject could be "I" (as in Pharaoh) or "we" (as in the Egyptians or Pharaoh and his taskmasters) or "my people." See UST.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to you … you will give**
UST you … but you must keep making
(לָכֶם & תִּתֵּנוּ)

Here, **you** means all the Israelites or the officers as representatives of all the Israelites. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Work	Get back to work

Exodus 5:19

ULT	UST
And the officers of the sons of Israel saw themselves in distress regarding the saying, "You shall not reduce the day-by-day task from your bricks."	*When {the king} said, "You must not make fewer bricks each day," the Israelite bosses understood how bad their life was.*

ULT **And the officers of the sons of Israel saw themselves in distress regarding the saying, "You shall not reduce the day-by-day task from your bricks**
UST When {the king} said, "You must not make fewer bricks each day," the Israelite bosses understood how bad their life was
(וַיִּרְאֹ֗ו שֹׁטְרֵ֤י בְנֵֽי־יִשְׂרָאֵל֙ אֹתָ֣ם בָּרֵ֔ע לֵאמֹ֖ר לֹא־תִגְרְעוּ֙ מִלִּבְנֵיכֶ֔ם דְּבַר־י֖וֹם בְּיוֹמֹֽו)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. See the UST.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **themselves**
UST their life was
(אֹתָם)

Here the officers are both the subject and object, because they are thinking about their own situation. Use a way that is natural in your language to indicate this.

Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

ULT **And … saw themselves in distress regarding the saying**
UST When {the king} said … understood how bad their life was
(וַיִּרְאֹ֗ו אֹתָ֣ם בָּרֵ֔ע לֵאמֹ֖ר)

Alternate translation: [knew that they were in trouble, because the king said] or [perceived themselves to be in danger, because the king said]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
of Israel	the Israelite
in distress	how bad
day	day
by-day	each

Exodus 5:20

ULT	UST
And they met Moses and Aaron, who were waiting to meet them when they came out from Pharaoh.	*As they left their meeting with the king, they met Aaron and Moses, who were waiting for them.*

ULT And they met
UST they met
(וַיִּפְגְּעוּ)

A new scene begins here, which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT And they met … to meet them when they came out
UST As they left … they met … for them
(וַיִּפְגְּעוּ & לִקְרָאתָם בְּצֵאתָם)

Here, **they** and **them** refer to the officers.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
and Aaron	Aaron and
Pharaoh	their meeting with the king

Exodus 5:21

ULT	UST
And they said to them, "May Yahweh look on you and judge; for you have caused our scent to stink in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of his servants, to give a sword into their hand to kill us."	*They said to Aaron and Moses, "We hope Yahweh notices that you have made the king and his officials hate us. We hope he punishes you two! You have made them think they should kill us!"*

ULT **May Yahweh look on you and judge**
UST We hope Yahweh notices … you … We hope he punishes … two
(יֵרֶא יְהוָה עֲלֵיכֶם וְיִשְׁפֹּט)

The Israelite officers used this form to curse Moses and Aaron.

ULT **on you and judge**
UST you … We hope he punishes … two
(עֲלֵיכֶם וְיִשְׁפֹּט)

You refers to Moses and Aaron. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a dual or plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **you have caused our scent to stink in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of his servants**
UST have made the king and his officials hate us … you
(הִבְאַשְׁתֶּם אֶת־רֵיחֵנוּ בְּעֵינֵי פַרְעֹה וּבְעֵינֵי עֲבָדָיו)

The Egyptians responded to the Israelites the same way they would respond to a foul odor. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you have caused Pharaoh and his servants to hate us]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **a sword into their hand**
UST made them think they should kill us
(חֶרֶב בְּיָדָם)

Here, **a sword into their hand** is a metonym for "a reason in their mind." The Israelites are afraid that the Egyptians will feel that they are doing the right thing if they kill the Israelites, because Moses and Aaron are making demands to the king and because the Egyptians view the Israelites as lazy and dangerous. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [them a reason to think they would be right]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
and judge	We hope he punishes
the … Pharaoh	the king
his servants	and his officials
a sword	made them think they should kill us
to kill us	made them think they should kill us

Exodus 5:22

ULT	UST
And Moses went back to Yahweh and said, "My Lord, why have you afflicted this people? Was this why you sent me?	*Moses left them and prayed to Yahweh again, "My Lord, why have you caused all these evil things to happen to your people? You sent me to help them, not hurt them.*

ULT Was this why you sent me
UST You sent me to help them, not hurt them
(לָמָּה זֶּה שְׁלַחְתָּנִי)

This question shows how disappointed Moses was that the Egyptians were treating the Israelites even more harshly now. He is expressing that he thinks God has caused the opposite of what he promised to happen. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [I thought you sent me to rescue them.]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
My Lord	My Lord
have you afflicted	you caused all these evil things to happen

Exodus 5:23

ULT	UST
And since I came to Pharaoh to speak in your name, he has afflicted this people. And you have certainly not rescued your people.”	*Ever since I went to the king and told him what you told me to say, he has treated your people very badly, and you have not done anything to help them!”*

ULT **in your name**
UST what you told me to say
(בִּשְׁמֶךָ)

Here, **in your name** indicates that Moses delivers Yahweh’s message. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [for you] or [your message for him]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And you have certainly not rescued**
UST and you have not done anything to help
(וְהַצֵּל לֹא־הִצַּלְתָּ)

In Hebrew, **rescued** is repeated for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language.

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
he has afflicted	he has treated … very badly
And … certainly	and you have … done anything to help
you have … rescued	and you have … done anything to help

Exodus 6

Exodus 6 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–13, 28–30: Yahweh repeats his commissioning of Moses after the bad events recorded in chapter 5
- v. 14–27: Genealogy of Moses and Aaron

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Repetition of events:

Most of the content of this chapter is very similar to the events and dialogue in chapters 3–4. For consistency, translators should consult the decisions they made there while keeping in mind that this narrative is not exactly the same. Also, verses 10–12 and verses 28–30 are very similar to each other. These events are probably a recommissioning of Moses. After his first encounter with Pharaoh went very poorly and the Israelites seem to reject God, Yahweh reminds Moses of his promises and power.

Referring to God

A name for God (**Yahweh**) and a title for God (**El Shaddai**) are mentioned in this chapter (6:2–3). The precise meaning of El Shaddai is not known, but most scholars think it means something like “almighty.” Translators who have worked on Genesis may find confusing the statement that Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob did not know Yahweh as the name of God.

Other possible translation difficulties:

With little explanation, a large portion of the chapter is devoted to the genealogy of Moses and Aaron. Some of the people in the genealogy lived much longer than is normal for humans today. If translators are not familiar with the lengths of people’s lives in the early days of the world (as recorded in Genesis, especially chapter 5), this may cause confusion.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Promised Land

According to the covenant Yahweh made with Abraham, Egypt is not the home of the Hebrew people. Their home is the Promised Land in Canaan. The people are to return home to their land. (See: covenant; and Promised Land)

God and his people

In verse 7, note the mention of a very important biblical theme of God being “your God” and the special relationship that his people have with him.

Exodus 6:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Now you will see what I will do to Pharaoh: for by a strong hand he will let them go; and by a strong hand he will drive them out of his land."	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Now you will see what I will do to the king when I make him let my people go. I will powerfully force him to chase them from his land!"*

ULT **Now you will see what I will do to Pharaoh: for by a strong hand he will let them go; and by a strong hand he will drive them out of his land**
UST Now you will see what I will do to the king when I make him let my people go. I will powerfully force him to chase them from his land
(עַתָּה תִרְאֶה אֲשֶׁר אֶעֱשֶׂה לְפַרְעֹה כִּי בְיָד חֲזָקָה יְשַׁלְּחֵם וּבְיָד חֲזָקָה יְגָרְשֵׁם מֵאַרְצוֹ)

This is a direct quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by marking it with first-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. There may be other quotations in this chapter; they will be marked by the same punctuation, but they will not have their own notes unless there is something unique about them.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **Now**
UST Now
(עַתָּה)

This refers to future events starting very soon. Alternate translation: [Starting soon] or [Very soon]

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT **by a strong hand … and by a strong hand**
UST I make him … I will powerfully force him
(בְיָד חֲזָקָה & וּבְיָד חֲזָקָה)

Here, **hand** is a metonym for power. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [by a strong power … and by a strong power]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **by a strong hand … and by a strong hand**
UST I make him … I will powerfully force him
(בְּיָד חֲזָקָה & וּבְיָד חֲזָקָה)

It is not clear in the text whose **hand** is referred to here. The options include: (1) Both refer to God's hand (forcing Pharaoh's actions) (2) Both refer to Pharaoh's hand (forcing the Israelites out) (3) They do not refer to the same person's hand; the first refers to God's and the second to Pharaoh's. The UST has followed (1), which is the most common interpretation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: (1) [by my strong hand … and by my strong hand]; (2) "by his strong hand … and by his strong hand" (3) "by my strong hand … and by his strong hand"

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **for by a strong hand he will let them go; and by a strong hand he will drive them out of his land**
UST when I make him let my people go. I will powerfully force him to chase them from his land
(כִּי בְיָד חֲזָקָה יְשַׁלְּחֵם וּבְיָד חֲזָקָה יְגָרְשֵׁם מֵאַרְצוֹ)

These two phrases mean similar things. God says the same thing twice, in similar ways, for emphasis. If saying the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: [I will force him to let my people leave the land] However, there is a slight difference in meaning, and you could also choose to bring that out in your translation. The second phrase intensifies the first by portraying Pharaoh as not merely letting the Israelites go, but as forcing them to leave the land. Alternate translation: [I will force him to let them go, in fact, I will force him to force them to leave his land]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **of his land**
UST from his land
(מֵאַרְצוֹ)

Alternate translation: [from Egypt]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Then Yahweh
Moses	Moses
to Pharaoh	to the king
he will drive them out	to chase them

ULT	UST
of his land	from his land

Exodus 6:2

ULT	UST
And God spoke to Moses, and said to him, "I am Yahweh	*God spoke to Moses again, "I am Yahweh.*

ULT And God spoke to Moses, and said to him
UST God spoke to Moses again
(וַיְדַבֵּר אֱלֹהִים אֶל־מֹשֶׁה וַיֹּאמֶר אֵלָיו)

There is a transition here. Before this verse, Yahweh was answering Moses' question more directly. At the beginning of this verse, Yahweh is reintroduced as "God" because he begins to make a clarifying statement about himself and his relationship with the Israelites and their ancestors as well as his plans for the Israelites. Much of this section repeats what Yahweh has already told Moses. You may want to consider a section break before this verse.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Moses	to Moses
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh

Exodus 6:3

ULT	UST
and I appeared to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob as El Shaddai; but by my name Yahweh I was not known to them.	*I showed myself to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob as God Almighty, but they did not fully comprehend {the meaning of} my name Yahweh.*

ULT as El Shaddai
UST as God Almighty
(בְּאֵל שַׁדָּי)

El Shaddai is a title for God that many scholars think means "almighty." You will need to decide if you will transliterate the term into your language or translate the meaning. Either approach has broad support. Alternate translation: [as the strongest God of all]

Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

ULT but by my name Yahweh I was not known to them
UST but they did not fully comprehend {the meaning of} my name Yahweh
(וּשְׁמִי יְהוָה לֹא נוֹדַעְתִּי לָהֶם)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [but they did not know me by my name Yahweh]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT but by my name Yahweh I was not known to them
UST but they did not fully comprehend {the meaning of} my name Yahweh
(וּשְׁמִי יְהוָה לֹא נוֹדַעְתִּי לָהֶם)

This statement is very difficult to understand as God's name, Yahweh, is used throughout Genesis, including by Abraham and others. There are many theories about what it means; the view followed by the UST is that now God is revealing to the Israelites a fuller meaning of his divine name than what Abraham and others knew. Alternate translation: [but my name Yahweh was not understood by them]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
Isaac	Isaac
Jacob	Jacob
as El	as God
Shaddai	Almighty
Yahweh	Yahweh

ULT	UST
I was … known	they did … fully comprehend

Exodus 6:4

ULT	UST
And moreover, I established my covenant with them, to give to them the land of Canaan, the land of their sojourning, in which they sojourned.	*I also agreed to bless them. I promised to give them, as their own, the land where the descendants of Canaan live. That was the land in which they lived as foreigners.*

ULT to give to them the land of Canaan
UST to give them, as their own, the land where the descendants of Canaan live
(לָֽתֵת לָהֶ֖ם אֶת־אֶ֥רֶץ כְּנָֽעַן)

This is the content of the covenant promise from God to his people. Some languages may need to make this part a direct quotation. To do so, begin a new sentence. Alternate translation: [I said, “I will give you the land of Canaan”]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT the land of their sojourning, in which they sojourned
UST That was the land in which they lived as foreigners
(אֵ֥ת אֶֽרֶץ מְגֻרֵיהֶ֖ם אֲשֶׁר־גָּ֣רוּ בָ֑הּ)

These two phrases mean similar things. If saying the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: [the land they lived in as temporary residents] or [the land that was not their home but where they lived as foreigners]

Support Reference: Parallelism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
my covenant	I promised
the land of	the land where the descendants of Canaan live
Canaan	the land where the descendants of Canaan live
the land of	That was the land
their sojourning	as foreigners
they sojourned	they lived

Exodus 6:5

ULT	UST
And moreover, I have heard the groaning of the sons of Israel, whom the Egyptians are enslaving, and I have remembered my covenant.	*Furthermore, I have heard the Israelites complaining because the Egyptians have made them slaves. I always remember what I promised.*

ULT **the groaning of**
UST complaining
(אֶת־נַאֲקַת)

Here, **groaning** means making sad sounds because of pain and suffering.

ULT **and I have remembered my covenant**
UST I always remember what I promised
(וָאֶזְכֹּר אֶת־בְּרִיתִי)

I have remembered my covenant means God is going to take action. Alternate translation: [I will keep my promise]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites
the Egyptians	the Egyptians
are enslaving	have made them slaves
my covenant	what I promised

Exodus 6:6

ULT	UST
Therefore, say to the sons of Israel, 'I am Yahweh. And I will bring you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians, and I will rescue you from their slavery. And I will redeem you with an outstretched arm and with great judgments.	*Therefore tell the Israelite people that I said this: 'I am Yahweh. I will take the Egyptian's heavy loads off your back. I will deliver you from being their slaves. I will very powerfully save you by punishing them very harshly.*

ULT Therefore
UST Therefore
(לָכֵן)

God is now telling Moses to deliver a message to the Israelites of what God is going to do because of everything that he said in verses 2–5. The reason-result relationship is strongly marked here, so translations should make sure to use a connector that marks verse 6–8 as a result of verses 2–5. Alternate translation: [Because of this]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT Therefore, say to the sons of Israel
UST Therefore tell the Israelite people that I said this
(לָכֵן אֱמֹר לִבְנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל)

This is a command from Yahweh to Moses. Alternate translation: [So Yahweh told Moses to say to the Israelites]

ULT you … you … you
UST your … you … you
(אֶתְכֶם & אֶתְכֶם & אֶתְכֶם)

Here every occurrence of **you** refers to the Israelites. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT from under the burdens of the Egyptians
UST the Egyptian's heavy loads off … back
(מִתַּחַת סִבְלֹת מִצְרַיִם)

This refers to all the hard work the Egyptians made the Israelites do. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from the hard work the Egyptians force you to do]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

> **ULT** **with an outstretched arm**
> **UST** very powerfully
> (בִּזְרֹועַ נְטוּיָה)

Here, **arm** is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's power, influence, and capacity for action. **Outstretched** means that he is using that power. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [by my great strength]

Support Reference: Metaphor

> **ULT** **and with … judgments**
> **UST** by punishing them
> (וּבִשְׁפָטִים)

Here, the term **judgments** refers to the plagues that God is about to send to harm Egypt and the Egyptians. Each plague is a response to Pharaoh's stubbornness. Alternate translation: [and by (greatly) harming the Egyptians]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelite people
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh
the Egyptians	the Egyptian's
and I will rescue	I will deliver
from their slavery	from being their slaves
And I will redeem	I will … save
and with … judgments	by punishing them

Exodus 6:7

ULT	UST
And I will take you to myself as a people, and I will be to you as God. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God, the one bringing you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians.	*I will claim you as my own people, and I will be the God {you worship}. You will truly know that I am Yahweh, your God who frees you from the heavy loads that the Egyptians make you carry.*

ULT **you … to you … And you will know … your God … you**
UST you … the God {you worship}. You will truly know … your God … you
(אֶתְכֶם & לָכֶם & וִידַעְתֶּם & אֱלֹהֵיכֶם & אֶתְכֶם)

Here every occurrence of **you** refers to the Israelites. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **from under the burdens of the Egyptians**
UST from the heavy loads that the Egyptians make you carry
(מִתַּחַת סִבְלוֹת מִצְרַיִם)

This refers to all the hard work the Egyptians forced upon the Israelites. See what you did in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [from the hard work the Egyptians force you to do]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
as God	the God {you worship}
And you will know	You will truly know
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh
your God	your God
the Egyptians	that the Egyptians make you carry

Exodus 6:8

ULT	UST
And I will bring you to the land that I raised my hand to give it to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob. And I will give it to you as a possession. I am Yahweh.'"	*I will bring you to the land that I swore to give to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob. I will give it to you, and it will be yours. I, Yahweh, am {promising this}.'"*

ULT you … to you
UST you … to you
(אֶתְכֶם & לָכֶם)

Here every occurrence of **you** refers to the Israelites. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT I raised my hand
UST I swore
(נָשָׂאתִי אֶת־יָדִי)

This is an action that signifies making an oath. Raising the hand may not have the same meaning in your culture, so you may need to use a different symbolic oath-taking action in your translation or simply translate the meaning. Alternate translation: [I promised]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT as a possession
UST and it will be yours
(מוֹרָשָׁה)

This means the Israelites will own the land. Alternate translation: [as your own land]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the land	the land
to Abraham	to Abraham
to Isaac	to Isaac
and to Jacob	and to Jacob
as a possession	and it will be yours
I am Yahweh	I, Yahweh, am {promising this}

Exodus 6:9

ULT	UST
And Moses spoke in this way to the sons of Israel, but they did not listen to Moses, because of shortness of spirit and because of hard slavery.	*Moses told that to the Israelites, but they did not believe what he said, because they were discouraged and overworked.*

ULT **but they did not listen to Moses, because of shortness of spirit and because of hard slavery**

UST but they did not believe what he said, because they were discouraged and overworked
(וְלֹא שָׁמְעוּ אֶל־מֹשֶׁה מִקֹּצֶר רוּחַ וּמֵעֲבֹדָה קָשָׁה)

In some languages it will be necessary to put the reason for the people not listening before the result. Alternate translation: [but because of shortness of spirit and because of hard service, they did not listen to Moses]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **because of shortness of spirit**

UST because they were discouraged
(מִקֹּצֶר רוּחַ)

Here, the people's **spirit** is spoken of as something that could be measured. By calling it "short," the author is saying they did not have very much motivation or hope. Alternate translation: [because they had no hope]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Israel	the Israelites
Moses	what he said
spirit	because they were discouraged
hard	and overworked
and because of … slavery	and overworked

Exodus 6:10

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Then Yahweh said to Moses,*

> **ULT saying**
> UST Then … said
> (לֵאמֹר)

This is used to mark the beginning of a direct quotation. It can be omitted if it is unnatural.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 6:11

ULT	UST
“Go speak to Pharaoh, king of Egypt, that he should let the sons of Israel go from his land.”	*“Go tell the king of Egypt that he must allow the Israelites to leave his land!”*

ULT that he should let the sons of Israel go from his land
UST that he must allow the Israelites to leave his land
(וְיִשַּׁלַּח אֶת־בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל מֵאַרְצוֹ)

This statement tells Moses what to discuss with Pharaoh. Some languages may need to covey this information as a direct quotation. Be careful to change the third-person pronouns to second-person pronouns if you do this. Alternate translation: [and say, ‘You must let the sons of Israel go from your land’]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king of Egypt
king of	the king of Egypt
Egypt	the king of Egypt
Israel	the Israelites
from his land	his land

Exodus 6:12

ULT	UST
And Moses spoke before the face of Yahweh, saying, "Behold, the sons of Israel have not listened to me, so how will Pharaoh listen to me? And I have uncircumcised lips."	*But Moses said to Yahweh, "Certainly, if the Israelites have not paid attention to what I told them, the king will not pay attention to what I tell him, since I am a poor speaker."*

ULT **before the face of Yahweh**
UST to Yahweh
(לִפְנֵי יְהוָה)

Here, **face** represents the presence of a person. There may also be a hint of impudence in Moses' attitude that is conveyed by the words **before the face of Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in the presence of Yahweh] or [boldly to Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Behold**
UST Certainly, if
(הֶן)

Behold is a term meant to focus the attention of the listener on what the speaker is about to say. If there is not a good way to translate this term in your language, this term can be omitted from the translation, or you can use an alternate translation like "as you know."

ULT **Behold, the sons of Israel have not listened to me, so how will Pharaoh listen to me**
UST Certainly, if the Israelites have not paid attention to what I told them, the king will not pay attention to what I tell him
(הֶן בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל֙ לֹא־שָׁמְע֣וּ אֵלַ֔י וְאֵיךְ֙ יִשְׁמָעֵ֣נִי פַּרְעֹ֔ה)

Moses asked this question in hopes that God would change his mind about using Moses. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [Since the Israelites did not listen to me, neither will Pharaoh!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Behold, the sons of Israel have not listened to me, so how will Pharaoh listen to me**
UST Certainly, if the Israelites have not paid attention to what I told them, the king will not pay attention to what I tell him
(הֵן בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל֙ לֹא־שָׁמְע֣וּ אֵלַ֔י וְאֵ֣יךְ יִשְׁמַ֥עֵנִי פַרְעֹ֖ה)

Moses is presenting a reasoned argument: since this, then probably that. Use a natural way of expressing such arguments in your language. Alternate translation: [Since the sons of Israel have not listened to me, why would you think Pharaoh would listen to me?]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And I have uncircumcised lips**
UST since I am a poor speaker
(וַאֲנִ֖י עֲרַ֣ל שְׂפָתָֽיִם)

This is a metaphor that means that Moses was not a good speaker. It is somewhat crude; your translation of this phrase could convey that Moses spoke impolitely. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And I do not speak well]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	the Israelites
Pharaoh	the king
uncircumcised	am a poor speaker

Exodus 6:13

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron, and he gave them a command to the sons of Israel and to Pharaoh, king of Egypt: to bring the sons of Israel out from the land of Egypt.	*But Yahweh spoke to Moses and Aaron and commanded them to go to the Israelites and to the king of Egypt in order to free the Israelites from their slavery in Egypt.*

ULT **and he gave them a command to the sons of Israel and to Pharaoh**
UST and commanded them to go to the Israelites and to the king of Egypt
(וַיְצַוֵּם אֶל־בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל וְאֶל־פַּרְעֹה)

This phrase is somewhat difficult to translate. Here, **command** could also be translated as "charge" or "commission." Another difficulty is knowing to whom the command is directed: is it to Moses and Aaron or are they to give the command to Pharaoh and the Israelites; thus **to** could be translated as "for" or "regarding." Alternate translation: [and he charged them regarding the sons of Israel and regarding Pharaoh] or [and he gave them a command for the sons of Israel and for Pharaoh] or [and he gave them a commission to the sons of Israel and to Pharaoh]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
Israel	the Israelites
Pharaoh	the king of Egypt
king of	the king of Egypt
Egypt	the king of Egypt
the … Israel	the Israelites
from … land of	from their slavery
the … Egypt	in Egypt

Exodus 6:14

ULT	UST
These were the heads of the houses of their fathers: The sons of Reuben, the firstborn of Israel: Hanoch and Pallu, Hezron and Karmi. These were the clans of Reuben.	*These are the original clan leaders: Jacob's oldest son Reuben had these sons: Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Karmi. The clans of Reuben are descended from them.*

Note:

Verses 14–27 are background information. Use the natural form in your language for expressing background information.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **the heads of**
UST the original clan leaders
(רָאשֵׁי)

Here, **heads** refers to the original leaders of the clan. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the ancestors of]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Reuben … Israel: Hanoch and Pallu, Hezron and Karmi … Reuben**
UST Jacob's … Reuben … Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Karmi. The clans of Reuben are descended from them
(רְאוּבֵן & יִשְׂרָאֵל חֲנֹךְ וּפַלּוּא חֶצְרֹון וְכַרְמִי & רְאוּבֵן)

These are the names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the houses of	the original clan leaders
Reuben	Reuben
the firstborn of	oldest son
Israel	Jacob's
Hanoch	Hanok
the clans of	The clans of Reuben are descended from them
Reuben	The clans of Reuben are descended from them

Exodus 6:15

ULT	UST
And the sons of Simeon were Jemuel, and Jamin, and Ohad, and Jakin, and Zohar, and Shaul—the son of a Canaanite woman. These were the clans of Simeon.	*The sons of Simeon were: Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jakin, Zohar, and Shaul. Shaul's mother was a woman from the land of Canaan. They were ancestors of clans that have those same names.*

ULT Simeon … Jemuel, and Jamin, and Ohad, and Jakin, and Zohar, and Shaul … Simeon

UST The sons of Simeon were: Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jakin, Zohar, and Shaul … They were ancestors of clans that have those same names

(שִׁמְעוֹן יְמוּאֵל וְיָמִין וְאֹהַד וְיָכִין וְצֹחַר וְשָׁאוּל & שִׁמְעוֹן)

These are the names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Simeon	The sons of Simeon
and Shaul	and Shaul
a Canaanite woman	Shaul's mother was a woman from the land of Canaan
the clans of	They were ancestors of clans that have those same names
Simeon	They were ancestors of clans that have those same names

Exodus 6:16

ULT	UST
And these are the names of the sons of Levi, from their genealogy: Gershon, and Kohath, and Merari. And the years of the life of Levi were 137 years.	*These are the names of the descendants of Levi in each generation: Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. Levi was 137 years old when he died.*

ULT Levi … Gershon, and Kohath, and Merari … Levi
UST the names of the descendants of Levi … Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. Levi was
(לֵוִי & גֵּרְשׁוֹן וּקְהָת וּמְרָרִי & לֵוִי)

These are the names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT 137
UST 137
(שֶׁבַע וּשְׁלֹשִׁים וּמְאַת)

Alternate translation: [one hundred thirty-seven]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levi	the names of the descendants of Levi
years … were	years
Levi	Levi was
And the … of … years	old

Exodus 6:17

ULT	UST
The sons of Gershon were Libni and Shimei, according to their clans.	*The sons of Gershon were Libni and Shimei. They were ancestors of clans that have those names.*

ULT Gershon … Libni and Shimei

UST The sons of Gershon were Libni and Shimei

(גֵּרְשׁוֹן לִבְנִי וְשִׁמְעִי)

These are the names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
according to their clans	They were ancestors of clans that have those names

Exodus 6:18

ULT	UST
And the sons of Kohath were Amram and Izhar and Hebron and Uzziel. And the years of the life of Kohath were 133 years.	*The sons of Kohath were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. Kohath was 133 years old when he died.*

ULT Kohath … Amram and Izhar and Hebron and Uzziel … Kohath
UST The sons of Kohath were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. Kohath … old when he died
(קְהָ֖ת עַמְרָ֣ם וְיִצְהָ֑ר וְחֶבְרוֹן֙ וְעֻזִּיאֵ֔ל & קְהָ֖ת)

These are the names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT 133
UST 133
(שָׁלֹ֣שׁ וּשְׁלֹשִׁ֔ים וּמְאַ֥ת)

Alternate translation: [one hundred thirty-three]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And the years of	Kohath … old when he died
were … years	was … years

Exodus 6:19

ULT	UST
And the sons of Merari were Mahli and Mushi. These were the clans of the Levites, according to their genealogy.	*The sons of Merari were Mahli and Mushi. These were ancestors of clans that descended from Levi by each generation.*

ULT Merari … Mahli and Mushi

UST The sons of Merari were Mahli and Mushi

(מְרָרִי מַחְלִי וּמוּשִׁי)

These are the names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the clans of	were ancestors of clans that descended from Levi
the Levites	were ancestors of clans that descended from Levi

Exodus 6:20

ULT	UST
And Amram took Jochebed, his aunt, as a wife for himself. And she bore him Aaron and Moses. And the years of the life of Amram were 137 years.	*Amram married his father's sister, Jochebed. She was the mother of Aaron and Moses. Amram lived 137 years.*

ULT Amram … Aaron … Moses … Amram
UST Amram … Aaron … Moses. Amram
(עַמְרָם & אֶת־אַהֲרֹן & מֹשֶׁה & עַמְרָם)

These are the names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT Jochebed
UST Jochebed
(אֶת־יוֹכֶבֶד)

This is the name of a woman.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT his aunt
UST his father's sister
(דֹּדָתוֹ)

Here the term **his aunt** specifically means his father's sister. If your language uses a different term that is specific in this way, translators should use it.

Support Reference: Kinship

ULT 137
UST 137
(שֶׁבַע וּשְׁלֹשִׁים וּמְאַת)

Alternate translation: [one hundred thirty-seven]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And she bore	She was the mother of
Aaron	Aaron
Moses	Moses
And the years of	years
were … years	years

Exodus 6:21

ULT	UST
And the sons of Izhar were Korah, and Nepheg, and Zichri.	*The sons of Izhar were Korah, Nepheg, and Zichri.*

ULT Izhar were Korah, and Nepheg, and Zichri

UST The sons of Izhar were Korah, Nepheg, and Zichri

(יִצְהָר קֹרַח וְנֶפֶג וְזִכְרִי׃)

These are the names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
were Korah	were Korah

Exodus 6:22

ULT	UST
And the sons of Uzziel were Mishael, and Elzaphan, and Sithri.	*The sons of Uzziel were Mishael, Elzaphan, and Sithri.*

ULT Uzziel were Mishael, and Elzaphan, and Sithri

UST The sons of Uzziel were Mishael, Elzaphan, and Sithri

(עֻזִּיאֵ֥ל מִישָׁאֵ֖ל וְאֶלְצָפָ֑ן וְסִתְרִֽי)

These are the names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Exodus 6:23

ULT	UST
And Aaron took Elisheba, the daughter of Amminadab, the sister of Nahshon, as a wife for himself. And she bore him Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar.	*Aaron married Elisheba. She was the daughter of Amminadab and sister of Nahshon. Elisheba gave birth to Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.*

ULT **Aaron … Amminadab … Nahshon … Nadab … Abihu, Eleazar … Ithamar**
UST Aaron … Amminadab … of Nahshon … to Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar
(אַהֲרֹן & עַמִּינָדָב & נַחְשׁוֹן & אֶת־נָדָב & אֲבִיהוּא אֶת־אֶלְעָזָר & אִיתָמָר)

These are the names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Elisheba**
UST Elisheba
(אֶת־אֱלִישֶׁבַע)

This is the name of a woman.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
And she bore	Elisheba gave birth
Eleazar	Eleazar

Exodus 6:24

ULT	UST
And the sons of Korah were Assir, and Elkanah, and Abiasaph. These were the clans of the Korahites.	*The sons of Korah were Assir, Elkanah, and Abiasaph. They were the ancestors of the Korahite people.*

ULT Korah were Assir, and Elkanah, and Abiasaph
UST The sons of Korah were Assir, Elkanah, and Abiasaph
(קֹרַח אַסִּיר וְאֶלְקָנָה וַאֲבִיאָסָף)

These are the names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT the Korahites
UST were the ancestors of the Korahite people
(הַקָּרְחִי)

This was the name of the clan of people descended from Korah.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Korah	The sons of Korah
the clans of	were the ancestors of the Korahite people
the Korahites	were the ancestors of the Korahite people

Exodus 6:25

ULT	UST
And Eleazar, son of Aaron took a wife for himself from the daughters of Putiel. And she bore him Phinehas. These were the heads of the fathers of the Levites, according to their clans.	*Aaron's son Eleazar married one of the daughters of Putiel, and she gave birth to Phinehas. These were the clan leaders descended from Levi in each generation.*

ULT And Eleazar … Aaron … Putiel … Phinehas
UST Aaron … Eleazar … of Putiel … to Phinehas
(וְאֶלְעָזָר & אַהֲרֹן & פּוּטִיאֵל & אֶת־פִּינְחָס)

These are the names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT the heads of
UST were the clan leaders descended from Levi
(רָאשֵׁי)

Here, **heads** represents family leaders. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [These were the leaders of the families]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And Eleazar	Eleazar
Aaron	Aaron
And she bore	and she gave birth
Phinehas	to Phinehas
the Levites	were the clan leaders descended from Levi
according to their clans	in each generation

Exodus 6:26

ULT	UST
It was Aaron and Moses to whom Yahweh said, "Bring out the sons of Israel from the land of Egypt by their hosts."	*Aaron and Moses were the ones to whom Yahweh said, "Lead all the Israelites out of Egypt organized as army units."*

ULT by their hosts
UST organized as army units
(עַל־צִבְאֹתָם)

The term **hosts** refers to a large group of people often organized into groups for war.

Alternate translation: [by their groups] or [by their divisions]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
and Moses	and Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	all the Israelites
from … land of	of Egypt
the … Egypt	of Egypt

Exodus 6:27

ULT	UST
They were the ones who spoke to Pharaoh, king of Egypt, to bring out the sons of Israel from Egypt. It was Moses and Aaron.	*They were the ones who spoke to the king of Egypt in order to bring the Israelites out of Egypt.*

ULT to bring out
UST in order to bring … out
(לְהוֹצִיא)

This expresses their goal when they spoke to Pharaoh. Use a natural way in your language for indicating purpose. See the UST.

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	king of
king of	king of
Egypt	the … Egypt
Israel	the Israelites
from Egypt	of Egypt
Moses	They
and Aaron	They

Exodus 6:28

ULT	UST
And it happened on a day that Yahweh spoke to Moses in the land of Egypt,	*On the day that Yahweh spoke to Moses in Egypt,*

ULT And it happened on a day that
UST On the day that
(וַיְהִי בְּיוֹם)

This marks a transition from the record of the genealogy back to the narrative. Consider placing a section break at the start of this verse. Alternate translation: [One day]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
on a day	On the day
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
in the land of	in Egypt
Egypt	in Egypt

Exodus 6:29

ULT	UST
and Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, “I am Yahweh. Speak to Pharaoh, king of Egypt, everything that I speak to you.”	*he said, “I am Yahweh. Tell the king everything that I say to you.”*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	he
Moses	said
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh
Pharaoh	the king
king of	the king
Egypt	the king

Exodus 6:30

ULT	UST
But Moses said to the face of Yahweh, "Behold, I have uncircumcised lips, so how will Pharaoh listen to me?"	*But Moses said to Yahweh, "Please listen to me. I am not a good speaker. So why should the king listen to what I tell him?"*

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST to Yahweh
(לִפְנֵי יְהוָה)

Here, **face** represents the presence of a person. There may also be a hint of impudence in Moses' attitude that is conveyed by saying he spoke before **the face of Yahweh**. See how you translated this in 6:12. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in the presence of Yahweh] or [boldly to Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Behold, I have uncircumcised lips, so how will Pharaoh listen to me**
UST Please listen to me. I am not a good speaker. So why should the king listen to what I tell him
(הֵן אֲנִי֙ עֲרַ֣ל שְׂפָתַ֔יִם וְאֵ֖יךְ יִשְׁמַ֣ע אֵלַ֑י פַּרְעֹֽה)

Moses asks this question hoping to change God's mind about sending him. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [Behold, I am not a good speaker. Pharaoh will certainly not listen to me!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Behold**
UST Please listen to me
(הֵן)

Behold is a term meant to focus the attention of the listener on what the speaker is about to say. If there is not a good way to translate this term in your language, this term can be omitted from the translation, or you can use an alternate translation like "as you know."

ULT I have uncircumcised lips
UST I am not a good speaker
(אֲנִי֙ עֲרַ֣ל שְׂפָתַ֔יִם)

This is a metaphor that means that Moses thought he was not a good speaker. It is somewhat crude, and your translation of this phrase could convey that Moses spoke impolitely. See how you translated this in 6:12. Alternate translation: [I always fail to speak well]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
have uncircumcised	not a good speaker
Pharaoh	the king

Exodus 7

Exodus 7 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–9: The end of Yahweh's re-sending of Moses and Aaron to Pharaoh
- v. 10–13: Pharaoh's first refusal, the sign of the snakes
- v. 14–25: First plague: the Nile turns to blood

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Miracles

When Yahweh had Moses perform miracles, Pharaoh's men were able to copy these miracles. It is unknown how they were able to do this, but since it was not from Yahweh, they were probably done under some evil power. (See: miracle, wonder, sign; and evil, wicked, wickedness, unpleasant)

Pharaoh's hard heart

Pharaoh's heart is often described as hard, strong, or heavy in this chapter. This means that he was not willing to obey Yahweh's instructions.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

- Moses as God to Pharaoh
- A number of difficult terms: prophet, signs, wonders, miracles, sorcerers, magicians, magic, judgments, canals, reservoirs
- The use of "heart" to refer to the seat of will and emotion
- Up to third-level quotations

Exodus 7:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Look, I have made you God to Pharaoh, and your brother Aaron will be your prophet.	*Yahweh answered, "See, I am putting you in front of the king {like} a god, and your brother Aaron will {speak for you like} a prophet.*

ULT Moses
UST answered
(מֹשֶׁה)

After this phrase, a direct quote begins that continues to the end of 7:5. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening first-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation. There may be other quotations in this chapter; they will be marked by the same punctuation, but they will not have their own notes unless there is something unique about them.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT Look
UST See
(רְאֵה)

This is used to draw attention to surprising information that follows. Alternate translation: [Listen carefully]

ULT I have made you God to Pharaoh
UST I am putting you in front of the king {like} a god
(נְתַתִּיךָ אֱלֹהִים לְפַרְעֹה)

This means Moses would represent the same authority to Pharaoh as God did to Moses. See how you translated the very similar phrase in Exodus 4:16. Alternate translation: [I will cause Pharaoh to consider you as a god]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and your brother Aaron will be your prophet**
UST and your brother Aaron will {speak for you like} a prophet
(וְאַהֲרֹן אָחִיךָ יִהְיֶה נְבִיאֶךָ)

This phrase compares Aaron to a prophet, because Aaron will actually be the one who proclaims to Pharaoh what Moses tells him. See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 4:16. Alternate translation: [and Aaron your brother will act like your prophet]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	answered
God	{like} a god
to Pharaoh	in front of the king
and … Aaron	and … Aaron
your prophet	{speak for you like} a prophet

Exodus 7:2

ULT	UST
You shall say everything that I will command you. And your brother Aaron shall speak to Pharaoh that he should let the sons of Israel go from his land.	*You must tell everything I instruct you to your {older} brother Aaron, and he will tell it all to the king. He must tell the king to let the Israelites leave his land.*

ULT your brother
UST your {older} brother
(אָחִיךָ)

Aaron is older than Moses. If your language uses a different term for the sibling relationship based on gender and age order, choose the appropriate one.

Support Reference: Kinship

ULT that he should let the sons of Israel go from his land
UST to let the Israelites leave his land
(וְשִׁלַּח אֶת־בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל מֵאַרְצוֹ)

Some languages may need to make this a direct quotation. If so, be sure to mark it as a second-level quotation, subordinate to Yahweh's main speech. See what you did in 6:25.
Alternate translation: [saying, "You must let the sons of Israel go from your land"]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT from his land
UST his land
(מֵאַרְצוֹ)

Alternate translation: [from Egypt]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And … Aaron	to … Aaron
Pharaoh	the king … the king
Israel	the Israelites
from his land	his land

Exodus 7:3

ULT	UST
But I will harden the heart of Pharaoh, and I will multiply my signs and my miracles in the land of Egypt.	*But I will make the king stubborn. Because of this, even though I will do many kinds of miracles here in Egypt,*

ULT will harden the heart of Pharaoh
UST will make the king stubborn. Because of this
(אַקְשֶׁה אֶת־לֵב פַּרְעֹה)

This means God will make him stubborn. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his **heart** were **hard**. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. See how you translated this in Exodus 4:21, but note the slightly different metaphor there: the heart being strong vs. **hard** here. Alternate translation: [will cause Pharaoh to be stubborn]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT my signs and my miracles
UST of miracles
(אֶת־אֹתֹתַי וְאֶת־מוֹפְתָי)

The words **signs** and **wonders** mean basically the same thing. God uses them to emphasize the greatness of what he will do in Egypt. If your language does not use repetition in this way, you can combine them.

Support Reference: Doublet

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
will harden	will make … stubborn. Because of this
Pharaoh	the king
and I will multiply	even though I will do many kinds
my signs	of miracles
my miracles	of miracles
in the land of	here in Egypt
Egypt	here in Egypt

Exodus 7:4

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh will not listen to you, so I will put my hand on Egypt and will bring out my armies, my people, the sons of Israel, from the land of Egypt with great judgments.	*the king will not obey you. Then I will punish the Egyptians very severely and will lead my people, the Israelites, out of Egypt as an army.*

ULT **to you**
UST you
(אֲלֵכֶם)

Here, **you** means Moses and Aaron. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a dual form (if you have one) or plural form (if not) here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **my hand**
UST Then I will punish … very severely
(אֶת־יָדִי)

The words **my hand** represent God's great power. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [my power]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **on Egypt**
UST the Egyptians
(בְּמִצְרָיִם)

Here, **on Egypt** refers to the land and everything in it, including people, animals, and plants. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **my armies, my people, the sons of Israel**
UST my people, the Israelites … as an army
(אֶת־צִבְאֹתַי אֶת־עַמִּי בְנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל)

These phrases refer to the Israelites in three different ways; they do not refer to three different groups of people. Here, **armies** is the same word translated as "hosts" in Exodus 6:26. Alternate translation: [the armies of my Israelite people]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
on Egypt	the Egyptians
Israel	the Israelites
from the land of	out of Egypt
Egypt	out of Egypt
with … judgments	Then I will punish … very severely

Exodus 7:5

ULT	UST
And the Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh when I stretch out my hand over Egypt to bring the sons of Israel out from their midst."	*Once I have proven how powerful I am to the Egyptians by rescuing the Israelites from being their slaves, they will know that I am Yahweh."*

ULT **And the Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh**
UST they will know that I am Yahweh
(וְיָדְעוּ מִצְרַיִם כִּי־אֲנִי יְהוָה)

This is the result of God rescuing the Israelites. If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **when I stretch out my hand over**
UST Once I have proven how powerful I am to
(בְּנָטֹתִי אֶת־יָדִי עַל)

This phrase represents God's great power. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [when I show my powerful acts against]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to bring the sons of Israel out from their midst**
UST by rescuing the Israelites from being their slaves
(וְהוֹצֵאתִי אֶת־בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל מִתּוֹכָם)

The goal of God's powerful acts was to rescue the Israelites. Use a natural way in your language for indicating purpose. Alternate translation: [so that I bring the sons of Israel out from their midst]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Egyptians	they
And … will know	will know
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh
Egypt	the Egyptians
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 7:6

ULT	UST
And Moses and Aaron did; they did just as Yahweh commanded them.	*Moses and Aaron did everything that Yahweh told them to do.*

ULT **And … did; they did**
UST did … to do
(וַיַּעַשׂ & עָשׂוּ)

This repetition emphasizes the statement. If saying the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one.

Support Reference: Parallelism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
and Aaron	and Aaron
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 7:7

ULT	UST
And Moses was a son of 80 years and Aaron was a son of 83 years when they were speaking to Pharaoh.	*When {God sent} them to talk to the king of Egypt, Moses was 80 years old and Aaron was 83 years old.*

Note:

This verse contains background information. Use the natural form in your language for expressing background information.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **80 … 83**
UST was 80 … was 83
(שְׁמֹנִים & שָׁלֹשׁ וּשְׁמֹנִים)

Alternate translation: [eighty … eighty-three]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **was a son of 80 years … was a son of 83 years**
UST was 80 years old … was 83 years old
(בֶּן־שְׁמֹנִים שָׁנָה & בֶּן־שָׁלֹשׁ וּשְׁמֹנִים שָׁנָה)

The phrase **a son of**, followed by a number and then **years**, is an idiom that refers to their age. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language.

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And Moses	Moses
and Aaron	and Aaron
Pharaoh	the king of Egypt

Exodus 7:8

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses and to Aaron saying,	*Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron,*

ULT **And Yahweh said**
UST Yahweh said
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָֹה)

This verse marks the beginning of new sections, both major and minor. The major story of the plagues and Exodus itself unfolds from here until after Pharaoh's army is defeated at the Sea of Reeds (now known as the Red Sea). The next minor event is the miracle of the rods becoming snakes. Either by using particular forms that your language uses to mark transitions or by making a section break and heading, this transition should be marked for readers.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **saying**
UST said
(לֵאמֹר)

Here, **saying** marks the beginning of a direct quote and is often omitted in translation when such a construction is unnatural in the target language. See UST.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	to Moses
Aaron	Aaron

Exodus 7:9

ULT	UST
“For Pharaoh will speak to you, saying, ‘Create a miracle yourself,’ and you shall say to Aaron, ‘Take your staff and throw it down before the face of Pharaoh; let it become a serpent.’”	*“If the king says to you, ‘Show me that God sent you by performing a miracle,’ then say to Aaron, ‘Throw your staff down in front of the king in order that it may become a snake.’”*

ULT **For Pharaoh will speak to you, saying, ‘Create a miracle yourself,’ and you shall say to Aaron, ‘Take your staff and throw it down before the face of Pharaoh; let it become a serpent**

UST If the king says to you, ‘Show me that God sent you by performing a miracle,’ then say to Aaron, ‘Throw your staff down in front of the king in order that it may become a snake

(כִּי֩ יְדַבֵּ֨ר אֲלֵכֶ֜ם פַּרְעֹ֗ה לֵאמֹר֙ תְּנ֣וּ לָכֶ֔ם מוֹפֵ֖ת וְאָמַרְתָּ֣ אֶל־אַהֲרֹ֗ן קַ֚ח אֶת־מַטְּךָ֣ וְהַשְׁלֵךְ֮ לִפְנֵי־פַרְעֹה֒ יְהִ֣י לְתַנִּ֔ין)

The two quotations in this verse could be stated as indirect quotes. Alternate translation: [When Pharaoh tells you to do a miracle, then you will tell Aaron to take his staff and throw it down before Pharaoh so that it may become a snake]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **Take your staff and throw it down before the face of Pharaoh; let it become a serpent**

UST Throw your staff down in front of the king in order that it may become a snake

(קַ֚ח אֶת־מַטְּךָ֣ וְהַשְׁלֵךְ֮ לִפְנֵי־פַרְעֹה֒ יְהִ֣י לְתַנִּ֔ין)

This is a second-level direct quotation. The second level may either end after **Pharaoh** or at the end of the verse. If you did not decide to make it an indirect quotation, it may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by marking it with second-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation within a quotation.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **saying**

UST says

(לֵאמֹר)

Here, **saying** marks the beginning of a direct quote and is often omitted in translation when such a construction is unnatural in the target language. See UST.

ULT **to you … yourself**
UST to you, ‘Show me that God sent you by performing
(לָכֶם & אֲלֵכֶם)

These pronouns are plural, referring to Moses and Aaron. If your language uses different forms of “you” depending on the number of people addressed, use a dual form (if you have one) or plural form (if not) here.

Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural

ULT **before the face of Pharaoh**
UST in front of the king
(לִפְנֵי־פַרְעֹה)

Although **before the face of** still has the standard figurative meaning of “in the presence of,” it is a much more literal use here. Moses and Aaron are to actually do the miracles in front of Pharaoh so that Pharaoh can see them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [so Pharaoh can see it]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
a miracle	a miracle
Aaron	Aaron
your staff	your staff
Pharaoh	the king
a serpent	in order that it may become a snake

Exodus 7:10

ULT	UST
And Moses and Aaron entered in to Pharaoh, and they did just as Yahweh commanded. And Aaron threw down his staff before the face of Pharaoh and before the faces of his servants, and it became a serpent.	*So Aaron and Moses went to the king and did what Yahweh told them to do. Aaron threw his staff down in front of the king and his officials, and it became a snake.*

ULT **before the face of Pharaoh and before the faces of his servants**
UST in front of the king and his officials
(לִפְנֵי פַרְעֹה וְלִפְנֵי עֲבָדָיו)

This time, while **before the face of** still has the standard figurative meaning of "in the presence of," it is a much more literal use here. Aaron actually does this right in front of Pharaoh and his servants so they could watch what happens. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [where Pharaoh and his servants could see it]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **his servants**
UST his officials
(עֲבָדָיו)

Here, **his servants** does not refer common servants but probably refers to important advisors that would be in the king's court.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
and Aaron	Aaron and
Pharaoh	the king
Yahweh	Yahweh
Aaron	Aaron
his staff	his staff
Pharaoh	the king
his servants	his officials
a serpent	and it became a snake

Exodus 7:11

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh also called for wise men and sorcerers. And the magicians of Egypt also did so by their magic.	*Then the king called his wise men and men who did magic. They did the same thing, using their magic.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Then the king
wise men	his wise men
and sorcerers	and men who did magic
the magicians of	They
Egypt	They
by their magic	using their magic

Exodus 7:12

ULT	UST
And each man threw down his staff, and they became serpents. And the staff of Aaron swallowed up their staffs.	*They all threw down their staffs, and the staffs became snakes. Then Aaron's snake ate their snakes!*

ULT man
UST They all
(אִישׁ)

Alternate translation: [magician]

ULT And … swallowed up
UST Then … ate
(וַיִּבְלַע)

Alternate translation: [ate up] or [devoured]

ULT And the staff of Aaron swallowed up their staffs
UST Then Aaron's snake ate their snakes
(וַיִּבְלַע מַטֵּה־אַהֲרֹן אֶת־מַטֹּתָם)

This is a surprising and amusing twist which was not what the magicians expected. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast.

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT the staff of … their staffs
UST s snake … their snakes
(מַטֵּה & אֶת־מַטֹּתָם)

It may be necessary in some languages to translate the word **staff** as "snake," since it had turned into one. This may be true if it would not make sense in the target language to say (because it is not living) that a staff swallowed or ate something. It may also may not make sense in some languages to speak of the snakes as staffs once they have been transformed.

Support Reference: Personification

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
his staff	their staffs
serpents	and the staffs became snakes
the staff of	s snake
Aaron	Aaron

ULT	UST
their staffs	their snakes

Exodus 7:13

ULT	UST
And the heart of Pharaoh was strong, and he did not listen to them, just as Yahweh had spoken.	*But, just as Yahweh had said, the king continued to be stubborn and would not obey what Aaron and Moses said.*

ULT And the heart of Pharaoh was strong
UST But … the king continued to be stubborn
(וַיֶּחֱזַק לֵב פַּרְעֹה)

Pharaoh's stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his **heart** were **strong**. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. See how you translated this in Exodus 4:21, but note that this is a neutral statement (it does not say that anyone caused him to be stubborn, as many others in this part of the narrative do). Alternate translation: [Pharaoh was still defiant]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT just as Yahweh had spoken
UST just as Yahweh had said
(כַּאֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יְהוָה)

Because Yahweh's prediction precedes this event, some languages may need to place the reference to that prediction before the statement that it was fulfilled. See UST.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 7:14

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "The heart of Pharaoh is heavy; he has refused to let the people go.	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "The king is very stubborn. He refuses to allow my people to go.*

ULT The heart of Pharaoh is heavy
UST The king is very stubborn
(כָּבֵד לֵב פַּרְעֹה)

Now Yahweh speaks of Pharaoh's stubborn attitude as if Pharaoh's **heart** were **heavy**. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. This is a neutral statement (it does not say that anyone caused him to be stubborn as many others in this part of the narrative do). See how you translated this in Exodus 7:13, but note the slightly different metaphor there: the heart being strong vs **heavy** here. Alternate translation: [Pharaoh is defiant]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT And … said
UST Then … said
(וַיֹּאמֶר)

A new scene begins here, which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Pharaoh	The king

Exodus 7:15

ULT	UST
Go to Pharaoh. Behold, in the morning he goes out to the water, so station yourself to meet him on the edge of the river. And take in your hand the staff that turned into a snake.	*So go meet him as he is going down to the Nile River in the morning. Wait for him on the riverbank. Take with you the staff that became a snake.*

ULT **Behold**
UST as he is going down
(הִנֵּה)

Behold is used to draw attention to information that follows.

ULT **he goes out to the water**
UST as he is going down to the Nile River
(יֹצֵא הַמָּיְמָה)

There are various theories as to what Pharaoh would go down to the Nile to do, but there is no need to speculate or specify in the translation.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	him
the river	the riverbank
And … the staff	the staff
into a snake	a snake

Exodus 7:16

ULT	UST
And say to him, 'Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, has sent me to you to say, "Let my people go, and they will serve me in the wilderness. And behold, until now, you have not listened."	*Say to him, 'The God {named} Yahweh, the one we Hebrews worship, sent me to you to tell you to let his people go in order that they may worship him in the desert. But you still have not obeyed.*

ULT **And say to him**
UST Say to him
(וְאָמַרְתָּ אֵלָיו)

Alternate translation: [Say to Pharaoh]

ULT **the God of the Hebrews**
UST The God … the one we Hebrews worship
(אֱלֹהֵי הָעִבְרִים)

Yahweh claimed the Hebrews (Israelites) as his own. They worshiped him. This is a possessive of social relationship.

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **Let my people go, and they will serve me in the wilderness. And behold, until now, you have not listened**
UST to let his people go in order that they may worship him in the desert. But you still have not obeyed
(שַׁלַּח אֶת־עַמִּי וְיַעַבְדֻנִי בַּמִּדְבָּר וְהִנֵּה לֹא־שָׁמַעְתָּ עַד־כֹּה)

This is a third-level quotation. It should be marked in some manner that distinguishes it from the outer levels. Alternatively, you could translate it as an indirect quotation as in the UST. If you do this, take care to adjust the pronoun person (second/third) as appropriate.

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **And behold**
UST But
(וְהִנֵּה)

Here, **behold** is used to draw attention to the information that follows. In some languages, it will not be translated.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	{named} Yahweh
the God of	The God

ULT	UST
the Hebrews	the one we Hebrews worship
and they will serve me	in order that they may worship him
in the wilderness	in the desert

Exodus 7:17

ULT	UST
Thus says Yahweh: "By this you will know that I am Yahweh. Behold, I am about to strike against the waters that are in the river with the staff that is in my hand, and they will turn to blood.	*So Yahweh says this: "This is the way you will know that I am Yahweh. Look out! I am going to hit the water that is in the Nile River with the staff that is in my hand. {When I do that,} the water will become blood.*

ULT **Thus says Yahweh**
UST So Yahweh says this
(כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָֹה)

This quotation formula is used to introduce commands from Yahweh. See Chapter 4 Introduction for more information.

ULT **By this**
UST This is the way
(בְּזֹאת)

This begins a third-level quotation that continues until the end of verse 18. It should be marked in some manner that distinguishes it from the outer levels. It is possible that the third-level quotation actually ends before or after **Behold**, in which case, in the rest of the quote **I** refers to Moses, not Yahweh.

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **Behold**
UST Look out
(הִנֵּה)

Behold is a term meant to focus the attention of the listener on what the speaker is about to say. Alternate translation: [Look at this]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
you will know	you will know
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh
are in the river	is in the Nile River
with the staff	with the staff

Exodus 7:18

ULT	UST
And the fish that are in the river will die, and the river will stink. And the Egyptians will exhaust themselves to drink water from the river.”’”	*Then the fish in the Nile River will die, and the water in the river will smell bad. The Egyptians will wear themselves out trying to find water to drink from the river.”’”*

ULT and the river will stink
UST and the water in the river will smell bad
(וּבָאַשׁ הַיְאֹר)

His warning, **the river will stink**, will happen because the fish die. Alternate translation: [and because of that the river will stink]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT to drink water
UST trying to find water to drink
(לִשְׁתּוֹת מַיִם)

This phrase introduces a purpose clause. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a purpose clause. Alternate translation: [in order to find water to drink]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT And the Egyptians will exhaust themselves
UST The Egyptians will wear themselves out
(וְנִלְאוּ מִצְרַיִם)

Here, **themselves** refers back to the subject (**the Egyptians**) to indicated that the Egyptians are the object of the verb as well. Use a natural form in your language to show that the Egyptians are both subject and object. Alternate translation: [And the Egyptians will exhaust the Egyptians]

Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

> ULT **from the river**
> UST from the river
> (מִן־הַיְאֹר)

After this phrase, the direct quote of Yahweh's commands ends. Depending on your decisions about the embedded quotation levels, you may have up to three levels of quotations that need to be closed here. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with closing quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the end of a quotation and quotations within quotations.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
are in the river	the Nile River
the river	the water in the river
the Egyptians	The Egyptians
the river	the river

Exodus 7:19

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Say to Aaron, 'Take your staff and stretch out your hand over the waters of Egypt; over their streams, over their canals, and over their pools, and over every reservoir of their water, and it will become blood.' And there will be blood in all the land of Egypt, both in containers of wood and in containers of stone."	*Yahweh continued, "Then tell Aaron, 'Hold your staff out {as though you were holding it} over all the water in Egypt—over the rivers, the canals, the ponds, and over all the stored water, in order that all of it may become blood.' {When Aaron does that,} there will be blood throughout Egypt, even in wooden and stone jars."*

ULT **over their streams, over their canals, and over their pools, and over every reservoir of their water**

UST over the rivers, the canals, the ponds, and over all the stored water

(עַל־נַהֲרֹתָם ׀ עַל־יְאֹרֵיהֶם וְעַל־אַגְמֵיהֶם וְעַל כָּל־מִקְוֵה מֵימֵיהֶם)

This list is meant to expand on and reinforce the idea of all of the water in Egypt. You should translate the list in such a way that the locations of the blood are not limited to these specific places, but to imply universality.

Support Reference: Merism

ULT **in all the land of**

UST throughout Egypt

(בְּכָל־אֶרֶץ)

Alternate translation: [in every part of]

ULT **both in containers of wood and in containers of stone**

UST even in wooden and stone jars

(וּבָעֲצִים וּבָאֲבָנִים)

This possessive show composition. Alternate translation: [and in containers made from wood and in containers made from stone]

Support Reference: Possession

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	continued
Aaron	Aaron
your staff	your staff
Egypt	Egypt
the land of	throughout Egypt

ULT	UST
Egypt	throughout Egypt

Exodus 7:20

ULT	UST
And Moses and Aaron did so, just as Yahweh commanded. And he raised the staff, and he struck the water that was in the river, in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of his servants. And all the water that was in the river turned to blood.	*So Aaron and Moses did what Yahweh told them to do. As the king and his officials were watching, Aaron lifted up his staff and then struck the water in the Nile River with it. All the water in the river turned to blood.*

ULT **in the river**
UST in the Nile River
(בַּיְאֹר)

If it would be helpful to your readers, the name of the river may be made explicit. Alternate translation: [in the Nile River]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of his servants**
UST As the king and his officials were watching
(לְעֵינֵי פַרְעֹה וּלְעֵינֵי עֲבָדָיו)

This means in their sight. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in the sight of Pharaoh and his servants]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
and Aaron	Aaron and
Yahweh	Yahweh
the staff	his staff … with it
in the river	in the Nile River
Pharaoh	the king
his servants	and his officials
in the river	in the river

Exodus 7:21

ULT	UST
And the fish that were in the river died, and the river stank, so the Egyptians were not able to drink water from the river. And the blood was in all the land of Egypt.	*Then all the fish in the river died. The water smelled so bad that the Egyptians could not drink the water from the river. All the water in Egypt was blood.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
were in the river … the river	in the river … The water
the river	The water
the Egyptians	Egyptians … the
river	the river
the land of	All … in Egypt
Egypt	All … in Egypt

Exodus 7:22

ULT	UST
And the magicians of Egypt did the same with their magic. And the heart of Pharaoh was strong, and he did not listen to them, just as Yahweh had spoken.	*But the Egyptian men who did magic did the same thing using their magic. So, just as Yahweh had said, the king continued to be stubborn and would not obey what Aaron and Moses said.*

ULT **the magicians of**
UST who did magic
(חַרְטֻמֵּי)

See how you translated this term in 7:11.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **And the heart of Pharaoh was strong**
UST So … the king continued to be stubborn
(וַיֶּחֱזַק לֵב־פַּרְעֹה)

Pharaoh's stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his **heart** were **strong**. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. This is a neutral statement (it does not say that anyone caused him to be stubborn as many others in this part of the narrative do). See how you translated this in Exodus 7:13. Alternate translation: [Pharaoh was still defiant]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **just as Yahweh had spoken**
UST just as Yahweh had said
(כַּאֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יְהוָה)

Because Yahweh's prediction precedes this event, some languages may need to place the reference to that prediction before the statement that it was fulfilled. See UST and how you translated this in 7:13, where the same sentence appears.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the magicians of	who did magic
Egypt	the Egyptian men
with their magic	using their magic
Pharaoh	the king
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 7:23

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh turned around and went into his house. And he did not set his heart even to this.	*Then the king turned and went back to his palace, and he did not think any more about it.*

ULT And he did not set his heart even to this
UST and he did not think any more about it
(וְלֹא־שָׁת לִבּוֹ גַּם־לָזֹאת)

This is an idiom meaning Pharaoh did not think about the meaning of the miracle he had just seen. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [And he did not consider what even this meant]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
his house	his palace

Exodus 7:24

ULT	UST
And all the Egyptians dug water to drink around the river, for they were not able to drink from the waters of the river.	*All the Egyptians dug into the ground near the Nile River to get water to drink, because they could not drink the water from the river.*

ULT all the Egyptians
UST All the Egyptians
(כָּל־מִצְרַיִם)

The word **all** here is a generalization that means "many." At the least, the upper class would have sent their slaves to dig for them. However, it does indicate that all the Egyptians who wished to drink water had to dig or had to have dug for them. Alternate translation: [many of the Egyptians]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Egyptians	the Egyptians
the river	the Nile River
of the river	from the river

Exodus 7:25

ULT	UST
And seven days were filled after Yahweh struck the river.	*One week passed after Yahweh struck the Nile River.*

ULT **And … were filled**
UST passed
(וַיִּמָּלְאוּ)

A new scene begins here. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **And seven days were filled**
UST One week passed
(וַיִּמָּלֵא שִׁבְעַת יָמִים)

This means seven days later. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **seven**
UST One week
(שִׁבְעַת)

Alternate translation: [7]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	One week
Yahweh	Yahweh
the river	the Nile River

Exodus 8

Exodus 8 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–15: Second plague: frogs
- v. 16–19: Third plague (first that magicians cannot imitate): gnats
- v. 20–32: Fourth plague: flies

Translation Issues in This Chapter

- the exact insects in plagues 3–4 are not certain; translation teams will need to decide what insects they can use for each
- Pharaoh makes his own heart heavy, that is, he determines to be proud and resist Yahweh twice in this chapter
- the Israelites' sacrifices are spoken of as an abomination to the Egyptians, but it is not specified how or why that is

Lifting up the hand and staff:

In the next few chapters, God will instruct Moses or Aaron or both to raise his hand or staff or both hand and staff. The narrative will then record who will raise his hand or staff or both. The instruction and the action do not always match exactly. God may say raise your hand, and the narrative may say that Moses raised his staff. These are not conflicting reports. Translators should understand that the hand and the staff are always understood together. They are one unit, and they can both be mentioned, or they can be mentioned separately. In each case, Moses or Aaron raises his hand with the staff in it. This fact is merely expressed differently.

Exodus 8:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Go to Pharaoh, and you shall say to him, 'Thus says Yahweh: "Let my people go, and they shall serve me.	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go back to the king and tell him, 'Yahweh says that you must let my people go in order that they can worship me {in the desert.}*

ULT **Go**
UST Go back
(בֹּא)

This begins a direct quote that continues until the end of 8:4.

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **Thus says Yahweh**
UST Yahweh says that
(כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה)

This quotation formula is used to introduce commands from Yahweh. See Chapter 4 Introduction for more information.

ULT **Thus**
UST that
(כֹּה)

Here, **Thus** begins a second-level quotation that continues until the end of 8:4. It should be marked in some manner that distinguishes it from the outer level.

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **Let … go**
UST you must let … go
(שַׁלַּח)

This begins a third-level quotation that continues until the end of 8:4. It should be marked in some manner that distinguishes it from the outer levels.

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Pharaoh	the king
Yahweh	Yahweh
and they shall serve me	

ULT	UST
	in order that they can worship me {in the desert … }

Exodus 8:2

ULT	UST
And if you refuse to let go, behold! I am about to strike all your territory with frogs.	*But if you do not let them go, watch out! I will punish you by sending frogs to cover your country.*

ULT **to let go**
UST let them go
(לְשַׁלֵּחַ)

What Pharaoh is to **let go** is not specified, but “my people” or “the Israelites” are the understood object. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: [to let the Israelites go]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **behold**
UST watch out
(הִנֵּה)

Here, **behold** is an interjection meant to focus the attention of the listener on what comes next, in this case a dire warning. Alternate translation: [look out]

Exodus 8:3

ULT	UST
And frogs will swarm the river, and they will climb, and they will go into your house and in the room of your bed and on your bed and into the house of your servants and among your people and in your ovens and in your kneading bowls,	*Not only will the Nile River be full of frogs, but the frogs will also come up out of the river into your house. They will come into your bedroom and onto your bed. They will be in the houses of your slaves and all the rest of your people. They will even get into your ovens and your pans for mixing the materials for baking bread.*

ULT **into your house and in the room of your bed and on your bed and into the house of your servants and among your people and in your ovens and in your kneading bowls**
UST into your house. They will come into your bedroom and onto your bed. They will be in the houses of your slaves and all the rest of your people. They will even get into your ovens and your pans for mixing the materials for baking bread
(בְּבֵיתֶךָ וּבַחֲדַר מִשְׁכָּבְךָ וְעַל־מִטָּתֶךָ וּבְבֵית עֲבָדֶיךָ וּבְעַמֶּךָ וּבְתַנּוּרֶיךָ וּבְמִשְׁאֲרֹתֶיךָ)

This long list means “everywhere in Egypt.” It is presented in this way for rhetorical effect, that is, to convince Pharaoh of how bad this plague will be so he will obey. You should translate the list in such a way that the frogs’ location is not limited to these specific places. The list should imply universality.

Support Reference: Merism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the river	the Nile River
into your house	into your house
and into the house of	They will be in … houses of
your servants	the … your slaves
and in your kneading bowls	and your pans for mixing the materials for baking bread

Exodus 8:4

ULT	UST
and the frogs will climb on you and on your people and on all your servants.”’”	*The frogs will jump up on you, on the Egyptian people, and on all your slaves.’”*

Note:

Up to three levels of quotes end at the end of this verse. Depending on how many levels you chose to mark as direct quotations, you should indicate them ending here with closing second-level (and third-level) quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the end of quotations and quotations within a quotation. There may be other quotations in this chapter; they will be marked by the same punctuation, but they will not have their own notes unless there is something unique about them.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your servants	your slaves

Exodus 8:5

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Say to Aaron, 'Reach out your hand with your staff over the canals, over the streams, and over the pools, and cause the frogs to come up on the land of Egypt.'"	*Yahweh also said to Moses, "Say this to Aaron: 'Hold your staff in your hand and stretch it out {as though you were stretching it} over the river, the canals, and the ponds, and cause frogs to come up {from all this water} and to cover the land of Egypt.'"*

ULT **And Yahweh said to Moses, "Say to Aaron**
UST Yahweh also said to Moses, "Say this to Aaron
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֶל־מֹשֶׁה אֱמֹר אֶל־אַהֲרֹן)

It may be helpful to translate this first quotation indirectly to avoid having two levels of quotations in this verse. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh told Moses to say to Aaron]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **Reach out your hand with your staff over the canals, over the streams, and over the pools, and cause the frogs to come up on the land of Egypt**
UST Hold your staff in your hand and stretch it out {as though you were stretching it} over the river, the canals, and the ponds, and cause frogs to come up {from all this water} and to cover the land of Egypt
(נְטֵה אֶת־יָדְךָ֨ בְּמַטֶּ֜ךָ עַל־הַנְּהָרֹ֣ת עַל־הַיְאֹרִ֗ים וְעַל־הָֽאֲגַמִּים֙ וְהַעַ֣ל אֶת־הַצְּפַרְדְּעִ֔ים עַל־אֶ֖רֶץ מִצְרָֽיִם)

This is a second-level direct quotation if you chose to make **Say to Aaron** a direct quotation. In that case, it may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with second-level opening and closing quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation inside a quotation.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **your hand with your staff**
UST your staff in your hand … it
(אֶת־יָדְךָ֨ בְּמַטֶּ֜ךָ)

See note in the Chapter 8 Introduction regarding the hand and staff.

ULT over the canals, over the streams, and over the pools
UST {as though you were stretching it} over the river, the canals, and the ponds
(עַל־הַנְּהָרֹת עַל־הַיְאֹרִים וְעַל־הָאֲגַמִּים)

This list is meant to convey the idea of all the water in Egypt where frogs might live. You should translate the list in such a way that the locations are not limited to these specific places. The list should imply universality. This is made clear in 8:6.

Support Reference: Merism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
with your staff	your staff … it
the land of	the land of Egypt
Egypt	the land of Egypt

Exodus 8:6

ULT	UST
And Aaron reached out his hand over the waters of Egypt, and the frog came up and covered the land of Egypt.	*{After Moses told that to him,} Aaron stretched out his hand {as though he were stretching it} over all the water in Egypt. Then the frogs came up {from the water} and covered Egypt.*

ULT And Aaron reached out
UST {After Moses told that to him,} Aaron stretched out
(וַיֵּט אַהֲרֹן)

It is implied that Moses told Yahweh's instructions to Aaron. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT his hand
UST his hand
(אֶת־יָדוֹ)

It is implied that Aaron was holding his staff as instructed. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. See note in the Chapter 8 Introduction regarding the hand and staff. Alternate translation: [his hand holding his staff]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT And Aaron reached out his hand over the waters of
UST {After Moses told that to him,} Aaron stretched out his hand {as though he were stretching it} over all the water in Egypt
(וַיֵּט אַהֲרֹן אֶת־יָדוֹ עַל מֵימֵי)

Aaron would not have been able to reach his hand over all the water in Egypt. He likely stretched his hand over some nearby portion of the Nile, symbolizing all the water of Egypt. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the meaning plainly.

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT and … came up
UST Then … came up {from the water}
(וַתַּעַל)

8:3 has specified from where the frogs will come. Here it is implied, but if it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the frog**
UST the frogs
(הַצְּפַרְדֵּ֑עַ)

There were so many frogs that the text uses the collective singular. If that would be misunderstood in your language, you may simply use the plural, as in the UST.

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **and the frog came up and covered the land of Egypt**
UST Then the frogs came up {from the water} and covered Egypt
(וַתַּ֥עַל הַצְּפַרְדֵּ֖עַ וַתְּכַ֥ס אֶת־אֶ֖רֶץ מִצְרָֽיִם)

This means that there were frogs everywhere in Egypt. The image is like that of a blanket smothering the entire country. (Or more directly, like one giant, nation-sized frog sitting on top of the entire land). If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly.

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
Egypt	the water in Egypt
land of	Egypt
the … Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 8:7

ULT	UST
And the magicians did likewise with their magic, and they brought up frogs over the land of Egypt.	*But the men who did magic did the same thing by magic, and they caused more frogs to come up from the water onto the land.*

ULT the magicians … with their magic
UST the men who did magic … by magic
(הַחַרְטֻמִּים בְּלָטֵיהֶם)

See how you translated these in 7:11.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the magicians	the men who did magic
with their magic	by magic
the land of	the land
Egypt	the land

Exodus 8:8

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh called for Moses and for Aaron, and he said, "Pray to Yahweh that he may take away the frogs from me and from my people. And I will let the people go, and they may sacrifice to Yahweh."	*Then the king called Moses and Aaron and said, "Ask Yahweh to take these frogs away from me and my people. After that happens, I will allow your people to go to worship Yahweh."*

ULT **And Pharaoh called for Moses and for Aaron**
UST Then the king called Moses and Aaron
(וַיִּקְרָ֤א פַּרְעֹה֙ לְמֹשֶׁ֣ה וּלְאַהֲרֹ֔ן)

Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh sent for Moses and Aaron] or [And the king summoned Moses and Aaron]

ULT **And Pharaoh called for Moses and for Aaron, and he said**
UST Then the king called Moses and Aaron and said
(וַיִּקְרָ֤א פַּרְעֹה֙ לְמֹשֶׁ֣ה וּלְאַהֲרֹ֔ן וַיֹּ֥אמֶר)

It is implied that Moses and Aaron came to Pharaoh between the time when he called them and when he spoke to them. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [And Pharaoh called for Moses and for Aaron, and after they came, he said]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to Yahweh that he may take away the frogs from me and from my people**
UST Yahweh to take these frogs away from me and my people
(אֶל־יְהוָ֔ה וְיָסֵר֙ הַצְפַרְדְּעִ֔ים מִמֶּנִּ֖י וּמֵעַמִּֽי)

In some languages you may have to make the content of Pharaoh's prayer to Yahweh a direct quote. Note that this will make it a second-level quotation and you will need to mark it with second-level quotation markings if your language uses them. Alternate translation: [to Yahweh saying, 'Please take away the frogs from Pharaoh and from his people.']

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **And I will let the people go, and they may sacrifice to Yahweh**
UST After that happens, I will allow your people to go to worship Yahweh
(וַאֲשַׁלְּחָה אֶת־הָעָם וְיִזְבְּחוּ לַיהוָה)

This promise is conditional on the frogs going away. Use a natural form in your language for hypothetical situations. Alternate translation: [Once the frogs are gone, I will let the people go, and they may sacrifice to Yahweh]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
And … called	Then … called
for Moses	Moses
and for Aaron	and Aaron
Pray	Ask
Yahweh	Yahweh
and they may sacrifice	to worship
to Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 8:9

ULT	UST
And Moses said to Pharaoh, "Glorify yourself over me: when shall I pray for you and for your servants and for your people, to cause to cut off the frogs from you and from your houses? They will be left in the river only."	*Moses said to the king, "Show how you are more glorious than me by telling me when to pray for you and your officials and the rest of your peoples. I will pray that the frogs stop coming to your houses and stay in the Nile River."*

ULT Glorify yourself over me
UST Show how you are more glorious than me by telling me
(הִתְפָּאֵר עָלַי)

Moses speaks with false humility here. He is ironically pointing out Pharaoh's powerlessness before Yahweh. Alternate translation: [You can choose]

Support Reference: Irony

ULT for you and for your servants and for your people … from you and from your houses
UST for you and your officials and the rest of your peoples … to your houses
(לְךָ וְלַעֲבָדֶיךָ וְלַעַמְּךָ & מִמְּךָ וּמִבָּתֶּיךָ)

These lists mean "for everyone" and "from everywhere" (in Egypt). This makes clear that Moses will ask for a complete end of the plague. You should translate the list in such a way that it does not convey limitation to these specifics but is understood to imply universality.

Support Reference: Merism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
to Pharaoh	to the king
Glorify yourself	Show how you are more glorious than me by telling me
shall I pray	to pray … that
and for your servants	and your officials
and from your houses	to your houses
in the river	and stay in the Nile River

Exodus 8:10

ULT	UST
And he said, "Tomorrow." And he said, "Just as you say, so that you will know that there is no one like Yahweh, our God.	*The king replied, "{Pray for us} tomorrow." So Moses said, "I will do what you say. You will know that the God {named} Yahweh, {the one we worship, is the only true God, and that} there is no other God like him when*

ULT so that you will know that there is no one like Yahweh, our God
UST You will know that the God {named} Yahweh, {the one we worship, is the only true God, and that} there is no other God like him when
(לְמַעַן תֵּדַע כִּי־אֵין כַּיהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ)

This knowledge is the goal of Yahweh's granting a respite from the frogs. In some languages you may need to place this at the end of 8:11, after Moses says the frogs will leave. Use a natural way in your language for indicating purpose.

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT our God
UST the God {named} Yahweh, {the one we worship, is the only true God, and that} … other God like him
(אֱלֹהֵינוּ)

Here, **our** refers to the Israelites' God, excluding Pharaoh and the Egyptians. Your language may require you to mark these forms.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you will know	will know
is … like Yahweh	the God {named} Yahweh, {the one we worship, is the only true God, and that} … other God like him
our God	the God {named} Yahweh, {the one we worship, is the only true God, and that} … other God like him

Exodus 8:11

ULT	UST
And the frogs will withdraw from you and from your houses and from your servants and from your people. They will be left in the river only.”	*the frogs leave you, your officials, all the rest of your people and all your houses; when the only ones left are in the Nile River.”*

ULT **from you and from your houses and from your servants and from your people**
UST you, your officials, all the rest of your people and all your houses
(מִמְּךָ֥ וּמִבָּתֶּ֖יךָ וּמֵעֲבָדֶ֑יךָ וּמֵעַמֶּ֗ךָ)

This list means “from everywhere and everyone” (in Egypt). This shows that the end of the plague will be as complete as was its extent. You should translate the list in such a way that it does not convey limitation to these specifics but is understood to imply universality.

Support Reference: Merism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and from your houses	and all your houses
and from your servants	your officials
in the river	in the Nile River

Exodus 8:12

ULT	UST
And Moses and Aaron went out from being with Pharaoh. And Moses cried out to Yahweh concerning the matter of the frogs that he had set on Pharaoh.	*Then Moses and Aaron left the king. Moses pleaded with Yahweh about the frogs he had used to punish the king.*

ULT he had set
UST he had used to punish
(שָׂם)

Alternate translation: [Yahweh had set]

ULT And Moses and Aaron went out
UST Then Moses and Aaron left
(וַיֵּצֵא מֹשֶׁה וְאַהֲרֹן)

A minor scene shift occurs here. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Then Moses
and Aaron	and Aaron
Pharaoh	the king
Moses	Moses
And … cried out	pleaded
Yahweh	Yahweh
on Pharaoh	the king

Exodus 8:13

ULT	UST
And Yahweh did according to the word of Moses: and the frogs died off from the houses, from the courts, and from the fields.	*Yahweh did just what Moses asked him to do. As a result, all the frogs in the houses, in their courtyards, and in their fields died.*

ULT from the houses, from the courts, and from the fields
UST in the houses, in their courtyards, and in their fields
(מִן־הַבָּתִּים מִן־הַחֲצֵרֹת וּמִן־הַשָּׂדֹת)

This list means “from everywhere” (in Egypt). This makes clear that there was a complete end of the plague. You should translate the list in such a way that it does not convey limitation to these specifics but is understood to imply universality.

Support Reference: Merism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
the houses	the houses

Exodus 8:14

ULT	UST
And they gathered them into many piles, and the land stank.	*The people gathered together all the dead frogs into big piles, and the land smelled very bad.*

ULT into many piles
UST into big piles
(חֳמָרִם חֳמָרִם)

Literally, the Hebrew says “piles piles.” Repetition is used in Hebrew to emphasize how many or how big the piles of frogs were.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the land	the land

Exodus 8:15

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh saw that there was a respite, and he caused his heart to be heavy, and he did not listen to them, just as Yahweh had said.	*But when the king noticed that the frogs were gone, he made himself stubborn again. Just as Yahweh had said would happen, the king did not do what Aaron and Moses told him.*

ULT and he caused his heart to be heavy
UST he made himself stubborn again
(וְהַכְבֵּד֙ אֶת־לִבּ֔וֹ)

Pharaoh's stubborn attitude is spoken of as if he made his own **heart heavy**. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. See how you translated this in Exodus 7:14, but note there that the state of Pharaoh's heart is reported, whereas here Pharaoh makes his own heart heavy. Alternate translation: [and Pharaoh determined to be defiant]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT just as Yahweh had said
UST Just as Yahweh had said would happen
(כַּאֲשֶׁ֥ר דִּבֶּ֖ר יְהוָֽה)

Alternate translation: [just as Yahweh had said Pharaoh would do]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 8:16

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Say to Aaron, 'Stretch out your staff and strike the dust of the ground, and it will become lice in all the land of Egypt.'"	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Tell Aaron to strike the dusty ground with his staff so that all the dust all over Egypt will become gnats."*

ULT **And Yahweh said**
UST Then Yahweh said
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה)

A new scene begins here. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. This is the start of the third plague sequence.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **And Yahweh said to Moses, "Say to Aaron**
UST Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Tell Aaron
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֶל־מֹשֶׁה אֱמֹר אֶל־אַהֲרֹן)

Say to Aaron starts a direct quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by marking it with first-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. However, it may be helpful to translate one of the parts as an indirect quotation so that you do not have to have two levels of quotations here. See the UST. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh told Moses to tell Aaron]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **Stretch out your staff and strike**
UST to strike … with his staff
(נְטֵה אֶת־מַטְּךָ וְהַךְ)

This is one action or motion, but it is described with the two verbs that occur throughout this section of plague judgment.

ULT **your staff**
UST with his staff
(אֶת־מַטֶּךָ)

This refers to Aaron's staff. See note in the Chapter 8 Introduction regarding the hand and staff.

ULT **lice**
UST gnats
(לְכִנִּם)

We do not know exactly what this word means. It is probably a tiny (as in dust-particle size), biting insect. You should choose a different insect here than the one in the next plague (8:21–31).

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
your staff	with his staff
the ground	the dusty ground
the land of	Egypt
Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 8:17

ULT	UST
And they did so, and Aaron stretched out his hand with his staff and he struck the dust of the ground, and it became lice on man and on beast. All the dust of the ground was lice in all the land of Egypt.	*Moses and Aaron obeyed Yahweh. Aaron hit the dusty ground with his staff, and all over Egypt the dust became gnats. The gnats covered the people and the animals.*

ULT **and Aaron stretched out his hand with his staff and he struck the dust of the ground**
UST Aaron hit the dusty ground with his staff
(וַיֵּטְ אַהֲרֹן אֶת־יָדוֹ בְּמַטֵּהוּ וַיַּךְ אֶת־עֲפַר הָאָרֶץ)

Again, this is one action or motion, but it is described with the two verbs, **stretched** and **struck**, that occur throughout this section of plague judgment. See how you translated it in the previous verse.

ULT **his hand with his staff**
UST with his staff
(אֶת־יָדוֹ בְּמַטֵּהוּ)

See note in the Chapter 8 Introduction regarding the hand and staff.

ULT **lice … lice**
UST gnats. The gnats
(הַכִּנִּם & כִּנִּים)

Again, we do not know what this term refers to for certain, so see how you translated it in 8:16.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **on man**
UST covered the people
(בָּאָדָם)

Here **man** includes women and children. Alternate translation: [people] or [mankind] or [humans] See the UST.

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **All the dust of the ground … in all the land of Egypt**
UST all over Egypt the dust
(כָּל־עֲפַר הָאָרֶץ & בְּכָל־אֶרֶץ מִצְרָיִם)

This extraordinary statement with the repeated **all** is used to emphasize the extent and severity of the plague. If this would be unnatural in your language use a natural way to communicate that.

Support Reference: Hyperbole

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
with his staff	with his staff
the ground	the dusty ground
and on beast	and the animals
the ground	the dust
the land of	Egypt
Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 8:18

ULT	UST
And the magicians did so with their magic to bring out lice, but they were not able. And there were lice on man and beast.	*The men who worked magic tried to cause gnats to appear, but they could not do it. Gnats were on the people and animals.*

ULT the magicians … with their magic
UST The men who worked magic … to cause
(הַחַרְטֻמִּים בְּלָטֵיהֶם)

See how you translated these in 7:11.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT lice … lice
UST gnats … Gnats
(אֶת־הַכִּנִּים & הַכִּנָּם)

See how you translated this term in 8:16.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT on man
UST on the people
(בָּאָדָם)

Here **man** includes women and children. Alternate translation: [people] or [mankind] or [humans] See UST.

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the magicians	The men who worked magic
with their magic	to cause
and beast	and animals

Exodus 8:19

ULT	UST
And the magicians said to Pharaoh, "It is the finger of God." And the heart of Pharaoh was strong, and he did not listen to them, just as Yahweh said.	*The magicians said to the king, "A god did this!" But just like Yahweh had said, the king continued to be stubborn and would not obey Aaron and Moses.*

ULT **the magicians**
UST The magicians
(הַחַרְטֻמִּים)

See how you translated this term in 7:11.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **It is the finger of God**
UST A god did this
(אֶצְבַּע אֱלֹהִים הִוא)

The words "finger of God" represent the power of God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [This is the powerful work of God]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **And the heart of Pharaoh was strong**
UST But … the king continued to be stubborn
(וַיֶּחֱזַק לֵב־פַּרְעֹה)

Pharaoh's stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his **heart** were **strong**. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. See how you translated this in Exodus 7:13. This is a neutral statement (it does not say that anyone caused him to be stubborn as many others in this part of the narrative do). Alternate translation: [Pharaoh was still defiant]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to them**
UST Aaron and Moses
(אֲלֵהֶם)

Here, **them** may refer to the magicians or to Aaron and Moses. Alternate translation: [to the magicians' warning]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **just as Yahweh said**
UST just like Yahweh had said
(כַּאֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יְהוָה)

Some languages will need to place this before the thing that Yahweh predicted, as in the UST.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the magicians	The magicians
Pharaoh	the king
God	A god did this
Pharaoh	the king
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 8:20

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Rise early in the morning and station yourself before the face of Pharaoh. Behold, he goes out to the waters. And you shall say to him, 'Thus says Yahweh: "Let my people go, and they will serve me.	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Get up early tomorrow morning. Wait to meet the king as he comes to the river and tell him, 'This is what Yahweh says to you: "Let my people go in order that they may worship me.*

ULT **and station yourself before the face of Pharaoh**
UST Wait to meet the king
(וְהִתְיַצֵּב לִפְנֵי פַּרְעֹה)

Alternate translation: [and present yourself to Pharaoh]

ULT **And Yahweh said**
UST Then Yahweh said
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה)

A new scene begins here. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. This is the beginning of the fourth plague sequence.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **before the face of Pharaoh**
UST Wait to meet the king
(לִפְנֵי פַּרְעֹה)

Here, **face** means the presence of a person.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Behold**
UST as he comes
(הִנֵּה)

Behold is used to draw attention to important information that is next. In some languages and translation styles, it will make the most sense to omit this, as in the UST. Alternate translation: [Listen carefully]

ULT **Thus says Yahweh**
UST This is what Yahweh says to you
(כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה)

This phrase opens a direct quote that continues until the end of 8:23. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening first-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation. However, you may also consider making the opening portion an indirect quote so that you do not have a quote inside of a quote for the next verses. Alternate translation: [that Yahweh says]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **Thus says Yahweh**
UST This is what Yahweh says to you
(כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה)

This quotation formula is used to introduce commands from Yahweh. See Chapter 4 Introduction for more information.

ULT **Let … go**
UST Let … go
(שַׁלַּח)

This phrase opens a second-level direct quotation which continues until the end of 8:23, unless you made **thus says Yahweh** an indirect quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by marking it with second-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation within a quotation.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **and they will serve me**
UST in order that they may worship me
(וְיַעַבְדֻנִי)

This is the purpose of the people being let go. Use a natural way in your language for indicating purpose. Alternate translation: [so they can serve me]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Pharaoh	the king
Yahweh	Yahweh

ULT	UST
and they will serve me	in order that they may worship me

Exodus 8:21

ULT	UST
Surely if you do not immediately send my people out, behold me! I am about to send the swarm at you and at your servants and at your people and into your houses. And the houses of Egypt will be full of the swarm, and even the ground which they are on.	*If you do not let my people go immediately, watch out! Be sure that I will shortly send swarms of flies which will cover you, your slaves, the rest of your people, and your houses. All the Egyptian's houses will be full of flies. They will even cover the ground.*

ULT **behold me**
UST watch out
(הִנֵּנִי)

The expression **behold me!** is used to draw attention to important information that is next. Alternate translation: [Listen carefully]

ULT **the swarm … the swarm**
UST swarms of flies … flies
(אֶת־הֶעָרֹב & אֶת־הֶעָרֹב)

Here, **the swarm** is a collective singular noun that refers to a great number of flying, biting insects traveling in a group. If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. Alternate translation: [swarms of flies]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **the swarm … the swarm**
UST swarms of flies … flies
(אֶת־הֶעָרֹב & אֶת־הֶעָרֹב)

Here, **the swarm** probably refers to the common large flies that bother humans and livestock.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **at you and at your servants and at your people and into your houses … the houses of Egypt … and even the ground**
UST which will cover you, your slaves, the rest of your people, and your houses. All the Egyptian's houses … They will even cover the ground
(בְּךָ֣ וּבַעֲבָדֶ֗יךָ וּבְעַמְּךָ֙ וּבְבָתֶּ֔יךָ & בָּתֵּי֙ מִצְרַ֔יִם & וְגַם֙ הָאֲדָמָ֔ה)

This long list means "everywhere in Egypt." It is presented in this way for rhetorical effect, that is, to convince Pharaoh of how bad this plague will be so he will obey. You should translate the list in such a way that the flies' location is not limited to these specific places but is understood to imply universality.

Support Reference: Merism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and at your servants	your slaves
and into your houses	and your houses
the houses of	All the Egyptian's houses
Egypt	All the Egyptian's houses

Exodus 8:22

ULT	UST
And in that day, I will distinguish the land of Goshen, on which my people dwell, so that the swarm will not be there, in order that you may know that I am Yahweh in the middle of the land.	*But when that happens, I will treat the region of Goshen differently, because my people live there. There will be no swarms of flies there. In that way, you will know that I, Yahweh, am here in this land.*

ULT so that the swarm will not be there
UST There will be no swarms of flies there
(לְבִלְתִּי הֱיוֹת־שָׁם עָרֹב)

This is the goal of Yahweh treating the land of Goshen differently. Alternate translation: [by keeping the swarm from there]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT the swarm
UST swarms of flies
(עָרֹב)

This is a collective singular noun that refers to a great number of swarming, biting insects. See how you translated this in 8:21. Alternate translation: [swarms of flies]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT the swarm
UST swarms of flies
(עָרֹב)

These are probably the common large flies that bother humans and livestock. See how you translated this in 8:21

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT in order that you may know that I am Yahweh in the middle of the land
UST In that way, you will know that I, Yahweh, am here in this land
(לְמַעַן תֵּדַע כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה בְּקֶרֶב הָאָרֶץ)

This is the goal of treating the Israelites differently. In some languages you may need to put this phrase the beginning of the verse. Use a natural way in your language for indicating purpose.

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **I am Yahweh in the middle of the land**
UST I, Yahweh, am here in this land
(אֲנִי יְהוָה בְּקֶרֶב הָאָרֶץ)

Here, **am** could be connecting **I** and **Yahweh** or it could be connecting **I, Yahweh** and **in the middle of the land**. Alternate translation: [I, Yahweh, am in the middle of the land]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in … day	But when
the land of	the region of Goshen
Goshen	the region of Goshen
you may know	you will know
I am Yahweh	I, Yahweh
the land	this land

Exodus 8:23

ULT	UST
And I will put redemption between my people and between your people. This sign will happen tomorrow.”’”	*I will treat my people and your people differently. I will prove how powerful I am tomorrow!”’”*

ULT **redemption**
UST differently
(פְּדֻת)

This is a noun derived from a verb meaning “to buy back.” Very broadly, it can mean “to save or rescue.” If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **redemption**, you can express the same idea in another way. See the next note regarding textual variants for more information.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **redemption**
UST differently
(פְּדֻת)

Many translations follow the Septuagint here, which uses the word “division.” A minor change to the Hebrew would also produce the word translated as “treat differently” in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [a division]

Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT **my people**
UST my people
(עַמִּי)

Yahweh’s people, that is, the Israelites. Alternate translation: [the Israelites]

ULT **your people**
UST your people
(עַמֶּךָ)

Pharaoh’s people, that is, the Egyptians. Alternate translation: [the Egyptians]

ULT **This sign will happen tomorrow**
UST I will prove how powerful I am tomorrow
(לְמָחָר יִהְיֶה הָאֹת הַזֶּה)

After this phrase, the three levels of direct quotations of Yahweh that started in 8:20 ends. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with closing first-level, second-level, and third-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the end of quotations. You may not have three levels if you made any level an indirect quotation.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sign	I will prove how powerful I am

Exodus 8:24

ULT	UST
And Yahweh did so, and a heavy swarm came to the house of Pharaoh and the houses of his servants and all the land of Egypt. The land was ruined from the face of the swarm.	*{In the morning, Moses warned the king, but he did not listen.} So Yahweh did what he said he would do. He sent great swarms of flies into the king's palace and into his officials' houses. They were everywhere in Egypt. The flies ruined the country.*

ULT **And Yahweh did so**
UST {In the morning, Moses warned the king, but he did not listen.} So Yahweh did what he said he would do
(וַיַּעַשׂ יְהוָה כֵּן)

The UST supplies a brief sentence filling in the gap between Yahweh's command to Moses and the onset of the plague. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly to make the progression of events clear. Alternate translation: [Moses obeyed the instructions Yahweh gave him, and Pharaoh responded as Yahweh had said he would. And Yahweh did so]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And Yahweh did so**
UST {In the morning, Moses warned the king, but he did not listen.} So Yahweh did what he said he would do
(וַיַּעַשׂ יְהוָה כֵּן)

There is a minor scene change here. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **a … swarm**
UST swarms of flies
(עָרֹב)

There are probably the common large flies that bother humans and livestock. See how you translated this in 8:21

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and … came**
UST He sent
(וַיָּבֹא)

Some languages may need to translate this as “going” rather than “coming.” Alternate translation: [and … went]

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **to the house of Pharaoh and the houses of his servants**
UST into the king’s palace and into his officials’ houses
(בֵּיתָה פַּרְעֹה וּבֵית עֲבָדָיו)

This means “to everyone everywhere” (in Egypt), as made explicit in the next statement. This makes clear that the insects were throughout the land. You should translate this in such a way that it does not convey limitation to these specifics but is understood to imply universality.

Support Reference: Merism

ULT **The land was ruined from the face of the swarm**
UST The flies ruined the country
(תִּשָּׁחֵת הָאָרֶץ מִפְּנֵי הֶעָרֹב)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [The swarms of flies devastated the land]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from the face of the swarm**
UST The flies
(מִפְּנֵי הֶעָרֹב)

Here, **face** represents the presence of the insects. Alternate translation: [because the insects were everywhere]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
to the house of	into the king’s palace
Pharaoh	into the king’s palace
and the houses of	and into his officials’ houses
his servants	and into his officials’ houses
the land of	They were everywhere in Egypt
Egypt	They were everywhere in Egypt

ULT	UST
The land was ruined	the country ruined

Exodus 8:25

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh called to Moses and to Aaron and said, "Go, sacrifice to your God in the land."	*Then the king summoned Moses and Aaron and said, "Just go worship your god here in Egypt!"*

ULT And … called
UST Then … summoned
(וַיִּקְרָא)

This happened during the plague.

Support Reference: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

ULT to your God
UST your god
(לֵאלֹהֵיכֶם)

Here, **your** is plural. It could refer either to Moses and Aaron or to the Israelites. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a dual form (if you have one) if your team decides it means Moses and Aaron; otherwise use a plural form.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
And … called	Then … summoned
Moses	Moses
and to Aaron	and Aaron
sacrifice	worship
to your God	your god
in the land	here in Egypt

Exodus 8:26

ULT	UST
And Moses said, "It would not be right to do so, because we will sacrifice an abomination of the Egyptians to Yahweh our God. Look, we would sacrifice an abomination of the Egyptians before their eyes, and would they not stone us?	*But Moses replied, "It would not be right for us to do that, because we will offer sacrifices to Yahweh, the God we worship, that are very offensive to the Egyptians. Look, it is certain that if we offer sacrifices right in front of them that the Egyptians hate passionately, they will kill us by throwing stones at us!*

ULT **an abomination of the Egyptians … an abomination of the Egyptians**
UST that are very offensive to the Egyptians … that the Egyptians hate passionately
(תּוֹעֲבַת מִצְרַיִם & אֶת־תּוֹעֲבַת מִצְרַיִם)

We do not know what about their sacrificing was an **abomination** to the Egyptians. The same term is used in Genesis 43:32 and 46:34 to describe the Egyptians' feelings about eating with Hebrews and about the Hebrew profession of shepherding, respectively. Translators should attempt to convey the strong negative feelings that would be provoked in the Egyptians without speculating as to the cause.

ULT **we will sacrifice … our God … we would sacrifice … would they … stone us**
UST we will offer sacrifices … the God we worship … if we offer sacrifices … they will kill us by throwing stones at us
(נִזְבַּח & אֱלֹהֵינוּ & נִזְבַּח & יִסְקְלֻנוּ)

Here, **we**, **our**, and **us** should all be translated as exclusive (if your language makes that distinction). Pharaoh and the Egyptians are not included.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **and would they not stone us**
UST they will kill us by throwing stones at us
(וְלֹא יִסְקְלֻנוּ)

Moses asks this question to show Pharaoh that the Egyptians would not allow the Israelites to worship Yahweh by making a sacrifice repugnant to them. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [they will certainly stone us!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **before their eyes**
UST right in front of them
(לְעֵינֵיהֶם)

The express **before their eyes** is a figurative way of saying "where they can see." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in their sight]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
we will sacrifice	we will offer sacrifices
an abomination of the	that are very offensive
Egyptians	to the Egyptians
to Yahweh	to Yahweh
our God	the God we worship
we would sacrifice	if we offer sacrifices
an abomination of the	that … hate passionately
Egyptians	the Egyptians
would they … stone us	they will kill us by throwing stones at us

Exodus 8:27

ULT	UST
We must travel a journey of three days into the wilderness, and we will sacrifice to Yahweh our God, just as he is saying to us.”	*We need to travel for three days into the wilderness. There we will offer sacrifices to Yahweh, the God we worship, just as he commands us.”*

ULT **We must travel … and we will sacrifice … our God … to us**
UST We need … we will offer sacrifices … the God we worship … us
(נֵלֵךְ & וְנִזְבְּחָה & אֱלֹהֵינוּ & אֵלֵינוּ)

Here, **we**, **our**, and **us** should all be translated as exclusive (if your language makes that distinction). Pharaoh and his people are not included.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
into the wilderness	into the wilderness. There
and we will sacrifice	we will offer sacrifices
to Yahweh	to Yahweh
our God	the God we worship

Exodus 8:28

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh said, "I will let you go and sacrifice to Yahweh your God in the wilderness; only you may certainly not go very far. Pray for me."	*So the king said, "I will let your people go to offer sacrifices to Yahweh, the god you worship, in the desert. But you must not go very far. Now pray for me!"*

ULT you … your God … you … very far
UST your people go … the god you worship … you … very far
(אֶתְכֶם & אֱלֹהֵיכֶם & תַּרְחִיקוּ)

If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT you
UST your people go
(אֶתְכֶם)

Alternate translation: [the Israelites]

ULT you … certainly … very far
UST you must … very far
(הַרְחֵק & תַּרְחִיקוּ)

In Hebrew, **far** is repeated to emphasize (with **not**) that they are absolutely not to go too far. If your language does not use repeating words like this, express the emphasis in another way.

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
and sacrifice	to offer sacrifices
to Yahweh	to Yahweh
your God	the god you worship
in the wilderness	in the desert
Pray	Now pray

Exodus 8:29

ULT	UST
And Moses said, "Behold, I am about to go out from with you. And I shall pray to Yahweh, and he will withdraw the swarm from Pharaoh, from his servants, and from his people tomorrow. Only may Pharaoh not continue to deceive in order to fail to let the people go to sacrifice to Yahweh."	*Moses said {to the king}, "Listen to me! After I leave you, I will pray to Yahweh, asking that he would cause the swarms of flies to leave you, your slaves, and the rest of your people tomorrow. But do not lie to us again by refusing to let our people go to offer sacrifices to Yahweh!"*

ULT **Behold**
UST Listen to me
(הִנֵּה)

Behold is a term meant to focus the attention of the listener on what the speaker is about to say. If there is not a good way to translate this term in your language, this term can be omitted from the translation. Alternate translation: [Know this]

ULT **the swarm**
UST the swarms of flies
(הֶעָרֹב)

These are probably the common large flies that bother humans and livestock. See how you translated this in 8:21

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **from Pharaoh … Pharaoh**
UST you … do … again
(מִפַּרְעֹה & פַּרְעֹה)

Moses may be using the third person to refer to Pharaoh to show respect, because the king appears to be relenting. If use of the third person is not a way of showing respect in your culture or is not a valid way of addressing an individual at all, you may need to change the form. Alternate translation: [from you … you]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **from Pharaoh, from his servants, and from his people**
UST you, your slaves, and the rest of your people
(מִפַּרְעֹה מֵעֲבָדָיו וּמֵעַמּוֹ)

This list means “from everywhere and everyone” (in Egypt). This shows that the end of the plague will be as complete as its extent. You should translate the list in such a way that it does not convey limitation to these specifics but is understood to imply universality.

Support Reference: Merism

ULT **may Pharaoh not continue to deceive in order to fail to let the people go**
UST do not lie to us again by refusing to let our people go
(אַל־יֹסֵף פַּרְעֹה הָתֵל לְבִלְתִּי שַׁלַּח אֶת־הָעָם)

If this double negative would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [you must begin to deal truthfully with us and let our people go]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **Only may Pharaoh not continue to deceive**
UST But do not lie to us again
(רַק אַל־יֹסֵף פַּרְעֹה הָתֵל)

Alternate translation: [But you must not deceive us] or [But you must not lie to us]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
And I shall pray	I will pray … asking
Yahweh	Yahweh
from Pharaoh	you
from his servants	your slaves
Pharaoh	do … again
to sacrifice	to offer sacrifices
to Yahweh	to Yahweh

Exodus 8:30

ULT	UST
And Moses went out from with Pharaoh and prayed to Yahweh.	*Then Moses left the king and prayed to Yahweh.*

ULT And Moses went out
UST Then Moses left
(וַיֵּצֵא מֹשֶׁה)

There is a minor scene shift here. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Pharaoh	the king
and prayed	and prayed
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 8:31

ULT	UST
And Yahweh did according to the word of Moses, and he withdrew the swarm from Pharaoh, from his servants, and from his people. Not one remained.	*Yahweh did what Moses asked. He got rid of the swarms of flies from around the king, his slaves, and the rest of his people. No flies remained.*

ULT the swarm
UST the swarms of flies
(הָעָרֹֽב)

These are probably the common large flies that bother humans and livestock. See how you translated this in 8:21

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT from Pharaoh, from his servants, and from his people
UST from around the king, his slaves, and the rest of his people
(מִפַּרְעֹה מֵעֲבָדָיו וּמֵעַמּוֹ)

This list means “from everyone and everywhere” (in Egypt). This makes clear that there was a complete end of the plague. You should translate the list in such a way that it does not convey limitation to these specifics but is understood to imply universality.

Support Reference: Merism

ULT Not one remained
UST No flies remained
(לֹֽא נִשְׁאַר אֶחָֽד)

This extreme statement emphasizes how thoroughly Yahweh removed the insects from the land. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your language that emphasizes thoroughness or complete lack of the swarm. Alternate translation: [There was not a single one of these insects left in the whole land]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
from Pharaoh	from around the king
from his servants	his slaves

Exodus 8:32

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh caused his heart to be heavy at this time also, and he did not let the people go.	*But the king was stubborn this time also, and he did not allow the Israelites to go.*

ULT And Pharaoh caused his heart to be heavy
UST But the king was stubborn
(וַיַּכְבֵּד פַּרְעֹה אֶת־לִבּוֹ)

Pharaoh's stubborn attitude is spoken of as if he made his own **heart heavy**. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. See how you translated this in 8:15. Alternate translation: [Pharaoh determined to be defiant]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	But the king

Exodus 9

Exodus 9 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–7: Fifth plague (first that does not affect Israelites): disease kills livestock
- v. 8–12: Sixth plague: boils
- v. 13–35: Seventh plague: hail
- v. 27–35: Pharaoh seems to repent, but it does not last

Translation Issues in This Chapter

- animals are affected in both the fifth and seventh plagues, in the fifth, the word is specifically related to domestic animals (livestock) while the word used in the seventh is more general

Exodus 9:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Go in to Pharaoh and speak to him: 'Thus says Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews: "Let my people go, and they shall serve me.	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go to the king and say to him, 'This is what Yahweh, the God we Hebrews worship, says: "Let my people go in order that they may worship me.*

ULT **And Yahweh said**
UST Then Yahweh said
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה)

A new scene begins here. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. This is the beginning of the fifth plague sequence.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **to Moses**
UST to Moses
(אֶל־מֹשֶׁה)

After this phrase, a direct quote begins that continues to the end of 9:4 and contains two additional levels of quotes. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening first-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation. There may be other quotations in this chapter; they will be marked by the same punctuation, but they will not have their own notes unless there is something unique about them.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **and speak to him: 'Thus says Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews**
UST and say to him, 'This is what Yahweh, the God we Hebrews worship, says
(וְדַבַּרְתָּ אֵלָיו כֹּה־אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵי הָעִבְרִים)

You may want to translate the second-level quotation beginning with **Thus says Yahweh** as an indirect quotation in order to reduce the levels of quotations in this passage. Alternate translation: [and say to him that Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, says]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **Thus says Yahweh**
UST This is what Yahweh … says
(כֹּה־אָמַר יְהוָה)

This quotation formula is used to introduce commands from Yahweh. See Chapter 4 Introduction for more information.

ULT **my people**
UST my people
(אֶת־עַמִּי)

Alternate translation: [the Israelites]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Pharaoh	the king
Yahweh	Yahweh
the God of	the God
the Hebrews	we Hebrews worship
and they shall serve me	in order that they may worship me

Exodus 9:2

ULT	UST
Surely if you are unwilling to let go, but are still holding on to them,	*Otherwise, if you refuse to free them but continue to keep them {as your slaves},*

ULT Surely if you are unwilling to let go, but are still holding on to them
UST Otherwise, if you refuse to free them but continue to keep them {as your slaves}
(כִּ֣י אִם־מָאֵ֗ן אַתָּה֙ לְשַׁלֵּ֔חַ וְעוֹדְךָ֖ מַחֲזִ֣יק בָּֽם)

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. If saying the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: [If you continue refusing to let them go]

Support Reference: Parallelism

Exodus 9:3

ULT	UST
behold! The hand of Yahweh is about to be on your livestock which are in the field, on the horses, on the donkeys, on the camels, on the cattle, and on the flock—an exceedingly heavy plague.	*I warn you that I will soon powerfully punish you by sending a terrible disease on all your domesticated animals to make them sick and die—on your horses, on your donkeys, on your camels, on your cattle, and on your flocks of sheep and goats.*

ULT **behold**
UST I warn you that
(הִנֵּה)

The word **behold** is used to draw attention to surprising information that follows. Alternate translation: [look out]

ULT **The hand of Yahweh is about to be on your livestock**
UST I will soon powerfully punish you by sending … on all your domesticated animals
(יַד־יְהוָה הוֹיָה בְּמִקְנְךָ)

Here, **hand** represents Yahweh's power to afflict their animals with disease. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [Then the power of Yahweh will afflict your livestock]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **The hand of Yahweh**
UST I will soon powerfully punish you by sending
(יַד־יְהוָה)

This is part of the reported speech that Yahweh wants Moses to say to Pharaoh. Therefore, you could change the third person **the hand of Yahweh** to first person if it would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [My hand]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **on your livestock**
UST on all your domesticated animals
(בְּמִקְנְךָ)

While the word **your** here is not plural, the next verse shows that it refers to all the people of Egypt who owned cattle. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, you may want to use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **on the horses, on the donkeys, on the camels, on the cattle, and on the flock**
UST on your horses, on your donkeys, on your camels, on your cattle, and on your flocks of sheep and goats
(בַּסּוּסִים בַּחֲמֹרִים בַּגְּמַלִּים בַּבָּקָר וּבַצֹּאן)

This long list is meant to reinforce the universal effects of the coming plague. It is presented in this way for rhetorical effect, that is, to convince Pharaoh of how bad this plague will be so he will obey. You should translate the list in such a way that it is not limiting but is understood to imply universality.

Support Reference: Merism

ULT **on the cattle, and on the flock**
UST on your cattle, and on your flocks of sheep and goats
(בַּבָּקָר וּבַצֹּאן)

These (**cattle** and **flock**) are collective singular nouns which refer to groups of animals. If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. Alternate translation: [on your bulls and cows and on your sheep and goats]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **heavy**
UST terrible
(כָּבֵד)

Here the plague is spoken of as if it weighed a lot. This means it would be very bad. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [severe]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	I will soon powerfully punish you by sending
on your livestock	on all your domesticated animals
on the horses	on your horses
on the donkeys	on your donkeys
on the camels	on your camels
on the cattle	on your cattle
and on the flock	and on your flocks of sheep and goats
an … plague	a … disease … to make them sick and die

Exodus 9:4

ULT	UST
And Yahweh will distinguish between the livestock of Israel and between the livestock of Egypt. And no thing will die from any of the sons of Israel.”’”	*But I, Yahweh, will treat the Israelites’ domesticated animals differently than the Egyptians’. None of the Israelites’ domesticated animals will die.”’”*

ULT **Yahweh**
UST I, Yahweh
(יְהוָֹה)

This is part of the reported speech that Yahweh wants Moses to say to Pharaoh. Therefore, you could change the third person **Yahweh** to first person if it would be clearer in your language. You should do the same as you did in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [I]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **Israel**
UST the Israelites
(יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Here, **Israel** refers to the Israelites. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the Israelite people]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Israel**
UST the Israelites
(יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Here, **Israel** is used as a collective singular noun. If your language would not refer to a group of people in this way, you may need to translate it as plural. Alternate translation: [the Israelite people]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **the livestock of Egypt**
UST the Egyptians
(מִקְנֵה מִצְרַיִם)

Here, **Egypt** refers to the Egyptians. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the livestock of the Egyptian people]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **thing**
UST domesticated animals
(דָּבָר)

Alternate translation: [animal]

ULT **from any of the sons of Israel**
UST of the Israelites
(מִכָּל־לִבְנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Alternate translation: [which belongs to any of the sons of Israel]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	I, Yahweh
the livestock of	domesticated animals
Israel	the Israelites
the livestock of	the Egyptians
Egypt	the Egyptians
Israel	of the Israelites

Exodus 9:5

ULT	UST
And Yahweh set an appointment, saying, "Tomorrow Yahweh will do this thing in the land."	*Yahweh specified when he would do this. He said, "Tomorrow I will do to Egypt what I threatened."*

ULT And Yahweh set an appointment
UST Yahweh specified when he would do this
(וַיָּשֶׂם יְהוָה מוֹעֵד)

Alternate translation: [And Yahweh made an appointed time]

ULT saying
UST He said
(לֵאמֹר)

This marks the beginning of a direct quotation. It can be omitted in translation if your language does not use a similar form. However, in this sentence it is the only verb related to speech, so you may need to translate it similarly to the way the UST does.

ULT Yahweh
UST I
(יְהוָה)

Yahweh is speaking here. Therefore, you could change the third person **Yahweh** to first person if it would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [I, Yahweh,]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
an appointment	when
Yahweh	I
in the land	to Egypt

Exodus 9:6

ULT	UST
And Yahweh did this thing the next day, and all of the livestock of Egypt died. But from the livestock of the sons of Israel not one died.	*The next day Yahweh sent a disease as he had said he would and all of the Egyptians' domesticated animals died, but none of the Israelites' domesticated animals died.*

ULT **And Yahweh did**
UST Yahweh sent a disease as he had said he would
(וַיַּעַשׂ יְהוָה)

It is implied that Moses went and spoke to Pharaoh as directed. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [Moses did as Yahweh had commanded. And Yahweh did]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **all of the livestock of**
UST all of the … domesticated animals
(כָּל מִקְנֵה)

This is exaggerated to emphasize the seriousness of the event. There were still some animals alive that were afflicted by later plagues. However, it may be best to translate this with the word "all."

Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **Egypt**
UST Egyptians
(מִצְרַיִם)

Here, **Egypt** refers to the Egyptians. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the Egyptian peoples']

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **But from the livestock of the sons of Israel not one died**
UST but none of the Israelites' domesticated animals died
(וּמִמִּקְנֵה בְנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל לֹא־מֵת אֶחָד)

Here the author uses a figure of speech that expresses a strong positive meaning by using a negative word together with a word that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If this is confusing in your language, you can express the meaning positively. Alternate translation: [But every single one of the Israelites' livestock lived]

Support Reference: Litotes

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh sent a disease as he had said he would
the livestock of	the … domesticated animals
Egypt	Egyptians
But from the livestock of	but … domesticated animals
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 9:7

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh sent, and, behold, not even one of the livestock of Israel had died. But the heart of Pharaoh was heavy, and he did not let the people go.	*The king sent {men to look at what happened}, and they were surprised to see that none of the Israelites' animals had died. {But after they told that to the king,} he continued to be stubborn, and he did not let the Israelites go.*

ULT **and, behold**
UST { … to look at what happened}, and they were surprised to see that
(וְהִנֵּה)

Again, **behold** is used to draw attention to surprising information that follows. Alternate translation: [and listen]

ULT **not even one of the livestock of Israel had died**
UST none of the Israelites' animals had died
(לֹא־מֵת מִמִּקְנֵה יִשְׂרָאֵל עַד־אֶחָד)

Here the author uses a figure of speech that expresses a strong positive meaning by using a negative word together with a word that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If this is confusing in your language, you can express the meaning positively. Alternate translation: [every single one of the Israelites' livestock was alive]

Support Reference: Litotes

ULT **of Israel**
UST Israelites
(יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Here, **Israel** refers to the Israelites. Alternate translation: [of the Israelites]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **of Israel**
UST Israelites
(יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Here, **Israel** is a collective singular noun. If your language would not refer to a group of people in this way, you may need to translate it as plural. Alternate translation: [the Israelites]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **But the heart of Pharaoh was heavy**
UST {But after they told that to the king,} he continued to be stubborn
(וַיִּכְבַּד֙ לֵ֣ב פַּרְעֹ֔ה)

Pharaoh's stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his **heart** were **heavy**. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. This is a neutral statement (it does not say that anyone caused him to be stubborn as many others in this part of the narrative do). See how you translated this in Exodus 7:14. Alternate translation: [But Pharaoh was defiant]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	The king
of the livestock	of the … animals
of Israel	Israelites
the … Pharaoh	he

Exodus 9:8

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses and to Aaron, "Take to you a fullness of both your hands of ash of a furnace. And Moses shall sprinkle it toward heaven before the eyes of Pharaoh.	*Then Yahweh said to Aaron and Moses, "Take a few handfuls of ashes from an oven. Moses should throw them up into the air in front of the king.*

ULT And Yahweh said
UST Then Yahweh said
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה)

A new scene begins here. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. This is the start of the sixth plague scene.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT to you … both your hands of
UST Take a few handfuls of
(לָכֶם & חָפְנֵיכֶם)

You and **your** refer to both Moses and Aaron. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use dual form (if you have one) or plural forms (if not) here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT Take to you a fullness of both your hands of
UST Take a few handfuls of
(קְחוּ לָכֶם מְלֹא חָפְנֵיכֶם)

Alternate translation: [Each of you fill both your hands with]

ULT ash of a furnace
UST ashes from an oven
(פִּיחַ כִּבְשָׁן)

Alternate translation: [ash from a furnace] or [ash produced by a furnace]

ULT ash of
UST ashes
(פִּיחַ)

Here, **ash** is singular. For some languages you may need to make it plural as in the UST.

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **toward heaven**
UST into the air
(הַשָּׁמַיְמָה)

Alternate translation: [toward the sky]

ULT **before the eyes of Pharaoh**
UST in front of the king
(לְעֵינֵי פַּרְעֹה)

The phrase **before the eyes of Pharaoh** means in his sight. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in the sight of Pharaoh] or [so Pharaoh sees it]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
a furnace	from an oven
Moses	Moses
toward heaven	into the air
the … Pharaoh	the king

Exodus 9:9

ULT	UST
And it will become powder over all the land of Egypt. And it will become boils, bursting blisters, on man and on beast in all the land of Egypt.”	*The ashes will spread all over the country of Egypt, because they are fine dust. Everywhere in the land, the ashes will cause sores on the skin which turn red and burst open on both people and animals.”*

ULT **boils, bursting blisters**
UST sores on the skin which turn red and burst open
(לִשְׁחִין פֹּרֵחַ אַבַעְבֻעֹת)

To have **boils** means to have a condition where the skin is red, hot, and painful, the skin breaks open, and puss and blood come out.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **man**
UST people
(הָאָדָם)

Here, **man** includes women and children. Alternate translation: [people] or [mankind] or [humans] See UST.

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the land of	all over the country of Egypt
Egypt	all over the country of Egypt
beast	animals
the land of	the land
Egypt	the land

Exodus 9:10

ULT	UST
And they took ash of a furnace, and they stood before the face of Pharaoh. And Moses sprinkled it toward the heavens, and it became boils, bursting blisters, on man and on beast.	*So they took some ashes from an oven and stood in front of the king. Moses threw the ashes up into the air. As the ashes landed on both the Egyptian people and their animals, they caused sores on the skin that turned red and burst open.*

ULT **ash of**
UST some ashes
(אֶת־פִּיחַ)

Here, **ash** is singular. For some languages you may need to make it plural as in the UST. See how you translated this in the previous verse.

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **ash of a furnace**
UST some ashes from an oven
(אֶת־פִּיחַ הַכִּבְשָׁן)

Alternate translation: [ash from a furnace] or [ash produced by a furnace] See how you translated this in the previous verse.

ULT **and they stood before the face of Pharaoh**
UST and stood in front of the king
(וַיַּעַמְדוּ לִפְנֵי פַרְעֹה)

Here, **before the face of Pharaoh** means in Pharaoh's presence. Alternate translation: [and stood in Pharaoh's presence] or [and stood in the presence of Pharaoh] See how you translated a similar statement in the previous verse.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **toward the heavens**
UST up into the air
(הַשָּׁמָיְמָה)

Alternate translation: [toward the sky] See how you translated this in the previous verse.

ULT **boils, bursting blisters**
UST on … and … sores … the skin that turned red … burst open
(שְׁחִין אֲבַעְבֻּעֹת פֹּרֵחַ)

To have **boils** means to have a condition where the skin is red, hot, and painful, the skin breaks open, and puss and blood come out. See how you translated this in the previous verse.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **on man**
UST As the ashes landed … both the Egyptian people … they … on
(בָּאָדָם)

Here, **man** includes women and children. See how you translated this in the previous verse.

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a furnace	from an oven
Pharaoh	the king
Moses	Moses
toward the heavens	up into the air
and on beast	their animals … and

Exodus 9:11

ULT	UST
And the magicians were not able to stand before the face of Moses, because of the face of the boils, because boils were on the magicians and on all of Egypt.	*Because skin sores covered the men who worked magic (along with all the rest of the Egyptians), they could not challenge Moses.*

ULT the magicians … on the magicians
UST the men who worked magic
(הַחַרְטֻמִּים & בַּחַרְטֻמֵּם)

See how you translated **magicians** in 7:11.

ULT to stand before the face of Moses
UST challenge Moses
(לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי מֹשֶׁה)

Here, **before the face of** means in Moses' presence. Alternate translation: [to stand in Moses' presence]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT because of the face of the boils
UST Because skin sores
(מִפְּנֵי הַשְּׁחִין)

Here, **the face of** means the presence of or perhaps pain from the boils. Alternate translation: [because of the boils]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT the boils … boils
UST skin sores
(הַשְּׁחִין & הַשְּׁחִין)

To have **boils** means to have a condition where the skin is red, hot, and painful, the skin breaks open, and puss and blood come out. See how you translated this in 9:9. However, this time only **boils** is used, without the description ("bursting blisters") that is in the previous two verses.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the magicians	the men who worked magic
Moses	Moses
on the magicians	the men who worked magic

ULT	UST
Egypt	the Egyptians

Exodus 9:12

ULT	UST
But Yahweh strengthened the heart of Pharaoh, and he did not listen to them, just as Yahweh had said to Moses.	*But Yahweh caused the king to continue to be stubborn. He did not obey Moses and Aaron, just as Yahweh had told Moses would happen.*

ULT But Yahweh strengthened the heart of Pharaoh
UST But Yahweh caused the king to continue to be stubborn
(וַיְחַזֵּק יְהוָה אֶת־לֵב פַּרְעֹה)

This phrase means that it was God who made him stubborn. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his **heart** were **strong**. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. See how you translated this in 4:21. Alternate translation: [But Yahweh caused Pharaoh to be stubborn]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Pharaoh	the king
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 9:13

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Rise early in the morning, and stand before the face of Pharaoh, and say to him, 'Thus says Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews: "Let my people go, and they shall serve me.	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Get up early tomorrow morning. Go and stand in front of the king and tell him that Yahweh God, the one whom the Hebrew people worship, says this: 'Let my people go in order that they may worship me {in the wilderness}.*

ULT **And Yahweh said to Moses**
UST Then Yahweh said to Moses
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֶל־מֹשֶׁה)

A new scene begins here. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. This is the beginning of the seventh plague sequence.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **and stand before the face of Pharaoh**
UST Go and stand in front of the king
(וְהִתְיַצֵּב לִפְנֵי פַּרְעֹה)

Here, **before the face of** means in Pharaoh's presence. Alternate translation: [and stand in Pharaoh's presence]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and say to him, 'Thus says Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews**
UST and tell him that Yahweh God, the one whom the Hebrew people worship, says this
(וְאָמַרְתָּ אֵלָיו כֹּה־אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵי הָעִבְרִים)

After **and say to him**, a second-level quote begins which continues until the end of 9:19. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening second-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation within a quotation. However, it may be useful to translate this short quote frame as an indirect quotation, as the UST does.

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **Thus says Yahweh**
UST Yahweh … says this
(כֹּה־אָמַר יְהוָה)

This quotation formula is used to introduce commands from Yahweh. See Chapter 4 Introduction for more information.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Pharaoh	the king
Yahweh	Yahweh
the God of	God, the one whom
the Hebrews	the Hebrew people worship
and they shall serve me	in order that they may worship me {in the wilderness}

Exodus 9:14

ULT	UST
For this time I am about to send all my plagues to your heart, and on your servants, and on your people, in order that you may know that there is nothing like me in all the earth.	*If you do not, then this time I am planning terrible disasters that will not only make your officials and the rest of your people very sad but also you yourself, in order that you might know that there is no god like me anywhere in the world.*

ULT **For**
UST If you do not, then
(כִּי)

Here it is implied that Pharaoh will again not let God's people go. **For** is expressing the result, that is, God's response to Pharaoh's disobedience to the command immediately preceding. You may need to insert this as in the UST or choose a contrastive conjunction. Alternate translation: [Otherwise,]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **I am about to send all my plagues to your heart**
UST I am planning terrible disasters that will not only make … very sad but also you yourself
(אֲנִי שֹׁלֵחַ אֶת־כָּל־מַגֵּפֹתַי אֶל־לִבְּךָ)

Here, **to your heart** is a synecdoche that means that even Pharaoh will be hurt by the plagues. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I am about to send all my plagues against you personally]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
time	time
my plagues	terrible disasters
and on your servants	your officials
you may know	you might know
the earth	the world

Exodus 9:15

ULT	UST
For now I could have stretched out my hand and struck you and your people with a plague, and you would have been destroyed from the land.	*By this time I could have powerfully struck you and your people with terrible diseases that would have destroyed your nation.*

ULT **For now I could have stretched out my hand and struck you and your people with a plague, and you would have been destroyed from the land**
UST By this time I could have powerfully struck you and your people with terrible diseases that would have destroyed your nation
(כִּ֣י עַתָּה֮ שָׁלַ֣חְתִּי אֶת־יָדִי֒ וָאַךְ֤ אוֹתְךָ֙ וְאֶת־עַמְּךָ֔ בַּדֶּ֖בֶר וַתִּכָּחֵ֥ד מִן־הָאָֽרֶץ)

This verse presents two things that God could have done but did not do to the Egyptians. This is to set up the reason he gives in the next verse. Be sure that it is clear in your translation that these are hypothetical past events. See the note regarding Yahweh's stated goals in the next verse. Some languages may need to reverse the order of these verses to put Yahweh's goals before his non-action. Use the natural form in your language for expressing a hypothetical situation.

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **I could have stretched out my hand and struck you**
UST I could have powerfully struck you
(שָׁלַ֣חְתִּי אֶת־יָדִי֒ וָאַךְ֤ אוֹתְךָ֙)

Here, **my hand** refers to God's power. Alternate translation: [I could have used my power to attack you]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and struck you and your people with a plague**
UST struck you and your people with terrible diseases
(וָאַךְ֤ אוֹתְךָ֙ וְאֶת־עַמְּךָ֔ בַּדֶּ֖בֶר)

Here, **a plague** is spoken about as if it were something that could be used to hit someone. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and caused you and your people to suffer from a plague]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
with a plague	with terrible diseases
and you would have been destroyed	that would have destroyed

ULT	UST
the land	your nation

Exodus 9:16

ULT	UST
However, for this reason I appointed you: in order to show you my power and in order to proclaim my name in all the earth.	*But I have let you live. The reason I have let you live is to show you how strong I am and so that I will be famous all over the world.*

ULT **However, for this reason I appointed you: in order to show you my power and in order to proclaim my name in all the earth**

UST But I have let you live. The reason I have let you live is to show you how strong I am and so that I will be famous all over the world

(וְאוּלָ֕ם בַּעֲבֻ֖ור זֹ֣את הֶֽעֱמַדְתִּ֑יךָ בַּעֲבֻ֨ור הַרְאֹתְךָ֜ אֶת־כֹּחִ֗י וּלְמַעַן֙ סַפֵּ֣ר שְׁמִ֔י בְּכָל־הָאָֽרֶץ)

The statements from **to show** to the end of the verse are Yahweh's stated goals, and thus, his reasons for not yet destroying Egypt and Pharaoh. You will need to translate, **However, for this reason I appointed you: in order** in a way that connects with the previous verse in an action-goal manner.

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **and in order to proclaim my name in all the earth**

UST and so that I will be famous all over the world

(וּלְמַעַן֙ סַפֵּ֣ר שְׁמִ֔י בְּכָל־הָאָֽרֶץ)

Here, **my name** represents Yahweh's reputation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and so that people everywhere will know who I am]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I appointed you	I have let you live … I have let you live
to proclaim	I will be famous
the earth	the world

Exodus 9:17

ULT	UST
You are still exalting yourself against my people by failing to let them go.	*You are still acting proudly and refusing to let my people go.*

ULT You are still exalting yourself against my people
UST You are still acting proudly … my people
(עוֹדְךָ מִסְתּוֹלֵל בְּעַמִּי)

Pharaoh's opposition to letting the Israelites go to worship Yahweh is spoken of as if he were raising himself up as a barrier to them. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [You are still blocking my people]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT You are … exalting yourself
UST You are … acting proudly
(מִסְתּוֹלֵל)

Here, Pharaoh is both the subject and object of the sentence. Translate this in a way that conveys that (1) Pharaoh is making Pharaoh (himself) proud and (2) this is metaphorically expressed as Pharaoh making Pharaoh (himself) the obstacle in the Israelites' way to freedom (as discussed in the previous note.)

Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

ULT You are … exalting yourself
UST You are … acting proudly
(מִסְתּוֹלֵל)

Here, **you** is Pharaoh.

ULT against my people
UST my people
(בְּעַמִּי)

Here, **my people** are the Israelites.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
You are … exalting yourself	You are … acting proudly

Exodus 9:18

ULT	UST
Behold me! I am about to cause extremely heavy hail to rain tomorrow at this time, which there has never been anything like in Egypt from the day it was founded until now.	*So listen to this: About this time tomorrow I will cause large balls of ice to fall in Egypt. Between the time Egypt first became a nation and today, there has never been an ice storm as bad as this one will be.*

ULT **Behold me**
UST So listen to this
(הִנֵּנִי)

Alternate translation: [Pay attention to the important thing I am about to tell you]

ULT **at this time, which there has never been anything like**
UST About this time … there has never been … as bad as this one will be
(כָּעֵת אֲשֶׁר לֹא־הָיְתָה כָמֹהוּ)

Alternate translation: [at this time. There has never been anything like this]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
hail	large balls of ice … an ice storm
in Egypt	in Egypt
the day	the time
it was founded	Egypt first became a nation

Exodus 9:19

ULT	UST
And now send and bring to safety your livestock and all that is yours in the field, and the hail will come down on every man and beast that is found in the field and was not gathered to the house, and they will die.”’”	*So you should send {a message to all people} to put under shelter {their} domesticated animals and everything else that {they} own that is out in the fields. The ice will fall on every person and every animal that is out in the fields and that is not brought under a shelter. They will all die.’”*

ULT **send and bring to safety your livestock and all that is yours in the field**
UST you should send {a message to all people} to put under shelter {their} domesticated animals and everything else that {they} own that is out in the fields
(שְׁלַח הָעֵז אֶת־מִקְנְךָ וְאֵת כָּל־אֲשֶׁר לְךָ בַּשָּׂדֶה)

The form of address here is singular; Moses is speaking directly to Pharaoh. However, the next two verses make it clear that Pharaoh’s servants heard and understood this warning to be for them as well. In this sense Pharaoh represents the Egyptians. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and the hail will come down on**
UST The ice will fall on
(וְיָרַד עֲלֵהֶם הַבָּרָד)

Alternate translation: [and the balls of ice will drop on]

ULT **every man**
UST every person … every
(כָּל־הָאָדָם)

Here, **man** means humans and includes men, women, and children. Alternate translation: [everyone] or [anyone]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **and beast**
UST and … animal
(וְהַבְּהֵמָה)

Here, **and beast** includes domestic and wild animals.

> ULT **and they will die**
> UST They will all die
> (וָמֵתוּ)

The people and animals **will die** because they will be fatally injured by the hail. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [and the hail will kill them]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **and they will die**
> UST They will all die
> (וָמֵתוּ)

Up to three levels of direct quotation (depending on your earlier decision about converting a level to an indirect quotation) end at the end of this verse. You should indicate that ending here with closing first-level, second-level, and third-level (if required) quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the end of quotations within quotations.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your livestock	{their} domesticated animals
the hail	The ice
and beast	and … animal
to the house	a shelter

Exodus 9:20

ULT	UST
The fearers of the word of Yahweh from the servants of Pharaoh made their slaves and their livestock run to the houses,	*{Moses did what Yahweh said.} Some of the king's officials believed and were afraid of what Yahweh had said. So they quickly brought all their slaves and their animals under shelters.*

ULT **The fearers of**
UST Moses did what Yahweh said … believed and were afraid
(הַיָּרֵא)

As in some other occasions, Moses' conversation with Pharaoh is not recorded. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express the fact that he did as Yahweh instructed explicitly. See the UST.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **The fearers of the word of Yahweh from the servants of Pharaoh**
UST {Moses did what Yahweh said.} Some of the king's officials believed and were afraid of what Yahweh had said
(הַיָּרֵא אֶת־דְּבַר יְהוָה מֵעַבְדֵי פַרְעֹה)

Here, **the word of Yahweh** refers to Yahweh's warning, more broadly it means they believed that Yahweh would do what he threatened. Alternate translation: [Those of Pharaoh's servants who feared Yahweh's warning]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The fearers of	Moses did what Yahweh said … believed and were afraid
the word of Yahweh	of what Yahweh had said
from the servants of	Some of the king's officials
Pharaoh	Some of the king's officials
their slaves	all their slaves
their livestock	and their animals
the houses	shelters

Exodus 9:21

ULT	UST
but whoever did not set his heart to the word of Yahweh left his slaves and his livestock in the field.	*But those who did not believe what Yahweh had said left their slaves and their animals in the fields.*

ULT but whoever did not set his heart to
UST But those who did not believe what … had said
(וַאֲשֶׁר לֹא־שָׂם לִבּוֹ אֶל)

Here, **set his heart** means he believed or thought something was true. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. Alternate translation: [but whoever did not respect]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT the word of Yahweh
UST what Yahweh had said
(דְּבַר יְהוָה)

Here, **the word of Yahweh** refers to Yahweh's warning, more broadly it means they did not believe that Yahweh would do what he threatened. Alternate translation: [Yahweh's warning]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the word of Yahweh	what Yahweh had said
his slaves	their slaves
his livestock	their animals

Exodus 9:22

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Reach out your hand toward the heavens, and there will be hail in all the land of Egypt, on man and on beast and on every plant of the field in the land of Egypt."	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Raise your hand up toward the sky in order that balls of ice {may fall} all over the land of Egypt—on the people, on the animals, and on all the crops in the fields."*

ULT **And Yahweh said**
UST Then Yahweh said
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה)

A minor scene shift occurs here and may need to be marked in a certain way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **your hand**
UST your hand
(אֶת־יָדְךָ)

See note in the Chapter 8 Introduction regarding the hand and staff.

ULT **man**
UST the people
(הָאָדָם)

Here, **man** includes women and children. See the UST.

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **beast**
UST the animals
(הַבְּהֵמָה)

Here, **beast** includes domestic and wild animals.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
the heavens	the sky
hail	balls of ice
the land	the land of
of Egypt	Egypt
beast	the animals

ULT	UST
in the land of Egypt	the land of Egypt

Exodus 9:23

ULT	UST
And Moses stretched his staff to the heavens, and Yahweh gave thunder and hail, and fire darted to the land. And Yahweh rained hail on the land of Egypt.	*So Moses lifted his staff up toward the sky, and Yahweh brought a storm with thunder, balls of ice, and lightning. Yahweh caused the balls of ice to fall all over the land of Egypt.*

ULT **his staff**
UST his staff
(אֶת־מַטֵּהוּ)

See note in the Chapter 8 Introduction regarding the hand and staff.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
his staff	his staff
the heavens	the sky
and Yahweh	and Yahweh
and hail	balls of ice
to the land	and lightning
Yahweh	Yahweh
hail	the balls of ice
the land of	the land of
Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 9:24

ULT	UST
And there was hail and fire coming in the middle of the hail; {it was} very heavy, such as it had never been in all the land of Egypt since it became a nation.	*While balls of ice were falling, lightning was flashing. There had never been such a huge ice storm like that in Egypt since it first became a country.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
hail	balls of ice … falling
the hail	ice storm
the land of	in Egypt
Egypt	in Egypt
a nation	it … a country

Exodus 9:25

ULT	UST
And the hail hit everything in the land of Egypt, everything which was in the field, from man to beast. And the hail struck every plant of the field, and it broke every tree of the field.	*The ice struck everywhere in Egypt, hitting everything that was outside, animals as well as people. The ice destroyed the crops in the fields and broke limbs off the fruit trees.*

ULT **from man to beast**
UST animals as well as people
(מֵאָדָם וְעַד־בְּהֵמָה)

Here, **from man to beast** is a figure of speech used to emphasize the extent and severity of the hail. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [every living thing]

Support Reference: Merism

ULT **from man**
UST people
(מֵאָדָם)

Here, **man** includes women and children. Alternate translation: [from people] or [from mankind] or [from humans] See UST.

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **beast**
UST animals
(בְּהֵמָה)

Here, **beast** includes domestic and wild animals.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
hail … the	The ice
the … land of	Egypt
Egypt	Egypt
beast	animals
the hail	The ice

Exodus 9:26

ULT	UST
Only in the land of Goshen, where the sons of Israel were, there was no hail.	*Only in the region of Goshen, where the Israelites were living, was there no ice.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in the land of	in the region of Goshen
Goshen	in the region of Goshen
Israel	the Israelites
hail	ice

Exodus 9:27

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh sent, and he called for Moses and for Aaron. And he said to them, "I have sinned this time. Yahweh is righteous, and I and my people are guilty.	*Then the king sent {someone} to summon Moses and Aaron. He said to them, "This time {I admit that} I have sinned. {What} Yahweh {has done} is right, and {what} I and my people {have done} is wrong.*

ULT And Pharaoh sent
UST Then the king sent {someone}
(וַיִּשְׁלַח פַּרְעֹה)

A minor scene shift occurs here and may need to be marked in a certain way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT I have sinned
UST I have sinned
(חָטָאתִי)

Some commentators suggest translating **sinned** more literally, that is "missed the mark," because Pharaoh is probably not admitting a moral failure, but instead, admitting that he misjudged.

ULT is righteous … are guilty
UST {has done} is right … {have done} is wrong
(הַצַּדִּיק & הָרְשָׁעִים)

Many commentators suggest that Pharaoh is using these terms in a narrow, legal sense and only referring to this instance. That is, he is saying something like "I have lost this round in court." See UST.

ULT and my people
UST and my people
(וְעַמִּי)

Here, **my people** refers to the Egyptians.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
and he called	to summon
for Moses	Moses

ULT	UST
and for Aaron	and Aaron
I have sinned	I have sinned
this time	This time {I admit that}
Yahweh	{What} Yahweh
is righteous	{has done} is right
are guilty	{have done} is wrong

Exodus 9:28

ULT	UST
Pray to Yahweh, for the thunder of God and hail are too much. And I will let you go, and you will not continue to stay."	*Pray to Yahweh because his thunder and ice are terrible! I will let you and your people go; you do not have to stay in Egypt any longer."*

ULT and you will not continue to stay
UST you do not have to stay in Egypt any longer
(וְלֹא תֹסִפוּן לַעֲמֹד)

Here Pharaoh uses a figure of speech that expresses a strong positive meaning by using a negative word together with a word that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If this is confusing in your language, you can express the meaning positively. Alternate translation: [really, I will let you go]

Support Reference: Litotes

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	his
and hail	and ice

Exodus 9:29

ULT	UST
And Moses said to him, "As I leave the city, I will spread my palms to Yahweh. The thunder will cease, and the hail will not continue, so that you may know that the earth belongs to Yahweh.	*Moses replied, "As soon as I go out of this city, I will lift up my hands and pray to Yahweh. Then the thunder will stop, and no more ice will fall. This will happen in order that you will know that Yahweh, {not your gods, controls everything that happens on} the earth.*

ULT And Moses said to him
UST Moses replied
(וַיֹּאמֶר אֵלָיו מֹשֶׁה)

Alternate translation: [And Moses said to Pharaoh]

ULT I will spread my palms to Yahweh
UST I will lift up my hands and pray to Yahweh
(אֶפְרֹשׂ אֶת־כַּפַּי אֶל־יְהוָה)

This symbolic gesture accompanies prayer. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [I will pray to Yahweh]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
and the hail	and … ice
you may know	you will know
the earth	{ … everything that happens on} the earth
belongs to Yahweh	Yahweh, {not your gods, controls … }

Exodus 9:30

ULT	UST
But you and your servants, I know that you are not yet afraid of the face of Yahweh God."	*But I know that you and your officials still do not tremble when Yahweh God comes near."*

ULT But you and your servants
UST But … you and your officials
(וְאַתָּה וַעֲבָדֶיךָ)

This phrase is shifted to the beginning of the sentence to mark focus on Pharaoh and his servants because, despite Yahweh demonstrating his power, they are not yet afraid of him. If your language has a form or discourse feature that draws contrastive focus to participants, use it here.

Support Reference: Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions

ULT of the face of Yahweh
UST when Yahweh … comes near
(מִפְּנֵי יְהוָה)

Here, **face** means presence or power. Alternate translation: [of Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and your servants	and your officials
I know	I know
you are … afraid	do … tremble
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God

Exodus 9:31

ULT	UST
(And the flax and the barley were struck down, for the barley was in ear, and the flax was in bloom.	*({When the ice fell} it ruined the flax because the blossoms were forming. It also ruined the barley because its grain was ripe.*

Note:

This and the next verse give background information so that the destruction caused by the later plagues can be understood by the reader. Use the natural form in your language for expressing background information.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **And the flax … and the flax**
UST the flax
(וְהַפִּשְׁתָּה & וְהַפִּשְׁתָּה)

Flax is a plant that produces fibers that can be made into linen cloth.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **was in ear**
UST its grain was ripe
(אָבִיב)

This means the seeds at the top of the barley stalk were developing but still green.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **was in bloom**
UST the blossoms were forming
(גִּבְעֹל)

Alternate translation: [was flowering]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and the barley	the barley
the barley	the barley

Exodus 9:32

ULT	UST
But the wheat and the spelt were not struck down, for they are late.)	*But it did not ruin any of the wheat varieties, because they grow later in the year.)*

ULT **and the spelt**
UST But … any of the wheat varieties
(וְהַכֻּסֶּמֶת)

Spelt is a kind of wheat.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
But the wheat	But … any of the wheat varieties

Exodus 9:33

ULT	UST
And Moses left the city from being with Pharaoh, and he spread his palms to Yahweh, and the thunder and hail ceased, and the rain was not poured on the earth.	*So Moses left the king and went outside the city. He raised his hands toward Yahweh and prayed. Then the thunder and the ice storm stopped. The rain also stopped falling on the land of Egypt.*

ULT and he spread his palms to Yahweh

UST He raised his hands toward Yahweh and prayed

(וַיִּפְרֹשׂ כַּפָּיו אֶל־יְהוָה)

This symbolic gesture accompanies prayer. See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 9:29. Alternate translation: [lifted up his hands toward Yahweh and prayed]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Pharaoh	the king
Yahweh	Yahweh
and hail	and the ice storm
on the earth	the land of Egypt

Exodus 9:34

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh saw that the rain and hail and thunder ceased, and he added to his sin, and he caused his heart to be heavy, he and his servants.	*But when the king saw that the rain, the ice storm, and the thunder had stopped, he sinned again. He and his officials made themselves stubborn.*

ULT and he caused his heart to be heavy
UST made themselves stubborn
(וַיַּכְבֵּד לִבּוֹ)

Pharaoh's stubborn attitude is spoken of as if he made his own **heart heavy**. This time his servants do the same. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. See how you translated this in 8:15. Alternate translation: [Pharaoh determined to be defiant]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT and he added to his sin
UST he sinned again
(וַיֹּסֶף לַחֲטֹא)

This statement is from the author's perspective. Therefore, unlike in 9:27, **sin** should be translated with the word your language uses for "sin."

ULT and he caused his heart to be heavy, he and his servants
UST He and his officials made themselves stubborn
(וַיַּכְבֵּד לִבּוֹ הוּא וַעֲבָדָיו)

Alternate translation: [and he caused his heart to be heavy. His servants did also] or [and he caused his heart to be heavy. His servants did the same]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
and hail	the ice storm
to his sin	sinned
and his servants	and his officials

Exodus 9:35

ULT	UST
And the heart of Pharaoh was strong, and he did not let the sons of Israel go, just as Yahweh had said by the hand of Moses.	*So, just as Yahweh had predicted to Moses, the king was stubborn and did not allow the Israelites to leave.*

ULT And the heart of Pharaoh was strong
UST So … the king was stubborn
(וַיֶּחֱזַק לֵב פַּרְעֹה)

Pharaoh's stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his **heart** were **strong**. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. See how you translated this in Exodus 7:13. This is a neutral statement (it does not say that anyone caused him to be stubborn as many others in this part of the narrative do). Alternate translation: [Pharaoh was still defiant]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT just as Yahweh had said by the hand of Moses
UST just as Yahweh had predicted to Moses
(כַּאֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יְהוָה בְּיַד־מֹשֶׁה)

This is similar to 9:12. In this case, what Yahweh said is spoken of as if it were something that could be held in someone's hand. This means that Moses delivered a message from Yahweh that Pharaoh would be stubborn. It is not clear if this message was given to the Israelites or if this refers to Moses' statement to Pharaoh in 9:30. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [just as Yahweh had told Moses to say]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
Israel	the Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 10

Exodus 10 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

The text does not specify, but some time seems to have passed between chapters nine and ten (See: 9:31–32 and 10:5).

- v. 1–20: Eighth plague: locusts
- v. 16–20: Pharaoh seems to repent, but it does not last
- v. 21–29: Ninth plague: darkness

Exodus 10:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Go in to Pharaoh, for I have made his heart and the heart of his servants heavy, in order to perform these my signs in his midst,	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go to the king again. I have made him and his officials stubborn. I have done so in order that I may have a good reason to do all these miracles among them.*

ULT **for I have made his heart and the heart of his servants heavy**
UST I have made him and his officials stubborn. I have done so in order that I may have a good reason
(כִּי־אֲנִי הִכְבַּדְתִּי אֶת־לִבּוֹ וְאֶת־לֵב עֲבָדָיו)

This means God made Pharaoh and his servants stubborn. Their stubborn attitude is spoken of as if their **hearts** were **heavy**. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. See how you translated this in 4:21, but note that the metaphor is slightly different here. Alternate translation: [for I have caused Pharaoh and his servants to be stubborn]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Pharaoh	the king
his servants	have made him and his officials stubborn
my signs	all these miracles

Exodus 10:2

ULT	UST
and so that you may proclaim in the ears of your son and the son of your son that I toyed with Egypt, and my signs which I performed among them—and you will know that I am Yahweh.”	*I have also done so in order that you would be able to tell your children and your grandchildren how I caused the Egyptians to act very foolishly when I performed all these miracles among them. Then all of you will know that I am Yahweh.”*

ULT I toyed with Egypt

UST I caused the Egyptians to act very foolishly

(הִתְעַלַּלְתִּי בְּמִצְרַיִם)

Alternate translation: [I mocked Egypt]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you may proclaim	you would be able to tell
with Egypt	the Egyptians
my signs	all these miracles
and you will know	Then all of you will know
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh

Exodus 10:3

ULT	UST
And Moses and Aaron went in to Pharaoh and said to him, "Thus says Yahweh, God of the Hebrews: 'Until when will you refuse to be humble from my face? Let my people go, and they will serve me.	*So Moses and Aaron went to the king and said to him, "Yahweh God, {the one whom we} Hebrews {worship}, says this, 'How long will you {stubbornly} refuse to bow to me? Let my people go in order that they may worship me {in the wilderness}!*

ULT **and said to him**
UST and said to him
(וַיֹּאמְרוּ אֵלָיו)

After this phrase, a direct quote begins that continues until near the end of 10:6. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening first-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation. There may be other quotations in this chapter; they will be marked by the same punctuation, but they will not have their own notes unless there is something unique about them.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **and said to him, "Thus says Yahweh, God of the Hebrews**
UST and said to him, "Yahweh God, {the one whom we} Hebrews {worship}, says this
(וַיֹּאמְרוּ אֵלָיו כֹּה־אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵי הָעִבְרִים)

It may be helpful to turn the introductory quotation into an indirect quotation so that you do not have to use quotes within quotes. Alternate translation: [and told him that Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, said thus]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **Thus says Yahweh**
UST Yahweh … says this
(כֹּה־אָמַר יְהוָה)

This quotation formula is used to introduce commands from Yahweh. See Chapter 4 Introduction for more information.

ULT **Until when will you refuse to be humble from my face**
UST How long will you {stubbornly} refuse to bow to me
(עַד־מָתַי מֵאַנְתָּ לֵעָנֹת מִפָּנָי)

Here, **face** represents the presence of Yahweh. Particularly, it means the presence of his judgment (the plagues). Alternate translation: [Until when will you refuse to be humble when I judge you] or [Until when will you refuse to be humble before me]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
and Aaron	and Aaron
Pharaoh	the king
Yahweh	Yahweh
God of	God, {the one whom … }
the Hebrews	we} Hebrews {worship}
to be humble	bow to me
and they will serve me	in order that they may worship me {in the wilderness}

Exodus 10:4

ULT	UST
For if you refuse to let my people go, behold me, I am about to bring locust within your borders tomorrow.	*If you do not let them go, I warn you that tomorrow I will bring locusts into your country.*

ULT behold me
UST I warn you that
(הִנְנִי)

Here, **behold me** adds emphasis to what is said next. Alternate translation: [beware]

ULT locust
UST locusts
(אַרְבֶּה)

Here, **locust** is a singular noun referring to the group as one. If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. Alternate translation: [locusts]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
locust	locusts

Exodus 10:5

ULT	UST
And it will cover the sight of the land, and none will be able to see the land. And it will devour the remnant of whatever escaped, of whatever is left to you from the hail. And it will devour every tree growing for you from the field.	*They will completely cover the ground so that you will not even be able to see it. They will eat everything that the ice storm did not destroy. They will eat everything that is growing on your fruit trees.*

ULT **And it will cover the sight of the land, and none will be able to see the land**
UST They will completely cover the ground so that you will not even be able to see it
(וְכִסָּה֙ אֶת־עֵ֣ין הָאָ֔רֶץ וְלֹ֥א יוּכַ֖ל לִרְא֣וֹת אֶת־הָאָ֑רֶץ)

These parallel statements have a similar meaning. They are used to emphasize the great number of locusts that are coming. If saying the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one.

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **And it will cover the sight of the land**
UST They will completely cover the ground
(וְכִסָּה֙ אֶת־עֵ֣ין הָאָ֔רֶץ)

Alternate translation: [And it will cover the land from sight]

ULT **And it will cover … And it will devour … And it will devour**
UST They will … cover … They will eat … They will eat
(וְכִסָּה֙ & וְאָכַ֗ל & וְאָכַל֙)

Here the pronoun **it** agrees in number with the collective singular “locust” in the previous verse. Insects are often referred to without gender in English, but you will need to use whatever number, gender, or noun class is required in your language to agree with the word for “locust” that you used in the previous verse. See the UST.

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the land	the ground
the land	it
And it will devour	They will eat
whatever escaped	everything that the ice storm did not destroy
the hail	everything that the ice storm did not destroy
And it will devour	They will eat

Exodus 10:6

ULT	UST
And they will fill your houses and the houses of all your servants and the houses of all the Egyptians, which your fathers had never seen, nor the fathers of your fathers, from the day they came to be on the earth until this day.'" And he turned around and left from being with Pharaoh.	*They will fill your houses and the houses of all your officials and of all the rest of the Egyptians. There will be more locusts than your parents or your grandparents have ever seen from the time your ancestors first came to this land until now!'" Then Moses {and Aaron} turned and left the king.*

ULT **from the day they came to be on the earth until this day**
UST from the time your ancestors first came to this land until now
(מִיּוֹם הֱיוֹתָם עַל־הָאֲדָמָה עַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה)

Here, **on the earth** could either mean "on the planet" or "on the land" (Egypt). Either way, the entire phrase is meant to emphasize an extremely long time, with the intended meaning being "never."

Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **And he turned around**
UST Then Moses {and Aaron} turned
(וַיִּפֶן)

10:3 says that Aaron came in to see the king with Moses. It is implied that he left with him as well. You may make this explicit if it would help your readers.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your houses	your houses
and the houses	and the houses of all your officials
your servants	and the houses of all your officials
and the houses	and of all the rest of the Egyptians
the Egyptians	and of all the rest of the Egyptians
from the day … day	from the time … now
day	now
the earth	this land
Pharaoh	the king

Exodus 10:7

ULT	UST
And the servants of Pharaoh said to him, "Until when will this be a trap to us? Let the men go and they will serve Yahweh their God. Do you not understand yet that Egypt has perished?"	*The king's officials said to him, "This is another trap for us! Let the Israelites go in order that they may worship Yahweh, their god. You must know that our country is already ruined."*

ULT Until when will this be a trap to us
UST This is another trap for us
(עַד־מָתַי֙ יִהְיֶ֣ה זֶ֔ה לָ֥נוּ לְמוֹקֵ֖שׁ)

Pharaoh's servants ask this question to show Pharaoh that he is stubbornly causing the destruction of Egypt. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [We must not let this man continue to cause trouble for us!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT the men
UST the Israelites
(אֶת־הָאֲנָשִׁ֔ים)

Here, **men** may be literal or it may refer to the Israelites, including the women and children. In 10:10 the king rejects the idea of letting the women and children go, and in 10:11 he specifically says that the men can go.

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT Do you not understand yet that Egypt has perished
UST You must know that our country is already ruined
(הֲטֶ֣רֶם תֵּדַ֔ע כִּ֥י אָבְדָ֖ה מִצְרָֽיִם)

Pharaoh's servants ask this question to bring Pharaoh to recognize what he refuses to see. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [You should realize that Egypt is destroyed!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **that Egypt has perished**
UST that our country is … ruined
(כִּי אָבְדָה מִצְרָיִם)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [that these plagues have destroyed Egypt] or [that their God has destroyed Egypt]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the servants of	The king's officials
Pharaoh	The king's officials
a trap	trap
and they will serve	in order that they may worship
Yahweh	Yahweh
their God	their god
Do you … understand	You … know
Egypt	our country
has perished	is … ruined

Exodus 10:8

ULT	UST
And Moses and Aaron were brought back to Pharaoh, and he said to them, "Go serve Yahweh your God. Who and who shall go?"	*{The king ordered someone} to bring Moses and Aaron back to him. He said to them, "Go worship Yahweh, your god. But who will go?"*

ULT And Moses and Aaron were brought back to Pharaoh
UST {The king ordered someone} to bring Moses and Aaron back to him
(וַיּוּשַׁב אֶת־מֹשֶׁה וְאֶת־אַהֲרֹן אֶל־פַּרְעֹה)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And a servant brought Moses and Aaron back to Pharaoh]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT Who and who
UST But who
(מִי וָמִי)

Alternate translation: [Who all]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
Pharaoh	The king … him
serve	worship
Yahweh	Yahweh
your God	your god

Exodus 10:9

ULT	UST
And Moses said, "We shall go with our young and with our old. We shall go with our sons and with our daughters, with our flocks and our herds, because the festival of Yahweh is for us."	*Moses replied, "We all need to go, everyone, including those who are young and those who are old. We need to take our sons, our daughters, and our flocks of sheep and goats and herds of livestock because a celebration to honor Yahweh is for all of us."*

ULT We shall go … We shall go
UST We all need to go … We need to take
(נֵלֵךְ & נֵלֵךְ)

We means the Israelites and does not include Pharaoh or the Egyptians. Use an exclusive form here if your language has this distinction.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
with our flocks	flocks of sheep and goats and herds of
the festival of	a celebration to honor Yahweh
Yahweh	a celebration to honor Yahweh

Exodus 10:10

ULT	UST
And he said to them, "May Yahweh be with you in the same way as I will let you and your children go. See, for evil is before your faces!	*The king replied, "I am not about to let you go with your women and children because I do not think Yahweh is about to help you. Watch out so that something bad does not happen to you!*

ULT **May Yahweh be with you in the same way as I will let you and your children go**
UST I am not about to let you go with your women and children because I do not think Yahweh is about to help you
(יְהִי כֵן יְהוָה עִמָּכֶם כַּאֲשֶׁר אֲשַׁלַּח אֶתְכֶם וְאֶת־טַפְּכֶם)

May Yahweh be with you is usually a blessing but is almost certainly not a blessing here. It likely means something like "It will take Yahweh's power to make me let you and your children go," or "May Yahweh be as favorable to you as I am to the idea of letting your children go." Pharaoh is saying that it will take Yahweh to make him do what Moses wants, but he does not think that will happen. Alternate translation: [It will be clear that Yahweh is with you if I let you and your children go]

ULT **See, for evil is before your faces**
UST Watch out so that something bad does not happen to you
(רְאוּ כִּי רָעָה נֶגֶד פְּנֵיכֶם)

The phrase **for evil is before your faces** could either be a warning from Pharaoh that Moses' actions will lead to evil for the Israelites, or it could mean that Pharaoh thinks the Israelites plan something that he considers evil. **Faces** is a metonym for the whole person. Alternate translation: [I see that you plan evil] or [Be careful! Your actions will have bad consequences]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	because I do not think Yahweh is about to help you
evil	something bad does not happen to you

Exodus 10:11

ULT	UST
Not so! You may go, the men, and serve Yahweh, because this is what you are seeking." And he drove them from the face of Pharaoh.	*Since you keep asking, go worship Yahweh with just your men. But no one else may go!" Then the king drove Moses and Aaron away.*

ULT the men
UST with just your men
(הַגְּבָרִים)

This interjection clarifies who may go. Alternate translation: [the leaders]

ULT from the face of Pharaoh
UST Then the king drove … away
(מֵאֵת פְּנֵי פַרְעֹה)

Here, **face** represents the presence of Pharaoh. Alternate translation: [from his presence]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and serve	worship
Yahweh	Yahweh
are seeking	you keep asking
And he drove	Then the king drove … away
Pharaoh	Then the king drove … away

Exodus 10:12

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Stretch out your hand over the land of Egypt with the locust, and let it rise up over the land of Egypt, and let it devour all of the plants of the land, everything which the hail had spared."	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Stretch out your hand over Egypt and locusts will come up and cover the country. They will eat every green thing in the whole country, anything that the hail left behind."*

ULT **And Yahweh said**
UST Then Yahweh said
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה)

There is a minor scene change here, which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **your hand**
UST your hand
(יָדְךָ)

See note in the Chapter 8 Introduction regarding the hand and staff.

ULT **with the locust**
UST locusts
(בָּאַרְבֶּה)

Locust is a collective singular noun referring to the group as one. See how you translated this in 10:4. Alternate translation: [locusts]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **and let it rise up … and let it devour**
UST and … will come up … They will eat
(וְיַעַל & וְיֹאכַל)

Here, the pronoun **it** agrees in number with the collective singular "locust." See how you translated this in 10:5

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
the land of	Egypt
Egypt	Egypt

ULT	UST
with the locust	locusts
the land of	the country
Egypt	the country
and let it devour	They will eat
the land	green thing in the whole country
the hail	the hail

Exodus 10:13

ULT	UST
And Moses reached out his staff over the land of Egypt, and Yahweh drove an east wind over the land all that day and all night. The morning was, and the east wind had brought the locust.	*So Moses held out his staff as though he were stretching it over the country of Egypt. Then Yahweh caused a wind to blow from the east, and it blew over the land all that day and all that night. By the next morning, it had brought the locusts.*

ULT **his staff**
UST his staff
(אֶת־מַטֵּהוּ)

See note in the Chapter 8 Introduction regarding the hand and staff.

ULT **an east wind**
UST a wind … from the east
(רוּחַ קָדִים)

The wind blew from east to west.

ULT **the locust**
UST the locusts
(אֶת־הָאַרְבֶּה)

See how you translated this in 10:4. Alternate translation: [locusts]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
his staff	his staff
the land of	the country of Egypt
Egypt	the country of Egypt
and Yahweh	Then Yahweh
over the land	over the land
day	day
the locust	the locusts

Exodus 10:14

ULT	UST
And the locust rose up over all the land of Egypt and came to rest everywhere within the borders of Egypt. They were extremely numerous. Never before was there such locust like it, and nothing will be like it after.	*The locusts came up all over Egypt. They landed everywhere in the whole country. There had never been anything like this huge number of locusts, and there will never be anything like it again.*

ULT the locust … locust

UST The locusts … of locusts

(הָאַרְבֶּה & אַרְבֶּה)

See how you translated this in 10:4. Alternate translation: [locusts]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the locust	The locusts
the land of	all over Egypt
Egypt	all over Egypt
Egypt	country
locust	of locusts

Exodus 10:15

ULT	UST
And it covered the sight of all of the land, and the land was dark. And it devoured all of the plants of the land and all of the fruit of the trees that the hail had left. And not any of the greenery remained in a tree or in a plant of the field in all of the land of Egypt.	*They covered the surface of the ground and made it appear black. They ate all the plants in the land and everything on the trees that the ice storm had not destroyed. They left nothing that was green on any tree or on any plant anywhere in Egypt.*

ULT **And it covered … And it devoured**
UST They covered … They ate
(וַיְכַס & וַיֹּאכַל)

Here the pronoun **it** agrees in number with the collective singular "locust." See how you translated this in 10:5

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **And it covered the sight of all of the land**
UST They covered the surface of the ground
(וַיְכַס אֶת־עֵין כָּל־הָאָרֶץ)

See how you translated this in 10:5.

ULT **And it devoured all of the plants of the land and all of the fruit of the trees that the hail had left. And not any of the greenery remained in a tree or in a plant of the field in all of the land of Egypt**
UST They ate all the plants in the land and everything on the trees that the ice storm had not destroyed. They left nothing that was green on any tree or on any plant anywhere in Egypt
(וַיֹּאכַל אֶת־כָּל־עֵשֶׂב הָאָרֶץ וְאֵת כָּל־פְּרִי הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר הוֹתִיר הַבָּרָד וְלֹא־נוֹתַר כָּל־יֶרֶק בָּעֵץ וּבְעֵשֶׂב הַשָּׂדֶה בְּכָל־אֶרֶץ מִצְרָיִם)

These parallel statements reinforce one another. If saying the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one.

Support Reference: Parallelism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
of the land	the surface of the ground
the land	it
And it devoured	They ate
the land	in the land
the fruit of	on the trees
the hail	the ice storm
the land of	anywhere in Egypt

ULT	UST
Egypt	anywhere in Egypt

Exodus 10:16

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh hurried to call for Moses and for Aaron and said, "I have sinned against Yahweh your God and against you.	*The king quickly called Aaron and Moses and said, "I have sinned against Yahweh, your god, and against you.*

ULT your God and against you
UST your god, and against you
(אֱלֹהֵיכֶם וְלָכֶם)

Here, **you** and **your** are plural. These could refer either to Moses and Aaron or to all the Israelites. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	The king
to call	called
for Moses	Moses
and for Aaron	Aaron and
I have sinned	I have sinned
against Yahweh	against Yahweh
your God	your god

Exodus 10:17

ULT	UST
And now, please bear my sin, just this once, and pray to Yahweh your God and let him take this death only away from me."	*Can you forgive me right now for having sinned this one time? Please pray to Yahweh, your god. Just ask him to take away the locusts that will cause us all to die."*

ULT **bear**
UST forgive me
(נָשָׂא)

Alternate translation: [take away]

ULT **just this once … only**
UST this one time … Just
(אַךְ הַפַּעַם & רַק)

Pharaoh could either be desperate and using **just this once … only** to attempt to make his request as small as possible to increase the chances of it being granted, or he could be still too proud to admit guilt beyond this single incident (which is probably his bold statement about Yahweh being with the Israelites in 10:10). The former seems more likely given that he terms this plague "this death." If your culture has a way of making a request seem as small as possible, you may want to use it to translate Pharaoh's request.

ULT **your God**
UST your god
(אֱלֹהֵיכֶם)

Here, **your** is plural. This could refer either to Moses and Aaron or to all the Israelites. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **this death**
UST the locusts that will cause us all to die
(אֶת־הַמָּוֶת הַזֶּה)

The word **death** here refers to the destruction by the locusts of all plants in Egypt, which would eventually lead to the deaths of people, because there would be no crops. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. See the UST.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **this death**
UST the locusts that will cause us all to die
(אֶת־הַמָּוֶת הַזֶּה)

The word **death** here refers to the destruction by the locusts of all plants in Egypt, which would eventually lead to the deaths of people because there would be no crops. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [this destruction that will lead to our deaths]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
my sin	for having sinned
and pray	Please pray … ask
to Yahweh	to Yahweh … him
your God	your god

Exodus 10:18

ULT	UST
And he went out from being with Pharaoh, and he prayed to Yahweh.	*So Moses and Aaron left the king, and Moses prayed to Yahweh.*

ULT And he went out
UST So Moses and Aaron left
(וַיֵּצֵא)

Moses and Aaron were summoned to the king in 10:16, so some translations will need to say that they both left.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
and he prayed	and Moses prayed
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 10:19

ULT	UST
And Yahweh turned a very strong sea wind, and it carried away the locust, and it drove it into the Sea of Reeds; not one locust remained in all of the territory of Egypt.	*Then Yahweh changed the wind so that it blew strongly from the west, and it picked up and forced all the locusts into the Sea of Reeds. There were no locusts left anywhere in the country of Egypt.*

ULT **a very strong sea wind**
UST the wind so that it blew strongly from the west
(רוּחַ־יָם חָזָק מְאֹד)

Alternate translation: [a very strong west wind] or [a very strong wind from the west]

ULT **and it carried away the locust**
UST and it picked up … all the locusts
(וַיִּשָּׂא אֶת־הָאַרְבֶּה)

Alternate translation: [and it moved the locust upward]

ULT **the locust … locust**
UST all the locusts … locusts
(אֶת־הָאַרְבֶּה & אַרְבֶּה)

See how you translated this in 10:4. Alternate translation: [the locusts … of the locusts]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **and it drove it**
UST and forced
(וַיִּתְקָעֵהוּ)

Here, the first **it** refers to the wind; the second **it** agrees in number with the collective singular “locust.” See how you translated this in 10:5

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
the locust	all the locusts
into the Sea of Reeds	into the Sea of Reeds
locust	locusts
Egypt	anywhere in the country of Egypt

Exodus 10:20

ULT	UST
And Yahweh strengthened the heart of Pharaoh, and he did not let the sons of Israel go.	*But Yahweh made the king stubborn again, and the king did not let the Israelites go.*

ULT And Yahweh strengthened the heart of Pharaoh
UST But Yahweh made the king stubborn again
(וַיְחַזֵּק יְהוָה אֶת־לֵב פַּרְעֹה)

This means God made him stubborn. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his **heart** were **strong**. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. See how you translated this in 4:21. Alternate translation: [But Yahweh caused Pharaoh to be stubborn]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Pharaoh	the king
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 10:21

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Stretch out your hand toward the heavens, and let it become dark over the land of Egypt, and darkness will feel."	*Yahweh said to Moses, "Reach your hand up toward the sky so that it may be dark over all the land of Egypt, so dark that it will seem like people can feel it."*

ULT And Yahweh said
UST Yahweh said
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה)

A new scene begins here, which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language. This is the start of the third plague sequence.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT your hand
UST your hand
(יָדְךָ)

See note in the Chapter 8 Introduction regarding the hand and staff.

ULT Egypt, and darkness will feel
UST all the land of Egypt, so dark that it will seem like people can feel it
(מִצְרַיִם וְיָמֵשׁ חֹשֶׁךְ)

This is a somewhat puzzling construction which describes the darkness. Most English translations take it as a passive, which restated actively means, "people will feel the darkness," meaning metaphorically what is expressed in different ways in the UST and the alternate translation here. Another option is to view the Hebrew verb form as causative and translate as such: "and the darkness will cause people to feel," meaning people will have to feel where they are going because they will not be able to see. A final option would be a personification of darkness such that the darkness gropes around, filling in every place in the land. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Egypt, an extremely oppressive darkness]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
the heavens	the sky

ULT	UST
the land of Egypt	all the land of Egypt
	all the land of Egypt

Exodus 10:22

ULT	UST
And Moses stretched out his hand above the heavens, and dark darkness was in all of the land of Egypt for three days.	*So Moses reached his hand toward the sky, and it became extremely dark all over Egypt for three days and nights.*

ULT his hand
UST his hand
(אֶת־יָדוֹ)

See note in the Chapter 8 Introduction regarding the hand and staff.

ULT for three
UST for three
(שְׁלֹשֶׁת)

Alternate translation: [for 3]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
the heavens	the sky
the land of	all over Egypt
Egypt	all over Egypt
days	days and nights

Exodus 10:23

ULT	UST
No man could see his brother, and no man rose from his place for three days. But for all the sons of Israel, there was light in their dwelling-places.	*No one could see anyone else. No one went anywhere for three days. But there was light in the area where the Israelites lived.*

ULT No man could see his brother
UST No one could see anyone else
(לֹא־רָאֹ֥ו אִ֨ישׁ אֶת־אָחִ֜יו)

This phrase means that people could not see the people who lived closest to them, whether or not that person was literally their **brother**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [No one could see the people who lived with them]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT man … man
UST one … one
(אִ֨ישׁ & אִ֜ישׁ)

Here, **man** refers to any human in general. Alternate translation: [person]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT for three
UST for three days
(שְׁלֹשֶׁת)

Alternate translation: [for 3]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	for three days
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 10:24

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh called to Moses, and he said, "Go serve Yahweh. Only your flocks and your herds must remain behind; however, your children will go with you."	*The king called Moses and said, "{All right,} you may go and worship Yahweh. Your women and your children may go with you. But your flocks {of sheep and goats} and your herds {of cattle} must remain here."*

ULT Go serve … your flocks and your herds … your children … with you
UST {All right,} you may go and worship … Your women and your children … with you … your flocks {of sheep and goats} … your herds {of cattle}
(לְכוּ עִבְדוּ & צַאנְכֶם וּבְקַרְכֶם & טַפְּכֶם & עִמָּכֶם)

Every instance of **you** and **your**, as well as the imperative verb forms in this verse, are plural. They refer to the Israelites. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	The king
And … called	called
Moses	Moses
serve	and worship
Yahweh	Yahweh
your flocks	your flocks {of sheep and goats}

Exodus 10:25

ULT	UST
And Moses said, "Also you, you must give in our hands sacrifices and burnt offerings, and we will do to Yahweh our God.	*But Moses replied, "No, you must also let us take our sacrifices and burnt offerings to offer to Yahweh, our God.*

ULT **Also you, you must give in our hands sacrifices and burnt offerings**
UST No, you must also let us take our sacrifices and burnt offerings
(גַּם־אַתָּה תִּתֵּן בְּיָדֵנוּ זְבָחִים וְעֹלוֹת)

The construction here is difficult. Based on context, Moses is probably not saying that Pharaoh needs to provide his own animals to the Israelites. He is asking Pharaoh to let the Israelites take their own animals with them. **Give in our hands** means to take with them, by whatever means, which may include holding a rope in the hand to lead the animals or any other means of herding the animals. See the UST.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **sacrifices and burnt offerings**
UST our sacrifices and burnt offerings
(זְבָחִים וְעֹלוֹת)

Here, **sacrifices and burnt offerings** refers to the animals of their flocks and herds that they must take. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [animals for sacrifices and burnt offerings]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and we will do to Yahweh our God**
UST to offer to Yahweh, our God
(וְעָשִׂינוּ לַיהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ)

Here, **do** means "do the sacrifices and burnt offerings." Alternate translation: [and we will make those sacrifices and burnt offerings to Yahweh our God]

ULT **in our hands … and we will do … our God**
UST take … to offer … our God
(בְּיָדֵנוּ & וְעָשֵׂינוּ & אֱלֹהֵינוּ)

Here, **we** and **us** refers to the Israelites (same group as the speaker's) while excluding Pharaoh and the Egyptians (listeners' group). If your language distinguishes between forms of we and us based on who is included, be sure to use the one appropriate to the described group.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
sacrifices	our sacrifices
and burnt offerings	and burnt offerings
to Yahweh	to Yahweh
our God	our God

Exodus 10:26

ULT	UST
And even our livestock shall go with us. Not a hoof shall be left behind, for we shall take from them to serve Yahweh our God. And as for us, we will not know with what we must serve Yahweh until we arrive there."	*Our domesticated animals must also go with us. We are not going to leave one animal behind because we must take them to worship Yahweh, the God we worship. We will not know what we will need for worshiping Yahweh until we get to where we are going."*

ULT **our livestock … with us … we shall take … our God. And as for us, we will … know … we must serve … we arrive**
UST Our domesticated animals … with us … we must take them … the God we worship. We will … know what we will need for worshiping … we get to
(מִקְנֵנוּ & עִמָּנוּ & נִקַּח & אֱלֹהֵינוּ וַאֲנַחְנוּ & נֵדַע & נַעֲבֹד & בֹּאֲנוּ)

Here, **we, our**, and **us** each refers to the Israelites (same group as the speaker's) while excluding Pharaoh and the Egyptians (listeners' group). If your language distinguishes between forms of we, our, and us based on who is included, be sure to use the one appropriate to the described group.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **Not a hoof shall be left behind**
UST We are not going to leave one animal behind
(לֹא תִשָּׁאֵר פַּרְסָה)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [We cannot leave behind a single animal]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **a hoof**
UST one animal
(פַּרְסָה)

Here the word **hoof** refers to the entire animal. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a single animal]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **there**
UST where we are going
(שָׁמָּה)

The destination is unspecified. Previous context suggests it would be at the mountain of God (See: 3:1, especially 3:12, and 4:27), which would take three days of travel to reach (See: 3:18 and 5:3).

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
our livestock	Our domesticated animals
to serve	to worship
Yahweh	Yahweh
our God	the God we worship
we will … know	will … know
we must serve	what we will need for worshiping
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 10:27

ULT	UST
And Yahweh strengthened the heart of Pharaoh, and he would not agree to let them go.	*But Yahweh made the king continue to be stubborn. The king would not allow the Israelites to go.*

ULT And Yahweh strengthened the heart of Pharaoh
UST But Yahweh made the king continue to be stubborn
(וַיְחַזֵּק יְהוָה אֶת־לֵב פַּרְעֹה)

This means God made him stubborn. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his **heart** were **strong**. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. See how you translated this in 4:21. Alternate translation: [But Yahweh caused Pharaoh to be stubborn]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT and he would not agree to let them go
UST The king would not allow the Israelites to go
(וְלֹא אָבָה לְשַׁלְּחָם)

Alternate translation: [and Pharaoh would not consent to let them go]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Pharaoh	the king

Exodus 10:28

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh said to him, "Get away from me! Watch yourself; you shall not again see my face; because in the day of your seeing my face, you shall die."	*The king said to Moses and Aaron, "Get out of here! Make sure that you never {come to} see me again! The day you see me again, I will have someone kill you!"*

> ULT **Watch yourself**
> UST Make sure that
> (הִשָּׁמֶר לְךָ)

Here, the listener, Moses, is both the subject and object of the sentence. He is the person told to look (subject) and he himself is what he is told to look at (object). Different languages have different methods of marking this. Alternate translation: [You watch yourself]

Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

> ULT **Watch yourself**
> UST Make sure that
> (הִשָּׁמֶר לְךָ)

This is an idiom. Pharaoh is not telling Moses literally to keep looking at himself. Alternate translation: [Be careful]

Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **you shall die**
> UST I will have someone kill you
> (תָּמוּת)

Pharaoh means he will have Moses killed. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **my face … my face**
> UST me … me
> (פָּנַי & פָּנַי)

Here, **face** refers to the whole person. See the UST.

Support Reference: Synecdoche

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	The king
Watch	Make sure that

ULT	UST
in the day of	The day

Exodus 10:29

ULT	UST
And Moses said, “Just as you say, I will not ever see your face again.”	*Moses replied, “You are correct! I will never see you again!”*

ULT Just as you say
UST You are correct
(כֵּן דִּבַּרְתָּ)

With these words, Moses emphasizes that Pharaoh has spoken the truth. Alternate translation: [What you have said is true]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT your face
UST you
(פָּנֶיךָ)

Here, **face** refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: [you]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses

Exodus 11

Exodus 11 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

Chapter 11 is a transition point in the book. The previous nine plagues (in their three sequences of three) have come to an end and the last plague, the death of the firstborn, is about to occur, along with the Passover and the Exodus itself. It is difficult to know if the events in chapter 11 all are recorded in the order in which they happened. For translation, you should follow the order of the text if it will not confuse your readers.

It may be helpful to think that after the end of chapter 10, Yahweh spoke to Moses immediately, before he actually left Pharaoh's presence (11:1–2). 11:3 is a comment suggesting that the Egyptians will be willing to do as the Israelites are told to ask them to do in v. 2. In verses 11:4–7 Moses gives Pharaoh and his officials a message from Yahweh that Yahweh is giving to Moses right at that moment. At the end of v. 8 Moses leaves Pharaoh's presence (completing the interaction from the end of ch. 10). 11:9 may either be Yahweh telling Moses what is going to happen, or it could be part of the summary that occurs in v. 10. Verse 10 summarizes what has happened in chapters 5–10 (especially the plagues in chapters 7–10) in preparation for the great last plague.

Exodus 11:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "One more plague I will bring on Pharaoh and on Egypt. After that he will let you go from here. As soon as he lets go, he will certainly drive you completely away from here.	*Yahweh said to Moses, "I will bring one more disaster on the king of Egypt and on all his people. After that, he will let you leave. When he does, he will absolutely chase you out of Egypt.*

ULT **to Moses**
UST to Moses
(אֶל־מֹשֶׁה)

After this phrase, a direct quote begins that continues until the end of 11:2. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening first-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation. There may be other quotations in this chapter; they will be marked by the same punctuation, but they will not have their own notes unless there is something unique about them.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **As soon as he lets go, he will … drive … away**
UST When he does, he will … chase
(כְּשַׁלְּחוֹ & יְגָרֵשׁ)

These verbs (**lets go** and **drive away**) are meant to immediately follow one another. When you translate, make sure they are almost simultaneous in time; the letting go happens and then immediately the driving away happens.

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT **he will certainly drive … completely away**
UST he will absolutely chase
(כָּלָה גָּרֵשׁ יְגָרֵשׁ)

The wording here is very forceful. Use strong words, forms, or phrasing when you are translating.

ULT **you … you**
UST you … you
(אֶתְכֶם & אֶתְכֶם)

Each occurrence of the word **you** in this verse is plural and refers to Moses and the rest of the Israelites. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
plague	disaster
Pharaoh	the king of
Egypt	Egypt … all his people
certainly	absolutely
he will … drive … away	he will … chase

Exodus 11:2

ULT	UST
Speak now in the ears of the people, and let them ask, a man from his neighbor and a woman from her neighbor, items of silver and items of gold."	*Speak quickly to all the Israelites. Tell them to ask all their Egyptian neighbors, both men and women, to give them things made from silver and gold."*

ULT **now**
UST quickly
(נָא)

Here, **now** conveys urgency, indicating that Moses should speak soon, without delaying for other things. If you have a way of giving a command that shows that it is important for someone to do it quickly, it would be better to translate in that way than in a way that means "now" in a time sense (versus earlier or later).

ULT **in the ears of the people**
UST to all the Israelites
(בְּאָזְנֵי הָעָם)

Alternate translation: [so the people hear you] or [when all the people are listening]

ULT **items of silver and items of gold**
UST things made from silver and gold
(כְּלֵי־כֶסֶף וּכְלֵי זָהָב)

These could be any sort of thing made from silver or gold (for instance: utensils, cups, pitchers, plates, candleholders), not just jewelry.

ULT **and let them ask, a man from his neighbor and a woman from her neighbor, items of silver and items of gold**
UST Tell them to ask all their Egyptian neighbors, both men and women, to give them things made from silver and gold
(וְיִשְׁאֲלוּ אִישׁ ו מֵאֵת רֵעֵהוּ וְאִשָּׁה מֵאֵת רְעוּתָהּ כְּלֵי־כֶסֶף וּכְלֵי זָהָב)

Exodus 3:22 contains similar instructions; see how you translated there.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
his neighbor	all their Egyptian neighbors
her neighbor	all their Egyptian neighbors
silver	silver

ULT	UST
gold	gold

Exodus 11:3

ULT	UST
And Yahweh gave the people favor in the eyes of the Egyptians. Furthermore, the man Moses was very great in the land of Egypt, in the eyes of the servants of Pharaoh and in the eyes of the people.	*Yahweh made the Egyptians willing to help the Israelites. Also, the king's officials and all the rest of the people thought that Moses was one of the most important men in Egypt.*

ULT **And Yahweh gave the people favor in the eyes of the Egyptians. Furthermore, the man Moses was very great in the land of Egypt, in the eyes of the servants of Pharaoh and in the eyes of the people**
UST Yahweh made the Egyptians willing to help the Israelites. Also, the king's officials and all the rest of the people thought that Moses was one of the most important men in Egypt
(וַיִּתֵּן יְהוָה אֶת־חֵן הָעָם בְּעֵינֵי מִצְרָיִם גַּם ׀ הָאִישׁ מֹשֶׁה גָּדוֹל מְאֹד בְּאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם בְּעֵינֵי עַבְדֵי־פַרְעֹה וּבְעֵינֵי הָעָם)

In this verse the author interjects a comment about the situation. Some translations choose to put the verse in parenthesis to indicate this. You may mark it in a way that is natural to your language.

Support Reference: Aside

ULT **the people favor in the eyes of the Egyptians**
UST the Egyptians willing to help the Israelites
(אֶת־חֵן הָעָם בְּעֵינֵי מִצְרָיִם)

Here, **in the eyes of the Egyptians** is an idiom for the Egyptian's feelings or opinion. **Favor** means those feelings are positive. Taken together, this means that when the Egyptians see the Israelites leaving Egypt, they will gladly help them. (Because the Egyptians have suffered under God's judgment, the Egyptians want so badly to see them leave). If your language has the same or a similar idiom, you can translate or use it. Otherwise, you can translate the meaning. See how you translated this in 3:21.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **in the eyes of the servants of Pharaoh and in the eyes of the people**
UST the king's officials and all the rest of the people thought
(בְּעֵינֵי עַבְדֵי־פַרְעֹה וּבְעֵינֵי הָעָם)

Here, **in the eyes of the servants of Pharaoh and in the eyes of the people** is an idiom for their feelings or opinions. If your language has the same or a similar idiom, you can translate or use it. Otherwise, you can translate the meaning. See how you translated a similar idiom in 3:21.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And Yahweh gave the people favor in the eyes of the Egyptians**
UST Yahweh made the Egyptians willing to help the Israelites
(וַיִּתֵּן יְהוָה אֶת־חֵן הָעָם בְּעֵינֵי מִצְרָיִם)

Exodus 3:21 contains a related phrase; see how you translated it there.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
favor	willing to help
the Egyptians	the Egyptians
Moses	that Moses was
in the land	in
of Egypt	Egypt
the servants of	officials
Pharaoh	the king’s

Exodus 11:4

ULT	UST
And Moses said, "Thus says Yahweh: 'About the middle of the night I will go out in the midst of Egypt,	*Then Moses said {to the king}, "This is what Yahweh says: 'About midnight I will go through Egypt,*

ULT Thus says Yahweh

UST This is what Yahweh says

(כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה)

This quotation formula is used to introduce commands from Yahweh. See Chapter 4 Introduction for more information.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Then Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 11:5

ULT	UST
and every firstborn in the land of Egypt will die, from the firstborn of Pharaoh, who sits on his throne, to the firstborn of the slave girl who is behind the mill, and every firstborn of a beast.	*and I will kill every oldest son in Egypt. I will kill without exception: the rich king's oldest son, the poor mill slave's oldest son, and even every oldest male born among the animals.*

ULT **firstborn … from the firstborn of … the firstborn of … firstborn of**
UST oldest son … the … king's oldest son … slave's oldest son … oldest male born among the animals
(בְּכוֹר & מִבְּכוֹר & בְּכוֹר & בְּכֹרוֹ)

The "firstborn" always refers to the oldest male offspring.

ULT **from the firstborn of Pharaoh, who sits on his throne, to the firstborn of the slave girl who is behind the mill, and every firstborn of a beast**
UST the rich king's oldest son, the poor mill slave's oldest son, and even every oldest male born among the animals
(מִבְּכוֹר פַּרְעֹה הַיֹּשֵׁב עַל־כִּסְאוֹ עַד בְּכוֹר הַשִּׁפְחָה אֲשֶׁר אַחַר הָרֵחָיִם וְכֹל בְּכוֹר בְּהֵמָה)

This is a merism. First, two extremes are mentioned: the highest of society (**Pharaoh, who sits on his throne**) and the lowest (**the slave girl who is behind the mill**). Then the animals (**beasts**) are added making it a three-item list of parts of society and even the economy to show the totality of the coming judgment. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language.

Support Reference: Merism

ULT **who is behind the mill**
UST the poor mill
(אֲשֶׁר אַחַר הָרֵחָיִם)

Alternate translation: [who is grinding at the handmill] or [who is behind the handmill grinding grain]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
firstborn	oldest son
in the land of	in Egypt
Egypt	in Egypt
from the firstborn of	the … king's oldest son
Pharaoh	the … king's oldest son
his throne	rich

ULT	UST
the firstborn of	slave's oldest son
the slave girl	slave's oldest son
firstborn of	oldest male born among the animals
a beast	oldest male born among the animals

Exodus 11:6

ULT	UST
And there will be a great cry in all the land of Egypt, which nothing like it has ever happened, and nothing like it will happen again.	*When that happens, people all over Egypt will lament more terribly than anyone ever has lamented before and more than anyone ever will again.*

ULT **which nothing like it has ever happened, and nothing like it will happen again**
UST than anyone ever has lamented before and more than anyone ever will again
(אֲשֶׁר כָּמֹהוּ֙ לֹ֣א נִהְיָ֔תָה וְכָמֹ֖הוּ לֹ֥א תֹסֵֽף)

This phrase uses the extremes of past and future to emphasize the concept of "never." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [such as has never been and never will be]

Support Reference: Merism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a … cry	will lament
the land of	people all over Egypt
Egypt	people all over Egypt

Exodus 11:7

ULT	UST
But to each of the sons of Israel, a dog will not sharpen his tongue, from man to beast, so that you will know that Yahweh distinguishes between Egypt and between Israel.'	*But dogs will not even bark at the Israelites or at their animals. Then you will know for sure that I, Yahweh, am treating the Egyptians differently from the Israelites.'*

ULT **will not sharpen his tongue**
UST will not even bark
(לְֹא יֶחֱרַץ & לְשֹׁנֹו)

This means to make an unfriendly noise. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [will not growl]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **you will know**
UST you will know
(תֵּדְעוּן)

Here, **you** is plural. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **that Yahweh distinguishes between Egypt and between Israel**
UST that I, Yahweh, am treating the Egyptians differently from the Israelites
(אֲשֶׁר֙ יַפְלֶ֣ה יְהוָ֔ה בֵּ֥ין מִצְרַ֖יִם וּבֵ֣ין יִשְׂרָאֵ֑ל)

See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 9:4.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	at the Israelites
beast	their animals
you will know	you will know
Yahweh	I, Yahweh
Egypt	the Egyptians
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 11:8

ULT	UST
And all your servants, these will come down to me, and they will bow to me, saying, 'Go, you and all the people who are at your feet!' And after that I will go out." And he went out from Pharaoh with burning of the nose.	*Then all these officials of yours will come and bow down before me and will say, 'Please get out of Egypt, you and everyone who is with you!' After that, we will leave Egypt!" When Moses had said that, he left the king very angrily.*

ULT **and they will bow to me**
UST and bow down before me
(וְהִשְׁתַּחֲווּ־לִי)

This does not mean to bow for worshiping. **They will bow to** Moses to beg him to leave. They will do this to show how desperate they will be for Moses and the Israelites to go. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **and they will bow to me**
UST and bow down before me
(וְהִשְׁתַּחֲווּ־לִי)

They will bow to Moses to beg him to leave. They will do this to show how desperate they will be for Moses and the Israelites to go. If this action would not mean the same thing in your culture, you may need to make the reason they are bowing explicit. Alternate translation: [and they will bow down to me to beg]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and all the people who are at your feet**
UST and everyone who is with you
(וְכָל־הָעָם אֲשֶׁר־בְּרַגְלֶיךָ)

Here, the people are pictured as below Moses, which means they are his followers. The reference to **feet** also can mean they go the same place he goes, again, meaning "follower." If your language uses a similar image to mean follower, you can translate the image; if not, you may use another image from your culture or translate the meaning. Alternate translation: [and all the people who are following you]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And after that I will go out**
UST After that, we will leave Egypt
(וְאַחֲרֵי־כֵן אֵצֵא)

This means that Moses and the Israelites will leave Egypt. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [After that I will leave here] or [After that I will go out from Egypt]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **with burning of the nose**
UST very angrily
(בְּחֲרִי־אָף)

This is an idiom meaning that Moses is angry. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [enraged]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your servants	officials of yours
and they will bow	and bow down
Pharaoh	the king

Exodus 11:9

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Pharaoh will not listen to you, in order to multiply my miracles in the land of Egypt."	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "The king will not obey you. This is so I can cause many disastrous miracles in his country."*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Pharaoh	The king
multiply	I can cause many
my miracles	disastrous miracles
in the land of	in his country
Egypt	in his country

Exodus 11:10

ULT	UST
And Moses and Aaron did all these miracles before the face of Pharaoh. But Yahweh strengthened the heart of Pharaoh, and he did not let the sons of Israel go from his land.	*Moses and Aaron did all these miracles in front of the king, but Yahweh made the king stubborn. The king did not let the Israelites leave his land.*

ULT **And Moses and Aaron did all these miracles before the face of Pharaoh. But Yahweh strengthened the heart of Pharaoh, and he did not let the sons of Israel go from his land**

UST Moses and Aaron did all these miracles in front of the king, but Yahweh made the king stubborn. The king did not let the Israelites leave his land

(וּמֹשֶׁה וְאַהֲרֹן עָשׂוּ אֶת־כָּל־הַמֹּפְתִים הָאֵלֶּה לִפְנֵי פַרְעֹה וַיְחַזֵּק יְהוָה אֶת־לֵב פַּרְעֹה וְלֹא־שִׁלַּח אֶת־בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל מֵאַרְצוֹ)

This verse is summarizing and wrapping up the story of the plagues. If your language has a way of summarizing information at the end of a story, try to translate this verse (and possibly verse 9—see the introductory notes to this chapter) in this way.

Support Reference: End of Story

ULT **But Yahweh strengthened the heart of Pharaoh**

UST but Yahweh made the king stubborn

(וַיְחַזֵּק יְהוָה אֶת־לֵב פַּרְעֹה)

This means God made him stubborn. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his **heart** were **strong**. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. See how you translated this in 4:21. Alternate translation: [But Yahweh caused Pharaoh to be stubborn]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And Moses	Moses
and Aaron	and Aaron
miracles	miracles
Pharaoh	the king
Yahweh	Yahweh
Pharaoh	the king
Israel	the Israelites
from his land	his land

Exodus 12

Exodus 12 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

The events of this chapter are known as the Passover. They are remembered in the celebration of Passover. (See: Passover)

1. Instruction v. 1–28
    - v. 1–20: Yahweh gives instructions
        - v. 1–11: how to eat this Passover
        - v. 12–13: description of the plague
        - v. 14–20: directions for future celebration of Passover
    - v. 21–28: Moses repeats Yahweh's instructions to Israelites
2. Narrative v. 29–42: Passover and Exodus
3. Instruction v. 43–49: which foreigners may eat Passover
4. Summary Narrative v. 50–51

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Unleavened bread

The concept of unleavened bread is introduced in this chapter. Its significance stems from its connection to the events in this chapter. (See: unleavened bread)

Ethnic segregation

The Hebrew people were to be separate from the rest of the world. Because of this, they separated themselves from other people groups. At this time, these foreigners were looked upon as unholy. (See: holy, holiness, unholy, sacred)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Passover

Pronoun usage

In the long quotation (verses 3–20) that Yahweh tells Moses and Aaron to convey to the Israelites, he speaks of them in the third person ("they must") in 12:3–4 and 12:7–8 and to them in the second person ("you must") for all the rest of the instruction. Some languages may need to keep the pronoun person consistent throughout the quotation.

You plural

In this chapter, almost every occurrence of "you" or "your" is plural. Each one refers to all the Israelites. Those that are not will be marked. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form throughout unless otherwise noted. (See: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural)

Exodus 12:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses and to Aaron in the land of Egypt, saying,	*Yahweh said to Aaron and Moses in Egypt,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
in the land of	in Egypt
Egypt	in Egypt

Exodus 12:2

ULT	UST
"This month is to you the head of the months. It is the first to you of the months of the year.	*"Start counting your months at this new moon. It will be the Israelites' first month of the year.*

ULT This month is to you the head of the months
UST Start counting your months at this new moon
(הַחֹדֶשׁ הַזֶּה לָכֶם רֹאשׁ חֳדָשִׁים)

The start of this verse is the beginning of a direct quote which continues until the end of 12:20. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening first-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation. There may be other quotations in this chapter; they will be marked by the same punctuation, but they will not have their own notes unless there is something unique about them.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT This month is to you the head of the months. It is the first to you of the months of the year
UST Start counting your months at this new moon. It will be the Israelites' first month of the year
(הַחֹדֶשׁ הַזֶּה לָכֶם רֹאשׁ חֳדָשִׁים רִאשׁוֹן הוּא לָכֶם לְחָדְשֵׁי הַשָּׁנָה)

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the month in which the events of this chapter take place will be the beginning of their calendar year.

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT It is the first to you of the months of the year
UST It will be the Israelites' first month of the year
(רִאשׁוֹן הוּא לָכֶם לְחָדְשֵׁי הַשָּׁנָה)

The first month of the Hebrew calendar includes the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. It marks when Yahweh rescued the Israelites from the Egyptians. You could convert the Hebrew day and month into an approximate date on the calendar that your culture uses. However, the Jews used a lunar calendar, so if you use a solar calendar, the date will be different every year and the translation will not be entirely accurate. So you may just want to give the number of the day and the name of the month on the Hebrew calendar, and say approximately what time of year that is on your calendar in a footnote.

Support Reference: Hebrew Months

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	new moon
the months	months
of the months	month of
of the year	the year

Exodus 12:3

ULT	UST
Speak to all the congregation of Israel, saying, ‘On the tenth of this month they shall take to themselves, each man, a lamb to the house of the fathers: a lamb to a house.	*Tell the whole Israelite community, ‘On the tenth day of this month every man who leads a family must take a young sheep or a young goat for his household.*

ULT **Speak**
UST Tell
(דַּבְּרוּ)

The command here is to both Moses and Aaron. If your language uses a different form if two are people addressed, use a dual form here.

Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural

ULT **they shall take to themselves, each man, a lamb to the house of the fathers: a lamb to a house**
UST every man who leads a family must take a young sheep or a young goat for his household
(וְיִקְחוּ לָהֶם אִישׁ שֶׂה לְבֵית־אָבֹת שֶׂה לַבָּיִת)

This seems to be indicating that if multiple families live in one house, the man who is the leader of the family group that lives there should take one lamb for that whole household. Alternate translation: [the father of each household must take a lamb for his household, one per household]

ULT **a lamb to a house**
UST a young sheep or a young goat for his household
(שֶׂה לַבָּיִת)

Alternate translation: [one lamb per house]

ULT **a lamb … a lamb**
UST a young sheep or a young goat
(שֶׂה & שֶׂה)

The word **lamb** literally means “of the flock,” and it could also be translated as a sheep or a goat. Here, the ULT uses **lamb** (a young sheep), because 12:5 specifies that it must be one year old. “Kid” (a young goat) would be equally valid as verse 5 also says that it could be either a sheep or a goat. You may translate it as either sheep or goat, whichever would be most familiar.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the congregation of	community
Israel	Israelite
month	month
a lamb	a young sheep or a young goat
to the house of	every man who leads a family
a lamb	a young sheep or a young goat
to a house	for his household

Exodus 12:4

ULT	UST
And if the household is too few for having a lamb, then he and his neighbor near to his house by the number of people shall take the lamb; according to the eating of the mouth of each man you shall calculate it.	*If there are not enough people in his family to eat a whole cooked lamb, then his family and a family that lives nearby may kill one animal. Plan to share the lamb according to the number of people in each family and according to how much each person can eat.*

ULT **And if the household is too few for having a lamb**
UST If there are not enough people in his family to eat a whole cooked lamb
(וְאִם־יִמְעַט הַבַּיִת֙ מִהְיֹ֣ת מִשֶּׂ֔ה)

This means that there are not enough people in the family to eat an entire lamb. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [If there are not enough people in the household to eat an entire lamb]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and his neighbor near to his house by the number of people**
UST and a family that lives nearby … according to the number of people in each family
(וּשְׁכֵנ֥וֹ הַקָּרֹ֖ב אֶל־בֵּיתֹ֑ו בְּמִכְסַ֣ת נְפָשֹׁ֔ת)

The phrase **by the number of people** helps to clarify which sort of **neighbor near to his house** the Israelite should choose. They should count their own household and another household and try to have a group that is the right number to eat an entire lamb. Alternate translation: [and his neighbor who lives near him and whose family is the right size to share a lamb with]

ULT **each man**
UST and according to how much each person can eat
(אִ֖ישׁ)

Here **man** refers to each person, whether man, woman, or child. Alternate translation: [each family member]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the household	in his family
a lamb	to eat a whole cooked lamb
and his neighbor	and a family
his house	that lives nearby

ULT	UST
the lamb … it	one animal … the lamb

Exodus 12:5

ULT	UST
Your lamb shall be complete, male, the son of a year. You may take from the sheep or from the goats.	*You may choose a sheep or a goat; but it must be a one-year-old male, and it must be perfect, without any defects.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lamb	a sheep … it … it
complete	and … must be perfect, without any defects
a year	a one-year-old
the sheep	a sheep … it … it
the goats	or a goat

Exodus 12:6

ULT	UST
And it shall be to you to reserve until the fourteenth day of this month. And all the assembly of the congregation of Israel shall slaughter it between the evenings.	*You must take special care of these animals until the fourteenth day of this month. On that day, all the Israelites must kill the young sheep or young goats in the evening.*

ULT **between the evenings**
UST in the evening
(בֵּין הָעַרְבָּיִם)

This refers to the time of evening after the sun has set but while there is still some light.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day of	day of … On that day
month	month
the assembly of	all the Israelites
the congregation of	all the Israelites
Israel	all the Israelites
And … shall slaughter	must kill

Exodus 12:7

ULT	UST
And they shall take from the blood and put it on the two doorposts and on the lintel of the houses in which they eat it.	*Then they must take some of the blood from the young sheep or young goats, and they must smear it on the two doorposts and on the tops of the doorframes of the houses in which they will eat the meat.*

ULT on the two doorposts and on the lintel of the houses

UST on the two doorposts and on the tops of the doorframes of the houses

(עַל־שְׁתֵּי הַמְּזוּזֹת וְעַל־הַמַּשְׁקוֹף עַל הַבָּתִּים)

Alternate translation: [on the sides and top of the way into the house] or [on the top and sides of the frame around the door into the house]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
doorposts	doorposts
the houses	of the houses

Exodus 12:8

ULT	UST
And they shall eat the flesh that night, roast of fire, and they shall eat unleavened bread over bitter herbs.	*They must roast the animals over a fire and eat the meat that same night. They must eat it with bitter herbs and with bread that does not have yeast in it.*

ULT **bitter herbs**

UST bitter herbs

(מְרֹרִֽים)

These are edible but strong-tasting leaves, seeds, and other parts of plants.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and … unleavened bread	and with bread that does not have yeast in it

Exodus 12:9

ULT	UST
You shall not eat from it raw or boiled from boiling in water. But instead, roasted of fire, its head with its legs and with its internal organs.	*You must not eat any of the meat uncooked, and you must not cook the meat in water. You must do this: cook the whole animal over a fire. Do not remove the head, legs, or inside parts.*

ULT You shall not eat from it raw

UST You must not eat any of the meat uncooked … the meat
(אַל־תֹּאכְלוּ מִמֶּנּוּ נָא)

Alternate translation: [Do not eat the lamb or goat uncooked]

Exodus 12:10

ULT	UST
And you shall not cause to remain anything from it until morning; and you shall burn in the fire what remains from it until morning.	*Do not save any of the meat until the next morning. Any meat that you have not eaten by morning, you must burn to ash.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

Exodus 12:11

ULT	UST
And this is how you shall eat it: belts fastened on your waist, your sandals on your feet, and your staff in your hand. And you shall eat it with haste. It is the Passover to Yahweh.	*When you eat it, you must be dressed ready to travel. You must have your sandals on your feet and your walking staff in your hands. You must eat it hurriedly. It will be a festival called Passover to honor me, Yahweh.*

ULT belts fastened
UST dressed ready to travel
(חֲגֻרִים)

Here, **belts** are strips of leather or fabric for tying around the waist.

ULT And you shall eat it with haste
UST you must be … You must have … You must eat it hurriedly
(וַאֲכַלְתֶּם אֹתוֹ בְּחִפָּזוֹן)

Alternate translation: [And you must eat it quickly]

ULT It is the Passover to Yahweh
UST It will be a festival called Passover to honor me, Yahweh
(פֶּסַח הוּא לַיהוָה)

It refers to eating the animal on the tenth day of the month. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [This observance is Yahweh's Passover]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
belts fastened	dressed ready to travel
on your waist	dressed ready to travel
your sandals	your sandals
and your staff	and your walking staff
is the Passover	will be a festival called Passover
to Yahweh	to honor me, Yahweh

Exodus 12:12

ULT	UST
And I will pass through the land of Egypt on that night, and I will strike all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, from man to beast. And I will bring judgment on all the gods of Egypt. I am Yahweh.	*On that night I will go throughout Egypt, and I will kill all the oldest males in Egypt, both humans and animals. I am punishing all the Egyptians' gods. I am Yahweh.*

ULT **And I will bring judgment on all the gods of Egypt**
UST I am punishing all the Egyptians' gods
(וּבְכָל־אֱלֹהֵי מִצְרַיִם אֶעֱשֶׂה שְׁפָטִים)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **judgment**, you can express the same idea in another way.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the land	Egypt
of Egypt	Egypt
the firstborn	the oldest males
in the land of	in Egypt
Egypt	in Egypt
beast	animals
judgment	I am punishing
the gods of	gods
Egypt	the Egyptians
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh

Exodus 12:13

ULT	UST
And the blood will be a sign for you on the houses which you are in. And I will see the blood, and I will pass over above you, and the plague will not be on you for destruction as my striking on the land of Egypt.	*The blood on your houses will show that you are obeying me. When I see the blood, I will go past those houses. I will not harm the people who are in those houses when I come to punish the Egyptians.*

ULT **for destruction**
UST harm
(לְמַשְׁחִית)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **destruction**, you can express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to destroy you]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and the plague will not be on you**
UST I will not harm the people who are in those houses
(וְלֹא־יִהְיֶה בָכֶם נֶגֶף)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and I will not put the plague on you]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **on the land of Egypt**
UST when I come to … the Egyptians
(בְּאֶרֶץ מִצְרָיִם)

Yahweh is going to strike the people and animals who live in **the land of Egypt**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [on everything living in the land of Egypt]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a sign	show that … are obeying me
the houses	your houses
the plague	harm
for destruction	harm
on the land	when I come to … the Egyptians
of Egypt	when I come to … the Egyptians

Exodus 12:14

ULT	UST
And this day shall become a memorial for you, and you shall celebrate it as a festival to Yahweh for your generations—a statute you shall celebrate forever.	*You will make this day a feast to remember and celebrate what I, Yahweh, will have done for you. This is a rule for you: every generation of Israelites must celebrate this annual feast for all of time.*

ULT **And this day shall become**
UST will make this day
(וְהָיָה הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה)

Verses 14-20 are instructions for the Israelites' future celebration of the Passover. If your language makes a distinction between near and far future events or between near and general commands, you may need to make clear that these verses primarily have a later application.

ULT **this day**
UST this day
(הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה)

Here, **this day** means the tenth day of the first month of every year. On this day every year, they must celebrate the Passover.

Support Reference: Hebrew Months

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day
a memorial	to remember
as a festival	a feast
to Yahweh	I, Yahweh
for your generations	every generation of Israelites
a statute	This is a rule for you
forever	for all of time

Exodus 12:15

ULT	UST
You shall eat unleavened bread for seven days. Yes—on the first day you shall remove yeast from your houses, because anyone who eats leavened bread from the first day until the seventh day, that person shall be cut off from Israel.	*For seven days you must eat bread that has no yeast in it. On the first day of that week, you must remove all the yeast that is in your houses. During those seven days, if anyone eats bread that has yeast in it, you must drive that person out from your people.*

ULT **Yes**
UST you must
(אַךְ)

Alternate translation: [Surely] or [Indeed]

ULT **that person shall be cut off from Israel**
UST you must drive that person out from your people
(וְנִכְרְתָה הַנֶּפֶשׁ הַהִוא מִיִּשְׂרָאֵל)

The metaphor **cut off** could mean: (1) the person must leave. Alternate translation: [he must be sent away]; (2) the person is no longer an Israelite. Alternate translation: [he will no longer be considered to be one of the people of Israel]; (3) the person must die. Alternate translation: [he must be killed]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **that person shall be cut off from Israel**
UST you must drive that person out from your people
(וְנִכְרְתָה הַנֶּפֶשׁ הַהִוא מִיִּשְׂרָאֵל)

As noted in the previous note, the metaphor **cut off** has at least three possible meanings. By whom that person will be cut off is not specified; it could be the Israelites or Yahweh. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The following alternate translations express those: (1) “the people of Israel must send him away” or (2) “I will no longer consider him to be one of the people of Israel” or (3) “the people of Israel must kill him”

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from Israel**
UST from your people
(מִיִּשְׂרָאֵֽל)

Israel is a collective noun referring to the nation or people group. If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. Alternate translation: [from the Israelites]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
unleavened bread	bread that has no yeast in it
days	For seven days
on … day	On the first day of that week
from your houses	that is in your houses
day	During those seven days
from Israel	from your people
from … day … day	During those seven days

Exodus 12:16

ULT	UST
And on the first day an assembly of holiness, and on the seventh day an assembly of holiness shall be for you. All work shall not be done in these, except what each person eats, that alone may be done by you.	*On the first day of that week, you must have a holy meeting. You must do the same thing on the seventh day. People must not work at all on those two days. The only work you may do is to prepare food to eat.*

ULT **And on the first day an assembly of holiness, and on the seventh day an assembly of holiness shall be for you**
UST On the first day of that week, you must have a holy meeting. You must do the same thing on the seventh day
(וּבַיּוֹם הָרִאשׁוֹן מִקְרָא־קֹדֶשׁ וּבַיּוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי מִקְרָא־קֹדֶשׁ יִהְיֶה לָכֶם)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And on the first day and on the seventh day, you shall have an assembly of holiness]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **an assembly of holiness … an assembly of holiness**
UST a holy meeting … do the same thing
(מִקְרָא־קֹדֶשׁ & מִקְרָא־קֹדֶשׁ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **holiness**, you can express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a holy assembly … a holy assembly]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **And on the first day … and on the seventh day**
UST On the first day of that week … on the seventh day
(וּבַיּוֹם הָרִאשׁוֹן & וּבַיּוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here. Alternate translation: [And on day one of the month … and on day seven of the month]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **All work shall not be done in these**
UST People must not work at all on those two days
(כָּל־מְלָאכָה לֹא־יֵעָשֶׂה בָהֶם)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [You will do no work on these days]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **that alone may be done by you**
UST The only work you may do is to prepare
(הוּא לְבַדּוֹ יֵעָשֶׂה לָכֶם)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [which must be the only work that you do]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And on … day	On the first day of that week
an assembly of	a … meeting … do the same thing
holiness	holy
and on … day	on the seventh day
an assembly of	a … meeting … do the same thing
holiness	holy
person	food to eat

Exodus 12:17

ULT	UST
And you shall keep the Unleavened Bread, because on this very day I will have brought out your hosts from the land of Egypt. And you shall keep this day throughout your generations, a statute forever.	*You must celebrate the Feast of Unleavened Bread on this day because this day is exactly when I am rescuing all your tribes from slavery in Egypt. This is a law for you: every generation of Israelites for all of time must celebrate to remember that I rescued you on this day.*

ULT **your hosts**
UST all your tribes
(אֶת־צִבְאוֹתֵיכֶם)

The term **hosts** refers to a large group of people, often organized into groups for war. See how you translated this in Exodus 6:26. Alternate translation: [your groups] or [your divisions]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Unleavened Bread	the Feast of Unleavened Bread
day	day … day
from the land of	in
Egypt	Egypt
day	on … day
throughout your generations	every generation of Israelites
a statute	This is a law for you
forever	for all of time

Exodus 12:18

ULT	UST
In the first month, on the fourteenth day in the evening you shall eat unleavened bread until the twenty-first day of the month in the evening.	*On the evening of the fourteenth day of the first month of the year, you must stop eating bread that has yeast in it. You may not eat bread with yeast in it again until the evening of the twenty-first day of that month.*

ULT **In the first month, on the fourteenth day … until the twenty-first day of the month**
UST of the fourteenth day of the first month of the year … until … of the twenty-first day of that month
(בָּרִאשֹׁן בְּאַרְבָּעָה עָשָׂר יוֹם לַחֹדֶשׁ & עַד יוֹם הָאֶחָד וְעֶשְׂרִים לַחֹדֶשׁ)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.
Alternate translation: [In month one, on day fourteen … until day twenty-one of the month]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **In the first month, on the fourteenth day … until the twenty-first day of the month**
UST of the fourteenth day of the first month of the year … until … of the twenty-first day of that month
(בָּרִאשֹׁן בְּאַרְבָּעָה עָשָׂר יוֹם לַחֹדֶשׁ & עַד יוֹם הָאֶחָד וְעֶשְׂרִים לַחֹדֶשׁ)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **In the first month, on the fourteenth day**
UST of the fourteenth day of the first month of the year
(בָּרִאשֹׁן בְּאַרְבָּעָה עָשָׂר יוֹם לַחֹדֶשׁ)

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The fourteenth day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. You could convert the Hebrew day and month into an approximate date on the calendar that your culture uses. However, the Jews used a lunar calendar, so if you use a solar calendar, the date will be different every year and the translation will not be entirely accurate. So you may just want to give the number of the day and the name of the month on the Hebrew calendar, and say approximately what time of year that is on your calendar in a footnote.

Support Reference: Hebrew Months

ULT **the twenty-first day of the month**
UST of the twenty-first day of that month
(יוֹם הָאֶחָד וְעֶשְׂרִים לַחֹדֶשׁ)

This is near the middle of April on Western calendars. You could convert the Hebrew day and month into an approximate date on the calendar that your culture uses. However, the Jews used a lunar calendar, so if you use a solar calendar, the date will be different every year and the translation will not be entirely accurate. So you may just want to give the number of the day and the name of the month on the Hebrew calendar, and say approximately what time of year that is on your calendar in a footnote.

Support Reference: Hebrew Months

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month of the year
on … day	day
unleavened bread	bread that has yeast in it … bread with yeast in it
day	day
of the month	of that month

Exodus 12:19

ULT	UST
For seven days no yeast shall be found in your houses. Because anyone who eats yeasted bread, that person shall be cut off from the congregation of Israel—among the sojourner or among the native of the land.	*For those seven days you must not have any yeast in your house. During that time, if anyone—either a foreigner or an Israelite—eats bread that has yeast in it, you must drive that person out from your people.*

ULT **no yeast shall be found in your houses**
UST you must not have any yeast in your house
(שְׂאֹר לֹא יִמָּצֵא בְּבָתֵּיכֶם)

This means there should not be any yeast in their houses. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Note that the UST more accurately conveys the meaning here, as the alternate translation in this note could be understood to mean that you must simply hide the yeast very well. Alternate translation: [Yahweh must not find any yeast in your houses]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **that person shall be cut off from the congregation of Israel**
UST you must drive that person out from your people
(וְנִכְרְתָה הַנֶּפֶשׁ הַהִוא מֵעֲדַת יִשְׂרָאֵל)

See how you translated **cut off** in Exodus 12:15.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **that person shall be cut off from the congregation of Israel**
UST you must drive that person out from your people
(וְנִכְרְתָה הַנֶּפֶשׁ הַהִוא מֵעֲדַת יִשְׂרָאֵל)

See how you translated **cut off** in Exodus 12:15.

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
yeast	any yeast
in your houses	in your house
yeasted bread	bread that has yeast in it
person	person
from the congregation of	from your people
Israel	from your people
among the sojourner	either a foreigner

ULT	UST
the land	or an Israelite

Exodus 12:20

ULT	UST
You shall not eat any yeast; in all of your dwelling places you shall eat unleavened bread.’”	*Do not eat any yeast. Wherever you are living, you must eat bread that does not have yeast in it.’”*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
yeast	yeast
unleavened bread	bread that does not have yeast in it

Exodus 12:21

ULT	UST
And Moses called for all the elders of Israel, and he said to them, "Proceed and take a lamb for yourself, according to your families, and slaughter the Passover.	*Then Moses summoned all the Israelite leaders. He said to them, "Each family should select a young sheep or young goat and kill it to eat it to celebrate the festival that you will call 'Passover.'*

Note:

A new scene begins at this verse, which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
And … called	Then … summoned
the elders of	the … leaders
Israel	Israelite
a lamb	a young sheep or young goat … it
and slaughter	and kill
the Passover	to eat it to celebrate the festival that you will call 'Passover

Exodus 12:22

ULT	UST
And you shall take a bunch of hyssop, and dip it in the blood that is in the basin and apply to the lintel and to both the doorposts from the blood that is in the basin. And you, not a man shall go out from the door of his house until morning.	*{Let the lamb's blood drain} into a bowl. Get a bunch of hyssop and dip it in the blood. Then wipe some of the blood on the top of the doorframe and on the doorposts of your houses. The people in each house must stay inside the house until the next morning.*

ULT **a bunch of hyssop**
UST a bunch of hyssop
(אֲגֻדַּת אֵזוֹב)

Hyssop is a woody plant with small leaves that can be used for sprinkling liquids by dipping the leaves in the liquid and then shaking them or brushing them over the target. If this plant is unknown, you can use a descriptor phrase. Alternate translation: [part of a plant with small branches and many leaves]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **to the lintel and to both the doorposts**
UST on the top of the doorframe and on the doorposts of your houses
(אֶל־הַמַּשְׁקוֹף וְאֶל־שְׁתֵּי הַמְּזוּזֹת)

Alternate translation: [on the sides and top of the way into the house.] See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 12:7.

ULT **not a man**
UST The people … must stay inside
(לֹא אִישׁ)

Here, **man** includes women and children. Alternate translation: [no person]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the doorposts	the doorposts of your houses
his house	in each house … the house

Exodus 12:23

ULT	UST
And Yahweh will pass through to strike the Egyptians. And he will see the blood on the lintel and on the two doorposts, and Yahweh will pass over the door and will not permit the causer of destruction to enter into your houses to strike.	*When Yahweh goes through Egypt to kill every oldest male, he will see the blood on your doorframes. Because of that, he will pass over those houses and will not allow the killing-destroyer to enter your houses to kill your oldest sons.*

ULT **and Yahweh will pass over the door**
UST Because of that, he will pass over those houses
(וּפָסַח יְהוָה עַל־הַפֶּתַח)

Here the word **door** implies the entire house. This means that God will spare the Israelites in houses with blood on the door frames. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh will pass over the house]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **on the lintel and on the two doorposts**
UST on your doorframes
(עַל־הַמַּשְׁקוֹף וְעַל שְׁתֵּי הַמְּזוּזֹת)

Alternate translation: [on the sides and top of the way into the house] See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 12:7.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
the Egyptians	Egypt
doorposts	your doorframes
Yahweh	he
the causer of destruction	the killing-destroyer
your houses	your houses

Exodus 12:24

ULT	UST
And you shall keep this thing as a statute for you and for your sons until eternity.	*You and your descendants must celebrate this ritual forever; this is a law.*

ULT this thing
UST this ritual
(אֶת־הַדָּבָר הַזֶּה)

These words refer to the Passover or Festival of Unleavened Bread. Observing the Passover was an act of worshiping Yahweh.

ULT for you and for your sons
UST You and your descendants
(לְךָ וּלְבָנֶיךָ)

Here, **you** and **your** are singular but they refer to the whole nation. If the singular form would not be natural in your language for someone who was speaking to a group of people, you could use the plural forms of "you" in your translation.

Support Reference: Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups

ULT and for your sons
UST and your descendants
(וּלְבָנֶיךָ)

Here, **sons** includes everyone.

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
as a statute	this is a law
eternity	forever

Exodus 12:25

ULT	UST
And so it will happen, as you enter into the land that Yahweh will give to you, just as he said, then you shall keep this service.	*When you arrive in the land that Yahweh will give to you as he promised, you must keep celebrating this ritual every year.*

ULT this service
UST this ritual
(אֶת־הָעֲבֹדָה הַזֹּאת)

Here, **this service** refers to the Passover or Festival of Unleavened Bread. Observing the Passover was an act of worshiping Yahweh.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the land	in the land
Yahweh	Yahweh
service	ritual

Exodus 12:26

ULT	UST
And it will happen, when your sons are saying to you, ‘What is this service to you?’	*When your children ask you, ‘What does this ritual mean?’*

ULT **your sons**
UST your children
(בְּנֵיכֶם)

Here, **your sons** refers to all children, as in the UST.

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **to you, ‘What is this service to you**
UST you, ‘What does this ritual mean
(אֲלֵיכֶם & מָה הָעֲבֹדָה הַזֹּאת לָכֶם)

After **you**, a second-level quotation begins. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with second-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation within a quotation. However, you may want to translate this as an indirect quotation in order to reduce the layers of quotations in this passage. Alternate translation: [to you what this ritual means to you,]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
service	ritual

Exodus 12:27

ULT	UST
then you shall say, ‘It is the sacrifice of Passover to Yahweh, who passed over the houses of the sons of Israel in Egypt in striking the Egyptians. And he rescued our households.’” And the people bowed their heads and prostrated themselves.	*you must tell them, ‘This ritual is to remember how your ancestors sacrificed lambs on the night that Yahweh’s angel passed over the houses of the Israelites when they were in Egypt. He killed the oldest males in all the Egyptian houses, but he did not kill the sons in our houses.’” After Moses told them this, the elders all bowed their heads and worshiped Yahweh.*

ULT **And he rescued our households**

UST but he did not kill the sons in our houses
(וְאֶת־בָּתֵּינוּ הִצִּיל)

This means that Yahweh spared the Israelites’ firstborn sons. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [He did not kill the firstborn sons in our houses]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the sacrifice of	sacrificed lambs on the night
Passover	ritual is to remember how your ancestors
to Yahweh	that Yahweh’s angel
the houses of	the houses of
Israel	the Israelites
in Egypt	when they were in Egypt
the Egyptians	in all the Egyptian houses
he rescued	he did not kill the sons
our households	in our houses
And … bowed their heads	bowed their heads
and prostrated themselves	and worshiped Yahweh

Exodus 12:28

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel went and did; as Yahweh had commanded Moses and Aaron, so they did.	*Then the Israelites did exactly what Yahweh told Moses and Aaron to tell them to do.*

ULT as Yahweh had commanded Moses and Aaron, so they did

UST exactly what Yahweh told Moses and Aaron to tell them to do

(כַּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּה יְהוָה אֶת־מֹשֶׁה וְאַהֲרֹן כֵּן עָשׂוּ)

Alternate translation: [everything that Yahweh told Moses and Aaron to do]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
and Aaron	and Aaron

Exodus 12:29

ULT	UST
And so it happened, in the middle of the night, and Yahweh struck all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, from the firstborn of Pharaoh sitting on his throne to the firstborn of the captive who was in the house of the pit, and all the firstborn of beasts.	*At midnight Yahweh killed all the Egyptians' oldest sons, all over Egypt. This included the rich king's oldest son, the oldest sons of the prisoners in the dungeons, and the oldest males of all the {Egyptians'} livestock.*

Note:

The next few verses are the climax of this part of Exodus. A number of literary features mark it out. First, it is specially introduced with **and so it happened**, which is used to mark major breaks in the narrative. Second, it uses repetition: **firstborn** is repeated four times in verse 29 so that the reader cannot possibly miss what is happening. **Night** is repeated in verse 29, 30, and 31. **Got up/get up** is repeated in verse 30 and 31. In verses 31 and 32 "also" occurs five times (it is translated as "both" once in the ULT). Third, the places of both **Pharaoh** and **the captive** are elaborated on to slow the pace and create a vivid mental image for the reader. In verse 30 there is the listing of sorts of people who got up; note the use of the double negative for emphasis. Your translation should attempt to use the same or similar literary features of your own language that slow down the pace, create vivid imagery, and emphasize that this is a climax point.

ULT **from the firstborn of Pharaoh sitting on his throne to the firstborn of the captive who was in the house of the pit, and all the firstborn of beasts**
UST This included the rich king's oldest son, the oldest sons of the prisoners in the dungeons, and the oldest males of all the {Egyptians'} livestock
(מִבְּכֹר פַּרְעֹה הַיֹּשֵׁב עַל־כִּסְאֹו עַד בְּכוֹר הַשְּׁבִי אֲשֶׁר בְּבֵית הַבּוֹר וְכֹל בְּכוֹר בְּהֵמָה)

This phrase indicates that there was no person or household excluded from Yahweh's judgment. It both speaks of extreme parts of society and then makes this into a list by including the animals. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the firstborn of Pharaoh who sits on the throne and the firstborn of the captive who was in the house of the pit and the firstborn of everyone in between was struck; even all the firstborn of the beasts were struck]

Support Reference: Merism

ULT **the firstborn … from the firstborn of … the firstborn of … the firstborn of**
UST the … oldest sons … This included … oldest son, the oldest sons of … the oldest males of
(בְּכוֹר & בְּכֹר & מִבְּכֹר & בְּכֹרוֹ)

In these usages, **firstborn** always refers to the oldest male offspring. See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 11:5.

ULT **to the firstborn of the captive who was in the house of the pit**
UST the oldest sons of the prisoners in the dungeons
(עַד בְּכוֹר הַשְּׁבִי אֲשֶׁר בְּבֵית הַבּוֹר)

Alternate translation: [to the firstborn of people in the house of the pit] This refers to prisoners in general and not to a specific person in prison.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and Yahweh	Yahweh
the firstborn	the … oldest sons
in the land of	all over
Egypt	Egyptians … Egypt
from the firstborn of	This included … oldest son
Pharaoh	the … king’s
his throne	rich
the firstborn of	the oldest sons of
the captive	the prisoners
was in the house of	in the dungeons
the pit	in the dungeons
the firstborn of	the oldest males of
beasts	the {Egyptians’} livestock

Exodus 12:30

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh got up in the night—he, and all his servants, and all the Egyptians. And there was a great cry in Egypt, for there was not a house where there was not someone dead.	*That night the king, all his officials, and all the rest of the Egyptians awoke and discovered what had happened. They wailed loudly all over Egypt, because in every house someone's son had died.*

ULT **for there was not a house where there was not someone dead**
UST because in every house someone's son had died
(כִּי־אֵין בַּיִת אֲשֶׁר אֵין־שָׁם מֵת)

If this double negative would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [because someone was dead in every house]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
his servants	his officials
the Egyptians	the rest of the Egyptians
in Egypt	all over Egypt
a house	house

Exodus 12:31

ULT	UST
And he called for Moses and for Aaron in the night and said, "Get up, get out from among my people, both you and also the sons of Israel. And go, serve Yahweh, as you have said.	*That night the king summoned Moses and Aaron and said, "Get up, you and all the other Israelites, and get away from my people and country now! Go and worship Yahweh, as you requested!*

ULT you … as you have said
UST you … as you requested
(אַתֶּם & כְּדַבֶּרְכֶם)

Here, Pharaoh speaking is to both Moses and Aaron. If your language uses a different form if two are people addressed, use a dual form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And he called	the king summoned
for Moses	Moses
and for Aaron	and Aaron
Israel	all the other Israelites
serve	and worship
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 12:32

ULT	UST
Also take your flocks, also your herds as you have said, and go, and also bless me.”	*You may even take your flocks of sheep and goats and herds of cattle just as you requested. Just leave! Ask Yahweh to bless me also!”*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your flocks	your flocks of sheep and goats
your herds	herds of cattle
and … bless	Ask Yahweh to bless

Exodus 12:33

ULT	UST
And the Egyptians strengthened the people, hurrying to let them go from the land, for they said, "We are all dying."	*The Egyptians helped the Israelites to leave their country quickly. They said, "Otherwise, we will all die!"*

ULT We are all dying
UST we will all die
(כֻּלָּנוּ מֵתִים)

The Egyptians were afraid that they would die if the Israelites did not leave Egypt. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [We will all die if you do not leave]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Egyptians	The Egyptians
the land	their country

Exodus 12:34

ULT	UST
And the people carried his dough before it developed leaven. Their kneading bowls were wrapped in their clothes on their shoulders.	*So the Israelites prepared to leave at once. They took the bowls in which they mixed the dough to make bread and the dough that was in the bowls without any yeast in it, and they wrapped the bowls in their cloaks. They put the bowls on their shoulders.*

ULT **Their kneading bowls were wrapped in their clothes on their shoulders**
UST the bowls in which they mixed the dough to make bread … that was in the bowls … and they wrapped the bowls in their cloaks … the bowls on their shoulders
(מִשְׁאֲרֹתָם צְרֻרֹת בְּשִׂמְלֹתָם עַל־שִׁכְמָם)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [They tied up their bread-making bowls in their clothes and placed them on their shoulders]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
it developed leaven	yeast in it

Exodus 12:35

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel did according to the word of Moses. And they asked from the Egyptians items of silver and items of gold and clothing.	*Then the Israelites did as Moses told them. They went to their Egyptian neighbors and asked them for silver, gold, and clothing.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Then the Israelites
Moses	Moses
from the Egyptians	them … to their Egyptian neighbors
silver	for silver
gold	gold

Exodus 12:36

ULT	UST
And Yahweh gave the people favor in the eyes of the Egyptians. And they made the request, and they plundered the Egyptians.	*Yahweh caused the Egyptians to greatly respect the Israelites, so they gave them what they asked for. In that way, the Israelites carried away the wealth of the Egyptians.*

ULT **the people favor in the eyes of the Egyptians**
UST the Egyptians to greatly respect the Israelites
(אֶת־חֵ֣ן הָעָ֗ם בְּעֵינֵ֛י מִצְרָ֖יִם)

Here, **in the eyes of the Egyptians** is an idiom for the Egyptian's feelings or opinion. **Favor** means that those feelings are positive. Taken together, this means that when the Egyptians saw the Israelites leaving Egypt, they gladly helped them (because they wanted them to leave so badly due to the Egyptians suffering under God's judgment). If your language has the same or a similar idiom, you can translate or use it. Otherwise, you can translate the meaning. See how you translated this in 3:21.

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And Yahweh	Yahweh
favor	to greatly respect
the Egyptians	the Egyptians
the Egyptians	of the Egyptians

Exodus 12:37

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel journeyed from Rameses toward Succoth, about 600,000 strong men on foot, apart from children.	*The Israelites walked from the city of Rameses to the town of Succoth. There were about 600, 000 men who went, in addition to the women and children.*

ULT from Rameses
UST from the city of Rameses
(מֵרַעְמְסֵס)

Rameses was a major Egyptian city where grain was stored. See how you translated this in Exodus 1:11.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT about 600,000
UST There were about 600, 000
(כְּשֵׁשׁ־מֵאוֹת אָלֶף)

Alternate translation: [about six hundred thousand]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	The Israelites
toward Succoth	to the town of Succoth

Exodus 12:38

ULT	UST
And also a mixed multitude went up with them, and flock and herd—a very great number of livestock.	*Many other people who were not Israelites went along with them. There was also a large amount of livestock, including flocks of sheep and goats and herds of cattle.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and flock	flocks of sheep and goats
and herd	and herds of cattle
livestock	of livestock, including

Exodus 12:39

ULT	UST
And they baked the dough that they brought from Egypt into unleavened bread, for it was not leavened, because they were driven out of Egypt, and they could not delay. And furthermore, they had not made provisions for themselves.	*Pharaoh forced the Israelites to leave Egypt so quickly that they did not have time to prepare food to take with them or to allow the bread dough to form yeast. When they made bread with the dough they brought from Egypt, they made flatbread because it did not have yeast.*

ULT **because they were driven out of Egypt**
UST Pharaoh forced the Israelites to leave Egypt
(כִּי־גֹרְשׁוּ מִמִּצְרַיִם)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [because the Egyptians had driven them out of Egypt]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from Egypt	from Egypt
into unleavened bread	flatbread
it was … leavened	to allow the bread dough to form yeast … it did … have yeast
they were driven out	Pharaoh forced the Israelites to leave
of Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 12:40

ULT	UST
And the residence of the sons of Israel, during which they resided in Egypt, was 430 years.	*The Israelites had lived in Egypt for 430 years.*

ULT **430**
UST 430
(שְׁלֹשִׁים & וְאַרְבַּע מֵאוֹת)

Alternate translation: [four hundred thirty]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	The Israelites
in Egypt	Egypt
was … years	for … years
was … years	for … years

Exodus 12:41

ULT	UST
And so it was, at the end of 430 years, it was on that very day all of the hosts of Yahweh went out from the land of Egypt.	*On the day that those 430 years ended, on that very day, all the tribes of Yahweh's people left Egypt.*

ULT 430
UST 430
(שְׁלֹשִׁים & וְאַרְבַּע מֵאוֹת)

Alternate translation: [four hundred thirty]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT the hosts of
UST the tribes of … people
(צִבְאוֹת)

The term **hosts** refers to a large group of people, often organized into groups for war. See how you translated this in Exodus 6:26. Alternate translation: [your groups] or [your divisions]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
years	years
day	day
Yahweh	Yahweh's
from the land of	Egypt
Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 12:42

ULT	UST
It was a night of observing for Yahweh to bring them out from the land of Egypt. This night, it is for all the sons of Israel to observe for Yahweh throughout their generations.	*It was a night when the Israelites stayed awake as Yahweh brought them out of Egypt. So this same night every year is a night that they dedicate to Yahweh, a night when the Israelites and their descendants in every generation remember how Yahweh kept their ancestors safe.*

ULT **for all the sons of Israel to observe for Yahweh throughout their generations**
UST every year … that they dedicate to Yahweh … when the Israelites and their descendants in every generation remember how Yahweh kept their ancestors safe
(לַיהוָֹה שִׁמֻּרִים לְכָל־בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל לְדֹרֹתָם)

Alternate translation: [for all the sons of Israel throughout their generations to observe for Yahweh]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for Yahweh	as Yahweh
from the land of	of Egypt
Egypt	of Egypt
Israel	the Israelites
for … Yahweh	to Yahweh … Yahweh
throughout their generations	every year … and their descendants in every generation

Exodus 12:43

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, "This is the statute of the Passover: Any son of foreignness shall not eat it.	*Then Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, "This is the law about the Passover ritual: Do not let foreigners eat the Passover meal.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
and Aaron	and Aaron
is the statute of	is the law
the Passover	about the Passover ritual
foreignness	foreigners

Exodus 12:44

ULT	UST
But any slave of a man, a purchase of silver, if you circumcised him, then he may eat it.	*But if anyone buys a slave and circumcises him, that slave may eat the Passover meal.*

ULT **But any slave of a man**
UST But if anyone … a slave
(וְכָל־עֶ֖בֶד אִ֑ישׁ)

Alternate translation: [But any slave of an Israelite]

ULT **if you circumcised him, then**
UST and circumcises him, that slave may eat
(וּמַלְתָּ֥ה אֹת֛וֹ אָ֖ז)

This is a hypothetical situation. You will need to use whatever form your language uses to mark something as potentially true.

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **if you circumcised**
UST and circumcises
(וּמַלְתָּ֥ה)

Here **you** is singular. It refers to a specific man and his slave. It might make more sense to use the third person here. Alternate translation: [if he circumcised]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
slave of	a slave
silver	buys
if you circumcised	and circumcises

Exodus 12:45

ULT	UST
An outsider or a hireling shall not eat it.	*Do not let people who are living temporarily among you who are not Israelites or servants to whom you pay money eat the Passover meal.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
An outsider	people who are living temporarily among you who are not Israelites
or a hireling	or servants to whom you pay money

Exodus 12:46

ULT	UST
It shall be eaten in one house. You shall not bring from the house from the flesh to the outside, and you shall not break its bone.	*You must eat the Passover meal inside one house. Do not take any of the meat outside the house. Do not break the lamb's bones.*

ULT **It shall be eaten in one house**
UST You must eat the Passover meal inside one house
(בְּבַ֥יִת אֶחָ֖ד יֵאָכֵֽל)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [You must eat it in one house]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **You shall not bring**
UST Do not take
(לֹא־תוֹצִ֤יא)

Here, **you** is singular, however it is used to address a crowd. If the singular form would not be natural in your language for someone who was speaking to a group of people, you could use the plural forms of "you" in your translation.

Support Reference: Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in … house	inside … house
house … the	the house

Exodus 12:47

ULT	UST
All the congregation of Israel shall do it.	*The whole Israelite community must celebrate this festival.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the congregation of	community
Israel	Israelite

Exodus 12:48

ULT	UST
And if a sojourner is sojourning with you, and keeps the Passover to Yahweh, all his males shall be circumcised. And then he may draw near to keep it, and he will become like a native of the land. And any uncircumcised person shall not eat it.	*When someone from another country comes to live with you and wants to celebrate Yahweh's Passover festival, circumcise all the males in his household. Then he can eat the Passover meal, and you should treat that man as though he had been born an Israelite. But do not allow men who are not circumcised to eat the Passover meal.*

ULT **And if a sojourner is sojourning with you, and keeps the Passover to Yahweh**
UST When someone from another country comes to live with you and wants to celebrate Yahweh's Passover festival
(וְכִי־יָגוּר אִתְּךָ גֵּר וְעָשָׂה פֶּסַח לַיהוָה)

This is a two-part hypothetical situation. It describes the circumstance and desire of the sojourner; the next portion says what he must do. You will need to use whatever form your language uses to mark something as potentially true.

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **with you**
UST with you
(אִתְּךָ)

Here, **you** is singular, however it is used to address a crowd. If the singular form would not be natural in your language for someone who was speaking to a group of people, you could use the plural forms of "you" in your translation.

Support Reference: Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups

ULT **all his males shall be circumcised**
UST circumcise all the males in his household
(הִמּוֹל לוֹ כָל־זָכָר)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [someone must circumcise all males in his household]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **all his males shall be circumcised. And then he may draw near to keep it**
UST circumcise all the males in his household. Then he can eat the Passover meal
(הִמּוֹל לוֹ כָּל־זְכָר וְאָז יִקְרַב לַעֲשֹׂתוֹ)

The sojourner will be circumcised in order to **draw near to keep** the Passover. Some languages may need to place the purpose clause first. Alternate translation: [in order draw near to keep it all his males must be circumcised]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **like a native of the land**
UST and you should treat that man as though he had been born an Israelite
(כְּאֶזְרַח הָאָרֶץ)

Here, **land** refers to Canaan—which is the land that the Israelites will soon live in. The expression **a native of the land** means a person who is a native Israelite. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [those who are Israelites by birth]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And any uncircumcised person shall not eat it**
UST But do not allow men who are not circumcised to eat the Passover meal
(וְכָל־עָרֵל לֹא־יֹאכַל בּוֹ)

If this double negative would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [And only a circumcised person may eat it]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a sojourner	someone from another country
is sojourning	comes to live
the Passover	Passover festival
to Yahweh	Yahweh's
shall be circumcised	circumcise
of the land	and you should treat that man as though he had been born an Israelite
uncircumcised person	men who are not circumcised

Exodus 12:49

ULT	UST
One law shall be for the native and for the sojourner sojourning among you.”	*These rules apply to people who were born as Israelites and to foreigners who come and live among you.”*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
law	These rules
and for the sojourner	and to foreigners who
sojourning	come and live

Exodus 12:50

ULT	UST
And all of the sons of Israel did—just as Yahweh commanded Moses and Aaron—so they did.	*All the Israelites obeyed Moses and Aaron and did what Yahweh had commanded.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron

Exodus 12:51

ULT	UST
And so it was, in that very day, Yahweh brought the sons of Israel out from the land of Egypt by their hosts.	*On that very day, Yahweh brought all the Israelite tribes out of Egypt.*

ULT And so it was, in that very day
UST On that very day
(וַיְהִי בְּעֶצֶם הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה)

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

ULT their hosts
UST all the … tribes
(צִבְאֹתָם)

The term **hosts** refers to a large group of people often organized into groups for war. See how you translated this in Exodus 6:26. Alternate translation: [your groups] or [your divisions]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	Israelite
from the land	out of
of Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 13

Exodus 13 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

1. Instruction
    - v. 1–2: First mention of setting apart the firstborn
    - v. 3–10: Reiteration of the Passover instructions from 12:14–20 and 24–27, with a focus on telling to Yahweh's deeds to the future generations of Israelites
    - v. 11–13: More details on setting apart the firstborn
    - v. 14–16: Reiteration of purpose: telling to future generations
2. Narrative
    - v. 17–22: Some details of the exodus

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

- There are several concepts that will be important to understand and translate with care (some have already been encountered in Exodus). They are: set apart, sign, symbol, redemption, and sacrifice.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

- There are a number of names of people groups and places in this chapter. However, many have been translated in earlier passages.
- Transporting the bones of Joseph may be an unknown concept in some places.
- It may take some time to decide on a good translation for the pillars of fire and cloud that lead the Israelites.

Exodus 13:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh said to Moses,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 13:2

ULT	UST
“Set apart to me all the firstborn, openers of every womb among the sons of Israel, among man and among beast; he is mine.”	*“Consecrate all the firstborn {males} in order that they may belong to me. The firstborn {males} of {the Israelite} people and of {their} animals will be mine.”*

ULT Set apart to me all the firstborn, openers of every womb among the sons of Israel, among man and among beast; he is mine

UST Consecrate all the firstborn {males} in order that they may belong to me. The firstborn {males} of {the Israelite} people and of {their} animals will be mine

(קַדֶּשׁ־לִי כָל־בְּכוֹר פֶּטֶר כָּל־רֶחֶם בִּבְנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל בָּאָדָם וּבַבְּהֵמָה לִי הוּא)

This entire verse is a direct quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by marking it with first-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. There may be other quotations in this chapter; they will be marked by the same punctuation, but they will not have their own notes unless there is something unique about them.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the firstborn	the firstborn {males}
womb	The firstborn {males} of {the … }
Israel	Israelite
and among beast	and of {their} animals

Exodus 13:3

ULT	UST
And Moses said to the people, "Remember this day, that you went out from Egypt, from the house of slavery, because by a strong hand Yahweh brought you out from here. And no yeast may be eaten.	*Moses said to the people, "Always remember today! This is the day that you left Egypt. This is the day I freed you from being the Egyptians' slaves. Yahweh has powerfully brought you out of Egypt. Do not eat any bread that has yeast in it {whenever you celebrate this day}.*

ULT **from the house of slavery**
UST I freed you from being the Egyptians' slaves
(מִבֵּ֣ית עֲבָדִ֔ים)

Moses speaks of Egypt as if it were a house where people keep slaves. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the place where you were slaves]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **by a strong hand**
UST powerfully
(בְּחֹ֣זֶק יָ֔ד)

Here, **hand** refers to power. See how you translated "strong hand" in Exodus 6:1.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And no yeast may be eaten**
UST Do not eat any bread that has yeast in it {whenever you celebrate this day}
(וְלֹ֥א יֵאָכֵ֖ל חָמֵֽץ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language, as in the UST.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
day	today! This is the day … This is the day
from Egypt	Egypt
from the house of	I freed you from being the Egyptians' slaves
slavery	I freed you from being the Egyptians' slaves
Yahweh	Yahweh
yeast	

ULT	UST
	any bread that has yeast in it {whenever you celebrate this day}

Exodus 13:4

ULT	UST
Today you are going out, in the month of Aviv.	*You are leaving Egypt on this day, which is the first day of the month of Aviv.*

ULT Aviv
UST which is the first day of the month of Aviv
(הָאָבִיב)

This is the name of the first month of the Hebrew calendar. Aviv is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. You could convert the Hebrew day and month into an approximate date on the calendar that your culture uses. However, the Jews used a lunar calendar, so if you use a solar calendar, the date will be different every year and the translation will not be entirely accurate. So you may just want to give the number of the day and the name of the month on the Hebrew calendar, and say approximately what time of year that is on your calendar in a footnote.

Support Reference: Hebrew Months

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Today	on this day
in the month of	which is the first day of the month of Aviv

Exodus 13:5

ULT	UST
And it will be that Yahweh will bring you to the land of the Canaanite and the Hittite and the Amorite and the Hivite and the Jebusite, which he swore to your fathers to give to you, a land flowing with milk and honey—and you shall serve this service in this month.	*Later, when Yahweh brings you into the land where the descendants of Canaan, Heth, Amor, Hiv, and Jebus now live, the land that he promised your ancestors that he would give to you, a land that will be very good for raising livestock and growing crops, you must celebrate this festival in this month every year.*

ULT **And it will be that Yahweh will bring you to the land of … and you shall serve this service in this month**

UST Later, when Yahweh brings you into the land where the descendants … now live, the land … you must celebrate this festival in this month every year

(וְהָיָה כִּי־יְבִיאֲךָ יְהוָה אֶל־אֶרֶץ & וְעָבַדְתָּ אֶת־הָעֲבֹדָה הַזֹּאת בַּחֹדֶשׁ הַזֶּה)

When the Israelites live in Canaan, they must celebrate the Passover on this day each year. See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 12:25.

ULT **to your fathers**

UST your ancestors

(לַאֲבֹתֶיךָ)

Here, **fathers** means "ancestors." Alternate translation: [to your ancestors]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **a land flowing with milk and honey**

UST a land that will be very good for raising livestock and growing crops

(אֶרֶץ זָבַת חָלָב וּדְבָשׁ)

The same description occurs in Exodus 3:8. See how you translated it there and in the several notes for it.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
the land of	the land where the descendants … now live
the Canaanite	of Canaan
and the Hittite	Heth
and the Amorite	Amor
and the Hivite	Hiv
and the Jebusite	and Jebus
he swore	he promised

ULT	UST
a land	a land that will be
and honey	and growing crops
and you shall serve	the land … you must celebrate this festival
service	the land … you must celebrate this festival
in … month	in … month every year

Exodus 13:6

ULT	UST
Seven days you shall eat unleavened bread, and on the seventh day {there shall be} a festival to Yahweh.	*For seven days the bread you eat must not have any yeast in it. On the seventh day, you must have a celebration to honor Yahweh.*

ULT Seven
UST For seven
(שִׁבְעַת)

Alternate translation: [7]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT and on the seventh day
UST On the seventh day
(וּבַיּוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.

Alternate translation: [and on day 7]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
unleavened bread	the bread … not have any yeast in it
and on … day	On … day
{there shall be} a festival	you must have a celebration
to Yahweh	to honor Yahweh

Exodus 13:7

ULT	UST
Unleavened bread shall be eaten throughout the seven days, and leavened bread may not be seen among you. And yeast may not be seen among you within any of your borders.	*Do not eat bread that has yeast in it for seven days. You should not have any yeast or bread made with yeast anywhere in your land.*

ULT Unleavened bread shall be eaten
UST Do not eat bread that has yeast in it
(מַצּוֹת יֵאָכֵל)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [You must eat unleavened bread]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT seven
UST for seven
(אֵת שִׁבְעַת)

Alternate translation: [7]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT and leavened bread may not be seen among you
UST You should not have any yeast
(וְלֹא־יֵרָאֶה לְךָ חָמֵץ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you may not have any bread with yeast among you]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT And yeast may not be seen among you
UST You should … have … or bread made with yeast
(וְלֹא־יֵרָאֶה לְךָ שְׂאֹר)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [You may not have any yeast]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **within any of your borders**
UST anywhere in your land
(בְּכָל־גְּבֻלֶךָ)

Alternate translation: [inside any of the borders of your land]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Unleavened bread	not … bread that has yeast in it
throughout the … days	days
leavened bread	any yeast
yeast	bread made with yeast

Exodus 13:8

ULT	UST
And you shall tell your son on that day, saying, ‘This is because of what Yahweh did for me when I came out from Egypt.’	*On the day that you celebrate the festival, you must tell your children, ‘We are doing this to remember what Yahweh did for us when we left Egypt.’*

ULT on that day, saying, ‘This is because of what Yahweh did for me when I came out from Egypt

UST On the day that you celebrate the festival, you must tell … We are doing this to remember what Yahweh did for us when we left Egypt

(בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא לֵאמֹר בַּעֲבוּר זֶה עָשָׂה יְהוָה לִי בְּצֵאתִי מִמִּצְרָיִם)

The quotation can be stated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: [on that day that this is because of what Yahweh did for you when you came out of Egypt]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
on … day	On the day that you celebrate the festival
Yahweh	Yahweh
from Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 13:9

ULT	UST
And it shall be a sign for you on your hand and a memorial between your eyes, so that the law of Yahweh may be in your mouth, for with a strong hand Yahweh brought you out from Egypt.	*The celebration will be like something you tie on your forehead or on your wrist. It will remind you to recite to others what Yahweh has instructed you, because you are grateful to him for powerfully bringing you out of Egypt.*

ULT **And it shall be a sign for you on your hand and a memorial between your eyes**
UST The celebration will be like something you tie on your forehead or on your wrist. It will remind you
(וְהָיָה֩ לְךָ֨ לְאוֹת֙ עַל־יָדְךָ֔ וּלְזִכָּרוֹן֙ בֵּ֣ין עֵינֶ֔יךָ)

This phrase compares the Festival of Unleavened bread to two different types of physical reminders that help people not forget something important.

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **a sign for you on your hand**
UST or on your wrist … will remind you
(לְךָ֨ לְאוֹת֙ עַל־יָדְךָ֔)

Moses speaks of celebrating the festival as if it were an object one could tie around their hands to remind them of what Yahweh had done. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [like something you tie around your hand as a reminder]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and a memorial between your eyes**
UST something you tie on your forehead … will remind
(וּלְזִכָּרוֹן֙ בֵּ֣ין עֵינֶ֔יךָ)

Moses speaks of celebrating the festival as if it were an object one could tie on their foreheads to remind them of what Yahweh had done. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and like something you tie around your head as a reminder]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **so that the law of Yahweh may be in your mouth**
UST will remind … to recite to others what Yahweh has instructed you
(לְמַ֗עַן תִּהְיֶ֛ה תּוֹרַ֥ת יְהוָ֖ה בְּפִ֑יךָ)

Here, **in your mouth** refers to the words that they speak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [so you may always be speaking of the law of Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **with a strong hand**
UST powerfully
(בְּיָ֣ד חֲזָקָ֔ה)

Here, **hand** refers to power. See how you translated "strong hand" in Exodus 6:1.

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a sign	will remind
and a memorial	will remind
the law of Yahweh	what Yahweh has instructed you
Yahweh	Yahweh
Yahweh	him
from Egypt	of Egypt

Exodus 13:10

ULT	UST
And you shall keep this statute at its appointed time from days to days.	*So you must celebrate this festival every year, forever, at the time Yahweh has appointed.*

ULT **from days to days**
UST every year, forever
(מִיָּמִים יָמִימָה)

Alternate translation: [for all time]

Support Reference: Merism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
at its appointed time	at the time Yahweh has appointed
from days	every year, forever
to days	every year, forever

Exodus 13:11

ULT	UST
And it will be, when Yahweh brings you into the land of the Canaanites, as he swore to you and to your fathers, and he gives it to you,	*Yahweh will bring you into the land where the descendants of Canaan live, as he promised to you and your ancestors that he would do. When he gives that land to you,*

ULT **and to your fathers**
UST and your ancestors
(וְלַאֲבֹתֶיךָ)

Here, **fathers** means "ancestors." Alternate translation: [to your ancestors]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and he gives it to you**
UST he gives … to you
(וּנְתָנָהּ לָךְ)

Alternate translation: [when he gives the land of the Canaanites to you]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
the land of	the land … that land
the Canaanites	where the descendants of Canaan live
he swore	he promised … that he would do

Exodus 13:12

ULT	UST
then cause to pass over to Yahweh all the openers of the womb, and all the openers of the litter of beasts that are yours. The males are for Yahweh.	*you must give all the firstborn males of both people and animals to Yahweh. These all will belong to Yahweh.*

ULT then cause to pass over
UST you must give
(וְהַעֲבַרְתָּ)

This is a deliberate word-play with Exodus 12:12 and Exodus 12:23 because these memorial sacrifices are to be reminders of what happened at the first Passover. It would be good to make a similar word-play in your translation, if possible, but following the meaning as in the UST is fine.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to Yahweh	to Yahweh
the womb	the firstborn … of … people … animals
beasts	the firstborn … of … people … animals
are for Yahweh	belong to Yahweh

Exodus 13:13

ULT	UST
And every opener of a donkey you shall ransom with a lamb. And if you do not ransom it, then you shall break his neck. And all the firstborn of men among your sons, you shall ransom.	*In the case of a firstborn donkey, you must buy it back by killing a lamb instead of it. If you do not buy it back, you must kill the donkey by breaking its neck. You must buy back every one of your firstborn sons.*

ULT with a lamb … then you shall break his neck
UST by killing a lamb instead of it … you must kill the donkey by breaking its neck
(בֶּשֶׂה & וַעֲרַפְתָּו)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could make explicit that either the **lamb** or **donkey** must be killed, as in the UST.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT you do not ransom it
UST you do not buy it back
(לֹא תִפְדֶּה)

Alternate translation: [you do not ransom the donkey]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a donkey	donkey
you shall ransom	you must buy it back
with a lamb	by killing a lamb instead of it
you do … ransom it	you do … buy it back
the firstborn of	of your firstborn
you shall ransom	You must buy back

Exodus 13:14

ULT	UST
And so it will be, when your son asks you later, saying, 'What is this?' then you shall say to him, 'With a strong hand Yahweh brought us out from Egypt, from the house of slaves.	*In the future, when one of your children asks, 'What does this mean?' you must say to him, 'Yahweh powerfully brought us out of Egypt and freed us from being slaves there.*

ULT **when your son asks you later, saying, 'What is this?' then you shall say to him**
UST In the future, when one of your children asks, 'What does this mean?' you must say to him
(כִּֽי־יִשְׁאָלְךָ֥ בִנְךָ֛ מָחָ֖ר לֵאמֹ֣ר מַה־זֹּ֑את וְאָמַרְתָּ֣ אֵלָ֔יו)

The first quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [when your son asks you later what this means, then you are to tell him]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **With a strong hand**
UST powerfully
(בְּחֹ֣זֶק יָ֔ד)

Here, **hand** represents God's actions or works. See how you translated this in Exodus 6:1. Alternate translation: [With his powerful works]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **from the house of slaves**
UST from being slaves there
(מִבֵּ֥ית עֲבָדִ֖ים)

Moses speaks of Egypt as if it were a house where people keep slaves. See how you translated this in Exodus 13:3. Alternate translation: [from the place where you were slaves]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
from Egypt	of Egypt
from the house of	from being slaves there
slaves	from being slaves there

Exodus 13:15

ULT	UST
And so it was, that when Pharaoh was hard to let us go, then Yahweh struck all of the firstborn in the land of Egypt, from the firstborn of man and to the firstborn of beast. That is why I sacrifice to Yahweh all the openers of the womb—the males—and I ransom all of the firstborn of my sons.'	*What happened was: The king of Egypt did not let us leave his land, so Yahweh killed all the firstborn males in Egypt, both the boys and the firstborn of their livestock. That is why we now sacrifice to Yahweh all the firstborn of our livestock, but we buy back our own firstborn sons.'*

ULT **that when Pharaoh was hard to let us go**
UST What happened was: The king of Egypt did not let us leave his land
(כִּי־הִקְשָׁה פַּרְעֹה לְשַׁלְּחֵנוּ)

If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. This means he was stubborn. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if he were **hard**. Alternate translation: [that when Pharaoh resisted letting us go]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from the firstborn of man and to the firstborn of beast**
UST both the boys and the firstborn of their livestock
(מִבְּכֹר אָדָם וְעַד־בְּכוֹר בְּהֵמָה)

This is a figure of speech used to emphasize the extent of the plague, nothing was exempt. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [whether he was a person or an animal]

Support Reference: Merism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	The king of Egypt
when … was hard	did not let
Yahweh	Yahweh
the firstborn	the firstborn males
in the land of	in Egypt
Egypt	in Egypt
from the firstborn of	both the boys
the firstborn of	the firstborn of
beast	their livestock
sacrifice	now sacrifice
to Yahweh	to Yahweh
I ransom	we buy back

ULT	UST
the firstborn of	firstborn

Exodus 13:16

ULT	UST
And it shall be a sign on your hand and a headband between your eyes, for with a strong hand Yahweh brought us out from Egypt.”	*This celebration will be like something you tie on your wrist or on your forehead to remind you that Yahweh powerfully brought you out of Egypt.”*

ULT **And it shall be a sign on your hand and a headband between your eyes**
UST This celebration will be like something you tie on your wrist or on your forehead to remind you
(וְהָיָה לְאוֹת עַל־יָדֶךָ וּלְטוֹטָפֹת בֵּין עֵינֶיךָ)

This expresses two ways to remember the importance of the Passover event. See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 13:9.

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **with a strong hand**
UST powerfully
(בְּחֹזֶק יָד)

Here, **hand** represents God’s actions or works. See how you translated this in Exodus 6:1. Alternate translation: [with his powerful works]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a sign	like something you tie … or … to remind you
Yahweh	Yahweh
from Egypt	of Egypt

Exodus 13:17

ULT	UST
And so it was, when Pharaoh let the people go, that God did not lead them by way of the land of the Philistines, although it was nearby. For God said, "Lest the people repent when they see war and return to Egypt."	*When the king of Egypt let the Israelites go, God did not guide them along the road toward the Philistines' land. Even though it was shorter, God thought, "If enemies attack them, they may change their minds and go back to Egypt."*

Note:

Verses 17–19 provide background information about the Israelites process of leaving Egypt. Use the natural form in your language for expressing background information.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **And so it was**
UST When … let … go
(וַיְהִי)

This marks the transition from instruction to narrative. You should mark the resumption of the narrative in a natural way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **that God did not lead them by way of the land of the Philistines, although it was nearby**
UST God did not guide them along the road toward the Philistines' land. Even though it was shorter
(וְלֹא־נָחָם אֱלֹהִים דֶּרֶךְ אֶרֶץ פְּלִשְׁתִּים כִּי קָרוֹב הִוא)

The route on which God took the Israelites was not the expected route. In some languages you may need to put the portion that describes the expectation first. Alternate translation: [although it was nearby, God did not lead them by way of the land of the Philistines.]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **Lest the people repent when they see war and return to Egypt**
UST If enemies attack them, they may change their minds and go back to Egypt
(פֶּן־יִנָּחֵם הָעָם בִּרְאֹתָם מִלְחָמָה וְשָׁבוּ מִצְרָיְמָה)

In some languages you may need to put the reason before the hypothetical result. Alternate translation: [When they see war, they may repent and return to Egypt]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king of Egypt
God	God
the land of	toward … land
the Philistines	the Philistines
God	God
repent	change their minds
to Egypt	to Egypt

Exodus 13:18

ULT	UST
And God caused the people to turn to the way of the wilderness, to the Sea of Reeds. And the sons of Israel went up from the land of Egypt by fives.	*Instead, God led them to go around through the wilderness toward the Sea of Reeds. The Israelites left Egypt in an orderly formation.*

ULT And … by fives
UST in an orderly formation
(וַחֲמֻשִׁים)

The meaning of this term (**by fives**) is uncertain. Many English translations opt for something like “prepared for battle,” because this seems to be the meaning in Numbers 32:17 and the related verses in Joshua 1:14 and 4:12. Because of what the previous verse said about war, it may mean that they went out in formation—like an army would march—but perhaps not armed. Alternate translation: [And … in formation like an army]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
the wilderness	through the wilderness
to the Sea of Reeds	toward the Sea of Reeds
Israel	The Israelites
from the land of	Egypt
Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 13:19

ULT	UST
And Moses took the bones of Joseph with him, for he had certainly caused the sons of Israel to vow, saying, "God will certainly attend to you, and you shall bring my bones up with you from here."	*Moses had them take the bones of Joseph along with them, because Joseph long ago had made the Israelites promise that they would do that. He had said to them, "God will always care for you. {When he brings you to the promised land,} you must carry my bones with you."*

ULT And Moses took the bones of Joseph with him

UST Moses had them take the bones of Joseph along with them

(וַיִּקַּח מֹשֶׁה אֶת־עַצְמוֹת יוֹסֵף עִמּוֹ)

See Joshua 24:32 regarding the burial of Joseph's bones.

ULT God will certainly attend to you, and you shall bring my bones up with you from here

UST God will always care for you. {When he brings you to the promised land,} you must carry my bones with you

(פָּקֹד יִפְקֹד אֱלֹהִים אֶתְכֶם וְהַעֲלִיתֶם אֶת־עַצְמֹתַי מִזֶּה אִתְּכֶם)

This is an almost exact quote of what Joseph said in Genesis 50:25; reference your translation there when translating this.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Joseph	Joseph
Israel	the Israelites
he had … caused … to vow	Joseph long ago had made … promise that they would do that
God	God

Exodus 13:20

ULT	UST
And they journeyed from Succoth, and they camped at Etham on the edge of the wilderness.	*The Israelites went from Succoth to Etham (which was at the edge of the wilderness). They set up their tents there.*

ULT from Succoth, and they camped at Etham
UST from Succoth to Etham … They set up their tents there
(מִסֻּכֹּת וַיַּחֲנוּ בְאֵתָם)

Alternate translation: [from a place named Succoth, and they camped at a place named Etham]

ULT at Etham
UST to Etham
(בְאֵתָם)

Etham was possibly located south of the route heading toward the Philistines, at the border of the wilderness.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from Succoth	from Succoth
the wilderness	of the wilderness

Exodus 13:21

ULT	UST
And Yahweh went before their faces by day in a pillar of cloud to lead them on the way, and by night in a pillar of fire to be light to them, to go by day or by night.	*When they walked during the daytime, Yahweh went in front of them in a tall cloud to show them the way. During the night, he went in front of them in a tall flame so they had light and could travel in the daytime and also at nighttime.*

ULT **And Yahweh went before their faces**
UST When they walked … Yahweh went in front of them … he went in front of them
(וַיהוָה הֹלֵךְ לִפְנֵיהֶם)

Here, **before their faces** means "in front of the people." Alternate translation: [And Yahweh led them by going in front of them]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **in a pillar of cloud … in a pillar of fire**
UST in a tall cloud … in a tall flame
(בְּעַמּוּד עָנָן & בְּעַמּוּד אֵשׁ)

The possessive here indicates characteristic. The **cloud** and **fire** looked like a **pillar**. Alternate translation: [in a cloud that looked like a pillar … in a fire that looked like a pillar] or [in a pillar-shaped cloud … in a pillar-shaped fire]

ULT **to be light to them**
UST so they had light
(לְהָאִיר לָהֶם)

Alternate translation: [to be light for them]

ULT **fire to be light to them, to go by day or by night**
UST flame so they had light and could travel in the daytime and also at nighttime
(אֵשׁ לְהָאִיר לָהֶם לָלֶכֶת יוֹמָם וָלָיְלָה)

They could travel either by day or night because God provided light at night. You could reorder the cause and effect if that is more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [fire. They could go by day or by night because he was light to them.]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And Yahweh	Yahweh
by day	during the daytime

ULT	UST
in a pillar of	in a tall
in a pillar of	in a tall
by day	in the daytime

Exodus 13:22

ULT	UST
He did not withdraw the daytime pillar of cloud or the nighttime pillar of fire from the face of the people.	*Yahweh never left them. He was there in the tall cloud during the day and in the tall flame during the night.*

ULT **the daytime pillar of cloud or the nighttime pillar of fire**
UST in the tall cloud during the day and in the tall flame during the night
(עַמּוּד הֶעָנָן יוֹמָם וְעַמּוּד הָאֵשׁ לָיְלָה)

See how you translated this in 13:21.

ULT **from the face of the people**
UST Yahweh … left them. He was there
(לִפְנֵי הָעָם)

Here, **from the face of the people** means “from in front of the people” where they could see it. Alternate translation: [from where they could see it]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
daytime	during the day
the … pillar of	in the tall
or the … pillar	and in the tall

Exodus 14

Exodus 14 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This whole chapter is the record of an important event in the history of Israel known as the "parting of the Sea of Reeds (Red Sea)."

Throughout this chapter and chapter 15, the word "sea" is used. Exodus 13:18 and 15:22 show that this is the Sea of Reeds (Red Sea). Since the text does not explicitly say that though, the ULT will only say "sea." In your translation, it may help people to be more specific than the text if just using "sea" is confusing.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Pharaoh's chariots

These chariots were a fighting force. Pharaoh took an army to kill the Hebrew people. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Rhetorical Questions

The Israelites asked a few rhetorical questions of Moses. These questions were not really directed at Moses, but at Yahweh. This showed their lack of faith in Yahweh. (See: Rhetorical Question; and faith)

Exodus 14:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Then Yahweh said to Moses,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 14:2

ULT	UST
“Say to the sons of Israel that they should turn and camp before the face of Pi Hahiroth, between Migdol and the sea, before the face of Baal Zephon. You are to camp by the sea opposite it.	*“Tell the Israelites to turn toward Pi Hahiroth and camp near it. That place is between Migdol and the {Red} Sea, near Baal Zephon. Set up your tents there, close to the sea.*

ULT **Say**
UST Tell
(דַּבֵּר)

This verse begins a direct quote which continues into 13:4. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening first-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation. There may be other quotations in this chapter; they will be marked by the same punctuation, but they will not have their own notes unless there is something unique about them.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **Pi Hahiroth … Migdol … Baal Zephon**
UST Pi Hahiroth … it. That place … Migdol … Baal Zephon
(פִּי הַחִירֹת & מִגְדֹּל & בַּעַל צְפֹן)

These are locations on Egypt’s eastern border.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **the sons of Israel that they should turn and camp before the face of Pi Hahiroth, between Migdol and the sea, before the face of Baal Zephon**
UST the Israelites to turn toward Pi Hahiroth and camp near it. That place is between Migdol and the {Red} Sea, near Baal Zephon
(בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל וְיָשֻׁבוּ וְיַחֲנוּ לִפְנֵי פִּי הַחִירֹת בֵּין מִגְדֹּל וּבֵין הַיָּם לִפְנֵי בַּעַל צְפֹן)

The portion after **that** could be translated as a direct quotation. That would make a second-level direct quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by marking it with second-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [the sons of Israel, ‘Turn and camp before the face of Pi Hahiroth, between Migdol and the sea, before the face of Baal Zephon.’]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

> ULT **You are to camp**
> UST Set up your tents
> (תַּחֲנוּ)

Here, **you** is plural and refers to Moses and the Israelites. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 14:3

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh will say about the sons of Israel, 'They are confused in the land. The wilderness has closed in on them.'	*When the king knows you have done that, he will think, 'The Israelites are lost. They are wandering around, and the desert blocks their path.'*

ULT **And Pharaoh will say about the sons of Israel, 'They are confused in the land. The wilderness has closed in on them**

UST When the king knows you have done that, he will think, 'The Israelites are lost. They are wandering around, and the desert blocks their path

(וְאָמַר פַּרְעֹה לִבְנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל נְבֻכִים הֵם בָּאָרֶץ סָגַר עֲלֵיהֶם הַמִּדְבָּר)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [Pharaoh will say that the Israelites are confused in the land, and the wilderness has closed in on them]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **The wilderness has closed in on them**

UST and the desert blocks their path

(סָגַר עֲלֵיהֶם הַמִּדְבָּר)

Pharaoh speaks of **the wilderness** as a person who has trapped the Israelites. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [It is as if the wilderness is closing in on them.]

Support Reference: Personification

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	When the king knows you have done that, he
Israel	The Israelites … They
in the land	around
The wilderness	the desert

Exodus 14:4

ULT	UST
And I will strengthen the heart of Pharaoh, and he will pursue after them. And I will be glorified because of Pharaoh and because of all his army. And the Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh." And they did so.	*I will make the king stubborn again and he will chase you {with his army}. Then people will revere me more than the king and his army, and the Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh." {So Moses told the Israelites that,} and they did what he told them to do.*

ULT **And I will strengthen the heart of Pharaoh**
UST I will make the king stubborn again
(וְחִזַּקְתִּי אֶת־לֵב־פַּרְעֹה)

This means God will make him stubborn. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his **heart** were **strong**. If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. See how you translated this in 4:21. Alternate translation: [But I will cause Pharaoh to be stubborn]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and he will pursue after them**
UST and he will chase you {with his army}
(וְרָדַף אַחֲרֵיהֶם)

Alternate translation: [and Pharaoh will pursue the Israelites]

ULT **And I will be glorified**
UST Then people will revere me
(וְאִכָּבְדָה)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And people will glorify me]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And I will be glorified because of Pharaoh and because of all his army**
UST Then people will revere me more than the king and his army
(וְאִכָּבְדָה בְּפַרְעֹה וּבְכָל־חֵילוֹ)

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: [And I will be glorified because of what I do to Pharaoh and to all his army]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **And they did so**
UST {So Moses told the Israelites that,} and they did what he told them to do
(וַיַּעֲשׂוּ־כֵן)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express what **they did** explicitly. Alternate translation: [So the Israelites turned and camped as Yahweh had instructed them]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And I will be glorified	Then people will revere me
because of Pharaoh	more than the king
the Egyptians	the Egyptians
And … will know	and … will know
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh

Exodus 14:5

ULT	UST
And the king of Egypt was told that the people fled, and the heart of Pharaoh and his servants was turned to the people. And they said, "What is this we did that we released Israel from our slavery?"	*When someone told the king of Egypt that the Israelites had escaped, he and his officials changed how they were thinking about them and said, "What have we done? The Israelites will no longer be our slaves because we let them go!"*

ULT **And the king of Egypt was told**
UST When someone told the king of Egypt
(וַיֻּגַּד לְמֶלֶךְ מִצְרַיִם)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Then someone told the king of Egypt]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **fled**
UST had escaped
(בָּרַח)

Alternate translation: [had run away]

ULT **and the heart of Pharaoh and his servants was turned to the people**
UST he and his officials changed how they were thinking about them
(וַיֵּהָפֵךְ לְבַב פַּרְעֹה וַעֲבָדָיו אֶל־הָעָם)

Here, **heart** refers to their attitudes toward the Israelites. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and Pharaoh and his servants changed their attitude about the people]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and the heart of Pharaoh and his servants was turned to the people**
UST he and his officials changed how they were thinking about them
(וַיֵּהָפֵךְ לְבַב פַּרְעֹה וַעֲבָדָיו אֶל־הָעָם)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and Pharaoh and his servants turned their hearts to the people]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to the people**
UST about them
(אֶל־הָעָם)

Alternate translation: [against the Israelites]

ULT **What is this we did that we released Israel from our slavery**
UST What have we done? The Israelites will no longer be our slaves because we let them go
(מַה־זֹּאת עָשִׂינוּ כִּי־שִׁלַּחְנוּ אֶת־יִשְׂרָאֵל מֵעָבְדֵנוּ)

They asked this question to show they thought they had done a foolish thing. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [We should not have let the Israelites go free from working for us!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Israel**
UST The Israelites … them
(אֶת־יִשְׂרָאֵל)

This is a collective singular noun. If your language would not refer to a group of people in this way, you may need to translate it as plural. Alternate translation: [the Israelites]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king of	the king of Egypt
Egypt	the king of Egypt
Pharaoh	he
and his servants	and his officials
Israel	The Israelites … them
from our slavery	will no longer be our slaves

Exodus 14:6

ULT	UST
And he hitched his chariot and took his people with him.	*So the king had {someone} fasten his horses to his chariot and he rode out with his army.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
his chariot	So the king had {someone} fasten his horses to his chariot

Exodus 14:7

ULT	UST
And he took 600 chosen chariots, and all of the chariots of Egypt, and third men were on all of them.	*{When he left} he took all Egypt's chariots, including the best 600 chariots. In each chariot {he placed a driver, a soldier, and} a commander.*

ULT 600
UST 600
(שֵׁשׁ־מֵאוֹת)

Alternate translation: [six hundred]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT and third men
UST { … a driver, a soldier, and} a commander
(וְשָׁלִשִׁם)

The precise meaning of this term is not known. Alternate translation: [and officers] or [and shield-bearers] or [and three men]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
chariots	chariots
the chariots of	chariots
Egypt	Egypt's

Exodus 14:8

ULT	UST
And Yahweh strengthened the heart of Pharaoh, king of Egypt, and he pursued after the sons of Israel, and the sons of Israel were going out with a high hand.	*Yahweh made the king of Egypt stubborn, so he {and his army} chased the Israelites. The Israelites marched out confidently.*

ULT **And Yahweh strengthened the heart of Pharaoh**
UST Yahweh made the king of Egypt stubborn … and his army
(וַיְחַזֵּק יְהוָה אֶת־לֵב פַּרְעֹה)

This means God made him stubborn. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his **heart** were "strong." If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. See how you translated this in 4:21. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh caused Pharaoh to be stubborn]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **with a high hand**
UST confidently
(בְּיָד רָמָה)

Alternate translation: [boldly] or [defiantly]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Pharaoh	the king of Egypt … and his army
king of	the king of Egypt … and his army
Egypt	the king of Egypt … and his army
Israel	the Israelites
Israel	The Israelites

Exodus 14:9

ULT	UST
And the Egyptians pursued after them. And all of the horses of the chariots of Pharaoh and his horsemen and his army overtook them camping above the sea, above Pi Hahiroth before the face of Baal Zephon.	*The Egyptian army, with all the king's horses and chariots and horsemen, chased after the Israelites. They caught up with them as they were camped near the sea, close to Pi Hahiroth, in front of Baal Zephon.*

ULT **all of the horses of the chariots of Pharaoh and his horsemen and his army**
UST The Egyptian army, with all the king's horses and chariots and horsemen
(כָּל־סוּס֙ רֶ֣כֶב פַּרְעֹ֔ה וּפָרָשָׁ֖יו וְחֵילֹ֑ו)

It is unclear exactly what the groupings are here. **Horses of the chariots** (probably meaning "horse-drawn chariots") and **horsemen** could be two groups or two references to the same group. **Army** could mean another group, perhaps on foot (See: 15:19), or it could be a summary grouping. Furthermore, most translations render **horses of the chariots** as "horses and chariots," suggesting four total groups (possibly because of v. 23). Alternate translation: [all the horse-drawn chariots of Pharaoh and his horsemen and his foot soldiers]

ULT **them**
UST with them
(אוֹתָ֗ם)

Here, **them** refers to the Israelites. Alternate translation: [the Israelites]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Pi Hahiroth … Baal Zephon**
UST Pi Hahiroth … Baal Zephon
(פִּ֣י הַחִירֹ֔ת & בַּ֖עַל צְפֹ֑ן)

These are places on Egypt's eastern border. See how you translated them in Exodus 14:2.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Egyptians	The Egyptian army
the horses of	horses
the chariots of	and chariots
Pharaoh	the king's
and his horsemen	and horsemen

Exodus 14:10

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh approached, and the sons of Israel lifted their eyes, and behold, the Egyptians started after them, and they were extremely afraid. And the sons of Israel cried to Yahweh.	*When the king's army got near, the Israelite people were surprised to see that the Egyptians were marching toward them. They were terrified, so they cried out to Yahweh to help them.*

ULT **And Pharaoh approached**
UST When the king's army got near
(וּפַרְעֹה הִקְרִיב)

Here, **Pharaoh** represents the entire Egyptian army. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh and his army approached]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **and the sons of Israel lifted their eyes**
UST the Israelite people … to see
(וַיִּשְׂאוּ בְנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל אֶת־עֵינֵיהֶם)

Alternate translation: [and the sons of Israel looked up] or [and the sons of Israel looked back]

ULT **and behold**
UST were surprised
(וְהִנֵּה)

Here, **behold** is used to draw attention to alarming information that follows. Use a word, phrase, or structure in your language that indicates that the next information is very alarming.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh	When the king's army
Israel	the Israelite people
the Egyptians	that the Egyptians
and they were … afraid	They were terrified
Israel	they
And … cried	so … cried out … to help them
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 14:11

ULT	UST
And they said to Moses, "Is it because there were not any graves in Egypt that you have taken us away to die in the wilderness? What is this you have done to us, to bring us out from Egypt?	*Then they said to Moses, "You have not helped us by bringing us out of Egypt. {Pharaoh's army is going to} kill us here in the wilderness. {If we had stayed in Egypt,} someone would have buried us in graves.*

ULT **Is it because there were not any graves in Egypt that you have taken us away to die in the wilderness**

UST by bringing us out … Egypt. {Pharaoh's army is going to} kill us here in the wilderness. {If we had stayed in … } … someone would have buried us in graves

(הֲמִבְּלִי אֵין־קְבָרִים בְּמִצְרַיִם לְקַחְתָּנוּ לָמוּת בַּמִּדְבָּר)

The Israelites ask this question to express their frustration and fear of dying. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [There were plenty of graveyards in Egypt for us to be buried in. You did not have to take us into the wilderness to die!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **What is this you have done to us, to bring us out from Egypt**

UST You have not helped us by bringing us out of … Egypt

(מַה־זֹּאת עָשִׂיתָ לָּנוּ לְהוֹצִיאָנוּ מִמִּצְרָיִם)

The Israelites ask this question to rebuke Moses for bringing them to the desert to die. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [You should not have endangered us like this by bringing us out of Egypt!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
graves	If we had stayed … someone would have buried us in graves
in Egypt	Egypt … in
in the wilderness	here in the wilderness
from Egypt	of … Egypt

Exodus 14:12

ULT	UST
Is this not the word that we spoke to you in Egypt, saying, 'Cease from us and let us serve the Egyptians'? Because serving the Egyptians is better to us than dying in the wilderness."	*That is what we told you when we were in Egypt. We said, 'Leave us alone, and let us work for the Egyptians.' It would have been better for us to be slaves for the Egyptians than to die here in the desert!"*

ULT **Is this not the word that we spoke to you in Egypt**
UST That is what we told you when we were in Egypt
(הֲלֹא־זֶה הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר־דִּבַּרְנוּ אֵלֶיךָ בְּמִצְרַיִם)

The Israelites ask this question to emphasize that this is what they had told Moses. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [This is exactly what we told you while we were in Egypt]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **in Egypt, saying, 'Cease from us and let us serve the Egyptians**
UST we were in Egypt. We said, 'Leave us alone, and let us work for the Egyptians
(בְּמִצְרַיִם לֵאמֹר חֲדַל מִמֶּנּוּ וְנַעַבְדָה אֶת־מִצְרָיִם)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express the portion following **saying** as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [in Egypt? We told you to leave us alone so we could serve the Egyptians.]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in Egypt	we were in Egypt
and let us serve	and let us work
the Egyptians	for the Egyptians
serving	to be slaves
the Egyptians	for the Egyptians
is better	better
in the wilderness	here in the desert

Exodus 14:13

ULT	UST
And Moses said to the people, "You must not fear! Stand still and see the salvation of Yahweh, that he will do for you today. For the Egyptians whom you see today you will not repeat seeing again until eternity.	*Moses said to the people, "Do not be afraid! Stand strong and see how Yahweh will rescue you. He will save you today, and you will never see the Egyptians that you are looking at today again.*

ULT **and see the salvation of Yahweh, that he will do for you today**
UST and see how Yahweh will rescue you. He will save you today
(וּרְאוּ אֶת־יְשׁוּעַת יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר־יַעֲשֶׂה לָכֶם הַיּוֹם)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **salvation**, you can express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and see what Yahweh will do for you today, he will save you]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **you will not repeat seeing again until eternity**
UST will never see … you … again
(לֹא תֹסִיפוּ לִרְאֹתָם עוֹד עַד־עוֹלָם)

This statement is very extended for emphasis on its certainty. Alternate translation: [you will not see them again forever]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
You must … fear	Do … be afraid
the salvation of	will rescue … will save
Yahweh	Yahweh … He
today	today
the Egyptians	the Egyptians
today	today
eternity	never

Exodus 14:14

ULT	UST
Yahweh himself will fight for you. As for you, you will be silent."	*Yahweh will fight for you! Just stay calm. There is nothing else that you will have to do."*

ULT Yahweh himself will fight
UST Yahweh will fight
(יְהוָה יִלָּחֶם)

The form **Yahweh himself** emphasizes what Yahweh will do in contrast to what the Israelites will do. Use a way that is natural in your language to indicate this emphasis. Alternate translation: [As for Yahweh, he will fight]

Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

ULT you will be silent
UST Just stay calm. There is nothing else that you will have to do
(תַּחֲרִישׁוּן)

Here, **silent** could mean "still." The Israelites' lack of action is in contrast to Yahweh's fighting. It is not a total lack of motion or sound. Alternate translation: [you will not fight]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 14:15

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Why are you crying out to me? Speak to the sons of Israel and let them start moving.	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Instead of asking me to help you, tell the people to pack their tents and prepare to march.*

ULT Why are you crying out to me
UST Instead of asking me to help you
(מַה־תִּצְעַק אֵלָי)

Moses apparently had been praying to God for help, so God uses this question to compel Moses to act. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [Do not call out to me any longer, Moses.]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
are you crying out	Instead of asking … to help you
Israel	the people

Exodus 14:16

ULT	UST
As for you, raise your staff and reach out your hand over the sea and split it. And the sons of Israel will enter into the midst of the sea on dry ground.	*You must lift up your staff and stretch out the hand holding it over the sea to cause it to divide. Then the Israelites will go in the middle of the sea, walking on dry ground.*

ULT **raise your staff and reach out your hand**
UST lift up your staff and stretch out the hand holding it
(הָרֵם אֶת־מַטְּךָ֙ וּנְטֵ֣ה אֶת־יָדְךָ֔)

See note in the Chapter 8 Introduction regarding **hand** and **staff**.

ULT **and split it**
UST to cause it to divide
(וּבְקָעֵ֑הוּ)

Alternate translation: [and divide the sea into two parts]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your staff	your staff
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 14:17

ULT	UST
And behold me! I will strengthen the heart of the Egyptians, and they will enter after them. And I will be glorified because of Pharaoh and because of all his army, because of his chariots and because of his horsemen.	*Watch me! I will make the Egyptians stubborn so that they will chase the Israelites. Then, because of what I will do to the king, his army, his chariots, and his horsemen, people will revere me.*

ULT **And behold me**
UST Watch me
(וְאָנֹכִי הִנְנִי)

Here, **behold me** is an expression meant to focus the attention of the listener on what the speaker is about to say. In this case, Yahweh is drawing attention to his next actions. Alternate translation: [Look at what I will do]

ULT **I will strengthen the heart of the Egyptians**
UST I will make the Egyptians stubborn
(מְחַזֵּק אֶת־לֵב מִצְרַיִם)

This means that God will make them stubborn. Their stubborn attitude is spoken of as if their **hearts** were "strong." If the **heart** is not the body part your culture uses to refer to a person's will, consider using whichever organ your culture would use for this image. See how you translated this in 4:21. Alternate translation: [I will cause the Egyptians to be stubborn]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and they will enter after them**
UST so that they will chase the Israelites
(וְיָבֹאוּ אַחֲרֵיהֶם)

Alternate translation: [so that the Egyptians will go into the sea after the Israelites]

ULT **And I will be glorified because of Pharaoh and because of all his army, because of his chariots and because of his horsemen**
UST Then, because of what I will do to the king, his army, his chariots, and his horsemen, people will revere me
(וְאִכָּבְדָה בְּפַרְעֹה וּבְכָל־חֵילוֹ בְּרִכְבּוֹ וּבְפָרָשָׁיו)

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words from the context. See how you translated a similar phrase in 14:4. Alternate translation: [And I will be glorified because of what I do to Pharaoh, all his army, his chariots, and his horsemen]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **And I will be glorified**
UST Then, because of what I will do … people will revere me
(וְאִכָּבְדָה)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And people will glorify me]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Egyptians	the Egyptians
And I will be glorified	Then, because of what I will do … people will revere me
because of Pharaoh	to the king
because of his chariots	his chariots
and because of his horsemen	and his horsemen

Exodus 14:18

ULT	UST
And the Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh when I am glorified because of Pharaoh, because of his chariots and because of his horsemen."	*When I have won a glorious victory over the king, his chariots, and his horsemen, the {other} Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh, {the God who can do anything}."*

ULT when I am glorified
UST When I have won a glorious victory
(בְּהִכָּבְדִי)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [when I cause people to glorify me]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT when I am glorified because of Pharaoh, because of his chariots and because of his horsemen
UST When I have won a glorious victory over the king, his chariots, and his horsemen
(בְּהִכָּבְדִי בְּפַרְעֹה בְּרִכְבּוֹ וּבְפָרָשָׁיו)

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words from the context. See how you translated a similar phrase in 14:4. Alternate translation: [when I get glory because of what I do to Pharaoh, his chariots, and his horsemen] or [when I show my glory by what I do to Pharaoh, his chariots, and his horsemen]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Egyptians	the {other} Egyptians
And … will know	will know
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh, {the God who can do anything}
when I am glorified	When I have won a glorious victory
because of Pharaoh	over the king
because of his chariots	his chariots
and because of his horsemen	and his horsemen

Exodus 14:19

ULT	UST
And the angel of God moved, who traveled before the face of the camp of Israel and went behind them. And the pillar of cloud moved from before their face and stood behind them.	*Then the angel of God, who had been in front of the Israelites, moved and went behind them. The tall, bright cloud that had been in front of them also moved to be behind them.*

ULT before the face of the camp of … from before their face
UST who had been in front of … that had been in front of them
(לִפְנֵי֙ מַחֲנֵ֣ה & מִפְּנֵיהֶֽם)

Here, **face** means "front." Alternate translation: [in front of the camp of … from in front of them]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT the pillar of cloud
UST The tall, bright cloud
(עַמּ֣וּד הֶֽעָנָ֔ן)

See how you translated this in 13:21.

ULT Israel
UST the Israelites
(יִשְׂרָאֵ֑ל)

This is a collective singular noun. If your language would not refer to a group of people in this way, you may need to translate it as plural. Alternate translation: [the Israelites]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the angel of	the angel of
God	God
Israel	the Israelites
the pillar of	The tall, bright

Exodus 14:20

ULT	UST
And it came between the camp of Egypt and the camp of Israel. And it became a cloud, and darkness, and it lit up the night, and one did not come near to the other all night.	*The cloud was between the Egyptian army and the Israelites. The cloud caused the Egyptian army to be in the darkness, but it gave light to the Israelites. As a result, neither group could come near the other group during the whole night.*

ULT Israel
UST the Israelites
(יִשְׂרָאֵל)

This is a collective singular noun. If your language would not refer to a group of people in this way, you may need to translate it as plural. Alternate translation: [the Israelites]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT And it became a cloud, and darkness, and it lit up the night
UST The cloud caused … to be in the darkness, but it gave light to the Israelites
(וַיְהִי הֶעָנָן וְהַחֹשֶׁךְ וַיָּאֶר אֶת־הַלָּיְלָה)

Alternate translation: [And the cloud became dark on one side and light on the other side all night]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egypt	the Egyptian army … the Egyptian army
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 14:21

ULT	UST
And Moses reached out his hand over the sea. And Yahweh drove the sea by a strong east wind all night and made the sea into dry land. And the waters were divided.	*Moses stretched out his hand over the sea. Then Yahweh sent a strong wind from the east. It blew all night and pushed the water apart, and it caused the land between the water to dry up.*

ULT And Moses reached out his hand over the sea
UST Moses stretched out his hand over the sea
(וַיֵּט מֹשֶׁה אֶת־יָדוֹ עַל־הַיָּם)

See note in the Chapter 8 Introduction regarding the **hand** and staff.

ULT by a … east wind
UST a … wind from the east
(בְּרוּחַ קָדִים)

An **east wind** originates in the east and blows towards the west.

ULT And the waters were divided
UST and pushed the water apart
(וַיִּבָּקְעוּ הַמָּיִם)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh divided the waters]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 14:22

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel entered the middle of the sea on dry ground. And the waters were a wall for them on their right and on their left.	*Then the Israelites went on the dry land in the middle of the sea. The water was like a wall on each side of them, on the right side and on the left side.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 14:23

ULT	UST
And the Egyptians pursued, and entered after them—every horse of Pharaoh, his chariots, and his horsemen—into the middle of the sea.	*Then the Egyptian army went after them into the middle of the sea with their horses, chariots, and horsemen.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Egyptians	the Egyptian army
horse of	with their horses
Pharaoh	the Egyptian army
his chariots	chariots
and his horsemen	and horsemen

Exodus 14:24

ULT	UST
And so it was, in the watch of the morning, Yahweh looked down on the camp of the Egyptians through the pillar of fire and cloud. And he confused the camp of the Egyptians.	*Just before dawn, Yahweh looked down from the fiery cloud, and then he caused the Egyptian army to panic.*

ULT in the watch of the morning
UST Just before dawn
(בְּאַשְׁמֹרֶת הַבֹּקֶר)

This is the last third of the night. It is approximately the three hours before sunrise.

Alternate translation: [very early in the morning] or [in the time before the sun rises]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT through the pillar of fire and cloud
UST from the fiery cloud
(בְּעַמּוּד אֵשׁ וְעָנָן)

See how you translated this in 13:21.

ULT the camp of the Egyptians … the camp of the Egyptians
UST the Egyptian army
(מַחֲנֵה מִצְרַיִם & אֶת מַחֲנֵה מִצְרָיִם)

Alternate translation: [the army of the Egyptians … the army of the Egyptians]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
the Egyptians	Egyptian
through the pillar of	from the fiery cloud
the Egyptians	Egyptian

Exodus 14:25

ULT	UST
And he caused the wheels of their chariots to turn aside and caused them to drive heavily. And the Egyptians said, "Let us run from the face of Israel, for Yahweh is fighting for them against Egypt."	*He caused the wheels of the chariots to get stuck in the ground so that they could hardly move. So the Egyptians said, "Yahweh is fighting for the Israelites against us; we must escape from them!"*

ULT **from the face of Israel**
UST from them
(מִפְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Here, **the face of Israel** means the presence of Israel. See the UST.

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
their chariots	the chariots
the Egyptians	the Egyptians
Israel	from them
Yahweh	Yahweh
against Egypt	against us

Exodus 14:26

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Reach out your hand over the sea, and the waters will return on the Egyptians, on his chariots, and on his horsemen."	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Stretch out your arm over the sea. Then the water will come back on the Egyptians, on their chariots, and their horsemen."*

ULT **And Yahweh said to Moses, "Reach out your hand over the sea, and the waters will return on the Egyptians, on his chariots, and on his horsemen**
UST Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Stretch out your arm over the sea. Then the water will come back on the Egyptians, on their chariots, and their horsemen
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֶל־מֹשֶׁה נְטֵה אֶת־יָדְךָ עַל־הַיָּם וְיָשֻׁבוּ הַמַּיִם עַל־מִצְרַיִם עַל־רִכְבּוֹ וְעַל־פָּרָשָׁיו)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [Yahweh told Moses to reach out with his hand over the sea so that the waters would come back onto the Egyptians, their chariots, and their horsemen.]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **Reach out your hand over the sea**
UST Stretch out your arm over the sea
(נְטֵה אֶת־יָדְךָ עַל־הַיָּם)

See note in the Chapter 8 Introduction regarding the **hand** and staff.

ULT **on his chariots, and on his horsemen**
UST on their chariots, and their horsemen
(עַל־רִכְבּוֹ וְעַל־פָּרָשָׁיו)

Here, **his** refers to Pharaoh, king of Egypt. Alternate translation: [on Pharaoh's chariots and on Pharaoh's horsemen]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
the Egyptians	the Egyptians
his chariots	their chariots
his horsemen	their horsemen

Exodus 14:27

ULT	UST
And Moses reached out his hand over the sea, and the sea returned before the face of the morning to its normal place, and the Egyptians fled before its impact. And Yahweh shook off the Egyptians in the middle of the sea.	*So Moses stretched out his arm above the sea, and the water returned to its normal level just before dawn. The Egyptians tried to escape, but Yahweh hurled them back into the sea.*

ULT **And Moses reached out his hand over the sea**
UST So Moses stretched out his arm above the sea
(וַיֵּט מֹשֶׁה אֶת־יָדוֹ עַל־הַיָּם)

See note in the Chapter 8 Introduction regarding the **hand** and staff.

ULT **before the face of the morning**
UST just before dawn
(לִפְנוֹת בֹּקֶר)

Here, **before the face of** means “before the occurrence of.” If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before it was morning]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And Yahweh shook off the Egyptians in the middle of the sea**
UST but Yahweh hurled them back into the sea
(וַיְנַעֵר יְהוָה אֶת־מִצְרַיִם בְּתוֹךְ הַיָּם)

Here, Yahweh is pictured as acting toward the Egyptians as if they were dirt or dust on his clothing that he shakes to be rid of them. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh threw the Egyptians back into the middle of the sea]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
and the Egyptians	The Egyptians
Yahweh	Yahweh
the Egyptians	them

Exodus 14:28

ULT	UST
And the waters returned, and they covered the chariots and the horsemen, even the entire army of Pharaoh that entered after them into the sea. Not even one of them remained.	*The water returned and covered the chariots, the horsemen, and the whole Egyptian army that had tried to follow the Israelites into the sea. Every one of the Egyptians died.*

ULT Not even one of them remained
UST Every one of the Egyptians died
(לֹא־נִשְׁאַר בָּהֶם עַד־אֶחָד)

This negative statement is meant to strongly convey the idea that all the Egyptians were gone. If this is confusing in your language, you can express the meaning positively. Alternate translation: [Every one of them was gone]

Support Reference: Litotes

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the chariots	the chariots
and the horsemen	the horsemen
Pharaoh	Egyptian

Exodus 14:29

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel walked on dry land in the middle of the sea. And the waters were a wall for them on their right and on their left.	*But the Israelites had already crossed through the sea by walking on dry ground. The water was like two walls, one on the right side and one on the left side.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	But the Israelites

Exodus 14:30

ULT	UST
And Yahweh saved Israel that day from the hand of Egypt, and Israel saw the Egyptians dead on the shore of the sea.	*That is the way Yahweh saved the Israelites from the Egyptian army on the day. The Israelites saw the Egyptians lying dead. Their bodies washed up on the shore.*

ULT **Israel**
UST the Israelites
(אֶת־יִשְׂרָאֵל)

This is a collective singular noun. If your language would not refer to a group of people in this way, you may need to translate it as plural. Alternate translation: [the Israelites]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **from the hand of Egypt**
UST from the Egyptian army
(מִיַּד מִצְרָיִם)

Here, **hand** refers to power. Alternate translation: [from the Egyptians' power]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **on the shore of the sea**
UST Their bodies washed up on the shore
(עַל־שְׂפַת הַיָּם)

Alternate translation: [on the land along the edge of the sea]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
And … saved	That is the way … saved
Israel	the Israelites
day	on … day
Egypt	the Egyptian army
Israel	The Israelites
the Egyptians	the Egyptians

Exodus 14:31

ULT	UST
And Israel saw the great hand that Yahweh used against the Egyptians, and the people feared Yahweh, and they believed in Yahweh and in his servant Moses.	*The Israelites saw what Yahweh powerfully did to the Egyptians, and they revered Yahweh. They trusted Yahweh and his servant Moses.*

ULT Israel
UST The Israelites
(יִשְׂרָאֵל)

This is a collective singular noun. If your language would not refer to a group of people in this way, you may need to translate it as plural. Alternate translation: [the Israelites]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT the great hand
UST powerfully
(אֶת־הַיָּד הַגְּדֹלָה)

Here, **hand** refers to power. Alternate translation: [the great power]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	The Israelites
Yahweh … in	Yahweh
against the Egyptians	to the Egyptians
and … feared	and … revered
Yahweh	Yahweh
and they believed	They trusted
Yahweh	Yahweh
his servant	his servant
and in … Moses	and … Moses

Exodus 15

Exodus 15 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

Verses 1b–18 and 21b of chapter 15 are poetry. They are a song of praise to Yahweh because he defeated and destroyed the Egyptian army (Exodus 14:26–28). Translating poetry should be done by someone who is a skilled poet in the target language. Because the forms of poetry are so different in different languages, a translation that is good poetry in the target language may seem very different from the original poem. The structure may look quite different. The poet will be well served by looking at the entire poem from multiple perspectives. He will need to know the meaning of the poem, the themes and discourse structure of the poem, and the feelings that the poem is supposed to create in the reader at each point (UST, Translation Notes). He will need to understand how that was accomplished by the original form and structure (ULT). Then he will need to compose the translated poem using forms and structures that have the same or similar meaning, themes, discourse elements, and feelings in his own language. Unlike in many other places, most notes in this chapter will not advise towards expressing meaning in plain ways or combining parallel phrases as that advice would be too simplistic for handling poetry.

Structure

This song follows a basic AB structure which is given to us in verse 1b–c and 21b–c:

- A - praise to Yahweh - he is magnificent (expressed in various words)
- B - because he defeats our enemies

The song can be divided into three major sections, each of which is patterned as: AB(a)b. Each section starts with an AB portion which is characterized by fewer verbal forms (especially the A portion). The section then elaborates on each. Note that there are other possible analyses of the structure of the poem.

Here is an outline of the structure according to this model:

- Section 1 (See: alternate breakdown below):

- 1b: A “Let me sing to Yahweh, for he has triumphantly triumphed;”
- 1c: B “the horse and the one riding it he threw into the sea.”
- 2–3: a
- 4–5: b
- Section 2:
- 6a: A
- 6b: B
- 7a: a “And in the abundance of your majesty”
- 7a–10: b “you overthrow those who rise up against you …”
- Section 3:
- 11: A
- 12: B
- 13a: a (possibly) “In your covenant loyalty”
- 13a–17: b
- 18: finale

Alternate breakdown of section 1: it is possible to view 1b–c as the introduction and divide verse 2 such that:

- 2a: A “Yah is my strength and my song”
- 2b: B “and he has become my salvation”
- 2c–3: a
- 4–5: b

Themes:

There are several images and themes that are throughout the song as well as some that are throughout an individual section.

- "High" versus "low": Yahweh is high, while his enemies are low.
- The following words are all related to the idea of being high or rising up: **triumph** (v1), **exalt** (v2), **majestic** (v6, v11), **majesty** (v7), and **the mountain of** [Yahweh's] **possession** (v17). In the last case, Yahweh's people are brought to a high place with him.
- In contrast, his enemies are low. Note in 15:7, Yahweh overthrows those who **rise up against** [him]. Ideas of being low are as follows: **sank** (v4, v10), **deeps** (v5), **descended into the depths** (v5), **melted away** (v15), and **fall on them** (v16).
- The strength of Yahweh in 15:2, 15:6, and 15:13.
- The effectiveness of Yahweh's hand versus the enemy's hand. Yahweh's hand (and arm) is effective in 15:6, 15:12, 15:16, and 15:17 but the enemy's hand is ineffective despite his boasting in 15:9.
- There is parallel imagery near the end of each section. The enemy is compared three times by simile to a heavy, inert object. In 15:5 and 15:16 that is a **stone**, in 15:10 that is **lead**.
- More parallel imagery occurs at the end of sections one (v5) and two (v10): that of the enemy sinking in the water and being covered by it.
- In sections two and three the water (v8) and the other peoples (v16) are made still by Yahweh.
- Section two begins and ends with **majestic** (v6, v10) and that word is picked up in the beginning of section three (v11).
- In section two (v9), the enemies seek to **dispossess** (or disinherit) the Israelites; in section three (v16), the Israelites come to live in the land of Yahweh's **possession** (or inheritance).
- In 15:11, three themes for the third section are introduced. These are each expanded on in that section.

- **Holiness** occurs again in 15:13 and 15:16
- **Fear** is vividly described in 15:14–16 (shake, terror, panic, trembling, melted away, dread)
- Yahweh **does miracles** to protect and build a home for his people
- 15:14–16a are a chiasm, a complex parallel structure where concepts are repeated in reverse order:
- A: 14a: peoples (nations) **become** afraid
- B: 14b: **inhabitants** of Philistia are afraid
- C: 15a: **rulers** of Edom are afraid
- C': 15b: **rulers** of Moab are afraid
- B': 15c: **inhabitants** of Canaan are afraid
- A': 16a: people **become** afraid
- In section three, there is another parallel structure:
- v13: you led this people => v16: your people pass by
- v13: this people you redeemed => v16: this people you acquired (or purchased or ransomed)
- v13: you led them to the home => v17: you will bring them … [to] the place … you made
- v13: of your holiness => v17: the Holy Place

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

The Israelite's discontent

In 15:24 the word **murmur** is introduced for the first time. This is a very strong term for "grumble" or "complain" that is used to describe the Israelites' attitude throughout their time in the wilderness. It occurs several times in Exodus and Numbers.

Yahweh's laws

In verses 24–26, there is an introductory revelation of the requirement that Israel keep the covenant by obeying the law of Moses. (See: law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God)

Exodus 15:1

ULT	UST
Then Moses and the sons of Israel sang this song to Yahweh. And they said, saying, "Let me sing to Yahweh, for he has triumphantly triumphed; the horse and the one riding it he threw into the sea.	*Then Moses and all the Israelites sang this song to Yahweh. They each sang, "I will sing to Yahweh because he has won a great victory; He has thrown the horses and the charioteers into the sea!*

> ULT **he has triumphantly triumphed**
> UST he has won a great victory
> (גָּאֹה גָּאָה)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could state explicitly over whom Yahweh triumphed. Alternate translation: [he has achieved a glorious victory over the army of Egypt]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **he has triumphantly triumphed**
> UST he has won a great victory
> (גָּאֹה גָּאָה)

Alternate translation: [he is highly exalted] or [he is extremely high] or [he is exaltedly exalted]

> ULT **the horse and the one riding it he threw into the sea**
> UST He has thrown the horses and the charioteers into the sea
> (סוּס וְרֹכְבוֹ רָמָה בַיָּם)

Moses sang about God causing the sea to cover and drown the horse and rider as if God had thrown them **into the sea**. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he has made the horse and rider drown in the sea]

Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **the horse and the one riding it**
> UST the horses and the charioteers
> (סוּס וְרֹכְבוֹ)

This refers to many or all of the Egyptian horses and riders that were chasing the Israelites. Alternate translation: [the horses and their riders]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

> ULT **and the one riding it**
> UST and the charioteers
> (וְרֹכְבֹ֖ו)

Here, **rider** could either refer to a person who sits on a horse or who travels in a chariot that a horse is pulling.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Israel	and all the Israelites
to Yahweh	to Yahweh
to Yahweh	to Yahweh
the horse	the horses

Exodus 15:2

ULT	UST
Yah is my strength and my song, and he has become my salvation. This is my God, and I will glorify him, the God of my father, and I will exalt him.	*Yahweh makes me strong, and I will sing about him. He has saved me. He is my God, and I will celebrate {because of what he did for me}. He was my father's God, and I will tell others how great he is.*

ULT **Yah is my strength**
UST Yahweh makes me strong
(עָזִּי & יָהּ)

Moses is expressing the help that he gets from Yahweh by equating Yahweh with **strength**. Use a form or metaphor from your language that would express Yahweh's strengthening help. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Yah is the one who gives me strength] or [Yah is the strong one who protects me]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Yah is … and my song**
UST Yahweh … and I will sing about him
(וְזִמְרָת יָהּ)

Moses calls Yahweh his **song** because Yahweh is the one he sings about or because Yahweh causes him to sing. Use a form or metaphor from your language that would express Yahweh being a song of joy. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Yah is … the one I sing about] or [Yah … makes me sing joyfully]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and he has become my salvation**
UST He has saved me
(וַיְהִי־לִי לִישׁוּעָה)

Moses calls Yahweh his salvation because Yahweh saved him. Use a form or metaphor from your language that would express Yahweh's saving power. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he has saved me] or [and he is the one who saves me]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **This is my God, and I will glorify him, the God of my father, and I will exalt him**
UST He is my God, and I will celebrate {because of what he did for me}. He was my father's God, and I will tell others how great he is
(זֶה אֵלִי וְאַנְוֵהוּ אֱלֹהֵי אָבִי וַאֲרֹמְמֶנְהוּ)

These lines are expressing very similar ideas for emphasis. If that is a normal way to make an emphatic (poetic) statement or if it would be understood in your language, you could translate in a similar way. If, however, repetition like this would create a different meaning, find a structure in your language that would fit.

Support Reference: Parallelism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yah is	Yahweh
salvation	He … saved
is my God	He is my God
the God of	He was my father's God
and I will exalt him	and I will tell others how great he is

Exodus 15:3

ULT	UST
Yahweh is a man of war; Yahweh is his name.	*Yahweh is a warrior; Yahweh is his name.*

ULT Yahweh is a man of war
UST Yahweh is a warrior
(יְהוָה אִישׁ מִלְחָמָה)

Moses calls Yahweh a **man of war** because he powerfully fought against the Egyptians and won. Alternate translation: [Yahweh is like a warrior]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
is a man of war	is a warrior
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 15:4

ULT	UST
He threw the chariots of Pharaoh and his army into the sea. And his chosen officers sank in the Sea of Reeds.	*He has thrown the king's chariots and his army into the sea; The king's best officers all drowned in the Sea of Reeds.*

ULT He threw the chariots of Pharaoh and his army into the sea. And his chosen officers sank in the Sea of Reeds

UST He has thrown the king's chariots and his army into the sea; The king's best officers all drowned in the Sea of Reeds

(מַרְכְּבֹת פַּרְעֹה וְחֵילוֹ יָרָה בַיָּם וּמִבְחַר שָׁלִשָׁיו טֻבְּעוּ בְיַם־סוּף)

These lines are synonymous parallels where the second strengthens what is said in the first. Alternate translation: [He threw all of Pharaoh's army into the sea, including the chariots; even his chosen officers sank in the Sea of Reeds]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT He threw the chariots of Pharaoh and his army into the sea

UST He has thrown the king's chariots and his army into the sea

(מַרְכְּבֹת פַּרְעֹה וְחֵילוֹ יָרָה בַיָּם)

Moses sings about Yahweh causing the sea to cover Pharaoh's chariots and army as if Yahweh had thrown them **into the sea**. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [He has made Pharaoh's chariot riders and army drown in the sea]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the chariots of	the king's chariots
Pharaoh	the king's chariots
in the Sea of Reeds	in the Sea of Reeds

Exodus 15:5

ULT	UST
The deeps cover them; they descended into the depths like a stone.	*The deep water covered them; they sank to the bottom like a rock.*

ULT **The deeps cover them; they descended into the depths like a stone**
UST The deep water covered them; they sank to the bottom like a rock
(תְּהֹמֹת יְכַסְיֻמוּ יָרְדוּ בִמְצוֹלֹת כְּמוֹ־אָבֶן)

These lines are synonymous parallels where the second clarifies what is said in the first. Alternate translation: [The deeps covered them because they had descended into the depths like a stone]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **they descended into the depths like a stone**
UST they sank to the bottom like a rock
(יָרְדוּ בִמְצוֹלֹת כְּמוֹ־אָבֶן)

This comparison is that just **like a stone** does not float but sinks to the bottom of the sea, the enemy soldiers sank to the bottom of the sea. Alternate translation: [they went down into the deep water like a stone sinking to the bottom of the sea]

Support Reference: Simile

Exodus 15:6

ULT	UST
Your right hand, Yahweh, is majestic in power; your right hand, Yahweh, shatters the enemy.	*O Yahweh, your power is immense; with that power, O Yahweh, you have crushed the enemy into pieces.*

ULT **Your right hand, Yahweh, is majestic in power; your right hand, Yahweh, shatters the enemy**
UST O Yahweh, your power is immense; with that power, O Yahweh, you have crushed the enemy into pieces
(יְמִינְךָ יְהוָֹה נֶאְדָּרִי בַכֹּחַ יְמִינְךָ יְהוָה תִּרְעַץ אוֹיֵב)

These lines are synonymous parallels where the second takes the abstract idea in the first and makes it concrete (though still with poetic imagery). Alternate translation: [Yahweh, you show how majestic in power your right hand is by shattering the enemy]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **Your right hand, Yahweh, is majestic in power; your right hand, Yahweh, shatters the enemy**
UST O Yahweh, your power is immense; with that power, O Yahweh, you have crushed the enemy into pieces
(יְמִינְךָ יְהוָֹה נֶאְדָּרִי בַכֹּחַ יְמִינְךָ יְהוָה תִּרְעַץ אוֹיֵב)

Moses speaks of Yahweh as if Yahweh had hands. The **right hand** refers to Yahweh's power or the things Yahweh does powerfully. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [Yahweh, your power is glorious; Yahweh, your power has shattered the enemy] or [Yahweh, what you do is gloriously powerful; Yahweh, by your power you have shattered the enemy]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **shatters the enemy**
UST you have crushed the enemy into pieces
(תִּרְעַץ אוֹיֵב)

Moses speaks of the enemy as if it were fragile and could be **shattered** like glass or pottery. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [completely destroys the enemy]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	O Yahweh

ULT	UST
is majestic	is immense
Yahweh	O Yahweh
the enemy	the enemy

Exodus 15:7

ULT	UST
And in the abundance of your majesty you overthrow those who rise up against you. You send out your heat; it devours them like stubble.	*You use your great strength to defeat your enemies. When you are angry, you destroy them like a fire burns up straw.*

ULT **you overthrow those who rise up against you. You send out your heat; it devours them like stubble**
UST to defeat your enemies. When you are angry, you destroy them like a fire burns up straw
(תַּהֲרֹס קָמֶיךָ תְּשַׁלַּח חֲרֹנְךָ יֹאכְלֵמוֹ כַּקַּשׁ)

These lines are synonymous parallels where the second takes the abstract idea in the first portion (**you overthrow those who rise up against you**) and makes it concrete (though still with poetic imagery). Alternate translation: [you overthrow those who rise up against you by sending out your heat to devour them like stubble]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **And in the abundance of your majesty**
UST You use your great strength
(וּבְרֹב גְּאוֹנְךָ)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **abundance** and **majesty**, you can express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [You are abundantly majestic and] or [Because you are abundantly majestic,]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **those who rise up against you**
UST your enemies
(קָמֶיךָ)

Rebelling against Yahweh is spoken of as **rising up against** him. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [those who rebel against you] or [your enemies]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **your heat**
UST When you are angry, you destroy them
(חֲרֹנְךָ)

Alternate translation: [your wrath] or [your fury]

ULT **You send out your heat**
UST When you are angry, you destroy them
(תְּשַׁלַּח חֲרֹנְךָ)

Moses speaks of Yahweh's wrath (literally **heat**) as if it were a servant that Yahweh sent out to do something. Alternate translation: [You show your wrath] or [You act according to your wrath]

Support Reference: Personification

ULT **it devours them like stubble**
UST like a fire burns up straw
(יֹאכְלֵמוֹ כַּקַּשׁ)

Moses speaks of God's wrath as if it were fire that could completely burn up things. His enemies were completely destroyed like **stubble** in a fire. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [it completely destroys your enemies like a fire that burns up straw]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **it devours them like stubble**
UST like a fire burns up straw
(יֹאכְלֵמוֹ כַּקַּשׁ)

Here the enemies (or **those who rise up against** Yahweh) are pictured as if they were a highly flammable piece of dried grass. Alternate translation: [it devours the enemy as if they were stubble]

Support Reference: Simile

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your majesty	your … strength
it devours them	like a fire burns up straw

Exodus 15:8

ULT	UST
And by the breath of your nostrils the waters were piled up; the flowing waters were stood upright like a heap; the deeps thickened in the heart of the sea.	*You blew on the sea, and the water piled up high; the water became like mounds of dirt. In the deepest part of the sea, the water became thick, as though it were frozen.*

ULT **And by the breath of your nostrils**
UST You blew on
(וּבְרִוחַ אַפֶּיךָ)

Moses speaks of God as if God had a nose, and he speaks of the wind as if God blew the wind from his nose. Alternate translation: [You blew on the sea and]

Support Reference: Personification

ULT **And by the breath of your nostrils the waters were piled up; the flowing waters were stood upright like a heap**
UST You blew on the sea, and the water piled up high; the water became like mounds of dirt
(וּבְרִוחַ אַפֶּיךָ נֶעֶרְמוּ מַיִם נִצְּבוּ כְמוֹ־נֵד נֹזְלִים)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [The blast from your nostrils piled the waters up and made the flowing waters stand upright in a heap]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the waters were piled up; the flowing waters were stood upright like a heap; the deeps thickened in the heart of the sea**
UST the sea, and the water piled up high; the water became like mounds of dirt. In the deepest part of the sea, the water became thick, as though it were frozen
(נֶעֶרְמוּ מַיִם נִצְּבוּ כְמוֹ־נֵד נֹזְלִים קָפְאוּ תְהֹמֹת בְּלֶב־יָם)

These lines are synonymous parallels where each line means basically the same thing, but each gives the reader a different poetic image.

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **in the heart of the sea**
UST In the deepest part of the sea
(בְּלֶב־יָם)

The center or deepest part of the sea is spoken of as if the sea had a **heart**. Alternate translation: [in the center of the sea]

Support Reference: Metaphor

Exodus 15:9

ULT	UST
The enemy said, 'I will pursue, I will overtake; I will share out the plunder; my soul will be satisfied in them; I will empty my sword; my hand will dispossess them.'	*Our enemies said, 'We will go after them and catch up to them. We will do whatever we want to them! We will draw our swords and defeat them; then we will divide up everything we take from them.'*

ULT **my soul will be satisfied in them**
UST We will do whatever we want to them
(תִּמְלָאֵמוֹ נַפְשִׁי)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [I will satisfy my desire on them]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **my hand will dispossess them**
UST and defeat them
(תּוֹרִישֵׁמוֹ יָדִי)

The meaning of this phrase is unclear. The word translated **dispossess** could also mean "possess" or "inherit." What seems clear is that the Egyptians plan to use their power to prevent the Israelites from possessing good things. Whether this is a reference back to **plunder** earlier in the verse or to recapturing them as slaves or to taking over the Israelites' place in the land of Goshen or to keeping them from reaching the promised land (of Yahweh's possession, see 15:17 regarding where Yahweh will bring his people) or something else is not so clear. It could also refer to taking away their life and breath. **Dispossess** was chosen rather than another term because the verb is in a causative form here. Alternate translation: [my hand will possess them] or [my hand will inherit them] or [my hand will kill them]

ULT **my hand will dispossess them**
UST and defeat them
(תּוֹרִישֵׁמוֹ יָדִי)

Here **hand** is used of the Egyptians' power (that is, their military strength). If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [I will dispossess them]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The enemy	Our enemies
I will overtake	and catch up to them
my soul	We will do whatever we want to them
my sword	our swords
will dispossess them	and defeat them

Exodus 15:10

ULT	UST
You blew with your wind; the sea covered them; they sank like lead in the majestic waters.	*Your wind blew, and then the sea covered them. They sank like lead in the big waves.*

ULT You blew with your wind
UST Your wind blew
(נָשַׁפְתָּ בְרוּחֲךָ)

Moses spoke about God making the **wind** blow as if God **blew** the wind through his nose or mouth. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [But you made the wind blow]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT they sank like lead in the majestic waters
UST They sank like lead in the big waves
(צָֽלְלוּ כָּעוֹפֶ֥רֶת בְּמַ֖יִם אַדִּירִֽים)

Lead is a heavy metal that is commonly used to make things sink in water. It is used here to show how quickly God's enemies were destroyed. Alternate translation: [sank as fast as a heavy piece of metal in the deep turbulent waters]

Support Reference: Simile

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
with your wind	Your wind
majestic	big

Exodus 15:11

ULT	UST
Who is like you among the gods Yahweh? Who is like you, majestic in holiness, feared in praises, doing miracles?	*Yahweh, there is no other god like you! There is no one like you! You are wonderfully different from everything else. Everyone fears and praises you for all the miracles you do!*

ULT Who is like you among the gods Yahweh
UST Yahweh, there is no other god like you
(מִי־כָמֹכָה בָּאֵלִם יְהוָה)

Moses uses this question to show how great God is. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [O Yahweh, no one is like you among the gods!] or [Yahweh, none of the gods is like you!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT Who is like you, majestic in holiness, feared in praises, doing miracles
UST There is no one like you! You are wonderfully different from everything else. Everyone fears and praises you for all the miracles you do
(מִי כָּמֹכָה נֶאְדָּר בַּקֹּדֶשׁ נוֹרָא תְהִלֹּת עֹשֵׂה פֶלֶא)

Moses uses this question to show how great God is. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [No one is like you. No one is majestic in holiness as you are, no one is honored in praises as you are, and no one does miracles as you do!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT majestic in holiness
UST You are wonderfully different from everything else
(נֶאְדָּר בַּקֹּדֶשׁ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **holiness**, you can express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [majestic and holy]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
majestic	wonderfully
in holiness	You are … different from everything else
feared	Everyone fears

ULT	UST
in praises	and praises you
miracles	for all the miracles

Exodus 15:12

ULT	UST
You reached out your right hand, and the earth swallows them.	*You used your power to make the earth open and our enemies go down into it!*

ULT **your right hand**
UST your power
(יְמִינְךָ)

The phrase **right hand** represents the strong power of God. Alternate translation: [with your strong power]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **You reached out your right hand**
UST You used your power
(נָטִיתָ יְמִינְךָ)

Moses speaks about God causing something to happen as if God **reached out** with his **hand**. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [With your strong power you made it happen]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and the earth swallows them**
UST to make the earth open and our enemies go down into it
(תִּבְלָעֵמוֹ אָרֶץ)

Moses personifies the earth as if it could swallow or devour with its mouth. Alternate translation: [the earth devours them]

Support Reference: Personification

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the earth	the earth

Exodus 15:13

ULT	UST
In your covenant faithfulness, you led this people you redeemed. In your strength, you guided them to the home of your holiness.	*You are leading the people you bought because you always love us; Because {you use} your strength {for our good}, you are guiding us to the home that you set apart.*

ULT **In your covenant faithfulness, you led this people you redeemed. In your strength, you guided them**

UST You are leading the people you bought because you always love us; Because {you use} your strength {for our good}, you are guiding us

(נָחִיתָ בְחַסְדְּךָ עַם־זוּ גָּאָלְתָּ נֵהַלְתָּ בְעָזְּךָ)

These lines are structural parallels where the lines are saying similar things, but the parallelism is more in the construction of the lines. **In your** is repeated and the concepts of **led** and **guided** are very similar to one another.

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **your holiness**

UST that you set apart

(קָדְשֶׁךָ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **holiness**, you can express the same idea in another way. See the UST.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
In your covenant faithfulness	because you always love us
you redeemed	you bought
your holiness	that you set apart

Exodus 15:14

ULT	UST
The peoples heard; they shake; anguish seized the inhabitants of Philistia.	*The people of other nations will hear what you have done, and they will tremble. The people in Philistia will be terrified.*

Note:

Verses 14–16a form a complex parallel structure where things are repeated in reverse. (See the Chapter 15 Introduction)

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **they shake**
UST and they will tremble
(יִרְגָּזוּן)

This means to shake with fear. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **anguish seized the inhabitants of Philistia**
UST The people in Philistia will be terrified
(חִיל אָחַז יֹשְׁבֵי פְּלָשֶׁת)

Moses speaks of **anguish** as if it were a person that could forcefully grab hold of someone and make them extremely afraid. Alternate translation: [the inhabitants of Philistia will be afraid]

Support Reference: Personification

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
they shake	and they will tremble
seized	will be terrified
Philistia	in Philistia

Exodus 15:15

ULT	UST
Then the chiefs of Edom panicked; trembling seizes the leaders of Moab; all the inhabitants of Canaan melted away.	*The chiefs in Edom will be dismayed. The leaders in Moab will be so afraid that they will shake. All those who live in Canaan will faint.*

ULT trembling seizes the leaders of Moab
UST The leaders in Moab will be so afraid that they will shake
(אֵילֵי מוֹאָב יֹאחֲזֵמוֹ רָעַד)

Moses speaks of **trembling** as if it were a person that could forcefully grab hold of someone and make them extremely afraid. Alternate translation: [the leaders of Moab will be afraid]

Support Reference: Personification

ULT melted away
UST will faint
(נָמֹגּוּ)

Moses uses the phrase, **melted away**, to speak of people becoming weak because of their fear. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [became weak from fear]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the chiefs of	The chiefs in
Edom	Edom
panicked	will be dismayed
trembling	that they will shake
seizes	will be so afraid
Moab	Moab
Canaan	Canaan

Exodus 15:16

ULT	UST
Terror and dread fall on them. By the greatness of your arm, they are still as a stone until your people pass by, Yahweh, until this people you acquired pass by.	*They will be terrified and fearful because of your great strength. But they will be as silent as stones until we, your people, march past them, the people you freed {from being slaves in Egypt.}*

ULT **Terror and dread fall on them**
UST They will be terrified and fearful
(תִּפֹּל עֲלֵיהֶם אֵימָתָה וָפַחַד)

Terror and dread form a doublet meaning “extremely fearful.” If your language does not use repetition in this way, you can combine these phrases. Alternate translation: [They will become extremely fearful]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **Terror and dread fall on them**
UST They will be terrified and fearful
(תִּפֹּל עֲלֵיהֶם אֵימָתָה וָפַחַד)

Terror and dread are pictured as physical objects that could **fall on** people. The image might be of them crushing people or being a heavy weight that people struggle under (however, the image is not specified). It means that the people will feel the emotions of terror and dread very strongly. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [They will be overwhelmed with feelings of terror and dread]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **By the greatness of your arm**
UST because of your great strength
(בִּגְדֹל זְרוֹעֲךָ)

Yahweh’s **arm** represents his great strength. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [Because of your great strength]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **they are still as a stone**
UST But they will be as silent as stones
(יִדְמּוּ כָּאָבֶן)

This could mean: (1) “they will be silent like stone” or (2) “they will be motionless as stone”

Support Reference: Simile

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Terror	terrified
and dread	and fearful
Yahweh	we, your people

Exodus 15:17

ULT	UST
You will bring them, and you will plant them on the mountain of your possession, the place, Yahweh, that you made for your dwelling, the holy place, my Lord, that your hands built.	*You will bring us {into the promised land of Canaan.} You will enable us to live on your hill, in the place that you, Yahweh, have chosen to be your home, in the holy place, our Lord, that you yourself will build.*

ULT You will bring them, and you will plant them
UST You will bring us {into the promised land of Canaan.} You will enable us to live
(תְּבִאֵמוֹ וְתִטָּעֵמוֹ)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express where God would bring them explicitly. Alternate translation: [You will take your people to Canaan and plant them there]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT You will bring them
UST You will bring us {into the promised land of Canaan … }
(תְּבִאֵמוֹ)

Since Moses was not already in Canaan, some languages would use “take” rather than **bring**. Alternate translation: [You will take them]

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT and you will plant them on the mountain of
UST You will enable us to live on … hill
(וְתִטָּעֵמוֹ בְּהַר)

Moses speaks about God giving his people the land to live in as if they were a plant that God was planting. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and you will settle them on the mountain of] or [and you will let them live on the mountain of]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT on the mountain of your possession
UST on your hill
(בְּהַר נַחֲלָתְךָ)

This refers to Mount Zion in the land of Canaan.

ULT **on the mountain of your possession**
UST on your hill
(בְּהַר נַחֲלָתְךָ)

Moses speaks about God promising to give his people **the mountain** forever as if he were giving it to them as an inheritance. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [on the mountain that you have given them as an inheritance]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **that your hands built**
UST that you yourself will build
(כּוֹנָנוּ יָדֶיךָ)

The phrase **your hands** refers to God's power. Alternate translation: [that you have built by your power]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and you will plant them	You will enable us to live
your possession	your
Yahweh	Yahweh
the holy place	in the holy place
my Lord	our Lord

Exodus 15:18

ULT	UST
Yahweh will reign forever and ever.”	*O Yahweh, you will rule forever!”*

> **ULT Yahweh will reign forever and ever**
> UST O Yahweh, you will rule forever
> (יְהוָה ׀ יִמְלֹךְ לְעֹלָם וָעֶד)

Alternate translation: [Yahweh reigns forever and ever]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	O Yahweh
will reign	you will rule
forever	forever

Exodus 15:19

ULT	UST
For the horse of Pharaoh went with his chariots and horsemen into the sea. And Yahweh returned upon them the waters of the sea. And the sons of Israel walked on dry land in the middle of the sea.	*When the king's horses and chariots and horsemen tried to go through the sea, Yahweh caused the water to come back and cover them. But the Israelite people walked through the middle of the sea on dry ground.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the horse of	horses
Pharaoh	the king's
with his chariots	and chariots
and horsemen	and horsemen
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	But the Israelite people

Exodus 15:20

ULT	UST
And Miriam the prophetess, the sister of Aaron, took a tambourine in her hand, and all the women went out after her with tambourines and with dancing.	*Then Miriam, who was Aaron's older sister and a prophetess, picked up her tambourine and led all the other women who had tambourines out to dance.*

ULT a tambourine … with tambourines
UST her tambourine … who had tambourines
(אֶת־הַתֹּף & בְּתֻפִּים)

A **tambourine** is a hand-held musical instrument like a small drum that also has pieces of metal around the side that make a metallic rattling sound when shaken. Alternate translation: [timbrel]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT and all the women went out after her with tambourines and with dancing
UST and led all the other women who had tambourines out to dance
(וַתֵּצֶאן כָּל־הַנָּשִׁים אַחֲרֶיהָ בְּתֻפִּים וּבְמָחֹלֹת)

Here, **all** may be a generalization; it may not have been every woman. It could be better to translate as a restrictive clause as in the UST. Alternate translation: [and every woman who went out after her had a tambourine and danced]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Miriam	Miriam
the prophetess	and a prophetess
Aaron	who was Aaron's

Exodus 15:21

ULT	UST
And Miriam responded to them: "Sing to Yahweh, for he has triumphed triumphantly; the horse and the one riding it he threw into the sea."	*Miriam sang to Yahweh this song: Sing to Yahweh because he has triumphed gloriously over his enemies. He has thrown the horses and their riders into the sea."*

ULT he has triumphed triumphantly
UST he has triumphed gloriously over his enemies
(גָּאֹה גָּאָה)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could state explicitly over whom Yahweh triumphed. See how you translated this in Exodus 15:1. Alternate translation: [he has achieved a glorious victory over the army of Egypt]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT the horse and the one riding it he threw into the sea
UST He has thrown the horses and their riders into the sea
(סוּס וְרֹכְבוֹ רָמָה בַיָּם)

Miriam sang about God causing the **sea** to cover and drown the **horse and the one riding it** as if God had thrown them **into the sea**. See how you translated this in Exodus 15:1. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he has made the horse and rider drown in the sea]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Miriam	Miriam
to Yahweh	to Yahweh … to Yahweh
the horse	the horses

Exodus 15:22

ULT	UST
And Moses caused Israel to set out from the Sea of Reeds. And they went out into the Wilderness of Shur. And they traveled for three days into the wilderness, and they found no water.	*Then Moses led the Israelite people away from the Sea of Reeds. They went to the wilderness of Shur. They walked for three days, but they could not find any water.*

ULT **Israel**
UST the Israelite people
(אֶת־יִשְׂרָאֵל)

The word **Israel** represents the people of Israel. If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. Alternate translation: [Moses led the Israelite people]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **the Wilderness of Shur**
UST the wilderness of Shur
(מִדְבַּר־שׁוּר)

We do not know the exact location of this place.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Israel	the Israelite people
from the Sea of Reeds	away from the Sea of Reeds
the Wilderness of	the wilderness of
days	days
into the wilderness	the wilderness of

Exodus 15:23

ULT	UST
And they came to Marah, and they were not able to drink the waters of Marah, because they were bitter. So he called its name Marah.	*So they went on and came to a place named Marah. There was water there, but they could not drink it, because it was bitter. That is why they named the place Marah, which is the Hebrew word that means "bitter."*

ULT to Marah

UST to a place named Marah
(מָרָתָה)

We do not know the exact location of **Marah**.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Exodus 15:24

ULT	UST
And the people murmured against Moses, saying, “What can we drink?”	*The people complained to Moses, saying, “What are we going to drink?”*

ULT And the people murmured against Moses
UST The people complained to Moses
(וַיִּלֹּנוּ הָעָם עַל־מֹשֶׁה)

Murmur is a very strong term for “grumble” or “complain” that is used to describe the Israelites’ attitude throughout their time in the wilderness. It occurs several times in Exodus and Numbers. Alternate translation: [And the people complained against Moses] or [And the people grumbled at Moses]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses

Exodus 15:25

ULT	UST
And he cried out to Yahweh, and Yahweh showed him a tree. And he threw it into the water, and the water became sweet. There he gave him a statute and an ordinance, and there he tested him.	*So Moses prayed to Yahweh. Then Yahweh showed him a branch. He took the branch and threw it into the water, and the water became good to drink. There at Marah, Yahweh gave them a fixed rule by which to live. He also tested them there {to determine if they would obey him.}*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And he cried out	So Moses prayed
Yahweh	Yahweh
Yahweh	Yahweh
a statute	a fixed rule by which to live
and an ordinance	a fixed rule by which to live
he tested him	He also tested them … to determine if they would obey him

Exodus 15:26

ULT	UST
And he said, "If you carefully listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, and you do what is right in his eyes, and you give ear to his commands and you keep all of his laws, all of the diseases that I put on the Egyptians I shall not put on you, for I am Yahweh your healer."	*He said, "I am Yahweh, your God. If you will obey me when I speak to you and do those things that I say are right and listen to all the things that I tell you, I will keep you from all the diseases that I brought on the Egyptians. Do not forget that I am Yahweh, the one who heals you."*

ULT **to the voice of Yahweh your God**
UST I am Yahweh, your God … when I speak to you
(לְקֹול ׀ יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ)

Yahweh is speaking about his own voice. Alternate translation: [to my voice]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **to the voice of Yahweh your God**
UST I am Yahweh, your God … when I speak to you
(לְקֹול ׀ יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ)

Yahweh's voice represents what he says. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [to what I say]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and you do what is right in his eyes**
UST and do those things that I say are right
(וְהַיָּשָׁר בְּעֵינָיו תַּעֲשֶׂה)

The **eyes** represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent idiom from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and do what Yahweh considers to be right]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and you give ear to his commands**
UST and listen to all the things that I tell you
(וְהַאֲזַנְתָּ לְמִצְוֹתָיו)

The **ear** represents listening, and listening represents obeying. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent idiom from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and you carefully obey his commands]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **all of the diseases that I put on the Egyptians I shall not put on you**
UST I will keep you from all the diseases that I brought on the Egyptians
(כָּל־הַמַּחֲלָה אֲשֶׁר־שַׂמְתִּי בְמִצְרַיִם לֹא־אָשִׂים עָלֶיךָ)

God speaks of causing people to have diseases as putting diseases on them. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent idiom from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I will not cause any of you to have the diseases that I cause the Egyptians to have]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	I am Yahweh
your God	your God
his laws	to all the things that I tell you
on the Egyptians	on the Egyptians
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh

Exodus 15:27

ULT	UST
And they came to Elim, and there were 12 springs of water and 70 palm trees there. And they camped there by the water.	*After they left Marah, they came to an oasis named Elim. There were 12 springs of water and 70 palm trees there. So they camped there.*

ULT to Elim
UST to an oasis named Elim
(אֵילִֽמָה)

Elim is an oasis in the desert, a place with water and shade trees.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT and 70
UST and 70
(וְשִׁבְעִ֥ים)

Alternate translation: [and seventy]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
springs of	springs of
palm trees	palm trees

Exodus 16

Exodus 16 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This entire chapter is the story of the Israelites complaining about food and Yahweh providing food. Verses 22–30 introduce the Sabbath.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Complaints

After complaining about the water, the Israelites complained that they had less food than in Egypt. This is intended to show their ungratefulness and their sinful view of Yahweh. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Prohibition against storing food

The people were not allowed to store the food, called manna, that Yahweh provided to them. This is because they were to trust in Yahweh to provide for their needs every day. (See: trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness)

Sabbath

This is the first recorded celebration of the Sabbath rest. (See: Sabbath)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Bread as food

Yahweh speaks of the food that he will send as if it were bread. The manna he gave them was perhaps not literally bread. The Israelites would eat this food every day, just as they had eaten bread every day before this. Alternate translation: [food] or [food like bread] (See: bread; and Metaphor)

Chronology

16:34–36 are written from a much later perspective. Translators will need to find a way to show that this portion gives background information from a much later point (at least 40 years).

Box of the Covenant

Related to the chronology issue, although the covenant has not yet been made, it is referenced in Exodus 16:34. This is probably an editorial comment made after these events. (See: covenant)

Wilderness of Sin

Sin is the name of a part of the Sinai Wilderness. It is the description of a place, and it has nothing to do with sinning. (See: How to Translate Names)

Exodus 16:1

ULT	UST
And they journeyed on from Elim, and all of the congregation of the sons of Israel entered into the Wilderness of Sin, which is between Elim and Sinai, on the fifteenth day of the second month after their departure from the land of Egypt.	*They left Elim, and all the Israelite people came to the wilderness of Sin between Elim and Sinai Mountain. That was on the fifteenth day of the second month after they left Egypt.*

ULT **Sin**
UST Sin
(סִ֔ין)

The word **Sin** here is the Hebrew name of the wilderness. It is not the English word "sin."

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **on the fifteenth day of the second month**
UST That was on the fifteenth day of the second month
(בַּחֲמִשָּׁ֨ה עָשָׂ֥ר יוֹם֙ לַחֹ֣דֶשׁ הַשֵּׁנִ֔י)

This time coincides with the end of April and the beginning of May on Western calendars. You could convert the Hebrew day and month into an approximate date on the calendar that your culture uses. However, the Jews used a lunar calendar, so if you use a solar calendar, the date will be different every year and the translation will not be entirely accurate. So you may just want to give the number of the day and the name of the month on the Hebrew calendar, and say approximately what time of year that is on your calendar in a footnote.

Support Reference: Hebrew Months

ULT **on the fifteenth day of the second month**
UST That was on the fifteenth day of the second month
(בַּחֲמִשָּׁ֨ה עָשָׂ֥ר יוֹם֙ לַחֹ֣דֶשׁ הַשֵּׁנִ֔י)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.
Alternate translation: [on day 15 of month 2]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the congregation of	the Israelite people
Israel	the Israelite people
day of	day
the … month	of the … month
from the land of	Egypt

ULT	UST
Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 16:2

ULT	UST
And all the congregation of the sons of Israel murmured against Moses and against Aaron in the wilderness.	*There in the wilderness, the Israelite people complained against Moses and Aaron.*

ULT And all the congregation of the sons of Israel murmured
UST the Israelite people complained
(וילינו כָּל־עֲדַת בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Here, **all** is a generalization. Alternate translation: [And many of the community of the sons of Israel murmured]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT And … murmured
UST complained
(וילינו)

Alternate translation: [And … spoke angrily]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the congregation of	the Israelite people
Israel	the Israelite people
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
in the wilderness	There in the wilderness

Exodus 16:3

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel said to them, "If only we had died by the hand of Yahweh in the land of Egypt, sitting by a pot of meat, eating bread to the full. For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill this whole assembly with hunger."	*They said to them, "We wish that Yahweh had killed us in Egypt! There we had meat to cook and all the bread that we wanted to eat. But you have brought us into this desert in order that we will all starve until we die!"*

ULT **If only we had died**
UST We wish that … had killed us
(מִֽי־יִתֵּ֨ן מוּתֵ֜נוּ)

This is a way of saying that they wished that they had died. It is a hypothetical past statement. Translate it in a way that makes it clear that this did not actually happen. Alternate translation: [We wish that we had died]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **by the hand of Yahweh**
UST Yahweh
(בְּיַד־יְהוָ֛ה)

The phrase **the hand of Yahweh** represents Yahweh's action. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [by Yahweh's action]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	They
Yahweh	Yahweh
in the land of	in Egypt
Egypt	in Egypt
bread	the bread
wilderness	desert
assembly	we
with hunger	will all starve

Exodus 16:4

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Behold me make bread rain down from heaven for you. And the people shall go out and gather the portion of a day each day, so that I may test them: Will they walk in my law or not?	*Yahweh said to Moses, "Watch what I am going to do. I am going to send bread from the sky for you. When I do that, the people must go out of their tents every day and gather enough to eat on that day. When I do that, I will find out whether they will obey me or not.*

ULT **make bread rain down from heaven for you**
UST I am going to send bread from the sky for you
(מַמְטִיר לָכֶם לֶחֶם מִן־הַשָּׁמָיִם)

God speaks of food coming **down from heaven** as if it were rain. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [make bread come down from heaven like rain] or [make bread fall to you from the sky]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **in my law**
UST whether they will obey me
(בְּתוֹרָתִי)

Alternate translation: [in my instruction]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
bread	bread
heaven	the sky
a day each day	every day … enough to eat on that day
day each	every day … enough to eat on that day
I may test them	I will find out
in my law	whether they will obey me

Exodus 16:5

ULT	UST
And so it will be, on the sixth day, that they shall prepare what they bring in, and that will be twice as much as what they gather daily."	*On the sixth day {of each week}, they should gather and prepare twice as much as on the other days {so they do not have to gather any on the seventh day}."*

ULT And so it will be, on the sixth day, that they shall prepare
UST On the sixth day {of each week} … and prepare
(וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַשִּׁשִּׁי וְהֵכִינוּ)

Alternate translation: [It will happen on the sixth day that they will prepare] or [On the sixth day they will prepare]

ULT on the sixth day
UST On the sixth day {of each week}
(בַּיּוֹם הַשִּׁשִּׁי)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.
Alternate translation: [on day 6]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT twice
UST twice
(מִשְׁנֶה)

two times

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
on the … day	On the sixth day {of each week}
daily	on the other days {so they do not have to gather any on the seventh day}
daily	on the other days {so they do not have to gather any on the seventh day}

Exodus 16:6

ULT	UST
And Moses and Aaron said to all of the sons of Israel, “At evening you will know that Yahweh brought you out from the land of Egypt.	*So Moses and Aaron said to all the Israelite people, “This evening you will know that it was Yahweh{, not us,} who brought you out of Egypt.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
and Aaron	and Aaron
Israel	the Israelite people
you will know	you will know
Yahweh	Yahweh{, not us … }
from the land of	out of
Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 16:7

ULT	UST
In the morning you will see the glory of Yahweh in his hearing your murmurings against Yahweh. And who are we that you murmur against us?”	*In the morning you will see how great Yahweh is, because he has heard how you have complained against him. We are not important enough for your complaints.”*

ULT **And who are we that you murmur against us**
UST We are not important enough for your complaints
(וְנַחְנוּ מָּה כִּי תלונו עָלֵינוּ)

Moses and Aaron used this question to show the people that it was foolish to complain against them. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [We are not powerful enough for you to complain against us.] or [It is foolish to complain against us, because we cannot do what you want.]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the glory of	how great
Yahweh	Yahweh is
Yahweh	him

Exodus 16:8

ULT	UST
And Moses said, "So Yahweh gives you meat to eat in the evening and bread in the morning to satiation; Yahweh is hearing your murmurings that you murmur against him. And what are we? Not against us is your murmuring, but against Yahweh."	*Then Moses also said, "Each evening Yahweh will give you meat to eat, and each morning he will give you enough bread to make you full. He has heard how you have complained about him. We are unimportant; when you complain, it is really about Yahweh, not us."*

ULT **And what are we**
UST We are unimportant
(וְנַחְנוּ מָֽה)

Moses used this question to show the people that he and Aaron did not have the power to give them what they wanted. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [Aaron and I cannot give you what you want.]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **And what are we? Not against us is your murmuring, but against Yahweh**
UST We are unimportant; when you complain, it is really about Yahweh, not us
(וְנַחְנוּ מָה לֹא־עָלֵינוּ תְלֻנֹּתֵיכֶם כִּי עַל־יְהוָֽה)

The people were complaining against Moses and Aaron, who were Yahweh's servants. So by complaining against them, the people were really complaining against Yahweh. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [Your complaints are not really against us; they are against Yahweh, because we are his servants]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
and bread	bread
Yahweh	He
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 16:9

ULT	UST
And Moses said to Aaron, "Say to all of the congregation of the sons of Israel, 'Approach the face of Yahweh, for he has heard your murmurings.'"	*Then Moses said to Aaron, "Tell all the Israelite people, 'Come and stand here in the presence of Yahweh, because he has heard what you have been complaining about.'"*

ULT **And Moses said to Aaron, "Say to all of the congregation of the sons of Israel, 'Approach**

UST Then Moses said to Aaron, "Tell all the Israelite people, 'Come and stand

(וַיֹּאמֶר מֹשֶׁה אֶל־אַהֲרֹן אֱמֹר אֶל־כָּל־עֲדַת בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל קִרְבוּ)

There are two layers of quotations here. You may want to translate one or the other as an indirect quotation in order to reduce the layers of quotations in this passage. Alternate translation: [And Moses told Aaron to tell all of the congregation of the sons of Israel, "Approach] or [And Moses told Aaron, "Tell all of the congregation of the sons of Israel to approach]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
the congregation of	the Israelite people
Israel	the Israelite people
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 16:10

ULT	UST
And so it was, as Aaron spoke to all of the congregation of the sons of Israel, that they turned toward the wilderness, and behold! The glory of Yahweh appeared in the cloud!	*So as Aaron told the Israelites that, they turned to look toward the desert and were surprised to see the dazzling light of Yahweh in the cloud {that had been leading them}.*

ULT **And so it was**
UST So
(וַיְהִי)

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. The important event here is the people seeing Yahweh's glory. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

ULT **and behold**
UST and were surprised to see
(וְהִנֵּה)

The word **behold** here shows that the people saw something extraordinary.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
congregation of	the Israelites
Israel	the Israelites
the wilderness	the desert
The glory of	the dazzling light of
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 16:11

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Then Yahweh said to Moses,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 16:12

ULT	UST
“I have heard the murmurings of the sons of Israel. Speak to them saying, ‘Between the evenings you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.’”	*“I have heard what the Israelites have been complaining about. So say to them, ‘At twilight, you will have meat to eat, and in the morning you will have bread. You will have all you want of it to eat. Then you will know that I am Yahweh, your God.’”*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites
with bread	bread
And you will know	Then you will know
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh
your God	your God

Exodus 16:13

ULT	UST
And so it was, in the evening quail came up and covered the camp. And in the morning the dew was lying round about the camp.	*That evening quails appeared, and there were so many that they covered the campsite. The next morning there were small drops of water all around the campsite.*

ULT **And so it was**
UST That evening
(וַיְהִי)

This phrase is used here to mark an important part of the events. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

ULT **quail**
UST quails
(הַשְּׂלָו)

The word **quail** means a type of small, plump game bird.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

Exodus 16:14

ULT	UST
And the lying dew went up; and behold! On the face of the wilderness were thin flakes, thin like frost on the ground.	*When the water on the ground dried up, they saw a thin layer of something that looked like {small white} flakes on the desert ground. It looked like a thin layer of ice on the ground.*

ULT like frost
UST It looked like … ice
(כַּכְפֹר)

Frost is frozen dew that forms on the ground. It is very fine.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT like frost
UST It looked like … ice
(כַּכְפֹר)

The original readers knew what frost is like, so this phrase would help them understand what the flakes were like. Alternate translation: [flakes that looked like frost] or [flakes that were fine like frost]

Support Reference: Simile

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the wilderness	the desert ground
the ground	the ground

Exodus 16:15

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel saw it, and they said each man to his brother, "What is it?" Because they did not know what it was. And Moses said to them, "It is the bread that Yahweh has given you to eat.	*When the Israelites saw it, they did not know what it was, so they said to each other, "What is it?" Moses replied to them, "It is the food Yahweh has given you to eat.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites
they did … know	they did … know
Moses	Moses
is the bread	is the food
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 16:16

ULT	UST
This is the thing that Yahweh has commanded: ‘Gather from it each according to the mouths of his eating; an omer for each person up to the number of your people, each shall take for those in his tent.’”	*This is what Yahweh has commanded: Each of you should gather as much as you need to eat. Gather two liters for each person who lives in your tents.”*

ULT each according to the mouths of his eating
UST Each of you … as much as you need to eat
(אִישׁ לְפִי אָכְלוֹ)

Alternate translation: [according to how much each will eat]

ULT an omer
UST two liters
(עֹמֶר)

2 liters

Support Reference: Biblical Volume

ULT an omer for each person up to the number of your people, each shall take for those in his tent
UST Gather two liters for each person who lives in your tents
(עֹמֶר לַגֻּלְגֹּלֶת מִסְפַּר נַפְשֹׁתֵיכֶם אִישׁ לַאֲשֶׁר בְּאָהֳלוֹ תִּקָּחוּ)

Alternate translation: [take an omer per person according to how many people are in the gatherer’s tent]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 16:17

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel did so. And they gathered much, or little,	*So that is what the Israelite people did. Some gathered more and some gathered less.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelite

Exodus 16:18

ULT	UST
and they measured it by omer. And there was no extra for those with much, and no lack for those with little. Each man gathered according to what he needed to eat.	*Because they gathered two liters per person, when they measured what they had gathered, those who had gathered a lot did not have anything left over. Those who had gathered less still had enough to eat. Each person gathered just enough.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

Exodus 16:19

ULT	UST
And Moses said to them, “A man shall not save any of it until morning.”	*Moses said to them, “Do not leave any of it to eat tomorrow morning!”*

> ULT **A man … not**
> UST Do not leave
> (אִישׁ אַל)

A man refers to people in general, not to one particular man. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: [No one]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses

Exodus 16:20

ULT	UST
But they did not listen to Moses. And men reserved some of it until morning, and it bred worms, and it stank. And Moses became angry with them.	*Some of them did not obey what Moses said. They kept some of it until the next morning. However, it was full of maggots and smelled rotten. That made Moses angry.*

ULT and it bred worms

UST However, it was full of maggots

(וַיָּרֻם תּוֹלָעִים)

Alternate translation: [and it decayed with worms]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	what Moses said
Moses	Moses
And … became angry	That made … angry

Exodus 16:21

ULT	UST
And they gathered it morning by morning, each man according to the mouths of his eating. And the sun became hot, and it melted.	*Each morning they gathered as much as they needed. Later, when the sun got hot, what was left on the ground melted.*

ULT each man according to the mouths of his eating
UST as much as they needed
(אִישׁ כְּפִי אָכְלוֹ)

Alternate translation: [everyone according to how much they would eat] or [everyone according to how many people they had to feed]

Exodus 16:22

ULT	UST
And so it was, on the sixth day they gathered twice as much bread, two omers for each person. And all the leaders of the community came and told Moses.	*On the sixth day, each person was able to gather four liters of bread, which was twice as much as they gathered on the other days. When the leaders of the people came to Moses and told him about that,*

ULT **And so it was**
UST On … day
(וַיְהִי)

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. Verses 16:22–30 tell about what the people did concerning the manna on the sixth and seventh days of the week. If your language has a way for marking this as a new part of the story, you could consider using it here.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **on the sixth day**
UST On the sixth day
(בַּיּוֹם הַשִּׁשִּׁי)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.
Alternate translation: [on day 6]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **twice as much**
UST which was twice as much as they gathered on the other days
(מִשְׁנֶה)

Alternate translation: [two times as much]

ULT **bread**
UST of bread
(לֶחֶם)

This refers to the **bread** that appeared as thin flakes on the ground each morning.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
on … day	On … day
bread	of bread
the leaders of	the leaders of
the community	the people

ULT	UST
Moses	to Moses … him

Exodus 16:23

ULT	UST
And he said to them, "This is what Yahweh spoke: 'Tomorrow is a rest, a Sabbath of holiness to Yahweh. What you are baking—bake! And what you are cooking—cook! And all of the leftovers cause to rest, for preservation for yourselves until morning.'"	*Moses said to them, "This is what Yahweh has told you: Tomorrow will be a day for you to rest. It will be a day set apart for Yahweh. So today, bake or boil what you will need for today and for tomorrow. Whatever is left this evening, you should put aside and keep it to eat tomorrow."*

ULT **is a rest, a Sabbath of holiness to Yahweh**
UST will be a day for you to rest. It will be a day set apart for Yahweh
(שַׁבָּתוֹן שַׁבַּת־קֹדֶשׁ לַיהוָה)

Alternate translation: [is a day to stop working completely and dedicate to Yahweh]

ULT **a Sabbath of holiness**
UST It will be a day set apart
(שַׁבַּת־קֹדֶשׁ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **holiness**, you can express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a holy Sabbath]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
a Sabbath of	It will be a day
holiness	set apart
to Yahweh	for Yahweh

Exodus 16:24

ULT	UST
And they left it until morning, as Moses had instructed. And it did not become foul, and no worms were in it.	*So they did what Moses told them. What was left over, they kept until the next day. It did not spoil and did not get maggots in it!*

ULT And it did not become foul
UST It did not spoil
(וְלֹא הִבְאִישׁ)

Alternate translation: [And it did not smell rotten]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
had instructed	told them

Exodus 16:25

ULT	UST
And Moses said, "Eat it today, for it is Sabbath, a day for Yahweh, a day you will not find it in the fields.	*On that day, Moses said, "Eat today what you have saved from yesterday because today is a day of rest to Yahweh. Today you will not find any of that food outside.*

ULT for it is Sabbath, a day for Yahweh

UST because today is a day of rest to Yahweh

(כִּי־שַׁבָּת הַיּוֹם לַיהוָה)

Alternate translation: [today is a Sabbath, a day to honor Yahweh by not working]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
today	today
it is Sabbath	is a day of rest
a day	today
for Yahweh	to Yahweh
a day	Today you

Exodus 16:26

ULT	UST
You shall gather it for six days, and on the seventh day, Sabbath, there will be none of it.”	*Every week, you must gather it for six days; but on the seventh day, which will be a day of rest for you, there will not be any to gather.”*

ULT and on the seventh day
UST but on the seventh day
(וּבַיּוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.

Alternate translation: [but on day seven]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
and on … day	but on the seventh day
Sabbath	which will be a day of rest for you

Exodus 16:27

ULT	UST
And so it was, on the seventh day, some of the people went out to gather, but they found none.	*On the seventh day, some of the people went outside their tents to gather some of that food, but could not find any.*

ULT but they found none

UST but could not find any

(וְלֹא מָצָאוּ)

Alternate translation: [but they did not find any manna]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
on the … day	On the seventh day

Exodus 16:28

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Until what time will you refuse to keep my commandments and my laws?	*Then Yahweh told Moses to say this to the people: "Yahweh is angry because for a long time you people have refused to do all the things that he has told you to do!*

ULT **Until what time will you refuse to keep my commandments and my laws**
UST Yahweh is angry because for a long time you people have refused to do all the things that he has told you to do
(עַד־אָ֣נָה מֵאַנְתֶּ֔ם לִשְׁמֹ֖ר מִצְוֹתַ֥י וְתוֹרֹתָֽי)

God used this question to scold the people because they did not obey his laws. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [You people still do not keep my commandments and laws!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **will you refuse**
UST Yahweh is angry because for a long time you people have refused
(מֵאַנְתֶּ֔ם)

Yahweh speaks to Moses, but the word **you** refers to the people of Israel in general. If the singular form would not be natural in your language for someone who was speaking to a group of people, you could use the plural forms of "you" in your translation.

Support Reference: Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups

ULT **to keep my commandments and my laws**
UST to do all the things that he has told you to do
(לִשְׁמֹ֖ר מִצְוֹתַ֥י וְתוֹרֹתָֽי)

Alternate translation: [to obey my commandments and my laws]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses to say this to the people
and my laws	to do all the things that he has told you to do

Exodus 16:29

ULT	UST
Look! For Yahweh has given you the Sabbath. So on the sixth day he is giving you bread for two days. Each one stay where he is; a man shall not be going out from his place on the seventh day."	*Listen! Since Yahweh has given you a day of rest, on the sixth day of each week, he will therefore be giving you enough of this food for two days. Each of you should stay in his tent, not going anywhere on the seventh day!"*

ULT **For Yahweh has given you the Sabbath**
UST Since Yahweh has given you a day of rest
(כִּי־יְהוָה֙ נָתַ֣ן לָכֶ֔ם הַשַּׁבָּ֑ת)

Yahweh speaks about teaching people to rest on the Sabbath as if the **Sabbath** were a gift. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I, Yahweh, have taught you to rest on the Sabbath]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **on the sixth day … on the seventh day**
UST on the sixth day of each week … on the seventh day
(בַּיּ֣וֹם הַשִּׁשִּׁ֔י & בַּיּ֖וֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִ֑י)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here. Alternate translation: [on day 6 … on day 7]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **bread**
UST enough of this food
(לֶ֔חֶם)

This refers to the bread that appeared as thin flakes on the ground each morning.

ULT **for two days**
UST for two days
(יוֹמָ֑יִם)

Alternate translation: [for 2 days]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
the Sabbath	a day of rest
on the … day	on the sixth day of each week
bread	enough of this food

ULT	UST
for two days	for two days
on the … day	on the seventh day

Exodus 16:30

ULT	UST
And the people rested on the seventh day.	*So the people rested on the seventh day.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
on the … day	on the … day

Exodus 16:31

ULT	UST
And the house of Israel called its name “manna.” And it was like coriander seed, white, and its taste was like wafers with honey.	*The Israelites called this food “manna.” It looked white, like the color of coriander seeds, and it tasted like thin wafers made with honey.*

ULT **like coriander seed, white**
UST white, like the color of coriander seeds
(כְּזֶרַע גַּד לָבָן)

Coriander is an herb also known as cilantro. People eat both the leaves and seeds. People dry the seeds, grind them into a powder, and put it in food to add flavor. Alternate translation: [like a small white seed]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **was like wafers**
UST like thin wafers
(כְּצַפִּיחֹת)

Wafers are very thin biscuits or crackers.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the house of	The Israelites
Israel	The Israelites
manna	manna
with honey	made with honey

Exodus 16:32

ULT	UST
And Moses said, “This is the procedure that Yahweh has commanded: ‘A full omer of it for preservation for your descendants so that they can see the bread which I fed you in the wilderness, when I brought you out from the land of Egypt.’”	*Moses said, “This is what Yahweh has told you: ‘You must keep two liters of it for all future generations so that they can see the food that I gave you to eat in the desert when I brought you out of Egypt.’”*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
for your descendants	for all future generations
the bread	the food
in the wilderness	in the desert
from the land of	of Egypt
Egypt	of Egypt

Exodus 16:33

ULT	UST
And Moses said to Aaron, "Take one pot and put there a full omer of manna. Put it before the face of Yahweh, for preservation for your descendants."	*And he said to Aaron, "Take a jar, and put two liters of manna in it. Then put it in a place where Yahweh can see it. You must keep it like that for all future generations."*

ULT **before the face of Yahweh**
UST in a place where Yahweh can see it
(לִפְנֵי יְהוָה)

Here, **face** represents the presence of Yahweh. Alternate translation: [in the presence of Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	he
Aaron	Aaron
manna	manna
Yahweh	Yahweh
for your descendants	for all future generations

Exodus 16:34

ULT	UST
Just as Yahweh commanded to Moses, so Aaron put it before the face of the Covenant, for preservation.	*{Later} Aaron {would} put the jar in front of the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel in order to keep the manna as Yahweh had commanded Moses.*

Note:

Verses 34–36 provide a later commentary on the chapter. If your language has a way of marking background information you may want to use it starting from verse 34 or verse 35. You may want to leave verse 34 more connected to verse 33 even though it references the **Covenant**, which has not been given yet.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **before the face of the Covenant**
UST in front of the record of the agreement between … and Israel … Yahweh
(לִפְנֵי הָעֵדֻת)

Here, **face** represents being near the **Covenant**. Alternate translation: [near the Covenant]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
the Covenant	the record of the agreement between … and Israel … Yahweh

Exodus 16:35

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel ate manna 40 years, until they came to inhabited land. They ate manna until they came to the borders of the land of Canaan.	*The Israelites ate manna every day for forty years until they came to where there were people, at the border of the land of Canaan.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	The Israelites
manna	manna
land	where there were people
manna	manna … at
the land of	the land of
Canaan	Canaan

Exodus 16:36

ULT	UST
(And an omer, it is a tenth of an ephah.)	*{Now two liters is called} an omer, which is a tenth of an ephah.*

ULT **And an omer, it is a tenth of an ephah**
UST {Now two liters is called} an omer, which is a tenth of an ephah
(וְהָעֹמֶר עֲשִׂרִית הָאֵיפָה הִוא)

An **omer** and an **ephah** are both units of dry measurement. An ephah is approximately equal to a bushel, and an omer is one-tenth of an ephah. The original readers would have known how much an ephah was. This sentence would help them know how much an omer was.

Support Reference: Biblical Volume

ULT **And an omer, it is a tenth of an ephah**
UST {Now two liters is called} an omer, which is a tenth of an ephah
(וְהָעֹמֶר עֲשִׂרִית הָאֵיפָה הִוא)

For languages that do not use fractions, this can be reworded. Alternate translation: [Now ten omers equal one ephah]

Support Reference: Fractions

Exodus 17

Exodus 17 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–7: the Israelites complain and Yahweh gives them water
- v. 8–16: Israel defeats Amalek in battle

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Rhetorical questions

Moses uses several rhetorical questions in this chapter. The purpose of these questions is to convince people of their sin. Likewise, the people's rhetorical question shows their ignorance. (See: Rhetorical Question; and sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Wilderness of Sin

Sin is the name of a part of the Sinai Wilderness. It is not the description of a place, and it has nothing to do with the act of sinning. (See: How to Translate Names)

Naming

As in the last couple of chapters, places and things are named for what happens in that location. In this chapter is Massah (which means "test"), Meribah ("arguing"), and an altar named "Yahweh is my Banner," because Yahweh will be at war with the Amalekites forever.

Exodus 17:1

ULT	UST
And all the community of the sons of Israel journeyed from the wilderness of Sin, journeying at the mouth of Yahweh. And they camped at Rephidim, and there was no water for the people to drink.	*Then Yahweh commanded all the Israelites to travel from the wilderness of Sin and camp at a place called Rephidim, and they did. However, there was no water there for the people to drink.*

ULT And all the community of the sons of Israel journeyed
UST Then … all the Israelites … travel … and they did
(וַיִּסְעוּ כָּל־עֲדַת בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל)

A new scene begins here, which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT Sin
UST Sin
(סִ֣ין)

The word **Sin** here is the Hebrew name of the wilderness. It is not the English word "sin." See how you translated this in Exodus 16:1.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT at the mouth of Yahweh
UST Yahweh commanded … to
(עַל־פִּ֣י יְהוָ֔ה)

Here, **mouth** refers to Yahweh's commands (that is, what he says to do). If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [at the command of Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT at Rephidim
UST at a place called Rephidim
(בִּרְפִידִֽים)

Rephidim means "the resting place," a place to rest on long journeys through the wilderness.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the community of	the Israelites
Israel	the Israelites

ULT	UST
from the wilderness of Yahweh	from the wilderness of Yahweh

Exodus 17:2

ULT	UST
And the people quarreled with Moses, and they said, "Give us water to drink." And Moses said to them, "Why are you quarreling with me? Why do you test Yahweh?"	*So the people complained to Moses again, saying, "Give us water to drink!" Moses replied to them, "You should not quarrel with me! You should not test Yahweh!"*

ULT **Why are you quarreling with me? Why do you test Yahweh**
UST You should not quarrel with me! You should not test Yahweh
(מַה־תְּרִיבוּן עִמָּדִי מַה־תְּנַסּוּן אֶת־יְהוָה)

Moses uses these questions to scold the people. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [Why are you speaking against me? And why are you trying to test whether Yahweh is able to give you what you need?]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses again
Moses	Moses
do you test	You should not test Yahweh
Yahweh	You should not test Yahweh

Exodus 17:3

ULT	UST
And the people were thirsty for water there, and the people murmured against Moses. And he said, "Is this why you brought us up from Egypt? To kill me and my sons and my cattle, with thirst?"	*But the people were very thirsty, and they continued to complain to Moses. They were saying, "You only brought us out here to kill us and our children and cattle by not letting us have any water to drink!"*

ULT **Is this why you brought us up from Egypt? To kill me and my sons and my cattle, with thirst**

UST You only brought us out here to kill us and our children and cattle by not letting us have any water to drink

(לָמָּה זֶּה הֶעֱלִיתָנוּ מִמִּצְרַיִם לְהָמִית אֹתִי וְאֶת־בָּנַי וְאֶת־מִקְנַי בַּצָּמָא)

The people use this question to accuse Moses of wanting to kill them. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [Why did you bring us up out of Egypt? Did you bring us here to cause us and our children and animals to die because we have no water to drink?]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
from Egypt	You only brought us out here to kill us and our children and cattle by not letting us have any water to drink
my cattle	You only brought us out here to kill us and our children and cattle by not letting us have any water to drink

Exodus 17:4

ULT	UST
And Moses cried out to Yahweh, saying, "What should I do for this people? A little longer and they will stone me."	*So Moses prayed to Yahweh. He said, "How shall I deal with these people? They are almost ready {to kill me} by throwing stones {at me}!"*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
And … cried out	So … prayed
Yahweh	Yahweh
and they will stone me	They are … to kill me} by throwing stones {at me}

Exodus 17:5

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Pass before the face of the people, and take with you some of the elders of Israel, and your staff, the one with which you struck the river, take in your hand; and go.	*Yahweh said to Moses, "Lead the people and walk in front of them. Take some of the elders of the Israelite people with you. Carry in your hand the staff you used to strike the Nile River.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
some of the elders of	some of the elders of
Israel	the Israelite people
and your staff	the staff
the river	the Nile River

Exodus 17:6

ULT	UST
Behold me! I will stand before your face there on the rock at Horeb. And you will strike on the rock, and water will come from it, and the people will drink." And Moses did so in the eyes of the elders of Israel.	*Watch me! I will stand in front of you on top of a large rock at the foot of Mount Sinai. Strike the rock with your stick. When you do that, water for the people to drink will flow out of the rock." Moses did what God had said, and the elders saw it happen.*

ULT **before your face**
UST in front of you
(לְפָנֶיךָ)

Here, **before your face** means "in front of you."

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
the elders of	the elders
Israel	the elders

Exodus 17:7

ULT	UST
And he called the name of the place Massah and Meribah, for the conflict of the sons of Israel and for their testing of Yahweh by saying, "Is Yahweh among us or not?"	*Moses named that place both Masseh (because the Israelites tested Yahweh by questioning if he was really able to help them or not) and Meribah (because they were complaining all the time to him).*

ULT **Massah**
UST Masseh
(מַסָּה)

Massah is a place in the desert whose name means "testing" in Hebrew.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and Meribah**
UST and Meribah
(וּמְרִיבָה)

Meribah is a place in the desert whose name means "complaining" in Hebrew.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **or not**
UST or not
(אִם־אָיִן)

In some languages it may be unnatural to explicitly have the negative option included in this question or to have it at the end. It may be omitted or relocated in the question if that is the case.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And he called	Moses named
Israel	the Israelites … they
their testing of	tested
Yahweh	Yahweh
Yahweh	he

Exodus 17:8

ULT	UST
And Amalek came and fought with Israel at Rephidim.	*Then the people of Amalek came and fought against the Israelite people at Rephidim.*

ULT **And Amalek came**
UST Then the people of Amalek came
(וַיָּבֹא עֲמָלֵק)

A new scene begins here which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **Amalek … Israel**
UST the people of Amalek … the Israelite people
(עֲמָלֵק & יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Amalek and **Israel** both refer to the nations (people groups) descended from that individual by simply using the name of the ancestor. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the Amalekites … the Israelites]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Amalek … Israel**
UST the people of Amalek … the Israelite people
(עֲמָלֵק & יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Amalek and **Israel** are both collective nouns that refer to the nations (people groups) descended from that individual. If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. Alternate translation: [the Amalekites … the Israelites]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **Amalek**
UST the people of Amalek
(עֲמָלֵק)

Amalek or the Amalekites are a completely new participant in the story. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new character.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

> ULT **at Rephidim**
> UST at Rephidim
> (בִּרְפִידִֽם)

Rephidim was the name of a place in the desert.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Amalek	the people of Amalek
Israel	the Israelite people

Exodus 17:9

ULT	UST
And Moses said to Joshua, "Choose men for us and go out. Fight with Amalek. Tomorrow I will be stationed on top of the hill, and the staff of God will be in my hand."	*Moses said to Joshua, "Choose some men to go out and fight against the people of Amalek tomorrow. I will stand on the top of the hill, holding the staff that God told me to carry."*

ULT **Joshua**
UST Joshua
(יְהוֹשֻׁעַ)

Joshua is a completely new participant in the story. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new character. Later he becomes a major character, but not really in the book of Exodus.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Joshua	Joshua
with Amalek	against the people of Amalek
and the staff of	the staff that
God	God

Exodus 17:10

ULT	UST
And Joshua did as Moses said to him, to fight Amalek. And Moses, Aaron, and Hur climbed up to the top of the hill.	*So Joshua obeyed Moses. He {took some men} to fight against the people of Amalek. {While they were fighting,} Moses, Aaron, and Hur went up to the top of the hill {so that they could see the whole battle area}.*

ULT **And Joshua did as Moses said to him, to fight Amalek**
UST So Joshua obeyed Moses. He {took some men} to fight against the people of Amalek
(וַיַּעַשׂ יְהוֹשֻׁעַ כַּאֲשֶׁר אָמַר־לוֹ מֹשֶׁה לְהִלָּחֵם בַּעֲמָלֵק)

Joshua represents himself and the Israelites that he led into battle. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And, as Moses instructed, Joshua and the men he chose fought against the Amalekites]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **and Hur**
UST and Hur
(וְחוּר)

Hur was the name of a man.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and Hur**
UST and Hur
(וְחוּר)

Hur is a new participant in the story, which you may need to point out in your translation. However, he is a very minor character. He only appears in this passage and once much later in the book, so you may not need to highlight him at all.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joshua	Joshua
Moses	Moses
Amalek	against the people of Amalek
And Moses	{While they were fighting,} Moses
Aaron	Aaron

Exodus 17:11

ULT	UST
And so it was, when Moses raised his hand, then Israel would be winning, and when he set his hand down, then Amalek would be winning.	*Then this happened: Whenever Moses lifted up his arms, the Israelite men started to win the battle; whenever he lowered his arms, the Amalekite army started to win.*

ULT then Israel would be winning … then Amalek would be winning
UST the Israelite men started to win the battle … the Amalekite army started to win
(וְגָבַר יִשְׂרָאֵל & וְגָבַר עֲמָלֵק)

The words **Israel** and **Amalek** represent the fighters from those groups. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the Israelite fighters were winning … the Amalekite fighters would begin to win]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Israel	the Israelite men
Amalek	the Amalekite army

Exodus 17:12

ULT	UST
And the hands of Moses became heavy. And they took a stone and put it under him, and he sat on it, and Aaron and Hur held his hands up, one from this, and one from that. And so his hands were steady until the sun went down.	*But Moses' arms became tired. So Aaron and Hur brought a large stone for him to sit on. While he was sitting on it, those two held up his arms, one man on either side of him. In that way, they kept his arms lifted up until the sun went down.*

ULT **And the hands of Moses became heavy**
UST But Moses' arms became tired
(וְיָדֵי מֹשֶׁה כְּבֵדִים)

The author writes of Moses' arms becoming tired as if his **hands became heavy**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And Moses' arms became tired]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **one from this, and one from that**
UST one man on either side of him
(מִזֶּה אֶחָד וּמִזֶּה אֶחָד)

Alternate translation: [one on one side, and one on the other]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
and Aaron	Aaron

Exodus 17:13

ULT	UST
And Joshua defeated Amalek and his people with the edge of the sword.	*In this way Joshua and the men with him defeated the Amalekite king and his army in battle.*

ULT with the edge of the sword
UST in battle
(לְפִי־חָרֶב)

The **sword** represents battle. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in combat]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joshua	Joshua and the men with him
Amalek	the Amalekite king
the sword	in battle

Exodus 17:14

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Write this memory in the book and put it in the ears of Joshua, because I will certainly blot out the memory of Amalek from under the skies."	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Write an account of this battle and then read it to Joshua. Also write that I will so completely destroy the people of Amalek that no one in the world will remember who they were."*

ULT **I will certainly blot out the memory of Amalek**
UST I will so completely destroy the people of Amalek that … will remember who they were
(מָחֹה אֶמְחֶה אֶת־זֵכֶר עֲמָלֵק)

God speaks of destroying Amalek as if he were removing people's memory of Amalek. When a group of people is completely destroyed, there is nothing to remind people about them. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I will completely destroy Amalek]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Amalek**
UST the people of Amalek
(עֲמָלֵק)

The Amalekites are referred to by naming their ancestor. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [Amalekites]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **from under the skies**
UST no one in the world
(מִתַּחַת הַשָּׁמָיִם)

This phrase makes an intentionally broad image and represents all people everywhere. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from all people everywhere]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Joshua	Joshua

ULT	UST
I will … blot out the skies	I will so completely destroy … that no one in the world

Exodus 17:15

ULT	UST
And Moses built an altar, and he called its name "Yahweh is my banner."	*Then Moses built a stone altar there and named it "Yahweh is my flag."*

ULT is my banner
UST is my flag
(נִסִּי)

A **banner** is something lifted up high, perhaps like a flag, that people can see from a distance and follow. Alternate translation: [is my military standard] or [is my guidon]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
an altar	a stone altar
and he called	and named it
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 17:16

ULT	UST
And he said, "Because a hand was against the throne of Yah, war is to Yahweh against Amalek from generation to generation."	*He said, "Because they fought against him, Yahweh will fight against the people of Amalek forever!"*

ULT Because a hand was against the throne of Yah
UST Because they fought against him
(כִּי־יָד֙ עַל־כֵּ֣ס יָ֔הּ)

The Hebrew here is very difficult, and there are a variety of opinions regarding the meaning. Questions include: (1) Whose hand is referred to? Amalek's, Yahweh's, or Moses'? (2) What is the hand on (or against)? Yahweh's throne or banner? (3) What is the meaning of the Hebrew preposition meaning on, against, or above? What does that signify? Rebellion, or taking an oath, or holding onto a symbol of power? If there is another translation in your region, it may be best to simply follow the interpretation it gives. Alternate translation: [Because a hand was on the throne of Yah] or [Because a hand was on the banner of Yah]

ULT war is to Yahweh against Amalek
UST Yahweh will fight against the people of Amalek
(מִלְחָמָ֥ה לַיהוָ֖ה בַּעֲמָלֵ֑ק)

This phrase has no verbs in Hebrew. You may need to translate the noun **war** as a verb. Alternate translation: [Yahweh will make war with Amalek] or [Yahweh will war against Amalek]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yah	they fought against him
to Yahweh	Yahweh
against Amalek	against the people of Amalek
from generation	forever
to generation	forever

Exodus 18

Exodus 18 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–12: Jethro visits Moses and hears all that Yahweh has done
- v. 13–27: Jethro observes Moses and advises him to set up a subsidiarity leadership structure; Moses does so

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Leadership lessons

Jethro taught Moses an important leadership lesson in this chapter. Many scholars look at this chapter for important leadership lessons. Moses delegated some of his responsibilities to other godly men so that he would not become worn out by all the demands made of him. (See: godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Order of events

The timing of the events in 18:2 is not clear and, whatever their timing, may be difficult to translate. The question: Is Jethro's **taking** Zipporah related to the past event of Moses sending her back to him at some otherwise unmentioned point in time, or is Jethro's **taking** related to his coming to meet Moses in 18:5.

Verse 11

18:11 is difficult in the original and requires interpretation.

God and Yahweh

In this chapter, God, who is named Yahweh in much of the rest of the book, is mostly referred to as God instead of by his name as is usual. Translations should not suggest that they are not different beings.

Kinship: Father-in-law

Jethro is the father of Moses' wife. Some languages may make a distinction between that and a woman's father-in-law. If that is the case, note it in verses: 1–2, 5–8, 12, 14–15, 17, 24, and 27. (See: Kinship)

Participant reference

Jethro is often referred to simply as the father-in-law of Moses in this chapter. He is also named explicitly (referred to by name) an unusually high number of times (it would be more usual to have more pronouns referring to him). Frequent use of his name is likely to emphasize his familial ties and authority (or honored status). Some languages may need to alter the way he is referred to for naturalness or to convey the same sense of familial ties and authority (or honored status).

Exodus 18:1

ULT	UST
And Jethro, the priest of Midian, father-in-law of Moses, heard all that God had done for Moses and for Israel his people; that Yahweh brought Israel out from Egypt.	*Jethro, who was the priest for the people of Midian, and who was also Moses' father-in-law, heard about all that God had done for Moses and for God's people, the Israelites. He heard about how Yahweh had brought them out of Egypt.*

ULT **father-in-law of Moses**
UST and who was also Moses' father-in-law
(חֹתֵן מֹשֶׁה)

The label, **father-in-law of Moses** refers to the father of the wife of Moses. If your language uses a different term for a man's father-in-law than for a woman's father-in-law, choose the appropriate one here. Note the use of this term also in verses: 2, 5–8, 12, 14–15, 17, 24, and 27. Alternate translation: [the father of the wife of Moses]

Support Reference: Kinship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jethro	Jethro
the priest of	who was the priest for the people of
Midian	Midian
Moses	Moses
God	God
for Moses	for Moses
and for Israel	and for … the Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	them
from Egypt	out of Egypt

Exodus 18:2

ULT	UST
And Jethro, father-in-law of Moses, took Zipporah, wife of Moses, after he had sent her back,	*Moses had sent his wife Zipporah {and his two sons} back home {when he was returning to Egypt}. So when Jethro, Moses' father-in-law, came to him, he brought her*

ULT And Jethro, father-in-law of Moses, took Zipporah, wife of Moses

UST Moses … his wife Zipporah … So when Jethro, Moses' father-in-law, came to him, he brought her

(וַיִּקַּח יִתְרוֹ חֹתֵן מֹשֶׁה אֶת־צִפֹּרָה אֵשֶׁת מֹשֶׁה)

This could mean: (1) Jethro took Zipporah to Moses, or (2) Jethro had earlier welcomed back Zipporah.

ULT after he had sent her back

UST had sent … and his two sons} back home {when he was returning to Egypt}

(אַחַר שִׁלּוּחֶיהָ)

This is something Moses had done earlier. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [after Moses had sent her home to her father]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jethro	Jethro … he
Moses	Moses
Moses	Moses … his

Exodus 18:3

ULT	UST
and her two sons; one of whose names was Gershom, for he had said, "I have been a sojourner in a foreign land."	*and her sons. One son's name was Gershom, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means "foreigner," because Moses had said, "I have been a foreigner living in another land."*

ULT and her two sons
UST and her sons
(וְאֶת שְׁנֵי בָנֶיהָ)

This is the ending of the sentence that begins with the words **Jethro … took Zipporah** in 18:2. This could mean: (1) Jethro took Zipporah and her two sons to Moses, or (2) Jethro had earlier welcomed back Zipporah and her two sons.

ULT was Gershom
UST Gershom, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means "foreigner
(גֵּרְשֹׁם)

Gershom is a son of Moses and Zipporah; his name means "foreigner." See 2:22.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a sojourner	a foreigner
foreign	another
in a … land	living in … land

Exodus 18:4

ULT	UST
And the name of the other was Eliezer, for "The God of my father was my helper. And he rescued me from the sword of Pharaoh."	*Her other son's name was Eliezer, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means "God helps me," because Moses had said, "God, whom my father worshiped, has helped me and saved me from the king of Egypt killing me."*

ULT **was Eliezer**
UST Eliezer, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means "God helps me
(אֱלִיעֶזֶר)

Eliezer is a son of Moses and Zipporah; his name means "God is the one who helps me."

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **from the sword of Pharaoh**
UST from the king of Egypt killing me
(מֶחֶרֶב פַּרְעֹה)

The phrase **from the sword of Pharaoh** represents being killed by Pharaoh or Pharaoh's army. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from being killed by Pharaoh] or [from being killed by Pharaoh's army]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The God of	God, whom
And he rescued me	and saved me
Pharaoh	the king of Egypt

Exodus 18:5

ULT	UST
And Jethro, the father-in-law of Moses, came, and his sons and his wife, to Moses, to the wilderness where he was camping, at the mountain of God.	*While Moses {and the Israelites} camped in the wilderness near {Sinai}, God's {holy} mountain, Jethro (Moses's father-in-law) came to him, bringing along Moses' wife and two sons.*

ULT **and his sons**
UST and two sons
(וּבָנָיו)

Alternate translation: [with his sons]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jethro	Jethro
Moses	Moses's
Moses	him
the wilderness	in the wilderness
God	near {Sinai}, God's {holy} mountain

Exodus 18:6

ULT	UST
And he said to Moses, “I, your father-in-law Jethro, am coming to you, and your wife, and her two sons with her.”	*Jethro had sent a message to Moses, “I, your father-in-law, Jethro, am coming to see you. I am bringing your wife and her two sons!”*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Jethro	Jethro

Exodus 18:7

ULT	UST
And Moses went out to meet his father-in-law, and he bowed down and kissed him. And they asked, each man his friend, of their welfare, and they went into the tent.	*So Moses went out {of the campsite} to meet his father-in-law. He bowed before him and kissed him {on the cheek}. They both asked each other, "Have you been well?" Then they went into {Moses'} tent.*

ULT and he bowed down and kissed him

UST He bowed before him and kissed him {on the cheek}

(וַיִּשְׁתַּחוּ וַיִּשַּׁק־לוֹ)

These were symbolic acts that were the normal way that people showed great respect and devotion in that culture. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
and he bowed down	He bowed before
and kissed	and kissed … on the cheek

Exodus 18:8

ULT	UST
And Moses related to his father-in-law all that Yahweh had done to Pharaoh and to Egypt on account of Israel, all the hardship that found them along the way, and of Yahweh rescuing them.	*Moses told Jethro everything that Yahweh had done to the king {and all the other people in Egypt} in order to help the Israelite people. He also told him about the troubles they had experienced on the way, and about how Yahweh had helped them.*

ULT **on account of Israel**
UST in order to help the Israelite people
(עַל אוֹדֹת יִשְׂרָאֵל)

The word **Israel** represents the Israelite people. Alternate translation: [in order to help the Israelite people]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **all the hardship that found them**
UST also … about the troubles they had experienced
(אֵת כָּל־הַתְּלָאָה אֲשֶׁר מְצָאָתַם)

Moses writes of **hardships** happening to them as if hardships had discovered where they were. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [all the hardships that had happened to them] or [how they had many hard experiences]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses … He
Yahweh	Yahweh
to Pharaoh	to the king
and to Egypt	and all the other people in Egypt
Israel	help the Israelite people
the hardship	the troubles they had experienced
of Yahweh	Yahweh
and … rescuing them	and about how … had helped them

Exodus 18:9

ULT	UST
And Jethro rejoiced over all the good that Yahweh had done for Israel, whom he rescued from the hand of Egypt.	*Jethro praised Yahweh when he heard that Yahweh had rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and had been very good to them.*

ULT from the hand of Egypt
UST from slavery in Egypt
(מִיַּד מִצְרָיִם)

The hand represents the power of someone to do something. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from the power of the Egyptians] or [from what the Egyptians were doing to them]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jethro	Jethro
And … rejoiced	praised Yahweh when he heard
the good	and had been very good to them
Yahweh	Yahweh
for Israel	the Israelites
he rescued	had rescued
Egypt	from slavery in Egypt

Exodus 18:10

ULT	UST
And Jethro said, "Bless Yahweh, who rescued you out of the hand of Egypt and out of the hand of Pharaoh, who rescued the people from under the hand of Egypt.	*He said, "Praise Yahweh, who has rescued you from the powerful Egyptian {army} and from the powerful Egyptian king and has set the Israelites free from the control of the Egyptians!*

ULT **out of the hand of Egypt and out of the hand of Pharaoh … from under the hand of Egypt**

UST from the powerful Egyptian {army} and from the powerful Egyptian king … from the control of the Egyptians

(מִיַּד מִצְרַיִם וּמִיַּד פַּרְעֹה & מִתַּחַת יַד־מִצְרָיִם)

The hand represents the power of someone to do something. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from the power of the Egyptians and from the power of Pharaoh … from the power of the Egyptians] or [from what the Egyptians and Pharaoh were doing to you … from what the Egyptians were doing to you]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jethro	He
Bless	Praise
Yahweh	Yahweh
rescued	rescued
Egypt	Egyptian {army}
Pharaoh	Egyptian king
rescued	and has set … free
Egypt	the Egyptians

Exodus 18:11

ULT	UST
Now I know that Yahweh is greater than all the gods, because of the affair {in} which they acted proudly against them."	*Now I know that Yahweh is greater than all other gods, because he rescued the Israelites from their proud enemies."*

ULT **because of the affair**
UST because he rescued
(כִּי בַדָּבָר)

Here, **because of the matter** probably refers back to Yahweh's rescue of Israel. Alternate translation: [because of what he did]

ULT **{in} which they acted proudly against them**
UST he rescued the Israelites from their proud enemies
(אֲשֶׁר זָדוּ עֲלֵיהֶם)

The most natural referent for **they** is **the gods**, who, perhaps through their agents (Pharaoh and the Egyptians), fought against Yahweh and oppressed the Israelites (**them**). This would connect back to Exodus 12:12 where Yahweh declares that he is bringing judgment on the gods of Egypt. You may need to make some part of this explicit. Alternate translation: [in which they proudly fought Yahweh by oppressing Israel]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I know	I know
Yahweh	Yahweh
the gods	gods
they acted proudly	the Israelites from their proud enemies

Exodus 18:12

ULT	UST
And Jethro, the father-in-law of Moses, took a burnt offering and sacrifices to God. And Aaron came, and all of the elders of Israel, to eat bread before the face of God with the father-in-law of Moses.	*Then Jethro (who was Moses' father-in-law) brought a burnt offering and other sacrifices for God. Aaron and the Israelite elders came and ate a meal with Moses' father-in-law to honor God.*

ULT **before the face of God**
UST to honor God
(לִפְנֵי הָאֱלֹהִים)

Here, **face** represents the presence of God. In this case it likely means that this was a worship event. Alternate translation: [in the presence of God]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jethro	Jethro
Moses	Moses
a burnt offering	a burnt offering
and sacrifices	and other sacrifices
to God	for God
Aaron	Aaron
the elders of	and the Israelite elders
Israel	and the Israelite elders
bread	a meal
God	to honor God
Moses	Moses

Exodus 18:13

ULT	UST
And so it happened the next day that Moses sat down to judge the people. And the people stood around Moses from morning until evening.	*The next day, Moses sat down at the place where he settled disputes among the people. The people asked Moses to judge their disputes from the morning until the evening.*

ULT And so it happened the next day
UST The next day
(וַיְהִי֙ מִמָּחֳרָ֔ת)

A new scene begins here, which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT that Moses sat down to judge
UST Moses sat down at the place where he settled disputes
(וַיֵּ֥שֶׁב מֹשֶׁ֖ה לִשְׁפֹּ֣ט)

Sitting was symbolic of having a position of authority. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [Moses sat down as a judge]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT from morning until evening
UST from the morning until the evening
(מִן־הַבֹּ֖קֶר עַד־הָעָֽרֶב)

Alternate translation: [all day]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
to judge	at the place where he settled disputes
Moses	Moses

Exodus 18:14

ULT	UST
And the father-in-law of Moses was watching all that he did for the people, and he said, "What is this thing that you are doing with the people? For what purpose do you sit alone, and all the people position themselves next to you from morning until evening?"	*When Jethro saw everything that Moses was doing for the people, he said, "Do not lead the people this way. You should not sit here alone letting everyone demand that you judge for them all day!"*

ULT **What is this thing that you are doing with the people**
UST Do not lead the people this way
(מָה־הַדָּבָר הַזֶּה אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה עֹשֶׂה לָעָם)

Jethro uses this question to show Moses that what he was doing was not good. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [You should not be doing all of this for the people!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **For what purpose do you sit alone, and all the people position themselves next to you from morning until evening**
UST You should not sit here alone letting everyone demand that you judge for them all day
(מַדּוּעַ אַתָּה יוֹשֵׁב לְבַדֶּךָ וְכָל־הָעָם נִצָּב עָלֶיךָ מִן־בֹּקֶר עַד־עָרֶב)

Jethro used this question to show Moses that he was doing too much. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [Why are you doing all this for the people? Why are you doing this by yourself, and why are all the people standing around you from morning until evening, asking you to make decisions for them?]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **do you sit alone**
UST You should not sit here alone
(אַתָּה יוֹשֵׁב לְבַדֶּךָ)

The word **sit** here is a metonym for "judge." Judges would sit while they listened to people's complaints. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [do you judge alone] or [are you the only one who judges the people]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **position themselves next to you**
UST letting everyone demand that you judge for them all day
(נִצָּב עָלֶיךָ)

The people came to be near Moses so that they could get a chance for him to hear their petitions. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [petition you]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses

Exodus 18:15

ULT	UST
And Moses said to his father-in-law, "Because the people come to me to inquire of God.	*Moses replied to his father-in-law, "I am doing this because the people keep coming to me to find out what God desires.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
to inquire of	to find out
God	what God desires

Exodus 18:16

ULT	UST
When a situation comes up among them, someone comes to me. And I judge between a man and his associate, and I help them understand the statutes of God and his laws.”	*When they cannot agree about something, they come to me, and they ask me to decide which of them is right. When I decide, I also explain to them how God’s laws and instructions apply in that situation.”*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And I judge	and they ask me to decide … is right. When I decide
and I help them understand	I also explain to them
the statutes of	how God’s laws and instructions apply in that situation
God	how God’s laws and instructions apply in that situation
his laws	how God’s laws and instructions apply in that situation

Exodus 18:17

ULT	UST
And the father-in-law of Moses said to him, “The thing which you are doing is not good.	*Jethro said to him, “What you are doing is not beneficial.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Jethro
is … good	is … beneficial

Exodus 18:18

ULT	UST
You will certainly wear yourself out, both you and also these people who are with you, because the thing is too heavy for you. You are not able to do it alone.	*You and these people will wear yourselves out! This work is too much for you. You are not able to do it by yourself.*

ULT You will certainly wear yourself out
UST will wear yourselves out
(נָבֵל תִּבֹּל)

Alternate translation: [You will surely make yourself very tired]

ULT is too heavy for you
UST is too much for you
(כָּבֵד מִמְּךָ)

Jethro speaks of the hard work that Moses is doing as if it were a physical burden that Moses was carrying. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [is too hard for you]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
is … heavy	is … much

Exodus 18:19

ULT	UST
Now, listen to my voice. I will advise you, and God will be with you. You be before God for the people, and you should bring their disputes to God yourself.	*Now listen to what I will tell you to do. If you do what I suggest, God will help you. You should continue to represent the people to God and tell him about the people's disputes.*

ULT **I will advise you**
UST to what I will tell you to do … what I suggest
(אִיָּעֲצָךְ)

Alternate translation: [I will guide you] or [I will instruct you]

ULT **and God will be with you**
UST If you do … God will help you
(וִיהִי אֱלֹהִים עִמָּךְ)

Jethro speaks of God helping Moses as if God would be with Moses. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God will help you] or [God will give you wisdom]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and you should bring their disputes to God yourself**
UST You … and tell him about the people's disputes
(וְהֵבֵאתָ אַתָּה אֶת־הַדְּבָרִים אֶל־הָאֱלֹהִים)

Jethro speaks of Moses telling God about their disputes as if they were something that Moses was bringing to God. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and you tell God about their disputes] or and [you tell God what they are arguing about]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I will advise you	to what I will tell you to do … what I suggest
God	God
God	to God
God	him

Exodus 18:20

ULT	UST
And you should teach them the statutes and the laws. And you should cause them to know the way they should walk in and the work that they should do.	*You should also teach them God's law and instructions. You should also explain to them how they should act and the things that they should do.*

ULT And you should cause them to know the way they should walk in
UST You should also explain to them how they should act
(וְהוֹדַעְתָּ לָהֶם אֶת־הַדֶּרֶךְ יֵלְכוּ בָהּ)

Jethro speaks of living or behaving like walking. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [You must show them how to live] or [You must show them how to behave]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the statutes	God's law
the laws	instructions
And you should cause … to know	You should also explain
the work	the things

Exodus 18:21

ULT	UST
And you yourself should search out from all of the people men of ability, fearers of God, men of faithfulness, haters of dishonest profit. And you should appoint over them: leaders of thousands, leaders of hundreds, leaders of fifties, and leaders of tens.	*In addition, you should find some capable Israelite men to help you. Choose men who respect God, who are trustworthy, and who will not accept bribes. Appoint some of them to make decisions for groups of ten people, some for groups of fifty people, some for groups of a hundred people, and some for groups of a thousand people.*

ULT **And you yourself should search out**
UST In addition, you should find … Choose
(וְאַתָּה תֶחֱזֶה)

Alternate translation: [As for you, search out] or [You must also search out]

ULT **And you should appoint over them**
UST to help you … Appoint … to make decisions
(וְשַׂמְתָּ עֲלֵהֶם)

Jethro speaks of giving them authority over people as putting them over people. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [You should select leaders for the people]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And you should appoint over them**
UST to help you … Appoint … to make decisions
(וְשַׂמְתָּ עֲלֵהֶם)

Here, **them** refers to the Israelites. Moses is advised to place good men in charge of groups of Israelites. Alternate translation: [And you must appoint these men over the Israelites]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **leaders of thousands, leaders of hundreds, leaders of fifties, and leaders of tens**
UST some of them … for groups of ten people, some for groups of fifty people, some for groups of a hundred people, and some for groups of a thousand people
(שָׂרֵי אֲלָפִים שָׂרֵי מֵאוֹת שָׂרֵי חֲמִשִּׁים וְשָׂרֵי עֲשָׂרֹת)

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of people in each group. Alternate translation: [leaders in charge of groups of 1,000 people, groups of 100 people, groups of 50 people, and groups of 10 people] or (2) these numbers are not exact, but represent groups of people of various sizes. Alternate translation: [leaders in charge of very small groups, small groups, large groups, and very large groups]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
fearers of	men who respect God
God	men who respect God
faithfulness	who are trustworthy
And you should appoint	to help you … Appoint
leaders of	and some for groups of a thousand people
leaders of	some for groups of a hundred people
leaders of	some for groups of fifty people
and leaders of	some of them … for groups of ten people

Exodus 18:22

ULT	UST
And they will judge the people at all times. And so it will be, every great situation they will bring to you, and every small situation they will judge themselves. And you must lighten {this thing} from on you! And they will carry alongside you.	*Allow them to settle disputes for the people usually. It should work like this: The difficult matters they can bring to you, but the matters that are simple, they can decide themselves. Do this to make the work easier for you as they help you do that work.*

ULT **every great situation they will bring to you**
UST The difficult matters they can bring to you
(כָּל־הַדָּבָר הַגָּדֹל יָבִיאוּ אֵלֶיךָ)

By **every great situation they will bring to you**, Jethro is recommending that the new leaders should pass the most difficult cases to Moses for him to judge them. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the difficult cases they will tell you about] or [when there are difficult cases, they will tell you about them so you could judge them]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And you must lighten {this thing} from on you! And they will carry alongside you**
UST Do this to make the work easier for you as they help you do that work
(וְהָקֵל מֵעָלֶיךָ וְנָשְׂאוּ אִתָּךְ)

Jethro speaks of the hard work that they would do as if it were something that they would carry beside Moses and make lighter for Moses by helping him. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and lessen your work by having them do the hard work with you] or [and make your work easier by having them help you do the hard work]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And they will judge	Allow them to settle disputes
times	usually
they will judge	they can decide
And they will carry	as they help you do that work

Exodus 18:23

ULT	UST
If you do this thing, and God instructs you, then you will be able to endure, and furthermore, all of this people will go to its place in peace."	*If you do that, you will be able to continue doing what God commands, and all the people will be able to live peacefully with each other."*

ULT **then you will be able to endure**
UST you will be able … continue doing
(וְיָכָלְתָּ֖ עֲמֹ֑ד)

Alternate translation: [then you will not wear yourself out]

ULT **all of this people will go to its place in peace**
UST all the people will be able to live peacefully with each other
(כָּל־הָעָ֣ם הַזֶּ֔ה עַל־מְקֹמ֖וֹ יָבֹ֥א בְשָׁלֽוֹם)

Here, getting **to their place** could mean each person's home tent or it could mean the whole group gets to the promised land. If you cannot leave it ambiguous, it would be best to indicate something like "harmony in the camp." Alternate translation: [all these people will live in harmony]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
in peace	peacefully

Exodus 18:24

ULT	UST
And Moses listened to the voice of his father-in-law and did everything that he had said.	*Moses listened to his father-in-law and did all that Jethro told him.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses

Exodus 18:25

ULT	UST
And Moses chose men of ability from all Israel, and he appointed them heads over the people, leaders of thousands, leaders of hundreds, leaders of fifties, and leaders of tens.	*Then Moses chose capable men from among the Israelite people and made them chiefs over the people, rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens.*

ULT **heads over the people**
UST chiefs over the people
(רָאשִׁים עַל־הָעָם)

Moses writes of the leaders of people as if they were the **head** of a body. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [leaders over the people]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **men of ability**
UST capable men
(אַנְשֵׁי־חַיִל)

If it would be helpful to your readers, what sort of ability they had can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: [men who were able to lead] or [men who were able to judge]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **leaders of thousands, leaders of hundreds, leaders of fifties, and leaders of tens**
UST rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens
(שָׂרֵי אֲלָפִים שָׂרֵי מֵאוֹת שָׂרֵי חֲמִשִּׁים וְשָׂרֵי עֲשָׂרֹת)

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of people in each group. Alternate translation: [leaders in charge of groups of 1,000 people, groups of 100 people, groups of 50 people, and groups of 10 people] or (2) these numbers are not exact, but represent groups of people of various sizes. Alternate translation: [leaders in charge of very small groups, small groups, large groups, and very large groups] See how you translated this in Exodus 18:21.

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Israel	the Israelite people
and he appointed	and made

ULT	UST
leaders of	rulers of
leaders of	rulers of
leaders of	rulers of
and leaders of	and rulers of

Exodus 18:26

ULT	UST
And they judged the people at all times. They brought the difficult situations to Moses, and they judged each small situation themselves.	*They usually settled disputes for the people. They brought the difficult cases to Moses, but they decided the simple cases by themselves.*

ULT And they judged the people at all times
UST They usually settled disputes for the people
(וְשָׁפְטוּ אֶת־הָעָם בְּכָל־עֵת)

Alternate translation: [They judged the people most of the time] or [They judged the people in all regular circumstances]

ULT They brought the difficult situations to Moses
UST They brought the difficult cases to Moses
(אֶת־הַדָּבָר הַקָּשֶׁה יְבִיאוּן אֶל־מֹשֶׁה)

The author writes of telling Moses about the difficult cases as bringing him the difficult cases. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [They told Moses about the difficult cases] or [When there were difficult cases, they told Moses about them so that he would judge them]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT small situation
UST the simple cases
(הַדָּבָר הַקָּטֹן)

Alternate translation: [easy case]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And they judged	They … settled disputes
times	usually
difficult	difficult
Moses	Moses
they judged	they decided

Exodus 18:27

ULT	UST
And Moses let his father-in-law go, and he went into his own land.	*Then Moses said goodbye to his father-in-law, and Jethro returned home.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
land	returned home

Exodus 19

Exodus 19 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter consist of a series of Moses going up Mount Sinai, talking to Yahweh, coming down, and talking to the people. He is being the intermediary, carrying messages between Yahweh and the people.

- v. 1–2: Arrival at Sinai
- v. 3–8: First cycle of Moses going up and down for instruction and response
- v. 9–15: Second cycle, people get ready to hear God
- v. 16–19: God speaks to the people from the mountain
- v. 20–25: Third cycle

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

"A kingdom of priests"

The function of the priests was to intercede for the people. The Levites were the only priests in Israel; this is a metaphor indicating that the nation was to intercede for the world as a whole. They were also to be holy, or set apart, from the rest of the world. (See: priest, priesthood; and Metaphor; and holy, holiness, unholy, sacred)

Revealing the law

The events of this chapter are concerned with preparing the people to receive the law of Moses. The people go through all of this to prepare themselves for the law, which shows the great importance of this event for Israel. (See: law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God)

Boundaries between Yahweh and the people

Moses is told to make the people holy in preparation for meeting Yahweh, then boundaries are set up to keep the people separate from Yahweh, and then the priests

are told to make themselves holy. The theme of a holy separation is beginning to be developed that will become much of the law code.

Exodus 19:1

ULT	UST
In the third month from the people of Israel exiting the land of Egypt, on the same day, they entered the wilderness of Sinai.	*On the first day of the third month after the Israelites left Egypt, they arrived at the wilderness of Sinai.*

ULT In the third month … on the same day
UST On the first day of the third month
(בַּחֹדֶשׁ הַשְּׁלִישִׁי & בַּיּוֹם הַזֶּה)

This means they arrived at the wilderness on the first day of the month just as they left Egypt on the first day of the month. The first day of the third month on the Hebrew calendar is near the middle of May on Western calendars. If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here. Alternate translation: [In the month 3 … on the day 1 of the month]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
In the … month	month
Israel	the Israelites
the land of	Egypt
Egypt	Egypt
on the … day	On the first day of
the wilderness of	at the wilderness of
Sinai	Sinai

Exodus 19:2

ULT	UST
And they departed from Rephidim, and they entered the wilderness of Sinai, and they camped in the wilderness. And Israel camped there in front of the mountain.	*After they left Rephidim, they came to the wilderness of Sinai, and they set up their tents at the base of the mountain.*

ULT from Rephidim
UST Rephidim
(מֵרְפִידִֹם)

Rephidim is an area on the edge of the wilderness of Sinai where the people of Israel had been camping. See how you translated this name in Exodus 17:1.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the wilderness of	the wilderness of
Sinai	Sinai
in the wilderness	the wilderness of
Israel	and they set up

Exodus 19:3

ULT	UST
And Moses went up to God, and Yahweh called to him from the mountain, saying, "Thus you shall speak to the house of Jacob, and you shall tell the sons of Israel:	*Moses climbed up {the mountain to talk} with God. Yahweh called to him from {the top} of the mountain and said, "This is what I want you to say to the Israelite people, the descendants of Jacob,*

ULT you shall speak to the house of Jacob, and you shall tell the sons of Israel
UST I want you to say to the Israelite people, the descendants of Jacob
(תֹּאמַר֙ לְבֵ֣ית יַעֲקֹ֔ב וְתַגִּ֖יד לִבְנֵ֥י יִשְׂרָאֵֽל)

These two phrases have exactly the same meaning. This may be for poetic effect, as Yahweh's statement here through 19:6 is somewhat artfully crafted. You may need to use a strategy other than parallelism to achieve a similar poetic effect in your language.

Support Reference: Parallelism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And Moses	Moses
God	God
Yahweh	Yahweh
and … called	called
to the house of	the descendants of Jacob
Jacob	the descendants of Jacob
Israel	the Israelite people

Exodus 19:4

ULT	UST
‘You yourselves saw what I did to the Egyptians, how I carried you on the wings of eagles and brought you to myself.	*‘You have seen what I did to the Egyptians. You have seen what I did for you and how I brought you here to me as if I had carried you on top of eagles’ wings.*

ULT You yourselves saw
UST You have seen
(אַתֶּם רְאִיתֶם)

The word **you** here refers to the Israelites. Yahweh is telling Moses what to tell the Israelites. If your language has a plural form of you, you would need it here.

Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural

ULT how I carried you on the wings of eagles
UST You have seen what I did for you … as if I had carried you on top of eagles’ wings
(וָאֶשָּׂא אֶתְכֶם עַל־כַּנְפֵי נְשָׁרִים)

God speaks of caring for his people while they traveled as if he were an eagle and carried them on his **wings**. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [how I helped you travel like an eagle that carries her babies on her wings]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to the Egyptians	to the Egyptians

Exodus 19:5

ULT	UST
And now, if you listen intently to my voice and keep my covenant, then you will be my possession from among all peoples. For all the earth is mine,	*Therefore, if you very carefully do what I tell you to do and obey all that I require in what we agreed by swearing to, you will be my own people. You will be my personal property from among all of the nations. Although all the earth is mine,*

ULT to my voice
UST what I tell you to do
(בְּקֹלִי)

God's voice represents what he says. Alternate translation: [to what I say] or [to my words]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT and keep my covenant
UST and obey all that I require in what we agreed by swearing to
(וּשְׁמַרְתֶּם אֶת־בְּרִיתִי)

Alternate translation: [and do what my covenant requires you to do]

ULT possession
UST my own people … my personal property
(סְגֻלָּה)

Alternate translation: [treasure]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
my covenant	in what we agreed by swearing to
possession	my own people … my personal property
the earth	the earth

Exodus 19:6

ULT	UST
and you yourselves will be my kingdom of priests and holy nation.' These are the words that you shall speak to the sons of Israel."	*you will be my priestly kingdom and a nation dedicated to me.' That is what you must tell the Israelites."*

ULT my kingdom of priests
UST my priestly kingdom
(לִי מַמְלֶכֶת כֹּהֲנִים)

God speaks of his people as if they were **priests**. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [my kingdom of people who are like priests] or [my kingdom of people who do what priests do]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kingdom of	kingdom
priests	priestly
holy	and a nation dedicated to me
and … nation	and a nation dedicated to me
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 19:7

ULT	UST
And Moses came and summoned the elders of the people. And he set before their faces all these words that Yahweh had commanded him.	*So Moses went down the mountain and called the elders of the people. He told them everything that Yahweh had told him to tell them.*

ULT And he set before their faces all these words
UST He told them everything
(וַיָּשֶׂם לִפְנֵיהֶם אֵת כָּל־הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה)

Moses setting the words before them means that he was telling people things. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he told them all these words]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT before their faces
UST them
(לִפְנֵיהֶם)

Here, **face** means the person. Alternate translation: [before them]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT all these words that Yahweh had commanded him
UST He told … everything that Yahweh had told him to tell them
(אֵת כָּל־הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר צִוָּהוּ יְהוָה)

Alternate translation: [all that Yahweh had commanded him]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
and summoned	and called
the elders	the elders of
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 19:8

ULT	UST
And all the people responded together, and they said, "We will do everything that Yahweh has said." And Moses brought the words of the people back to Yahweh.	*The people all said, "We will do everything that Yahweh has told us to do." Then Moses climbed back up the mountain and reported to Yahweh what the people had said.*

ULT **And Moses brought the words of the people back**
UST Then Moses climbed back up the mountain and reported … what the people had said
(וַיָּשֶׁב מֹשֶׁה אֶת־דִּבְרֵי הָעָם)

If it would be helpful to your readers, where Moses went can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: [Moses went back up the mountain to report the words of the people]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the words of the people**
UST what the people had said
(אֶת־דִּבְרֵי הָעָם)

Here, **words** refers to what the people said. Alternate translation: [what the people said]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 19:9

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Look, I will come to you in a thick cloud so that the people may hear when I speak with you and may also trust in you forever." And Moses told the words of the people to Yahweh.	*Then Yahweh said to Moses "Listen carefully. I will come to you from inside a thick cloud. When I am speaking to you, the people will hear it, and they will always believe that you are their leader." Then Moses told Yahweh what the people said.*

ULT **the words of the people**
UST what the people said
(אֶת־דִּבְרֵי הָעָם)

Here, **words** refers to what the people said. Alternate translation: [what the people said]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
may … trust	they will … believe
forever	always
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 19:10

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Go to the people and make them holy today and tomorrow, and have them wash their clothing,	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go back down to the people again. {Tell them to get ready for my coming.} They must purify themselves today and tomorrow. They must also wash their clothes*

ULT and make them holy

UST {Tell them to get ready for my coming.} They must purify themselves (וְקִדַּשְׁתָּם)

This may mean instruct the people, or it may mean Moses will have a role as well. Alternate translation: [and tell them to dedicate themselves to me] or [and help them to purify themselves for me]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
today	today

Exodus 19:11

ULT	UST
and they will be prepared for the third day; for on the third day Yahweh will come down to Mount Sinai before the eyes of all the people.	*so they will be ready on the third day. On that day I will come down to Mount Sinai to where all the people can see me.*

> ULT **before the eyes**
> UST to where … can see me
> (לְעֵינֵי)

Here, **before the eyes** means "so they can see." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. See the UST.

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day … on the	On that day
Yahweh	I
Sinai	Sinai
for the … day … on the … day	on the … day. On that day

Exodus 19:12

ULT	UST
And you shall set boundaries for the people all around, saying, 'Watch yourselves climbing on the mountain or touching on its edge. Every mountain toucher shall certainly be killed.	*You must make a boundary around the base of the mountain to protect the people. Tell them, 'Be sure that you do not climb the mountain or even touch it. You must kill anyone who touches the base of the mountain.*

ULT **And you shall set boundaries**
UST You must make a boundary
(וְהִגְבַּלְתָּ)

The **boundary** was either a mark or some kind of barrier.

ULT **saying, 'Watch yourselves**
UST Tell them, 'Be sure that you
(לֵאמֹר הִשָּׁמְרוּ לָכֶם)

A second-level direct quotation begins with **watch**. It is not clear where this command that Moses is to give the Israelites ends. Most English translations end it in 19:13 before the last sentence. For that reason, it may be most helpful to translate the instruction as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [telling them to watch themselves]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **Watch yourselves climbing on the mountain or touching on its edge**
UST Be sure that you do not climb the mountain or even touch it
(הִשָּׁמְרוּ לָכֶם עֲלוֹת בָּהָר וּנְגֹעַ בְּקָצֵהוּ)

Here, the negative command is implied from the **watch yourselves** command. Alternate translation: [Watch yourselves against climbing on the mountain or touching on its edge]

ULT **Every mountain toucher … certainly**
UST You must kill anyone who touches the base of the mountain
(כָּל־הַנֹּגֵעַ בָּהָר מוֹת)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [You must surely put to death any person who touches the mountain] or [You must surely kill anyone who touches the mountain]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Watch	Be sure that

Exodus 19:13

ULT	UST
No hand shall touch that one. Instead, he shall be stoned or he shall be shot. Whether animal or human, he shall not live.' At the prolonged sound of the horn, they shall ascend on the mountain."	*Do not let anyone touch any person or any animal that touches the mountain. Therefore, you must kill any person or animal that touches the mountain by throwing stones at it or shooting it with arrows.' But when you hear a long, loud trumpet sound, the people can come close to the base of the mountain."*

ULT **No hand shall touch that one**
UST Do not let anyone touch any person or any animal that touches the mountain … that touches the mountain
(לֹא־תִגַּע בּוֹ יָד)

Here, **hand** is a metonym for any part of a person. Alternate translation: [No person shall touch that one]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **he shall be stoned or he shall be shot**
UST by throwing stones at it or shooting it with arrows
(סָקוֹל יִסָּקֵל אוֹ־יָרֹה יִיָּרֶה)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you must certainly stone or shoot him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **he shall be shot**
UST shooting it with arrows
(יָרֹה יִיָּרֶה)

This refers to being killed by someone who shoots arrows from a bow.

ULT **shall ascend**
UST can come close
(יַעֲלוּ)

If you translate this with come or go, consider which would be the correct perspective for your language and the text context. Yahweh is speaking, so "come up" is valid; however, the people will be the ones moving, so "go up" is valid as well.

Support Reference: Go and Come

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
he shall be stoned	by throwing stones at it
animal	or animal
the horn	trumpet

Exodus 19:14

ULT	UST
And Moses went down from the mountain to the people. And he made the people holy, and they washed their clothing.	*So Moses went down the mountain again and told the people to purify {themselves and to get ready for Yahweh's coming. They did what Moses told them to do,} and they also washed their clothes.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
And he made … holy	and told … to purify {themselves and to get ready for Yahweh's coming. They did what Moses told them to do … }

Exodus 19:15

ULT	UST
And he said to the people, "Be prepared by the third day; you shall not come near to a woman."	*Then Moses said to the people, "Be ready on the third day, and you men must not have sexual relations with any women {until after then}."*

ULT **you shall not come near to a woman**
UST and you men must not have sexual relations with any women {until after then}
(אַל־תִּגְּשׁוּ אֶל־אִשָּׁה)

This is a polite way of talking about sexual relations. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a different polite way of referring to this or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [do not sleep with your wives]

Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **a woman**
UST any women {until after then}
(אִשָּׁה)

This word means both "woman" and "wife." Context dictates the correct translation. Since wife would make it a narrower command, **woman** was chosen here.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the … day	day

Exodus 19:16

ULT	UST
And it happened on the third day, when it was the morning, there were thunder and lightning and a heavy cloud on the mountain, and an extremely strong horn sound. And all the people who were in the camp were trembling.	*On the third day, during the morning, there was thunder, lightning, a very dark cloud on the mountain, and a very loud horn sound. The people in the camp shook because they were very afraid.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
on the … day	On the third day
horn	horn
And … were trembling	shook because they were very afraid

Exodus 19:17

ULT	UST
And Moses brought the people out from the camp to meet God, and they stationed themselves at the bottom of the mountain.	*Then Moses led the people outside the camp to meet with God. They stood around the base of the mountain.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
God	with God

Exodus 19:18

ULT	UST
And Mount Sinai smoked—all of it—because Yahweh descended on it in fire. And its smoke went up like the smoke of a furnace, and the whole mountain trembled mightily.	*Then Yahweh descended on Mount Sinai, surrounded by fire. That caused the entire mountain to smoke. The smoke rose up like the smoke from the chimney of a furnace, and the whole mountain shook violently.*

ULT Yahweh descended
UST Then Yahweh descended
(יָרַד & יְהוָה)

Alternate translation: [Yahweh came down]

ULT like the smoke of a furnace
UST like the smoke from the chimney of a furnace
(כְּעָשָׁן הַכִּבְשָׁן)

This shows that it was a very large amount of smoke. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning plainly.
Alternate translation: [like the smoke from a very large fire]

Support Reference: Simile

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sinai	Sinai
Yahweh	Yahweh
a furnace	the chimney of a furnace

Exodus 19:19

ULT	UST
And it happened, the sound of the horn went very strong. Moses was speaking, and God was answering him in a voice.	*As the sound of the horn continued to become louder, Moses spoke to God, and God answered him in a thunderous voice.*

ULT went very strong
UST continued to become louder
(הוֹלֵךְ וְחָזֵק מְאֹד)

Alternate translation: [continued to become louder and louder]

ULT in a voice
UST in a thunderous voice
(בְּקוֹל)

The word **voice** here refers to a sound that God made. This could mean: (1) “by speaking loudly like thunder” or (2) “by speaking” or (3) “by causing thunder to sound”

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the horn	the horn
Moses	Moses
and God	and God

Exodus 19:20

ULT	UST
And Yahweh descended on Mount Sinai, to the top of the mountain, and Yahweh called Moses to the top of the mountain. And Moses ascended.	*Then Yahweh came down again onto the top of Mount Sinai, and he summoned Moses to come up to the top of the mountain. So Moses went up.*

ULT And … descended … And … ascended
UST Then … came down again … So … went up
(וַיֵּרֶד & וַיַּעַל)

You may need to consider your language's rules for perspective regarding going or coming up or down in this verse.

Support Reference: Go and Come

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Sinai	Sinai
Yahweh	he
and … called	and … summoned
Moses	Moses
Moses	Moses

Exodus 19:21

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Go down and warn the people lest they break through to Yahweh to see and many from them fall.	*Yahweh said to Moses, "Go down again and warn the people not to cross the boundary in order to look at me. If they do that, many of them will die.*

ULT lest they break through
UST not to cross the boundary … If they do that
(פֶּן־יֶהֱרְסוּ)

God spoke about walking past the boundary as if they might break down a barrier and walk through it. See how you translated "set bounds" in Exodus 19:12. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [not to go beyond the boundary] or [not to go through the barrier]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT and … fall
UST will die
(וְנָפַל)

Here, **fall** refers to dying. This is a polite way of referring to something unpleasant. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a different polite way of referring to this or you could state this plainly.

Support Reference: Euphemism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	me

Exodus 19:22

ULT	UST
And furthermore, the priests, the ones who come near to Yahweh, they shall make themselves holy lest Yahweh bursts out against them."	*Also, the priests who come near me must purify themselves. If they do not do that, I will punish them."*

ULT Yahweh bursts out against them
UST I will punish them
(יִפְרֹץ בָּהֶם יְהוָה)

Yahweh's anger and judgment are pictured as something that will **burst** through a boundary. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Yahweh kills them in anger]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the priests	the priests
Yahweh	me
they shall make themselves holy	must purify themselves
Yahweh	I

Exodus 19:23

ULT	UST
And Moses said to Yahweh, "The people are not able to come up on Mount Sinai, for you yourself warned us, saying: 'Set boundaries on the mountain and set it apart.'"	*Then Moses said to Yahweh, "The people will not climb the mountain because you commanded them, saying, 'Set a boundary around the mountain, to consecrate it.'"*

ULT **us, saying: 'Set boundaries on the mountain and set it apart**
UST them, saying, 'Set a boundary around the mountain, to consecrate it
(בָּנוּ לֵאמֹר הַגְבֵּל אֶת־הָהָר וְקִדַּשְׁתּוֹ)

This quoted command could be translated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [us to set boundaries on the mountain to keep it separate]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
Sinai	the mountain

Exodus 19:24

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to him, "Go, climb down. And you shall come back up, you and Aaron with you; and the priests and the people shall not break through to come up to Yahweh, lest he burst out against them."	*Yahweh said to Moses, "Go down the mountain and bring Aaron back up with you. But do not allow the priests or other people to cross the boundary to come up to me. If they cross it, I will punish them."*

ULT **Go, climb down**
UST Go down the mountain
(לֶךְ־רֵד)

Alternate translation: [Go down]

ULT **shall not break through**
UST do not allow … to cross the boundary
(אַל־יֶהֱרְסוּ)

God spoke about walking past the boundary as if they might **break** down a barrier and walk through it. See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 19:21. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [must not go beyond the boundary] or [must not go through the barrier]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **he burst out against them**
UST I will punish them
(יִפְרָץ־בָּם)

Yahweh's anger and judgment are pictured as something that will **burst** forth from him. See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 19:22. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he kill them in anger]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
and Aaron	Aaron
and the priests	But … the priests

ULT	UST
Yahweh	me

Exodus 19:25

ULT	UST
And Moses went down to the people, and he spoke to them.	*So Moses went down the mountain again and told the people what Yahweh had said.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses

Exodus 20

Exodus 20 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–17: Yahweh gives the Ten Commandments
- v. 18–21: the people react
- v. 22–26: Yahweh gives a little more explanation about idols and altars

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Covenant

Yahweh's covenant faithfulness is now based on the covenant he made with Abraham as well as the covenant he is making with Moses. (See: covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love; and covenant)

Form of you

The singular form of you is used in the commandments; however, the commandments applied to the whole Israelite community. There is both a singular and a corporate aspect to them. You may need to choose between singular and plural if your language makes that distinction. (See: Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups)

Exodus 20:1

ULT	UST
God spoke all these words, saying:	*Then God spoke these words to the Israelites.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God

Exodus 20:2

ULT	UST
“I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out from the land of Egypt, from the house of slavery.	*“I am Yahweh your God, the one you worship. I am the one who brought you out of the land of Egypt. I am the one who freed you from being slaves there.*

ULT from the house of slavery
UST from being slaves there
(מִבֵּ֣ית עֲבָדִ֔ים)

Yahweh speaks of **Egypt** as if it were a **house** where people keep slaves. See how you translated this in Exodus 13:3. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from the place where you were slaves]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh … I am … I am
your God	your God, the one you worship … the one … the one
from the land of	of the land of Egypt
Egypt	of the land of Egypt
from the house of	from being slaves there
slavery	from being slaves there

Exodus 20:3

ULT	UST
There shall not be to you other gods above my face.	*Do not worship any god other than me.*

ULT There shall not be to you other gods above my face
UST Do not worship any god other than me
(לֹֽא יִהְיֶה־לְךָ֥ אֱלֹהִ֖ים אֲחֵרִ֑ים עַל־פָּנָֽי)

Alternate translation: [You must not worship any other gods besides me]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gods	god

Exodus 20:4

ULT	UST
You shall not make for yourself a carved figure or the likeness of anything that is in heaven above or that is in the earth beneath or that is in the water under the earth.	*Do not carve yourself a figure that looks like anything in the sky or that is on the ground or that is in the water under the ground.*

ULT **or the likeness of anything that is in heaven above or that is in the earth beneath or that is in the water under the earth**
UST that looks like anything in the sky or that is on the ground or that is in the water under the ground
(וְכָל־תְּמוּנָה אֲשֶׁר בַּשָּׁמַיִם מִמַּעַל וַאֲשֶׁר בָּאָרֶץ מִתָּחַת וַאֲשֶׁר בַּמַּיִם מִתַּחַת לָאָרֶץ)

This list means all created things wherever they are. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [nor anything that looks like anything created, whether that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth]

Support Reference: Merism

ULT **or the likeness of anything**
UST looks like anything
(וְכָל־תְּמוּנָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **likeness**, you can express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [nor anything looking like something]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a carved figure	Do … carve … a figure
in heaven	in the sky
in the earth	is on the ground
the earth	the ground

Exodus 20:5

ULT	UST
You shall not bow down to them and you shall not serve them, for I, Yahweh your God, am a jealous God. I visit the iniquity of the fathers on the sons on the third and on the fourth of the haters of me.	*Do not bow down to any idol or worship it, because I am Yahweh your God. I demand that you worship me only! I will punish the descendants of those who hate me. I will punish their descendants for three, even four generations.*

ULT **to them**
UST to any idol
(לָהֶם)

Here, **them** refers to carved figures or idols.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the sons on the third and on the fourth**
UST the descendants … their descendants for three, even four generations
(בָּנִים עַל־שִׁלֵּשִׁים וְעַל־רִבֵּעִים)

Alternate translation: [Generation] is implied by **sons**, therefore **third and fourth** refers to the grandchildren and great-grandchildren. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: [the sons down to the third and fourth generations] or [and even on the grandchildren and great-grandchildren]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **on the third and on the fourth**
UST for three, even four generations
(עַל־שִׁלֵּשִׁים וְעַל־רִבֵּעִים)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here. Alternate translation: [to generations 3 and 4]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
You shall … bow down	Do … bow down
you shall … serve them	worship it
I, Yahweh	I am Yahweh
your God	your God
am a jealous	demand that you worship me only
God	I
the iniquity of	I will punish … I will punish

Exodus 20:6

ULT	UST
But I show covenant faithfulness to thousands, to lovers of me and to keepers of my commandments.	*However, I will faithfully love thousands of generations of those who love me and obey my commandments.*

ULT **But I show covenant faithfulness to thousands, to lovers of me**
UST However, I will faithfully love thousands of generations of those who love me
(וְעֹשֶׂה חֶסֶד לַאֲלָפִים לְאֹהֲבַי)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **faithfulness**, you can express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [I am faithful to the covenant with thousands of those who love me]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to thousands**
UST thousands of generations
(לַאֲלָפִים)

Alternate translation: [Generation] is implied by the previous verse. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply necessary words from the context. Alternate translation: [to the thousandth generation] or [for a thousand generations]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **to thousands, to lovers of me**
UST thousands of generations of those who love me
(לַאֲלָפִים לְאֹהֲבַי)

Here, **thousands** may mean: (1) “forever,” that is, “to all descendants forever” (2) a number too many to count. Alternate translation: [for every generation] or [forever to innumerable people who love me]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
covenant faithfulness	However, I will faithfully love
to lovers of me	of those who love me

Exodus 20:7

ULT	UST
You shall not lift up the name of Yahweh your God with emptiness, for Yahweh will not leave unpunished anyone who lifts up my name with emptiness.	*Do not use my name carelessly, because I am Yahweh your God, and I will certainly punish those who use my name for wrong purposes.*

ULT You shall … lift up … lifts up
UST Do … use … use
(תִּשָּׂא & יִשָּׂא)

To **lift up**, take, or use the name of Yahweh (with emptiness, i.e. improperly) covers many sorts of speaking or invoking his name or making a claim to him or attempting to manipulate him or misrepresenting him. A broad word should be used in translation of this term.

ULT You shall not lift up the name of Yahweh your God
UST Do not use my name … I am Yahweh your God
(לֹא תִשָּׂא אֶת־שֵׁם־יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ)

Alternate translation: [You must not use the name of Yahweh your God]

ULT with emptiness … with emptiness
UST carelessly … for wrong purposes
(לַשָּׁוְא & לַשָּׁוְא)

Alternate translation: [carelessly] or [without proper respect]

ULT will not leave unpunished
UST will certainly punish
(לֹא יְנַקֶּה)

If this double negative would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [I will certainly consider guilty]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	I am Yahweh
your God	your God
Yahweh	I

Exodus 20:8

ULT	UST
Remember the Sabbath day, to set it apart to me.	*Remember that the seventh day of every week belongs to me.*

ULT to set it apart to me
UST belongs to me
(לְקַדְּשׁוֹ)

Alternate translation: [to make it holy to me] or [to consecrate it to me]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Sabbath	the seventh … of every week
day	day

Exodus 20:9

ULT	UST
Six days you may labor and do all your work,	*There are six days each week for you to do all your work.*

ULT **your work**
UST your work
(מְלַאכְתֶּךָ)

Alternate translation: [your occupation] or [your livelihood]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days each week
you may labor	for you to do
your work	your work

Exodus 20:10

ULT	UST
but the seventh day is a Sabbath for Yahweh your God. You shall not do any work, you or your son or your daughter, your male servant or your female servant or your cattle or the foreigner who is within your gates.	*But the seventh day is a day of rest, a day dedicated to me, Yahweh your God. On that day you must not do any work. Neither you nor your sons, your daughters, your male or female slaves, your livestock, and not even foreigners who are living in your country may work.*

ULT **within your gates**
UST are living in your country
(בִּשְׁעָרֶיךָ)

Cities often had walls around them to keep out enemies, and gates for people to go in and out. Anyone who was inside the gates was part of the community. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [within your community] or [inside your city]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
but … day	But … day … a day … On that day
is a Sabbath	is a day of rest
for Yahweh	dedicated to me, Yahweh
your God	your God
your male servant	your male
or your female servant	or female slaves
or your cattle	your livestock
or the foreigner	and not even foreigners
within your gates	are living in your country

Exodus 20:11

ULT	UST
For in six days Yahweh made the heavens and earth, the sea, and everything that is in them, and rested on the seventh day. Therefore Yahweh blessed the Sabbath day and set it apart.	*Do this because I, Yahweh, created the sky, the earth, the ocean, and everything that is in them in six days. Then I stopped my work of creating everything and rested on the seventh day. That is the reason that I, Yahweh, have blessed the rest day and set it apart to be a sacred day.*

ULT **on the seventh day**
UST on the seventh day
(בַּיּוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.

Alternate translation: [on day seven]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
Yahweh	I, Yahweh
the heavens	the sky
earth	the earth
on … day	on … day
Yahweh	I, Yahweh
blessed	have blessed
the Sabbath	the rest
day	day

Exodus 20:12

ULT	UST
Honor your father and your mother, so that your days may be long on the land that Yahweh your God is giving you.	*Honor your father and your mother, in order that you may live a long time in the land that I, Yahweh your God, will give you.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Honor	Honor
your days	you may live a long time
the land	the land
Yahweh	I, Yahweh
your God	your God

Exodus 20:13

ULT	UST
You shall not murder.	*Do not murder anyone.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
You shall … murder	Do … murder anyone

Exodus 20:14

ULT	UST
You shall not commit adultery.	*Do not commit adultery with anyone.*

> ULT **You shall not commit adultery**
> UST Do not commit adultery with anyone
> (לֹ֥א תִנְאָֽף׃)

Alternate translation: [You must not have sex with anyone other than your spouse]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
You shall … commit adultery	Do … commit adultery with anyone

Exodus 20:15

ULT	UST
You shall not steal.	*Do not steal anything.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

Exodus 20:16

ULT	UST
You shall not testify false testimony against your neighbor.	*Do not falsely accuse anyone of committing a crime.*

ULT You shall not testify false testimony against your neighbor
UST Do not falsely accuse anyone of committing a crime
(לֹא־תַעֲנֶה בְרֵעֲךָ עֵד שָׁקֶר)

Alternate translation: [You must not speak a false report against your neighbor]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
You shall … testify	Do … accuse
testimony	of committing a crime
against your neighbor	anyone
false testimony	falsely … of committing a crime

Exodus 20:17

ULT	UST
You shall not covet the house of your neighbor; you shall not covet the wife of your neighbor or his male servant or his female servant or his ox or his donkey or anything that belongs to your neighbor.”	*Do not covet someone else’s house, someone else’s wife, someone else’s male or female slave, someone else’s livestock, someone else’s donkeys, or anything else that another person owns.”*

ULT **You shall not covet**

UST Do not covet

(לֹא תַחְמֹד)

Alternate translation: [You must not strongly want to have] or [You must not want to take]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the house of	house
or his male servant	someone else’s male
or his female servant	or female slave
or his ox	someone else’s livestock
or his donkey	someone else’s donkeys

Exodus 20:18

ULT	UST
All the people were seeing the thundering and the lightning and the sound of the horn and the mountain smoking. And the people saw it, and they trembled, and they stood from a distance.	*When the people heard the thunder and saw the lightning, and when they heard the sound of the horn and saw the smoke on the mountain, they were afraid and trembled. They stood a safe distance away*

ULT the mountain smoking
UST the smoke on the mountain
(הָהָר עָשֵׁן)

Alternate translation: [the smoky mountain]

ULT and they trembled
UST were afraid and trembled
(וַיָּנֻעוּ)

Alternate translation: [and they shook with fear]

ULT and they stood from a distance
UST They stood a safe distance away
(וַיַּעַמְדוּ מֵרָחֹק)

Alternate translation: [and stood far away]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the horn	the horn
and they trembled	were afraid and trembled

Exodus 20:19

ULT	UST
They said to Moses, “You speak to us and let us listen! But do not let God speak to us, lest we die.”	*and said to Moses, “You talk to us! We will listen! But do not let God speak to us anymore. We are afraid that if he speaks anymore to us, we will die.”*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
God	God

Exodus 20:20

ULT	UST
And Moses said to the people, "Do not be afraid, for God has come to test you so that the fear of him may be above your faces and so that you do not sin."	*Moses replied to the people, "Do not be afraid! God has come to observe how you will behave. He wants you to honor him and to not sin."*

ULT **so that the fear of him may be above your faces and so that you do not sin**
UST He wants you to honor him and to not sin
(וּבַעֲבוּר תִּהְיֶה יִרְאָתוֹ עַל־פְּנֵיכֶם לְבִלְתִּי תֶחֱטָאוּ)

Alternate translation: [so that you will honor him and not sin]

ULT **the fear of him may be above your faces**
UST He wants you to honor him
(תִּהְיֶה יִרְאָתוֹ עַל־פְּנֵיכֶם)

Here, **fear** is spoken of as something that could be **above their faces**. This means that they would be continually thinking about honoring God. It is similar to the image in Exodus 13:16. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you will live always reverencing him]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Do … be afraid	Do … be afraid
God	God
test	observe how … will behave
the fear of him	He wants you to honor him
you do … sin	sin

Exodus 20:21

ULT	UST
So the people stood far off, and Moses approached toward the thick darkness where God was.	*Then, as the people watched from a distance, Moses went close to the black cloud where God was.*

ULT and Moses approached
UST Moses went close
(וּמֹשֶׁה נִגַּשׁ)

Alternate translation: [and Moses moved closer,]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and Moses	Moses
God	God

Exodus 20:22

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "You shall speak thus to the sons of Israel: 'You yourselves have seen that I have talked with you from heaven.	*Yahweh said to Moses, "Say this to the Israelite people, 'You have heard how I, Yahweh, have spoken to you from heaven.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Israel	the Israelite people
heaven	heaven

Exodus 20:23

ULT	UST
You shall not make alongside me—you shall not make gods of silver or gods of gold for yourselves.	*Therefore, do not make any gods of silver or gold that you will worship instead of me.*

ULT gods of silver or gods of gold
UST any gods of silver or gold
(אֱלֹהֵי כֶסֶף וֵאלֹהֵי זָהָב)

Alternate translation: [gods made out of silver or gold] or [idols made out of silver or gold]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gods of	any gods of silver or gold
silver	any gods of silver or gold
or gods of	any gods of silver or gold
gold	any gods of silver or gold

Exodus 20:24

ULT	UST
You shall make an altar of earth for me, and you shall sacrifice on it your burnt offerings, and peace offerings, sheep, and oxen. In every place where I cause my name to be remembered, I will come to you and bless you.	*Make an altar out of earth for me. Sacrifice your burnt offerings on it, your offerings to promise friendship with me, and also your sheep and oxen. Worship me in any place that I choose for you to honor me; if you do that, I will come to you and bless you.*

ULT **an altar of earth**
UST an altar out of earth
(מִזְבַּח אֲדָמָה)

The phrase **an altar of earth** means an altar made of materials from the ground, such as stone, soil, or clay.

ULT **I cause my name to be remembered**
UST I choose for you to honor me
(אַזְכִּיר אֶת־שְׁמִי)

Here, **name** is a metonym for God's being. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [I cause myself to be remembered]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **I cause my name to be remembered**
UST I choose for you to honor me
(אַזְכִּיר אֶת־שְׁמִי)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [I choose for you to remember me]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an altar of	an altar
and you shall sacrifice	Sacrifice
your burnt offerings	your burnt offerings
peace offerings	your offerings to promise friendship with me
sheep	and also your sheep
oxen	oxen

ULT	UST
and bless you	and bless you

Exodus 20:25

ULT	UST
And if you make me an altar of stones, you shall not build them of cut stones, for causing your tool to move over it will defile it.	*If you build an altar for me out of stone, do not cut the stones because the cutting tool will profane the altar.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an altar of	an altar
will defile it	will profane

Exodus 20:26

ULT	UST
And you shall not go up to my altar on steps, so that your nakedness is not exposed over it.'	*Do not climb steps to my altar so that no one may see your genitals.'*

ULT And you shall not go up to my altar on steps
UST Do not climb steps to my altar
(וְלֹא־תַעֲלֶה בְמַעֲלֹת עַל־מִזְבְּחִי)

If you need to connect this statement more explicitly to the previous statements regarding building the alter, you could add a phrase about building steps. Alternate translation: [Do not build steps up to the altar and go up to it on those steps]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT so that your nakedness is not exposed over it
UST so that no one may see your genitals
(אֲשֶׁר לֹא־תִגָּלֶה עֶרְוָתְךָ עָלָיו)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [so that you do not expose your nakedness over it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT your nakedness
UST your genitals
(עֶרְוָתְךָ)

Alternate translation: [your private parts]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
my altar	my altar

Exodus 21

Exodus 21 Chapter Introduction

This chapter begins to give the Israelite civil case law, that is, the explanation of how to apply the principles condensed in the ten commandments.

Structure and Formatting

- 1: Introduction
- 2–6: Laws regarding male slaves
- 7–11: Laws regarding female slaves
- 12–17: Capital crimes
- 18–36: Liability laws
    - 18–27: Regarding human violence
    - 28–36: Regarding damage done by or to animals

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Hypothetical situations

Throughout the case law, a hypothetical situation is introduced with “when” or “if.” It is followed by a description of the situation; then there is the penalty or action to be taken in those situations. A hypothetical person may be introduced with “anyone” or “whoever.” Most verses for the next several chapters will have these hypothetical situations. See: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions Translators familiar with Hebrew may want to notice that, generally, major divisions are introduced by ki and minor divisions within a topic are introduced by ’im.

Passive construction

Many portions of these situations are written in the passive voice. Some languages may have to change all or some of these to active voice. See: Active or Passive.

Daughters sold as servants

The section from 21:7–11 may be somewhat confusing because a daughter that is sold as a servant is seamlessly connected to her becoming someone's wife. It seems the two things could be closely related.

Ransom payment

In 21:30 a man whose bull killed someone may evade the death penalty by paying a ransom price, but the conditions for that happening are not clear.

Exodus 21:1

ULT	UST
And these are the ordinances that you shall set before their faces:	*These are the laws that you must establish for the Israelite nation:*

Note:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses. There is no quote break between chapters.

ULT **you shall set**
UST you must establish
(תָּשִׂים)

Alternate translation: [you must give] or [you must tell]

ULT **before their faces**
UST for the Israelite nation
(לִפְנֵיהֶם)

Here, **faces** represents the presence of the nation. Alternate translation: [before them]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
are the ordinances	are the laws

Exodus 21:2

ULT	UST
'If you buy a Hebrew servant, he shall serve for six years, and in the seventh year he shall go free without paying anything.	*When you buy a Hebrew slave, he is to serve you for only six years. In the seventh year you must free him from being your slave, and he does not have to pay you anything for setting him free.*

Note:

General Information:

Here Yahweh begins telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

ULT **If you buy a Hebrew servant**
UST When you buy a Hebrew slave
(כִּי תִקְנֶה עֶבֶד עִבְרִי)

This is the first of many hypothetical situations, introduced by "when" or **if**, which you will encounter over the next several chapters. See the Chapter 21 Introduction. You will need to translate these consistently in a manner that expresses that these situations have not happened.

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a Hebrew	a Hebrew
servant	slave
he shall serve	he is to serve you
free	you must free him from being your slave

Exodus 21:3

ULT	UST
If he came by himself, he shall go free by himself; if he is the husband of a wife, then his wife shall go free with him.	*If he became your slave alone, you will free him alone. But if he had a wife, you must free both him and his wife.*

ULT **If he came by himself, he shall go free by himself**
UST If he became your slave alone, you will free him alone
(אִם־בְּגַפּוֹ יָבֹא בְּגַפּוֹ יֵצֵא)

What **by himself** means can be stated clearly. Some languages require that the additional condition, that he marries while a slave, be stated clearly. Alternate translation: [If he became a slave while he had no wife, and if he marries while he is a slave, the master need only free the man]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **by himself … by himself**
UST alone … alone
(בְּגַפּוֹ & בְּגַפּוֹ)

Alternate translation: [alone] or [without a wife]

ULT **if he is the husband of a wife**
UST But if he had a wife
(אִם־בַּעַל אִשָּׁה הוּא)

Alternate translation: [if he was married when he became a slave] or [if he came as a married man]

Exodus 21:4

ULT	UST
If his master gave him a wife and she bore him sons or daughters, the wife and her children are her master's, and he must go out by himself.	*If the master of a slave gives him a wife, and she gives birth to sons or daughters while her husband is a slave, you only have to free the man. His wife and children will continue to be slaves of their master.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
his master	the master of a slave
her master's	will continue to be slaves of their master

Exodus 21:5

ULT	UST
But if the servant plainly says, “I love my master, my wife, and my children; I shall not go out free,”	*But when it is time for you to free the slave if he clearly states: ‘I love my master and my wife and my children, and I do not want to go free,’*

ULT **plainly says**
UST clearly states
(אָמֹר יֹאמַר)

Alternate translation: [makes a statement, saying]

ULT **I shall not go out free**
UST and I do not want to go free
(לֹא אֵצֵא חָפְשִׁי)

Alternate translation: [I do not want my master to set me free]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the servant	he
I love	I love
my master	my master
free	free

Exodus 21:6

ULT	UST
then his master shall bring him to God. He shall bring him to a door or to a doorpost, and his master shall bore his ear through with an awl. Then he shall serve him forever.	*then his master must take him to the place where they worship God. There he must make the slave stand against the door or the doorpost. Then the master will use an awl to make a hole in the slave's ear and he will own that slave for the rest of his life.*

ULT **God**
UST the place where they worship God
(הָאֱלֹהִים)

The word for **God** at its most literal means "great ones." Here it may have this basic meaning and refer to human judges or other leaders in Israel. It may also be a metonym and refer to the judges because they represent God to the people and have his authority. Texts other than the standard Hebrew text support this reading. See Exodus 22:8–9 for another example of this. Alternate translation: [the judges]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and … shall bore his ear through**
UST Then … will use … to make a hole in the slave's ear
(וְרָצַע & אֶת־אָזְנוֹ)

Alternate translation: [and … will put a hole in his ear]

ULT **with an awl**
UST an awl
(בַּמַּרְצֵעַ)

An **awl** is a pointed tool used to make a hole

ULT **forever**
UST for the rest of his life
(לְעֹלָם)

Alternate translation: [until the end of his life] or [until he dies]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
his master	his master
God	the place where they worship God
his master	the master

ULT	UST
forever	for the rest of his life

Exodus 21:7

ULT	UST
And if a man sells his daughter as a female servant, she shall not go out as the male servants go out.	*If a man sells his daughter to become a slave, she should not go free like the male slaves.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
as a female servant	to become a slave
the male servants	the male slaves

Exodus 21:8

ULT	UST
If she is bad in the eyes of her master, who has appointed her for himself, then he shall cause her to be ransomed. He has no authority to sell her to a foreign people, since he has acted treacherously with her.	*If the man who bought her wanted her to be his concubine, but later he is not pleased with her, he must sell her back to her father. He must not sell her to a foreigner, because that was not what he and the girl's father agreed to.*

Note:

This verse is the first of three possible situations between a master and his female slave.

ULT **has appointed her**
UST wanted her to be his concubine
(יְעָדָהּ)

Alternate translation: [has chosen her]

ULT **then he shall cause her to be ransomed**
UST he must sell her back to her father
(וְהִפְדָּהּ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [then he must allow her father to buy her back]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **since he has acted treacherously with her**
UST because that was not what he and the girl's father agreed to
(בְּבִגְדוֹ־בָהּ)

Alternate translation: [since he has deceived her]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
her master	the man who bought her
has appointed her	wanted her to be his concubine
He has … authority	He must … sell her
foreign	to a foreigner

Exodus 21:9

ULT	UST
And if he appoints her for his son, he shall act toward her according to the custom of daughters.	*If the man who buys her wants her to be a wife for his son, he must then treat her as though she were his own daughter.*

Note:

This verse is the second of three possible situations between a master and his female slave.

ULT **he appoints her for his son**
UST the man who buys her wants her to be a wife for his son
(לִבְנוֹ יִיעָדֶנָּה)

Alternate translation: [he decides that she is the one who will be his son's wife]

ULT **he shall act toward her according to the custom of daughters**
UST he must then treat her as though she were his own daughter
(כְּמִשְׁפַּט הַבָּנוֹת יַעֲשֶׂה־לָּהּ)

Alternate translation: [he must do to her according to the manner in which daughters are customarily treated]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
according to the custom of	as though she were his own daughter

Exodus 21:10

ULT	UST
If he takes another to himself, he shall not diminish her food, her clothing, or her marital rights.	*If the master marries another woman, he must continue to give the first woman the same amount of food, clothing, and sexual attention that he gave to her before.*

Note:

This verse and the next are the third of three possible situations between a master and his female slave.

ULT **he shall not diminish her food, her clothing, or her marital rights**
UST he must continue to give the first woman the same amount of food, clothing, and sexual attention that he gave to her before
(שְׁאֵרָהּ כְּסוּתָהּ וְעֹנָתָהּ לֹא יִגָּרָע)

If this double negative would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [he must give the first wife the same food, clothing, and marital rights she had before]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **or her marital rights**
UST and sexual attention
(וְעֹנָתָהּ)

This term only occurs here in the Bible. It probably means things that a husband must do for his wife. Most commentators believe it specifically means having sexual relations with her, possibly so that she can bear children. Alternate translation: [or her right to intimacy] or [or her childbearing rights]

Support Reference: Euphemism

Exodus 21:11

ULT	UST
But if he does not provide these three things to her, then she can go free without silver.	*If he does not do these three things for her, he must free her from being a slave, and she is not required to pay anything to go free.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
free	he must free her from being a slave
silver	and she is not required to pay anything to go free

Exodus 21:12

ULT	UST
Whoever strikes a man and he dies, he shall surely be put to death.	*If someone hits a man in order to kill him and the man dies, then you absolutely must execute the murderer;*

ULT **Whoever strikes a man**
UST If someone hits a man
(מַכֵּה אִישׁ)

Alternate translation: [Whoever attacks a man]

ULT **he shall surely be put to death**
UST then you absolutely must execute the murderer
(מוֹת יוּמָת)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you must certainly execute that person] or [you must certainly kill that person]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Exodus 21:13

ULT	UST
But if he did not lie in wait, but God let it happen by his hand, then I will appoint a place for you where he can flee.	*but if he did not plan the murder—if God allowed the accident—the one who hit him can escape to a place that I will choose for you, and he will be safe there.*

ULT But if he did not lie in wait
UST but if he did not plan the murder
(וְאֲשֶׁר֙ לֹ֣א צָדָ֔ה)

Alternate translation: [But if he did not plan to do it] or [But if he did not do it on purpose]

ULT then I will appoint a place for you where he can flee
UST the one who hit him can escape to a place that I will choose for you, and he will be safe there
(וְשַׂמְתִּ֥י לְךָ֖ מָקֹ֑ום אֲשֶׁ֥ר יָנֻ֖וס שָׁמָּֽה)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express the purpose for choosing a place explicitly. Alternate translation: [I will choose a place to which he can run away to be safe]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
but God	if God
then I will appoint	I will choose

Exodus 21:14

ULT	UST
If a man willfully acts against his neighbor to kill him with cunning, then you shall take him from my altar for execution.	*But if someone gets angry with another person and kills him on purpose, you must kill the murderer even if he runs to God's altar.*

ULT with cunning
UST on purpose
(בְּעָרְמָה)

Alternate translation: [after thinking carefully about it]

ULT then you shall take him
UST you must kill the murderer
(תִּקָּחֶנּוּ)

The word "him" refers to the one who killed his neighbor.

ULT for execution
UST you must kill the murderer
(לָמוּת)

Alternate translation: [to execute him]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
with cunning	on purpose
my altar	even if he runs to God's altar

Exodus 21:15

ULT	UST
Whoever hits his father or his mother shall surely be put to death.	*You must kill anyone who strikes his father or mother.*

ULT **Whoever hits his father or his mother shall surely be put to death**
UST You must kill anyone who strikes his father or mother
(וּמַכֵּה אָבִיו וְאִמּוֹ מוֹת יוּמָת)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [If anyone hits his father or mother, you must surely put him to death] or [You must surely kill anyone who hits his father or mother]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **surely**
UST You must kill
(מוֹת)

Alternate translation: [certainly]

Exodus 21:16

ULT	UST
Whoever steals a man—whether he sells him, or he is found in his hand—he shall surely be put to death.	*You must kill anyone who kidnaps another person, whether he sold the person or you found him still with the kidnapper.*

ULT he shall surely be put to death
UST You must kill
(מָוֹת יוּמָת)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you must kill that kidnapper]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Exodus 21:17

ULT	UST
Whoever acts contemptuously toward his father or his mother shall surely be put to death.	*You must kill anyone who curses or insults his father or his mother.*

ULT Whoever acts contemptuously toward his father or his mother shall surely be put to death

UST You must kill anyone who curses or insults his father or his mother
(וּמְקַלֵּל אָבִיו וְאִמּוֹ מוֹת יוּמָת)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [You must surely kill anyone who curses his father or his mother]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT Whoever acts contemptuously toward

UST anyone who curses or insults
(וּמְקַלֵּל)

The word translated **acts contemptuously** means the opposite of "honor" (as in the commandment to honor one's parents). Alternate translation: [Whoever acts dishonorably toward]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Whoever acts contemptuously toward	anyone who curses or insults

Exodus 21:18

ULT	UST
If men fight and a man hits his neighbor with a stone or with his fist, and he does not die but falls to bed,	*Suppose two people fight, and one hits the other with a stone or his fist. Suppose the person he strikes does not die but is injured and has to stay in bed for a while,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

Exodus 21:19

ULT	UST
if he rises and walks about in the outdoors on his staff, then the striker is free. He only shall pay for his sitting and for his complete healing.	*but later he is able to walk outside using a cane. Then they must not punish the person who hit him, except that they must make him pay the injured person the money he could not earn while he was recovering as well as the costs for healing.*

ULT **he rises**
UST he is able to walk
(יָקוּם)

Alternate translation: [he gets better]

ULT **then … is free**
UST Then they must not punish
(וְנָקָה)

Alternate translation: [then … is innocent]

ULT **for his sitting**
UST the money he could not earn while he was recovering
(שִׁבְתּוֹ)

This refers to a situation when someone cannot work to earn money. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [for the time he could not work]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and for his complete healing**
UST as well as the costs for healing
(וְרַפֵּא יְרַפֵּא)

Alternate translation: [and for his medical costs] or [and for his costs for healing]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
his staff	using a cane

Exodus 21:20

ULT	UST
And if a man hits his male servant or his female servant with a staff and he dies under his hand, he shall certainly be avenged.	*If someone hits his male or female slave with a stick, and if the slave dies from the blow, then you must avenge the slave's death.*

ULT under his hand
UST from the blow
(תַּחַת יָדוֹ)

Alternate translation: [because of the injury] or [because the master hit him]

ULT he shall certainly be avenged
UST then you must avenge the slave's death
(נָקֹם יִנָּקֵם)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you must certainly punish that man]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
his male servant	his male
his female servant	female slave
he shall … be avenged	then you must avenge the slave's death

Exodus 21:21

ULT	UST
However, if he stands a day or two, he shall not be avenged, for he is his silver.	*But if the slave recovers after a few days, you must not punish the one who hit him, because the slave was his property.*

ULT for he is his silver
UST because the slave was his property
(כִּי כַסְפּוֹ הוּא)

A common view is that the loss of the valuable property, the slave, is itself a punishment. It may be that the master loses the slave for a time and also has to pay for his healing, or it may be that the slave dies after a few days. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that the servant was valuable to his master explicitly. Alternate translation: [because he has already lost his servant who was valuable to him] or [because he has already lost his servant's work for a time and had to pay for his healing]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a day	after a few days
he shall … be avenged	you must … punish the one who hit him
is his silver	was his property

Exodus 21:22

ULT	UST
And if men fight together and strike a pregnant woman and her children come out, but there is no serious injury, then he shall surely be fined as the husband of the woman puts on him, and he shall give according to the judges.	*If some men are fighting, and they hit a pregnant woman so that she gives birth, but she and the baby are unharmed, whoever hit her must pay a fine. He must pay whatever the woman's husband asks after a judge approves of the fine.*

ULT **and her children come out, but there is no serious injury**
UST so that she gives birth, but she and the baby are unharmed
(וְיָצְאוּ יְלָדֶיהָ וְלֹא יִהְיֶה אָסוֹן)

It is not clear in the passage what happens to the child. The text is simply as in the ULT. Some have taken it to mean that the child dies because of premature birth, and the **serious injury** only relates to the woman. In this case, a fine is imposed for the loss of the child. However, the text could also mean that the child is born safely. A fine is still imposed because of the great danger to the two lives. Then the next few verses give consequences for any injury either to mother or child.

ULT **serious injury**
UST but she and the baby are unharmed
(אָסוֹן)

Alternate translation: [hurt]

ULT **then he shall surely be fined**
UST whoever hit her must pay a fine
(עָנוֹשׁ יֵעָנֵשׁ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you must certainly fine the guilty man] or [the guilty man must pay a fine]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **according to the judges**
UST after a judge approves of the fine
(בִּפְלִלִים)

Alternate translation: [what the judges decide]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
according to the judges	after a judge approves of the fine

Exodus 21:23

ULT	UST
But if there is serious injury, then you shall give a life for a life,	*But if he harmed anyone {you must punish him by causing the same harm to him}. If he killed someone, you must kill him.*

ULT then you shall give a life for a life
UST {you must punish him by causing the same harm to him}. If he killed someone, you must kill him
(וְנָתַתָּה נֶפֶשׁ תַּחַת נָפֶשׁ)

This means that if someone is hurt, the person who caused the hurt must be hurt in the same way. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [you must take the killer's life for the murdered person's life]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Exodus 21:24

ULT	UST
an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth, a hand for a hand, a foot for a foot,	*{In the same way, if he harmed} an eye, a tooth, a hand, or a foot,*

ULT an eye for an eye

UST {In the same way, if he harmed} an eye

(עַיִן תַּחַת עַיִן)

This means that if someone is hurt, the person who caused the hurt must be hurt in the same way. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [the striker's eye for the injured person's eye] (and repeated in like manner for each example throughout this and the next verse)

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Exodus 21:25

ULT	UST
a burn for a burn, a wound for a wound, or a bruise for a bruise.	*or caused a burn, a wound, or a bruise—{you must cause the same harm to him}.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

Exodus 21:26

ULT	UST
And if a man hits the eye of his male servant or the eye of his female servant and destroys it, he shall let him go free in compensation for his eye.	*If the owner of a slave strikes the eye of his male or female slave and that eye becomes blind, then he must free that slave because of what he did to the slave's eye.*

ULT **a man**
UST the owner of
(אִישׁ)

Here, **man** refers to the owner of a slave.

ULT **in compensation for**
UST because of what he did to the slave's eye
(תַּחַת)

Alternate translation: [as payment for]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
his male servant	his male
his female servant	female slave
and destroys it	and that eye becomes blind
free	then he must free that slave

Exodus 21:27

ULT	UST
And if he knocks out a tooth of his male servant or a tooth of his female servant, he shall let him go free as compensation for the tooth.	*If someone knocks out one of his slave's teeth, he must free the slave because of what he did to the slave's tooth.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
his male servant	one of his slave's teeth
his female servant	one of his slave's teeth
free	he must free the slave

Exodus 21:28

ULT	UST
And if an ox gores a man or a woman and he dies, the ox shall surely be stoned, and its flesh shall not be eaten, but the owner of the ox is innocent.	*If a bull gores a man or woman with the result that the person dies, you must kill the bull by throwing stones at it, but do not eat it. The owner of the bull is not guilty.*

ULT **an ox gores**
UST a bull gores
(יִגַּח שׁוֹר)

Alternate translation: [an ox injures with its horns]

ULT **the ox shall surely be stoned**
UST you must kill the bull by throwing stones at it
(סָקוֹל יִסָּקֵל הַשּׁוֹר)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you must surely stone the ox to death]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and its flesh shall not be eaten**
UST but do not eat it
(וְלֹא יֵאָכֵל אֶת־בְּשָׂרוֹ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and you must not eat its flesh]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an ox	a bull
shall … be stoned	you must kill … by throwing stones at it
the ox	the bull
is innocent	is not guilty

Exodus 21:29

ULT	UST
But if the ox had a habit of goring in the past, and its owner was warned but did not keep it in, and it kills a man or a woman, the ox shall be stoned and its owner also shall be put to death.	*But if the bull had attacked people several times before and if people had told its owner about that, but he did not keep the bull inside a fence, and it kills a man or woman by goring, then you must kill the bull by throwing stones at it, and you must also kill its owner.*

ULT **and its owner was warned but did not keep it in**
UST and if people had told its owner about that, but he did not keep the bull inside a fence
(וְהוּעַד בִּבְעָלָיו וְלֹא יִשְׁמְרֶנּוּ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state **its owner was warned** in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and someone warned its owner but he did not keep it in]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and its owner was warned but did not keep it in**
UST and if people had told its owner about that, but he did not keep the bull inside a fence
(וְהוּעַד בִּבְעָלָיו וְלֹא יִשְׁמְרֶנּוּ)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express the content of the warning explicitly. Alternate translation: [and its owner was warned that it gores but he did not keep it in]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and its owner also shall be put to death**
UST and you must also kill its owner
(וְגַם־בְּעָלָיו יוּמָת)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and you must also kill its owner]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ox	the bull had attacked people
and … was warned	and if people had told … about that
did … keep it in	he did … keep the bull inside a fence
the ox	the bull

Exodus 21:30

ULT	UST
If a ransom is imposed on him, he shall give the ransom of his life, according to all that is imposed on him.	*However, if {the family of the dead} chooses to demand compensation instead, to save his life he must pay the full amount they demand.*

ULT If a ransom is imposed on him, he shall give the ransom of his life, according to all that is imposed on him

UST However, if {the family of the dead} chooses to demand compensation instead, to save his life he must pay the full amount they demand

(אִם־כֹּפֶר יוּשַׁת עָלָיו וְנָתַן פִּדְיֹן נַפְשׁוֹ כְּכֹל אֲשֶׁר־יוּשַׁת עָלָיו)

The text does not specify who will impose a ransom on the ox's owner. Since other texts indicate that justice is retributive and performed by the dead person's family, that is one option. Another option is that the judges will impose it. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express one of these explicitly.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT If a ransom is imposed on him … is imposed on him

UST However, if {the family of the dead} chooses to demand compensation instead … the full amount

(אִם־כֹּפֶר יוּשַׁת עָלָיו & יוּשַׁת עָלָיו)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. However, you must make a decision regarding who is imposing the ransom or use an unspecified pronoun, if that is possible in your language (this second option would not make sense in English). Alternate translation: [If the judges impose a ransom on him … they impose on him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a ransom	compensation
the ransom of	they demand

Exodus 21:31

ULT	UST
If it gores a son or it gores a daughter, it shall be done to him according to this ordinance.	*If someone's bull attacks and gores someone's son or daughter, you must treat the bull's owner according to that same rule.*

ULT it gores … it gores
UST attacks and gores
(יִגַּח & יִגַּח)

Alternate translation: [it injures with its horns … it injures with its horns]

ULT to him
UST the bull's owner
(לוֹ)

Here, **him** probably refers to the ox's owner. Alternate translation: [to the owner]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
according to … ordinance	according to … same rule

Exodus 21:32

ULT	UST
If the ox gores a male servant or a female servant, he shall give thirty silver shekels to the master, and the ox shall be stoned.	*If a bull attacks and gores a male or female slave, its owner must pay to the slave's owner thirty pieces of silver, and you must kill the bull by throwing stones at it.*

ULT **thirty silver shekels**
UST thirty pieces of silver
(כֶּסֶף ׀ שְׁלֹשִׁים שְׁקָלִים)

In ancient times, a silver shekel weighed about 11 grams or about a third of an ounce. You could try to express the equivalent in terms of modern money values, but if you did, that could cause your Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate, since those values can change over time. Instead, you could say something general like "30 silver coins" or give the equivalent weight or use the biblical term in the text and explain the weight in a footnote. Alternate translation: [330 grams of silver]

Support Reference: Biblical Money

ULT **If the ox gores a male servant**
UST If a bull attacks and gores a male
(אִם־עֶבֶד יִגַּח הַשּׁוֹר)

Because they are to kill the ox, the slave must have died. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [If an ox kills a male servant]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and the ox shall be stoned**
UST and you must kill the bull by throwing stones at it
(וְהַשּׁוֹר יִסָּקֵל)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you must kill the ox by stoning it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ox	a bull
gores	a male
a female servant	female slave
silver	silver

ULT	UST
to the master	to the slave's owner
and the ox	and … the bull

Exodus 21:33

ULT	UST
And if a man opens a cistern or if a man digs a cistern and does not cover it and an ox or a donkey falls there,	*Suppose someone uncovers a hole for storing water or digs one and does not cover it. If someone's bull or donkey falls into it {and dies},*

ULT opens a cistern
UST uncovers a hole for storing water
(יִפְתַּח & בּוֹר)

Alternate translation: [uncovers a hole in the ground] or [takes a cover off a hole in the ground]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a cistern	a hole for storing water
a cistern	one … it
an ox	someone's bull
a donkey	donkey

Exodus 21:34

ULT	UST
the owner of the pit shall compensate. He shall cause silver to return to its owner, and the dead animal shall become his.	*the owner of the pit must give the animal's owner as much money as the animal was worth, but then he will own the dead animal.*

ULT He shall cause silver to return to its owner
UST must give the animal's owner as much money as the animal was worth
(כֶּסֶף יָשִׁיב לִבְעָלָיו)

The owner must be paid for the loss of his animal. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [he must pay the owner for the dead animal]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT shall compensate
UST must give the … as much money as the animal was worth
(יְשַׁלֵּם)

Alternate translation: [must make restitution]

ULT and the dead animal shall become his
UST but then he will own the dead animal
(וְהַמֵּת יִהְיֶה־לּוֹ)

The one who paid for the loss of the animal will become the owner of the dead animal and can do what he wants with it. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [and the dead animal will belong to the owner of the pit]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	must give the … as much money as the animal was worth

Exodus 21:35

ULT	UST
And if the ox of a man strikes the ox of another and it dies, then they shall sell the live ox and divide its silver, and they shall also divide the dead {ox}.	*If someone's bull hurts another person's bull, so that it dies, the owners of both bulls must sell the bull that is living, and they must divide between them the money that they get for it. They must also divide between them the meat of the animal that died.*

ULT and divide its silver

UST and they must divide between them the money that they get for it
(וְחָצוּ אֶת־כַּסְפּוֹ)

Alternate translation: [and divide the money] or [and divide the money they receive]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ox of	bull
the ox of	bull
the … ox	the bull
its silver	the money that they get for it

Exodus 21:36

ULT	UST
If it was known that the ox had a habit of goring in the past, and its owner has not kept it in, he shall surely compensate ox for ox, and the dead animal shall become his own.	*However, if the owner knew that the bull often attacked other animals before, and he did not secure it, then the owner of that bull must give the owner of the bull that died a living bull, but then he will own the dead animal.*

ULT If it was known
UST However, if the owner knew
(אִוֹ נוֹדַע)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT the ox had a habit of goring in the past
UST the bull often attacked other animals before
(שׁוֹר נַגָּח הוּא מִתְּמוֹל שִׁלְשֹׁם)

Alternate translation: [the ox had gored other animals before]

ULT and its owner has not kept it in
UST and he did not secure it, then the owner of that bull
(וְלֹא יִשְׁמְרֶנּוּ בְּעָלָיו)

This means that the owner did not keep his ox safely where it could not wander to hurt other animals. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [and its owner did not keep it inside a fence] or [and its owner did not tie it securely]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT he shall surely compensate ox for ox
UST must give the owner of the bull that died a living bull
(שַׁלֵּם יְשַׁלֵּם שׁוֹר תַּחַת הַשּׁוֹר)

The owner of the ox that killed must give an ox to the man who lost his ox. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [the owner of the ox that killed must surely give a living ox to the owner of the ox that died]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
it was known	the owner knew

ULT	UST
the ox	the bull
has … kept it in	he did … secure it
ox	of the bull that died
ox	a living bull

Exodus 22

Exodus 22 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter continues the list of case laws for Israel. We will not attempt to provide an outline since almost every verse is about a different case.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Hypothetical situations

Throughout the case law a hypothetical situation is introduced with “when” or “if.” Then there is a description of the situation, and then there is the penalty or action to be taken in those situations. A hypothetical person may be introduced with “anyone” or “whoever.” Most verses for the next several chapters will contain these hypothetical situations. See: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions Translators familiar with Hebrew may want to notice that, generally, major divisions are introduced by ki and minor divisions within a topic are introduced by ’im.

Passive construction

Many portions of these situations are written in the passive voice. Some languages may have to change all or some of these to active voice. See: Active or Passive.

Exodus 22:1

ULT	UST
If a man steals an ox or a sheep and slaughters it or sells it, he shall compensate five cattle for the ox, and four sheep for the sheep.	*If someone steals a bull or a sheep and then kills it or sells it, he must give the owner five bulls or cows for the bull that he stole, and he must give the owner four sheep or goats for the sheep that he stole.*

Note:

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

ULT **If a man steals an ox or a sheep and slaughters it or sells it**
UST If someone steals a bull or a sheep and then kills it
(כִּי יִגְנֹב־אִישׁ שׁוֹר אוֹ־שֶׂה וּטְבָחוֹ אוֹ מְכָרוֹ)

This is the first of many hypothetical situations in this chapter, introduced by "when" or **if**, which you will encounter over the next several chapters. See the Chapter 22 Introduction. You will need to translate these consistently in a manner that expresses that these situations have not actually happened.

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **five … and four**
UST five … and … four
(חֲמִשָּׁה & וְאַרְבַּע)

Alternate translation: [5 … and 4]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an ox	a bull
a sheep	a sheep
and slaughters it	and then kills it
cattle	bulls or cows
sheep	sheep or goats

Exodus 22:2

ULT	UST
If a thief is found while breaking in, and he is struck and he dies, there is no bloodguilt for him.	*If someone finds a thief breaking into his house {at night} and hits him and the thief dies, he is not guilty of murder.*

ULT **If a thief is found while breaking in**
UST If someone finds a thief breaking into his house {at night}
(אִם־בַּמַּחְתֶּרֶת יִמָּצֵא הַגַּנָּב)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [If anyone finds a thief while he is breaking in]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **while breaking in**
UST breaking into his house {at night}
(בַּמַּחְתֶּרֶת)

Alternate translation: [while using force to enter a house]

ULT **and he is struck and he dies**
UST and hits him and the thief dies
(וְהֻכָּה וָמֵת)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [if anyone strikes the thief so that he dies]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **there is no bloodguilt for him**
UST he is not guilty of murder
(אֵין לוֹ דָּמִים)

Alternate translation: [no one will be guilty of murdering him]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bloodguilt	guilty of murder

Exodus 22:3

ULT	UST
But if the sun has risen on him, there is bloodguilt for him. He shall surely make restitution. If he has nothing, then he shall be sold for his theft.	*But if that happens during the daytime, the one who killed the thief is guilty of murdering him. A thief must pay for what he stole. If he has nothing with which to pay for what he stole, the judges must sell him to become a slave, and the money from his sale will pay for what he stole.*

ULT **But if the sun has risen on him**
UST But if that happens during the daytime
(אִם־זָרְחָה הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ עָלָיו)

Alternate translation: [But if it is light before he breaks in] or [But if he breaks in and it is after sunrise]

ULT **then he shall be sold for his theft**
UST the judges must sell him to become a slave, and the money from his sale will pay for what he stole
(וְנִמְכַּר בִּגְנֵבָתוֹ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you must sell him as a slave in order to pay for what he stole]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
there is bloodguilt	the one who killed the thief is guilty of murdering him

Exodus 22:4

ULT	UST
If the stolen thing is actually found alive in his hand, from an ox to a donkey to a sheep, he shall compensate double.	*In a case where you catch a thief and he still has the stolen goods, if it is a bull or a donkey or a sheep, and it is still alive, the thief must pay back the stolen animal as well as another one of the same kind.*

ULT If the stolen thing is actually found alive in his hand

UST In a case where you catch a thief and he still has the stolen goods … and it is still alive
(אִם־הִמָּצֵא תִמָּצֵא בְיָדוֹ הַגְּנֵבָה & חַיִּים)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [If they find that he still has the live animal that he stole]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT he shall compensate double

UST the thief must pay back the stolen animal as well as another one of the same kind
(שְׁנַיִם יְשַׁלֵּם)

The meaning of **compensate double** is not entirely clear. Most interpretations follow the UST, that is, two animals total must be given, the stolen one and one more. Some interpret double to mean the thief must pay two animals for every animal that he took, so three total. It would be best to leave double as ambiguous as possible. Alternate translation: [he must compensate twice what he stole]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from an ox	if it is a bull
a donkey	a donkey
a sheep	a sheep

Exodus 22:5

ULT	UST
If a man causes his livestock to graze a field or vineyard and lets it go, and it grazes in the field of another, he shall compensate from the best of his field and from the best of his vineyard.	*If someone puts his animals in his field or in his vineyard to eat, and he allows the to animals stray away and eat the plants in another person's field, the owner of the animals must pay the owner of that field by giving him the best from his own field or vineyard.*

ULT **causes … to graze … and it grazes**
UST puts his animals … to eat … and eat the plants
(יַבְעֶר & וּבָעַר)

Alternate translation: [causes to eat plants … and it eats plants]

ULT **his livestock … it**
UST the … animals
(אֶת־בעירה)

Livestock is a collective singular noun that could refer to cows, goats, sheep, or basically any domesticated animals. In some languages you will need to translate it as a plural.

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **he shall compensate**
UST the owner of the animals must pay the owner of that field by giving him
(יְשַׁלֵּם)

Alternate translation: [he must pay back the owner of that field]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
אֶת־בְּעִירֹו (ORIG QUOTE)	אֶת־בְּעִירֹו (ORIG QUOTE)
vineyard	in his vineyard
his vineyard	or vineyard

Exodus 22:6

ULT	UST
If a fire breaks out and spreads in thorns and stacked grain or the standing grain or a field is consumed, the fire starter shall surely compensate.	*If someone starts a fire, and it spreads through the grass and starts burning in someone else's field, and the fire burns grain that is growing or grain that is already cut and stacked, then the person who started the fire must pay for the grain that the fire destroyed.*

ULT **If a fire breaks out and spreads in thorns and … is consumed**
UST If someone starts a fire, and it spreads through the grass and starts burning … and the fire burns
(כִּי־תֵצֵא אֵשׁ וּמָצְאָה קֹצִים וְנֶאֱכַל)

Here, **breaks out** and **consumes** can be stated in active form or in another way that is natural in your language if your language does not use the passive form in this way. Alternate translation: [If someone starts a fire, and it spreads in thorns, and it consumes]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and spreads in thorns**
UST and it spreads through the grass
(וּמָצְאָה קֹצִים)

Alternate translation: [and moves along the ground through dry plants]

ULT **stacked grain**
UST grain that is already cut and stacked
(גָּדִישׁ)

This is grain that has been cut and tied in bundles. Alternate translation: [bundled grain] or [harvested grain]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the standing grain**
UST grain that is growing
(הַקָּמָה)

This is grain that has not been cut, but it is ready to be harvested. Alternate translation: [the grain still growing in the field]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and … is consumed	and starts burning … and the fire burns

Exodus 22:7

ULT	UST
If a man gives silver or goods to his neighbor for safekeeping, and if it is stolen from the house of the man, if the thief is found, he shall compensate double.	*Suppose that someone gives another person some money or other items and asks him to keep it in his house for a while. And suppose that a thief steals it from that person's house. If you catch the thief, the thief must pay back twice as much as he stole.*

ULT **for safekeeping**
UST and asks him … keep it in his house for a while
(לִשְׁמֹר)

Alternate translation: [to watch over it] or [to keep it safe]

ULT **and if it is stolen**
UST And suppose that a thief steals it
(וְנִגְנַב)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [if someone steals it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **if the thief is found**
UST If you catch the thief
(אִם־יִמָּצֵא הַגַּנָּב)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [if you find the thief]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	some money
from the house of	from that person's house

Exodus 22:8

ULT	UST
If the thief is not found, then the owner of the house shall be brought to God, whether or not he has stretched out his hand against the property of his neighbor.	*But if no one catches the thief, you must bring the owner of the house to God so he {can swear} that he did not take his neighbor's property.*

ULT **If the thief is not found, then the owner of the house shall be brought to God**
UST But if no one catches the thief, you must bring the owner of the house to God
(אִם־לֹ֣א יִמָּצֵ֗א הַגַּנָּב֙ וְנִקְרַ֣ב בַּעַל־הַבַּ֔יִת אֶל־הָאֱלֹהִ֖ים)

You may need to translate these in an active voice if your language does not use passive in this way. Alternate translation: [If no one finds the thief, bring the owner of the house to God]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **God**
UST God
(הָאֱלֹהִ֖ים)

The word for **God** at its most literal means "great ones." Here and in the next verse it may have this basic meaning and refer to human judges or other leaders in Israel. It may also be a metonym and refer to the judges because they represent God to the people and have his authority. See Exodus 21:6 for another example of this. Alternate translation: [the judges]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **he has stretched out his hand against the property of his neighbor**
UST he did … take his neighbor's property
(שָׁלַ֥ח יָדֹ֛ו בִּמְלֶאכֶ֥ת רֵעֵ֖הוּ)

This is an idiom for stealing. If you have a way of saying this in your language, you can use it here. Alternate translation: [he has stolen his neighbor's property]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the house	the house
God	God
his neighbor	his neighbor's

Exodus 22:9

ULT	UST
Concerning every matter of transgression, concerning an ox, concerning a donkey, concerning a sheep, concerning clothing, concerning every lost property about which someone says, "Surely this is it," the matter of both parties shall come to God. Whomever God declares guilty shall compensate his neighbor double.	*Whenever someone claims his neighbor wronged him and says, 'This is actually mine,' about a bull, a donkey, a sheep, clothing, or something else he lost, they must both come and stand before God. The one whom God says is wrong must pay back the owner twice as much as he took.*

ULT matter of … the matter of
UST Whenever someone claims his neighbor wronged him … they … both
(דְּבַר & דְּבַר)

Alternate translation: [dispute of … the dispute of]

ULT Surely this is it
UST This is actually mine
(כִּי־הִוא זֶה)

Alternate translation: [This is mine] or [This is my missing property]

ULT God … God
UST God … God
(הָאֱלֹהִים & אֱלֹהִים)

The word used here for **God**, at its most literal, means "great ones." Here and in the previous verse it may have this basic meaning and refer to human judges or other leaders in Israel. It may also be a metonym and refer to the judges because they represent God to the people and have his authority. See Exodus 21:6 for another example of this. Alternate translation: [the judges]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an ox	a bull
a donkey	a donkey
a sheep	a sheep
God	God
God	God
declares guilty	says is wrong

ULT	UST
his neighbor	the owner

Exodus 22:10

ULT	UST
If a man gives to his neighbor a donkey or an ox or a sheep or any animal to keep, and it dies or is hurt or is carried away without a witness,	*Suppose someone gives his donkey or bull or sheep or some other animal to someone else and asks him to take care of it for a while. However, the animal dies, or something injures it or takes it away while no one is watching.*

ULT **or is hurt … is carried away**
UST something injures it or takes it away
(נִשְׁבַּר אוֹ־נִשְׁבָּה)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language, as modeled in the UST.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **is carried away**
UST takes it away
(נִשְׁבָּה)

Here, **carried away** means that it is not a thief but a wild animal that takes the ox or sheep away (to eat it). See 22:12 for cases where the animal is stolen while in another's care.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a donkey	his donkey
an ox	bull
a sheep	sheep
any animal	animal

Exodus 22:11

ULT	UST
there shall be an oath of Yahweh between both of them, whether or not he stretched out his hand against the property of his neighbor. Its owner must accept, and he shall not compensate.	*Then the person who was taking care of the animal must swear, knowing that Yahweh is listening, that he did not steal the item. The owner of the animal must accept that the other person is telling the truth, and the other person will not have to pay anything back to the owner.*

ULT **there shall be an oath of Yahweh between both of them … Its owner must accept**
UST Then the person who was taking care of the animal must swear, knowing that Yahweh is listening … The owner of the animal must accept that the other person is telling the truth
(שְׁבֻעַת יְהוָה תִּהְיֶה בֵּין שְׁנֵיהֶם & וְלֹא יְשַׁלֵּם בְּעָלָיו)

Only the man who is accused of stealing the animal must swear the oath. The owner of the lost animal must accept the oath that has been sworn. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the man who was caring for the animal must swear an oath before Yahweh … and the owner must accept that oath]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an oath of	Then the person who was taking care of the animal must swear, knowing that Yahweh is listening
Yahweh	Then the person who was taking care of the animal must swear, knowing that Yahweh is listening

Exodus 22:12

ULT	UST
But if it was truly stolen from him, he shall compensate its owner.	*But if someone stole the animal while he was supposed to be taking care of it, the man who promised to take care of it must pay back the owner for the animal.*

ULT But if it was truly stolen from him

UST But if someone stole the animal while he was supposed to be taking care of it
(וְאִם־גָּנֹב יִגָּנֵב מֵעִמּוֹ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [But if someone stole the animal from him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Exodus 22:13

ULT	UST
If it was truly torn, he shall bring it as evidence. He shall not compensate for what was torn.	*If wild animals mauled the animal, he must bring back its remains to prove that what he says is true. If he does that, he will not have to pay anything for the mauled animal.*

ULT If it was truly torn
UST If wild animals mauled the animal
(אִם־טָרֹף יִטָּרֵף)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [But if a wild beast tore the animal in pieces]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
as evidence	to prove that what he says is true

Exodus 22:14

ULT	UST
If a man borrows from his neighbor and it is injured or dies without the owner with it, he shall surely compensate.	*If someone borrows an animal from his neighbor, and if something hurts or kills that animal when its owner is not there, the one who borrowed it must pay the owner for the animal.*

ULT **he shall surely compensate**
UST the one who borrowed it must pay the owner for the animal
(שַׁלֵּם יְשַׁלֵּם)

Alternate translation: [must certainly repay with another animal] or [must certainly pay the owner for the animal]

ULT **and it is injured or dies**
UST and if something hurts or kills that animal
(וְנִשְׁבַּר אוֹ־מֵת)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language, as modeled in the UST.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Exodus 22:15

ULT	UST
If its owner was with it, he shall not compensate; if it was for hire, it came for its hiring fee.	*But if that happens when the owner of the animal is there, the one who borrowed it will not have to pay back anything. If someone rented it, the money that he paid to rent it will be enough to pay for the animal dying or for an injury.*

ULT **if … was for hire**
UST If someone rented
(אִם־שָׂכִיר)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [if someone rented the animal]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **it came for its hiring fee**
UST the money that he paid to rent it will be enough to pay for the animal dying or for an injury
(בָּא בִּשְׂכָרוֹ)

The one who borrowed the animal will not have to pay the owner anything more than the hiring or rental fee. This fee will pay for the loss of the animal. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [the money that someone paid to rent the animal will cover the loss of the animal]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for its hiring fee**
UST the money that he paid to rent it will be enough to pay for the animal dying or for an injury
(בִּשְׂכָרוֹ)

Alternate translation: [for its rental fee] or [for the money paid to rent the animal]

Exodus 22:16

ULT	UST
If a man seduces a virgin who is not engaged, and if he lies with her, he shall surely pay her bride price to make her his wife.	*If a man tricks a virgin girl whose {father} has not yet promised her to be anyone's bride into having sexual intercourse with him, he must pay the bride price for her and marry her.*

ULT **If a man seduces a virgin who is not engaged**
UST If a man tricks a virgin girl whose {father} has not yet promised her to be anyone's bride
(וְכִי־יְפַתֶּה אִישׁ בְּתוּלָה אֲשֶׁר לֹא־אֹרָשָׂה)

Alternate translation: [If a man persuades a virgin who is not engaged that she wants to lie with him]

ULT **not engaged**
UST has not yet promised her to be anyone's bride
(לֹא־אֹרָשָׂה)

Alternate translation: [not promised to be married]

ULT **and if he lies**
UST into having sexual intercourse
(וְשָׁכַב)

Lying with someone refers to having sex. This is a polite way of referring to something unpleasant. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a different polite way of referring to this or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [if he has sex with her]

Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **he shall surely pay her bride price**
UST he must pay the bride price
(מָהֹר יִמְהָרֶנָּה)

The **bride price** was money paid to the family to compensate for the loss of their daughter.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a virgin	a virgin girl

Exodus 22:17

ULT	UST
If her father completely refuses to give her to him, he shall weigh out silver equal to the bride price of virgins.	*But if her father does not allow her to marry him, he must still pay the girl's father as much money as men pay to marry a virgin.*

ULT **to him, he shall weigh out**
UST him, he must still pay the girl's father
(לֹו & יִשְׁקֹל)

Here, **him** and **he** refer back to the man who seduced the virgin.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	money
virgins	as much … as men pay to marry a virgin

Exodus 22:18

ULT	UST
You shall not allow a sorceress to live.	*You must kill any woman who practices sorcery.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a sorceress	any woman who practices sorcery

Exodus 22:19

ULT	UST
Any lier with an animal shall surely be put to death.	*You must kill any person who has sexual intercourse with an animal.*

ULT Any lier with an animal
UST any person who has sexual intercourse with an animal
(כָּל־שֹׁכֵב עִם־בְּהֵמָה)

This refers to sexual relations. This is a polite way of referring to something unpleasant. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a different polite way of referring to this or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [Whoever has sexual relations with an animal]

Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT Any lier with an animal shall surely be put to death
UST You must kill any person who has sexual intercourse with an animal
(כָּל־שֹׁכֵב עִם־בְּהֵמָה מוֹת יוּמָת)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state **be put to death** in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [You must surely execute whoever lies with an animal]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an animal	an animal

Exodus 22:20

ULT	UST
A sacrificer to the gods except to Yahweh alone shall be completely destroyed.	*You must kill anyone who offers a sacrifice to any god other than Yahweh.*

ULT shall be completely destroyed
UST You must kill
(יָחֳרָם)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation (placed at the beginning of the sentence): [You must completely destroy]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
A sacrificer	anyone who offers a sacrifice
to the gods	to any god
to Yahweh	Yahweh
shall be completely destroyed	You must kill

Exodus 22:21

ULT	UST
You shall not wrong a sojourner and you shall not oppress him, for you were sojourners in the land of Egypt.	*You must not abuse or subjugate foreigners, because you were foreigners in Egypt.*

ULT You shall not wrong
UST You must not abuse
(לֹא־תוֹנֶה)

Alternate translation: [You must not mistreat] or [You must not cheat]

ULT for you were sojourners in the land of Egypt
UST because you were foreigners in Egypt
(כִּי־גֵרִים הֱיִיתֶם בְּאֶרֶץ מִצְרָיִם)

The Israelites are called to remember their previous condition, that they lived as foreign guests in Egypt. They came first to avoid the famine in Jacob and Joseph's time and were dependent on Egyptian hospitality. Later they were wronged and oppressed, and they are not to do that to those who sojourn with them. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [for you were wronged and oppressed as sojourners in the land of Egypt] or [for you also depended on hospitality while you lived as sojourners in Egypt]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
You shall … wrong	You must … abuse
a sojourner	foreigners
were sojourners	were foreigners
in the land of	in Egypt
Egypt	in Egypt

Exodus 22:22

ULT	UST
You shall not afflict any widow or fatherless child.	*You must not mistreat any widow or any orphan.*

ULT You shall not afflict any widow or fatherless child
UST You must not mistreat any widow or any orphan
(כָּל־אַלְמָנָה וְיָתוֹם לֹא תְעַנּוּן)

If this double negative would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [You must treat all widows and fatherless children fairly]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT widow
UST widow
(אַלְמָנָה)

Alternate translation: [woman whose husband has died]

ULT or fatherless child
UST or any orphan
(וְיָתוֹם)

Alternate translation: [or child with no parents]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
You shall … afflict	You must … mistreat

Exodus 22:23

ULT	UST
If you actually afflict them, and if they actually cry out to me, I will surely hear their cry,	*If you mistreat them and they ask me to help them, I will help them.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you … afflict	you mistreat
they … cry out	and they ask … to help them
their cry	I will help them

Exodus 22:24

ULT	UST
and my nose will burn, and I will kill you with the sword; your wives will become widows, and your sons will become fatherless.	*Because I will be angry with you, I will cause you to die in war. Your wives will become widows, and your children will become orphans.*

ULT **and my nose will burn**
UST Because I will be angry with you
(וְחָרָה אַפִּי)

This is an idiom meaning that Yahweh will be angry. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [and I will became very angry]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **with the sword**
UST in war
(בֶּחָרֶב)

To be killed **with the sword** is a metonym that means a person will die violently, perhaps while fighting in a war. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [violently]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
with the sword	in war

Exodus 22:25

ULT	UST
If you lend silver to my people, the poor with you, you shall not be like a creditor to him—you shall not put interest on him.	*If you lend money to any of my people who are poor, do not act like a moneylender by requiring him to pay interest on the money.*

ULT like a creditor
UST like a moneylender
(כְּנֹשֶׁה)

Alternate translation: [like one who lends money]

ULT you shall not put interest on him
UST not … by requiring him to pay interest on the money
(לֹא־תְשִׂימוּן עָלָיו נֶשֶׁךְ)

Alternate translation: [you must not charge him extra money for borrowing] or [you must not charge him extra money for the loan]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	money

Exodus 22:26

ULT	UST
If you actually take the clothing of your neighbor in pledge, you shall return it to him before the sun goes down,	*If you make him give you his cloak to guarantee that he will pay the money back, you must give the cloak back to him before the sun goes down,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you … take … in pledge	you make him give you … to guarantee that he will pay the money back
you shall return it	you must give the cloak back

Exodus 22:27

ULT	UST
for it is his only covering; it is his clothing for his skin. In what will he lie down? And it will be when he cries to me, that I will hear him, for I am gracious.	*because his cloak is the only thing he has to cover his body when he sleeps. When he complains about you to me, I will help him because I am merciful.*

ULT **is his only covering**
UST is the only thing he has to cover
(כסותה לְבַדָּהּ)

Alternate translation: [is his only coat] or [is his only garment to keep him warm]

ULT **In what will he lie down**
UST when he sleeps
(בַּמֶּה יִשְׁכָּב)

This question adds emphasis. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [He will have nothing to wear while he sleeps!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
he cries	he complains about you
am gracious	am merciful

Exodus 22:28

ULT	UST
You shall not act contemptuously toward God, and you shall not curse a ruler of your people.	*Do not insult God, and do not call on God to do harmful things to any ruler of your people.*

ULT You shall not act contemptuously toward God
UST Do not insult God
(אֱלֹהִים לֹא תְקַלֵּל)

Alternate translation: [Do not insult God] or [Do not speak evil about God]

ULT and you shall not curse a ruler of your people
UST and do not call on God to do harmful things to any ruler of your people
(וְנָשִׂיא בְעַמְּךָ לֹא תָאֹר)

Alternate translation: [and do not ask God to do bad things to your ruler]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
You shall … act contemptuously toward	Do … insult
God	God
and you shall … curse	do … call on God to do harmful things
a ruler of	and … to any ruler of

Exodus 22:29

ULT	UST
You shall not hold back from your full harvest or your presses. You shall give the firstborn of your sons to me.	*Do not withhold from me the best parts of the grain that you harvest or of the olive oil or the wine that you produce. You will give your firstborn sons to me.*

ULT You shall not hold back
UST Do not withhold from me
(לֹא תְאַחֵר)

If this double negative would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [You must bring all of your offerings]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from your full harvest	the best parts of the grain that you harvest
the firstborn of	your firstborn

Exodus 22:30

ULT	UST
You shall do the same to your ox and to your sheep. Seven days it will be with its mother; on the eighth day you shall give it to me.	*Similarly, your firstborn male cattle and sheep belong to me. After those animals are born, allow them to stay with their mothers for seven days. On the eighth day you will give them to me.*

ULT **Seven**
UST After those animals are born … for seven
(שִׁבְעַת)

Alternate translation: [7]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **on the eighth day**
UST On the eighth day
(בַּיּוֹם הַשְּׁמִינִי)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.

Alternate translation: [on day 8]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to your ox	your firstborn male cattle
and to your sheep	and sheep
days	days
on … day	On the eighth day

Exodus 22:31

ULT	UST
And you shall be men of holiness to me. And you shall not eat animal-torn-in-the-field meat. You shall throw it to the dogs.	*You are my set apart people, so do not eat any meat from any animal that a wild animal killed. Instead, throw it where the dogs can eat it.*

ULT And you shall be men of holiness to me
UST You are my set apart people
(וְאַנְשֵׁי־קֹדֶשׁ תִּהְיוּן לִי)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **holiness**, you can express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And you shall be holy men to men]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holiness	set apart

Exodus 23

Exodus 23 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter continues the list of case laws for Israel. It also touches on the patterns of life regarding the Sabbaths (23:10–12) and Festivals (23:14–19). At 23:20 Yahweh begins telling them about their future as they go to and live in the promised land.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Celebrations of feasts and festivals

The people of Israel were required to celebrate certain feasts and festivals. These were part of the law of Moses, and some are described in this chapter. Their purpose was to worship Yahweh and to remember the great things Yahweh has done for them.

Exodus 23:1

ULT	UST
You shall not take up a report of emptiness. You shall not put your hand with the wicked to be a witness of violence.	*Do not speak falsely in court. Do not help an evil man by testifying maliciously.*

Note:

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

ULT **You shall not take up a report of emptiness**
UST Do not speak falsely in court
(לֹא תִשָּׂא שֵׁמַע שָׁוְא)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **report** and **emptiness**, you can express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [You must not report emptily] or [You must not report falsely]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **a report of emptiness**
UST Do … speak falsely in court
(שֵׁמַע שָׁוְא)

Alternate translation: [a false testimony]

ULT **You shall not put your hand with the wicked**
UST Do not help an evil man
(אַל־תָּשֶׁת יָדְךָ עִם־רָשָׁע)

Here, to **put your hand with the wicked** means to support the lies that he is telling in order to harm someone else. The image is of putting out your hand to help him, to make him stronger than he would be on his own. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [You must not assist the wicked]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **a witness of violence**
UST by testifying maliciously
(עֵד חָמָס)

Here, **violence** can also mean "wrong." Either way, it means to harm another person by committing injustice (violence to justice) by lying. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [a false witness]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a report of	Do … speak falsely in court
a witness of	by testifying

Exodus 23:2

ULT	UST
You shall not follow a crowd into evil, nor shall you testify on legal matters to turn aside behind the crowd that turns aside.	*Do not join a group of people who are planning to do something evil. Do not tell the same lies they do and so keep the judge from deciding the case justly.*

ULT nor shall you testify
UST Do not tell
(וְלֹא־תַעֲנֶה)

Alternate translation: [and you also must not speak]

ULT You shall not follow a crowd into evil
UST Do not join a group of people who are planning to do something evil
(לֹא־תִהְיֶה אַחֲרֵי־רַבִּים לְרָעֹת)

This is a metaphor that describes one's agreeing with a group of people as if he actually walked behind that group. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [You must not do the evil that the crowd wants] or [You must not agree with the majority for evil]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT to turn aside … that turns aside
UST the same lies they do and so keep the judge from deciding the case justly
(לִנְטֹת & לְהַטֹּת)

The phrase "from justice" is omitted twice but should be understood in both cases. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: [to turn aside from justice … that turns aside from justice]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT to turn aside … that turns aside
UST the same lies they do and so keep the judge from deciding the case justly
(לִנְטֹת & לְהַטֹּת)

Here, **to turn aside** means to do illegal or immoral actions that result in an unjust ruling. Alternate translation: [to pervert justice … that perverts justice]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
into evil	who are planning to do something evil

ULT	UST
shall you testify	Do … tell

Exodus 23:3

ULT	UST
And you shall not favor the poor in his lawsuit.	*Do not prefer someone in court just because he is poor.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you shall … favor	Do … prefer

Exodus 23:4

ULT	UST
If you meet the ox of your enemy or his donkey going astray, you shall certainly bring it back to him.	*If you see someone's bull or donkey when it is wandering away loose, take it back to its owner even if the owner is your enemy.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ox of	bull
your enemy	someone's … the owner is your enemy
his donkey	donkey
you shall … bring it back	take it back … even if

Exodus 23:5

ULT	UST
If you see the donkey of someone who hates you fallen to the ground under its load, you shall refrain from leaving him. You shall surely release it with him.	*If you see someone's donkey that has fallen down because of its heavy load, help the owner to get the donkey up again even if he is someone who hates you. Do not just walk away without helping him.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the donkey of	donkey

Exodus 23:6

ULT	UST
You shall not turn aside justice for your poor in his lawsuit.	*Decide the cases of poor people who are on trial as fairly as you judge the cases of other people.*

ULT **You shall not turn aside justice for your poor in his lawsuit**
UST Decide the cases of poor people who are on trial as fairly as you judge the cases of other people
(לֹא תַטֶּה מִשְׁפַּט אֶבְיֹנְךָ בְּרִיבוֹ)

Alternate translation: [Do not decide to treat a poor man unjustly in legal matters]

ULT **in his lawsuit**
UST the cases of … who are on trial
(בְּרִיבוֹ)

Here, **in his lawsuit** refers to any matter that a court decides.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
justice	Decide … as fairly as you judge the cases of other people

Exodus 23:7

ULT	UST
You shall be far from a word of deception, and you shall not kill the innocent or righteous, for I will not justify the wicked.	*Do not deceive others. Do not kill guiltless or upright people, because I will not say that evil people are good.*

ULT You shall be far from a word of deception
UST Do not deceive others
(מִדְּבַר־שֶׁקֶר תִּרְחָק)

Here distance is used to tell the Israelites to have no part in deception. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Do not speak deceptively] or [Do not join a false matter]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT and … the innocent or righteous
UST guiltless or upright people
(וְנָקִי וְצַדִּיק)

These two terms mean very similar things, both of which contrast with **the wicked** later in the verse. If your language does not use repetition in this way, you can combine these phrases. Alternate translation: [and … the person who has not done anything wrong or the person who always does what is right] or [and … the person who does right and not wrong]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT I will not justify the wicked
UST I will not say that evil people are good
(לֹא־אַצְדִּיק רָשָׁע)

Alternate translation: [I will not find the wicked not guilty] or [I will not say that a wicked person is innocent]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
deception	Do not deceive others
and … the innocent	guiltless
or righteous	or upright people
I will … justify	I will … say that … are good
the wicked	evil people

Exodus 23:8

ULT	UST
And you shall not take a bribe, for the bribe blinds the clear-sighted, and it perverts the words of the righteous.	*Do not accept a bribe, because good judges who take bribes do not judge wisely, and they unfairly judge against the person who is right.*

ULT **for the bribe blinds the clear-sighted, and it perverts the words of the righteous**
UST because good judges who take bribes do not judge wisely, and they unfairly judge against the person who is right
(כִּ֣י הַשֹּׁ֗חַד יְעַוֵּר֙ פִּקְחִ֔ים וְיסַלֵּ֖ף דִּבְרֵ֥י צַדִּיקִֽים)

Here, a “bribe” is described as if it could take action itself that negatively affects justice. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for if you do, an evil person can give money to blind the clear-sighted and to pervert the words of the righteous]

Support Reference: Personification

ULT **for the bribe blinds the clear-sighted, and it perverts the words of the righteous**
UST because good judges who take bribes do not judge wisely, and they unfairly judge against the person who is right
(כִּ֣י הַשֹּׁ֗חַד יְעַוֵּר֙ פִּקְחִ֔ים וְיסַלֵּ֖ף דִּבְרֵ֥י צַדִּיקִֽים)

To **blind the clear-sighted** is a metaphor that means causing those who know what is right to act like they do not. And **perverts the words of the righteous** could mean causes those who would speak the truth (in court) to lie or causes the judge to give an evil judgment or causes those listening to **the words of the righteous** to choose to act as if they had heard something different. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for a bribe causes those who understand the right thing to do not to do it and causes good men to speak lies]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And … a bribe	a bribe
the bribe	good judges who take bribes do not judge wisely
and it perverts	and they unfairly judge against the person who is right
the righteous	and they unfairly judge against the person who is right

Exodus 23:9

ULT	UST
And you shall not oppress a foreigner, since you yourself know the soul of the foreigner, for you were foreigners in the land of Egypt.	*Do not mistreat foreigners who live among you. You know how foreigners often feel, because you lived as foreigners in Egypt.*

ULT the soul of the foreigner
UST how foreigners often feel
(אֶת־נֶ֥פֶשׁ הַגֵּֽר)

Alternate translation: [the feelings of the foreigner]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And … a foreigner	foreigners who live among you
you … know	know
the soul of	how foreigners often feel
the foreigner	how foreigners often feel
foreigners	as foreigners
in the land of	in Egypt
Egypt	in Egypt

Exodus 23:10

ULT	UST
And six years you shall sow your land and gather its produce.	*For six years, plant seeds in your ground and gather the harvest.*

ULT its produce
UST the harvest
(אֶת־תְּבוּאָתָהּ)

Alternate translation: [the food its plants produce]

ULT And six
UST For six
(וְשֵׁשׁ)

Alternate translation: [And 6]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you shall sow	plant seeds
your land	in your ground

Exodus 23:11

ULT	UST
But the seventh you shall let it drop and leave it alone, and the poor of your people shall eat. And the living things of the field shall eat the reminder. You shall do thus to your vineyard and to your olive orchard.	*But in the seventh year you must leave the ground fallow. Allow your poor countrymen to eat {what grows on its own}. Whatever is left over is for the wild animals to eat. Do the same thing with your grapevine and your olive trees.*

ULT **But the seventh**
UST But in the seventh year
(וְהַשְּׁבִיעִת)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here. Alternate translation: [But year 7]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **you shall let it drop and leave it alone**
UST you must leave the ground fallow
(תִּשְׁמְטֶנָּה וּנְטַשְׁתָּהּ)

This means to leave the land fallow, that is, in its natural state, unplowed, unplanted, not used to grow food.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and the poor of your people shall eat**
UST Allow your poor countrymen to eat {what grows on its own}
(וְאָכְלוּ֙ אֶבְיֹנֵ֣י עַמֶּ֔ךָ)

The poor can eat any food that grows on its own in a field that is not cultivated. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [so the poor among your people may harvest and eat any food that grows on its own in that field]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to your vineyard	with your grapevine
and to your olive orchard	and your olive trees

Exodus 23:12

ULT	UST
Six days you shall do your work, and on the seventh day you shall rest so that your ox and your donkey may rest, and the son of your female slave and the sojourner may be refreshed.	*You may work for six days each week, but on the seventh day you must rest and not work. Do this so that your ox and donkey may rest. The rest day will also let your slaves and the foreigners who live among you recuperate.*

ULT **your ox and your donkey**
UST your ox and donkey
(שׁוֹרְךָ֥ וַחֲמֹרֶֽךָ)

Alternate translation: [your work animals]

ULT **Six**
UST for six
(שֵׁ֣שֶׁת)

Alternate translation: [6]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **and on the seventh day**
UST but on the seventh day … The rest day
(וּבַיּ֣וֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִ֔י)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.
Alternate translation: [and on day 7]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **and the son of your female slave and the sojourner may be refreshed**
UST will also let your slaves and the foreigners who live among you recuperate
(וְיִנָּפַ֖שׁ בֶּן־אֲמָתְךָ֑ וְהַגֵּֽר)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and the son of your female slave and the sojourner may refresh themselves]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days each week
and on … day	but on
your ox	your ox
and your donkey	and donkey

ULT	UST
your female slave and the sojourner	your slaves and the foreigners who live among you

Exodus 23:13

ULT	UST
You shall take heed to everything that I have said to you. You shall not mention the names of other gods, nor let them be heard on your mouth.	*Make certain that you obey everything that I have commanded you to do. Do not pray to other gods. Do not even mention their names.*

ULT You shall take heed to
UST Make certain that you obey
(תִּשָּׁמֶרוּ)

Alternate translation: [Do] or [Obey]

ULT You shall not mention the names of other gods, nor let them be heard on your mouth
UST Do not pray to other gods. Do not even mention their names
(וְשֵׁם אֱלֹהִים אֲחֵרִים לֹא תַזְכִּירוּ לֹא יִשָּׁמַע עַל־פִּיךָ)

These two instructions mean almost the same thing. If saying the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: [Be sure never to speak the names of other gods]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT You shall not mention the names of other gods, nor let them be heard on your mouth
UST Do not pray to other gods. Do not even mention their names
(וְשֵׁם אֱלֹהִים אֲחֵרִים לֹא תַזְכִּירוּ לֹא יִשָּׁמַע עַל־פִּיךָ)

These parallel phrases probably mean praying to other gods. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [Do not pray to other gods, never let me hear you do that]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT nor let them be heard on your mouth
UST Do not pray to
(לֹא יִשָּׁמַע עַל־פִּיךָ)

To be **on your mouth** means to speak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [nor speak them]

Support Reference: Metonymy

> **ULT nor let them be heard on your mouth**
> **UST** Do not pray to
> (לֹ֥א יִשָּׁמַ֖ע עַל־פִּֽיךָ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Also see previous note. Alternate translation: [nor speak them so someone could hear them]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
You shall take heed to	Make certain that you obey
gods	gods … their

Exodus 23:14

ULT	UST
You shall celebrate me three times every year.	*Every year you must travel to three celebrations to honor me:*

ULT **three**
UST three
(שָׁלֹשׁ)

Alternate translation: [3]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
You shall celebrate	you must travel to … celebrations

Exodus 23:15

ULT	UST
You shall keep the Festival of Unleavened Bread. You shall eat unleavened bread seven days, as I commanded you, at the appointed time, the month of Aviv, for in it you came out from Egypt. And you shall not appear at my face empty-handed.	*Celebrate the Feast of Unleavened Bread the way that I commanded you: eat unleavened bread for seven days in the month called Aviv. I set this time because it is the month when you left Egypt. Always bring me an offering when you come to worship me.*

ULT **Aviv**
UST Aviv
(הָאָבִיב)

Aviv is the name of the first month of the Hebrew calendar. Aviv is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. See how you translated this in Exodus 13:4. You could convert the Hebrew day and month into an approximate date on the calendar that your culture uses. However, the Jews used a lunar calendar, so if you use a solar calendar, the date will be different every year and the translation will not be entirely accurate. So you may just want to give the number of the day and the name of the month on the Hebrew calendar, and say approximately what time of year that is on your calendar in a footnote.

Support Reference: Hebrew Months

ULT **seven**
UST for seven
(שִׁבְעַת)

Alternate translation: [7]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **And you shall not appear at my face empty-handed**
UST Always bring me an offering when you come to worship me
(וְלֹא־יֵרָאוּ פָנַי רֵיקָם)

Understatement is used here to emphasize that the Israelites must bring a suitable offering to Yahweh. If this double negative would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [Every single time you worship me you must bring an offering]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Festival of	the Feast of

ULT	UST
Unleavened Bread	Unleavened Bread
unleavened bread	unleavened bread
days	days
at the appointed time	I set this time
the month of	in the month called
from Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 23:16

ULT	UST
And {you shall keep} the Festival of the Harvest, {bringing} the first fruits of your labors which you sowed in the field. And {you shall keep} the Festival of the Gathering in the exiting of the year, {bringing} in your gathering of your labors from the field.	*{The second celebration is the Spring} Harvest Celebration. {During that celebration you must offer to me} the first parts of your crops that grow from the seeds that you planted. {The third celebration is} the Finished Harvest Celebration. That will be at the end of the year, after you finish harvesting everything you planted.*

ULT And {you shall keep} the Festival of the Harvest
UST {The second celebration is the Spring} Harvest Celebration
(וְחַג הַקָּצִיר)

Elsewhere this is called the “Festival of Weeks.” See Exodus 34:22 and Deuteronomy 16:9 and following.

ULT And {you shall keep} the Festival of the Gathering
UST {The third celebration is} the Finished Harvest Celebration
(וְחַג הָאָסִף)

This festival celebrated the final harvesting of all the crops for the year. This festival was also known as the Festival of Shelters or the Festival of Booths. The idea came from the practice of the farmers living in temporary booths, or huts, out in the fields to guard the crop as it ripened. See Deuteronomy 16:13. Alternate translation: [And the Festival of the Ingathering]

ULT in the exiting of the year
UST That will be at the end of the year
(בְּצֵאת הַשָּׁנָה)

The phrase **in the exiting of the year** means at the end of the year. The year is pictured as something that is leaving. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [as the year goes out]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And {you shall keep} the Festival of	The second celebration is the
the Harvest	{ … Spring} Harvest Celebration
{bringing} the first fruits	{During that celebration you must offer to me} the first parts of your crops

ULT	UST
of your labors	that grow from the seeds that you planted
And {you shall keep} the Festival of	{The third celebration is} the
the year	That will be at the end of the year
your labors	everything you planted

Exodus 23:17

ULT	UST
Three times in a year, all your males shall appear to the face of the Lord Yahweh.	*These three times every year, all the men must gather together to worship me, the Lord Yahweh.*

ULT shall appear to the face of the Lord Yahweh
UST must gather together to worship me, the Lord Yahweh
(יֵרָאֶה & אֶל־פְּנֵי הָאָדֹן ו יְהוָה)

Here, to **appear to the face of the Lord Yahweh** means to gather to worship. **To the face** is a metonym for Yahweh's presence, referring to worship. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [must come to worship the Lord Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Lord	the Lord
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 23:18

ULT	UST
You shall not sacrifice the blood of my sacrifice with leavened bread, and the fat of my festival shall not remain all night until morning.	*Do not sacrifice bread you made with yeast along with blood from an animal sacrifice. Do not keep the fat from the animals you sacrificed at my celebration until the next morning. {Burn it completely.}*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
You shall … sacrifice	Do … sacrifice
my sacrifice	from an animal sacrifice
my festival	from the animals you sacrificed at my celebration

Exodus 23:19

ULT	UST
You shall bring the first of the firstfruits of your ground to the house of Yahweh your God. You shall not boil a young goat in the milk of its mother.	*{Each year, when you harvest your crops,} take the best of what you harvest first, go to the place where you worship me, and give it to me, Yahweh your God. {When you kill} a young animal, do not cook it by boiling it in its mother's milk.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
firstfruits of	what you harvest first
to the house of	to the place where you worship … and give it to
Yahweh	me … me, Yahweh
your God	your God
a young goat	{When you kill} a young animal … it … it

Exodus 23:20

ULT	UST
Behold, I am about to send an angel before your face to guard you on the way and to bring you to the place that I have prepared.	*Look! I am going to send an angel ahead of you to guard you as you travel and to lead you to the place that I have made ready for you.*

ULT before your face
UST ahead of you
(לְפָנֶיךָ)

This means “in front of you.” Alternate translation: [in front of you]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an angel	an angel

Exodus 23:21

ULT	UST
Be guarded from his face and listen to his voice. Do not cause bitterness in him, for he will not bear with your transgressions, for my name is within him.	*Respect and obey him. Do not make him angry, because he will not forgive your sin, because my authority and presence is in him.*

ULT **Be guarded from his face**
UST Respect
(הִשָּׁמֶר מִפָּנָיו)

This means to respect him; **from his face** refers to his person. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [Show respect to him]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Be guarded from his face**
UST Respect
(הִשָּׁמֶר מִפָּנָיו)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Pay attention to him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Do not cause bitterness in him, for he will not bear with your transgressions, for my name is within him**
UST Do not make him angry, because he will not forgive your sin, because my authority and presence is in him
(אַל־תַּמֵּר בּוֹ כִּי לֹא יִשָּׂא לְפִשְׁעֲכֶם כִּי שְׁמִי בְּקִרְבּוֹ)

There are two reasons given for the instruction **do not cause bitterness in him**. They are connected in such a way that you could say: “Because my name is within him, he will not forgive your transgressions; therefore, do not cause bitterness in him.” The relation of the **name** and **forgiveness** is not explicit. Alternate translation: [If you provoke him, he will not pardon your sins, for my name is within him]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **my name is within him**
UST my authority and presence is in him
(שְׁמִי בְּקִרְבּוֹ)

Here, **name** refers to God's authority. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [he has my authority]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and listen to his voice**
UST and obey him
(וּשְׁמַע בְּקֹלוֹ)

Here, **voice** represents what the angel says. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and obey what he says]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Be guarded	Respect
your transgressions	your sin

Exodus 23:22

ULT	UST
For if you indeed heed his voice and do everything that I speak, then I will be an enemy to your enemies and I will be an adversary to your adversaries.	*But if you obey his commands well and if you do all that I tell you to do, I will fight against all of your enemies and adversaries.*

ULT **if you indeed heed his voice**
UST if you obey his commands well
(אִם־שָׁמֹעַ תִּשְׁמַע בְּקֹלוֹ)

Here, **voice** represents what the angel says. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [if you carefully obey what he says]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **then I will be an enemy to your enemies and I will be an adversary to your adversaries**
UST I will fight against all of your enemies and adversaries
(וְאָיַבְתִּי אֶת־אֹיְבֶיךָ וְצַרְתִּי אֶת־צֹרְרֶיךָ)

These two phrases mean the same thing and are used for emphasis. If saying the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one.

Support Reference: Parallelism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to your enemies	your enemies
to your adversaries	and adversaries

Exodus 23:23

ULT	UST
For my angel will go before your face and bring you to the Amorites and the Hittites and the Perizzites and the Canaanites, the Hivites and the Jebusites. I will annihilate them.	*Then my angel will go ahead of you and will take you to where the Hittites, the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites live, and I will completely get rid of them.*

ULT **before your face**
UST ahead of you
(לְפָנֶיךָ)

This phrase, **before your face**, means "in front of you." Alternate translation: [in front of you]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
my angel	my angel
the Amorites	the … Amorites
and the Hittites	Hittites, the
and the Perizzites	the Canaanites
and the Canaanites	the Perizzites
the Hivites	the Hivites
and the Jebusites	and the Jebusites
I will annihilate them	and I will completely get rid of them

Exodus 23:24

ULT	UST
You shall not bow down to their gods, and you shall not serve them, and you shall not do as they do. For you shall completely overthrow them and completely smash their stone pillars.	*Do not bow down before their gods or worship them. Do not do the things that they {think that their gods want them to} do. Instead, destroy {their gods} and smash to pieces their sacred stones.*

ULT and you shall not do as they do

UST Do not do the things that they {think that their gods want them to} do
(וְלֹא תַעֲשֶׂה כְּמַעֲשֵׂיהֶם)

The Israelites must not live as the people who worship other gods. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [and you must not live as the people live who worship those gods]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
You shall … bow down	Do … bow down
to their gods	before their gods
you shall … serve them	worship them

Exodus 23:25

ULT	UST
And you shall serve Yahweh your God, and he will bless your bread and your water. And I will remove sickness from among you.	*You must worship me, Yahweh your God. If you do that, I will bless your food and water, and I will protect you from becoming sick.*

ULT and he will bless your bread and your water
UST If you do that, I will bless your food and water
(וּבֵרַךְ אֶת־לַחְמְךָ וְאֶת־מֵימֶיךָ)

Here, **your bread and your water** is a merism that means food and drink. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and he will bless your food and drink] or [and he will bless you by giving you food and drink]

Support Reference: Merism

ULT and he will bless … And I will remove
UST If you do that, I will bless … and I will protect
(וּבֵרַךְ & וַהֲסִרֹתִי)

Yahweh switched between the first and third pronoun to refer to himself. Here, both **he** and **I** refer to Yahweh.

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And you shall serve	You must worship
Yahweh	me, Yahweh
your God	your God
and he will bless	If you do that, I will bless
your bread	your food

Exodus 23:26

ULT	UST
There will not be a miscarriage or a barren woman in your land. I will fulfill the number of your days.	*No women in your land will have miscarriages, and no women will be unable to become pregnant. I will enable you to live a long time.*

ULT There will not be a miscarriage or a barren woman
UST No women … will have miscarriages, and no women will be unable to become pregnant
(לֹא תִהְיֶה מְשַׁכֵּלָה וַעֲקָרָה)

If this double negative would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [Every woman will be able to become pregnant and give birth to healthy babies]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT a miscarriage
UST miscarriages
(מְשַׁכֵּלָה)

to have a pregnancy end early and unexpectedly, resulting in the death of the baby

ULT I will fulfill the number of your days
UST I will enable you to live a long time
(אֶת־מִסְפַּר יָמֶיךָ אֲמַלֵּא)

This is an idiom that means to live a long time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [I will give you a long life]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
or a barren woman	and no women will be unable to become pregnant
in your land	in your land
your days	I will enable you to live a long time

Exodus 23:27

ULT	UST
I will send my terror before your face, and I will confuse all of the people into whom you will go, and I will give the back of the neck of all of your enemies to you.	*{I will go} ahead of you and terrify and confuse all the people into whose {lands} you are going. {When you fight} your enemies, I will make them run away from you.*

ULT before your face
UST {I will go} ahead of you
(לְפָנֶ֑יךָ)

This means “ahead of you.” Alternate translation: [before you]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT and I will give the back of the neck of all of your enemies to you
UST {When you fight} your enemies, I will make them run away from you
(וְנָתַתִּי֙ אֶת־כָּל־אֹיְבֶ֔יךָ אֵלֶ֖יךָ עֹ֑רֶף)

This is an idiom meaning that the enemies will turn and run away (showing the Israelites the backs of their necks). If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [and I will make all of your enemies flee]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
my terror	and terrify
your enemies	your enemies

Exodus 23:28

ULT	UST
And I will send the hornet before your face, and it will drive out the Hivites, Canaanites, and the Hittites from before your face.	*I will send wasps ahead of you who will drive the Hivites, Canaanites, and the Hittites from your land.*

ULT before your face … from before your face
UST ahead of you … from your land
(לְפָנֶיךָ & מִלְּפָנֶיךָ)

This means “ahead of you.” Alternate translation: [before you … from before you]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT the hornet
UST wasps
(אֶת־הַצִּרְעָה)

The **hornet** is a flying insect that can sting people and cause pain.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT the hornet … and it will drive out
UST wasps … who will drive
(אֶת־הַצִּרְעָה & וְגֵרְשָׁה)

Here, **hornet** is used in the singular but refers to a large group of the flying, stinging insects. **It** agrees in number with **hornet**. It may be necessary to translate as a plural. Alternate translation: [hornets … and they will drive out]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Hivites … the	the Hivites
the … Canaanites	Canaanites
Hittites	and the Hittites

Exodus 23:29

ULT	UST
I will not drive them out from before your face in one year, lest the land become desolate and the animals of the field become too many for you.	*I will not remove all of them in less than one year. If I did that, your land would become deserted, and there would be very many wild animals that would attack you.*

ULT from before your face
UST I will … remove all of them
(מִפָּנֶיךָ)

This means “ahead of you.” Alternate translation: [from before you]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT lest the land become desolate
UST If I did that, your land would become deserted
(פֶּן־תִּהְיֶה הָאָרֶץ שְׁמָמָה)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could make the rest of the idea explicit. Alternate translation: [lest the land become desolate because no one would be living in the land]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in … year	in less than one year
the land	your land
desolate	deserted

Exodus 23:30

ULT	UST
I will drive them out little by little from before your face until you become fruitful and possess the land.	*I will remove those people groups slowly, a few at a time, until the number of your people increases and you are able to live everywhere in the land.*

ULT from before your face
UST I will remove those people groups
(מִפָּנֶיךָ)

This means “ahead of you.” Alternate translation: [from before you]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you become fruitful	the number of your people increases
and possess	and you are able to live everywhere
the land	in the land

Exodus 23:31

ULT	UST
And I will set your borders from the Sea of Reeds to the sea of the Philistines, and from the wilderness to the river. For I will give the inhabitants of the land into your hand. And you will drive them out from before your faces.	*I will make your country's borders be from the Sea of Reeds {in the southeast} to the sea by the Philistines {in the northwest}, and from the wilderness {in the southwest} to the {Euphrates} River {in the northeast of the country}. I will give you the power to remove the people who live there, so that you will remove them as you occupy more of the country.*

ULT from before your faces

UST as you occupy more … the country
(מִפָּנֶיךָ)

This means "ahead of you." Alternate translation: [from before you]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from the Sea of Reeds	from the Sea of Reeds {in the southeast}
the sea of	the sea by the Philistines {in the northwest}
the Philistines	the sea by the Philistines {in the northwest}
and from the wilderness	and from the wilderness {in the southwest} … of
the river	the {Euphrates} River {in the northeast … } … the country … of
the land	the people who live there

Exodus 23:32

ULT	UST
You shall not make a covenant with them or with their gods.	*You must not make any agreement with those people or with their gods.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a covenant	any agreement
or with their gods	or with their gods

Exodus 23:33

ULT	UST
They shall not live in your land, lest they cause you to sin against me; for you will serve their gods. Surely it will become a snare for you.'"	*Do not allow those people to live in your land, so they do not cause you to sin against me by enticing you to worship their gods."*

ULT **Surely it will become a snare for you**
UST by enticing you
(כִּי־יִהְיֶה לְךָ לְמוֹקֵשׁ)

This means worshiping other gods will lead the people of Israel to certain destruction, as if they were an animal caught in a hunter's trap. It could also be saying that leaving the other people around will make it so that the Israelites see the other people's worship and are lured (like in a trap) into worshiping the other gods, which is a sin against Yahweh. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Worshiping them will surely destroy you]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in your land	in your land
they cause … to sin	they do not cause … to sin
you will serve	to worship
their gods	their gods
a snare	enticing

Exodus 24

Exodus 24 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–2: Yahweh summons Moses
- v. 3–8: Moses reads the covenant and the people accept it; this is ritually marked by sacrifice and sprinkling of blood
- v. 9–11: Moses and Israelite elders go up the mountain, see God and eat
- v. 12–15: Yahweh summons Moses further up the mountain without the other elders, and he goes
- v. 16–18: Description of Yahweh's glory, and Moses is at the top of the mountain

Translation Issues in This Chapter

- there are a number of similes used to describe people's encounter with God
- "covenant" appears in a variety of ways
- the mountain, the mountain of God, and Mount Sinai are all the same location

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Moses' covenant

The people of Israel promise to obey the covenant Yahweh made with Moses. Their continued blessings were contingent upon their obedience to this covenant. (See: promise, promised; and covenant)

God's holiness

Because Yahweh is perfectly holy, he can only be approached in a certain way. Because of this, only Moses was allowed near Yahweh. This is also why Yahweh is described as a "devouring fire." (See: holy, holiness, unholy, sacred)

Exodus 24:1

ULT	UST
And he said to Moses, "Come up to Yahweh—you and Aaron, Nadab and Abihu and seventy from the elders of Israel, and you shall bow down from a distance.	*Then Yahweh said to Moses. "Come up to me {on top of this mountain}, you and Aaron and {his sons} Nadab and Abihu. Also take along seventy of the Israelite elders. You will all worship me at an {appropriate} distance.*

ULT Nadab and Abihu
UST and {his sons} Nadab and Abihu
(נָדָב וַאֲבִיהוּא)

A new scene begins here, which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT Nadab and Abihu
UST and {his sons} Nadab and Abihu
(נָדָב וַאֲבִיהוּא)

Nadab and Abihu are men's names. See how you translated these names in Exodus 6:23.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT to Yahweh
UST to me {on top of this mountain}
(אֶל־יְהוָה)

Yahweh refers to himself in the third person. If this is confusing in your language, you may use the first person. Alternate translation: [to me]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT and seventy
UST Also take along seventy of
(וְשִׁבְעִים)

Alternate translation: [and 70]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT and you shall bow down
UST You will all worship me
(וְהִשְׁתַּחֲוִיתֶם)

Here, after **bow down**, "to me" is implied. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [and you shall bow down to me]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	me
and Aaron	and Aaron
from the elders of	elders
Israel	the Israelite
and you shall bow down	You will all worship me

Exodus 24:2

ULT	UST
And Moses alone shall come near to Yahweh, and they shall not come near, and the people shall not come up with him."	*Moses, you will come near to me alone. The others must not come near, and the rest of the people must not come up the mountain with you."*

ULT and they
UST The others
(וְהֵם)

Here, **they** refers to all the other people mentioned in 24:1. Alternate translation: [and Aaron, Nadab, Abihu, and the elders]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT to Yahweh
UST to me
(אֶל־יְהוָה)

Yahweh refers to himself in the third person. If this is confusing in your language, you may use the first person. Alternate translation: [to me]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses, you
Yahweh	me

Exodus 24:3

ULT	UST
And Moses went and recounted to the people all of the words of Yahweh and all of the ordinances. And all of the people answered with one voice and said, "We will do all the things that Yahweh has spoken."	*Moses went and told the people everything that Yahweh had said and all that he had commanded. The people all replied together, saying, "We will do everything that Yahweh has told us to do."*

Note:

Verses 3–8 tell of a different scene than the rest of the chapter, which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language. It seems that there were some preparations needed before Moses and the elders could go up to meet Yahweh.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

Note:

See Exodus 19:8 for how you translated a very similar event.

ULT **with one voice**
UST replied together
(קוֹל אֶחָד)

Here, **with one voice** is an idiom that means the people were in complete agreement. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [together] or [in agreement]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
the words of Yahweh	Yahweh had said
the ordinances	he had commanded
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 24:4

ULT	UST
And Moses wrote all of the words of Yahweh. And he rose early in the morning and built an altar at the bottom of the mountain and 12 stone pillars according to the twelve tribes of Israel.	*Then Moses wrote down everything that Yahweh had commanded. Moses woke early the next morning and built an altar at the bottom of the mountain. He also set up twelve stones, one for each of the Israelite tribes.*

ULT at the bottom of the mountain
UST at the bottom of the mountain
(תַּחַת הָהָר)

Alternate translation: [at the base of the mountain]

ULT and 12 … according to the twelve
UST He also set up twelve … one for each of the
(וּשְׁתֵּים עֶשְׂרֵה & לִשְׁנֵים עָשָׂר)

Alternate translation: [and 12 … according to the 12]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
the words of Yahweh	Yahweh had commanded
an altar	an altar
tribes of	Israelite tribes
Israel	Israelite tribes

Exodus 24:5

ULT	UST
He sent the young men of the sons of Israel, and they offered burnt offerings and sacrificed peace offerings of bulls to Yahweh.	*Then he sent some young Israelite men to burn sacrifices to Yahweh and to sacrifice some bulls as offerings to promise friendship with Yahweh.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
burnt offerings	to burn sacrifices
and sacrificed	and to sacrifice
peace offerings	as offerings to promise friendship with Yahweh
of bulls	some bulls
to Yahweh	to Yahweh

Exodus 24:6

ULT	UST
And Moses took half of the blood and put it into basins and sprinkled half of the blood onto the altar.	*Moses took half of the blood of the animals that they slaughtered and put it in bowls. The other half of the blood he threw against the altar.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
the altar	the altar

Exodus 24:7

ULT	UST
And he took the Book of the Covenant and read it aloud in the ears of the people. And they said, "We will do and hear all that Yahweh has spoken."	*Then he loudly read the scroll on which he had written everything that Yahweh and the people were promising each other so all the people could hear it. Then all the people said, "We will do everything that Yahweh has told us to do. We will obey everything."*

ULT the Book of the Covenant

UST the scroll on which he had written everything that Yahweh and the people were promising each other

(סֵפֶר הַבְּרִית)

Here, **book** does not mean something in our modern format. It was likely a piece of papyrus (an early form of paper made from reeds) or animal skin that rolled up. Alternate translation: [the Covenant he had written down]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Covenant	the scroll on which he had written everything that Yahweh and the people were promising each other
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 24:8

ULT	UST
And Moses took the blood and sprinkled it onto the people. And he said, "Behold! The blood of the covenant that Yahweh has cut with you according to all of these words."	*Then Moses took the blood {that was in the bowls} and threw it on the people. He said, "This is the blood that confirms what Yahweh is agreeing with you—what you just heard and agreed to."*

ULT **the blood**
UST the blood {that was in the bowls}
(אֶת־הַדָּ֔ם)

This refers to **the blood** that Moses had put into the bowls. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **according to all of these words**
UST what you just heard and agreed to
(עַל כָּל־הַדְּבָרִ֖ים הָאֵֽלֶּה)

These words refers to what Moses just read aloud to them, that is, Yahweh's commands. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [which I just read aloud to you and you agreed to]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
the covenant	that confirms
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 24:9

ULT	UST
And Moses and Aaron, Nadab and Abihu and seventy from the elders of Israel went up.	*Then Moses and Aaron along with Nadab, Abihu, and the seventy Israelite elders went up {the mountain},*

ULT **Nadab and Abihu**
UST along with Nadab, Abihu
(נָדָב וַאֲבִיהוּא)

A new scene begins with this verse, which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language. Here the narrative is connected to 24:2.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **Nadab and Abihu**
UST along with Nadab, Abihu
(נָדָב וַאֲבִיהוּא)

Nadab and Abihu are men's names. See how you translated these names in Exodus 6:23.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **And … went up**
UST went up {the mountain}
(וַיַּעַל)

The men **went up** the mountain. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Then Moses
and Aaron	and Aaron
Israel	Israelite

Exodus 24:10

ULT	UST
And they saw the God of Israel. And under his feet was like tile made of sapphire, and its substance was as the sky in purity.	*and they saw God, the one whom the Israelites worship. Under his feet was something like a pavement made of blue stones called sapphires. They were as clear as the sky is when there are no clouds.*

ULT **And under his feet**
UST Under his feet
(וְתַחַת רַגְלָיו)

And under his feet speaks of God as if he had human feet. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And below where God was]

Support Reference: Personification

ULT **tile … of**
UST a pavement
(לִבְנַת)

a hard surface for walking or riding

ULT **sapphire**
UST made of blue stones called sapphires
(הַסַּפִּיר)

A **sapphire** is a gemstone that is blue in color. If there is a blue gemstone that your people are familiar with, you may use it here, as the exact gemstone is not certain. You may also describe it. Alternate translation: [a blue gemstone]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and its substance was as the sky in purity**
UST They were as clear as the sky is when there are no clouds
(וּכְעֶצֶם הַשָּׁמַיִם לָטֹהַר)

The point of this comparison is the blueness of the tile. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and it was blue like the sky]

Support Reference: Simile

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the God of	God, the one whom

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites worship
the sky	the sky is

Exodus 24:11

ULT	UST
And he did not send out his hand to the leaders of the sons of Israel. And they saw God, and they ate and drank.	*God did not harm those Israelite elders {even though they saw him}. They saw God, and they ate and drank together.*

ULT **And he did not send out his hand to the leaders of the sons of Israel**
UST God did not harm those Israelite elders {even though they saw him}
(וְאֶל־אֲצִילֵ֣י בְנֵֽי־יִשְׂרָאֵ֗ל לֹ֤א שָׁלַח֙ יָדֹ֔ו)

Here, **his hand** refers to his judgement. This means that God did not harm the leaders. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [God did not harm the Israelite leaders]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And he did not send out his hand to the leaders of the sons of Israel**
UST God did not harm those Israelite elders {even though they saw him}
(וְאֶל־אֲצִילֵ֣י בְנֵֽי־יִשְׂרָאֵ֗ל לֹ֤א שָׁלַח֙ יָדֹ֔ו)

What would be expected is that they would die if they saw God. The Israelite elders ability to see God and live is unexpected. Be sure your translation conveys that. Alternate translation: [However, he did not send out his hand to the leaders of the sons of Israel]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	those Israelite elders
God	God

Exodus 24:12

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Come up to me to the mountain and be there. And I will give you the tablets of stone and the law and the commandments that I have written to teach them."	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Come up to me on top of this mountain and wait there. I will give you stone slabs, my law, and my commandments, all of which I have written so that you may teach them to the people."*

ULT to teach them

UST so that you may teach them to the people
(לְהוֹרֹתָֽם)

This means so that Moses and the other Israelite leaders could teach the laws and commandments to the Israelite people. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
and the law	my law

Exodus 24:13

ULT	UST
And Moses and his servant Joshua got up, and Moses went up to the mountain of God.	*Then Moses started out with his assistant Joshua. He went {part of the way} up the mountain where God was.*

ULT and … Joshua
UST with … Joshua
(וַיְהוֹשֻׁעַ)

Joshua is introduced here again. Use the natural form in your language for reintroducing a character.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT and his servant Joshua
UST with his assistant Joshua
(וַיְהוֹשֻׁעַ מְשָׁרְתֹו)

The word translated **servant** here is usually associated with a higher position, like a government minister. Avoid using a word that implies a lower-class serving role. Alternate translation: [and Joshua his assistant]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
his servant	his assistant
and … Joshua	with … Joshua
Moses	He
the mountain of God	the mountain where God was

Exodus 24:14

ULT	UST
And he had said to the elders, "Wait for us in this place until we return to you. And behold! Aaron and Hur are with you; Whoever is a master of words may come near to them."	*Moses told the elders, "Stay here until we return. Do not forget that Aaron and Hur will be with you, so if anyone disputes {with his neighbor while I am gone}, he can go to them {and they will judge it}."*

ULT **And he had said to the elders**
UST Moses told the elders
(וְאֶל־הַזְּקֵנִים אָמַר)

The structure of the Hebrew indicates but does not require that this speech by Moses happened before 24:13 (hence **had said**). The ULT takes this view, however, for languages where it is hard to express events out of order, the UST reflects the other grammatical possibility and says in 24:13 that Moses started up the mountain and in 24:15 that he went the rest of the way up the mountain. Following this, you can view this verse as if Moses paused and gave these final instructions as he was leaving the elders behind, thus keeping a sequential structure. Either approach is permissible by the text, but the approach of the ULT is preferred, if possible.

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT **us**
UST Stay
(לָנוּ)

Alternate translation: [Joshua and me]

ULT **and Hur**
UST and Hur
(וְחוּר)

Hur is a man's name. See how you translated this name in Exodus 17:10.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **And behold**
UST Do not forget that
(וְהִנֵּה)

Behold is used to draw attention to important information that Moses is about to tell them. It is frequently omitted. If your language uses a statement to draw attention to important information, you should consider using it here. Alternate translation: [Remember]

ULT **Whoever is a master of words**
UST so if anyone disputes {with his neighbor while I am gone}
(מִי־בַעַל דְּבָרִים)

This is an idiom that means that someone has a legal dispute or complaint. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [Whoever has a legal claim] or [Anyone with a law case]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the elders	the elders
Aaron	Aaron

Exodus 24:15

ULT	UST
And Moses went up to the mountain, and a cloud covered the mountain.	*Then Moses went {the rest of the way} up the mountain, and the cloud covered the mountain.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses

Exodus 24:16

ULT	UST
And the glory of Yahweh settled on Mount Sinai, and the cloud covered it six days. And on the seventh day he called to Moses from within the cloud.	*Yahweh's glory came down onto the mountain and the cloud covered it for six days. On the seventh day, Yahweh called to Moses from the middle of the cloud.*

ULT **the glory of Yahweh**
UST Yahweh's glory
(כְּבוֹד־יְהוָה)

This was the brilliant light of Yahweh's presence. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the brilliant light showing Yahweh's presence]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **six**
UST for six
(שֵׁשֶׁת)

Alternate translation: [6]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **on the seventh day**
UST On the seventh day
(בַּיּוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here. Alternate translation: [on day number 7]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the glory of	Yahweh's glory
Yahweh	Yahweh's glory
days	days
on … day	On … day
And … he called	Yahweh called
Moses	Moses

Exodus 24:17

ULT	UST
And the appearance of the glory of Yahweh was like a devouring fire on the top of the mountain in the eyes of the sons of Israel.	*To the Israelites, Yahweh's glory looked like a fire consuming the top of the mountain.*

ULT was like a devouring fire
UST like a fire consuming
(כְּאֵשׁ אֹכֶלֶת)

This means the glory of Yahweh was very large and seemed to burn brightly, like a fire. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [like a big fire burning]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT in the eyes of the sons of Israel
UST To the Israelites … looked
(לְעֵינֵי בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Their **eyes** represent seeing, and seeing represents their thoughts or judgment about what they saw. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent idiom from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. See how you translated a similar expression in 15:26. Alternate translation: [to the Israelites]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the glory of	glory
Yahweh	Yahweh's
devouring	consuming
Israel	To the Israelites

Exodus 24:18

ULT	UST
And Moses entered the middle of the cloud and went up to the mountain. And Moses was on the mountain 40 days and 40 nights.	*Moses went into the cloud on top of the mountain and was there for 40 days and nights.*

ULT 40 days and 40 nights

UST for 40 days and nights

(אַרְבָּעִים יוֹם וְאַרְבָּעִים לָיְלָה)

Alternate translation: [forty days and forty nights]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Moses	Moses
days	days

Exodus 25

Exodus 25 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–7: Instructions for gifts the Israelites may give to help build the place where they will worship God
- v. 8–9: Introductory building instructions
- v. 10–22: Instructions for building the Box of the Testimony
- v. 23–30: Instructions for building the table
- v. 31–39: Instructions for building the lampstand
- v. 40: Summary instruction

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

- The tent of meeting and Box of the Testimony are introduced in this chapter.
- Translators will need to take special care in translating the concept of atonement.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

- There are many unfamiliar items in this chapter. Fortunately they are mostly all physical items. Translators will have to try to understand what each item is and translate it into the closest equivalent in their culture. It may be helpful for translators to try to find images depicting some of the items the Israelites were to make.
- There are some biblical weights and measurements that translators may not have encountered before.
- From 25:11 until the end of chapter 30, almost every instruction regarding the construction of the tent of meeting and all the associated items are given with a singular form of "you," as if Moses himself would make them. However, it is clear and made explicit in chapter 31 that certain skilled craftsmen will receive these

instructions from Moses and make these items. In some languages you may need to change from second to third person throughout, following the pattern in 25:10. There are a few exceptions which will have their own note. See: First, Second or Third Person; and Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups.

Exodus 25:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh said to Moses,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 25:2

ULT	UST
“Speak to the sons of Israel, and they shall take a contribution for me. You shall take my contribution from every man whose heart incites him.	*“Tell the Israelites that everyone who wants to may give a gift to me. You will receive their gifts for me.*

ULT **Speak**
UST Tell … that
(דַּבֵּר)

The beginning of this verse marks the start of a very long direct quote which continues until the end of 30:10. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with an opening first-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the beginning of a quotation.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **Speak to the sons of Israel, and they shall take a contribution for me**
UST Tell the Israelites that … may give a gift to me
(דַּבֵּר אֶל־בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל וְיִקְחוּ־לִי תְּרוּמָה)

In some languages you may have to make **and they shall take a contribution for me** a direct quote. Note that this will make it a second-level quotation and you will need to mark it with second-level quotation marking if your language uses them. Alternate translation: [Say to the sons of Israel, ‘You shall take a contribution for me.’]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **whose heart incites him**
UST who wants to
(אֲשֶׁר יִדְּבֶנּוּ לִבּוֹ)

This is an idiom that indicates a person’s desire to give an offering. Many languages will have a similar idiom, though the body part may vary. Alternate translation: [who wants to give one]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **You shall take**
UST You will receive
(תִּקְחוּ)

The word **you** is plural and refers to Moses and the leaders.

Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 25:3

ULT	UST
And these are the contributions that you shall receive from them: gold and silver and bronze	*These are the types of gifts that you should collect from them: gold, silver, bronze,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
and silver	silver
and bronze	bronze

Exodus 25:4

ULT	UST
and blue and purple and worm of scarlet and fine linen and goats' hair	*{cloth dyed} blue, {cloth dyed} purple, {cloth dyed} bright red, fine linen, {cloth made from} goats' hair,*

ULT and blue and purple and worm of scarlet
UST {cloth dyed} blue, {cloth dyed} purple, {cloth dyed} bright red
(וּתְכֵלֶת וְאַרְגָּמָן וְתוֹלַעַת שָׁנִי)

This could mean: (1) "material that is dyed blue, purple, and scarlet," probably wool yarn, or (2) "blue, purple and scarlet dye" to dye the linen. The original audience would have known what was meant. This material seems to have been used for embroidery later, so "yarn" or "thread" may be the best understanding.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT and worm of scarlet
UST {cloth dyed} bright red
(וְתוֹלַעַת שָׁנִי)

A bright red color for dying cloth was extracted from these worms. Alternate translation: [and bright red]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and purple	{cloth dyed} purple

Exodus 25:5

ULT	UST
and reddened hides of rams and hides of sea cows and wood of acacias,	*red ram skins, fine leather hides, the hard wood from acacia trees,*

ULT reddened
UST red
(מְאָדָּמִים)

When animal skins are tanned (processed into usable leather), they become reddish in color. It is not clear whether these hides are dyed red or simply reddened in the tanning process. Alternate translation: [tanned]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT sea cows
UST fine leather hides
(תְּחָשִׁים)

The meaning of this word is not known. It may refer to some water mammal that has skin that can be made into a high-quality leather. See sea cows on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sirenia

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT acacias
UST the hard wood from acacia trees
(שִׁטִּים)

A small tree with spreading foliage and durable wood. See on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shittah_tree

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
rams	ram

Exodus 25:6

ULT	UST
oil for the light; spices for the oil of anointing and for the incense of fragrance;	*{olive} oil to burn in the lamps, spices to mix with the {olive} oil for anointing {the priests}, and spices to mix into the sweet-smelling incense,*

ULT spices
UST spices … spices
(בְּשָׂמִים)

Here, **spices** are things made from parts of plants that people dry and then grind into a powder to put in oil or food, giving it a particular smell or flavor.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
oil	{olive} oil
anointing	to mix with the {olive} oil for anointing {the priests}
and for the incense of	and … to mix into the sweet-smelling incense

Exodus 25:7

ULT	UST
stones of onyx and precious stones for settings for the ephod and for the breastpiece.	*onyx stones and other expensive stones for fastening to the priest's sacred apron and for putting on the chest pouch that attaches to the apron.*

ULT **stones of onyx**
UST onyx stones and
(אַבְנֵי־שֹׁהַם)

An **onyx** is a valuable stone that has layers of white and black, red, or brown. If this stone is unknown to your people, consider translating it by using a word for a familiar stone with a similar pattern, if possible.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and precious stones for**
UST other expensive stones
(וְאַבְנֵי)

Alternate translation: [and valuable gems for] or [and treasured gems for]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for the ephod	apron
and for the breastpiece	and for putting on the chest pouch that attaches to the apron

Exodus 25:8

ULT	UST
And they shall make a sanctuary for me, and I shall live in their midst,	*The people should make a holy place for me so that I can live in it among them.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a sanctuary	a holy place

Exodus 25:9

ULT	UST
according to all that I am about to show you —the pattern of the Dwelling and the pattern of all of its utensils—and thus you shall make it.	*They must make my pavilion and all the things that they will use inside it precisely according to the plan that I will show you.*

ULT **you**
UST you
(אוֹתְךָ)

Here, **you** is singular and refers to Moses.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **its utensils**
UST the things that they will use inside it
(כֵּלָיו)

Here, **utensils** is a general term that you could translate by a broad term that could encompass all of the things used in the Dwelling, as described in this and the several following chapters. Alternate translation: [its implements]

ULT **you shall make it**
UST They must make
(תַּעֲשׂוּ)

Here, **you** is plural and refers to Moses and the people of Israel. If your language uses different forms of "you" depending on the number of people addressed, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **you shall make it**
UST They must make
(תַּעֲשׂוּ)

Since Moses does not construct these items himself, you may consider shifting the instructions to the third person if it would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [they shall make it]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	my pavilion

Exodus 25:10

ULT	UST
And they shall make a box of wood of acacias —its length: two cubits and a half; and its width: one cubit and a half; and its height: one cubit and a half.	*Have the people make a sacred chest from acacia wood. They should make it 125 centimeters long, 75 centimeters wide and 75 centimeters high.*

ULT **acacias**
UST acacia
(שִׁטִּים)

These trees, **acacias**, are small trees with spreading foliage and durable wood. See how you translated this in 25:5. See on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shittah_tree

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **two cubits and a half; and … one cubit and a half; and … one cubit and a half**
UST 125 centimeters … 75 centimeters … and 75 centimeters
(אַמָּתַיִם וָחֵצִי & וְאַמָּה וָחֵצִי & וְאַמָּה וָחֵצִי)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote. A **cubit** is approximately 46cm. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 115cm … 69cm … 69cm

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT **and a half … and a half … and a half**
UST 125 centimeters … 75 centimeters … and 75 centimeters
(וָחֵצִי & וָחֵצִי & וָחֵצִי)

A **half** means one part out of two equal parts.

Support Reference: Fractions

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a box of	a sacred chest from … it

Exodus 25:11

ULT	UST
And you shall overlay it {with} pure gold, inside and outside you shall overlay it, and you shall make on it a border of gold around {it}.	*Cover the chest with pure gold inside and outside and put a gold molding all around it.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	pure
with … gold	with … gold
gold	a gold

Exodus 25:12

ULT	UST
And you shall cast four rings of gold for it and put {them} on its four feet: two rings on its one side and two rings on its second side.	*Make four rings from gold, and fasten them to the four legs of the chest. Put two of the rings on each side of the chest.*

ULT And you shall cast four rings of gold for it
UST Make four rings from gold
(וְיָצַקְתָּ לּוֹ אַרְבַּע טַבְּעֹת זָהָב)

Casting rings was a process in which gold was melted, poured into a mold that was in the shape of a ring, and then allowed to cool and harden. If this sort of metal-working process is unknown to your people, you may simply describe it, or use a word meaning “make,” as the UST does. The UST approach is preferred, as the creation process is not in focus here, and it would be cumbersome to include the description in the text. You could use a word meaning “make,” and include the description in a footnote if you are including those and your team feels it is important to understand. Alternate translation: [You shall make four rings of gold by melting the gold and pouring it into molds]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold

Exodus 25:13

ULT	UST
And you shall make poles of wood of acacias and overlay them {with} gold.	*Make two poles from acacia wood, and cover them with gold.*

ULT acacias

UST acacia

(שִׁטִּים)

A small tree with spreading foliage and durable wood. See how you translated this in 25:5.

See on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shittah_tree

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{with} gold	with gold

Exodus 25:14

ULT	UST
And you shall put the poles into the rings on the sides of the box, to carry the box with them.	*Put the poles into the rings on the sides of the chest so that {the Levites} can carry the chest by the poles.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the box	the chest
the box	the chest

Exodus 25:15

ULT	UST
The poles shall be in the rings of the box; they shall not be removed from it.	*Always leave the poles in the chest's rings; do not take the poles out of the rings.*

ULT **The poles shall be in the rings of the box; they shall not be removed from it**
UST Always leave the poles in the chest's rings; do not take the poles out of the rings
(בְּטַבָּעֹת הָאָרֹן יִהְיוּ הַבַּדִּים לֹא יָסֵרוּ מִמֶּנּוּ)

These two phrases mean similar things. Yahweh is saying the same thing in two different ways to emphasize how important this command is. If saying the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: [The poles belong in the rings of the box; no one is ever to remove them]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **The poles shall be in the rings of the box; they shall not be removed from it**
UST Always leave the poles in the chest's rings; do not take the poles out of the rings
(בְּטַבָּעֹת הָאָרֹן יִהְיוּ הַבַּדִּים לֹא יָסֵרוּ מִמֶּנּוּ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language, as seen in the UST.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the box	chest's

Exodus 25:16

ULT	UST
And you shall put into the box the Testimony that I give to you.	*Put the stone slabs, which I am giving you and on which I wrote my commands, inside the chest.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the box	the chest
the Testimony	the stone slabs … and on which I wrote my commands

Exodus 25:17

ULT	UST
And you shall make an atonement lid of pure gold—its length: two cubits and a half; and its width: a cubit and a half.	*You must make a lid for the chest from pure gold. It will be 125 centimeters long and 75 centimeters wide.*

ULT two cubits and a half; and … a cubit and a half
UST 125 centimeters … and 75 centimeters
(אַמָּתַיִם וָחֵצִי & וְאַמָּה וָחֵצִי)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote. A **cubit** is approximately 46cm. For your reference, a more precise conversion to the metric system is: 115 centimeters … 69 centimeters … 69 centimeters

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT and a half … and a half
UST 125 centimeters … and 75 centimeters
(וָחֵצִי & וָחֵצִי)

A **half** means one part out of two equal parts.

Support Reference: Fractions

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an atonement lid of	a lid for the chest
pure	pure
gold	from … gold

Exodus 25:18

ULT	UST
And you shall make two gold cherubim. You shall make them of hammered work from the two ends of the atonement lid.	*Hammer the gold at both ends of the lid into the form of two creatures that have wings.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	the gold
cherubim	into the form of … creatures that have wings
the atonement lid	the lid

Exodus 25:19

ULT	UST
And make one cherub from this end and one cherub from this end. You shall make the cherubim from the atonement lid on its two ends.	*Make the winged creatures {from the gold} at each end of the sacred chest's lid, one at one end and the other at the other end.*

ULT You shall make the cherubim from the atonement lid on its two ends

UST Make the winged creatures {from the gold} at each end of the sacred chest's lid
(מִן־הַכַּפֹּ֖רֶת תַּעֲשׂ֣וּ אֶת־הַכְּרֻבִ֑ים עַל־שְׁנֵ֥י קְצוֹתָֽיו)

This seems to indicate that the cherubim should be formed out of the same piece of gold as the rest of the lid. It may, however, mean that at the end they should be one piece, so the gold should be heated to melting and the lid and cherubim joined together. Alternate translation: [You shall join the cherubim to the atonement lid on its two ends]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cherub	one
and … cherub	and the other
the cherubim	the winged creatures
the atonement lid	the sacred chest's lid

Exodus 25:20

ULT	UST
And the cherubim shall be spreading out their wings upward, covering over the atonement lid with their wings and their faces {shall} each {be} toward his brother. The faces of the cherubim shall be toward the atonement lid.	*The creature's wings should spread out and reach up to cover the lid. They should face each other, facing the chest's lid that is between them.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the cherubim	The creature's
the atonement lid	the lid
the cherubim	them
the atonement lid	the chest's lid

Exodus 25:21

ULT	UST
And you shall put the atonement lid on the box from above, and you shall put into the box the Testimony that I give to you.	*Put the stone slabs that I am giving you inside the sacred chest. Then place the lid onto the top of the chest.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the atonement lid	the lid
the box	the top of the chest
the box	the sacred chest
the Testimony	the stone slabs

Exodus 25:22

ULT	UST
And I will meet with you there and I will speak with you all that I will command you for the sons of Israel from above the atonement lid, from between the two cherubim which are above the Box of the Testimony.	*I will set times to talk with you there. I will tell to you all my commands that you must command the Israelites from above the sacred chest's lid, between the two winged creatures which are above the sacred chest that contains my law tablets.*

ULT **with you … with you … you**
UST with you … to you
(לְךָ & אִתְּךָ & אוֹתְךָ)

Here, **you** is singular and refers to Moses. If you have been using a plural you for Yahweh's commands which have been to give to others, make sure you use the singular form of "you" here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	you must command … Israelites … the … that
the atonement lid	the … sacred chest's lid
cherubim	winged creatures
the Box of	my … that … the … sacred chest … contains … law tablets
the Box of the Testimony	my … that … the … sacred chest … contains … law tablets

Exodus 25:23

ULT	UST
And you shall make a table from wood of acacias. Its length: two cubits, and its width: a cubit, and its height: a cubit and a half.	*Make a table from acacia wood. It is to be one meter long, one-half of a meter wide, and three-quarters of a meter high.*

ULT **Its length: two cubits, and its width: a cubit, and its height: a cubit and a half**
UST It is to be one meter long, one-half of a meter wide, and three-quarters of a meter high
(אַמָּתַיִם אָרְכּוֹ וְאַמָּה רָחְבּוֹ וְאַמָּה וָחֵצִי קֹמָתוֹ)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote. A **cubit** is approximately 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: [Its length: 92 centimeters, its width: 46 centimeters and its height: 69 centimeters]

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT **and a half**
UST and three-quarters of a meter
(וָחֵצִי)

A **half** means one part out of two equal parts.

Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **two cubits, and … a cubit, and … a cubit and a half**
UST It is to be one meter … one-half of a meter … and three-quarters of a meter
(אַמָּתַיִם & וְאַמָּה & וָחֵצִי)

This verse is almost identical to 25:11.

Exodus 25:24

ULT	UST
And you shall overlay it {with} pure gold, and you shall make for it a border of gold around {it}.	*Cover the table with pure gold and put a gold molding all around it.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	pure
with … gold	with … gold
gold	a gold

Exodus 25:25

ULT	UST
And you shall make a rim for it, a handbreadth all around, and you shall make a border of gold around its rim.	*Make a rim all around it, eight centimeters wide, and make a gold molding around the rim.*

ULT **a handbreadth**
UST eight centimeters wide
(טֶפַח)

You can convert this length to a measurement system familiar to your people if that is the style of translation that you are using. A **handbreadth** is a measurement of approximately eight centimeters.

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT **for it**
UST it
(לָו)

Alternate translation: [for the table]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold

Exodus 25:26

ULT	UST
And you shall make four rings of gold for it and put the rings on the four corners, where its four legs are.	*Make four rings from gold. Fasten them to the four corners of the table. Each ring should be close to each table leg*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold

Exodus 25:27

ULT	UST
The rings shall be close to the rim to house the poles to carry the table.	*near the rim. They are to hold poles for carrying the table.*

> ULT **to house**
> UST are to hold
> (לְבָתִּים)

Here, **to house the poles** means that the rings will hold the poles. Since the rings are where the poles belong for use when carrying the table, the rings are in their **house**. If your language has a similar idiom meaning “place of belonging,” you may use it, or you may translate the idea. Alternate translation: [to be a place for]

Support Reference: Idiom

Exodus 25:28

ULT	UST
And you shall make the poles {out of} wood of acacias and cover them {with} gold, and the table shall be carried with them.	*Make two poles from acacia wood and cover them with gold. Use them to carry the table.*

ULT and the table shall be carried with them
UST Use them to carry the table
(וְנִשָּׂא־בָם אֶת־הַשֻּׁלְחָן)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And you shall carry the table with them]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{with} gold	with gold

Exodus 25:29

ULT	UST
And you shall make its plates and its pans and its pitchers and its bowls with which it will be poured out. You shall make them {from} pure gold.	*Also make dishes, cups, jars, and bowls for the priests to use to pour out {wine to offer to me}. Make them all from pure gold.*

ULT its plates and its pans and its pitchers and its bowls
UST dishes, cups, jars, and bowls
(קְעָרֹתָ֣יו וְכַפֹּתָ֔יו וּקְשׂוֹתָ֖יו וּמְנַקִּיֹתָ֑יו)

We do not know precisely what these dishes were. It is likely that the **plates** were mostly flat dishes for holding the bread that would be on the table. The **pans** may have been shallow bowls or deep plates for holding incense, or they may have been something more like a ladle or spoon. The **pitchers** probably held wine to be poured into the **bowls** for the drink offerings. You will need to translate using the closest word for each such item in your culture.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT with which it will be poured out
UST for the priests to use to pour out {wine to offer to me}
(אֲשֶׁר־יֻסַּ֥ךְ בָּהֵ֖ן)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [from which the priests will pour out]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	pure
from … gold	from … gold

Exodus 25:30

ULT	UST
And you shall continually put the bread of faces on the table before my face.	*Present the sacred bread to me on the table at all times.*

ULT the bread of faces
UST the sacred bread
(לֶחֶם פָּנִים)

Here, **faces** represents the presence of Yahweh. This bread represented the presence of God.
Alternate translation: [the bread of the Presence]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT before my face
UST to me
(לְפָנַי)

Here, **face** represents the presence of Yahweh. Alternate translation: [in front of me]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the bread of	the sacred bread

Exodus 25:31

ULT	UST
And you shall make a lampstand of pure gold. The lampstand—its base and its shaft—shall be made of hammered work. Its cups, its buds, and its blossoms shall be from it.	*Make a lampstand from pure gold. Hammer {one large lump of gold} to make its base and its shaft. Make the cups, with the flower buds and petals {that decorate them}, from that same lump.*

ULT of hammered work
UST Hammer {one large lump of gold}
(מִקְשָׁה)

Alternate translation: [of beaten gold] See how you translated this in Exodus 25:18.

ULT shall be made
UST to make
(תֵּעָשֶׂה)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you shall make]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a lampstand of	a lampstand
pure	pure
gold	from … gold
The lampstand	its … its

Exodus 25:32

ULT	UST
And six branches go out from its sides—three branches of the lampstand from the one side and three branches of the lampstand from the second side.	*There are to be six branches on the lampstand, three on each side of the shaft.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the lampstand	the lampstand
the lampstand	the lampstand

Exodus 25:33

ULT	UST
Three cups, shaped like almond blossoms, shall be on the one branch, a bulb, and a blossom. And three cups, shaped like almond blossoms, shall be on the one branch, a bulb, and a blossom—thus for the six branches going out from the lampstand.	*Each branch will have three gold cups that look like almond flowers on it. The flowers will have buds and petals. Do this for all six branches of the lampstand.*

ULT **shaped like almond blossoms**
UST that look like almond flowers
(מְשֻׁקָּדִים)

Almond blossoms are white or pink flowers with five petals. (An almond is a kind of nut.) You may want to include a short description as a footnote or in the text (if that is your translation style) the first time this object is encountered. Alternate translation: [shaped like the five-petaled almond flower]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the lampstand	the lampstand

Exodus 25:34

ULT	UST
And on the lampstand there shall be four cups shaped like almond blossoms {with} its bulbs and its blossoms,	*On {the shaft of} the lampstand there are to be four cups that also look like almond blossoms, each one with flower buds and petals.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And on the lampstand	On {the shaft of} the lampstand

Exodus 25:35

ULT	UST
And a bulb will be under two of the branches from it, and a bulb will be under two of the branches from it, and a bulb will be under two of the branches from it—for all six branches extending out from the lampstand.	*Make one flower bud beneath every two branches. Attach it to each pair of branches {as if they are growing} from it. Make all six lampstand branches like this.*

ULT **And a bulb will be under two of the branches from it, and a bulb will be under two of the branches from it, and a bulb will be under two of the branches from it—for all six branches extending out from the lampstand**

UST Make one flower bud beneath every two branches. Attach it to each pair of branches {as if they are growing} from it. Make all six lampstand branches like this

(וְכַפְתֹּר תַּחַת שְׁנֵי הַקָּנִים מִמֶּנָּה וְכַפְתּוֹר תַּחַת־שְׁנֵי הַקָּנִים מִמֶּנָּה וְכַפְתּוֹר תַּחַת שְׁנֵי הַקָּנִים מִמֶּנָּה לְשִׁשָּׁת הַקָּנִים הַיֹּצְאִים מִן־הַמְּנֹרָה)

Alternate translation: [There must be a leafy base under the first pair of branches—made as one piece with it, and a leafy base under the second pair of branches—also made as one piece with it. In the same way there must be a leafy base under the third pair of branches, made as one piece with it. It must be the same for all six branches extending out from the lampstand.]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the lampstand	lampstand … like this

Exodus 25:36

ULT	UST
Their bulbs and their branches from it shall all be one piece of hammered work of pure gold.	*Hammer all these buds and branches{, along with the shaft,} from one {large lump} of pure gold.*

ULT hammered work of
UST Hammer
(מִקְשָׁה)

Alternate translation: [of beaten gold] See how you translated this in Exodus 25:18.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	pure
gold	gold

Exodus 25:37

ULT	UST
And you shall make its seven lamps, and it will hold up its lamps, and it will make light on the side of its face.	*Make seven lamps and place them on the lampstand so that its light shines all around it.*

ULT and it will make light on the side of its face
UST so that its light shines all around it
(וְהֵאִיר עַל־עֵבֶר פָּנֶיהָ)

Here, **face** represents the location of the lampstand. Alternate translation: [so they shine light near it]

Support Reference: Metonymy

Exodus 25:38

ULT	UST
And {make} its tongs and its trays of pure gold.	*{Make} tongs from pure gold, {to remove the burned wicks} and trays {in which to put the burned wicks}.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	pure
of … gold	from … gold

Exodus 25:39

ULT	UST
He shall make it, all these items, from a talent of pure gold.	*Use 33 kilograms of pure gold to make the lampstand, the tongs, and the trays.*

ULT **from a talent of**
UST 33 kilograms of
(כִּכָּר)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote. A talent weighs about 33 kilograms.

Support Reference: Biblical Weight

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	pure
gold	gold

Exodus 25:40

ULT	UST
See and make by the pattern that you are being shown on the mountain.	*Make sure to make {these things} according to the instructions that I am giving you here on this mountain.*

ULT **See and make**
UST Make sure to make {these things}
(וּרְאֵה וַעֲשֵׂה)

All the items described in this chapter are included in what Moses is told to **see and make**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [See and make everything I have described]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **See and make**
UST Make sure to make {these things}
(וּרְאֵה וַעֲשֵׂה)

Here, **see** relates to observing or overseeing. Essentially, Yahweh is telling Moses to be careful as he observes the pattern on the mountain and as he sees the craftsmen of Israel working on these items, so that they are made correctly. Alternate translation: [Observe carefully and work exactly]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **you are being shown**
UST I am giving you
(אַתָּה מָרְאֶה)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [I am showing you]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Exodus 26

Exodus 26 General Notes

- The sacred tent has four layers (from inside to out): linen, goats' hair, tanned rams' skins, and fine leather.
- There are multiple different curtains described using three different Hebrew words: one sort of curtains to make the walls of the tent (26:1–13), another to separate the Holy Place and Most Holy Place (also known as Holy of Holies) (26:31–34), and another for the entrance of the sacred tent (26:36–37). If there are words in your language that would make a distinction between these sorts of hanging cloths, it would be appropriate to make a distinction in your translation.

Structure and Formatting

This chapter is a continuation of the material in the previous chapter.

- v. 1–30: Instructions for constructing the exterior of the sacred tent
  - v. 1–6: Inner covering
  - v. 7–14: Outer covering layers
  - v. 15–30: Wooden framework
- v. 31–35: Instructions for arranging the interior of the sacred tent
- v. 36–37: Instructions for hanging the entrance curtain

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

The tent of meeting

This chapter gives specific instructions regarding the building of a tent where Moses would meet Yahweh and the box would be stored. This would eventually become the Dwelling. (See: tabernacle; and holy, holiness, unholy, sacred)

Exodus 26:1

ULT	UST
And the Dwelling you shall make with ten curtains: twisted fine linen and blue and purple and worm of scarlet; cherubim—the work of a skilled craftsman you shall make them.	*As for the sacred tent, make it using ten long hangings of finely twisted linen. A skilled craftsman must take blue, purple, and red thread, and embroider these hangings with designs that represent the winged creatures that are above the chest.*

ULT **you shall make**
UST make
(תַּעֲשֶׂה)

Yahweh is speaking to Moses, so the word **you** is singular. Yahweh probably expected Moses to tell someone else to do the actual work, but Moses would be the one responsible for seeing that the work was done correctly. Alternate translation: [, tell a craftsman to make]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **and blue and purple and worm of scarlet**
UST blue, purple, and red thread
(וּתְכֵלֶת וְאַרְגָּמָן וְתוֹלַעַת שָׁנִי)

This could mean: (1) "material that is dyed blue, purple, and scarlet," probably wool yarn, or (2) "blue, purple and scarlet dye" to dye the linen. See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 25:4.

ULT **and worm of scarlet**
UST and red thread
(וְתוֹלַעַת שָׁנִי)

A bright red color for dying cloth was extracted from these worms. Alternate translation: [and bright red]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **twisted fine linen**
UST finely twisted linen
(שֵׁשׁ מָשְׁזָר)

This was cloth made from fine linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **a skilled craftsman**

UST A skilled craftsman must take … and embroider these hangings

(חֹשֵׁב)

a person who is skilled in making beautiful objects by hand

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent … it
curtains	long hangings of
and purple	purple
cherubim	with designs that represent the winged creatures that are above the chest

Exodus 26:2

ULT	UST
The length of each curtain shall be 28 cubits and the width of each curtain shall be 4 cubits. All of the curtains shall be one size.	*Make each hanging 14. 5 meters long and two meters wide. Make them all the same size.*

ULT 28 cubits … 4 cubits
UST 14. 5 meters … two meters
(שְׁמֹנֶה וְעֶשְׂרִים בָּאַמָּה & אַרְבַּע בָּאַמָּה)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote. A **cubit** is approximately 46 centimeters. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 12.9 meters … 184 centimeters.

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curtain	Make … hanging
curtain	Make … hanging
the curtains	Make them

Exodus 26:3

ULT	UST
Five of the curtains shall be joined each to another and five of the curtains joined each to another.	*Sew five hangings together {as one set}, and sew the other five hangings together {as another set}.*

ULT **Five of the curtains shall be joined each to another and five of the curtains joined each to another**

UST Sew five hangings together {as one set}, and sew the other five hangings together {as another set}

(חֲמֵשׁ הַיְרִיעֹת תִּהְיֶיךָ חִבֻּרֹת אִשָּׁה אֶל־אֲחֹתָהּ וַחֲמֵשׁ יְרִיעֹת חִבֻּרֹת אִשָּׁה אֶל־אֲחֹתָהּ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Join five of the curtains each to another, and join five of the curtains each to another.]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the curtains	hangings
the curtains	hangings

Exodus 26:4

ULT	UST
And you shall make loops of blue on the edge of the first curtain from the edge in the set. And you shall do thus along the edge of the end curtain in the second set.	*For each set, make loops of blue cloth and fasten them along the outer edge of the hanging, at the end of each set.*

ULT **blue**
UST blue cloth
(תְּכֵלֶת)

Alternate translation: [blue yarn] or [blue cloth]

ULT **first … second**
UST For each … each
(הָאַחַת & הַשֵּׁנִית)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **in the set**
UST set … them … set
(בַּחֹבֶרֶת)

Alternate translation: [in one set of five curtains]

ULT **in the second set**
UST For each set … them … each set
(בַּמַּחְבֶּרֶת הַשֵּׁנִית)

Alternate translation: [in the other set of five curtains]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the … curtain	the hanging
the … curtain	the hanging

Exodus 26:5

ULT	UST
You shall make 50 loops on the first curtain, and you shall make 50 loops on the end of the curtain which is in the second set. The loops should be opposite woman to her sister.	*Put 50 loops on the edge of the first set, and 50 loops at the edge of the second set so that the loops are opposite to each other.*

ULT woman to her sister
UST to each other
(אִשָּׁה אֶל־אֲחֹתָהּ)

This is an idiom meaning “to each other.” If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [one to the other]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
on the … curtain	on the edge of the … set
the curtain	the … set

Exodus 26:6

ULT	UST
And you shall make 50 clasps of gold and join the curtains woman to her sister with the clasps, and the Dwelling will be one.	*Make 50 gold fasteners and fasten both of the sets together with them to make the sacred tent one unit.*

ULT And you shall make 50 clasps of gold and join the curtains woman to her sister
UST Make 50 gold fasteners and fasten both of the sets together
(וְעָשִׂיתָ חֲמִשִּׁים קַרְסֵי זָהָב וְחִבַּרְתָּ אֶת־הַיְרִיעֹת אִשָּׁה אֶל־אֲחֹתָהּ)

The clasps fit into the loops (verses 4 and 5) to hold the curtains together.

ULT woman to her sister
UST together
(אִשָּׁה אֶל־אֲחֹתָהּ)

This is the same idiom as in the previous verse, meaning together. Alternate translation: [to each other]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT one
UST one unit
(אֶחָד)

Alternate translation: [as though it were one piece]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
the curtains	both of the sets
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 26:7

ULT	UST
And you shall make curtains of goats' hair for a tent over the Dwelling. You shall make 11 of these curtains.	*Make a cover for the sacred tent from 11 pieces of cloth made from goats' hair.*

ULT for a tent
UST a cover
(לְאֹהֶל)

This refers to an outer tent over the sacred tent. Alternate translation: [for an outer tent]

ULT 11
UST 11
(עַשְׁתֵּי־עֶשְׂרֵה)

Alternate translation: [eleven]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curtains of	from … pieces of cloth
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
curtains	from … pieces of cloth

Exodus 26:8

ULT	UST
The length of each curtain {shall be} 30 cubits, and the width of each curtain {shall be} 4 cubits. The 11 curtains {shall be} the same size.	*Each of the 11 pieces of cloth will be the same dimensions: 15 meters long and two meters wide.*

ULT **30 … 4 … 11**
UST 11 … 15 … two
(שְׁלֹשִׁים & אַרְבַּע & לְעַשְׁתֵּי עָשְׂרֵה)

Alternate translation: [thirty … four … eleven]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **30 cubits … 4 cubits**
UST 15 meters … two meters
(שְׁלֹשִׁים בָּאַמָּה & אַרְבַּע בָּאַמָּה)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote. A **cubit** is approximately 46cm. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 13.8 meter … 184 centimeters

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curtain	pieces of cloth
curtain	pieces of cloth
The … curtains	pieces of cloth

Exodus 26:9

ULT	UST
And you shall join five curtains to each other and six curtains to each other. And you shall double over the sixth curtain at the front of the face of the tent.	*Sew five of these pieces of cloth together {to make one set}, and sew the other six pieces of cloth together {to make another set}. Fold the sixth piece of cloth in half to make it double over the front of the cover.*

ULT **at the front of the face of the tent**
UST the front of the cover
(אֶל־מוּל פְּנֵי הָאֹהֶל)

Here, **face** is probably referring to the entrance of the tent. The opening for the protective tent and the sacred tent would have been coordinated so they were in the same place. Alternate translation: [in front of the entrance of the tent]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the tent**
UST the cover
(הָאֹהֶל)

As in 26:7, **the tent** refers to the outer tent over the sacred tent. Alternate translation: [the outer tent]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curtains	pieces of cloth
curtains	pieces of cloth
the … curtain	the … piece of cloth in half to make it double over

Exodus 26:10

ULT	UST
And you shall make 50 loops on the edge of the one end curtain in the joined set and 50 loops on the edge of the curtain in the second joined set.	*Make {100 loops of blue cloth,} and fasten 50 of them to the outer edge of the one set and fasten 50 to the outer edge of the other set.*

Note:

See how you translated a very similar text in Exodus 26:4.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the … curtain	the one set
the curtain	the other set

Exodus 26:11

ULT	UST
And you shall make 50 clasps of bronze and put the clasps in the loops and join them and the tent will be one.	*Make 50 bronze hooks and fasten the hooks to the loops to connect them, so the cover will be one unit.*

> ULT **the clasps**
> UST the hooks
> (אֶת־הַקְּרָסִים)

The **clasps** fit into the loops to hold the curtains together. See how you translated this in Exodus 26:6.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bronze	bronze

Exodus 26:12

ULT	UST
And the remaining excess curtain of the tent, the half curtain remaining, shall hang over the back of the Dwelling.	*Let the extra part of the tent cover, the half piece that extends beyond the linen cloth, hang over the back side of the sacred tent.*

ULT **the half**
UST the half
(חֲצִי)

A **half** means one part out of two equal parts.

Support Reference: Fractions

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curtain of	cover
curtain	piece
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 26:13

ULT	UST
And a cubit from this side and a cubit from that side, the excess of the length of the curtains of the tent shall hang over the sides of the Dwelling from this side and from that side, to cover it.	*The extra half-meter of cover on each side, the part that extends beyond the linen cloth, must hang over the two sides of the sacred tent to protect the sides.*

ULT **And a cubit … and a cubit**

UST The … half-meter

(וְהָאַמָּה & וְהָאַמָּה)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote. A **cubit** is approximately 46 centimeters. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 46 centimeters

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the curtains of	extra … of cover … the part that extends beyond the linen cloth
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 26:14

ULT	UST
And you shall make a covering for the tent of reddened hides of rams, and a covering of hides of sea-cows above that.	*Make another cover to go over the tent from red rams' skins, and a top cover from fine leather hides.*

ULT **sea-cows**
UST fine leather
(תְּחָשִׁים)

The meaning of this word, **sea cows**, is not known. It may refer to a water mammal that has skin that can be made into a high-quality leather. See sea cows on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sirenia See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 25:5.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **reddened**
UST red
(מְאָדָּמִים)

When animal skins are tanned (processed into usable leather), they become reddish. It is not clear if these hides are dyed red or simply reddened in the tanning process. See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 25:5. Alternate translation: [tanned]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
rams	rams

Exodus 26:15

ULT	UST
And you shall make upright frames for the Dwelling from wood of acacias.	*Make a standing framework from acacia wood for the sacred tent.*

ULT **frames**
UST a … framework
(אֶת־הַקְּרָשִׁים)

Here, **frames** refers to open wooden structures made to hold the curtains.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **acacias**
UST acacia
(שִׁטִּים)

The **acacias** are relatively small trees with spreading foliage and durable wood. See how you translated this in 25:5. See on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shittah_tree

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for the Dwelling	for the sacred tent

Exodus 26:16

ULT	UST
The length of a frame shall be ten cubits, and the width of one frame shall be a cubit and a half of a cubit.	*Each frame is to be five meters long and three-quarters of a meter wide.*

ULT ten … and … a cubit and a half of a cubit
UST five meters … and three-quarters of a meter
(עֲשֶׂר & וְאַמָּה וַחֲצִי הָאַמָּה)

Alternate translation: [10 … 1.5 cubits]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT ten cubits, and … a cubit and a half of a cubit
UST five meters … and three-quarters of a meter
(עֲשֶׂר אַמּוֹת & וְאַמָּה וַחֲצִי הָאַמָּה)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote. A **cubit** is approximately 46 centimeters. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 4.6 meters … 69 centimeters.

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT and a half of
UST and three-quarters of a meter
(וַחֲצִי)

A **half** means one part out of two equal parts.

Support Reference: Fractions

Exodus 26:17

ULT	UST
There shall be two tenons in each frame for joining a woman to her sister. Thus you shall make all of the frames of the Dwelling.	*Make two pegs {at the bottom of} each frame to fasten them together. Make each frame for the tabernacle this way.*

ULT There shall be … tenons
UST Make … pegs
(יָדוֹת)

Here, the term **tenons** means a part of the wood sticking out from the rest of the frame so that it can be put into a hole in another object.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT a woman to her sister
UST them together
(אִשָּׁה אֶל־אֲחֹתָהּ)

This is an idiom meaning “to each other.” See how you translated this in 26:5. Alternate translation: [one to the other]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	for the tabernacle

Exodus 26:18

ULT	UST
And you shall make the frames for the Dwelling: 20 frames for the south side.	*Make 20 frames for the south side of the sacred tent.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for the Dwelling	of the sacred tent

Exodus 26:19

ULT	UST
And you shall make 40 bases of silver under the 20 frames: two bases under one frame for its two tenons, and two bases under one frame for its two tenons.	*Make 40 silver bases to go underneath the 20 frames. Put two bases under each frame and fit their two pegs into the bases.*

ULT bases of silver
UST silver bases
(אַדְנֵי־כָֽסֶף)

The **bases of silver** were silver blocks that had a slot in them to keep the board in place and off the ground.

ULT two bases under one frame for its two tenons, and two bases under one frame for its two tenons
UST Put two bases under each frame and fit their two pegs into the bases
(שְׁנֵי אֲדָנִים תַּחַת־הַקֶּרֶשׁ הָאֶחָד לִשְׁתֵּי יְדֹתָיו וּשְׁנֵי אֲדָנִים תַּחַת־הַקֶּרֶשׁ הָאֶחָד לִשְׁתֵּי יְדֹתָיו)

The effect of this is to start a list, and the hearer will assume it should be completed. Try to translate this in the way that a speaker of your language would give instructions that are meant to be carried out on a whole group of objects. This same phrasing occurs again in 26:21 and 26:25. Alternate translation: [two bases under the first frame for its two tenons, and then two bases under the next frame for its two tenons, and so on for all the frames]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	silver

Exodus 26:20

ULT	UST
And for the second side of the Dwelling, on the north side: 20 frames	*For the other side—{that is,} the north side—of the sacred tent {make} 20 frames*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 26:21

ULT	UST
and their 40 silver bases: two bases under one frame and two bases under one frame.	*and 40 silver bases for them. {Put} two bases under each frame.*

ULT two bases under one frame and two bases under one frame

UST {Put} two bases under each frame

(שְׁנֵי אֲדָנִים תַּחַת הַקֶּרֶשׁ הָאֶחָד וּשְׁנֵי אֲדָנִים תַּחַת הַקֶּרֶשׁ הָאֶחָד)

The effect of this is to start a list, and the hearer will assume it should be completed. Try to translate this in the way that a speaker of your language would give instructions that are meant to be carried out on a whole group of objects. See how you translated this in Exodus 26:19. Alternate translation: [two bases under the first frame, and then two bases under the next frame, and so on for all the frames]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	silver

Exodus 26:22

ULT	UST
And you shall make six frames for the back side of the Dwelling, toward the west.	*For the rear of the sacred tent, on the west side, make six frames.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 26:23

ULT	UST
And you shall make two frames for the back corners of the Dwelling.	*Make two frames for the rear corners of the sacred tent.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 26:24

ULT	UST
And they shall be a pair at the bottom, and they shall be completely together at the top to one ring. Thus it shall be for both; the two shall be the corners.	*Match them to each other at the bottom and top. Secure the tops together with a ring. Do this for both, making them the corner pieces.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

Exodus 26:25

ULT	UST
And there shall be eight frames and their silver bases, sixteen bases: two bases under one frame and two bases under one frame.	*Make eight frames and 16 silver bases, two bases under each frame.*

ULT bases: two … under one frame and two bases under one frame
UST two bases under each frame
(שְׁנֵי אֲדָנִים תַּחַת הַקֶּרֶשׁ הָאֶחָד וּשְׁנֵי אֲדָנִים תַּחַת הַקֶּרֶשׁ הָאֶחָד)

The effect of this is to start a list, and the hearer will assume it should be completed. Try to translate this in the way that a speaker of your language would give instructions that are meant to be carried out on a whole group of objects. See how you translated this in Exodus 26:19. Alternate translation: [two bases under the first frame, and then two bases under the next frame, and so on for all the frames]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT and their … bases … bases … bases … bases
UST and … bases … bases
(וְאַדְנֵיהֶם & אֲדָנֶיו & אֲדָנִים & אֲדָנִים)

The **bases** were silver blocks that had a slot in them to keep the frame in place. See how you translated this in Exodus 26:19.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	silver

Exodus 26:26

ULT	UST
And you shall make crossbars of wood of acacias—five for the frames of the one side of the Dwelling,	*Make crossbars from acacia wood. Make five crossbars for the frames on the {north} side of the sacred tent,*

ULT crossbars of
UST crossbars
(בְּרִיחֵם)

The **crossbars** are horizontal support beams that give stability to the structure.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 26:27

ULT	UST
and five crossbars for the frames of the second side of the Dwelling, and five crossbars for the frames for the back side of the Dwelling to the west.	*five crossbars for the frames on the {south} side of the sacred tent, and five crossbars for the frames at the rear of the sacred tent, the west side.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 26:28

ULT	UST
And the middle crossbar in the center of the frames shall pass through from end to end.	*The center crossbar, right in the middle of the frames, will reach all the way from edge to edge.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

Exodus 26:29

ULT	UST
And you shall cover the frames with gold. And you shall make their rings of gold, the holders for the crossbars. And you shall cover the bars with gold.	*Cover the frames and crossbars with gold. Make the rings for fastening the crossbars to the frames from gold.*

ULT the holders for the crossbars
UST for fastening the crossbars to the frames
(בָּתִּים לַבְּרִיחָם)

Alternate translation: [which will hold the crossbars] or [because they will hold the crossbars]

ULT for the crossbars
UST the crossbars
(לַבְּרִיחָם)

The **crossbars** are horizontal support beams that give stability to the structure. See how you translated this in Exodus 26:26.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
with gold	with gold
gold	from gold
with gold	with gold

Exodus 26:30

ULT	UST
And you shall set up the Dwelling according to its plan that you were shown on the mountain.	*Build the sacred tent in the way that I have shown you here on this mountain.*

ULT you were shown on the mountain
UST I have shown you here on this mountain
(הָרָאִיתָ בָּהָר)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See UST.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 26:31

ULT	UST
And you shall make a curtain of blue, and purple and worm of scarlet and of twisted fine linen; the work of a skillful workman, he shall make cherubim.	*Make a curtain from fine linen. A skilled craftsman must embroider it with blue, purple, and red yarn, making designs to represent the winged creatures that are above the sacred chest.*

Note:

See how you translated very similar text in Exodus 26:1.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a curtain of	a curtain from
and purple	purple
cherubim	making designs to represent the winged creatures that are above the sacred chest

Exodus 26:32

ULT	UST
And you shall hang it on four pillars of acacia wood covered with gold and their hooks of gold on four bases of silver.	*Suspend the curtain from gold hooks on four gold-covered posts made from acacia wood. Set each post in a silver base.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pillars of	posts made from
with gold	gold
gold	gold
silver	silver

Exodus 26:33

ULT	UST
And you shall hang the curtain under the clasps, and you shall bring the Box of the Testimony there inside the curtain. And the curtain shall separate for you between the Holy and the Holy of Holies.	*Suspend the curtain from fasteners {attached to the roof of the sacred tent}. Put the sacred chest behind the curtain. The curtain will separate the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place.*

ULT the clasps
UST fasteners {attached to the roof of the sacred tent}
(הַקְּרָסִים)

The **clasps** fit into the loops to hold the curtains together. See how you translated these in Exodus 26:6.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT the Holy of Holies
UST the Most Holy Place
(קֹדֶשׁ הַקָּדָשִׁים)

Here, **Holy of Holies** means extremely or uniquely holy. If this form would not express that this place would become uniquely holy in your language you may need to find another way to express this idea. Alternate translation: [the Most Holy Place] or [the Extraordinarily Holy Place]

Support Reference: Possession

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the curtain	the curtain
the Box of	the sacred chest
the Box of the Testimony	the sacred chest
the curtain	the curtain
the curtain	The curtain
the Holy	the Holy Place
the Holy of Holies	the Most Holy Place

Exodus 26:34

ULT	UST
And you shall put the atonement lid on the Box of the Testimony in the Holy of Holies.	*Put the lid on top of the sacred chest in the Most Holy Place.*

> ULT **in the Holy of Holies**
> UST in the Most Holy Place
> (בְּקֹדֶשׁ הַקָּדָשִׁים)

Here, **Holy of Holies** means extremely holy, as in, the holiest of the holy places. If this form would not express that this place would become uniquely holy in your language you may need to find another way to express this idea. See how you translated it in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [in the Most Holy Place] or [in the Extraordinarily Holy Place]

Support Reference: Possession

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the atonement lid	the lid
the Box of	the sacred chest
the Box of the Testimony	the sacred chest
in the Holy of Holies	in the Most Holy Place

Exodus 26:35

ULT	UST
And you shall put the table outside the curtain and the lampstand opposite the table on the south side of the Dwelling. And put the table on the north side.	*Put the table and the lampstand on the other side of the curtain on opposite sides from each other. Put the lampstand on the south side of the sacred tent, and put the table for the sacred bread on the north side.*

ULT the table … the lampstand
UST the table … the lampstand … lampstand … the
(אֶת־הַשֻּׁלְחָן & הַמְּנֹרָה)

This is the **table** Yahweh told Moses how to make in 25:23–30 and the **lampstand** he told him how to make in 25:31–39.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the curtain	the curtain
the lampstand	the lampstand … lampstand … the
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 26:36

ULT	UST
And you shall make a curtain for the entrance of the tent of blue and purple and worm of scarlet and of twisted fine linen, the work of an embroiderer.	*Make a curtain as the tent entrance. A skilled weaver must make it from fine linen with blue, purple, and red yarn.*

Note:

See how you translated very similar text in Exodus 26:1.

ULT of blue and purple and worm of scarlet
UST with blue, purple, and red yarn
(תְּכֵלֶת וְאַרְגָּמָן וְתוֹלַעַת שָׁנִי)

This could mean: (1) "yarn that is dyed blue, purple, and scarlet," probably wool yarn, or (2) "blue, purple, and scarlet dye" to dye the linen. See how you translated this in Exodus 25:4.

ULT and of twisted fine linen
UST from fine linen
(וְשֵׁשׁ מָשְׁזָר)

This was cloth made from fine linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT an embroiderer
UST A skilled weaver
(רֹקֵם)

Alternate translation: [a person who sews decorative designs into cloth] or [a person who embroiders]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a curtain	a curtain … it
and purple	purple

Exodus 26:37

ULT	UST
And you shall make five pillars of acacia wood for the curtain, and you shall overlay them with gold, and their hooks {shall be} gold, and you shall cast five bases of bronze for them.	*To hold up this curtain, make five posts from acacia wood. Cover them with gold and fasten gold clasps to them. Also make a bronze base for each of these posts.*

Note:

See how you translated very similar instructions in 26:32.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pillars of	posts
for the curtain	To hold up this curtain
with gold	with gold
{shall be} gold	gold
bronze	bronze

Exodus 27

Exodus 27 General Notes

Structure and Formatting

This chapter is a continuation of the material in the previous chapter.

- v. 1–8: Instructions for constructing the altar
- v. 9–19: Instructions for constructing the outer curtain walls forming the courtyard around the sacred tent
- v. 20–21: Instructions for the lampstand

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

The tent of meeting

This chapter gives specific instructions regarding building the courtyard area around the Dwelling containing the altar where priests made sacrifices to Yahweh.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

- The verb **make** at the beginning of 27:9 is the only verb from verses 9–18. Some languages may be able to translate a clause chain this long without additional verbs. Others (including English), will need to supply at least a minimum number of verbs (ULT) or quite a few verbs (UST) for naturalness.
- There continue to be a number of possibly unknown terms, still all tangible objects.

Exodus 27:1

ULT	UST
And you shall make the altar of wood of acacias, five cubits long and five cubits wide. The altar shall be square and three cubits high.	*Make an altar from acacia wood. Make it square: two and a half meters long on each side and one and a half meters tall.*

ULT five cubits … and five cubits … and three cubits
UST two and a half meters … and one and a half meters
(חָמֵשׁ אַמּוֹת & וְחָמֵשׁ אַמּוֹת & וְשָׁלֹשׁ אַמּוֹת)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote. A cubit is approximately 46 centimeters. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 2.3 meters … 2.3 meters … 138 centimeters

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar of	an altar from
The altar	it

Exodus 27:2

ULT	UST
And you shall make its horns on its four corners; its horns will be part of it. And you shall overlay it with bronze.	*Make a {projection that looks like a} horn on each of the top corners. Make them from the same block of wood as the altar. Cover the whole altar with bronze.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
its horns	a {projection that looks like a} horn
its horns	them
with bronze	with bronze

Exodus 27:3

ULT	UST
And you shall make its pots for fatty ashes and its shovels and its basins and its meat forks and its trays. You shall make all its utensils with bronze.	*Make all its implements from bronze. Make pans to collect the ashes from burning the fat, shovels {for cleaning out the ashes}, basins, forks {for turning the meat as it cooks}, and buckets {for carrying hot coals}.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
with bronze	from bronze

Exodus 27:4

ULT	UST
And you shall make a grate for it, a work of a network of bronze. And you shall make four rings of bronze on the network, on its four corners.	*Make a bronze lattice grating {to hold the wood and burning coals}. Fasten a bronze ring to each of the four corners of the grate.*

ULT a grate
UST grating {to hold the wood and burning coals}
(מִכְבָּר)

The **grate** is a frame of crossed metal bars for holding wood when burning.

ULT And you shall make four rings of bronze on the network, on its four corners
UST Fasten a bronze ring to each of the four corners of the grate
(וְעָשִׂיתָ עַל־הָרֶשֶׁת אַרְבַּע טַבָּעֹת נְחֹשֶׁת עַל אַרְבַּע קְצוֹתָיו)

You may want to refer back to several other passages regarding making rings for carrying poles when translating this verse. See 25:12, 25:26, and 25:27.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bronze	a bronze lattice
bronze	a bronze

Exodus 27:5

ULT	UST
And you shall put it under the ledge of the altar below, and the network shall be up to the middle of the altar.	*Put the grating under the rim that is around the altar. Make it so that it is inside the altar, halfway down.*

ULT **And you shall put it under the ledge of the altar below, and the network shall be up to the middle of the altar**

UST Put the grating under the rim that is around the altar. Make it so that it is inside the altar, halfway down

(וְנָתַתָּה אֹתָהּ תַּחַת כַּרְכֹּב הַמִּזְבֵּחַ מִלְמָטָּה וְהָיְתָה הָרֶשֶׁת עַד חֲצִי הַמִּזְבֵּחַ)

The grate was placed inside the altar. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar	the rim that is around the altar
the altar	inside the altar, halfway down

Exodus 27:6

ULT	UST
And you shall make poles for the altar, poles of wood of acacias, and you shall overlay them with bronze.	*Make poles for {carrying} the altar from acacia wood and cover them with bronze.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for the altar	for {carrying} the altar
with bronze	with bronze

Exodus 27:7

ULT	UST
And its poles shall be put into the rings, and the poles shall be on the two sides of the altar when carrying it.	*Put the poles through the rings on each side of the altar to carry it.*

ULT And its poles shall be put
UST Put the poles
(וְהוּבָא אֶת־בַּדָּיו)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And you shall put its poles]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar	the altar

Exodus 27:8

ULT	UST
You shall make it hollow, of planks. Just as he showed you on the mountain, so they shall do.	*Make the altar from boards and make it hollow in the middle. They must make it according to these instructions that I am giving you here on this mountain.*

ULT he showed
UST I am giving
(הָרָאָה)

Here, **he** refers to Yahweh in the third person. If it would be unnatural in your language for someone to refer to himself in this way, you may need to change it. Alternate translation: [I showed] or [Yahweh showed]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT they shall do
UST They must make it
(יַעֲשׂוּ)

Here, **they** refers to whoever will make all these items. It is an indication that even though Yahweh has been speaking to Moses in the singular throughout, these instructions are meant to be conveyed to Israelite craftsmen. See Chapter 25 Introduction for more information.

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

Exodus 27:9

ULT	UST
And you shall make the courtyard of the Dwelling. There shall be curtains of fine twisted linen on the south side of the courtyard; one side shall be 100 cubits long,	*Also make a courtyard around the sacred tent with more curtains of fine linen. For the south side, hang 50 meters of curtain*

ULT **fine twisted linen**
UST of fine linen
(שֵׁשׁ מָשְׁזָר)

This was cloth made from fine linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in Exodus 25:4.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **100 cubits**
UST 50 meters
(מֵאָה בָּאַמָּה)

You can convert this length to a measurement system familiar to your people if that is the style of translation that you are using. A cubit is approximately 46 centimeters. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 46 meters

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	around the sacred tent
There shall be curtains of	with more curtains … of curtain

Exodus 27:10

ULT	UST
with its 20 pillars and their 20 bronze bases, the hooks of the pillars and their rings of silver.	*from 20 {bronze} posts. {Make} 20 bronze bases for the posts and hooks on them and silver connectors.*

ULT **with its 20 pillars and their 20 bronze bases**

UST from 20 {bronze} posts. {Make} 20 bronze bases for the posts

(וְעַמֻּדָיו עֶשְׂרִים וְאַדְנֵיהֶם עֶשְׂרִים נְחֹשֶׁת)

Here, **bronze** may refer to both the **pillars** and the **bases**, or just to the **bases**. The pillars inside the tent were of wood overlaid with gold; these may be wood overlaid with bronze.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
with its … pillars	from … posts
bronze	bronze
the pillars	on them
silver	silver

Exodus 27:11

ULT	UST
And thus for the north side, the length of the curtains: 100 long, and its 20 pillars, 20 bases of bronze, hooks of the pillars, and rings of silver.	*And likewise for the north side {of the courtyard: hang} 50 meters of curtains from 20 posts, with their 20 bronze bases, hooks, and silver connectors.*

Note:

See how you translated many similar words in Exodus 27:9–10.

ULT **100**
UST 50 meters of
(מֵאָה)

Here, “cubits” is omitted because it is understood as a repetition of the instructions in verse 9. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: [100 cubits]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **100**
UST 50 meters of
(מֵאָה)

You can convert this length to a measurement system familiar to your people if that is the style of translation that you are using. A cubit is approximately 46 centimeters. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 46 meters

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the curtains	hang … curtains
and its … pillars	from … posts, with
bronze	bronze
the pillars	from … posts, with
silver	silver

Exodus 27:12

ULT	UST
And the width of the courtyard, on the west side, shall have a curtain 50 cubits long with its ten pillars and ten bases.	*{Make} a curtain 25 meters long along the west side of the courtyard. {Support them} with ten posts, with a base under each post.*

ULT 50 cubits long
UST 25 meters long
(חֲמִשִּׁים אַמָּה)

You can convert this length to a measurement system familiar to your people if that is the style of translation that you are using. A cubit is approximately 46 centimeters. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 23 meters

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
shall have a curtain	{Make} a curtain
with its … pillars	{Support them} with … posts

Exodus 27:13

ULT	UST
And the width of the courtyard, on the east side, shall be 50 cubits.	*On the east side the courtyard must also be 25 meters wide.*

ULT 50 cubits
UST 25 meters
(חֲמִשִּׁים אַמָּה)

You can convert this length to a measurement system familiar to your people if that is the style of translation that you are using. A cubit is approximately 46 centimeters. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 23 meters

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

Exodus 27:14

ULT	UST
The curtains for the side {shall be} fifteen cubits {with} their three pillars and their three bases.	*{Make} a curtain seven and a half meters long for one side {of the entrance}, with three posts and bases.*

ULT fifteen
UST seven and a half
(וְחָמֵשׁ עֶשְׂרֵה)

You can convert this length to a measurement system familiar to your people if that is the style of translation that you are using. A cubit is approximately 46 centimeters. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 6.9 meters

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT {with} their … pillars
UST with … posts
(עַמֻּדֵיהֶם)

The **pillars** were strong pieces of wood set upright and used as supports. See how you translated these in Exodus 27:10.

ULT and their … bases
UST and bases
(וְאַדְנֵיהֶם)

The **bases** were metal blocks that had a slot in them to keep the board in place. See how you translated this in Exodus 26:19.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The curtains … shall be	{Make} a curtain
{with} their … pillars	with … posts

Exodus 27:15

ULT	UST
The curtains for the second side shall be fifteen with their three pillars and their three bases.	*{Make} another curtain seven and a half meters long for the other side {of the entrance}, also with three posts and bases.*

ULT fifteen
UST seven and a half meters long
(חֲמֵשׁ עֶשְׂרֵה)

You can convert this length to a measurement system familiar to your people if that is the style of translation that you are using. A cubit is approximately 46 centimeters. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 6.9 meters.

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT with their … pillars
UST also with … posts
(עַמֻּדֵיהֶם)

These **posts** were strong pieces of wood set upright and used as supports. See how you translated these in Exodus 27:10.

ULT and their … bases
UST and bases
(וְאַדְנֵיהֶם)

The **bases** were metal blocks that had a slot in them to keep the board in place. See how you translated this in Exodus 26:19.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The curtains … shall be	{Make} another curtain
with their … pillars	also with … posts

Exodus 27:16

ULT	UST
And the gate of the courtyard shall be a curtain 20 cubits wide of blue and purple and worm of scarlet and of twisted fine linen—the work of an embroiderer—with its four pillars and its four bases.	*{Make} a curtain from finely twined linen ten meters wide for the courtyard entrance. A skilled weaver must embroider it with blue, purple, and red yarn. {Hang it} from four posts, each one with a base under it.*

ULT of blue and purple and worm of scarlet and of twisted fine linen
UST from finely twined linen … with blue, purple, and red yarn
(תְּכֵלֶת וְאַרְגָּמָן וְתוֹלַעַת שָׁנִי וְשֵׁשׁ מָשְׁזָר)

See how you translated a nearly identical passage in 26:36.

ULT 20 cubits wide
UST ten meters wide
(עֶשְׂרִים אַמָּה)

You can convert this length to a measurement system familiar to your people if that is the style of translation that you are using. A cubit is approximately 46 centimeters. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 9.2m

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And the gate of	Make … for the … entrance
shall be a curtain	a curtain
and purple	purple
with its … pillars	{Hang it} from … posts

Exodus 27:17

ULT	UST
All the pillars of the courtyard shall be banded around with silver, and their silver hooks, and their bases of bronze.	*Put silver bands around all of the posts of the courtyard. Make the clasps from silver, and the bases from bronze.*

ULT shall be banded
UST Put … bands
(מְחֻשָּׁקִים)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you shall band]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the pillars of	of the posts
with silver	silver
silver	from silver
bronze	from bronze

Exodus 27:18

ULT	UST
The length of the courtyard shall be 100 cubits, and the width 50, and the height five cubits with fine twined linen, and bases of bronze.	*Make the whole courtyard, {from the east entrance to the west end}, 50 meters long and 25 meters wide, and {the curtains that enclose it} two and a half meters high. Make all the curtains from fine linen, and all the bases {under the posts} from bronze.*

ULT **shall be 100 cubits … 50 … five cubits**
UST 50 meters … and 25 meters … and {the curtains that enclose it} two and a half meters
(מֵאָה בָאַמָּה & חֲמִשִּׁים בַּחֲמִשִּׁים & חָמֵשׁ אַמּוֹת)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote. A cubit is approximately 46 centimeters. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 46 meters … 23 meters … 2.3 meters.

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT **50**
UST and 25 meters
(חֲמִשִּׁים בַּחֲמִשִּׁים)

Here, “cubits” is omitted because it is understood as a repetition of the instructions in verse 9. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: [50 cubits]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bronze	from bronze

Exodus 27:19

ULT	UST
All of the equipment of the Dwelling for all of its service, and all of its tent pegs and all of the pegs of the courtyard shall be bronze.	*Make all the things {that are not made of gold} that are for use inside the sacred tent {and in the courtyard}, and all the tent pegs to support the sacred tent and the curtains that form the courtyard from bronze.*

ULT its tent pegs … the pegs of

UST the tent pegs to support the sacred tent and the curtains that form the courtyard
(יְתֵדֹתָיו & יִתְדֹת)

The **tent pegs** are strong, sharp pieces of metal driven into the ground and used to secure the corners of a tent to the ground or to secure ropes in order to create tension to stabilize something standing upright.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent {and in the courtyard}
shall be bronze	from bronze

Exodus 27:20

ULT	UST
And you shall command the sons of Israel and they shall bring pure pressed oil of olive to you for the lamp, to cause the lamp to burn continually.	*Command the Israelites to bring you purified oil squeezed from olives, so that the lamp is always burning.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites
oil of	oil … from
olive	olives

Exodus 27:21

ULT	UST
In the tent of meeting, outside the curtain inside of which is the testimony, Aaron and his sons shall arrange it before the face of Yahweh, from evening to morning. This is an eternal statute throughout the generations of the sons of Israel.	*In the outer part of the sacred tent, outside the curtain where the sacred chest is, Aaron and his sons must take care to keep the lamps burning every night from evening to morning for Yahweh. The Israelites must obey this regulation throughout all future generations.*

ULT is the testimony
UST the sacred chest is
(הָעֵדֻת)

The **testimony** refers to the chest that contains the sacred slabs of stone on which Yahweh had written his commandments. If it would be more clear to your readers you may include a reference to the chest. Alternate translation: [is the Box of the Testimony]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT shall arrange it
UST must take care to keep the lamps burning every night
(יַעֲרֹךְ אֹתוֹ)

Here, **it** refers to the lamp mentioned in the previous verse and **arrange** means to set it up for burning, and light it. Alternate translation: [shall set up the lampstand and light it]

ULT before the face of Yahweh
UST for Yahweh
(לִפְנֵי יְהוָה)

Here, **face** represents the presence of Yahweh. Alternate translation: [in front of me]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT This is an eternal statute throughout the generations of the sons of Israel
UST The Israelites must obey this regulation throughout all future generations
(חֻקַּת עוֹלָם לְדֹרֹתָם מֵאֵת בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל)

See how you translated a similar statement in 12:14

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
In the tent of meeting	In … the sacred tent
the curtain	the curtain
is the testimony	the sacred chest is
Aaron	Aaron

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
an eternal	throughout all future generations
throughout the generations of	throughout all future generations
Israel	The Israelites

Exodus 28

Exodus 28 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1: Introduction - Aaron and sons will become priests
- v. 2–5: General introduction of sacred clothing
- v. 6–14: Instructions for the ephod
    - v. 9–14: Instructions regarding stones on ephod
- v. 15–28: Instructions for the breastpiece
    - v. 17–21: Instructions regarding stones on breastpiece
    - v. 22–28: Instructions for mounting the breastpiece on the ephod
- v. 29–30: Aaron should wear things over his heart
- v 31–35: Instructions for making the robe with bells and pomegranates
- v. 36–38: Instructions regarding the turban
- v. 39–41: Closing general instructions regarding clothing
- v. 42–43: Instructions on making and wearing undergarments
- v. 43b: Closing statement

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Holy garments

Because Yahweh is holy, only the priests could approach him, and when they did they had to be wearing specially made clothing. (See: priest, priesthood; and holy, holiness, unholy, sacred)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

- Verses 17–20 list 12 kinds of stone. Scholars are not sure which kinds of stones the Hebrew words refer to. Some translations list different stones. The UST gives the probable color of the gemstones. Translators may use names of familiar gem stones.

Exodus 28:1

ULT	UST
And you, bring Aaron your brother, and his sons with him near to you from among the sons of Israel to be priests for me—Aaron and Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar, the sons of Aaron!	*Have your older brother Aaron and his sons, Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar, come close to you and away from the Israelites, so they can be my priests.*

ULT **And you**
UST your
(וְאַתָּה)

Here, **you** refers to Moses; in this case, it is used to highlight that he is the person who must do the next thing.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **Aaron your brother**
UST older brother Aaron
(אֶת־אַהֲרֹן אָחִיךָ)

Aaron is older than Moses. If your language uses a different term for the sibling relationship based on gender and age order, choose the appropriate one.

Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **and Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar**
UST Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar
(נָדָב וַאֲבִיהוּא אֶלְעָזָר וְאִיתָמָר)

These are men's names.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
Israel	the Israelites
to be priests	so they can be my priests
Aaron	Aaron
Eleazar	Eleazar
Aaron	Aaron

Exodus 28:2

ULT	UST
And you shall make for Aaron your brother clothes of holiness for glory and for splendor.	*Make holy vestments for your brother Aaron, so {he reflects my} honor and beauty.*

ULT clothes of holiness
UST holy vestments
(בִּגְדֵי־קֹדֶשׁ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **holiness**, you can express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [holy clothes]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for Aaron	for … Aaron
holiness	holy
for glory	so {he reflects my} honor
and for splendor	and beauty

Exodus 28:3

ULT	UST
And you, you shall speak to all of the wise of heart, whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom, and they shall make the clothes of Aaron to set him apart to be a priest for me.	*Talk to all the skilled artisans, those whom I have made excellent at crafting things. Tell them to make vestments for Aaron to wear when you dedicate him to become a priest to serve me.*

ULT **And you**
UST Talk
(וְאַתָּה)

Here, **you** refers to Moses; in this case, it is used to highlight that he is the person who must do the next thing.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **to all of the wise of heart, whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom**
UST to all the skilled artisans, those whom I have made excellent at crafting things
(אֶל־כָּל־חַכְמֵי־לֵב אֲשֶׁר מִלֵּאתִיו רוּחַ חָכְמָה)

There is a little bit of parallelism here. Yahweh is clarifying who causes someone to be **wise of heart**. You could translate this in a more causative way if that would make more sense. Alternate translation: [to anyone whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom, making them wise of heart]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **to all of the wise of heart, whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom**
UST to all the skilled artisans, those whom I have made excellent at crafting things
(אֶל־כָּל־חַכְמֵי־לֵב אֲשֶׁר מִלֵּאתִיו רוּחַ חָכְמָה)

Here, **heart** and **spirit** are both referring to things innately possessed by a person that is, traits of a person. **Wisdom** refers to skill or talent with crafting in this case. Together **wise of heart** and **filled with the spirit of wisdom** both essentially mean "a talented craftsman." If it would be more clear to your readers, you may consider making some of this more explicit. Alternate translation: [to every talented craftsman, those whom I have made skilled in their work]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the wise of	the skilled artisans
with the spirit of	excellent at crafting things
wisdom	excellent at crafting things

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
to be a priest	to become a priest

Exodus 28:4

ULT	UST
And these are the clothes that they shall make: a breastpiece and an ephod and a robe and a tunic of woven work, a turban and a sash. And they shall make clothes of holiness for your brother Aaron and for his sons to be priests for me.	*They should make these vestments: a sacred pouch {for Aaron to wear over his breast}, a sacred apron, a robe, an embroidered tunic, a turban, and a waistband. They must make these holy vestments so that your older brother Aaron and his sons can {wear them as they} serve me by doing the work that priests do.*

ULT **and a tunic of woven work**
UST an embroidered tunic
(וּכְתֹנֶת תַּשְׁבֵּץ)

We do not know what word translated **of woven work** means, as it only occurs here and in 28:39 as a verb. Alternate translation: [and a checkered tunic] or [an embroidered garment]

ULT **a turban**
UST a turban
(מִצְנֶפֶת)

This is a head covering made from cloth wrapped around the head several times. You may translate it using a word commonly used for a similar item in your culture.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and a sash**
UST and a waistband
(וְאַבְנֵט)

The **sash** is a piece of cloth that people wear around their waist or across their chest. You may translate it with a word commonly used for a similar item in your culture.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **clothes of holiness**
UST these holy vestments
(בִּגְדֵי־קֹדֶשׁ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **holiness**, you can express the same idea in another way. See how you translated this in 28:2.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a breastpiece	

ULT	UST
	a sacred pouch {for Aaron to wear over his breast}
and an ephod	a sacred apron
and a robe	a robe
and a tunic of	an embroidered tunic
they … to be	can {wear them as they} serve me by doing the work that priests do
holiness	these holy vestments
for … Aaron	so that … Aaron

Exodus 28:5

ULT	UST
And they shall take gold and blue and purple and worm of scarlet and fine linen.	*The skilled workmen should receive fine linen and gold, blue, purple, and red thread {to make the vestments}.*

ULT and blue and purple and worm of scarlet
UST blue, purple, and red thread
(וְאֶת־הַתְּכֵלֶת וְאֶת־הָאַרְגָּמָן וְאֶת־תּוֹלַעַת הַשָּׁנִי)

This could mean: (1) “material that is dyed blue, purple, and scarlet,” probably wool yarn, or (2) “blue, purple and scarlet dye” to dye the linen. The original audience would have known what was meant. This material seems to have been used for embroidery later, so “yarn” or “thread” may be the best understanding. See how you translated this in 25:4

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT worm of scarlet
UST and red thread
(תּוֹלַעַת הַשָּׁנִי)

A bright red color for dying cloth was extracted from these worms. Alternate translation: [and bright red]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	and gold
purple	purple

Exodus 28:6

ULT	UST
And they shall make the ephod from gold, blue, and purple, worm of scarlet, and twisted fine linen—the work of a skillful craftsman.	*The skilled workmen must make the sacred apron from finely twisted linen. They must skillfully embroider it with blue, purple, and red thread, and with {fine} gold {thread}.*

ULT **and twisted fine linen**
UST from finely twisted linen
(וְשֵׁשׁ מָשְׁזָר)

This was cloth made from fine linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in Exodus 26:36. Alternate translation: [fine twined linen]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **a skillful craftsman**
UST They must skillfully embroider it
(חֹשֵׁב)

The description **skillful craftsman** refers to a person who can make beautiful objects by hand.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ephod	the sacred apron
from gold	and with {fine} gold {thread}
and purple	purple

Exodus 28:7

ULT	UST
It shall have two shoulder pieces joining to its two ends; so it shall be joined.	*It must have two shoulder straps attached on both edges to connect it together.*

ULT It shall have two shoulder pieces joining to its two ends; so it shall be joined
UST It must have two shoulder straps attached on both edges to connect it together
(שְׁתֵּי כְתֵפֹת חִבֻּרֹת יִהְיֶה־לֹּו אֶל־שְׁנֵי קְצוֹתָיו וְחֻבָּר)

This likely meant creating some sort of fastening up by the shoulders to attach the front of the ephod to its back. Alternate translation: [They shall make it so that the front and back attach to each other at the shoulders]

ULT so it shall be joined
UST to connect it together
(וְחֻבָּר)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [join it together that way]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Exodus 28:8

ULT	UST
And the skillfully-crafted sash of the ephod which is on it shall be of like workmanship, from it: of gold, blue and purple and worm of scarlet and fine twined linen.	*Make a carefully woven belt that matches the sacred apron. Make it from the same piece of cloth as the apron. (That cloth was finely twisted linen with {skillfully embroidered} blue, purple, red thread, and {fine} gold {thread}.) Sew it onto the apron.*

ULT **which is on it … of like workmanship, from it**

UST that matches … from the same piece of cloth as the apron … Sew it onto the apron
(אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו כְּמַעֲשֵׂהוּ מִמֶּנּוּ)

This is saying that the sash should be attached to the ephod, perhaps cut from the same material used to make the rest of the ephod.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ephod	the sacred apron
of gold	and {fine} gold {thread}
and purple	purple

Exodus 28:9

ULT	UST
And you shall take two stones of onyx and you shall engrave on them the names of the sons of Israel,	*Take two onyx stones and carve Jacob's {12} sons' names on them.*

ULT **stones of onyx**
UST onyx stones
(אַבְנֵי־שֹׁהַם)

These **stones of onyx** are valuable stones that have layers of white and black, red, or brown. See how you translated this in Exodus 25:7.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **two**
UST two
(אֶת־שְׁתֵּי)

Alternate translation: [2]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Jacob's {12} sons

Exodus 28:10

ULT	UST
six of their names on one stone and the six remaining names on the second stone, according to their genealogies.	*{Carve the names} in the order in which Jacob's sons were born. {Carve} six names on one stone and the other six names on the other stone.*

ULT **six of … the six**
UST Carve … {Carve} six … six
(שִׁשָּׁה & הַשִּׁשָּׁה)

Alternate translation: [6 of … the 6]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **according to their genealogies**
UST { … the names} in the order in which Jacob's sons were born
(כְּתוֹלְדֹתָם)

Alternate translation: [according to their birth order]

Exodus 28:11

ULT	UST
You shall engrave the two stones with the names of the sons of Israel—the work of a craftsman of stone, the engravings of a signet. You shall make them surrounded with ornamental settings of gold.	*A gem cutter should carve these names in the two stones like he is making a signet ring. Then he should mount the stones in decorative gold settings.*

ULT **the engravings of a signet**
UST like he is making a signet ring
(פִּתּוּחֵי חֹתָם)

Alternate translation: [in the same way a person engraves on a seal]

ULT **a craftsman of stone**
UST A gem cutter
(חָרַשׁ אֶבֶן)

A **craftsman of stone** is a person who cuts designs into stones. Alternate translation: [a detailed stone cutter]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **a signet**
UST like he is making a signet ring
(חֹתָם)

This is an engraved stone often set into a ring and used to stamp a design into a wax seal to authenticate an official document.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **ornamental settings of**
UST Then he should mount … in decorative gold settings
(מִשְׁבְּצוֹת)

These are pieces of metal that hold the stones onto the ephod.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	these names
gold	Then he should mount … in decorative gold settings

Exodus 28:12

ULT	UST
And you shall put the two stones on the shoulder pieces of the ephod as stones of reminder for the sons of Israel. And Aaron shall carry their names before the face of Yahweh on his two shoulders for a reminder.	*Fasten the memorial stones onto the shoulder straps of the sacred apron. Then Aaron will memorialize the names of the 12 tribes of Israel by carrying them on his shoulders whenever he serves Yahweh.*

ULT reminder … for a reminder
UST the memorial stones … will memorialize
(זִכָּרוֹן & לְזִכָּרוֹן)

The text does not specify if Yahweh or Aaron or someone else is the one being reminded by the stones. It also does not specify exactly what the reminder is of. Try to maintain this ambiguity if possible in your translation.

ULT before the face of
UST whenever he serves
(לִפְנֵי)

Here, **face** represents the presence of Yahweh. Alternate translation: [in the presence of]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ephod	the sacred apron
Israel	the names of the 12 tribes of Israel … them
Aaron	Aaron
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 28:13

ULT	UST
And you shall make ornamental settings of gold	*Make the decorative settings for the stones from gold.*

ULT **ornamental settings of**
UST the decorative settings for the stones from
(מִשְׁבְּצֹת)

The **ornamental settings** are pieces of precious metal that surround the sides of hold each stone to hold it onto the ephod. See how you translated this in Exodus 28:11.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold

Exodus 28:14

ULT	UST
and two twisted chains of pure gold: you shall make them as a work of rope, and you shall attach the chains of the rope to the ornamental settings.	*Make two chains of purified gold by braiding gold like cords and fasten the cord chains to the decorative settings.*

ULT and two twisted chains of pure gold: you shall make them as a work of rope

UST Make two chains of purified gold by braiding gold like cords

(וּשְׁתֵּי שַׁרְשְׁרֹת זָהָב טָהוֹר מִגְבָּלֹת תַּעֲשֶׂה אֹתָם מַעֲשֵׂה עֲבֹת)

Alternate translation: [and you shall make two chains of pure gold that are braided like cords]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	purified
gold	gold

Exodus 28:15

ULT	UST
And you shall make a breastpiece of judgment —the work of a skillful craftsman—you shall make it like the work of the ephod; you shall make it from gold, blue, and purple, and worm of scarlet, and twisted fine linen.	*Make a sacred pouch for decision-making. Make it of the same materials as the sacred apron, and skillfully embroider it in the same way with gold, blue, purple, and red finely twisted linen.*

ULT **the work of a skillful craftsman—you shall make it like the work of the ephod**

UST Make it of the same materials as the sacred apron, and skillfully embroider it in the same way

(מַעֲשֵׂה חֹשֵׁב כְּמַעֲשֵׂה אֵפֹד תַּעֲשֶׂנּוּ)

Alternate translation: [a skillful workman will make it like the ephod]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a breastpiece of	a sacred pouch for
judgment	decision-making
the ephod	as the sacred apron
from gold	with gold
and purple	purple

Exodus 28:16

ULT	UST
It shall be square, folded double; its length: a span; and its width: a span.	*Fold the material double so that it is a square 23 centimeters long and 23 centimeters wide.*

ULT a span; and … a span
UST 23 centimeters … and 23 centimeters
(זֶרֶת & וְזֶרֶת)

You can convert this length to a measurement system familiar to your people if that is the style of translation that you are using. A span is approximately 23 centimeters.

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT It shall be square, folded double
UST Fold the material double so that it is a square
(רָבוּעַ יִהְיֶה כָּפוּל)

Alternate translation: [Fold it in half so it will be square]

Exodus 28:17

ULT	UST
And you shall set in it settings of precious stone—four stone rows. The first row shall be a row with a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet.	*Fasten four rows of valuable stones onto the pouch. In the first row, put a red ruby, a yellow topaz, and a green emerald.*

Note: (28:17-21)

Twelve kinds of stones are listed in the next four verses. Scholars are not sure which kinds of stones the Hebrew words refer to. Some translations list different stones.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet**

UST a red ruby, a yellow topaz, and a green emerald

(אֹדֶם פִּטְדָה וּבָרֶקֶת)

These are precious stones.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

Exodus 28:18

ULT	UST
And the second row: an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond.	*Put a green turquoise, a blue sapphire, and a clear diamond in the second row.*

ULT And the second row
UST Put … in the second row
(וְהַטּוּר הַשֵּׁנִי)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.

Alternate translation: [And row 2:]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond
UST a green turquoise, a blue sapphire, and a clear diamond
(נֹפֶךְ סַפִּיר וְיָהֲלֹם)

These are precious stones.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT a sapphire
UST a blue sapphire
(סַפִּיר)

This is a gemstone that is blue in color. See how you translated this in Exodus 24:10.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

Exodus 28:19

ULT	UST
And the third row: a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst.	*Put a red jacinth, a white agate, and a purple amethyst in the third row.*

ULT And the third row
UST Put … in the third row
(וְהַטּוּר הַשְּׁלִישִׁי)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.

Alternate translation: [And row 3:]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst
UST a red jacinth, a white agate, and a purple amethyst
(לֶשֶׁם שְׁבוֹ וְאַחְלָמָה)

These are precious stones

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

Exodus 28:20

ULT	UST
And the fourth row: a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They shall be set in gold—in their ornamental settings.	*Put a yellow beryl, an onyx, and a green jasper in the fourth row. Mount all these stones in decorative gold settings.*

ULT And the fourth row
UST Put … in the fourth row
(וְהַטּוּר֙ הָרְבִיעִ֔י)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here. Alternate translation: [And row 4:]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper
UST a yellow beryl, an onyx, and a green jasper
(תַּרְשִׁישׁ וְשֹׁהַם וְיָשְׁפֵ֑ה)

These are precious stones.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT and an onyx
UST an onyx
(וְשֹׁהַ֔ם)

An **onyx** is a valuable stone that has layers of white and black, red, or brown. See how you translated these in Exodus 25:7.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT They shall be set in gold
UST Mount all these stones … gold
(מְשֻׁבָּצִ֥ים זָהָ֖ב יִהְיוּ֑)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [You shall set them in gold]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in gold	gold

Exodus 28:21

ULT	UST
And the precious stones shall be according to the names of the sons of Israel—according to their 12 names. Each shall be like the engraving of a signet according to its name—for the 12 tribes.	*{A gem cutter should carve} the name of one of the 12 sons of Jacob into each of these stones like he is making signet rings. These name-stones will represent the 12 tribes of Israel.*

ULT like the engraving of a signet
UST like he is making signet rings
(פִּתּוּחֵי חוֹתָם)

This is an engraved stone often set into a ring and used to stamp a design into a wax seal to authenticate an official document. Here the stone is mounted on a ring. See how you translated “signet” in Exodus 28:11.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Jacob
tribes	tribes of Israel

Exodus 28:22

ULT	UST
And you shall make twisted chains on the breastpiece, as a work of rope—pure gold.	*Attach two chains that they made from purified gold and braided like cords to the sacred pouch.*

ULT twisted chains … as a work of rope—pure gold
UST two chains that they made from purified gold and braided like cords
(שַׁרְשֹׁת גַּבְלֹת מַעֲשֵׂה עֲבֹת זָהָב טָהוֹר)

See how you translated similar phrases in Exodus 28:14. Alternate translation (should replace **twisted chains**): [chains that are made of pure gold and are braided like cords]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the breastpiece	the sacred pouch
pure	purified
gold	that they made from … gold

Exodus 28:23

ULT	UST
And you shall make two rings of gold for the breastpiece, and you shall put the two rings on the two ends of the breastpiece.	*Make two gold rings for the sacred pouch and attach them to the pouch's {upper} corners.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
the breastpiece	the sacred pouch
the breastpiece	pouch

Exodus 28:24

ULT	UST
And you shall attach the two chains of gold to the rings on the two ends of the breastpiece.	*Fasten one end of each gold cord to one of the rings on the top corner of the pouch.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	one end of each gold cord
the breastpiece	the pouch

Exodus 28:25

ULT	UST
And you shall attach two of the ends of the two chains to the two ornamental settings, and you shall attach those to the shoulder pieces of the ephod at the front of its face.	*Fasten the other end of each cord to the two decorative settings that enclose the stones. Then put those on the front side of the shoulder straps of the sacred apron.*

ULT **at the front of its face**
UST on the front side of
(אֶל־מוּל פָּנָיו)

Here, **face** simply refers to the object (the ephod). Alternate translation: [on its front side]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to the two ornamental settings**
UST to the two decorative settings that enclose the stones
(עַל־שְׁתֵּי הַמִּשְׁבְּצֹות)

These are two settings that enclose the stones. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ephod	the sacred apron

Exodus 28:26

ULT	UST
And you shall make two rings of gold, and you shall put them on the two ends of the breastpiece, on the edge which is toward the inner side of the ephod.	*Make two more gold rings and attach them to the lower corners of the sacred pouch on the inside edges next to the sacred apron.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
the breastpiece	the sacred pouch
the ephod	the sacred apron

Exodus 28:27

ULT	UST
And you shall make two rings of gold, and you shall put them on the two shoulder-pieces of the ephod on the bottom of the front of its face, close to its joining above the skillfully crafted waistband of the ephod.	*Make two more gold rings and attach them to the lower part of the front of the shoulder straps near where the shoulder straps join the sacred apron just above the sash.*

ULT **its face**
UST the front of
(פָּנָיו)

Here, **face** simply refers to the object (the ephod). Alternate translation: [on its front side]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **skillfully crafted waistband of**
UST the sash
(לְחֵשֶׁב)

The **waistband** was a cloth belt made from narrow linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in Exodus 28:8.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
the ephod	the sacred apron
the ephod	the sacred apron

Exodus 28:28

ULT	UST
And they shall tie the breastpiece by its rings to the rings of the ephod with a cord of blue to be on the finely crafted waistband of the ephod, so the breastpiece shall not become detached from on the ephod.	*Tie the rings on the sacred pouch to the rings on the sacred apron with a blue cord so that the sacred pouch is above the sash and does not come loose from the sacred apron.*

ULT **so the breastpiece shall not become detached from on**
UST the sacred pouch … and does not come loose from
(וְלֹא־יִזַּח הַחֹשֶׁן מֵעַל)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [so that the breastpiece shall stay attached to]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **so the breastpiece shall not become detached from on**
UST the sacred pouch … and does not come loose from
(וְלֹא־יִזַּח הַחֹשֶׁן מֵעַל)

If this double negative would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [so that the breastpiece shall stay attached to]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the breastpiece	the rings on the sacred pouch
the ephod	on the sacred apron
the ephod	the sash
the breastpiece	the sacred pouch
the ephod	the sacred apron

Exodus 28:29

ULT	UST
And Aaron shall bear the names of the sons of Israel in the breastpiece of judgment over his heart when he goes into the Holy Place as a reminder before the face of Yahweh continually.	*Therefore, whenever he enters the Holy Place where Yahweh is, Aaron will continually memorialize the names of the 12 tribes of Israel by carrying them close to his chest, in the sacred pouch for making decisions.*

ULT the names of the sons of Israel

UST the names of the 12 tribes of Israel

(אֶת־שְׁמוֹת בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל)

This refers to the names of the tribes engraved on the twelve stones the breastplate as described in Exodus 28:17–21.

ULT over his heart

UST close to his chest

(עַל־לִבּוֹ)

Alternate translation: [over Aaron's heart] or [on his chest]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
Israel	the 12 tribes of Israel
in the breastpiece of	in the sacred pouch
judgment	for making decisions
the Holy Place	the Holy Place
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 28:30

ULT	UST
And you shall put the Urim and the Thummim in the breastpiece of judgment, and they shall be over the heart of Aaron when he goes in before the face of Yahweh. And Aaron shall bear the judgment of the sons of Israel over his heart before the face of Yahweh continually.	*Put the {things called} Urim and Thummim into the sacred pouch that he uses to know how I judged. In that way, they will be close to his chest when Aaron comes to talk to me. Aaron must always wear the items that reveal how I judge the Israelites on his chest when he meets with me.*

ULT **the Urim and the Thummim**
UST the {things called} Urim and Thummim
(אֶת־הָאוּרִים וְאֶת־הַתֻּמִּים)

It is not clear what **the Urim and the Thummim** are. They were objects, possibly stones, that the priest used to somehow determine the will of God. Because of this, it is basically impossible to translate. In your translation, you can spell it the way it sounds in your language.

Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

ULT **And Aaron shall bear the judgment of the sons of Israel over his heart before the face of Yahweh continually**
UST Aaron must always wear the items that reveal how I judge the Israelites on his chest when he meets with me
(וְנָשָׂא אַהֲרֹן אֶת־מִשְׁפַּט בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל עַל־לִבּוֹ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה תָּמִיד)

This phrase appears to refer to the Urim and Thummim and explain their purpose. Alternate translation: [And Aaron shall bear the decisions for the sons of Israel over his heart before Yahweh continually]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **before the face of Yahweh … before the face of Yahweh**
UST to talk to me … when he meets with me
(לִפְנֵי יְהוָה & לִפְנֵי יְהוָה)

Here, **face** represents the presence of Yahweh. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh … before Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the breastpiece of	the sacred pouch
judgment	that he uses to know how I judged
Aaron	his … Aaron

ULT	UST
Yahweh	me
Aaron	Aaron
the judgment of	the items that reveal how I judge the
Israel	Israelites
Yahweh	me

Exodus 28:31

ULT	UST
And you shall make the robe of the ephod entirely of blue.	*Make the robe {that Aaron will wear underneath his} sacred apron from only blue material.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the robe	the robe {that Aaron will wear underneath his}
of the ephod	sacred apron

Exodus 28:32

ULT	UST
And there shall be an opening for his head in the middle of it. There shall be an edge for its opening all around, so it can not tear—the work of a weaver, it shall be like an opening of a garment.	*Make an opening in the middle through which the priest can put his head. Weave a reinforced border around this opening to keep the collar from tearing.*

ULT **the work of a weaver**
UST Weave
(מַעֲשֵׂה אֹרֵג)

Alternate translation: [made by a weaver]

ULT **a weaver**
UST Weave
(אֹרֵג)

Alternate translation: [a person who weaves] or [a person who creates cloth using thread, yarns and wool]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **a garment**
UST reinforced
(תַּחֲרָא)

We do not know what this term means, but the implication seems to be that the collar should be made strong.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **so it can not tear**
UST to keep the collar from tearing
(לֹא יִקָּרֵעַ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language, as modeled in the UST.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Exodus 28:33

ULT	UST
And on its bottom hem you shall make pomegranates of blue, purple, and worm of scarlet all around on its hem with bells of gold between them all around:	*All around the lower edge on the robe, fasten {decorations that look like} pomegranate fruit. Make them from blue, purple, and red yarn. Also {hang} gold bells in between the pomegranates.*

ULT blue, purple, and worm of scarlet
UST from blue, purple, and red yarn
(תְּכֵלֶת וְאַרְגָּמָן וְתוֹלַעַת שָׁנִי)

This could mean: (1) “material that is dyed blue, purple, and scarlet,” probably wool yarn, or (2) “blue, purple and scarlet dye” to dye the linen. The original audience would have known what was meant. This material seems to have been used for embroidery later, so “yarn” or “thread” may be the best understanding. See how you translated this in 25:4

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pomegranates of	{decorations that look like} pomegranate fruit … them
purple	purple
gold	gold

Exodus 28:34

ULT	UST
a bell of gold and a pomegranate, a bell of gold and a pomegranate all around the hem of the robe.	*{So the pattern will be} one gold bell and then one pomegranate {and then repeat} all the way around the bottom of the robe.*

ULT a bell of gold and a pomegranate, a bell of gold and a pomegranate

UST So the pattern will be} one gold bell and then one pomegranate {and then repeat}
(פַּעֲמֹן זָהָב וְרִמֹּון פַּעֲמֹן זָהָב וְרִמֹּון)

This phrase is repeated to show the pattern of the design on the robe. Alternate translation: [alternate pomegranates and golden bells]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
gold	and then repeat
the robe	the robe

Exodus 28:35

ULT	UST
And it shall be on Aaron while serving, and its sound shall be heard at his going into the Holy Place before the face of Yahweh and at his leaving. And he shall not die.	*Whenever Aaron enters or leaves my presence in the Holy Place in the sacred tent for his priestly ministry, he must wear the robe. I will hear the bells, and he will not die.*

ULT **and its sound shall be heard**
UST I will hear the bells
(וְנִשְׁמַע֙ קֹולֹ֔)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [so that the bells make a sound]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **before the face of Yahweh**
UST my presence
(לִפְנֵ֥י יְהוָ֖ה)

Here, **face** represents the presence of Yahweh. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Yahweh**
UST my presence
(יְהוָ֖ה)

Here, Yahweh refers to himself in the third person. If this is confusing in your language, you may use the first person. Alternate translation: [me]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **And he shall not die**
UST and he will not die
(וְלֹ֥א יָמֽוּת)

The probable implication is that he would die because he did not obey Yahweh. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [As a result, he will not die because of disobeying my instructions]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron … he must wear the robe
the Holy Place	in the Holy Place in the sacred tent

ULT	UST
Yahweh	my presence

Exodus 28:36

ULT	UST
And you shall make a rosette of pure gold and engrave on it, like the engraving on a signet, 'Holy to Yahweh.'	*Make a decoration from purified gold and carve into it the words, 'Dedicated to Yahweh,' just like carving a signet ring.*

> ULT **a rosette of**
> UST a decoration from
> (צִיץ)

We do not know exactly what this was. It was probably a thin piece of gold smaller than the palm of someone's hand.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

> ULT **and engrave on it, like the engraving on a signet**
> UST and carve into it the words … just like carving a signet ring
> (וּפִתַּחְתָּ עָלָיו֙ פִּתּוּחֵ֣י חֹתָ֔ם)

See how you translated similar words in Exodus 28:11. Alternate translation: [write on it in the same way a person engraves on a seal.]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	purified
gold	gold
Holy	Dedicated
to Yahweh	to Yahweh

Exodus 28:37

ULT	UST
And you shall attach it by a cord of blue, and it shall be on the turban. It shall be toward the front of the face of the turban.	*Fasten this ornament to the front of the turban by a blue cord.*

ULT the turban … the turban
UST the turban
(הַמִּצְנֶפֶת & הַמִּצְנָפֶת)

This was a head covering made from cloth wrapped around the head several times. See how you translated this in Exodus 28:4.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT toward the front of the face of the turban
UST to the front of the turban
(אֶל־מוּל פְּנֵי־הַמִּצְנָפֶת)

Here, **face** means the front. Alternate translation: [to the front of the turban]

Support Reference: Metonymy

Exodus 28:38

ULT	UST
And it shall be on the forehead of Aaron, and Aaron shall bear the iniquity of the holy things which the sons of Israel shall cause to be holy, for all of the gifts of their holy things, and it shall be on his forehead continually for their acceptance before the face of Yahweh.	*Aaron must always wear the turban on his forehead so that I will accept the things that the Israelites dedicate to me. If there is anything wrong with anything they dedicate to me, Aaron will be guilty instead of the people.*

ULT **and Aaron shall bear the iniquity of the holy things**
UST If there is anything wrong with anything they dedicate to me, Aaron will be guilty instead of the
(וְנָשָׂא אַהֲרֹן אֶת־עֲוֹן הַקֳּדָשִׁים)

Here, **iniquity** is pictured as something that can be carried or worn like the turban. It also seems to picture handing off the iniquity from the people to Aaron. Also here, **iniquity** actually seems to refer to the punishment for anything that might be wrong regarding the things the Israelites offer Yahweh. You may need to use a different word than **bear** to convey the transfer of responsibility for wrongs from the people to Aaron. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and Aaron shall be responsible for any wrong related to the holy things]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **before the face of Yahweh**
UST to me
(לִפְנֵי יְהוָה)

Here, **face** represents the presence of Yahweh. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Yahweh**
UST to me
(יְהוָה)

Here, Yahweh refers to himself in the third person. If this is confusing in your language, you may use the first person. Alternate translation: [me]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
Aaron	Aaron
the … of	If there is anything wrong

ULT	UST
the holy things	with anything they dedicate to me
Israel	Israelites … people
shall cause to be holy	with anything they dedicate to me
their holy things	with anything they dedicate to me
Yahweh	to me

Exodus 28:39

ULT	UST
And you shall weave the tunic with fine linen, and you shall make a turban of fine linen. And you shall make a sash, the work of an embroiderer.	*Weave the long-sleeved tunic from fine linen. Also make the turban from fine linen. A skilled weaver must make the waistband.*

ULT **a turban**
UST the turban from
(מִצְנֶפֶת)

This was a head covering made from cloth wrapped around the head several times. See how you translated this in Exodus 28:4.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **And … a sash**
UST the waistband
(וְאַבְנֵט)

A **sash** is a decorative piece of cloth that a person wears around his waist or across his chest. See how you translated this in Exodus 28:4.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **an embroiderer**
UST A skilled weaver
(רֹקֵם)

An embroiderer is a person who sews decorative designs onto cloth. See how you translated this in Exodus 26:36.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the tunic … of	the long-sleeved tunic from

Exodus 28:40

ULT	UST
And for the sons of Aaron you shall make tunics, and you shall make sashes for them, and you shall make headbands for them for glory and for splendor.	*Make long-sleeved tunics, waistbands, and caps for Aaron's sons so {they reflect my} honor and beauty.*

ULT **sashes**
UST waistbands
(אַבְנֵטִים)

The **sashes** are decorative pieces of cloth that people wear around the waist or across the chest. See how you translated this in Exodus 28:4.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **headbands**
UST and caps
(וּמִגְבָּעוֹת)

A headband is a decorative, narrow strip of cloth that is worn around the head above the eyes. This seems to be similar to, but perhaps smaller than the turban worn by the high priest.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	for Aaron's sons
tunics	long-sleeved tunics
for glory	so {they reflect my} honor
and for splendor	and beauty

Exodus 28:41

ULT	UST
And you shall clothe them, your brother Aaron and his sons with him. And you shall anoint them, and you shall fill their hand, and you shall set them apart to be priests to me.	*Put these clothes on your older brother Aaron and on his sons. Then consecrate them and authorize them to be my priests by anointing them {with olive oil}.*

ULT your brother Aaron
UST your older brother Aaron
(אֶת־אַהֲרֹן אָחִיךָ)

Aaron is older than Moses. If your language uses a different term for the sibling relationship based on gender and age order, choose the appropriate one.

Support Reference: Kinship

ULT and you shall fill their hand
UST and authorize them
(וּמִלֵּאתָ אֶת־יָדָם)

This seems to be an idiom for giving authority to someone. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [and you shall ordain them]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
to be priests	to be … priests

Exodus 28:42

ULT	UST
And make for them undergarments of linen to cover the flesh of nakedness—they shall be from the waist to the thighs.	*Make linen undershorts for them. The undershorts should extend from their waists to their thighs in order that no one can see their genitalia.*

ULT undergarments of
UST undershorts … The undershorts
(מִכְנְסֵי)

These are articles of clothing worn under the outer clothes, next to the skin.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT the flesh of nakedness
UST in order that no one can see their genitalia
(בְּשַׂר עֶרְוָה)

This refers to the male genitalia. This is a polite way of referring to something unpleasant. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a different polite way of referring to this or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [their private parts]

Support Reference: Euphemism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from the waist	from their waists

Exodus 28:43

ULT	UST
And they shall be on Aaron and on his sons at their entering into the tent of meeting or at their drawing near to the altar to serve in the Holy Place. And they shall not bear iniquity and die. This is a statute forever for him and for his offspring after him.	*Aaron and his sons must always wear those undershorts when they enter the sacred tent or when they come near to the altar to offer sacrifices in the Holy Place. In this way, they will not be guilty, and they will not die. Aaron and all his male descendants must obey this rule forever.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent
the altar	the altar
to serve	to offer sacrifices
in the Holy Place	in the Holy Place
iniquity	guilty
This is a statute	must obey this rule
forever	forever
and for his offspring	and all his male descendants

Exodus 29

Exodus 29 Chapter Introduction

Large translation teams working on multiple books at the same time should note that this chapter is very similar to Leviticus 8.

Structure and Formatting

As you translate, you may perceive a different structure in this chapter than what is below. Feel free to organize in a way that is clear in your language. This chapter is really one united whole; the outline below is one possible way of subdividing it.

The Consecration of the Priests

- v. 1–3 Preparing items
- v. 4–9 Preparing Aaron and his sons
- v. 10–14 Sacrificing the bull to purify the altar
- v. 15–34 Sacrificing the rams
    - v. 15–18 The first ram wholly burned
    - v. 19–28 The second ram used for consecrating and divided for eating
    - v. 29–30 Priestly succession
    - v. 31–34 More instructions regarding eating the second ram
- v. 35–37 Instructions to do all this for seven days
- v. 38–41 Instructions for perpetual offerings
- v. 42–46 Yahweh’s affirmation

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Consecrating priests

This chapter records the process of consecrating priests. The priests were to be set apart from the rest of Israel because Yahweh is holy. (See: consecrate, consecrated, consecration; and priest, priesthood; and holy, holiness, unholy, sacred)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Forms of you

For this chapter, it seems that the singular "you" that Yahweh has been using to give Moses general instructions for the last several chapters now actually refers to Moses himself. If you have been translating the instructions using a plural form of you or by shifting the instructions to the third person, you should switch back to a singular form referring directly to Moses for this chapter.

"I will live among the Israelites"

As God, Yahweh is everywhere and cannot be limited to a single space. This phrase indicates that he permanently remains within Israel in a special way while they have the ark.

Exodus 29:1

ULT	UST
And this {is} the thing that you shall do to them to set them apart to be priests to me. Take one bull, a son of the herd, and two unblemished rams	*Do the following things to dedicate Aaron and his sons to serve me by being priests. Select one young bull and two rams that do not have any defects.*

ULT And this
UST the following things
(וְזֶה)

A new scene begins here. There is a change in topic from instructions for making garments for priests to consecrating priests. This may need to be marked in a certain way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT you shall do
UST Do
(תַּעֲשֶׂה)

Here, **you** refers to Moses.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT to them
UST Aaron and his sons
(לָהֶם)

Here, **they** refers to Aaron and his sons. Alternate translation: [to Aaron and his sons]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT to me
UST to serve me
(לִי)

Here, **me** refers to Yahweh.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT a son of the herd
UST young bull
(בֶּן־בָּקָר)

This is an idiom meaning young. If you do not have a similar idiom you may translate the meaning. Alternate translation: [a young one]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to be priests	by being priests
bull	young bull
the herd	young bull
unblemished	that do not have any defects
and … rams	and … rams

Exodus 29:2

ULT	UST
and unleavened bread and unleavened cakes mixed with oil and unleavened wafers rubbed with oil. Make them with fine flour of wheat.	*Also, using finely ground wheat flour, bake these all without yeast: {plain} bread, soft bread with olive oil in it, and thin wafers with oil on the outside.*

ULT **mixed with oil … rubbed with oil**
UST with olive oil in it … with oil on the outside
(בְּלוּלֹת בַּשָּׁמֶן & מְשֻׁחֵים בַּשָּׁמֶן)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. You may need to shorten the sentences and make the alternate translation content separate sentences or mark it off with special punctuation. Alternate translation: [(mix them with oil) … (rub them with oil)]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and unleavened wafers rubbed with oil**
UST all without yeast … and thin wafers with oil on the outside
(וּרְקִיקֵי מַצּוֹת מְשֻׁחִים בַּשָּׁמֶן)

These may have been rubbed with oil before or after baking.

ULT **and … cakes … and … wafers**
UST soft bread … and thin wafers
(וְחַלֹּת & וּרְקִיקֵי)

These are different kinds of food made from flour. While all the breads were somewhat flat because they were unleavened, the **cakes** were a bread enriched with oil, and the **wafers** were especially thin.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
unleavened	all without yeast
and … bread	Also … {plain} bread
unleavened	all without yeast
with oil	with olive oil in it
unleavened	all without yeast
with oil	with oil on the outside
wheat	using finely ground wheat flour

Exodus 29:3

ULT	UST
And you shall put them into one basket, and you shall bring them near in the basket, and the bull and the two rams.	*Put them in a basket. Bring the basket with the bread in it, the young bull, and the two rams {to me}.*

ULT **them**

UST them

(אוֹתָם)

Alternate translation: [the bread, cakes, and wafers]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and you shall bring them near in the basket, and the bull and the two rams**

UST Bring the basket with the bread in it, the young bull, and the two rams {to me}

(וְהִקְרַבְתָּ אֹתָם בַּסֶּל וְאֶת־הַפָּר וְאֵת שְׁנֵי הָאֵילִם)

Here, **in the basket** is almost parenthetical. You may need to restructure the sentence or use punctuation to make it clear that **the bull and the two rams** are connected to **bring**, and not to **in the basket**. Alternate translation: [and you shall bring them near (in the basket) along with the bull and the two rams]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the bull	the young bull
the … rams	the … rams

Exodus 29:4

ULT	UST
And you shall bring Aaron and his sons near to the entrance of the tent of meeting. And you shall wash them with water.	*Take Aaron and his sons to the entrance of the sacred tent and wash them with water.*

ULT the tent of meeting
UST the sacred tent
(אֹהֶל מוֹעֵד)

The **tent of meeting** is another name for the Dwelling. See how you translated this in Exodus 27:21.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Exodus 29:5

ULT	UST
And you shall take the garments, and you shall clothe Aaron with the tunic and the robe of the ephod and the ephod and the breastpiece, and you shall fasten the ephod to him with the finely woven waistband of the ephod.	*Then put the vestments on Aaron—the long-sleeved tunic, the robe under the sacred apron, the sacred apron, and the sacred pouch. Tie the sacred apron onto him with its sash.*

ULT with the finely woven waistband of
UST with … sash
(בְּחֵשֶׁב)

This was a cloth belt made from narrow linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in Exodus 28:8.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	on Aaron
with the tunic	the long-sleeved tunic
the robe of	the robe under
the ephod … ephod	the sacred apron, the sacred apron
ephod	the sacred apron
the breastpiece	the sacred pouch
the ephod	its

Exodus 29:6

ULT	UST
And you shall set the turban on his head and put the crown of holiness on the turban.	*Put the turban on his head, and fasten to the turban the sacred ornament {that has the words 'Dedicated to Yahweh' engraved on it}.*

ULT the turban … the turban
UST the turban … the turban
(הַמִּצְנֶפֶת & הַמִּצְנָפֶת)

This was a head covering made from cloth wrapped around the head several times. See how you translated this in Exodus 28:4.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT the crown of holiness
UST the sacred ornament {that has the words 'Dedicated to Yahweh' engraved on it}
(אֶת־נֵזֶר הַקֹּדֶשׁ)

This **crown** is described in Exodus 28:36 as being engraved with the words "Holy to Yahweh" and made of pure gold. There it is referred to by a different Hebrew word, which is translated as "rosette."

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT the crown of holiness
UST the sacred ornament {that has the words 'Dedicated to Yahweh' engraved on it}
(אֶת־נֵזֶר הַקֹּדֶשׁ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **holiness**, you can express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the holy crown]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holiness	the sacred ornament {that has the words 'Dedicated to Yahweh' engraved on it}

Exodus 29:7

ULT	UST
And you shall take the oil of anointing and pour it on his head and anoint him.	*Then take the anointing oil and pour some on his head to dedicate him.*

ULT the oil of anointing
UST anointing oil
(אֶת־שֶׁמֶן הַמִּשְׁחָה)

See how you translated **oil of anointing** in 25:6.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the oil of	oil
anointing	anointing
and anoint	to dedicate

Exodus 29:8

ULT	UST
And you shall bring his sons and clothe them with tunics.	*Then bring his sons and put the long-sleeved tunics on them.*

ULT **his sons**
UST his sons
(בָּנָיו)

Alternate translation: [Aaron’s sons]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
with tunics	the long-sleeved tunics

Exodus 29:9

ULT	UST
And you shall wrap them—Aaron and his sons—with the sash and bind headbands to them. And the priesthood will be to them as a statute forever. And you shall fill the hand of Aaron and the hand of his sons.	*Tie the sashes around Aaron and his sons' waists and secure the caps on their heads. This is an eternal law: they are the priests. You will authorize them for this.*

ULT **with the sash**
UST the sashes
(אַבְנֵט)

A **sash** is a decorative piece of cloth that people wear around their waist or across their chest. See how you translated this word in Exodus 28:4.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **headbands**
UST the caps
(מִגְבָּעֹת)

A headband is a narrow, decorative strip of cloth that is worn around the head above the eyes. See how you translated this in Exodus 28:40.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the priesthood**
UST are the priests
(כְּהֻנָּה)

Here, **the priesthood** means the official office of priest. Alternate translation: [the duty of being priests]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **And the priesthood will be to them**
UST This is … they are the priests
(וְהָיְתָה לָהֶם כְּהֻנָּה)

The duty of being priests will also belong to the descendants of Aaron's sons. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [And the priesthood will belong to them and their descendants]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **as a statute forever**
UST an eternal law
(לְחֻקַּת עוֹלָם)

Alternate translation: [a law that will not end.] See how you translated this in Exodus 28:43.

ULT **And you shall fill the hand of Aaron and the hand of his sons**
UST You will authorize them for this
(וּמִלֵּאתָ יַד־אַהֲרֹן וְיַד־בָּנָיו)

The phrase, **fill the hand**, seems to be an idiom for giving authority to someone. See how you translated this in Exodus 28:41. Alternate translation: [And you shall ordain Aaron and his sons]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And you shall fill the hand of Aaron and the hand of his sons**
UST You will authorize them for this
(וּמִלֵּאתָ יַד־אַהֲרֹן וְיַד־בָּנָיו)

The phrase, **fill the hand** may be (1) a summary and reminder statement of the whole ordination process, (2) referring to the previous description, meaning that the priests have been ordained, or (3) referring to the following description, meaning that the priests are about to be ordained. It would probably be best to translate this in the way a mid-text summary reminder phrase would be spoken in your language, avoiding any indication that it refers only to the previous or following text.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
the priesthood	are the priests
as a statute	law
forever	an eternal
Aaron	You will authorize them for this

Exodus 29:10

ULT	UST
And you shall bring the bull to the face of the tent of meeting, and Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands on the head of the bull.	*Then bring the young bull to the front of the sacred tent. While Aaron and his sons put their hands on the head of the young bull,*

Note:

The purpose of the sacrifice explained here through verse 14 is to purify or cleanse the altar. This is made more clear in 29:36–37.

ULT **to the face of the tent of meeting**
UST to the front of the sacred tent
(לִפְנֵי אֹהֶל מוֹעֵד)

Here, **face** refers to the front of the tent. See the UST.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands on the head of the bull**
UST While Aaron and his sons put their hands on the head of the young bull
(וְסָמְכוּ אַהֲרֹן וּבָנָיו אֶת־יְדֵיהֶם עַל־רֹאשׁ הַפָּר)

The slaughter of the bull in the next verse occurs while the priests continue to have their hands on the bull's head. Take care to arrange the phrases and to use words or forms that indicate that the two events happened at the same time.

Support Reference: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the bull	the young bull
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent
Aaron	Aaron
the bull	the young bull

Exodus 29:11

ULT	UST
And you shall slaughter the bull before the face of Yahweh at the entrance of the tent of meeting.	*sacrifice the young bull {by slitting its throat} before Yahweh {outside} the entrance to the sacred tent {and catch the blood in a bowl}.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And you shall slaughter	sacrifice … by slitting its throat
the bull	the young bull
Yahweh	Yahweh
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent {and catch the blood in a bowl}

Exodus 29:12

ULT	UST
And you shall take from the blood of the bull and put it on the horns of the altar with your finger, and you shall pour out all of the blood on the base of the altar.	*Take some of that blood with your finger and smear it on the projections of the altar. Pour the rest of the blood at the bottom of the altar.*

ULT the horns of
UST the projections of
(קַרְנֹ֨ת)

These were projections that looked like ox horns attached to the four corners of the altar.

See how you translated this in Exodus 27:2.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT all of the blood
UST the rest of the blood
(כָּל־הַדָּ֜ם)

Alternate translation: [the remaining blood]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the bull	some of that blood
the altar	the altar
the altar	the altar

Exodus 29:13

ULT	UST
And you shall take all of the fat covering the entrails and the lobe above the liver and the two kidneys and the fat that is on them, and cause them to become smoke on the altar.	*Take all the fat that covers the inner organs of the young bull, the fatty covering of the liver, and both kidneys with the fat on them. Burn all these on the altar until they are completely gone.*

ULT **and cause them to become smoke**
UST Burn all these … until they are completely gone
(וְהִקְטַרְתָּ)

Alternate translation: [and burn them to make smoke]

ULT **the liver … the … kidneys**
UST the liver … kidneys
(הַכָּבֵד & הַכְּלָיֹת)

The **liver** and **kidneys** are organs in the body.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
on the altar	on the altar

Exodus 29:14

ULT	UST
But you shall burn the flesh of the bull and its skin and its dung in the fire outside of the camp. It is a purification offering.	*But you must burn the meat of the young bull and its hide and intestines on a fire outside the camp. {Sacrificing} the bull purifies {the altar}.*

ULT **But you shall burn the flesh of the bull and its skin and its dung**
UST But you must burn the meat of the young bull and its hide and intestines
(וְאֶת־בְּשַׂר הַפָּר וְאֶת־עֹרוֹ וְאֶת־פִּרְשׁוֹ תִּשְׂרֹף)

Alternate translation: [But as for the remaining parts of the bull, including the flesh and dung, you shall burn it]

ULT **outside of the camp**
UST outside the camp
(מִחוּץ לַמַּחֲנֶה)

Alternate translation: [outside the borders of where the Israelites are camped]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the bull	the young bull
is a purification offering	purifies {the altar}

Exodus 29:15

ULT	UST
And you shall take one ram, and Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands on the head of the ram,	*Select one of the rams. While Aaron and his sons put their hands on its head,*

ULT and Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands on the head of the ram
UST While Aaron and his sons put their hands on its head
(וְסָמְכוּ אַהֲרֹן וּבָנָיו אֶת־יְדֵיהֶם עַל־רֹאשׁ הָאָיִל)

The slaughter of the ram in the next verse occurs while they continue to have their hands on the ram's head. Take care to arrange the phrases and to use words or forms that indicate that the two events happened at the same time.

Support Reference: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ram	of the rams
Aaron	Aaron
the ram	its

Exodus 29:16

ULT	UST
and you shall slaughter the ram. And you shall take its blood and sprinkle it all around on the altar.	*kill the ram {by slitting its throat}. Catch the blood and sprinkle it all over the altar.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and you shall slaughter	kill … by slitting its throat
the ram	the ram
the altar	the altar

Exodus 29:17

ULT	UST
And you shall cut the ram into pieces and wash its entrails and its legs and put them on its pieces and on its head,	*Then cut the ram into pieces. Wash its inner organs and its legs, and put those with the head and the rest of the body parts*

ULT its entrails

UST its inner organs

(קִרְבּוֹ)

Alternate translation: [the organs] See how you translated this in Exodus 29:13.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ram	the ram

Exodus 29:18

ULT	UST
and cause all of the ram to become smoke on the altar. It is a burnt offering to Yahweh. It is a scent of appeasement, a fire offering to Yahweh.	*on the altar. Then completely burn it all. That will be a burnt offering to me, Yahweh, and the fire's smell will please me.*

ULT **and cause all of the ram to become smoke**
UST Then completely burn it all
(וְהִקְטַרְתָּ אֶת־כָּל־הָאַיִל)

Alternate translation: [and burn all of the ram to make smoke]

ULT **It is a burnt offering to Yahweh. It is a scent of appeasement, a fire offering to Yahweh**
UST That will be a burnt offering to me, Yahweh, and the fire's smell will please me
(עֹלָה הִוא לַיהוָה רֵיחַ נִיחֹחַ אִשֶּׁה לַיהוָה הִוא)

These phrases are in parallel, with the second expanding and clarifying the first. In some languages, you may need to use a different structure to expand and clarify the **burnt offering**. Alternate translation: [It is a pleasant smelling burnt offering made by fire to Yahweh]

Support Reference: Parallelism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ram	it
on the altar	on the altar
a burnt offering	a burnt offering
to Yahweh	to me, Yahweh … me
a fire offering	fire's
to Yahweh	to me, Yahweh … me

Exodus 29:19

ULT	UST
And you shall take the second ram, and Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands on the head of the ram,	*Take the other ram. While Aaron and his sons put their hands on its head,*

ULT **the second**
UST the other
(הַשֵּׁנִי)

Except for **the second**, this verse is identical to 29:15.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ram	ram
Aaron	Aaron
the ram	its

Exodus 29:20

ULT	UST
and you shall slaughter the ram and take some of its blood. And you shall put it on the tip of the right ear of Aaron and on the tip of the right ear of his sons and on the thumb of their right hand and on the great toe of their right foot. And you shall sprinkle the blood all around on the altar.	*kill the ram {by slitting its throat}. Catch the blood. Smear some of the blood on the bottom portion of Aaron's and his sons' right ears, on their right thumbs, and on the big toes on their right feet. Throw the rest of the blood against the four sides of the altar.*

ULT and you shall slaughter the ram
UST kill the ram {by slitting its throat}
(וְשָׁחַטְתָּ אֶת־הָאַיִל)

They killed the ram by cutting its throat. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [and kill the ram by cutting its throat]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and you shall slaughter	kill … by slitting its throat
the ram	the ram
Aaron	Aaron's
the altar	the altar

Exodus 29:21

ULT	UST
And you shall take some of the blood that is on the altar and some of the oil of anointing and sprinkle it on Aaron and on his garments and on his sons and on the garments of his sons along with him. And he will be set apart and his garments and his sons and the garments of his sons along with him.	*Wipe up some of the blood that is on the altar, mix it with some of the oil for anointing, and sprinkle it on Aaron and his clothes, and on his sons and their clothes. By doing this, you will dedicate them and their clothes to me.*

ULT **And you shall take some of the blood that is on the altar and some of the oil of anointing and sprinkle it**

UST Wipe up some of the blood that is on the altar, mix it with some of the oil for anointing, and sprinkle it

(וְלָקַחְתָּ מִן־הַדָּם אֲשֶׁר עַל־הַמִּזְבֵּחַ וּמִשֶּׁמֶן הַמִּשְׁחָה וְהִזֵּיתָ)

Moses would mix the blood and oil. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [And you shall take some of the blood that is on the altar and mix it with some of the oil of anointing and sprinkle it]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar	the altar
and some of the oil of	with some of the oil for anointing
anointing	with some of the oil for anointing
Aaron	Aaron

Exodus 29:22

ULT	UST
And you shall take the fat from the ram and the fat tail and the fat covering the entrails and the lobe of the liver and the two kidneys and the fat that is on them and the right thigh —for this is a ram of consecration—	*Also, cut off the ram's fat: its fat tail, and the fat that covers the inner organs, the fatty covering of the liver, the two kidneys with the fat on them, and the right thigh. (This ram is for making holy {Aaron and his sons, who will be my priests}.)*

ULT **the entrails … the liver … the … kidneys**
UST the inner organs … the liver, the … kidneys
(אֶת־הַיֹּתֶרֶת & הַכָּבֵד & הַכְּלָיֹת)

The **entrails, liver**, and **kidneys** refer to organs inside the body. See how you translated this in Exodus 29:13.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ram	the ram's fat
is a ram of	ram
consecration	is for making holy {Aaron and his sons, who will be my priests}

Exodus 29:23

ULT	UST
and one round loaf of bread, and one cake of bread of oil, and one wafer from the basket of unleavened bread that is before the face of Yahweh.	*Finally, from the basket of bread that they baked without yeast (the one that you brought to me), take a {plain} round loaf, a piece of soft bread with oil in it, and a thin wafer {with oil on the outside}.*

ULT **and one round loaf of bread, and one cake of bread of oil, and one wafer from the basket of unleavened bread that is before the face of Yahweh**
UST Finally, from the basket of bread that they baked without yeast (the one that you brought to me), take a {plain} round loaf, a piece of soft bread with oil in it, and a thin wafer {with oil on the outside}
(וְכִכַּר לֶחֶם אַחַת־וַחַלַּת לֶחֶם שֶׁמֶן אַחַת וְרָקִיק אֶחָד מִסַּל֙ הַמַּצּ֔וֹת אֲשֶׁר לִפְנֵ֖י יְהוָֽה)

All of these items were in the basket mentioned in 29:2, not just the wafer. Be sure this is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [and from the basket of bread without yeast that is before the face of Yahweh: one round loaf of bread, and one cake of bread of oil, and one wafer]

ULT **and one round loaf of bread, and one cake of bread of oil, and one wafer from the basket of unleavened bread**
UST Finally, from the basket of bread that they baked without yeast … take a {plain} round loaf, a piece of soft bread with oil in it, and a thin wafer {with oil on the outside}
(וְכִכַּר לֶחֶם אַחַת־וַחַלַּת לֶחֶם שֶׁמֶן אַחַת וְרָקִיק אֶחָד מִסַּל֙ הַמַּצּ֔וֹת)

For 29:23, see how you translated similar words in Exodus 29:2.

ULT **that is before the face of Yahweh**
UST the one that you brought to me
(אֲשֶׁר לִפְנֵ֖י יְהוָֽה)

This means in the presence of Yahweh. Alternate translation: [that you have placed before Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bread	Finally … a {plain} round loaf
bread of	a piece of soft bread
oil	with oil in it
unleavened bread	bread that they baked without yeast

ULT	UST
Yahweh	me

Exodus 29:24

ULT	UST
And you shall put all these on the palms of Aaron and on the palms of his sons, and you shall raise them as a raised offering before the face of Yahweh.	*Put all these things into the hands of Aaron and his sons. Then tell them to lift them up high to dedicate them to me.*

ULT **all these**
UST all these things
(הַכֹּל)

Here, **all these** refers to the parts of the sacrifice mentioned in the previous verses.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and you shall raise**
UST Then tell them to lift … up high
(וְהֵנַפְתָּ)

While the text reads, **you shall raise**, logically, it is Aaron and his sons who will raise the offerings at this point. If this is confusing in your language, you may use the third person. Alternate translation: [and they shall raise]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and you shall raise them as a raised offering before the face of Yahweh**
UST Then tell them to lift them up high to dedicate them to me
(וְהֵנַפְתָּ אֹתָם תְּנוּפָה לִפְנֵי יְהוָה)

The act of raising the meat and bread symbolized dedicating it to Yahweh. The priests would be acting out the process of handing the offering to him. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [and they shall show that they are giving them to me by holding them up to me]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **before the face of Yahweh**
UST to me
(לִפְנֵי יְהוָה)

This means in the presence of Yahweh. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
as a raised offering	to dedicate them

ULT	UST
Yahweh	me

Exodus 29:25

ULT	UST
And you shall take them from their hands, and cause them to become smoke on the altar above the burnt offering to be an aroma of appeasing before the face of Yahweh, it is a fire offering to Yahweh.	*Then take them from their hands and completely burn them on the altar, on top of the burnt offering. That also will be a fire offering to me, and its smell will please me.*

ULT **and cause them to become smoke on the altar above the burnt offering to be an aroma of appeasing before the face of Yahweh, it is a fire offering to Yahweh**

UST and completely burn them on the altar, on top of the burnt offering. That also will be a fire offering to me, and its smell will please me

(וְהִקְטַרְתָּ הַמִּזְבֵּחָה עַל־הָעֹלָה לְרֵיחַ נִיחֹחַ לִפְנֵי יְהוָֹה אִשֶּׁה הִוא לַיהוָֹה)

See how you translated similar phrases in 29:18.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
on the altar	on the altar
the burnt offering	the burnt offering
Yahweh	me
is a fire offering	a fire offering
to Yahweh	to me

Exodus 29:26

ULT	UST
And you shall take the breast from the ram of consecration that is for Aaron and raise it for a raised offering before the face of Yahweh, and it will be your share.	*Then take the breast of the ram for making Aaron holy and lift it up high to dedicate it to me. But then this part of the animal will be for you to eat.*

ULT from the ram of consecration
UST the ram … making … holy
(מֵאֵיל הַמִּלֻּאִים)

See how you translated this in 29:22. Alternate translation: [from the ram that you dedicated]

ULT and raise it for a raised offering
UST and lift it up high to dedicate it
(וְהֵנַפְתָּ אֹתָו תְּנוּפָה)

The act of raising the meat symbolized dedicating it to Yahweh. The priests would be acting out handing the offering to him. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. See how you translated this in 29:24. Alternate translation: [and show that you are giving it to me by holding it up to me]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from the ram of	the ram
consecration	making … holy
is for Aaron	for … Aaron
for a raised offering	to dedicate it
Yahweh	me

Exodus 29:27

ULT	UST
And from the ram of consecration which is for Aaron and which is for his sons, you shall set apart the breast of the raised offering that was raised and the thigh of the contribution that was contributed.	*Set these apart from the ram for making holy {Aaron and his sons as my priests}: the breast that you lifted high to dedicate to me and the thigh that you presented to me. These are for Aaron and his sons.*

ULT and … the raised offering that was raised … the thigh of the contribution that was contributed

UST that you lifted high to dedicate to me and the thigh that you presented to me
(הַתְּנוּפָה וְאֵת שׁוֹק הַתְּרוּמָה אֲשֶׁר הונַף וַאֲשֶׁר הוּרַם)

The act of raising the meat symbolized dedicating it to Yahweh. The priests would be acting out handing the offering to him. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. See how you translated this in 29:24.

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from the ram of	from the ram for
consecration	making holy {Aaron and his sons as my priests}
for Aaron	These are for Aaron
the raised offering	that you lifted high to dedicate to me

Exodus 29:28

ULT	UST
And it shall belong to Aaron and to his sons—as an eternal requirement—for it is an offering from the sons of Israel. And it shall be an offering from the sons of Israel from the sacrifices of their peace offerings, their offerings to Yahweh.	*This custom will continue forever. Whenever the Israelites bring offerings to show they are friends with me, the breast and the thigh of animals that they present to me will be for Aaron and his male descendants to eat.*

ULT **And it shall belong to Aaron and to his sons—as an eternal requirement—for it is an offering from the sons of Israel**

UST This custom will continue forever. Whenever the Israelites bring offerings … the breast and the thigh of animals that they present to me will be for Aaron and his male descendants to eat

(וְהָיָה֙ לְאַהֲרֹ֣ן וּלְבָנָ֔יו לְחָ֥ק־עוֹלָ֖ם מֵאֵ֣ת בְּנֵ֣י יִשְׂרָאֵ֑ל כִּ֥י תְרוּמָ֖ה הִ֑וא)

Alternate translation: [This offering is what Aaron and his sons will always receive from the people]

ULT **for it is an offering from the sons of Israel. And it shall be an offering from the sons of Israel from the sacrifices of their peace offerings, their offerings to Yahweh**

UST Whenever the Israelites bring offerings to show they are friends with me … that they present to me

(מֵאֵ֣ת בְּנֵ֣י יִשְׂרָאֵ֑ל כִּ֥י תְרוּמָ֖ה הִ֑וא וּתְרוּמָ֡ה תִּהְיֶ֣ה מֵאֵת֩ בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל֙ מִזִּבְחֵ֣י שַׁלְמֵיהֶ֔ם תְּרוּמָתָ֖ם לַיהוָֽה)

The amount of repetition in this verse may make it difficult to translate smoothly. You may consider combining some phrases if that would work better in your language. Alternate translation: [for the Israelites must offer this portion from what they bring to Yahweh as peace offerings to him]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to Aaron	for Aaron … to eat
an eternal	will continue forever
as … requirement	This custom
is an offering	bring offerings … that they present to me
Israel	the Israelites
And … an offering	bring offerings … that they present to me
Israel	the Israelites
their peace offerings	to show they are friends
their offerings	bring offerings … that they present to me
to Yahweh	with me

Exodus 29:29

ULT	UST
And the garments of holiness that are for Aaron shall be for his sons after him, for anointing in them and to fill their hand in them.	*After Aaron {dies}, the sacred vestments that he wore will belong to his male descendants. They will wear them when {a leader} anoints them to authorize them to be priests.*

ULT **And the garments of holiness**
UST the sacred vestments
(וּבִגְדֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **holiness**, you can express the same idea in another way. See how you translated this in 28:2.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and to fill their hand in them**
UST They will wear them … to authorize them to be priests
(וּלְמַלֵּא־בָם אֶת־יָדָם)

Fill their hand seems to be an idiom for giving authority to someone. See how you translated this in Exodus 28:41. Alternate translation: [to ordain them in the clothing]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holiness	sacred
are for Aaron	he wore
for anointing	when {a leader} anoints them

Exodus 29:30

ULT	UST
The priest who succeeds him from among his sons, who comes into the tent of meeting to serve in the Holy Place, shall wear them for seven days.	*Aaron's descendant who becomes high priest after him and enters the sacred tent and performs rituals in the Holy Place must wear these vestments for seven days.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The priest	high priest
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent
to serve	and performs rituals
in the Holy Place	in the Holy Place
days	days

Exodus 29:31

ULT	UST
And you shall take the ram of consecration and boil its meat in a holy place.	*Take the breast and thigh of the ram that they sacrificed to make Aaron and his sons holy, and boil it in a location set aside for that.*

ULT the ram of consecration
UST the ram that they sacrificed to make Aaron and his sons holy
(אֵיל הַמִּלֻּאִים)

The **ram of consecration** refers to the second ram, the one described in 20:19 and following.

ULT in a holy place
UST in a location set aside for that
(בְּמָקֹם קָדֹשׁ)

This is not the same as the Holy Place outside of the Most Holy Place. This probably refers to a place within the courtyard. However, its exact location is not otherwise specified. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [at the entrance to the tent of meeting]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ram of	the ram
consecration	that they sacrificed to make Aaron and his sons holy
a holy	set aside for that

Exodus 29:32

ULT	UST
And Aaron and his sons shall eat the meat of the ram and the bread that is in the basket at the entrance to the tent of meeting.	*{After it is cooked,} Aaron and his sons must eat the meat, along with the bread that is left in the basket, at the entrance to the sacred tent.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	{ … cooked,} Aaron
the ram	the meat
the bread	along with the bread
to the tent of meeting	to the sacred tent

Exodus 29:33

ULT	UST
And they shall eat these that were for their atoning to fill their hand, to set them apart. But a stranger shall not eat them, because they are set apart.	*They will eat these things from the offering that made them holy by covering their sins when they became priests. But no one else can eat these things, because they are reserved for the priests.*

ULT to fill their hand

UST when they became priests

(לְמַלֵּא אֶת־יָדָם)

This seems to be an idiom for giving authority to someone. See how you translated this in Exodus 28:41. Alternate translation: [to ordain them]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
atoning	the offering … by covering their sins

Exodus 29:34

ULT	UST
And if any meat of the consecration or any of the bread remains until the morning, then you shall burn the remainder with fire. It shall not be eaten, because it is set apart.	*If any of the holy meat or bread is left over in the morning, you must completely burn it. Do not eat any of it, because it is sacred.*

ULT It shall not be eaten
UST Do not eat any of it
(לֹא יֵאָכֵל)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [No one may eat it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the consecration	the holy
the bread	bread

Exodus 29:35

ULT	UST
And thus you shall do to Aaron and to his sons according to all that I have commanded you: you shall fill their hand seven days.	*Do all this to Aaron and his sons just as I have told you. You will prepare them for seven days.*

ULT thus
UST all this … just as
(כָּכָה)

Here, **thus** means "like this" and, as the next verses make clear, refers to the sacrificial ceremony outlined in this chapter which they must repeat seven times.

ULT seven
UST seven
(שִׁבְעַת)

Alternate translation: [7]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT you shall fill their hand
UST You will prepare them
(תְּמַלֵּא יַד)

This seems to be an idiom for giving authority to someone. See how you translated this in Exodus 28:41. Alternate translation: [you shall ordain them]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to Aaron	to Aaron
days	for … days

Exodus 29:36

ULT	UST
And you shall offer a bull of purification for atonement daily, and you shall purify the altar by making atonement for it. And you shall anoint it to set it apart.	*Sacrifice a {young} bull to purify {the altar} each of those days. That will ceremonially cleanse the altar by covering the altar's imperfections. You must also pour {olive oil} over the altar to dedicate it {to Yahweh}.*

Note: (29:36-37)

This verse and the next explain the purpose of the sacrifice detailed in 29:10–14.

ULT **And you shall offer a bull of purification for atonement daily, and you shall purify the altar by making atonement for it**

UST Sacrifice a {young} bull to purify {the altar} each of those days. That will ceremonially cleanse the altar by covering the altar's imperfections

(וּפַ֣ר חַטָּ֗את תַּעֲשֶׂ֤ה לַיּוֹם֙ עַל־הַכִּפֻּרִ֔ים וְחִטֵּאתָ֥ עַל־הַמִּזְבֵּ֖חַ בְּכַפֶּרְךָ֣ עָלָ֑יו)

The phrase **and you shall purify the altar by making atonement for it** describes the purpose of offering the bull. You may want to use a stronger connector. In languages that need to put purpose first, you may need to re-order the clauses. Alternate translation: [And you shall offer a bull of purification for atonement daily, thus you shall purify the altar, by making atonement for it.] or [You shall purify the altar by making atonement for it: you shall offer a bull of purification daily for its atonement.]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you shall offer	Sacrifice
And … a bull of	a {young} bull
purification	to purify {the altar}
atonement	by covering the altar's imperfections
daily	each of those days
and you shall purify	That will ceremonially cleanse
the altar	the altar
by making atonement	by covering the altar's imperfections
And you shall anoint	You must also pour {olive oil} over

Exodus 29:37

ULT	UST
You shall make atonement for the altar seven days, and set it apart. And the altar will be a holiest holy thing. Whatever touches the altar will be set apart.	*After you cover the altar for seven days you will have made it holy. It will be so very holy that it will make anything that touches it holy too.*

ULT **a holiest holy thing**
UST so very holy
(קֹ֣דֶשׁ קָדָשִׁ֔ים)

Here, **holiest holy** means extremely or uniquely holy. If this form would not express that this item would become uniquely holy in your language you may need to find another way to express this idea. Alternate translation: [a most holy thing] or [extraordinarily holy]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **will be set apart**
UST that it will make … holy too
(יִקְדָּֽשׁ׃)

Alternate translation: [will also become set apart]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar	the altar
days	days
the altar	It
the altar	it

Exodus 29:38

ULT	UST
And this is what you shall offer on the altar every day continually: two lambs, sons of a year.	*You must also perpetually sacrifice two one-year-old lambs per day on the altar.*

> ULT **sons of a year**
> UST one-year-old
> (בְּנֵי־שָׁנָה)

The phrase **sons of a year** is an idiom meaning one year old. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language.

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you shall offer	You must … sacrifice
the altar	the altar
every day	per day
lambs	lambs
a year	one-year-old

Exodus 29:39

ULT	UST
The one lamb you shall offer in the morning, and the second lamb you shall offer between the evenings.	*You must sacrifice one lamb in the morning and the other around twilight.*

ULT between the evenings
UST around twilight
(בֵּין הָעַרְבָּיִם)

The exact meaning of this phrase is debated. Since the priests ate many of the sacrifices, it may have been offered around the time of the evening meal.

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The … lamb	lamb
you shall offer	You must sacrifice
lamb	the other
you shall offer	You must sacrifice

Exodus 29:40

ULT	UST
For the first lamb: a tenth of fine flour mixed with pressed oil (the fourth part of a hin) and a drink offering: the fourth part of a hin of wine.	*With the first lamb, also {offer} two liters of finely ground wheat flour mixed with a liter of the best kind of olive oil, and one liter of wine as a drink-offering.*

ULT **a tenth of … the fourth part of … the fourth part of**
UST also {offer} two liters of … a liter of … one liter of
(וְעִשָּׂרֹן & רְבִיעִת & רֶבַע)

A **tenth** means one part out of ten equal parts. A **fourth** means one part out of four equal parts.

Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **a tenth of fine flour**
UST also {offer} two liters of finely ground wheat flour
(וְעִשָּׂרֹן סֹלֶת)

Many commentators suggest that this means one tenth of an “ephah” even though “ephah” is not written. If your translation style retains the original measurement words, you may need to insert the word you are using for “ephah” here.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **a tenth of fine flour … the fourth part of a hin … the fourth part of a hin of**
UST also {offer} two liters of finely ground wheat flour … a liter of … one liter of
(וְעִשָּׂרֹן סֹלֶת & רֶבַע הַהִין & רְבִעִית הַהִין)

The values given in the UST are approximations as the exact size of an ephah and a hin is not precisely known. An ephah (the implied measurement) may have been around 22 liters, so this is about 2.2 liters of flour. A hin may have been around 3.7 liters, so this is about one liter of both oil and wine.

Support Reference: Biblical Volume

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
For … lamb	With … lamb
and a drink offering	and … as a drink-offering
wine	wine

Exodus 29:41

ULT	UST
And you shall offer the second lamb between the evenings. You shall offer the same grain offering as in the morning and the same drink offering with it for a scent of appeasement, a fire offering to Yahweh.	*In the evening, when you sacrifice the other lamb, offer the same amounts of flour, olive oil, and wine as you did in the morning. This will be an offering to me, Yahweh, that they will burn, and its smell will please me.*

ULT **between the evenings**
UST In the evening
(בֵּין הָעַרְבָּיִם)

The exact meaning of the phrase **between the evenings** is debated. Since the priests ate many of the sacrifices, it may have been offered around the time of the evening meal. See how you translated it in 29:39.

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you shall offer	when you sacrifice
lamb	lamb
You shall offer	offer
the same grain offering as	the same amounts of flour, olive oil
and the same drink offering	and wine
to Yahweh	to me, Yahweh

Exodus 29:42

ULT	UST
It shall be a continual burnt offering throughout your generations, at the entrance to the tent of meeting before the face of Yahweh, there where I will meet with you to speak to you there.	*You and your descendants must continue making these offerings to me, Yahweh, throughout all future generations. You must offer them at the entrance to the sacred tent. That is where I will meet with you and speak to you.*

ULT throughout your generations
UST You and your descendants … throughout all future generations
(לְדֹרֹתֵיכֶם)

Alternate translation: [through all the generations of your descendants.] See how you translated this in Exodus 12:14.

ULT before the face of Yahweh
UST to me, Yahweh
(לִפְנֵי יְהוָה)

This means in the presence of Yahweh. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
It shall be a … burnt offering	making these offerings
throughout your generations	You and your descendants … throughout all future generations
to the tent of meeting	to the sacred tent
Yahweh	to me, Yahweh

Exodus 29:43

ULT	UST
And I will meet with the sons of Israel there, and it will be set apart by my glory.	*That is where I will meet with the Israelites, and the brilliant light of my presence will cause that place to be holy.*

ULT and it will be set apart by my glory
UST and the brilliant light of my presence will cause that place to be holy
(וְנִקְדַּשׁ בִּכְבֹדִי)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [My awesome presence will dedicate the tent to me]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	with the Israelites
by my glory	and the brilliant light of my presence

Exodus 29:44

ULT	UST
And I will set apart the tent of meeting and the altar. And I will set apart Aaron and his sons to be priests to me.	*I will dedicate the sacred tent and the altar. I will also dedicate Aaron and his sons to be my priests.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent
the altar	the altar
Aaron	Aaron
to be priests	to be … priests

Exodus 29:45

ULT	UST
And I will live among the sons of Israel and will be their God.	*I will live with the Israelites, and I will be their God.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites
God	God

Exodus 29:46

ULT	UST
And they will know that I am Yahweh their God, who brought them out from the land of Egypt to live among them. I am Yahweh their God.	*They will know that I, Yahweh their God, am the one who brought them out of Egypt in order that I might live among them. I am Yahweh, the God whom they worship.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And they will know	They will know
I am Yahweh	I, Yahweh … am
their God	their God
from the land of	out of Egypt
Egypt	out of Egypt
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh
their God	the God whom they worship

Exodus 30

Exodus 30 General Notes

This chapter is mostly a return to instructions for building worship equipment for the sacred tent.

The forms of "you" are mostly singular. However, they again refer to the workmen that Moses will instruct, so you should return to whatever form you have been following in chapters 25–28.

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–10: Incense altar
  - v. 1–6: Instructions for making the incense altar
  - v. 7–10: Use of the incense altar
- v. 11–16: Ransom money for taking a census
- v. 17–21: Instructions for a washbasin
- v. 22–30: Anointing oil
  - v. 22–25: Instructions for making the oil
  - v. 26–33: Instructions for using the oil
- v. 34–38: Making and using sacred incense

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Atonement

Through the offering of blood and money, things and people were kept in God's favor. (See: atonement, atone, atoned)

Holiness

Some items in this chapter became so holy that they could make other things holy. (See: holy, holiness, unholy, sacred)

Unknown terms

There are a number of ingredient terms that are unknown even to scholars.

Exodus 30:1

ULT	UST
And you shall make an altar, a place of burning of incense. You shall make it with wood of acacias,	*Make an altar from acacia wood for burning incense.*

ULT And you shall make
UST Make
(וְעָשִׂיתָ)

Here, **you** refers to Moses and the people of Israel. If your language makes a distinction, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an altar	an altar
incense	incense

Exodus 30:2

ULT	UST
Its length shall be one cubit and its width shall be one cubit. It shall be square, and its height shall be two cubits. Its horns {shall be} part of it.	*It is to be square, one-half meter on each side. It is to be one meter high. Make {projections that look like} horns on the same block of wood as the altar.*

ULT **Its horns**
UST Make {projections that look like} horns on the same block of wood as the altar
(קַרְנֹתָיו)

See how you translated **horns** in Exodus 27:2

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **shall be one cubit and … shall be one cubit … and … shall be two cubits**
UST one-half meter on each side. It is to be one meter
(אַמָּה & וְאַמָּה & וַאֲמָתַיִם)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote. A **cubit** is approximately 46cm. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 46cm … 46cm … 92cm

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Its horns	Make {projections that look like} horns on the same block of wood as the altar

Exodus 30:3

ULT	UST
And you shall overlay it with pure gold—its top and all around its sides and its horns—and you shall make for it a border of gold around it.	*Cover the top and the four sides, including the projections, with pure gold. Put a gold molding all around it.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 25:11, so see how you translated there.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	with pure
with … gold	gold
gold	a gold

Exodus 30:4

ULT	UST
And you shall make two rings of gold for it under its border on its two sides. You shall make them on its two sides. They will be housings for the poles for carrying it with.	*Make two gold rings and attach them to the altar below the molding, one on each side of the altar. These rings are to hold the poles for carrying the altar.*

Note:

When translating this verse, you may want to refer back to several other passages regarding making rings for carrying poles. See 25:12, 25:26, 25:27, and 27:4.

ULT **housings**
UST to hold
(לְבָתִּים)

Here, the word **housings** means that the rings will hold the poles. Since they are where the poles belong for use, they are their house. If you have a similar idiom meaning "place of belonging," you may use it or you may translate the idea. Alternate translation: [a place]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold

Exodus 30:5

ULT	UST
And you shall make the poles of wood of acacias, and you shall overlay them with gold.	*Make these two poles from acacia wood and cover them with gold.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
with gold	with gold

Exodus 30:6

ULT	UST
And you shall place it before the face of the curtain that is over the Box of the Testimony. It shall be before the face of the atonement lid that is over the Testimony, where I will meet with you.	*Put this incense altar outside the curtain that hangs in front of the sacred chest. (The chest that has a lid covering the stone slabs, where I will talk with you.)*

ULT **before the face of … It shall be before the face of**
UST outside … The chest that has
(לִפְנֵי & לִפְנֵי)

Here, **before the face of** means in front of.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **you**
UST with you
(לְךָ)

Here, **you** refers to Moses.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the curtain	the curtain
the Box of the Testimony	the sacred chest
the atonement lid	a lid
the Testimony	the stone slabs

Exodus 30:7

ULT	UST
And Aaron shall cause smoke on it, incense of fragrance. Morning by morning, when he makes the lamps good, he shall cause it to smoke,	*Aaron must burn sweet-smelling incense on this altar. He must burn some every morning when he takes care of the lamps,*

ULT Morning by morning
UST every morning
(בַּבֹּקֶר בַּבֹּקֶר)

Alternate translation: [Each morning] or [Daily, in the morning]

ULT when he makes the lamps good
UST when he takes care of the lamps
(בְּהֵיטִיבׁוֹ אֶת־הַנֵּרֹת)

Alternate translation: [trims the lamps]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
incense of	incense
the lamps	the lamps

Exodus 30:8

ULT	UST
and when Aaron lifts up the lamps between the evenings, he will make it smoke. Incense will be continually before the face of Yahweh throughout your generations.	*and he must burn some in the evening when he lights the lamps. Always keep incense burning for me throughout all future generations.*

ULT and when Aaron lifts up the lamps
UST and … when he lights the lamps
(וּבְהַעֲלֹת אַהֲרֹן אֶת־הַנֵּרֹת)

This may indicate that in the morning Aaron had taken the lamps down, and he would light them and then put them up on the holders in the evening.

ULT between the evenings
UST in the evening
(בֵּין הָעַרְבַּיִם)

The exact meaning of this phrase is debated. See how you translated it in 29:39.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT throughout your generations
UST throughout all future generations
(לְדֹרֹתֵיכֶם)

Alternate translation: [through all the generations of your descendants.] See how you translated this in Exodus 12:14.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	he
the lamps	the lamps
Incense	keep incense burning
Yahweh	me
throughout your generations	throughout all future generations

Exodus 30:9

ULT	UST
You shall not offer up strange incense or a burnt offering or a grain offering on it. And you shall not pour a drink offering on it.	*Do not burn on the altar any incense that I have not told you to burn, or burn any animal on it, or any flour offering for me, nor pour any wine on it as an offering.*

ULT You shall not offer up strange incense or a burnt offering or a grain offering on it
UST Do not burn on the altar any incense that I have not told you to burn, or burn any animal on it, or any flour offering for me
(לֹא־תַעֲלוּ עָלָיו קְטֹרֶת זָרָה וְעֹלָה וּמִנְחָה)

Later, in 30:34 and following, God describes how to make the one sort of incense that he wants burnt on this altar. Alternate translation: [You shall only offer up the kind of incense I tell you. You shall not make burnt or grain offerings on it.]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
You shall … offer up	Do … burn
incense	any incense
or a burnt offering	or burn any animal on it
or a grain offering	or any flour offering for me
And … a drink offering	any wine … as an offering

Exodus 30:10

ULT	UST
And Aaron shall make atonement on its horns once a year. From the blood of the purification of the atonement once a year he shall make atonement for it throughout your generations. It is a holiest holy thing to Yahweh."	*Once a year, Aaron must take the purifying blood from the annual sacrifice that covers up the bad things people do and put it on the projections on the altar to cover the altar's flaws. {Each high priest} will cover the altar's flaws{this way} throughout all future generations. The altar will be very holy, dedicated to me, Yahweh."*

ULT It is a holiest holy thing to Yahweh
UST The altar will be very holy, dedicated to me, Yahweh
(קֹדֶשׁ־קָדָשִׁים הִוא לַיהוָה)

This last clause defines the purpose of the ritual described in this verse. See 29:37. Use a natural way in your language for indicating purpose. Alternate translation: [This is to make it holy of holies to Yahweh.]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT its horns
UST the projections on the altar
(קַרְנֹתָיו)

These were projections that looked like ox horns and were attached to the four corners of the altar. See how you translated this in Exodus 27:2.

ULT throughout your generations
UST throughout all future generations
(לְדֹרֹתֵיכֶם)

Alternate translation: [through all the generations of your descendants.] See how you translated this in Exodus 12:14.

ULT a holiest holy thing
UST will be very holy, dedicated
(קֹדֶשׁ־קָדָשִׁים)

Here, **holiest holy** means extremely or uniquely holy. If this form would not express that this item would become uniquely holy in your language you may need to find another way to express this idea. See how you translated this in Exodus 29:37. Alternate translation: [a most holy thing] or [extraordinarily holy]

Support Reference: Possession

> ULT **to Yahweh**
> UST to me, Yahweh
> (לַיהוָה)

After **Yahweh**, the direct quote that began in 25:2 ends. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with a closing first-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the end of a quotation.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
And … shall make atonement	to cover the altar's flaws
its horns	the projections on the altar
a year	a year
the purification of	purifying
the atonement	from the … sacrifice that covers up the bad things people do
a year	annual
he shall make atonement	Each high priest} will cover the altar's flaws{this way}
throughout your generations	throughout all future generations
holiest	will be very holy, dedicated
a … holy thing	will be very holy, dedicated
to Yahweh	to me, Yahweh

Exodus 30:11

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh said to Moses,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 30:12

ULT	UST
“When you lift up the head of the sons of Israel to count them, then each man shall give the ransom of his life to Yahweh when counting them. And there will not be a plague among them when counting them.	*“Whenever {your leaders} count to find out how many Israelites there are, each man who {they} count must pay a price to me to save his life. This is so I do not cause the people to become sick and die when {the leaders} count them.*

ULT **you lift up the head of**
UST {your leaders} count
(תִּשָּׂא אֶת־רֹאשׁ)

In this context, **lift up the head** means to take a census. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [take a census]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **you lift up**
UST {your leaders} count
(תִּשָּׂא)

This could mean: (1) **you** refers to Moses and the leaders of Israel in future generations when they take a census or (2) **you** refers to just Moses.

Support Reference: Forms of You

ULT **each man**
UST each man
(אִישׁ)

The leaders only counted the Israelite men.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
the ransom of	a price … to save his life
to Yahweh	to me
a plague	do … cause … to become sick and die

Exodus 30:13

ULT	UST
Every passer over to the counted ones shall give this: half of a shekel, according to the shekel of the sanctuary (the shekel is 20 gerahs). The half shekel is an offering to Yahweh.	*When a man walks by a leader so he can count him he must pay {silver} that weighs half of a standard weight. (Use the official tabernacle weight standard, which is about 11 grams.) This half-weight {of silver} is an offering to me, Yahweh.*

ULT **Every passer over to the counted ones**
UST When a man walks by a leader so he can count him
(כָּל־הָעֹבֵר עַל־הַפְּקֻדִים)

This is an idiom that suggests that the men were counted by walking past someone who was counting people as they walked by. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [Everyone counted]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **a shekel, according to the shekel of … the shekel … gerahs … shekel**
UST a standard weight. (Use … weight standard, which is about 11 grams … weight {of silver}
(הַשֶּׁקֶל בְּשֶׁקֶל & גֵּרָה הַשֶּׁקֶל & הַשֶּׁקֶל)

The **shekel** and the **gerah** are units of weight. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote.

Support Reference: Biblical Weight

ULT **a shekel, according to the shekel of … the shekel … shekel**
UST a standard weight. (Use … weight standard, which is about 11 grams … weight {of silver}
(הַשֶּׁקֶל בְּשֶׁקֶל & הַשֶּׁקֶל & הַשֶּׁקֶל)

The **shekel** was used as both a weight and a unit of money.

Support Reference: Biblical Money

ULT **half of … The half**
UST that weighs half of … This half
(מַחֲצִית & מַחֲצִית)

A **half** means one part out of two equal parts.

Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **according to the shekel of the sanctuary (the shekel is 20 gerahs**
UST Use the official tabernacle weight standard, which is about 11 grams
(בְּשֶׁקֶל הַקֹּדֶשׁ עֶשְׂרִים גֵּרָה הַשָּׁקֶל)

There were evidently shekels of more than one weight at the time. This specified which one was to be used.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the sanctuary	the official tabernacle
is an offering	is an offering
to Yahweh	to me, Yahweh

Exodus 30:14

ULT	UST
Every passer over to the counted ones, from a son of 20 years and up, shall give the contribution of Yahweh.	*Every man who is at least 20 years old must pay this amount to me, Yahweh, when he walks by a leader so the leader can count him.*

ULT Every passer over to the counted ones
UST Every man … when he walks by a leader so the leader can count him
(כֹּל הָעֹבֵר עַל־הַפְּקֻדִים)

This is an idiom that suggests that the men were counted by walking past someone who was counting people as they walked by. It is the same phrase as in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [Everyone counted]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT from a son of 20 years
UST who is at least 20 years old
(מִבֶּן עֶשְׂרִים שָׁנָה)

This is an idiom that refers to age. See the UST and how you translated the same idiom in 7:7.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT from a son of 20 years and up
UST who is at least 20 years old
(מִבֶּן עֶשְׂרִים שָׁנָה וָמָעְלָה)

Larger numbers are spoken of as being up or above smaller numbers. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from twenty years old and more] or [who is twenty years old or older]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the contribution of Yahweh	this amount to me, Yahweh

Exodus 30:15

ULT	UST
The rich shall not increase, and the poor shall not decrease from the half-shekel for giving the contribution of Yahweh to cover over your lives.	*Rich men must not pay more than this amount, and poor men must not pay less than this amount when they pay this money to me, Yahweh, to save their lives.*

ULT **from the half-shekel**
UST than this amount … than this amount
(מֶמַּחֲצִית הַשָּׁקֶל)

See how you translated this in Exodus 3:13.

Support Reference: Biblical Money

ULT **your lives**
UST their lives
(נַפְשֹׁתֵיכֶם)

The plural form of you is used here. In many cases, since Yahweh is speaking to Moses about the people that will be counted, it may make more sense to change to the third person. However, Moses would be counted as well and would have to pay the ransom, so a form of you that could include Moses and all the other Israelite men would also be an appropriate translation.

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	to me, Yahweh

Exodus 30:16

ULT	UST
And you shall take the silver of ransoms from the sons of Israel, and you shall give it to the work of the tent of meeting. And it shall be as a reminder for the sons of Israel before the face of Yahweh to cover over your lives."	*Take the life-saving money from the Israelites and use it for work on the sacred tent. It will remind me, Yahweh, that the Israelites have paid money to save their lives."*

ULT And it shall be as a reminder for the sons of Israel before the face of Yahweh to cover over your lives

UST It will remind me, Yahweh, that the Israelites have paid money to save their lives
(וְהָיָה֙ לִבְנֵ֣י יִשְׂרָאֵ֔ל לְזִכָּר֥וֹן לִפְנֵ֖י יְהוָ֑ה לְכַפֵּ֥ר עַל־נַפְשֹׁתֵיכֶֽם)

This sentence is very unclear. It is not clear who is being reminded of what. This could mean: (1) that it will remind Yahweh that the Israelites have given money for their lives, and therefore he should welcome them. (2) that it will remind the Israelites that they have given Yahweh money for their lives. Therefore, Yahweh will welcome them.

ULT before the face of Yahweh

UST me, Yahweh
(לִפְנֵ֖י יְהוָ֑ה)

Here, **face** represents the presence of Yahweh. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the silver of	money
ransoms	the life-saving
Israel	the Israelites
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent
Israel	the Israelites
the face of Yahweh	me, Yahweh
to cover	that … have paid money to save

Exodus 30:17

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh said to Moses,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 30:18

ULT	UST
“And you shall make a basin of bronze and its base of bronze for washing. And you shall put it between the tent of meeting and the altar, and you shall put water in it.	*“Make a bronze washbasin and a bronze base for it. Put it between the sacred tent and the altar and fill it with water.*

ULT **a basin of bronze**
UST a bronze washbasin
(כִּיּוֹר נְחֹשֶׁת)

Alternate translation: [a bronze bowl] or [a bronze tub]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and its base of**
UST and a … base for it
(וְכַנּוֹ)

The **base** is what the basin would be put upon.

ULT **for washing**
UST washbasin
(לְרָחְצָה)

This phrase, **for washing**, explains the purpose for which the priests were to use the bronze basin.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bronze	a bronze
bronze	bronze
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent
the altar	the altar

Exodus 30:19

ULT	UST
And Aaron and his sons shall wash their hands and their feet in it.	*Aaron and his sons must wash their hands and their feet in the basin.*

ULT in it

UST in the basin

(מִמֶּנּוּ)

Alternate translation: [in the water in the basin]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron

Exodus 30:20

ULT	UST
When they go into the tent of meeting, they shall wash with water, and they will not die. Also when they go near to the altar to serve by causing a fire offering to Yahweh to smoke,	*They must wash with water before they enter the sacred tent so they will not die. Before they come to the altar to burn offerings as sacrifices to me, Yahweh,*

ULT **and they will not die**
UST so they will not die
(וְלֹא יָמֻתוּ)

The priests might die if they do not wash because God would kill them for being defiled in his presence. If your readers would not understand this you may want to include it in a footnote or in the text.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and they will not die**
UST so they will not die
(וְלֹא יָמֻתוּ)

Not dying is the goal of the priests' washing. If the goal of some action needs to be placed elsewhere in the structure of your language move it to the usual location.

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent
the altar	the altar
to serve	to burn offerings as sacrifices
a fire offering	to burn offerings as sacrifices
to Yahweh	to me, Yahweh

Exodus 30:21

ULT	UST
then they shall wash their hands and their feet, and they will not die. And this shall be a statute forever for them, for him and his offspring throughout their generations.”	*they must wash their hands and their feet so that they will not die. This will be a ritual for them and every generation of men descended from Aaron for all time.”*

ULT **And this shall be a statute forever for them, for him and his offspring throughout their generations**

UST This will be a ritual for them and every generation of men descended from Aaron for all time

(וְהָיְתָה לָהֶם חָק־עוֹלָם לוֹ וּלְזַרְעוֹ לְדֹרֹתָם)

See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 12:17.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a statute	a ritual
and his offspring	and every generation of men descended from Aaron
throughout their generations	and every generation of men descended from Aaron

Exodus 30:22

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh said to Moses,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 30:23

ULT	UST
“As for you, take the best spices: myrrh of flowing, 500, and cinnamon of fragrance, its half, 250, and cane of fragrance, 250,	*“Collect to yourself some of the finest spices —six kilograms of liquid myrrh, and then half that much: three kilograms of sweet-smelling cinnamon, three kilograms of a sweet-smelling cane,*

ULT spices
UST some of the finest spices
(בְּשָׂמִים)

These are parts of dried plants (other than the leaves) which people grind into a powder and put in oil or food to give it a nice smell or flavor. See how you translated this in Exodus 25:6.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT 500 … 250 … 250
UST six kilograms of … three kilograms of … three kilograms of
(חֲמֵשׁ מֵאוֹת & חֲמִשִּׁים וּמָאתַיִם & חֲמִשִּׁים וּמָאתַיִם)

The next verse mentions that these are shekel weight measurements. You may want to include some indication of that here. Alternate translation: [500 shekels … 250 shekels … 250 shekels]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT and cinnamon of
UST and … cinnamon
(וְקִנְמָן)

The word **cinnamon** is a kind of sweet spice taken from the inside of the bark of a tree that grows in south-east Asia. If your readers would not be familiar with what cinnamon is, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT and cane of
UST a … cane
(וְקָנֵה)

This plant is unknown to scholars. Alternate translation: [and reed of]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
myrrh of	myrrh

Exodus 30:24

ULT	UST
and cassia, 500, —according to the shekel of the sanctuary—and oil of olive, a hin.	*and six kilograms of cassia. {Weigh everything} according to the tabernacle standard. Also, {collect} four liters of olive oil.*

ULT **and cassia**
UST and … cassia
(וְקִדָּה)

The **cassia** is a kind of a sweet spice taken from the bark of a tree that grows in east Asia. It is slightly different than the spice cinnamon in the previous verse. If your readers would not be familiar with what cassia is, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **according to the shekel of the sanctuary**
UST {Weigh everything} according to the tabernacle standard
(בְּשֶׁקֶל הַקֹּדֶשׁ)

There were evidently shekels of more than one weight at the time. This specified which one was to be used. See how you translated this in Exodus 30:13. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote.

Support Reference: Biblical Weight

ULT **a hin**
UST four liters of
(הִין)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express the quantity in modern measurements. Alternatively, to help your readers recognize that the biblical writings come from long ago when people used different measurements, you could express the amount using the ancient measurement, the **hin**, and explain the equivalent in modern measurements in a footnote.

Support Reference: Biblical Volume

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the sanctuary	the tabernacle
and oil of	Also, {collect} … oil

ULT	UST
olive	olive

Exodus 30:25

ULT	UST
And you shall make it {into} an oil of anointment of holiness, an ointment from an ointment mixture, the work of an ointment mixer. It shall be an oil of anointment of holiness.	*Make a sacred oil for anointing with these ingredients. A perfume mixer must mix this mixed perfume. It will be a sacred oil for anointing.*

ULT **the work of an ointment mixer**
UST A perfume mixer must mix
(מַעֲשֵׂה רֹקֵחַ)

This could mean: (1) Moses was to have an ointment mixer do the work. (2) Moses was to do the work himself the way an ointment mixer would do it.

ULT **an ointment mixer**
UST A perfume mixer
(רֹקֵחַ)

This is a person who is skilled in mixing spices and oils.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **an oil of anointment of holiness**
UST a sacred oil for anointing
(שֶׁמֶן מִשְׁחַת־קֹדֶשׁ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **holiness**, you can express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a holy oil of anointment]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an oil of	oil
anointment of	for anointing
holiness	a sacred
an oil of	oil
anointment of	for anointing
holiness	a sacred

Exodus 30:26

ULT	UST
And you shall anoint with it the tent of meeting and the Box of the Testimony	*Use this oil to anoint the sacred tent, the sacred chest,*

ULT And you shall anoint
UST Use … to anoint
(וּמָשַׁחְתָּ)

Here, **you** may refer to Moses.

Support Reference: Forms of You

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Box of	the sacred chest

Exodus 30:27

ULT	UST
and the table and all of its utensils and the lampstand and its equipment and the altar of incense	*the table and all the things that the priests use with it, the lampstand and all the things that the priests use to take care of it, the altar for burning incense,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the lampstand	the lampstand
the altar of	altar for burning
incense	incense

Exodus 30:28

ULT	UST
and the altar of burnt offerings and all of its equipment and the basin and its stand.	*and the altar for burning sacrifices, and all the things that the priests use with it, and the washbasin and its base.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
altar of	the altar
burnt offerings	for burning sacrifices

Exodus 30:29

ULT	UST
And you shall set them apart, and they will be holiest holy things. Anything that touches them will be set apart.	*{In that way,} you will dedicate those items to me. They will be so very holy that they will make anything that touches them holy too.*

ULT them
UST those items
(אֹתָֽם)

Here, **them** refers to the items listed in Exodus 30:26–28.

ULT holiest holy things
UST so very holy that
(קֹ֥דֶשׁ קָדָשִׁ֖ים)

Here, **holiest holy** means extremely or uniquely holy. If this form would not express that this item would become uniquely holy in your language you may need to find another way to express this idea. See how you translated this in Exodus 29:37. Alternate translation: [a most holy thing] or [extraordinarily holy]

Support Reference: Possession

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holiest	so very holy that
holy things	so very holy that

Exodus 30:30

ULT	UST
And you shall anoint Aaron and his sons and set them apart to be priests to me.	*Dedicate Aaron and his sons to be my priests by anointing them.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you shall anoint	by anointing
Aaron	Aaron
to be priests	to be … priests

Exodus 30:31

ULT	UST
And you shall speak to the sons of Israel, saying, 'This will be my oil of anointment of holiness throughout your generations.	*Tell the Israelites, 'This oil will be my sacred oil for anointing throughout all future generations.*

ULT throughout your generations
UST throughout all future generations
(לְדֹרֹתֵיכֶם)

Alternate translation: [all the generations of your descendants.] See how you translated this in Exodus 12:14.

ULT oil of anointment of holiness
UST oil … sacred oil for anointing
(שֶׁמֶן מִשְׁחַת־קֹדֶשׁ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **holiness**, you can express the same idea in another way. See how you translated this in 30:25.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites
oil of	oil … oil
anointment of	for anointing
holiness	sacred
throughout your generations	throughout all future generations

Exodus 30:32

ULT	UST
It shall not be poured on the body of a man, and you shall not make anything like it with its formula. It is holy; it shall be holy to you.	*You must not pour it on the bodies of people {who are not priests}, and you must not make other oil to be like it by mixing those same things. This oil is reserved for me, and you must consider it sacred.*

ULT It shall not be poured on the body of a man
UST You must not pour it on the bodies of people {who are not priests}
(עַל־בְּשַׂר אָדָם לֹא יִיסָּךְ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [You shall not pour it on the body of a man]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT and … with its formula
UST and … by mixing those same things
(וּבְמַתְכֻּנְתּוֹ)

Alternate translation: [and … with the same ingredients] or [and … with the same items] or [and … according to this recipe]

ULT It is holy; it shall be holy to you
UST This oil is reserved for me, and you must consider it sacred
(קֹדֶשׁ הוּא קֹדֶשׁ יִהְיֶה לָכֶם)

The second half of this statement (**it shall be holy to you**) explains to the people the result of this oil being holy, which is, they must respect it as a holy thing. It may make more sense in some languages to move this whole statement to the beginning of the verse, because the rule about pouring on someone's body is an application of the result. Alternate translation (placed at the beginning of the verse): [Because it is sacred, you must treat it like it is sacred, therefore]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holy	reserved for me
holy	sacred

Exodus 30:33

ULT	UST
A man that mixes its like or that puts any of it on a stranger shall be cut off from his people.’”	*You must drive out from Israel anyone who makes a perfume like this or who puts it on anyone who is not a priest.’”*

ULT shall be cut off from his people
UST You must drive out from Israel
(וְנִכְרַת מֵעַמָּיו)

See how you translated **cut off** in Exodus 12:15.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT shall be cut off from his people
UST You must drive out from Israel
(וְנִכְרַת מֵעַמָּיו)

See how you translated **cut off** in 12:15.

Support Reference: Metaphor

Exodus 30:34

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Take to yourself spices—stacte, and onycha, and galbanum—spices and pure frankincense. They shall each be in equal amounts.	*Yahweh also said to Moses, "Collect equal parts of several sweet spices: stacte, onycha, galbanum, and pure frankincense.*

ULT **stacte, and onycha, and galbanum**
UST stacte, onycha, galbanum
(נָטָף וּ שְׁחֵלֶת וְחֶלְבְּנָה)

Here is a brief description of these materials, though we really do not know exactly what they are: **stacte** is a resin from certain gum plants, **onycha** is from certain shellfish or mollusks, and **galbanum** is another kind of gum resin.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
and … frankincense	and … frankincense

Exodus 30:35

ULT	UST
And you shall make it {into} incense, an ointment, the work of an ointment mixer: salted, pure, holy.	*A perfume mixer must mix these, along with salt, into a perfumed incense. It will be clean and sacred.*

ULT And you shall make it {into} incense, an ointment, the work of an ointment mixer
UST A perfume mixer must mix these … into a perfumed incense
(וְעָשִׂיתָ אֹתָהּ קְטֹרֶת רֹקַח מַעֲשֵׂה רוֹקֵחַ)

This could mean: (1) Moses was to have a perfumer do the work or (2) Moses was to do the work himself the way a perfumer would do it. See how you translated these words in Exodus 30:25.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
incense	incense
pure	It will be clean
holy	and sacred

Exodus 30:36

ULT	UST
And you shall pulverize some of it until pulverized. And you shall put some of it before the face of the testimony in the tent of meeting, where I will meet with you. It will be a holiest holy thing to you.	*Beat some of it into a fine powder. Then take some of it into the sacred tent and set it in front of the sacred chest where I meet you. You all must consider this incense to be very sacred.*

ULT **And you shall pulverize … And you shall put**
UST Beat … Then take … and set
(וְשָׁחַקְתָּ֙ & וְנָתַתָּ֤ה)

Here, **you** probably refers to Moses.

Support Reference: Forms of You

ULT **before the face of**
UST in front of
(לִפְנֵ֣י)

Alternate translation: [in front of]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the testimony**
UST the sacred chest
(הָעֵדֻ֔ת)

Here, **testimony** probably refers to the sacred chest that contained the tablets of the law. See UST.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **a holiest holy thing**
UST very sacred
(קֹ֥דֶשׁ קָדָשִׁ֖ים)

Here, **holiest holy** means extremely or uniquely holy. If this form would not express that this item would become uniquely holy in your language you may need to find another way to express this idea. See how you translated this in Exodus 29:37. Alternate translation: [a most holy thing] or [extraordinarily holy]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **to you**
UST You all must consider
(לָכֶם)

Here, **you** is plural and refers to Moses and all the people. If your language makes a distinction, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the testimony	the sacred chest
in the tent of meeting	into the sacred tent
holiest	very sacred
a … holy thing	very sacred

Exodus 30:37

ULT	UST
And the incense that you will make, you shall not make {any} with its formula for yourselves. It must be holy to Yahweh for you.	*The people must not mix the same spices to make this incense for themselves. They must consider this incense sacred, only for me, Yahweh.*

ULT you shall … make {any}
UST The people must … mix … to make
(תַּעֲשֶׂה)

The word **you** here refers to the people of Israel. If your language makes a distinction, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT with its formula
UST the same spices
(בְּמַתְכֻּנְתָּהּ)

Alternate translation: [with the same ingredients] or [with the same items.] See how you translated this in Exodus 30:32.

ULT It must be holy to Yahweh for you
UST They must consider this incense sacred, only for me, Yahweh
(קֹדֶשׁ תִּהְיֶה לְךָ לַיהוָה)

Alternate translation: [You must consider it to be most holy]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And the incense	this incense
holy	sacred
to Yahweh	only for me, Yahweh

Exodus 30:38

ULT	UST
A man that makes its like to smell it shall be cut off from his people.”	*You must drive out from Israel anyone who makes a perfume like this.”*

ULT to smell it
UST a perfume
(לְהָרִיחַ בָּהּ)

This could mean: (1) to enjoy the scent for oneself (2) to wear as a perfume.

ULT shall be cut off from his people
UST You must drive out from Israel
(וְנִכְרַת מֵעַמָּיו)

See how you translated **cut off** in Exodus 12:15.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT shall be cut off from his people
UST You must drive out from Israel
(וְנִכְרַת מֵעַמָּיו)

See how you translated **cut off** in 12:15.

Support Reference: Metaphor

Exodus 31

Exodus 31 General Notes

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–11: Selection of the skilled craftsmen
- v. 12–17: Sabbath instruction
- v. 18: the end of Exodus' recording of the law of Moses (See: law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Sabbath

As described in this chapter, the Sabbath is more than just a day of worship or celebration. Its significance extends beyond a way to help people rest. It is a major part of the identity of the Hebrew people. (See: Sabbath)

Exodus 31:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh said to Moses,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 31:2

ULT	UST
“See, I have called by name Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur, from the tribe of Judah.	*“Pay attention. I have chosen a man named Bezalel, son of Uri and grandson of Hur, from the tribe descended from Judah.*

ULT I have called by name
UST I have chosen a man named
(קָרָאתִי בְשֵׁם)

Yahweh speaks of choosing specific people as calling them by name. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [I have chosen]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT Bezalel … Uri … Hur
UST Bezalel … Uri … Hur
(בְּצַלְאֵל & אוּרִי & חוּר)

These are names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I have called	I have chosen
from the tribe of	from the tribe descended from
Judah	Judah

Exodus 31:3

ULT	UST
And I have filled him with the Spirit of God, with skill and with understanding and with knowledge and with all kinds of craftsmanship	*I will cause my spirit to teach him to know how to make all kinds of fine goods wisely and intelligently.*

ULT **And I have filled him with the Spirit of God**
UST I will cause my spirit to teach him
(וָאֲמַלֵּא אֹתוֹ רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים)

Yahweh speaks of giving Bezalel his spirit as if Bezalel were a container and God's spirit were a liquid. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I have given my spirit to Bezalel]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **with skill**
UST wisely
(בְּחָכְמָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **skill** in another way. Alternate translation: [so he can work skillfully]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and with understanding**
UST and intelligently
(וּבִתְבוּנָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **understanding** in another way. Alternate translation: [and so he can understand his work]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and with knowledge**
UST to know how to make
(וּבְדַ֣עַת)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **knowledge** in another way. Alternate translation: [and so he knows his work well]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and with all kinds of craftsmanship**
UST all kinds of fine goods
(וּבְכָל־מְלָאכָֽה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **craftsmanship** in another way. Alternate translation: [and for making all kinds of crafts] or [and so that he can make all kinds of things]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
with the Spirit of	my spirit
God	my spirit
and with understanding	and intelligently
and with knowledge	to know how to make

Exodus 31:4

ULT	UST
to design designs, to work in gold and in silver and in bronze	*He can engrave skillful designs in gold, silver, and bronze.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in gold	in gold
and in silver	silver
and in bronze	and bronze

Exodus 31:5

ULT	UST
and in carving of precious stones for setting and in carving of wood, to do all kinds of craftsmanship.	*He can cut jewels and enclose them in tiny gold settings. He can carve things from wood and do other skilled work.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

Exodus 31:6

ULT	UST
And behold, I have given with him Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan. And I have put skill into the hearts of all of the skilled of heart, and they shall make all that I have commanded you:	*Pay attention! I have also appointed Oholiab son of Ahisamach, from the tribe of Dan, to work with him. I have also given special ability to other skilled men in order that they can make all the things that I have commanded you to make.*

ULT **Oholiab … Ahisamak**
UST Oholiab … Ahisamach
(אֶת אָהֳלִיאָ֖ב & אֲחִיסָמָ֑ךְ)

These are names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **And I have put skill into the hearts of all of the skilled of heart**
UST I have also given special ability to other skilled men
(וּבְלֵ֣ב כָּל־חֲכַם־לֵ֔ב נָתַ֥תִּי חָכְמָ֖ה)

God speaks of making people able to make things as if he were putting the ability into their hearts. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [I have given skill to all who are wise] or [I have made all who are wise able to make things well]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from the tribe of	from the tribe of
Dan	Dan
the skilled of	to other skilled men

Exodus 31:7

ULT	UST
the tent of meeting and the Box of the Testimony, and the atonement lid that is on it and all of the furniture of the tent,	*Those things include: The sacred tent; the sacred chest with its lid on top of it; all the other things that will be inside the sacred tent,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the tent of meeting	Those things include: The sacred tent
the Box of the Testimony	the sacred chest
the atonement lid	with its lid on top of it
the tent	the sacred tent

Exodus 31:8

ULT	UST
the table and its utensils and the pure lampstand and all its equipment and the altar of incense	*the table and all the things that the priests use with it, the pure {gold} lampstand and all the things that the priests use to take care of it, the altar for burning incense,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the … lampstand	the … lampstand

Exodus 31:9

ULT	UST
and the altar of burnt offerings and all its equipment and the basin and its base	*the altar for burning sacrifices and all the things the priests use with it, and the washbasin with its base;*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar of	the altar
burnt offerings	for burning sacrifices

Exodus 31:10

ULT	UST
and the finely woven clothing and the clothing of holiness for Aaron the priest and the clothing of his sons to {be} priests	*the beautiful, sacred vestments for Aaron and his sons to wear when they work as priests;*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holiness	sacred
for Aaron	for Aaron
the priest	to wear when they work as priests
to {be} priests	to wear when they work as priests

Exodus 31:11

ULT	UST
and the oil of anointing and the incense of fragrance for the sanctuary. They shall make according to all that I have commanded you."	*the oil for anointing, and the sweet-smelling incense for the Holy Place. The craftsmen must make all these things exactly as I have told you that they should do."*

ULT They shall make

UST The craftsmen must make

(יַעֲשׂוּ)

They refers to Bezalel and Oholiab as well as the unnamed other "skilled of heart" (talented craftsmen) referred to in 31:2 and 31:6.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the oil of	the oil
anointing	for anointing
the incense of	incense
for the sanctuary	for the Holy Place

Exodus 31:12

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh said to Moses,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 31:13

ULT	UST
“And you, speak to the sons of Israel, saying: ‘Surely you shall keep my Sabbaths, for it is a sign between me and you throughout your generations so that you may know that I am Yahweh, who sets you apart.	*“Tell the Israelites, ‘Constantly obey {my instructions regarding} the Sabbath days {for rest}. Those days will remind me and you and your descendants, throughout all future generations, that I, Yahweh, have dedicated you {to be my people}.*

ULT **saying**
UST Tell
(לֵאמֹֽר)

A second-level direct quotation starts after **saying**. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by marking it with second-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation within a quotation. There are multiple possible endings for this quotation, which will be addressed in later verses.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **Surely you shall keep my Sabbaths**
UST Constantly obey {my instructions regarding} the Sabbath days {for rest}
(אַךְ אֶת־שַׁבְּתֹתַ֖י תִּשְׁמֹֽרוּ)

Yahweh uses the phrase **keep my Sabbaths** as a metaphor for obeying his instructions about the Sabbath, as if it was a precious thing they should guard. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [You must certainly obey Yahweh’s instructions about the Sabbath]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **throughout your generations**
UST and your descendants, throughout all future generations
(לְדֹרֹתֵיכֶ֔ם)

Alternate translation: [through all the generations of your descendants.] See how you translated this in Exodus 12:14.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites
my Sabbaths	my instructions regarding} the Sabbath days {for rest}
is a sign	Those days will remind

ULT	UST
throughout your generations	and your descendants, throughout all future generations
so that you may know	Those days will remind
I am Yahweh	I, Yahweh

Exodus 31:14

ULT	UST
And you shall keep the Sabbath, for it is holy to you.' The profaner of it shall surely be put to death, for every worker of work on it, that person shall be cut off from his people.	*You must obey my rules about the Sabbath days for rest, because you must regard them as dedicated to me. You must kill people who disrespect these days by working on them. You must remove them from Israel.*

ULT **to you**
UST you must regard them as dedicated to me
(לָכֶם)

One possible ending place for the second-level quotation that began in the previous verse is after **to you**. The rest of Yahweh's instructions to Moses in this section do not use the second person to address Israel directly, so you may close the second-level quotation here.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **shall surely be put to death**
UST You must kill
(מָוֹת יוּמָּת)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you must surely kill] or [you must surely execute]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **shall be cut off**
UST You must remove
(וְנִכְרְתָה)

See how you translated **cut off** in 12:15.

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Sabbath	my rules about the Sabbath days for rest
is holy	you must regard them as dedicated to me
The profaner of it	people who disrespect these days

Exodus 31:15

ULT	UST
Work shall be done six days, but the seventh day is a Sabbath of Sabbath, holy to Yahweh. Every worker of work on the Sabbath day shall surely be put to death.	*You may work for six days {each week}, but the seventh day {of each week} is a solemn Sabbath-rest day, dedicated to me, Yahweh. You must execute anyone who does any work on a Sabbath day {of rest}.*

ULT **six**
UST for six days {each week}
(שֵׁשֶׁת)

Alternate translation: [6]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **but the seventh day**
UST but the seventh day {of each week}
(וּבַיּוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.
Alternate translation: [but day 7]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **is a Sabbath of Sabbath**
UST is a solemn Sabbath-rest day
(שַׁבַּת שַׁבָּתוֹן)

Alternate translation: [a Sabbath of complete rest]

ULT **shall surely be put to death**
UST You must execute
(מוֹת יוּמָת)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you must surely kill] or [you must surely execute]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	for six days {each week}
but … day	but the seventh day {of each week}
is a Sabbath of	is a solemn Sabbath-rest day
Sabbath	is a solemn Sabbath-rest day

ULT	UST
holy	dedicated
to Yahweh	to me, Yahweh
the Sabbath	on a Sabbath day {of rest}
on … day	on a Sabbath day {of rest}

Exodus 31:16

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel shall keep the Sabbath to celebrate the Sabbath throughout their generations. A covenant of eternity	*The Israelites must respect the Sabbath {days of rest}, and rest on them throughout all future generations. This agreement never ends*

ULT And the sons of Israel shall keep the Sabbath
UST The Israelites must respect the Sabbath {days of rest}
(וְשָׁמְרוּ בְנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל אֶת־הַשַּׁבָּת)

Yahweh uses the phrase **keep my Sabbaths** as a metaphor for obeying his instructions about the Sabbath, as if it was a precious thing they should guard. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And the sons of Israel must obey Yahweh's instructions about the Sabbath]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT throughout their generations
UST throughout all future generations
(לְדֹרֹתָם)

See how you translated "throughout their people's generations" in Exodus 12:42. Alternate translation: [; they and all the generations of their descendants must observe it.]

ULT A covenant of eternity
UST This agreement never ends
(בְּרִית עוֹלָם)

Alternate translation: [A covenant that will always exist] or [A lasting covenant]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	The Israelites
the Sabbath	the Sabbath {days of rest}
the Sabbath	on them
throughout their generations	throughout all future generations
A covenant of	This agreement
eternity	never ends

Exodus 31:17

ULT	UST
is between me and the sons of Israel. It is a sign forever, for in six days Yahweh made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested and was refreshed."	*between me and the Israelites. It will remind you forever that I, Yahweh, created the heavens and the earth in six days, and on the seventh day I stopped doing that work and recuperated.'"*

ULT **and was refreshed**
UST and recuperated
(וַיִּנָּפַשׁ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and he refreshed himself]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites
is a sign	will remind you
forever	forever
days	days
Yahweh	I, Yahweh
heaven	the heavens
earth	the earth
and on … day	and on … day

Exodus 31:18

ULT	UST
And as he finished speaking with him on the mountain of Sinai, he gave to Moses the two tablets of the Testimony, tablets of stone, written by the finger of God.	*When Yahweh finished talking with Moses on the top of Mount Sinai, he gave him the two stone slabs on which he had engraved his commandments with his own fingers.*

ULT written by the finger of God

UST on which he had engraved … with his own fingers

(כְּתֻבִים בְּאֶצְבַּע אֱלֹהִים)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [which Yahweh wrote on with his own hand]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	him
God	he

Exodus 32

Exodus 32 General Notes

Structure and Formatting

The events in verses 1–6 of this chapter occurred while Moses spoke with God and therefore happened sometime during the events recorded between Exodus 24:15 and Exodus 31. (See: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship)

- v. 1–6: The people ask Aaron to make them a god and he makes the golden calf
- v. 7–29 - Yahweh and Moses' reaction
- v. 11–14 - Moses intercedes for the people
- v. 30–34 - Moses intercedes for the people

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 32:18.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Idolatry

The making of the golden calf was considered a form of idolatry. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Exodus 32:1

ULT	UST
And the people saw that Moses delayed in coming down from the mountain, and the people gathered themselves around Aaron and said to him, "Arise, make gods for us that shall go before our faces, for this Moses, the man who brought us up from the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him."	*Moses stayed on top of the mountain for a long time. When the people saw that he was not returning, they went to Aaron and said to him, "Get up and make us gods who will lead us on our journey. We do not know what happened to that man Moses, who brought us here out of Egypt."*

Note:

This chapter begins with a major scene shift, which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **And the people saw**
UST When the people saw
(וַיַּרְא הָעָם)

Here, the word **saw** is used to indicate understanding or realization of a situation. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And the people realized]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and the people gathered themselves**
UST they went
(וַיִּקָּהֵל הָעָם)

This means the people both decided to gather and were the ones gathering. Use a way that is natural in your language to indicate this.

Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

ULT **Arise**
UST Get up
(קוּם)

Arise strengthens the force of the command following it. The people were demanding that Aaron make an idol for them. It did not necessarily mean that he should literally stand up. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **shall go before our faces**
UST will lead us on our journey
(יֵלְכוּ לְפָנֵינוּ)

Here, **before our faces** means ahead of. The Israelites want idols to lead them. Alternate translation: [shall lead us] or [shall be our leader]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **for this Moses**
UST We do … know … that … Moses
(כִּי־זֶה ׀ מֹשֶׁה)

People showed disrespect by putting the word **this** before his name, as if Moses were someone they did not know and could not trust. They were creating social distance between him and themselves. When translating, use a form in your language that communicates the same sense of disassociation between people.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
gods	gods
Moses	Moses
from the land of	out of
Egypt	Egypt
we do … know	We do … know

Exodus 32:2

ULT	UST
And Aaron said to them, "Tear off the rings of gold that are on the ears of your wives, your sons, and your daughters and bring them to me."	*Aaron replied, "Take your wives' and your children's gold earrings from them, and bring them to me."*

> ULT **and bring them**
> UST and bring them
> (וְהָבִיאוּ)

Here, **them** refers to the golden rings.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
gold	gold earrings

Exodus 32:3

ULT	UST
And all the people tore the rings of gold off themselves that were on their ears and brought them to Aaron.	*So the people took off all their own gold earrings and brought them to Aaron.*

ULT all the people
UST the people
(כָּל־הָעָם)

This refers to all the people who rejected Moses as their leader and Yahweh as their God. Later parts of the text reveal that there were people still faithful to Moses and Yahweh and that the Israelites had a great deal more gold. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your language that means many or most. Alternate translation: [many people]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold earrings
Aaron	Aaron

Exodus 32:4

ULT	UST
And he took it from their hand, and fashioned it with a tool, and he made a calf of molten metal. And they said, "These are your gods, Israel, who brought you up from the land of Egypt."	*After he received the gold, he {melted it in a fire.} He molded the softened gold and made {a statue that looked like} a young bull. The people {saw it and} said, "This is the Israelite god who rescued us from Egypt!"*

ULT and fashioned it with a tool, and he made a calf of molten metal
UST he {melted it in a fire.} He molded the softened gold and made {a statue that looked like} a young bull
(וַיִּצַר אֹתוֹ בַּחֶרֶט וַיַּעֲשֵׂהוּ עֵגֶל מַסֵּכָה)

Most likely this means that Aaron melted the gold and poured it into a mold that had the shape of a calf. When the gold cooled and became hard, he removed the mold, and the hardened gold had the shape of a calf.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT And they said
UST The people {saw it and} said
(וַיֹּאמְרוּ)

The identity of the speakers, referred to as **they**, remains unknown. Alternate translation: [And someone said]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT These are your gods … brought you up
UST This is the Israelite god … rescued us
(אֵלֶּה אֱלֹהֶיךָ & הֶעֱלוּךָ)

Because the speaker of this sentence is unknown and mentioned in the plural, it is possible that it is the people speaking. In that case, it would be possible for a translation to use the first person rather than second person here. Alternate translation: [These are our gods … brought us up]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **These are your gods**
UST This is the Israelite god
(אֵ֣לֶּה אֱלֹהֶ֔יךָ)

In the text, there only appears to be one “god” (the golden calf idol) presented to Israel. If it would be clearer to your audience, you may consider translating **these … gods** as singular. Alternate translation: [this is your god]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a calf of	{a statue that looked like} a young bull
gods	is the Israelite god
Israel	is the Israelite god
from the land of	from
Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 32:5

ULT	UST
And Aaron saw, and he built an altar before the face of it, and Aaron proclaimed and said, "Tomorrow will be a festival to Yahweh."	*When Aaron saw {how the people reacted}, he built an altar in front of the bull. Then he announced, "Tomorrow we will have a celebration to {honor} Yahweh!"*

ULT **And Aaron saw**
UST When Aaron saw {how the people reacted}
(וַיַּ֣רְא אַהֲרֹ֔ן)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express what he saw explicitly. "Aaron saw what the people did"

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **before the face of it**
UST in front of the bull
(לְפָנָ֑יו)

Here, **before its face** means in front of. Alternate translation: [in front of it]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **before the face of it**
UST in front of the bull
(לְפָנָ֑יו)

Here, **it** is the golden bull-calf. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [in front of the bull-calf idol]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
an altar	an altar
Aaron	Then he announced
and … proclaimed	Then he announced
will be a festival	we will have a celebration
to Yahweh	to {honor} Yahweh

Exodus 32:6

ULT	UST
And they arose early the next day and offered burnt offerings and brought peace offerings. And the people sat down to eat and to drink and got up to play.	*So early the next morning the people {killed animals} and burnt them as sacrifices on the altar. They also brought sacrifices to restore fellowship with others. Then they sat down to eat and to drink {wine}. Then they got up and partied.*

ULT **to play**
UST and partied
(לְצַחֵק)

This word may imply drunken and sexual sin (for a sexual implication see Genesis 26:8). However, the only actions mentioned in the text are singing (v. 18) and dancing (v. 19), so translators should avoid using a term that is overly suggestive. Alternate translation: [to revel]

Support Reference: Euphemism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
burnt offerings	{killed animals} and burnt them as sacrifices on the altar
peace offerings	sacrifices to restore fellowship with others

Exodus 32:7

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, "Go! Descend! For your people, whom you brought up from the land of Egypt, have corrupted themselves.	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go down from the mountain, because your people, the ones that you brought up here from Egypt, are acting perversely!*

Note:

Here there is a scene shift back to the top of the mountain with Moses and Yahweh, which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **have corrupted themselves**
UST are acting perversely
(שָׁחֲת)

Here, **themselves** is used to indicate that the Israelites actions made the Israelites corrupt. Use a way that is natural in your language to indicate this. Alternate translation: [have acted corruptly]

Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
from the land of	from
Egypt	Egypt
have corrupted themselves	are acting perversely

Exodus 32:8

ULT	UST
They have quickly turned from the way that I commanded them. They have made a calf of molten metal for themselves and have bowed before it and sacrificed to it. And they have said, 'These are your gods, Israel, that brought you up from the land of Egypt.'"	*They have already stopped obeying my commands about how to live. From melted gold, they have made a statue {that looks like} a young bull. They have worshiped it and offered sacrifices to it. They are saying, 'This is the Israelite god who rescued us from Egypt!'"*

ULT **They have quickly turned from the way that I commanded them**
UST They have already stopped obeying my commands about how to live
(סָרוּ מַהֵר מִן־הַדֶּרֶךְ אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִם)

Here God speaks of the people disobeying what he commanded them as if he had told them to walk on a certain road, and they left that road. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [They have quickly stopped doing what I commanded them to do] or [They have quickly stopped obeying what I commanded them to do]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **These are your gods, Israel, that brought you up from the land of Egypt**
UST This is the Israelite god who rescued us from Egypt
(אֵלֶּה אֱלֹהֶיךָ יִשְׂרָאֵל אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱלוּךָ מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרָיִם)

This is a second-level direct quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by marking it with second-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation within a quotation.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **These are your gods, Israel, that brought you up from the land of Egypt**
UST This is the Israelite god who rescued us from Egypt
(אֵלֶּה אֱלֹהֶיךָ יִשְׂרָאֵל אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱלוּךָ מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרָיִם)

You may want to translate this as an indirect quotation in order to reduce the layers of quotations in this passage. Alternate translation: [that these are your gods, Israel, that brought you up from the land of Egypt]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **These are your gods**
UST This is the … god
(אֵ֣לֶּה אֱלֹהֶ֔יךָ)

In the text, there only appears to be one "god" (the golden calf idol) presented to Israel. If it would be clearer to your audience, you may consider translating **these … gods** as singular. See how you translated this in 32:4. Alternate translation: [This is your god]

ULT **your gods … brought you up**
UST the … god … rescued us
(אֱלֹהֶ֔יךָ & הֶֽעֱלוּךָ)

Because the speaker of this sentence is unknown and mentioned in the plural, it is possible that it is the people speaking. In that case, it would be possible for a translation to use the first person rather than second person here. See how you translated this in 32:4. Alternate translation: [our gods … brought us up]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a calf	From melted gold … a statue {that looks like} a young bull
and have bowed	They have worshiped
and sacrificed	and offered sacrifices
your gods	the … god
Israel	Israelite
from the land of	from Egypt
Egypt	from Egypt

Exodus 32:9

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "I have seen this people, and behold, it is a people hard of neck.	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "I have been observing these people. Look at how obstinate they are.*

ULT is a people hard of neck
UST obstinate they are
(עַם־קְשֵׁה־עֹרֶף)

Yahweh speaks of the people being rebellious as if they had hard necks. The image comes from an animal that does not want to go the way his master is trying to direct him (not going in the way God commanded). If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [is a rebellious people]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT this … it
UST these … they are
(הַזֹּאת & הִוא)

The word **people** is a collective noun, so the pronouns referring to the people are singular. You may use plural pronouns if that is the normal usage in your language. Alternate translation: [these … they]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 32:10

ULT	UST
So now, leave me alone! And let my nose burn against them, and I will destroy them. And I will make you into a great nation.”	*Because of this, I am very angry with them, so I am going to destroy them. Do not try to stop me! Then I will cause you {and your descendants} to become a great nation.”*

ULT **So now**
UST Because of this
(וְעַתָּה)

So now is used here to mark that Yahweh’s next statements are a result of what he has said in the previous verses. Alternate translation: [Therefore]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And let my nose burn against them**
UST I am very angry with them
(וְיִחַר־אַפִּי בָהֶם)

This is an idiom meaning that Yahweh is angry. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [And let me be angry with them]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **you**
UST you {and your descendants}
(אוֹתְךָ)

Here, **you** refers to Moses.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and I will destroy them	so I am going to destroy them
into a … nation	a … nation

Exodus 32:11

ULT	UST
But Moses entreated the face of Yahweh his God. And he said, "Yahweh, why does your nose burn against your people whom you have brought out from the land of Egypt with great power and with a strong hand?	*But Moses pleaded with his God, Yahweh, and said, "Yahweh, please do not be angry with your people. These are the people whom you saved from Egypt with great power and mighty works!*

ULT **Yahweh, why does your nose burn against your people whom you have brought out from the land of Egypt with great power and with a strong hand**
UST Yahweh, please do not be angry with your people. These are the people whom you saved from Egypt with great power and mighty works
(לָמָה יְהוָה יֶחֱרֶה אַפְּךָ בְּעַמֶּךָ אֲשֶׁר הוֹצֵאתָ מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם בְּכֹחַ גָּדוֹל וּבְיָד חֲזָקָה)

Moses used this question to try to persuade Yahweh not to be so angry with his people. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [Yahweh, do not let your nose burn against your people whom you have brought out from the land of Egypt with great power and with a strong hand.]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **does your nose burn against your people**
UST be angry with your people. These are the people
(יֶחֱרֶה אַפְּךָ בְּעַמֶּךָ)

This is an idiom meaning that Yahweh is angry with his people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [are you angry with your people]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **with great power and with a strong hand**
UST with great power and mighty works
(בְּכֹחַ גָּדוֹל וּבְיָד חֲזָקָה)

These two phrases share similar meanings and are combined for emphasis. If doubling in this way would not convey emphasis in your language, you will need to find a way to translate it that does give emphasis. Alternate translation: [using your very strong power]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **and with a strong hand**
UST and mighty works
(וּבְיָד חֲזָקָה)

Here, **hand** represents God's actions or works. See how you translated this in Exodus 6:1.
Alternate translation: [and with powerful works]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
of Yahweh	with … Yahweh
his God	his God
Yahweh	Yahweh
from the land of	from Egypt
Egypt	from Egypt

Exodus 32:12

ULT	UST
Why should the Egyptians say, saying, 'He brought them out with evil intent, to kill them in the mountains and to destroy them from on the face of the ground'? Turn from your burning nose and repent from the evil to your people.	*{If you destroy them} the Egyptians will say that you had a wicked plan. {They will say} you led the Israelites out to the mountains to kill them and to remove them entirely from the earth. Stop being angry and relent from punishing your people.*

ULT **Why should the Egyptians say, saying, 'He brought them out with evil intent, to kill them in the mountains and to destroy them from on the face of the ground**
UST {If you destroy them} the Egyptians will say that you had a wicked plan. {They will say} you led the Israelites out to the mountains to kill them and to remove them entirely from the earth
(לָמָּה֙ יֹאמְרוּ֙ מִצְרַ֔יִם לֵאמֹ֗ר בְּרָעָ֤ה הוֹצִיאָם֙ לַהֲרֹ֣ג אֹתָ֔ם בֶּֽהָרִ֖ים וּלְכַלֹּתָ֑ם מֵעַ֛ל פְּנֵ֥י הָאֲדָמָ֖ה)

Moses used this question to try to persuade God not to destroy his people. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [If you destroy your people, the Egyptians might say, 'He brought them out with evil intent, to kill them in the mountains and to destroy them from on the face of the ground.']

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **should the Egyptians say, saying, 'He brought them out with evil intent, to kill them in the mountains and to destroy them from on the face of the ground**
UST the Egyptians will say that you had a wicked plan. {They will say} you led the Israelites out to the mountains to kill them and to remove them entirely from the earth
(יֹאמְרוּ֙ מִצְרַ֔יִם לֵאמֹ֗ר בְּרָעָ֤ה הוֹצִיאָם֙ לַהֲרֹ֣ג אֹתָ֔ם בֶּֽהָרִ֖ים וּלְכַלֹּתָ֑ם מֵעַ֛ל פְּנֵ֥י הָאֲדָמָ֖ה)

After **saying**, this is a second-level quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with second-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation within a quotation. However, you may want to translate this as an indirect quotation in order to reduce the layers of quotations in this passage. Alternate translation: [the Egyptians say that you brought them out with evil intent, to kill them in the mountains and to destroy them from on the face of the ground]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **from on the face of the ground**
UST entirely from the earth
(מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה)

Here, **face** means "surface." Alternate translation: [from the surface of the land] or [from the earth]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Turn from your burning nose**
UST Stop being angry
(שׁוּב מֵחֲרוֹן אַפֶּךָ)

Alternate translation: [Stop your burning anger] or [Stop being so angry]

ULT **Turn from your burning nose and repent from the evil to your people**
UST Stop being angry and relent from punishing your people
(שׁוּב מֵחֲרוֹן אַפֶּךָ וְהִנָּחֵם עַל־הָרָעָה לְעַמֶּךָ)

Here, Yahweh's anger (burning nose) and plan to punish the people are spoken of as things that he could turn away from and repent of (repentance also means to turn from). This imagery may not translate into your language, and you may need to use a different expression. Alternate translation: [Calm down, and please do not stay determined to do evil to your people]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from your burning nose**
UST angry
(מֵחֲרוֹן אַפֶּךָ)

This is an idiom that means anger. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [from your terrible anger]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Egyptians	the Egyptians
with evil intent	you had a wicked plan
to kill	to kill
and to destroy them	and to remove them
the ground	entirely from the earth
and repent	and relent
the evil	from punishing

Exodus 32:13

ULT	UST
Remember Abraham and Isaac and Israel, your servants that you swore to them by yourself and spoke to them, 'I will cause your descendants to increase as the stars of the heavens, and I will give to your descendants all this land of which I have spoken. And they will inherit it forever.'"	*Recall your servants Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. You solemnly promised them, 'I will enable you to have as many descendants as the stars that are in the sky. I will give those descendants all this land that I am talking about. It will be their land forever.'"*

ULT Remember
UST Recall
(זְכֹר)

Alternate translation: [Think about]

ULT you swore
UST You solemnly promised
(נִשְׁבַּעְתָּ)

Alternate translation: [you made an oath]

ULT and I will give to your descendants all this land of which I have spoken
UST descendants … I will give those … all this land that I am talking about
(וְכָל־הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי אֶתֵּן לְזַרְעֲכֶם)

That is, the land of Canaan.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
and Isaac	Isaac
and Israel	and Jacob
your servants	your servants
you swore	You solemnly promised
I will cause … to increase	I will enable you to have as many
your descendants	descendants
the heavens	the sky
to your descendants	descendants … those
land	land
forever	It will be their land forever

Exodus 32:14

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh repented from the evil that he had spoken to do to his people.	*So Yahweh relented. He did not punish his people as he had said he would do.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh … He
Then … repented	So … relented
the evil	did not punish

Exodus 32:15

ULT	UST
And Moses turned and went down from the mountain and the two tablets of the testimony {were} in his hand. The tablets were written on both their sides, on this {side} and on that {side} they were written.	*Then Moses turned around and went down the mountain. He was carrying in his hands the two stone slabs on which Yahweh had inscribed his commandments. He had inscribed on both sides of the slabs, both front and back.*

ULT **The tablets were written on both their sides, on this {side} and on that {side} they were written**

UST on which Yahweh had inscribed his commandments. He had inscribed on both sides of the slabs, both front and back

(לֻחֹת כְּתֻבִים מִשְּׁנֵי עֶבְרֵיהֶם מִזֶּה וּמִזֶּה הֵם כְּתֻבִים)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Yahweh had written on both the sides of the tablets, on this side and on that side he had written.]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
the testimony	on which Yahweh had inscribed his commandments

Exodus 32:16

ULT	UST
And the tablets, they {were} the work of God. And the writing, it {was} the writing of God, {it} was engraved on the tablets.	*As for the slabs, God had made them. As for the inscription, God had inscribed it. He had engraved on the slabs.*

ULT And the tablets, they {were} the work of God. And the writing, it {was} the writing of God

UST As for the slabs, God had made them. As for the inscription, God had inscribed it
(וְהַלֻּחֹת מַעֲשֵׂה אֱלֹהִים הֵמָּה וְהַמִּכְתָּב מִכְתַּב אֱלֹהִים הוּא)

These two sentences have an unusual structure that places emphasis on **tablets** and **writing**. If your language would emphasize these topics in a different way than moving them to the beginning of the sentence, follow your language's natural usage for emphasis. Alternate translation: [And the tablets themselves were the work of God. And the writing itself was the writing of God]

Support Reference: Information Structure

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
God	God

Exodus 32:17

ULT	UST
And Joshua heard the noise of the people in its shouting, and he said to Moses, "{There is} the noise of war in the camp."	*Joshua heard the sound of the people shouting. So he said to Moses, "There is a noise in the camp that sounds like the noise of a battle!"*

ULT Joshua
UST Joshua
(יְהוֹשֻׁעַ)

Joshua was last mentioned in Exodus 24:13. The text does not say if he was on top of the mountain with Moses or if he waited for him part way up. Consider if your language will need to re-introduce Joshua in any way here.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joshua	Joshua
Moses	Moses

Exodus 32:18

ULT	UST
But Moses said, "There is not the sound of singing of strength, and there is not the sound of singing of weakness, the sound of singing I am hearing."	*But Moses said, "That is not a victory shout; or a defeated cry. I hear singing!"*

ULT **There is not the sound of singing of strength, and there is not the sound of singing of weakness, the sound of singing I am hearing**
UST That is not a victory shout; or a defeated cry. I hear singing
(אֵין קוֹל עֲנוֹת גְּבוּרָה וְאֵין קוֹל עֲנוֹת חֲלוּשָׁה קוֹל עַנּוֹת אָנֹכִי שֹׁמֵעַ)

These lines are widely considered to be poetic. It is not clear why a poetic form is used here. In some languages it may not be appropriate to convey this response in poetic form, in which case another form may be used.

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **There is not the sound of singing of strength, and there is not the sound of singing of weakness, the sound of singing I am hearing**
UST That is not a victory shout; or a defeated cry. I hear singing
(אֵין קוֹל עֲנוֹת גְּבוּרָה וְאֵין קוֹל עֲנוֹת חֲלוּשָׁה קוֹל עַנּוֹת אָנֹכִי שֹׁמֵעַ)

The poetic form here is parallelism in the repetition of **sound of singing**. If it would be unclear to say that Moses heard **the sound of singing** in the third line after saying he did not hear the sound of singing twice before, something more like the more contrastive UST may be followed.

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **the sound of singing I am hearing**
UST I hear singing
(קוֹל עַנּוֹת אָנֹכִי שֹׁמֵעַ)

If it is unclear to say that Moses hears **the sound of singing** after twice saying he did not hear that, you may want to make the type of singing explicit. Consider referring to your translation of the last word of 32:6 (to play in the ULT). Alternate translation: [the sound of playful singing I hear]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Exodus 32:19

ULT	UST
And it happened, as he approached to the camp, that he saw the calf and dancing, and the nose of Moses burned, and he threw the tablets from his hands and shattered them under the mountain.	*As soon as Moses came close to the camp and saw the statue of the bull and the people dancing, he became very angry. He flung the stone slabs down {onto the ground} at the base of the mountain, and they broke completely.*

ULT **and the nose of Moses burned**
UST he became very angry
(וַיִּחַר־אַף מֹשֶׁה)

This is an idiom for being angry. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [and Moses was very angry]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **under**
UST at the base of
(תַּחַת)

Alternate translation: [at the bottom of]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the calf	the statue of the bull
Moses	he

Exodus 32:20

ULT	UST
And he took the calf that they had made and burned {it} in the fire and ground {it} until it was fine and scattered {it} on the face of the water and caused the sons of Israel to drink {it}.	*Then he took the statue of the bull that they had made and melted it in the fire. {When it cooled,} he ground it into fine powder. Then he threw the powder on top of the water and forced the Israelites to drink it.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the calf	the statue of the bull
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 32:21

ULT	UST
And Moses said to Aaron, "What did this people do to you, that you have brought a great sin on them?"	*Then Moses said to Aaron, "What did these people do to you that you caused them to sin so much?"*

ULT that you have brought a great sin on them
UST that you caused them to sin so much
(כִּי־הֵבֵאתָ עֲלֵיו חֲטָאָה גְדֹלָה)

Moses spoke of causing people to **sin** as if sin were an object and Aaron put it **on them**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [that you have caused them to sin greatly]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
a … sin	to sin

Exodus 32:22

ULT	UST
And Aaron said, "Do not let {your} nose burn, my lord. You know the people, that it {is/was} in evil.	*Aaron replied, "Please do not be angry with me, my lord. You know how likely these people are to do wicked things.*

ULT **Do not let {your} nose burn**
UST Please do not be angry with me
(אַל־יִחַר אַף)

This is an idiom for anger. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [Do not be angry]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **that it {is/was} in evil**
UST how likely these people are to do wicked things
(כִּי בָרֵע הוּא)

This is probably an idiom that could mean (1) that the people are prone to evil or (2) that the people were in trouble (that is, they felt troubled because of not having contact with God). If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [that they are set on evil]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **it {is/was}**
UST these people are
(הוּא)

Here, **it** is used because **people** is grammatically singular in Hebrew. Alternate translation: [they are]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
my lord	my lord
know	know
in evil	to do wicked things

Exodus 32:23

ULT	UST
And they said to me, ‘Make for us a god that will go before our faces. As for this Moses, the man that brought us up from the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him.’	*They said to me, ‘Make us a god to lead us because we do not know what has happened to that Moses guy who brought us out of Egypt!’*

ULT **Make for us a god that will go before our faces. As for this Moses, the man that brought us up from the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him**
UST Make us a god to lead us because we do not know what has happened to that Moses guy who brought us out of Egypt
(עֲשֵׂה־לָנוּ אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר יֵלְכוּ לְפָנֵינוּ כִּי־זֶה ׀ מֹשֶׁה הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱלָנוּ מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם לֹא יָדַעְנוּ מ�ֶה־הָיָה לוֹ)

This is a second-level quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with second-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation within a quotation.

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **this Moses, the man**
UST that Moses guy
(זֶה ׀ מֹשֶׁה הָאִישׁ)

People showed disrespect by putting the word **this** before his name, as if Moses were someone they did not know and could not trust. They were creating social distance between him and themselves. When translating, use a form in your language that communicates the same sense of disassociation between people. See how you translated this in 32:1.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a god	a god
Moses	Moses
from the land of	out of Egypt
Egypt	out of Egypt
we do … know	we do … know

Exodus 32:24

ULT	UST
And I said to them, 'Whoever has gold, take it off yourself.' And they gave {it} to me, and I threw it in the fire, and this calf came out."	*So I said to them, 'Everyone who is wearing {pieces of} gold {jewelry} should take them off.' So they {took them off and} gave them to me. I threw them into the fire, and out came this statue of a young bull!"*

ULT **And I said to them, 'Whoever has gold, take it off yourself**
UST So I said to them, 'Everyone who is wearing {pieces of} gold {jewelry} should take them off
(וָאֹמַר לָהֶם לְמִי זָהָב הִתְפָּרָקוּ)

Whoever has gold, take it off yourself is a second-level quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with second-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation within a quotation. However, this can be stated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: [So I told them that whoever had any gold should take it off]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **take it off yourself**
UST should take them off
(הִתְפָּרָקוּ)

Aaron instructs people to take their own gold off. Alternate translation: [you take off your own]

Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

ULT **and I threw it in the fire, and this calf came out**
UST I threw them into the fire, and out came this statue of a young bull
(וָאַשְׁלִכֵהוּ בָּאֵשׁ וַיֵּצֵא הָעֵגֶל הַזֶּה)

Aaron claims an unusual sequence of events here. The translation should surprise an audience unfamiliar with the story. He states that the result of simply throwing gold in the fire is the appearance (by its own power or volition it seems) of the calf. This is a lie.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	is wearing {pieces of} gold {jewelry}
calf	statue of a young bull

Exodus 32:25

ULT	UST
And Moses saw the people, that it was let loose, for Aaron had let it loose, to mockery by the risers-up against them.	*Moses saw that Aaron had allowed the people to act wildly, so that their enemies would laugh at them.*

ULT **was let loose**
UST had allowed … to act wildly
(פָּרֻעַ)

Alternate translation: [were behaving wildly] or [were not controlling themselves]

ULT **that it was let loose, for Aaron had let it loose**
UST that Aaron had allowed the people to act wildly
(כִּי פָרֻעַ הוּא כִּי־פְרָעֹה אַהֲרֹן)

Here, the pronoun **it** agrees with the grammatical number of **people** (singular). If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression.
Alternate translation: [that they were let loose, for Aaron had let them loose]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
to mockery	so that … would laugh at them

Exodus 32:26

ULT	UST
And Moses stood in the gate of the camp and said, "Who {is} for Yahweh, to me!" And all of the sons of Levi gathered themselves to him.	*So he stood at the entrance to the camp and shouted, "Everyone who is loyal to Yahweh, come close to me!" All the men in the tribe of Levi gathered around him.*

ULT and said, "Who {is} for Yahweh … me … to
UST and shouted, "Everyone who is loyal to Yahweh, come close to me
(וַיֹּאמֶר מִי לַיהוָה אֵלָי)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [and said that whoever was for Yahweh should come to him]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT Who {is} for Yahweh
UST Everyone who is loyal to Yahweh
(מִי לַיהוָה)

Moses speaks of being loyal to Yahweh as being **for Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [Whoever serves Yahweh]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	he
in the gate of	at the entrance
{is} for Yahweh	is loyal to Yahweh
Levi	Levi

Exodus 32:27

ULT	UST
And he said to them, "Thus says Yahweh, the God of Israel: 'Each man put his sword on his side. Pass through and return from gate to gate in the camp and kill each his brother and each his companion and each his neighbor.'"	*Then he said to them, "Yahweh, the God of the Israelites, commands that every one of you should fasten your sword to your side, and then go through the camp from this entrance to the other one and back again. Each one of you must kill the {unfaithful} men, {even if} they are your brother, your friend, or your neighbor."*

ULT Pass through and return from gate to gate in the camp

UST and then go through the camp from this entrance to the other one and back again
(עִבְרוּ וְשׁוּבוּ מִשַּׁעַר לְשַׁעַר בַּמַּחֲנֶה)

Alternate translation: [Go from one side of the camp to the other, starting at one entrance to the camp and going to the entrance on the other side of the camp]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
the God of	the God of
Israel	the Israelites
his sword	your sword
from gate	from this entrance
to gate	to the other one
his … companion	your friend
his neighbor	or your neighbor

Exodus 32:28

ULT	UST
And the sons of Levi did according to the word of Moses. And on that day about 3,000 men from the people fell.	*The men in the tribe of Levi did what Moses told them to do. They killed 3, 000 Israelite men that day.*

ULT about 3,000
UST 3, 000
(כִּשְׁלֹשֶׁת אֲלָפִֽים)

Alternate translation: [about three thousand]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levi	Levi
Moses	Moses
on … day	day

Exodus 32:29

ULT	UST
And Moses said, "Fill your hand for Yahweh today! For a man {was} against his son and against his brother and for putting a blessing on yourselves today."	*Moses said {to the men in the tribe of Levi}, "Because each of you {killed} even your own son and brother, Yahweh has consecrated and blessed you today."*

ULT Fill your hand
UST consecrated
(מִלְאוּ יֶדְכֶם)

This seems to be an idiom for giving authority to someone. See how you translated this in Exodus 28:41. However, this usage is different from that text, as here it is not specified what authority they are given or what they are consecrated for other than **for Yahweh**. Alternate translation: [Consecrate yourselves]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT Fill your hand for Yahweh today
UST Yahweh … consecrated … today
(מִלְאוּ יֶדְכֶם הַיּוֹם לַיהוָה)

Here it is unclear if **fill** should be rightly understood as in the past or as a new command. You may want to follow the decision of another translation your people are familiar with. Alternate translation: [You have filled your hand for Yahweh today]

ULT For a man {was} against his son and against his brother
UST Because each of you {killed} even your own son and brother
(כִּי אִישׁ בִּבְנוֹ וּבְאָחִיו)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express the fact that they did this in obedience to God explicitly. Alternate translation: [For you have obeyed Yahweh, because each man was against his son and against his brother]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT and for putting a blessing on yourselves today
UST has … and blessed you today
(וְלָתֵת עֲלֵיכֶם הַיּוֹם בְּרָכָה)

This phrase is difficult to interpret. Several options depend on exactly how the conjunction, preposition, and verb combination are interpreted. The first difficulty is related to the difficulty with the previous verb: have they already been blessed or are they going to be blessed? Alternate translation: [to have put a blessing on yourselves today] The second difficulty is: should the clause connections be understood to say that the blessing is because of their actions, or more strongly, that a desire for blessing motivated them to take action? Alternate translation: [and therefore a blessing is put on you today] or [so that a blessing may be put over you today] The third difficulty is: while ultimately all blessing is from Yahweh, which is the subject here, Yahweh or the Levites? Alternate translation: [and so Yahweh is putting a blessing on you today] As with the previous clause, you may want to follow the decision of another translation your people are familiar with. Alternate translation: [, by that you brought blessing on yourselves]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
for Yahweh	Yahweh
today	today
a blessing	has … and blessed
today	today

Exodus 32:30

ULT	UST
And it happened the next day that Moses said to the people, "You have sinned a great sin. And now I will go up to Yahweh. Perhaps I can atone for your sin."	*The next day, Moses said to the people, "You have sinned very greatly. But I will now climb up the mountain {again} to {talk with} Yahweh. Perhaps I can {persuade him to} forgive you for sinning {like this}."*

ULT **have sinned a great sin**
UST have sinned very greatly
(חַטָּאתֶם חֲטָאָה גְדֹלָה)

Here, **sin** is used as a verb and then repeated as a noun for emphasis. Along with **great**, it suggests that the people sinned very, very badly. If the repetition of words in this way would not create emphasis, use another form in your language that would. Alternate translation: [You have sinned extremely badly]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **have sinned a great sin … your sin**
UST have sinned very greatly … you … sinning {like this}
(חַטָּאתֶם חֲטָאָה גְדֹלָה & חַטַּאתְכֶם)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for **sin**, you can express the idea behind it in another way. See the UST.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
have sinned	have sinned very greatly
a … sin	have sinned very greatly
Yahweh	Yahweh
I can atone	I can {persuade him to} forgive
your sin	you … sinning {like this}

Exodus 32:31

ULT	UST
And Moses returned to Yahweh and said, "Oh, this people has sinned a great sin and made themselves gods of gold.	*So Moses went back up {the mountain} and said to Yahweh, "These people sinned very greatly when they made for themselves a gold idol {and worshiped it}! Please,*

ULT **this people has sinned … sin**
UST These people sinned very greatly
(חָטָֽאָה הָעָם הַזֶּה חֲטָאָה)

Here, **sin** is used as a verb and then repeated as a noun for emphasis. Along with **great**, it suggests that the people sinned very, very badly. If the repetition of words in this way would not create emphasis, use another form in your language that would. Alternate translation: [this people has sinned extremely badly]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **sin**
UST sinned very greatly
(חֲטָאָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for **sin**, you can express the idea behind it in another way. See the UST.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **gods of**
UST a gold idol … it
(אֱלֹהֵי)

Alternate translation: [a god]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
has sinned	sinned very greatly
sin	sinned very greatly
gods of	a gold idol … it
gold	a gold idol … it

Exodus 32:32

ULT	UST
But now, if you forgive their sin; but if not, please blot me out of your book that you have written."	*if you would, forgive them for their sin now. But if you will not forgive them, please erase my name from the book in which you have written {your people's names}."*

ULT **But now, if you forgive their sin**
UST if you would, forgive them for their sin now
(וְעַתָּה אִם־תִּשָּׂא חַטָּאתָם)

Moses leaves out his conclusion, perhaps as a way of making this conditional phrase into a request, or perhaps to avoid suggesting to God what would be good for him to do. However, if leaving out a conclusion would be misunderstood in your language you may need to rephrase it or add the implied conclusion. Alternate translation: [But now, if you forgive their sin, good!]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **blot me out of**
UST erase my name
(מְחֵנִי)

Here, **me** refers to the name of Moses. Alternate translation: [erase my name from]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **that you have written**
UST in which you have written {your people's names}
(אֲשֶׁר כָּתָבְתָּ)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express what God had written in the book explicitly. Alternate translation: [in which you have written the names of your people]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you forgive	forgive
their sin	them for their sin
blot me out of	erase my name
your book	from the book

Exodus 32:33

ULT	UST
But Yahweh said to Moses, "Whoever that sinned against me, I will blot him out from my book.	*But Yahweh said to Moses, "Whoever has sinned against me, I will erase their names from that book.*

ULT I will blot him out from my book
UST I will erase their names from that book
(אֶמְחֶנּוּ מִסִּפְרִי)

Here, **him** represents that person's name. Alternate translation: [I will erase that person's name from my book]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT from my book
UST from that book
(מִסִּפְרִי)

This refers to the book of Yahweh that Moses spoke of in Exodus 32:32.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
sinned	has sinned
I will blot him out	I will erase their names
from my book	from that book

Exodus 32:34

ULT	UST
So now go, lead the people to where I have spoken to you! Behold, my angel will go before your face. But on the day I visit them, then I will visit their sin on them."	*Now, go lead the Israelites to the place I told you about! Watch for my angel going in front of you. However, sometime I will come and I will punish them for how they sinned."*

ULT But on the day I visit them, then I will visit their sin on them

UST However, sometime I will come and I will punish them for how they sinned

(וּבְיוֹם פָּקְדִי וּפָקַדְתִּי עֲלֵיהֶם חַטָּאתָם)

Yahweh makes it clear that he will punish the people because they sinned by making and worshiping the idol. If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [However, because they sinned, one day I will come to punish them.]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
my angel	my angel
But on the day	However, sometime
their sin	them for how they sinned

Exodus 32:35

ULT	UST
And Yahweh plagued the people because they had made the calf (that Aaron made).	*Later Yahweh caused the people to become sick because they had made Aaron make the bull idol.*

ULT they had made the calf (that Aaron made
UST they had made Aaron make the bull idol
(עָשׂוּ אֶת־הָעֵגֶל אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה אַהֲרֹן)

The people are being spoken of as having made the calf themselves (along with Aaron) because they demanded it and gave their gold for it. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [they were guilty along with Aaron of making the calf]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT And Yahweh plagued the people because they had made the calf (that Aaron made
UST Later Yahweh caused the people to become sick because they had made Aaron make the bull idol
(וַיִּגֹּף יְהוָה אֶת־הָעָם עַל אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ אֶת־הָעֵגֶל אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה אַהֲרֹן)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [And because they had made the calf (that Aaron made), Yahweh plagued the people]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
And … plagued	Later … caused … to become sick
the calf	the bull idol
Aaron	Aaron

Exodus 33

Exodus 33 Chapter Introduction

This chapter is largely about Moses continuing to negotiate for a closer relationship between Yahweh and himself and Yahweh and the people. There are a number of important theological issues addressed, especially Yahweh's holiness and character. Several key terms appear.

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–6: Moses negotiating with Yahweh to go with Israel
- v. 7–11: the temporary tent of meeting
- v. 12–23: Moses negotiating with Yahweh to see his glory

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Yahweh's statement to Moses in verse 5 seems to have happened before the people's reaction in verse 4, so in some languages you may need to reverse them.

Verses 7–11 seem to be background, general information about a somewhat unspecified time period. Be sure this is clear in how you structure these verses. See the beginning of verse 7 in the UST. While the term in verses 7–11 is often used interchangeably with the Dwelling that will be built in chapters 35–39, it is a temporary and different tent. One distinguishing feature is that it is well outside the camp, while the Dwelling will be in the center of the camp.

The word **tent** in verses 7–11 refers either to this temporary "tent of meeting" that Moses set up or to the tents that the Israelites lived in. Pay attention throughout these verses to which tent is referred to.

Exodus 33:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, "Go, arise from here, you and the people whom you have brought up from the land of Egypt to the land which I swore to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, saying, 'I will give it to your seed.'	*Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Get up and go from here with the people whom you led out of Egypt. Go to the land that I promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that I would give to their descendants.*

ULT **saying, 'I will give it to your seed**
UST that I would give to their descendants
(לֵאמֹר לְזַרְעֲךָ אֶתְּנֶנָּה)

The words which follow **saying** are a second-level quotation. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this with second-level quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation within a quotation. However, you may want to translate this as an indirect quotation in order to reduce the layers of quotations in this passage. See UST.

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
from the land of	out of Egypt
Egypt	out of Egypt
the land	the land
I swore	I promised
to Abraham	Abraham
to Isaac	Isaac
and to Jacob	and Jacob
to your seed	to their descendants

Exodus 33:2

ULT	UST
And I will send an angel before your face, and I will drive out the Canaanites, the Amorites and the Hittites and the Perizzites, Hivites and the Jebusites.	*I will send my angel ahead of you, and I will remove the people descended from Canaan, Amor, Heth, Periz, Hiv, and Jebus from that land.*

ULT **And I will send an angel before your face, and I will drive out the Canaanites, the Amorites and the Hittites and the Perizzites, Hivites and the Jebusites**

UST I will send my angel ahead of you, and I will remove the people descended from Canaan, Amor, Heth, Periz, Hiv, and Jebus from that land

(וְשָׁלַחְתִּי לְפָנֶיךָ מַלְאָךְ וְגֵרַשְׁתִּי אֶת־הַכְּנַעֲנִי הָאֱמֹרִי וְהַחִתִּי וְהַפְּרִזִּי הַחִוִּי וְהַיְבוּסִי)

See how you translated these in Exodus 23:20 and 23:23.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an angel	my angel
the Canaanites	Canaan
the Amorites	Amor
and the Hittites	Heth
and the Perizzites	Periz
Hivites	Hiv
and the Jebusites	and Jebus

Exodus 33:3

ULT	UST
{Go} to a land flowing {with} milk and honey, but I will not go up in your midst, because you {are} a people hard of neck, lest I destroy you on the way."	*You will go to a land that will be very good for raising livestock and growing crops. But I will not go with you myself, because if I did that, I might annihilate you while you are traveling, because you are very obstinate people."*

ULT **{with} milk and honey**
UST raising livestock and growing crops
(חָלָב וּדְבָשׁ)

Here, **milk** is a metonym for domestic animals and the food products obtained from them; **honey** is a metonym for the food obtained from growing plants. See how you translated this in Exodus 3:8.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **flowing {with} milk and honey**
UST very good for raising livestock and growing crops
(זָבַת חָלָב וּדְבָשׁ)

God spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. See how you translated this in Exodus 3:8.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **hard of neck**
UST are very obstinate people
(קְשֵׁה־עֹרֶף)

Yahweh speaks of the people being rebellious as if they had **hard necks**. See how you translated this in Exodus 32:9.

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a land	a land that will be
and honey	and growing crops
I destroy you	I might annihilate you

Exodus 33:4

ULT	UST
And the people heard this evil word, and they mourned, and each one did not put his ornaments on him.	*Yahweh told Moses to tell the Israelites, "You are very stubborn. If I were to go with you for even a moment, I would kill you. Now take off your fine things {to show that you are sorry for sinning}. Then I will decide if I will punish you." When the people heard that Yahweh spoke harshly, they were sorry, and no one wore fancy things. (vv4-5)*

ULT **and each one did not put his ornaments on him**
UST and no one wore fancy things
(וְלֹא־שָׁתוּ אִישׁ עֶדְיוֹ עָלָיו)

Here, **his** and **him** refer to both men and women. Alternate translation: [and the men and women did not put on their ornaments]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **his ornaments**
UST fancy things
(עֶדְיוֹ)

This may have referred to beautiful clothing as well as chains and rings made from gold or silver that had could have had jewels in them. Alternate translation: [his adornments]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

Note:

Yahweh's statement to Moses in verse 5 seems to have happened before the people's reaction in verse 4, so in some languages you may need to reverse them.

Support Reference: Verse Bridges

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
evil	that Yahweh spoke harshly
and they mourned	they were sorry

Exodus 33:5

ULT	UST
And Yahweh {had} said to Moses, "Say to the sons of Israel, 'You are a people hard of neck. {If} I went up among you {for} one moment, then I {would} destroy you. And now, take your ornaments down from on you, and I will know what I will do to you.'"	*Yahweh told Moses to tell the Israelites, "You are very stubborn. If I were to go with you for even a moment, I would kill you. Now take off your fine things {to show that you are sorry for sinning}. Then I will decide if I will punish you." When the people heard that Yahweh spoke harshly, they were sorry, and no one wore fancy things. (vv4-5)*

ULT **And Yahweh {had} said**
UST Yahweh told
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה)

The word **had** places Yahweh's statement back in time. It can be understood from context as Yahweh's statement to Moses in verse 5 seems to have happened before the people's reaction in verse 4. If you are reversing the order of the verses for your language, you should adjust the verbal sequencing in your translation.

Support Reference: Order of Events

ULT **Say to the sons of Israel**
UST to tell the Israelites
(אֱמֹר אֶל־בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל)

You may want to make the introductory portion of this quotation, **Say to the sons of Israel**, indirect to keep from having a quote inside a quote. See the UST.

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **hard of neck**
UST are very stubborn
(קְשֵׁה־עֹרֶף)

Yahweh speaks of the people being rebellious as if they had **hard necks**. See how you translated this in Exodus 32:9.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **{If} I went up among you {for} one moment, then I {would} destroy you. And now**
UST If I were to go with you for even a moment, I would kill you. Now
(רֶגַע אֶחָד אֶעֱלֶה בְקִרְבְּךָ וְכִלִּיתִיךָ וְעַתָּה)

Because the surrounding narrative clearly shows that this is not what Yahweh did or will do, this is a hypothetical situation. Some languages may need to reorder the clauses. Alternate translation: [Since I would destroy if I went up among you for one moment, then]

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **And now, take your ornaments down from on you, and I will know what I will do to you**
UST Now take off your fine things {to show that you are sorry for sinning}. Then I will decide if I will punish you
(וְעַתָּה הוֹרֵד עֶדְיְךָ מֵעָלֶיךָ וְאֵדְעָה מָה אֶעֱשֶׂה־לָּךְ)

The goal of the Israelites removing their ornaments is so that Yahweh can consider his reaction. Some languages may need to reorder this structure. Alternate translation: [So that I will know what I will do to you, take your ornaments down from on you]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **And now, take your ornaments down from on you**
UST Now take off your fine things {to show that you are sorry for sinning}
(וְעַתָּה הוֹרֵד עֶדְיְךָ מֵעָלֶיךָ)

This was a way for the Israelites to show that they were sorry for sinning. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Israel	the Israelites
then I {would} destroy you	I would kill you
and I will know	Then I will decide

Exodus 33:6

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel stripped themselves {of} their ornaments from Mount Horeb.	*From Mount Sinai on, the Israelites took off and left off all their fine things.*

ULT And … stripped themselves
UST took off and left off
(וַיִּתְנַצְּלוּ)

Here, **themselves** refers to the Israelites; they are both the ones doing the action and the ones to whom the action is done. A special form of verb or pronoun may be required to translate this in your language.

Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

ULT from Mount Horeb
UST From Mount Sinai on
(מֵהַר חוֹרֵב)

Here, **from** means "from that point of time and continuing into the future." Try to find a form in your language that means "from then on" for your translation.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 33:7

ULT	UST
And Moses would take a tent and would pitch it on the outside of the camp, at a distance from the camp. And he called it the tent of meeting. And it happened, every seeker of Yahweh would go out to the tent of meeting that {was} on the outside of the camp.	*{Until they built the sacred tent,} Moses set up a tent outside the camp, far away. He called it "the tent of meeting." Everyone who wanted Yahweh to decide something for them would go out of the camp to the tent of meeting.*

Note:

Verses 7–11 seem to be background, general information about a somewhat unspecified time period. Be sure this is clear in how you structure these verses. See the beginning of verse 7 in the UST.

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **a tent**
UST a tent
(אֶת־הָאֹהֶל)

The word **tent** in verses 7–11 refers either to this temporary "tent of meeting" that Moses set up, or to the tents that the Israelites lived in. Pay attention throughout these verses to which tent is being referenced. Here it refers to the "tent of meeting."

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And Moses	{Until they built the sacred tent,} Moses
And he called	He called
the tent of meeting	the tent of meeting
seeker of	who wanted … to decide something for them
Yahweh	Yahweh
the tent of meeting	the tent of meeting

Exodus 33:8

ULT	UST
And it happened as Moses went out to the tent, all the people would stand up and each would be stationed {at} the entrance of his tent, and they stared behind Moses until he went into the tent.	*Whenever Moses went out to the tent of meeting, all the people would stand at their own tent entrances and watch him until he had walked into the tent of meeting.*

ULT **his tent**

UST at their own tent entrances

(אָהֳלֹ֑ו)

This refers to the people's tents.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
the tent	the tent of meeting
Moses	him
the tent	into the tent of meeting

Exodus 33:9

ULT	UST
And it happened, as Moses entered the tent, the pillar of cloud would come down and stand {at} the entrance of the tent, and he would speak with Moses.	*Whenever Moses went into the tent of meeting, the tall cloud would come down and stay at the tent entrance, and then {Yahweh} would talk with Moses.*

ULT the pillar of cloud
UST the tall cloud
(עַמּוּד הֶעָנָן)

See how you translated this in 13:21.

ULT would come down
UST would come down
(יֵרֵד)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express where the **pillar of cloud would come down** from explicitly. Alternate translation: [would come down from the sky]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT and he would speak
UST and then {Yahweh} would talk
(וְדִבֶּר)

Grammatically, the most likely referent for this pronoun is the **pillar of cloud**. By metonymy and based on 33:11, this probably refers to Yahweh.

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
the tent	the tent of meeting
the pillar of	the tall cloud
the tent	at the tent entrance
Moses	Moses

Exodus 33:10

ULT	UST
And all of the people saw the pillar of cloud standing {at} the entrance of the tent, and all of the people would get up and bow down, each {at} the entrance of his tent.	*When the people saw the tall cloud standing at the entrance to the tent of meeting, they would all bow to worship Yahweh at their own tent entrances.*

ULT **And all of the people saw the pillar of cloud standing {at} the entrance of the tent, and all of the people would get up and bow down, each {at} the entrance of his tent**
UST When the people saw the tall cloud standing at the entrance to the tent of meeting, they would all bow to worship Yahweh at their own tent entrances
(וְרָאָה כָל־הָעָם אֶת־עַמּוּד הֶעָנָן עֹמֵד פֶּתַח הָאֹהֶל וְקָם כָּל־הָעָם וְהִשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ אִישׁ פֶּתַח אָהֳלוֹ)

This verse uses contrastive parallelism. The presence of Yahweh is represented in the cloud that stands at the entrance of the tent, while the people prostrate themselves at the entrance to their tents. It would be good to try to retain the contrasting image in your translation if possible.

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **the pillar of cloud**
UST the tall cloud
(אֶת־עַמּוּד הֶעָנָן)

See how you translated this in 13:21.

ULT **his tent**
UST at their own tent entrances
(אָהֳלוֹ)

This refers to the people's tents.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the pillar of	the tall cloud
the tent	at the entrance to the tent of meeting
and bow down	would … bow to worship Yahweh

Exodus 33:11

ULT	UST
And Yahweh would speak to Moses face to face, as a man speaks to his friend. Then Moses would return to the camp, but his servant Joshua son of Nun, a young man, would not withdraw from the midst of the tent.	*Yahweh would speak directly to Moses like someone speaks to his friend. Then Moses would return to the camp. But his young helper, Joshua son of Nun, would stay in the tent of meeting.*

ULT **face to face**
UST directly
(פָּנִים אֶל־פָּנִים)

Speaking directly to each other rather than through dreams and visions is spoken of as if Moses and God saw each other's faces while they spoke. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Yahweh would speak directly to Moses]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **as a man speaks to his friend**
UST like someone speaks to his friend
(כַּאֲשֶׁר יְדַבֵּר אִישׁ אֶל־רֵעֵהוּ)

The metaphor of speaking **face to face** is explained by the simile here. How you translated **face to face** in your language may determine how you should translate this explanation.

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **but his servant Joshua son of Nun, a young man**
UST But his young helper, Joshua son of Nun
(וּמְשָׁרְתוֹ יְהוֹשֻׁעַ בִּן־נוּן נַעַר)

Joshua has been introduced before but not mentioned since Exodus 32:17. Consider if your language will need to re-introduce Joshua in any way here.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
but his servant	But his young helper
Joshua	Joshua
a young man	But his young helper

ULT	UST
the tent	the tent of meeting

Exodus 33:12

ULT	UST
And Moses said to Yahweh, "See, you {have been} saying to me, 'Take this people up,' but you have not caused me to know whom you will send with me. And you have said, 'I know you by name, and you have also found favor in my eyes.'	*Moses said to Yahweh, "Please pay attention. You told me to lead the Israelites {to the land that you will show me}. But you have not told me whom you will send {to help} me! You also said that you know me well and that you are pleased with me.*

Note:

A new scene begins here, which may need to be marked in a certain way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **Take this people up … I know you by name, and you have also found favor in my eyes**
UST to lead the Israelites {to the land that you will show me} … also … you know me well and that you are pleased with me
(הַעַל אֶת־הָעָם הַזֶּה & יְדַעְתִּיךָ בְשֵׁם וְגַם־מָצָאתָ חֵן בְּעֵינָי)

You may want to make these two second-level quotations indirect to reduce the levels of quotation. See the UST.

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **See**
UST Please pay attention
(רְאֵה)

This is an interjection to get someone's attention. Alternate translation: [Look!] or [Listen!] or [Pay attention to what I am about to tell you]

ULT **I know you by name**
UST you know me well
(יְדַעְתִּיךָ בְשֵׁם)

To **know** someone **by name** is to know them well. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [I know you well]

Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **and you have also found favor in my eyes**
> UST also … and that you are pleased with me
> (וְגַם־מָצָאתָ חֵן בְּעֵינָי)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and my eyes find you favorable]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **and you have also found favor in my eyes**
> UST also … and that you are pleased with me
> (וְגַם־מָצָאתָ חֵן בְּעֵינָי)

Here, **found favor in my eyes** is an idiom that means "I am pleased with you" so it means that God is pleased with Moses. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [and you please me]

Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **and you have also found favor in my eyes**
> UST also … and that you are pleased with me
> (וְגַם־מָצָאתָ חֵן בְּעֵינָי)

Here, **in my eyes** is a metaphor representing God's evaluation. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and you have also found favor in my evaluation]

Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **and you have also found favor in my eyes**
> UST also … and that you are pleased with me
> (וְגַם־מָצָאתָ חֵן בְּעֵינָי)

Here, **favor** is an abstract noun that you could express in another way if necessary in your language. Alternate translation: [and you have also been found approved in my eyes]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
have … caused me to know	have … told me
I know you	you know me well

ULT	UST
favor	and that you are pleased with me

Exodus 33:13

ULT	UST
And now please, if I have found favor in your eyes, please cause me to know your ways, and I will know you so that I can find favor in your eyes. And see that this nation is your people."	*So now, if you are truly pleased with me, I ask you, please tell me the things that you are going to do in order that I may know you better and continue to please you. Please remember that the Israelites are the people whom you chose to belong to you."*

ULT **I have found favor in your eyes … I can find favor in your eyes**
UST you are truly pleased with me … and continue to please you
(מָצָאתִי חֵן בְּעֵינֶיךָ & אֶמְצָא־חֵן בְּעֵינֶיךָ)

Here, **found favor in your eyes** is an idiom that means that God is pleased with Moses. You may also need to make the phrase active in form and change the abstract noun **favor** into another form. Finally, **in your eyes** is a metaphor representing his evaluation. See how you dealt with the multiple issues in the phrase **you have found favor in my eyes** in Exodus 33:12.

ULT **please cause me to know your ways**
UST please tell me the things that you are going to do
(הוֹדִעֵנִי נָא אֶת־דְּרָכֶךָ)

Here, **ways** is a metaphor either: (1) for Yahweh's plans or (2) for the holy life he requires. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: (1) [please cause me to know what you are going to do in the future]; (2) "please cause me to know how people can do what pleases you"

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **I can find favor in your eyes**
UST and continue to please you
(אֶמְצָא־חֵן בְּעֵינֶיךָ)

This instance of the phrase **find favor in your eyes** means in the future. Consider how to translate it in your language to convey an on-going situation. Alternate translation: [I can always find favor in your eyes]

ULT **And see that this nation is your people**
UST Please remember that the Israelites are the people whom you chose to belong to you
(וּרְאֵ֕ה כִּ֥י עַמְּךָ֖ הַגּ֣וֹי הַזֶּ֑ה)

Moses is requesting that Yahweh would again **see**, perceive, consider, or recognize the Israelites as his special people. In this way, Moses would know that Yahweh had truly forgiven them.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
favor	you are truly pleased with me
cause me to know	tell me
and I will know you	I may know you better
favor	and continue to please you
nation	the Israelites

Exodus 33:14

ULT	UST
And he said, "My face will go, and I will cause rest for you."	*Yahweh replied, "I will go with you and relieve you."*

ULT **My face will go**
UST I will go
(פָּנַי יֵלֵכוּ)

Yahweh's **face** represents his presence, which represents himself. Alternate translation: [I will go]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **My face will go, and I will cause rest for you**
UST I will go with you and relieve you
(פָּנַי יֵלֵכוּ וַהֲנִחֹתִי לָךְ)

The preposition connected to **you** here has a very flexible meaning and seems to be connected to both **will go** and **will cause rest**. If this would be unclear, consider repeating it in both clauses. Alternate translation: [My face will go with you and I will cause rest for you]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for you**
UST with you … you
(לָךְ)

The word **you** here refers to Moses. It is singular.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

Exodus 33:15

ULT	UST
And he said to him, "If your face {is} not going, do not take us up from here.	*Moses replied to Yahweh, "If you do not go {with me}, do not make us leave this place.*

ULT **If your face {is} not going**
UST If you do not go {with me}
(אִם־אֵ֖ין פָּנֶ֣יךָ הֹלְכִ֑ים)

If your face is not going is a hypothetical situation in which Moses makes a request that they not go anywhere without Yahweh. In some languages you may need to place the request first. Alternate translation: [Do not take us up from here if your face is not going]

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **If your face {is} not going**
UST If you do not go {with me}
(אִם־אֵ֖ין פָּנֶ֣יךָ הֹלְכִ֑ים)

Yahweh's **face** represents his presence, which represents himself. Alternate translation: [If you are not going]

Support Reference: Metonymy

Exodus 33:16

ULT	UST
And in what then will it be known that I have found favor in your eyes, I and your people? {Is it} not in your going with us? And I and your people shall be distinct from all of the people that {are} on the face of the earth."	*The only way that others will know that you are pleased with me and with your people is if you go with us! If you go with us, it will show that we are different from all the other nations on the earth."*

ULT **And in what then will it be known that I have found favor in your eyes, I and your people? {Is it} not in your going with us? And I and your people shall be distinct from all of the people that {are} on the face of the earth**

UST The only way that others will know that you are pleased with me and with your people is if you go with us! If you go with us, it will show that we are different from all the other nations on the earth

(וּבַמֶּה ׀ יִוָּדַע אֵפוֹא כִּי־מָצָאתִי חֵן בְּעֵינֶיךָ אֲנִי וְעַמֶּךָ הֲלוֹא בְּלֶכְתְּךָ עִמָּנוּ וְנִפְלִינוּ אֲנִי וְעַמְּךָ מִכֹּל־הָעָם אֲשֶׁר עַל־פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה)

This verse contains two or three rhetorical questions, and the length of the second is debated. The first rhetorical question, "**And in what then will it be known that I have found favor in your eyes, I and your people?**" is used for emphasis and means, "There is only one way people will know that I and your people please you." The second, "**Is it not in your going with us?**" is used to answer the first question and means "That way is your going with us." It is possible that the rest of the verse is (1) a statement further clarifying how Yahweh's favor is demonstrated (ULT, UST), (2) an extension of the second rhetorical question ("Is it not in your going with us so that I and your people shall be distinct from all of the people that are on the face of the earth?"), or (3) a separate rhetorical question making the same point ("And shall I and your people be distinct from all of the people that are on the face of the earth?") Moses used these questions in order to emphasize that if Yahweh does not go with them, no one will know that Yahweh is pleased with Moses and the people. Use whatever forms would be natural in your language to present an argument like this. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way.

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **And in what**
UST The only way that others will know that you are pleased with me and with your people is if you go with us
(וּבַמָּה)

This refers back to Moses' hypothetical situation in the previous verse, that is, Yahweh not going with them. Use whatever connecting forms are necessary to make that clear.

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And in what then will it be known**
UST The only way that others will know that you are pleased with me and with your people is if you go with us
(וּבַמָּה ׀ יִוָּדַע אֵפוֹא)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And in what then will people know]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **I have found favor in your eyes**
UST The only way that others will know that you are pleased with me and with your people is if you go with us
(מָצָאתִי חֵן בְּעֵינֶיךָ)

Here, **found favor** is an idiom that means that God is pleased with Moses. You may also need to make the phrase active in form and change the abstract noun **favor** into another form. Finally, **eyes** are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. See how you dealt with the multiple issues in the phrase **you have found favor in my eyes** in Exodus 33:12.

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
will it be known	The only way that others will know that you are pleased with me and with your people is if you go with us
favor	The only way that others will know that you are pleased with me and with your people is if you go with us
the earth	the earth

Exodus 33:17

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "I will also do this thing that you have spoken, for you have found favor in my eyes, and I know you by name."	*Yahweh replied to Moses, "I will do what you have asked, because I know you well and I am pleased with you."*

ULT **I will also do this thing that you have spoken, for you have found favor in my eyes, and I know you by name**

UST I will do what you have asked, because I know you well and I am pleased with you

(גַּם אֶת־הַדָּבָר הַזֶּה אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתָּ אֶעֱשֶׂה כִּי־מָצָאתָ חֵן בְּעֵינַי וָאֵדָעֲךָ בְּשֵׁם)

Here, **for** signals a reason clause. If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [Because you have found favor in my eyes, and I know you by name, I will also do this thing that you have spoken]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **you have found favor in my eyes**

UST I am pleased with you

(מָצָאתָ חֵן בְּעֵינַי)

Here, **you have found favor in my eyes** is an idiom that means that God is pleased with Moses. You may also need to make the phrase active in form and change the abstract noun **favor** into another form. Finally, **eyes** are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. See how you dealt with the multiple issues in the phrase **you have found favor in my eyes** in Exodus 33:12.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **you have found**

UST I am pleased with you

(מָצָאתָ)

Here, **you** is singular and refers to Moses.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **and I know you by name**

UST I know you well and

(וָאֵדָעֲךָ בְּשֵׁם)

To know someone by name is to know them well. See how you translated this in Exodus 33:12. Alternate translation: [and I know you well]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
favor	I am pleased with you
and I know you	I know you well and

Exodus 33:18

ULT	UST
And he said, “Please show me your glory.”	*Then Moses said, “Please let me see how glorious you are.”*

ULT **your glory**
UST how glorious you are
(אֶת־כְּבֹדֶךָ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **glory**, you can express the same idea in another way. See the UST.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your glory	how glorious you are

Exodus 33:19

ULT	UST
And he said, "I myself will cause all my goodness to pass over above your face, and I will proclaim in the name of Yahweh before your face: and I will favor whom I will favor, and I will be compassionate to whom I will be compassionate."	*Yahweh replied, "I will display to you how good I am and tell you {what} my name Yahweh {means}. I will act kindly to anyone I choose, and I will act mercifully to anyone I choose.*

ULT **I myself will cause all my goodness to pass over above your face**
UST I will display to you how good I am
(אֲנִי אַעֲבִיר כָּל־טוּבִי עַל־פָּנֶיךָ)

Yahweh speaks of his **goodness** like it was an object that he could move over Moses. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. See the UST.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **my goodness**
UST how good I am
(טוּבִי)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **goodness**, you can express the same idea in another way. See the UST.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **above your face … before your face**
UST to you … you
(עַל־פָּנֶיךָ & לְפָנָי)

Here, **face** means "you." Alternate translation: [above you … before you]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and I will proclaim in the name of Yahweh**
UST and tell … what} my name Yahweh {means}
(וְקָרָאתִי בְשֵׁם יְהוָה)

The meaning of the phrase is unclear. It may mean that Yahweh will disclose something about his character to Moses. Alternate translation: [and I will proclaim my name, 'Yahweh,']

ULT and I will favor whom I will favor, and I will be compassionate to whom I will be compassionate

UST I will act kindly to anyone I choose, and I will act mercifully to anyone I choose
(וְחַנֹּתִי֙ אֶת־אֲשֶׁ֣ר אָחֹ֔ן וְרִחַמְתִּי֙ אֶת־אֲשֶׁ֣ר אֲרַחֵ֔ם)

These statements use parallelism internally and between each other. They stress Yahweh's divine prerogative to do whatever he wants. The structure also parallels Yahweh's I AM statements in Exodus 3:14. If this form of parallelism would be misunderstood in your language, consider another form that emphasizes that Yahweh is graciously kind to exactly those and only those to whom he chooses to show kindness, and he does so without outside influence.

Support Reference: Parallelism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
my goodness	how good I am
and I will proclaim	and tell
Yahweh	Yahweh
and I will favor	I will act kindly to anyone I choose
I will favor	I will act kindly to anyone I choose
and I will be compassionate	and I will act mercifully to anyone I choose
I will be compassionate	and I will act mercifully to anyone I choose

Exodus 33:20

ULT	UST
But he said, "You are not able to see my face, for mankind can not see me and live."	*But you cannot see my face, because anyone who sees my face will die.*

ULT But he said
UST But
(וַיֹּאמֶר)

In some languages it may be better to omit **And he said** at the start of this verse to avoid stopping and restarting the quotation. Yahweh is speaking from 33:19–34:3.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT for mankind can not see me and live
UST because anyone who sees my face will die
(כִּי לֹא־יִרְאַנִי הָאָדָם וָחָי)

Alternate translation: [because no person can live after he has seen me]

Exodus 33:21

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said, "Behold, a place with me, and you shall station yourself on the rock.	*But look! Here is a place close to me where you can stand on a large rock.*

ULT And Yahweh said
UST But
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָֹה)

In some languages it may be better to omit **And Yahweh said** at the start of this verse to avoid stopping and restarting the quotation. Yahweh is speaking from 33:19–34:3.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Behold
UST look
(הִנֵּה)

Alternate translation: [Look] or [Listen] or [Pay attention to what I am about to tell you.]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	But

Exodus 33:22

ULT	UST
And it will happen, while my glory passes over, that I will put you in a crevice of the rock, and my hand will cover over you until I have passed over.	*When my glorious {light} goes by you, I will put you in a large hole in the rock and cover you with my hand until I have gone by you.*

ULT **while my glory passes over**
UST When my glorious {light} goes by you
(בַּעֲבֹר כְּבוֹדִי)

Yahweh speaks of his **glory** as if it were an object that he could move over Moses. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [while I pass over gloriously]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **my glory**
UST my glorious {light}
(כְּבוֹדִי)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **glory**, you can express the same idea in another way. See the UST.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and my hand will cover over you**
UST and cover you with my hand
(וְשַׂכֹּתִי כַפִּי עָלֶיךָ)

Here Yahweh speaks as if he, like a person, had hands that could cover things. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a simile to retain the image, as this figure is important to retain and extends into the next verse. Alternate translation: [I will cover you as with a hand]

Support Reference: Personification

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
my glory	my glorious {light}
that I will put you	I will put you

Exodus 33:23

ULT	UST
Then I will take away my hand, and you will see my back, but my face will not be seen.”	*Then I will take my hand away, and you will see my back, but you will not see my face.”*

ULT **Then I will take away my hand, and you will see my back, but my face will not be seen**
UST Then I will take my hand away, and you will see my back, but you will not see my face
(וַהֲסִרֹתִי֙ אֶת־כַּפִּ֔י וְרָאִ֖יתָ אֶת־אֲחֹרָ֑י וּפָנַ֖י לֹ֥א יֵרָאֽוּ)

The strong personification image of Yahweh continues throughout this verse and should be retained, if possible. You may have to use similes if this would be misunderstood in your culture. Alternate translation: [Then it will be as if I stop covering you with a hand, and you will see a small part of my glory, like a person’s back, but not my full glory, like a person’s face.]

Support Reference: Personification

ULT **but my face**
UST but … my face
(וּפָנַ֖י)

Here, **but my face** is moved to the front of the clause to emphasize contrast with **my back**. If your language has a certain way of contrasting elements, be sure to make a strong contrast between Yahweh’s face and back.

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **but my face will not be seen**
UST but you will not see my face
(וּפָנַ֖י לֹ֥א יֵרָאֽוּ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [but you will not see my face]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Exodus 34

Exodus 34 General Notes

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–4 Yahweh orders Moses to return to the mountain
- v. 5–9 Yahweh reveals himself to Moses and Moses reacts
- v. 10–28 Covenant renewal
- v. 29–34 Moses reports to Israel

Translation Issues in This Chapter

- In verse 1, Yahweh says he will write on stone tablets, yet later (v. 27–28) he commands Moses to write and the text says Moses writes.
- Yahweh reveals something significant about himself or his character to Moses. There are a number of difficult terms and concepts.
- The biblical metaphor of true worship as sexual fidelity appears in v. 14–16.
- Several verses are repeated either exactly or closely from earlier chapters.
- In v. 12–26 Yahweh appears to give a different 10 commandments from those in Exodus 20 (but also largely repeated from other earlier parts of Exodus), raising the question of what was actually written on the stone tablets in v. 28.
- The concept of Moses's shining face may be difficult in some cultures.

"He will bring the punishment for the fathers' sin on their children"

This phrase does not mean that a child is necessarily punished for the sins of their parents. Many scholars believe that this passage indicates that a parent's sins will have consequences that will affect their children and grandchildren. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Exodus 34:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Carve for yourself two tablets of stone like the first. And I will write on the tablets the words that were on the first tablets that you broke.	*Yahweh kept talking to Moses, "Cut two slabs of stone like the first slabs, the ones that you smashed. Then I will write the same thing on them as was on the first slabs.*

ULT And Yahweh said to Moses
UST Yahweh kept talking to Moses
(וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֶל־מֹשֶׁה)

Yahweh continues to speak to Moses, but there is a change of topic here, so you may want to retain the speech introduction. However, if it would be misunderstood, you could simply continue the quotation from the previous verse. Alternate translation: [Yahweh continued]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT that you broke
UST the ones that you smashed
(אֲשֶׁר שִׁבַּרְתָּ)

This clause reminds the reader of what tablets are being mentioned by reminding you of what had happened to the previous tablets. If it would be more helpful in your language to attach it to the first mention of the tablets in this verse, you could rearrange it like the UST.

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT tablets of stone
UST slabs of stone
(לֻחֹת אֲבָנִים)

Alternate translation: [flat slabs of stone] See how you translated this in Exodus 31:18

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 34:2

ULT	UST
And be ready by morning, and in the morning come up to Mount Sinai, and present yourself there to me on the top of the mountain.	*Get ready tomorrow morning, and come up and stand before me at the top of Mount Sinai.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

Exodus 34:3

ULT	UST
And a man shall not come up with you and also let a man not be seen on all of the mountain. Also let not the flocks and the herds graze to the front of that mountain."	*Do not allow anyone to come up with you. I do not want anyone else to be anywhere on the mountain. Do not even allow any sheep or cattle to eat grass near the mountain."*

ULT and also let a man not be seen on all of the mountain
UST I do not want anyone else to be anywhere on the mountain … or
(וְגַם־אִישׁ אַל־יֵרָא בְּכָל־הָהָר)

Being seen doing something represents doing that. Alternate translation: [and do not let anyone else be anywhere on the mountain]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT Also let not the flocks and the herds graze to the front of that mountain
UST Do not even allow any sheep … cattle to eat grass near the mountain
(גַּם־הַצֹּאן וְהַבָּקָר אַל־יִרְעוּ אֶל־מוּל הָהָר הַהוּא)

Alternate translation: [Even flocks or herds are not allowed to come near the mountain to eat.]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the flocks	sheep
and the herds	cattle

Exodus 34:4

ULT	UST
And he carved two tablets of stone like the first, and Moses got up early in the morning and went up to Mount Sinai as Yahweh had commanded him. And he took the two tablets of stone in his hand.	*So Moses cut two slabs of stone like the first ones. He rose early the next morning, picked up the slabs, and carried them in his hands up to the top of Mount Sinai, as Yahweh had told him.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 34:5

ULT	UST
And Yahweh came down in the cloud and stood with him there, and he pronounced in the name of Yahweh.	*Then Yahweh came down in the tall cloud and stood there with Moses. Then Yahweh called out his name, "Yahweh."*

ULT and stood with him there, and he pronounced
UST and stood there with Moses. Then Yahweh called out
(וַיִּתְיַצֵּב עִמּוֹ שָׁם וַיִּקְרָא)

The pronouns are not clear here, but the referents are probably as in the following alternate translation. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh stood with Moses there, and Yahweh proclaimed]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT and he pronounced in the name of Yahweh
UST Then Yahweh called out his name, "Yahweh
(וַיִּקְרָא בְּשֵׁם יְהוָה)

This could mean: (1) "he spoke the name 'Yahweh'" (2) "he proclaimed who Yahweh is." For the second meaning, **name** would represent who God is.

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
and he pronounced	Then Yahweh called out
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 34:6

ULT	UST
And Yahweh passed over above his face and proclaimed, "Yahweh, Yahweh, a God compassionate and gracious, long of nostrils and abounding in covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness,	*Yahweh passed in front of him and called out, "I am Yahweh God. I always act mercifully and kindly toward people, and I do not get angry quickly. I abundantly love and faithfully do what I promise for my people.*

ULT **Yahweh, Yahweh, a God compassionate and gracious**
UST I am Yahweh God. I always act mercifully and kindly toward people
(יְהוָה ׀ יְהוָה אֵל רַחוּם וְחַנּוּן)

God is speaking about himself. If this is confusing in your language, you may use the first person. Alternate translation: [I, Yahweh, am God, and I am merciful and gracious]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **compassionate and gracious**
UST I always act mercifully and kindly toward people
(רַחוּם וְחַנּוּן)

This is emphasizing that Yahweh cares for people and acts kindly toward them. If doubling would not strengthen the statement here in your language, consider another form that would.

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **long of nostrils**
UST and I do not get angry quickly
(אֶרֶךְ אַפַּיִם)

The phrase **long of nostril** is an idiom that means Yahweh does not get angry easily or quickly. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [slow to anger]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and abounding in covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness**
UST I abundantly love and faithfully do what I promise for my people
(וְרַב־חֶסֶד וֶאֱמֶת)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **covenant faithfulness** and **trustworthiness**, you can express the same idea in another way. (For **covenant faithfulness**, see Exodus 20:6). Alternate translation: [always being faithful to my covenant and always being trustworthy]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness
UST I abundantly love and faithfully do what I promise for my people
(חֶסֶד וֶאֱמֶת)

This is emphasizing that Yahweh always does what he promises toward the people he loves. If doubling would not strengthen the statement here in your language, consider another form that would.

Support Reference: Doublet

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
and proclaimed	and called out
Yahweh	I am Yahweh
Yahweh	I am Yahweh
a God	God
compassionate	I always act mercifully and kindly toward people
and gracious	I always act mercifully and kindly toward people
covenant faithfulness	I abundantly love and faithfully do what I promise for my people

Exodus 34:7

ULT	UST
keeping covenant faithfulness to thousands, forgiving iniquity, transgression, and sin. But he will surely not acquit, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the sons and on the sons of the sons, on the third and on the fourth."	*I abundantly love people for thousands of generations. I forgive people for doing wrong, transgressing, and sinning. But I will certainly punish the guilty. If people do wrong, I cause that to affect their descendants, down to the third and fourth generation."*

ULT **keeping covenant faithfulness to thousands**
UST I abundantly love people for thousands of generations
(נֹצֵר חֶסֶד לָאֲלָפִים)

See how you translated **covenant faithfulness** in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [faithfully loving thousands of generations] or [faithful to his covenant with thousands of generations]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to thousands**
UST for thousands of generations
(לָאֲלָפִים)

This large number is used to mean "forever" or "to all descendants forever." It is deliberately contrasted with **third** and **fourth** later in the verse to emphasize how much longer God's covenant faithfulness is than his anger. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your language that conveys a very long time. Alternate translation: [for every generation]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **to thousands**
UST for thousands of generations
(לָאֲלָפִים)

The word **thousands** is a metonym for a number too many to count. Alternate translation: [to innumerable people]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **iniquity, transgression, and sin**
UST doing wrong, transgressing, and sinning
(עָוֹן וָפֶשַׁע וְחַטָּאָה)

This list is meant to convey the idea of every kind of wrong. If a list like this would be misunderstood in your language you may need to use other terms or forms to make this point. Alternate translation: [every kind of sin]

Support Reference: Litany

ULT **iniquity, transgression, and sin … the iniquity of**
UST doing wrong, transgressing, and sinning … If people do wrong
(עָוֹן וָפֶשַׁע וְחַטָּאָה & עָוֹן)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **iniquity, transgression, and sin**, you can express the same ideas in another way, as modeled in the UST.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **But he will surely not acquit**
UST But I will certainly punish the guilty
(וְנַקֵּה לֹא יְנַקֶּה)

Yahweh is speaking about himself. If this is confusing in your language, you may use the first person. Alternate translation: [But I will certainly not acquit]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **But he will surely not acquit**
UST But I will certainly punish the guilty
(וְנַקֵּה לֹא יְנַקֶּה)

Whom Yahweh will not acquit is not stated. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: [But he will certainly not clear the guilty] or [But he will certainly not say that the guilty are innocent] or [But he will certainly not free guilty people]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **the iniquity of**
UST If people do wrong
(עָוֹן)

Here, **iniquity** refers to the consequences or the punishment for iniquity. Alternate translation: [the punishment for the iniquity of]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the sons and on the sons of the sons**
UST If people do wrong, I cause that to affect their descendants
(פֹּקֵד ׀ עֲוֹן אָבוֹת עַל־בָּנִים וְעַל־בְּנֵי בָנִים)

The **iniquity of the fathers** is spoken of as if it were something capable of **visiting** people. This means that Yahweh makes the consequences of people's sins affect their descendants. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [punishing the sons and the sons of the sons for the iniquity of the fathers]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **on the sons and on the sons of the sons**
UST their descendants
(עַל־בָּנִים וְעַל־בְּנֵי בָנִים)

The references to **sons** and **sons of the sons** represents descendants. Alternate translation: [on their descendants]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **on the third and on the fourth**
UST down to the third and fourth generation
(עַל־שִׁלֵּשִׁים וְעַל־רִבֵּעִים)

Here, "generation" is implied after **third** and **fourth**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **on the third and on the fourth**
UST down to the third and fourth generation
(עַל־שִׁלֵּשִׁים וְעַל־רִבֵּעִים)

Here, **third** and **fourth** means "several." If this would not be understood and your language has a way of referring to an unspecified (but approximately 3–4) number, you may have to use it here. Alternate translation: [on a few generations]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
covenant faithfulness	I abundantly love people
iniquity	doing wrong
and sin	and sinning

ULT	UST
the iniquity of	If people do wrong

Exodus 34:8

ULT	UST
And Moses hurried and bowed to the ground and prostrated himself.	*Quickly Moses bowed low down on the ground and worshiped Yahweh.*

ULT and prostrated himself
UST and worshiped Yahweh
(וַיִּשְׁתָּחוּ)

Here, **himself** means that Moses did this action to his own body. Some languages may use a special form to indicate this.

Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

ULT and bowed to the ground and prostrated himself
UST bowed low down on the ground and worshiped Yahweh
(וַיִּקֹּד אַרְצָה וַיִּשְׁתָּחוּ)

These two verbs have very similar meanings and are often used together to express people's physical and spiritual posture in worship. If such repetition would be misunderstood in your language, you may need to express the physical action and spiritual action explicitly. Alternate translation: [and bowed to the ground in worship]

Support Reference: Doublet

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
and bowed	bowed low down
to the ground	on the ground
and prostrated himself	and worshiped Yahweh

Exodus 34:9

ULT	UST
And he said, "Please, if I have found favor in your eyes, my Lord, may my Lord please go among us, for this {is} a people hard of neck. And forgive our iniquity and our sin and inherit us."	*He said, "My Lord, if you are now pleased with me, I ask that you go with us. These people are very stubborn, but forgive us for all our sins, and accept us as the people who belong to you forever."*

ULT **I have found favor in your eyes**
UST you are now pleased with me
(מָצָאתִי חֵן בְּעֵינֶיךָ)

Here, **found favor** is an idiom that means that God is pleased with Moses. You may also need to make the phrase active in form and change the abstract noun **favor** into another form. Finally, **eyes** are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. See how you dealt with the multiple issues in the phrase **I have found favor in your eyes** in Exodus 33:12.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **this {is} a people hard of neck**
UST These people are very stubborn
(עַם־קְשֵׁה־עֹרֶף הוּא)

Moses speaks of the people being rebellious as if they had **hard necks**. See how you translated this in Exodus 32:9.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **our iniquity and our sin**
UST for all our sins
(לַעֲוֹנֵנוּ וּלְחַטָּאתֵנוּ)

The words **iniquity** and **sin** mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. If your language does not use repetition in this way, you can combine these phrases. Alternate translation: [all our sins]

Support Reference: Doublet

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
favor	you are now pleased with me
my Lord	My Lord
my Lord	you
And forgive	but forgive us
our iniquity	for all our sins

ULT	UST
and our sin	for all our sins
and inherit us	and accept us as the people who belong to you forever

Exodus 34:10

ULT	UST
And he said, "Behold, I am about to cut a covenant: before all of your people, I will do wonders that have not been created in all of the earth and in all of the nations. And all of the people that you are in the midst of will see the work of Yahweh, for it {is} fear-filling, what I {am} doing with you.	*Yahweh replied, "Pay attention! I am going to remind you of what I agreed with the Israelites. {As for me,} I will perform great miracles. These will be miracles that no one has ever done on the earth in any people group. Every nation around them will see the great things that I, Yahweh, will do. I will do things for you all that will make everyone revere me.*

Note:

Starting in this verse, the covenant is largely repeated and consists of two parts: (1) what Yahweh will do, which is detailed in verses 10–11 (and briefly restated in verse 24) and (2) what is required of the Israelites, which is detailed in verses 12–26. For further context, see Exodus 19:5 and 23:20–24:8. Verses 12–26 are another list of ten commandments.

ULT **am about to cut a covenant**
UST am going to remind you of what I agreed
(כֹּרֵת בְּרִית)

To **cut a covenant** means to make a covenant. The terminology refers to ancient rituals around making covenants, which is illustrated in Genesis 15. See the imagery and how you translated there. Alternate translation: [am about to make a covenant]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **your people**
UST with the Israelites
(עַמְּךָ)

Here, the **people** are referred to as belonging to Moses. This refers to his being their leader. Alternate translation: [the people you lead]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **all of the people that you are in the midst of**
UST Every nation around them
(כָּל־הָעָם אֲשֶׁר־אַתָּה בְקִרְבּוֹ)

This phrase is ambiguous and could refer to: (1) the nations that surrounded Israel or (2) the Israelites (who surrounded Moses). Attempt to maintain the ambiguity if you can; otherwise you may choose one, perhaps following another locally known translation's choice.

ULT **for it {is} fear-filling, what I {am} doing with you**
UST I will do things for you all that will make everyone revere me
(כִּי־נוֹרָא הוּא אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי עֹשֶׂה עִמָּךְ)

This means that what Yahweh is doing causes people to be afraid. In this case, people will fear Yahweh when they see what he does. Alternate translation: [for what I am doing with you will cause fear]

ULT **with you**
UST for you all
(עִמָּךְ)

Here, **you** refers to Moses and the people of Israel. If your language makes a distinction, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a covenant	am going to remind you of what I agreed
wonders	great miracles
have … been created	These will be miracles that no one has ever done
the earth	on the earth
the nations	in any people group
Yahweh	I, Yahweh
{is} fear-filling	that will make everyone revere me

Exodus 34:11

ULT	UST
Keep for yourself what I am commanding today. Behold I am about to drive out from before your face the Amorites and the Canaanites and the Hittites and the Perizzites and the Hivites and the Jebusites.	*Obey what I am about to command you today. I will surely force the Amorites and the Canaanites and the Hittites and the Perizzites and the Hivites and the Jebusites to leave the land for you.*

ULT **am about to drive out from before your face**
UST I will … force … to leave the land for you
(גֹּרֵשׁ מִפְּנֶיךָ)

Here, **from before your faces** means "ahead of you" or "on your behalf." Yahweh is emphasizing who is doing the driving out.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the Amorites and the Canaanites and the Hittites and the Perizzites and the Hivites and the Jebusites**
UST the Amorites and the Canaanites and the Hittites and the Perizzites and the Hivites and the Jebusites
(אֶת־הָאֱמֹרִי וְהַכְּנַעֲנִי וְהַחִתִּי וְהַפְּרִזִּי וְהַחִוִּי וְהַיְבוּסִי)

See how you translated these in Exodus 33:2.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Keep	Obey
today	today
the Amorites	the Amorites
and the Canaanites	and the Canaanites
and the Hittites	and the Hittites
and the Perizzites	and the Perizzites
and the Hivites	and the Hivites
and the Jebusites	and the Jebusites

Exodus 34:12

ULT	UST
Guard yourself, lest you cut a covenant with the inhabitant of the land where you are about to go into, lest he become as a trap in your midst.	*Be careful that you do not agree to live peacefully with any of the people who live in the land into which you are going. If you do that, {you will begin to do the evil things that they do.} It will be like falling into a trap.*

Note: (34:12-16)

Verses 12–16 are the first of these ten commandments. The original language is structured such that every clause in these verses is subordinate to the initial, **Guard yourself**. That sort of structure may not be possible in your language (as it is not in English).

ULT **yourself**
UST you
(לְךָ)

Here, **yourself** means that each Israelite should guard against committing these sins.

Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

ULT **lest you cut a covenant with the inhabitant of the land where you are about to go into, lest he become as a trap in your midst**
UST that … do not agree to live peacefully with any of the people who live in the land into which you are going. If you do that, {you will begin to do the evil things that they do.} It will be like falling into a trap
(פֶּן־תִּכְרֹת בְּרִית לְיוֹשֵׁב הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה בָּא עָלֶיהָ פֶּן־יִהְיֶה לְמוֹקֵשׁ בְּקִרְבֶּךָ)

This sentence contains two hypotheticals as a warning. Each is introduced by **lest**. Use a marker in your language that introduces a hypothetical situation, but also see the next note. Alternate translation: [If you were to cut a covenant with the inhabitant of the land where you are about to go into, probably he would become as a trap in your midst.]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **lest you cut a covenant with the inhabitant of the land where you are about to go into, lest he become as a trap in your midst**
UST that … do not agree to live peacefully with any of the people who live in the land into which you are going. If you do that, {you will begin to do the evil things that they do.} It will be like falling into a trap
(פֶּן־תִּכְרֹת בְּרִית לְיוֹשֵׁב הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה בָּא עָלֶיהָ פֶּן־יִהְיֶה לְמוֹקֵשׁ בְּקִרְבֶּךָ)

The second of these hypothetical statements is logically dependent on and follows after the first as a result. As you mark these hypotheticals, use a form that communicates that the second is a result of the first. Alternate translation: [because if you cut a covenant with the inhabitant of the land where you are about to go into, then he will become as a trap in your midst]

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **you cut a covenant**
UST do … agree to live peacefully
(תִּכְרֹת בְּרִית)

See how you translated this in 34:10.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **with the inhabitant of … he become**
UST with any of the people who live in the land … {you will begin to do the evil things that they do.} It will be like falling into a trap
(לְיוֹשֵׁב & יִהְיֶה)

The word **inhabitant** is a singular noun that refers to any individual inhabitant or group of inhabitants from the peoples mentioned in the previous verse. The pronoun **he** is agreeing with that singular noun. If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. Alternate translation: [with the inhabitants of … they become]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **lest he become as a trap in your midst**
UST If you do that, {you will begin to do the evil things that they do.} It will be like falling into a trap
(פֶּן־יִהְיֶה לְמוֹקֵשׁ בְּקִרְבֶּךָ)

People who tempt others to sin are spoken of as if they were a **trap**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [lest those remaining people tempt you to sin]

Support Reference: Simile

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Guard	Be careful
a covenant	do … agree to live peacefully
the land	with any of the people who live in the land
as a trap	{you will begin to do the evil things that they do.} It will be like falling into a trap

Exodus 34:13

ULT	UST
Instead, their altars you shall break down, and their pillars you shall smash, and his Asherah poles you shall cut down.	*Rather, you must tear down their altars, destroy their idols, and cut down the poles that they use to worship Asherah.*

ULT Instead
UST Rather
(כִּי)

This word marks a strong contrast with the previous verse. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a strong contrast. Alternate translation, followed by a new sentence: [Do the opposite!]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT their altars you shall break down, and their pillars you shall smash, and his Asherah poles you shall cut down
UST you must tear down their altars, destroy their idols, and cut down the poles that they use to worship Asherah
(אֶת־מִזְבְּחֹתָם תִּתֹּצוּן וְאֶת־מַצֵּבֹתָם תְּשַׁבֵּרוּן וְאֶת־אֲשֵׁרָיו תִּכְרֹתוּן)

This unusual word order reflects the original in bringing each item the Israelites must destroy into focus. You should use whatever form in your language would emphasize or focus on each item that they must destroy. Alternate translation, as separate sentences: [as for their altars, break them down! As for their stone pillars, smash them to pieces! As for their trees where they worship the goddess Asherah, cut them all down!]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT you shall cut down
UST cut down
(תִּכְרֹתוּן)

For some reason only this pronoun is singular, referring back the singular “inhabitant” in the previous verse. Translate it based on your decision in the previous verse.

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
their altars	their altars
his Asherah poles	and … the poles that they use to worship Asherah

Exodus 34:14

ULT	UST
For you shall not bow to another god, for Yahweh—Jealous {is} his name—he {is} a jealous God.	*{Do that} because you must not worship any other god, because I, Yahweh, am passionate for people to recognize that I am the only true God, like a husband is passionate for his wife to love only him.*

ULT **you shall not bow**
UST you must not worship
(לֹא תִשְׁתַּחֲוֶה)

To **bow to another god** means to worship it. This imagery is throughout scripture and should be retained in translation. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [you shall not bow to worship]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **for Yahweh—Jealous {is} his name—he {is} a jealous God**
UST because I, Yahweh, am passionate for people to recognize that I am the only true God, like a husband is passionate for his wife to love only him
(כִּי יְהוָה קַנָּא שְׁמוֹ אֵל קַנָּא הוּא)

The repeated word **jealous** means that God is concerned to keep his honor. If his people worship other gods, he loses honor, because when his people do not honor him, other people also will not honor him. This is pictured in a metaphor of a jealous spouse who is concerned that his spouse be faithful to him. This is an important Biblical metaphor that should be kept in translation if at all possible. The UST makes this image explicit as a simile, which can be done occasionally but would probably be too long for repeated use in a translation. Alternate translation: [Yahweh jealously guards his reputation. He is a God jealous of his honor.]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **for Yahweh—Jealous {is} his name**
UST because I, Yahweh, am passionate for people to recognize that I am the only true God, like a husband is passionate for his wife to love only him
(כִּי יְהוָה קַנָּא שְׁמוֹ)

Here, the word **name** represents God's character. Alternate translation: [Yahweh is always jealous]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you shall … bow	you must … worship
Yahweh	I, Yahweh
Jealous	am passionate for people to recognize that I am the only true God, like a husband is passionate for his wife to love only him
jealous	am passionate for people to recognize that I am the only true God, like a husband is passionate for his wife to love only him
{is} a … God	am passionate for people to recognize that I am the only true God, like a husband is passionate for his wife to love only him

Exodus 34:15

ULT	UST
Lest you cut a covenant with the inhabitant of the land, and they prostitute after their gods and sacrifice to their gods, and he invite you, and you eat from his sacrifice	*{Again,} do not agree to live peacefully with any of the people who live in the land, because when they worship their gods and offer sacrifices to them, they will invite you to join them. Then you will {be unfaithful to me and sin by} eating the food that they sacrifice to their gods.*

ULT **with the inhabitant of … and he invite … from his sacrifice**
UST with any of the people who live in the land … they will invite … to join them … the food that they sacrifice to their gods
(לְיוֹשֵׁב & וְקָרָא & מִזִּבְחֹו)

The word **inhabitant** is a singular noun that refers to any individual inhabitant or group of inhabitants from the peoples mentioned in the previous verse. The pronouns **he** and **his** are agreeing with that singular noun. If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. See how you translated this in 34:12. Alternate translation: [with the inhabitants of … and they invite … from their sacrifice] or [with the inhabitants of … and one of them invites … from his sacrifice]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **Lest you cut a covenant with the inhabitant of the land, and they prostitute after their gods and sacrifice to their gods, and he invite you**
UST {Again,} do not agree to live peacefully with any of the people who live in the land, because when they worship their gods and offer sacrifices to them, they will invite you to join them
(פֶּן־תִּכְרֹת בְּרִית לְיוֹשֵׁב הָאָרֶץ וְזָנוּ ׀ אַחֲרֵי אֱלֹהֵיהֶם וְזָבְחוּ לֵאלֹהֵיהֶם וְקָרָא לְךָ)

Connecting Statement:

Most of this verse is a sort of chain of logically consecutive hypothetical events that Yahweh is warning the Israelites against. Your language may have a specific way this sort of argument must be structured or phrased. One way to see this would be to repeat **lest** before every verb in verse 15–16. Alternate translation: [If you cut a covenant the inhabitant of the land, and if they then prostitute after their gods and sacrifice to their gods, and if he then invites you]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **Lest you cut a covenant with the inhabitant of the land**
UST {Again,} do not agree to live peacefully with any of the people who live in the land, because
(פֶּן־תִּכְרֹת בְּרִית לְיוֹשֵׁב הָאָרֶץ)

Connecting Statement:

This phrase is exactly the same as the second clause of 34:12. It serves as a reminder of the command Yahweh is giving as he begins to expand on the "trap" he mentioned in verse 12. Your language may need to mark this repetition in a particular way. Alternate translation: [Remember: keep yourself lest you cut a covenant with the inhabitant of the land]

ULT **you cut a covenant**
UST {Again,} do … agree to live peacefully
(תִּכְרֹת בְּרִית)

Connecting Statement:

See how you translated this in 34:12. Alternate translation: [you make a covenant]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and they prostitute after their gods … to their gods**
UST when they worship their gods … to them
(וְזָנוּ ׀ אַחֲרֵי אֱלֹהֵיהֶם & לֵאלֹהֵיהֶם)

In this metaphor, Yahweh speaks of people worshiping other gods as if they were prostitutes going to other men. This metaphor is most often used regarding the unfaithfulness of the Israelites. The metaphor is not quite as clear with the other nations because while Yahweh is the only true God, he is not in special covenant with the other nations as their god. However, since the worship is still impurely following false gods, the metaphor is used here. This is an important Biblical metaphor that should be kept in translation if at all possible. Alternate translation: [and they worship their gods] or [because they worship their gods like prostitutes who go to other men]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and they prostitute after their gods … to their gods**
UST when they worship their gods … to them
(וְזָנוּ ׀ אַחֲרֵי אֱלֹהֵיהֶם & לֵאלֹהֵיהֶם)

This phrase may also be seen as a metonymy because sexual sin was a regular part of worshiping false gods. Alternate translation: [and they worship by fornicating with their gods' cult prostitutes]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and he invite you**
UST they will invite you to join them
(וְקָרָא לְךָ)

Here, what the inhabitant will invite the Israelite to is not stated, but can be inferred from context. At the most basic level it is an invitation to eat food the Israelites were forbidden to eat. It is unclear how much more participation in worshiping false gods is implied. If your language requires that you specify what the Israelite is being invited into you may have to add some information. Alternate translation: [and he will invite you to eat from his sacrifice] or [and he will invite you to a feast to honor his gods]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **and you eat from his sacrifice**
UST Then you will {be unfaithful to me and sin by} eating the food that they sacrifice to their gods
(וְאָכַלְתָּ מִזִּבְחוֹ)

The first part of the sin Yahweh is warning against in this and the next verse is to **eat from his sacrifice**. This clause is the result of disobedience regarding the **covenant** and the logical conclusion of the series of hypothetical events Yahweh presents before this. Alternate translation: [as a result, you will eat from his sacrifice] or [then you will eat from his sacrifice]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **and you eat from his sacrifice**
UST Then you will {be unfaithful to me and sin by} eating the food that they sacrifice to their gods
(וְאָכַלְתָּ מִזִּבְחוֹ)

Here, **and you eat from his sacrifice** may represent any and all parts of the worship of the other nations' false gods. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and you feast to honor his gods]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT and you eat from his sacrifice

UST Then you will {be unfaithful to me and sin by} eating the food that they sacrifice to their gods

(וְאָכַלְתָּ מִזִּבְחוֹ)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express the consequence of eating food that is sacrificed to another god explicitly. Alternate translation: [and you will eat some of his sacrifice and become guilty of worshiping his gods] or [and you will prostitute yourself to his god by eating some of his sacrifice]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
covenant	{Again,} do … agree to live peacefully
the land	with any of the people who live in the land
and they prostitute	when they worship
their gods … to their gods	their gods … to them
gods … to their	to them
and sacrifice	and offer sacrifices
from his sacrifice	the food that they sacrifice to their gods

Exodus 34:16

ULT	UST
and take from his daughters for your sons, and his daughters prostitute after their gods and cause your sons to prostitute after their gods.	*Then you will {sin by} having some of their women to be wives for your sons. These women will worship their own gods. They will also make your sons be unfaithful to me by worshiping those gods.*

Note:

The string of hypothetical actions, each with its logical result continues throughout this verse. Continue translating the transitions between clauses as you decided in the previous verses.

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **and his daughters prostitute after their gods**
UST These women will worship their own gods
(וְזָנוּ בְנֹתָיו אַחֲרֵי אֱלֹהֵיהֶן)

In this metaphor, Yahweh speaks of people worshiping other gods as if they were prostitutes going to other men. This metaphor is most often used regarding the unfaithfulness of the Israelites. The metaphor is not quite as clear with the other nations because while Yahweh is the only true God, he is not in special covenant with the other nations as their god. However, since the worship is still impurely following false gods, the metaphor is used here. This is an important Biblical metaphor that should be kept in translation if at all possible. See how you translated it in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [and his daughters worship their gods] or [and his daughters worship their gods like prostitutes who go to other men]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and cause your sons to prostitute after their gods**
UST They will also make your sons be unfaithful to me by worshiping those gods
(וְהִזְנוּ אֶת־בָּנָיךָ אַחֲרֵי אֱלֹהֵיהֶן)

In this metaphor, Yahweh speaks of people worshiping other gods as if they were prostitutes going to other men. The metaphor is clear here since it is referring to Israelite men who should be Yahweh worshipers. This is an important Biblical metaphor that should be kept in translation if at all possible. Alternate translation: [and cause your sons to worship their gods] or [and cause your sons to worship their gods like prostitutes who go to other men]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT and cause your sons to prostitute after their gods
UST They will also make your sons be unfaithful to me by worshiping those gods
(וְהִזְנוּ אֶת־בָּנָיִךְ אַחֲרֵי אֱלֹהֵיהֶן)

This is the climatic consequence of living in peace the nations God is driving out before them: complete apostasy from Yahweh and loss of the next generation to wickedness. Specifically it is the result of intermarriage with the pagans, which God has explicitly forbidden for this very reason. If your language marks the final consequence of a string of actions in a particular way it may be appropriate to use it here. Alternate translation: [and in the end, they will cause even your sons to prostitute after their gods]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and … prostitute	will worship
their gods	their own gods
and cause … to prostitute	They will also make … be unfaithful to me by worshiping
their gods	those gods

Exodus 34:17

ULT	UST
Do not make for yourselves gods of molten metal.	*Do not make your own gods by pouring melted metal into statue molds.*

Note:

The prohibition here is focused on making gods. In your translation make sure that the focus is not on the method, but the god-making.

ULT **molten metal**
UST by pouring melted metal into statue molds
(מַסֵּכָה)

See how you translated **molten metal** in Exodus 32:4.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gods of	gods

Exodus 34:18

ULT	UST
You shall keep the Festival of Unleavened Bread. You shall eat unleavened bread seven days, which I commanded you, at the appointed time, the month of Aviv, for in the month of Aviv you came out from Egypt.	*Celebrate the Feast of Unleavened Bread the way that I commanded you: eat unleavened bread for seven days in the month called Aviv. I set this time because Aviv is the month when you left Egypt.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to most of Exodus 23:15.

ULT **seven**
UST for seven
(שִׁבְעַת)

Alternate translation: [7]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **Aviv … Aviv**
UST Aviv … Aviv
(הָאָבִיב & הָאָבִיב)

This is the name of the first month of the Hebrew calendar. **Aviv** is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. See how you translated **Aviv** in Exodus 13:4. You could convert the Hebrew day and month into an approximate date on the calendar that your culture uses. However, the Jews used a lunar calendar, so if you use a solar calendar, the date will be different every year and the translation will not be entirely accurate. So you may just want to give the number of the day and the name of the month on the Hebrew calendar, and say approximately what time of year that is on your calendar in a footnote.

Support Reference: Hebrew Months

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Festival of	the Feast of
Unleavened Bread	Unleavened Bread
unleavened bread	unleavened bread
days	days
at the appointed time	I set this time
the month of	in the month called
in the month of	is the month when

ULT	UST
from Egypt	Egypt

Exodus 34:19

ULT	UST
All of the openers of the womb are mine {even from} all of your male livestock, the openers of cattle and of sheep.	*All your firstborn sons belong to me. All the firstborn males of your domesticated animals, cows, sheep, and goats, belong to me.*

Note:

This verse is similar to Exodus 13:12.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the womb	your firstborn sons
your … livestock	of your domesticated animals
cattle	cows
and … sheep	sheep, and goats

Exodus 34:20

ULT	UST
And the opener of a donkey you shall ransom with a lamb. And if you do not ransom it, then you shall break his neck. You shall ransom all the firstborn of your sons. And you shall not appear at my face empty-handed.	*In the case of a firstborn donkey, you must buy it back by killing a lamb instead of it. If you do not buy it back, you must kill the donkey by breaking its neck. You must buy back every one of your firstborn sons. Do not come to worship me without bringing an offering.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 13:13.

ULT **with a lamb … then you shall break his neck**
UST by killing a lamb instead of it … you must kill the donkey by breaking its neck
(בְּשֶׂה & וַעֲרַפְתָּו)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express explicitly that either the **lamb** or **donkey** must be killed, as in the UST.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **you do not ransom it**
UST you do not buy it back
(לֹא תִפְדֶּה)

Alternate translation: [you do not ransom the donkey]

ULT **You shall ransom all the firstborn of your sons**
UST You must buy back every one of your firstborn sons
(כָּל בְּכוֹר בָּנֶיךָ תִּפְדֶּה)

Firstborn sons and firstborn donkeys belonged to Yahweh, but Yahweh did not want them sacrificed to Him. Instead, the Israelites were to sacrifice a lamb in their place. This allowed the Israelites to buy the donkeys and sons back from Yahweh.

ULT **And you shall not appear at my face empty-handed**
UST Do not come to worship me without bringing an offering
(וְלֹא־יֵרָאֽוּ פָנַי רֵיקָֽם)

Here understatement is used to emphasize that the Israelites must bring a suitable offering to Yahweh. This portion of the verse is identical to the end of Exodus 23:15. If this double negative would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [come to me without a proper offering] or [always bring an offering to me]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a donkey	donkey
you shall ransom	you must buy it back
with a lamb	by killing a lamb instead of it
you do … ransom it	you do … buy it back
You shall ransom	You must buy back
the firstborn of	of your firstborn

Exodus 34:21

ULT	UST
Six days you shall labor, but on the seventh day you shall rest. In plowing time and in harvest time, you shall rest.	*Work six days {each week}, but on the seventh day you must rest. Even during the times when you are plowing the ground or harvesting your crops, you must rest on the seventh day.*

Note:

This command is similar to that in Exodus 20:9.

ULT **but on the seventh day**
UST but on the seventh day
(וּבַיּוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.

Alternate translation: [but on day seven]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **In plowing time and in harvest time**
UST Even during the times when you are plowing the ground or harvesting your crops
(בֶּחָרִישׁ וּבַקָּצִיר)

Alternate translation: [Even when you are preparing the soil or gathering the crops]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
you shall labor	Work
but on … day	but on … day
In plowing time	Even during the times when you are plowing the ground
and in harvest time	or harvesting your crops

Exodus 34:22

ULT	UST
And you shall keep for yourself the Festival of Weeks {with} the first-fruits of the harvest of the wheat, and the Festival of the Gathering at the turning of the year.	*{In the spring,} when you begin to harvest the first wheat crop, have the Celebration of Weeks, and at the end of the year have the Finished Harvest Celebration.*

Note:

This verse is similar to Exodus 23:16, however the first festival is named **Festival of Weeks** here and "Festival of the Harvest" in 23:16.

ULT and the Festival of the Gathering
UST and … have the Finished Harvest Celebration
(וְחַג הָאָסִיף)

This festival celebrated the final harvesting of all the crops for the year. This festival was also known as the Festival of Shelters or the Festival of Booths. The idea came from the practice of the farmers living in temporary booths, or huts, out in the fields to guard the crop as it ripened. See Deuteronomy 16:13. See how you translated this in Exodus 23:16. Alternate translation: [and the Festival of the Ingathering]

ULT at the turning of the year
UST at the end of the year
(תְּקוּפַת הַשָּׁנָה)

Like "the exiting of the year" in Exodus 23:16, this refers to the end of the year. Here, the year is pictured as something that can turn. Which, thinking of the planet, is highly astronomically accurate.

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{with} the first-fruits of	{In the spring,} when you begin to harvest the first wheat crop
the harvest of	{In the spring,} when you begin to harvest the first wheat crop
the wheat	{In the spring,} when you begin to harvest the first wheat crop
and the Festival of	and … have the Finished Harvest Celebration
the year	at the end of the year

ULT	UST
And … the Festival of Weeks	the Celebration of Weeks

Exodus 34:23

ULT	UST
Three times in a year, all your males shall appear before the face of the Lord Yahweh, God of Israel.	*Three times every year, all the men must gather together to worship me, the Lord Yahweh, the Israelite's God.*

Note:

Except for **God of Israel** and dropping "to," this verse is identical to Exodus 23:17.

ULT **shall appear before the face of the Lord**
UST must gather together to worship me, the Lord
(יֵרָאֶה אֶת־פְּנֵי הָאָדֹן)

Here to **appear before the face of the Lord Yahweh** means to gather to worship. **Before the face** is a metonym for Yahweh's presence, referring to worship. Alternate translation: [must come to worship the Lord]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Lord	me, the Lord
Yahweh	Yahweh
God of	God
Israel	the Israelite's

Exodus 34:24

ULT	UST
For I will drive out nations before your face and expand your borders. And a man will not desire your land when you go up to appear before the face of Yahweh your God three times in a year.	*Surely, I will force the people groups to leave the land you are going to, and I will make your territory larger. No one will want {to try to conquer} your country while the men come to worship Yahweh your God for these three festivals each year.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I will drive out	I will force … to leave
nations	the people groups
your land	your country
Yahweh	Yahweh
your God	your God
in a year	each year

Exodus 34:25

ULT	UST
You shall not slaughter the blood of my sacrifice with leavened bread, and the sacrifice of the Festival of the Passover shall not remain all night to the morning.	*Do not sacrifice bread you made with yeast along with blood from an animal sacrifice. Do not keep until the next morning any part of the animals you sacrificed at the Passover celebration.*

Note:

See the very similar Exodus 23:18.

ULT **the blood of my sacrifice**
UST blood from an animal sacrifice
(דַּם־זִבְחִי)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express the fact that the blood is from an animal explicitly. Alternate translation: [the blood of an animal that you sacrifice to me]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
my sacrifice	from an animal sacrifice
leavened bread	bread you made with yeast
the sacrifice of	the … any part of … animals you sacrificed
the Festival of	the … at … Passover celebration
the Passover	the … at … Passover celebration

Exodus 34:26

ULT	UST
You shall bring the first of the first fruits of your ground to the house of Yahweh your God. You shall not boil a young goat in the milk of its mother.”	*{Each year, when you harvest your crops,} take the best of what you harvest first, go to the place where you worship me, and give it to me, Yahweh your God. {When you kill} a young animal, do not cook it by boiling it in its mother’s milk.”*

Note:

This verse is identical to Exodus 23:19.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
first fruits of	what you harvest first
to the house of	to the place where you worship … and give it to
Yahweh	me … me, Yahweh
your God	your God
a young goat	a young animal … it … it

Exodus 34:27

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Write these words for yourself, for over the mouth of these words I have cut a covenant with you and with Israel."	*Yahweh said to Moses, "Write down the words that I have told you. By giving you these commands, I have made an agreement with you and with the Israelites."*

ULT for over the mouth of these words
UST By giving you these commands
(עַל־פִּי ׀ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה)

Alternate translation: [for in accordance with these words] or [for according to these words]

ULT I have cut a covenant with you
UST I have made an agreement with you
(כָּרַתִּי אִתְּךָ בְּרִית)

See how you translated this in 34:12.

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
a covenant	an agreement
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 34:28

ULT	UST
And he was there with Yahweh 40 days and 40 nights; bread he did not eat and water he did not drink. And he wrote on the tablets the words of the covenant, the Ten Words.	*Moses was there {on the top of the mountain} with Yahweh for 40 days and nights. During that time he did not eat or drink anything. He engraved on the stone slabs the words of the Ten Commandments which were part of Yahweh's solemn agreement.*

ULT **40 days and 40 nights**
UST for 40 days and nights
(אַרְבָּעִים יוֹם וְאַרְבָּעִים לָיְלָה)

Alternate translation: [for 40 days, including the nights]

ULT **And he wrote**
UST He engraved
(וַיִּכְתֹּב)

Here, **he** probably refers to Moses, based on Yahweh's command in the previous verse. However, Exodus 34:1 opens the possibility that Yahweh wrote. It is best to leave it ambiguous, but if you must specify, saying Moses is better. Alternate translation: [Moses wrote]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the Ten Words**
UST the Ten Commandments
(עֲשֶׂרֶת הַדְּבָרִים)

Here, the phrase **Ten Words** refers to the commandments that Yahweh gave by using words. The ULT capitalizes these words to show that they refer to these specific "words." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language as modeled by the UST.

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
days	days
bread	During that time he did not eat
the covenant	which were part of Yahweh's solemn agreement

Exodus 34:29

ULT	UST
And it happened, as Moses {was} descending from Mount Sinai, with the two tablets of the testimony in the hand of Moses as he {was} descending from the mountain, that Moses did not know that the skin of his face shone while speaking with him.	*When Moses came back down from Mount Sinai he was carrying the two stone slabs on which he had written the Ten Commandments. His face was very bright from talking to Yahweh, but he did not know it.*

ULT **And it happened**
UST When … came back down
(וַיְהִי)

This marks a change of scene which you should mark in a natural way in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **And it happened, as Moses {was} descending from Mount Sinai, with the two tablets of the testimony in the hand of Moses as he {was} descending from the mountain**
UST When Moses came back down from Mount Sinai he was carrying the two stone slabs on which he had written the Ten Commandments
(וַיְהִי בְּרֶדֶת מֹשֶׁה מֵהַר סִינַי וּשְׁנֵי לֻחֹת הָעֵדֻת בְּיַד־מֹשֶׁה בְּרִדְתּוֹ מִן־הָהָר)

The statement about Moses' descent from the mountain is repeated almost verbatim, but does not refer to two events. If this would be misunderstood you may need to state it only once in translation as in the UST. Alternate translation: [Then Moses came down from Mount Sinai. As he was coming down from the mountain, he was carrying the two tablets of the testimony in his hands.]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **that Moses did not know that the skin of his face shone while speaking with him**
UST His face was very bright from talking to Yahweh, but he did not know it
(וּמֹשֶׁה לֹא־יָדַע כִּי קָרַן עוֹר פָּנָיו בְּדַבְּרוֹ אִתּוֹ)

In some languages it will make more sense to state that Moses' **face shone** before saying that he **did not know that** as in the UST.

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **shone**
UST was very bright
(קָרַן)

Alternate translation: [became radiant]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Moses	he was carrying
that Moses	but
did … know	he did … know

Exodus 34:30

ULT	UST
And Aaron and all of the sons of Israel saw Moses, and behold, the skin of his face shone! And they were afraid to come near to him.	*When Aaron and the Israelites saw Moses, they were amazed that his face was bright, and were afraid to approach him.*

ULT And they were afraid
UST and were afraid
(וַיִּירְאוּ)

They were afraid because of his bright face. Alternate translation: [because of that, they were afraid]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
Israel	and the Israelites
Moses	Moses
And they were afraid	and were afraid

Exodus 34:31

ULT	UST
And Moses called to them, and Aaron and all of the leaders among the congregation returned to him. And Moses spoke to them.	*But Moses summoned them, and Aaron and the other Israelite leaders came back to him, and he talked with them.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
And … called	But … summoned
Aaron	Aaron
the leaders	and the other Israelite leaders
among the congregation	and the other Israelite leaders
Moses	he

Exodus 34:32

ULT	UST
And after this, all of the sons of Israel approached, and he commanded them all that Yahweh had spoken with him on Mount Sinai.	*Afterwards, all the Israelites came near, and Moses told them all that Yahweh had commanded him on Mount Sinai.*

ULT and he commanded them all that Yahweh had spoken with him

UST and Moses told them all that Yahweh had commanded him

(וַיְצַוֵּם אֵת כָּל־אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יְהוָה אִתּוֹ)

This means that Moses commanded the Israelites to obey everything Yahweh had commanded Moses to command the Israelites to do.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh
on Mount Sinai	on Mount Sinai

Exodus 34:33

ULT	UST
And Moses finished from speaking with them, and he put a veil over his face.	*When Moses finished talking to the people, he covered his face with a thin cloth.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
a veil	a thin cloth

Exodus 34:34

ULT	UST
And whenever Moses went before the face of Yahweh to speak with him, he would remove the veil until he came out. And he would come out, and he would speak to the sons of Israel what he had been commanded.	*Whenever Moses entered the tent of meeting to talk with Yahweh, he would remove the cloth. When he came back out, he would always tell the Israelite people everything that Yahweh had commanded him to tell them.*

Note:

This and the next verse give a general statement about Moses's practice for an unstated amount of time (it was probably from this point until his death as he continued to talk to Yahweh). You should mark this with a form in your language that is used for on-going action like **would** or the UST's "Whenever."

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **he had been commanded**
UST had commanded him
(יְצֻוָּה)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Yahweh had commanded him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Whenever Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	the Israelite people

Exodus 34:35

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel would see the face of Moses, that the skin of the face of Moses shone. And Moses would put the veil back over his face until he went in to speak with him.	*The Israelites would see that Moses' face was still bright. Then he would put the cloth on his face again until the next time that he went to talk with Yahweh.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	The Israelites
Moses	Moses
Moses	Moses
Moses	he

Exodus 35

Exodus 35 General Notes

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–3: reiteration of Sabbath command
- v. 4–9: list of materials for donation (See: Exodus 25:1–7)
- v. 10–19: things they need to make for the Dwelling complex
- v. 20–29: the people bring all the things listed
- v. 30–36:1: appointing of lead craftsmen to build these things

Translation Issues in This Chapter

- In the last chapter some repetition of Yahweh's instructions began, mostly around the covenant commands. Starting in this chapter and even more so in chapter 36, the commands regarding the construction of the Dwelling complex are repeated, often word for word, from chapters 25–31. In many verses the only difference will be a change of verb form from instruction to completion. As much as possible, these parallels will be pointed out for the translators with links to the previous verses. Translators should refer back to the previously translated verses for consistency and because notes in this section may not cover everything that was covered in the initial instruction section.
- Many items, materials, and processes for building the Dwelling may be unknown, but should have already been addressed in chapters 25–31.

Exodus 35:1

ULT	UST
And Moses assembled all the congregation of the sons of Israel and said to them, "These are the things that Yahweh has commanded you to do.	*Moses gathered all the Israelites together and said to them, "This is what Yahweh has commanded you to do.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
And … assembled	together
the congregation of	gathered
Israel	the Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 35:2

ULT	UST
Six days shall work be done, but on the seventh day {there} shall be for you a holy Sabbath of rest to Yahweh. Every doer of work on it shall be put to death.	*{Each week} you may work for six days, but on the seventh day, you must rest. It is a sacred day for you, dedicated to Yahweh. You must execute anyone who does any work on the seventh day.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 31:15.

ULT **Six**
UST Each week … for six
(שֵׁ֣שֶׁת)

Alternate translation: [6]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **but on the seventh day**
UST but on the seventh day
(וּבַיּ֣וֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִ֔י)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here.
Alternate translation: [but on day 7]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **Six days shall work be done**
UST {Each week} you may work for six days
(שֵׁ֣שֶׁת יָמִ֔ים תֵּעָשֶׂ֖ה מְלָאכָ֑ה)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Six days you shall work]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Every doer of work on it shall be put to death**
UST You must execute anyone who does any work on the seventh day
(כָּל־הָעֹשֶׂ֥ה בָ֛הּ מְלָאכָ֖ה יוּמָֽת)

If your language would not use passive here, you could state this in an active form.
Alternate translation: [You must execute anyone who works on that day]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
but on … day	but on … day
a holy	sacred day
Sabbath of	you must rest
to Yahweh	dedicated to Yahweh

Exodus 35:3

ULT	UST
You shall not kindle a fire in any of your dwellings on the days of the Sabbath.”	*Do not light a fire in your homes on the rest days.”*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
on the days of	on … days
the Sabbath	the rest

Exodus 35:4

ULT	UST
And Moses said to all of the congregation of the sons of Israel, saying, "This {is} the thing that Yahweh commanded, saying,	*Moses also said to all the gathered Israelites, "This is what Yahweh has commanded:*

Note: (35:4-9)

In verses 4–9, Moses tells the Israelites to collect the things Yahweh commanded him to collect in Exodus 25:2–7. You should check your translation for consistency between these passages.

ULT **And Moses said to all of the congregation of the sons of Israel, saying, "This {is} the thing that Yahweh commanded, saying**
UST Moses also said to all the gathered Israelites, "This is what Yahweh has commanded
(וַיֹּאמֶר מֹשֶׁה אֶל־כָּל־עֲדַת בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל לֵאמֹר זֶה הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר־צִוָּה יְהוָה לֵאמֹר)

Verses 5–19 are a second-level direct quotation. If it would be better to reduce the quotation level in your language, you may want to make this introductory comment (everything after the first **saying**) an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [And Moses told all of the congregation of the sons of Israel the things that Yahweh commanded, saying,]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
the congregation of	the gathered
Israel	Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 35:5

ULT	UST
‘Take from with you a contribution for Yahweh, every{one} willing of his heart. Let him bring the contribution of Yahweh: gold and silver and bronze	*‘Everyone who wants to should bring Yahweh a gift. They should bring these sorts of gifts to Yahweh: gold, silver, or bronze,*

Note:

This verse is similar to Exodus 25:2–3.

ULT **Take from with you a contribution for Yahweh**
UST should bring Yahweh a gift
(קְחוּ מֵאִתְּכֶם תְּרוּמָה לַיהוָה)

Alternate translation: [Take up a collection for Yahweh from what you have]

ULT **every{one}**
UST Everyone
(כֹּל)

Here, “from” is omitted but suggested by the sentence grammar. Also, **every** means “every person.” If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: [from every person]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **every{one} willing of his heart**
UST Everyone who wants to
(כֹּל נְדִיב לִבּוֹ)

This is an idiom that indicates a person’s desire to give an offering. Many languages will have a similar idiom, though the body part often varies. Alternate translation: [from everyone who wants to give one]

Support Reference: Idiom

Note:

After this verse, a list begins. You may need to mark the end of this verse with punctuation or another way that your language marks the start of a list.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for Yahweh	Yahweh
the contribution of	these sorts of gifts
Yahweh	to Yahweh
gold	gold
and silver	silver
and bronze	or bronze

Exodus 35:6

ULT	UST
and blue and purple and worm of scarlet and fine linen and goats' hair	*{cloth dyed} blue, {cloth dyed} purple, {cloth dyed} bright red, fine linen, {cloth made from} goats' hair,*

Note:

This verse is identical to Exodus 25:4.

ULT and blue and purple and worm of scarlet
UST {cloth dyed} blue, {cloth dyed} purple, {cloth dyed} bright red
(וּתְכֵלֶת וְאַרְגָּמָן וְתוֹלַעַת שָׁנִי)

This could mean: (1) "material that is dyed blue, purple, and scarlet," probably wool yarn, or (2) "blue, purple and scarlet dye" to dye the linen. The original audience would have known what was meant. This material seems to have been used for embroidery later, so "yarn" or "thread" may be the best understanding.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT and worm of scarlet
UST {cloth dyed} bright red
(וְתוֹלַעַת שָׁנִי)

A bright red color for dying cloth was extracted from these worms. Alternate translation: [and bright red]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and purple	{cloth dyed} purple

Exodus 35:7

ULT	UST
and reddened hides of rams and hides of sea-cows and wood of acacias	*red ram skins, fine leather hides, hard wood from acacia trees,*

Note:

This verse is identical to Exodus 25:5.

ULT reddened
UST red
(מְאָדָּמִים)

When animal skins are tanned (processed into usable leather), they become reddish. It is not clear if these hides are dyed red or simply reddened in the tanning process. Alternate translation: [tanned]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT sea-cows
UST fine leather hides
(תְּחָשִׁים)

The meaning of this word is not known; it may refer to some water mammal that has skin that can be made into a high-quality leather. See sea cows on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sirenia

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT acacias
UST hard wood from acacia trees
(שִׁטִּים)

A small tree with spreading foliage and durable wood. See on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shittah_tree

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
rams	ram

Exodus 35:8

ULT	UST
and oil for the light and spices for the oil of anointing and for the incense of fragrance	*{olive} oil to burn in the lamps, spices to put in the {olive} oil for anointing {the priests}, and spices to put in the sweet-smelling incense,*

Note:

Except for several uses of the word **and**, this verse is identical to Exodus 25:6.

ULT **and spices**
UST spices
(וּבְשָׂמִים)

Here, **spices** are made from parts of plants that people dry and then grind into a powder to put in oil or food, giving it a particular smell or flavor.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and oil	{olive} oil
anointing	to put in the {olive} oil for anointing {the priests}
and for the incense of	and spices to put in the sweet-smelling incense

Exodus 35:9

ULT	UST
and stones of onyx and precious stones for settings for the ephod and for the breastpiece.'	*onyx stones and other expensive stones to fasten to the priest's sacred apron and to put on the chest pouch that is on the apron.*

Note:

Except for an initial **and**, this verse is identical to Exodus 25:7.

ULT **and stones of onyx**
UST onyx stones and
(וְאַבְנֵי־שֹׁהַם)

An **onyx stone** is a valuable stone that has layers of white and black, red, or brown. If this stone is unknown to your people, consider translating it by using a word for a familiar stone with a similar pattern, if possible.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and precious stones for**
UST other expensive stones
(וְאַבְנֵי)

Alternate translation: [and valuable gems for] or [and treasured gems for]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for the ephod	apron
and for the breastpiece	and to put on the chest pouch that is on the apron

Exodus 35:10

ULT	UST
And all of the wise of heart among you shall come and make all that Yahweh has commanded—	*All the skilled workmen among you should come and make all the things that Yahweh has commanded {you to make}:*

ULT And all of the wise of heart
UST All the skilled workmen
(וְכָל־חֲכַם־לֵב)

Here, **heart** and **spirit** are both referring to things innately possessed by a person, that is, traits of a person. The phrase essentially means “a talented craftsman.” If this is unclear to your readers you may consider making it more explicit. See how you translated this in Exodus 28:3. Alternate translation: [And every man with a skill]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT has commanded
UST has commanded {you to make}
(צִוָּה)

Here, some the words that a sentence would need to be complete in some languages are left out. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words from the context, as modeled in the UST.

Support Reference: Ellipsis

Note:

After this verse, a list begins. You may need to mark the end of this verse with punctuation or another way that your language marks the start of a list.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the wise of	the skilled workmen
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 35:11

ULT	UST
the Dwelling, its tent and its covering, its clasps and its frames, its bars, its pillars and its bases,	*the sacred tent with the inner tent; its covering, fasteners, frames, crossbars, posts, and bases;*

ULT its covering
UST its covering
(מְכַסֵּהוּ)

See how you translated this in Exodus 26:14.

ULT its clasps
UST fasteners
(אֶת־קְרָסָיו)

The **clasps** fit into the loops to hold the curtains together. See how you translated these in Exodus 26:6.

ULT its frames
UST frames
(קְרָשָׁיו)

See how you translated this in Exodus 26:15.

ULT its bars
UST crossbars
(אֶת־בְּרִיחוֹ)

See how you translated this in Exodus 26:26.

ULT its pillars
UST posts
(אֶת־עַמֻּדָיו)

See how you translated this in 26:32.

> **ULT** **its bases**
> **UST** bases
> (אֲדָנָיו)

These are heavy objects that rest on the ground and keep the object attached to them from moving. See how you translated this in Exodus 26:19.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
its tent	with the inner tent
its pillars	posts

Exodus 35:12

ULT	UST
the box and its poles, the atonement lid and the curtain of covering,	*the sacred chest with its poles and its lid, the curtain that will separate the Holy Place from the Very Holy Place,*

Note:

See how you translated these terms in 25:10–17 and 26:36.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the box	the sacred chest
the atonement lid	and its lid
the curtain of	the curtain that will separate the Holy Place from the Very Holy Place

Exodus 35:13

ULT	UST
the table and its poles and all of its equipment and the bread of the faces	*the table with the poles for carrying it and all its utensils, the sacred bread to present before God,*

ULT the bread of the faces
UST sacred bread to present before God
(לֶחֶם הַפָּנִים)

Here, **face** represents the presence of Yahweh. This bread represented the presence of God.
Alternate translation: [the bread of the Presence] See how you translated this in Exodus 25:30.

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the bread of	sacred bread

Exodus 35:14

ULT	UST
and the lampstand of the light and its utensils and its lamps and the oil of the light	*the lampstand for making light with its implements and lamps, the oil {to burn} for light,*

Note:

See 25:31–37 for these items.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the lampstand of	the lampstand
its lamps	lamps
the oil of	the oil {to burn} for

Exodus 35:15

ULT	UST
and the altar of incense and its poles and the oil of anointing and the incense of fragrance and the curtain of the entrance for the entrance of the Dwelling,	*the altar for {burning} incense and the poles {for carrying the altar}, the oil for anointing and the sweet-smelling incense, the curtain for the entrance of the sacred tent,*

ULT the altar of incense … the oil of anointing … the incense of fragrance

UST the altar for {burning} incense … the oil for anointing … the sweet-smelling incense
(מִזְבַּח הַקְּטֹרֶת & שֶׁמֶן הַמִּשְׁחָה & קְטֹרֶת הַסַּמִּים)

For the **altar**, see 30:1. For the **oil**, see 30:25. For the **incense**, see 30:7.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar of incense	the altar for {burning} incense
the oil of	the oil for
the incense of	incense
the curtain of	the curtain
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 35:16

ULT	UST
the altar of the burnt offering and the grate of bronze that {is} for it, its poles and all of its utensils, the basin and its base,	*the altar for burning sacrifices and its bronze grating, the poles {for carrying the altar}, and all its implements, the washbasin and its base,*

Note:

For the **grate**, see Exodus 27:4. Most of the rest of the verse is almost identical to 30:28.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
altar of	the altar
the burnt offering	for burning sacrifices
bronze	bronze

Exodus 35:17

ULT	UST
the curtains of the courtyard, its pillars and bases and the curtain of the gate of the courtyard,	*the curtains to surround the courtyard and the posts and bases {for the posts to support the curtains}; the curtain for the entrance to the courtyard;*

ULT **the curtains of … the curtain of**
UST the curtains to surround … the curtain for the
(אֶת קַלְעֵי & מָסַךְ)

These were large curtains made of cloth. See how you translated this in Exodus 26:36.

ULT **its pillars**
UST and the posts
(אֶת־עַמֻּדָיו)

These were strong pieces of wood set upright and used as supports. See how you translated these in Exodus 27:10.

ULT **bases**
UST bases {for the posts to support the curtains}
(אַדְנֶיהָ)

These were blocks that had a slot in them to keep the board in place. See how you translated this in Exodus 26:19.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the curtains of	the curtains to surround
its pillars	and the posts
the curtain of	the curtain for the
the gate of	entrance to

Exodus 35:18

ULT	UST
the tent pegs of the Dwelling and the pegs of the courtyard and their ropes,	*the pegs and ropes for the sacred tent and its courtyard,*

ULT the tent pegs of … the pegs of
UST the pegs
(אֶת־יִתְדֹת & יִתְדֹת)

These were sharp pieces of wood or metal used to secure the corners of a tent to the ground.

See how you translated this in Exodus 27:19.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	for the sacred tent

Exodus 35:19

ULT	UST
finely-woven clothing for serving in the Holy Place, the clothing of holiness for Aaron the priest and the clothing of his sons, to {be} priests.”	*the beautiful, sacred vestments for Aaron and his sons to wear when they work as priests in the Holy Place.’”*

ULT **finely-woven clothing**
UST the beautiful … vestments
(אֶת־בִּגְדֵי הַשָּׂרָד)

Except for **for serving in the Holy Place**, this verse is identical to 31:10.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in the Holy Place	in the Holy Place
holiness	sacred
for Aaron	for Aaron
the priest	to wear when … as priests
to {be} priests	to wear when … as priests

Exodus 35:20

ULT	UST
And all of the congregation of the sons of Israel went away from before the face of Moses.	*Then all the Israelites left from where they had gathered {to listen} to Moses.*

ULT from before the face of Moses
UST from where they had gathered {to listen} to Moses
(מִלִּפְנֵי מֹשֶׁה)

Alternate translation: [from Moses]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelites
Moses	Moses

Exodus 35:21

ULT	UST
And every man whose heart lifted him came. And all whose spirit impelled him brought the contribution of Yahweh for the work of the tent of meeting and for all of its service and for the clothing of holiness.	*Everyone who wished to bring a gift to Yahweh did so. They brought things to make the sacred tent, all the other items for rituals, and the sacred vestments for the priests.*

ULT **And every man whose heart lifted him came. And all whose spirit impelled him brought**

UST Everyone who wished to bring … did so. They brought

(וַיָּבֹאוּ כָּל־אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר־נָשָׂאוֹ לִבּוֹ וְכֹל אֲשֶׁר נָדְבָה רוּחוֹ אֹתוֹ הֵבִיאוּ)

These two phrases parallel each other and mean the same thing. It would be good to keep this poetic repetition in your translation unless it would be misunderstood. If repetition here would not highlight the joyful giving spirit of the Israelites in your language, you may need to combine the phrases. Alternate translation: [Everyone who was motivated, body and soul, came and gave]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **And every man whose heart lifted him came. And all whose spirit impelled him brought**

UST Everyone who wished to bring … did so. They brought

(וַיָּבֹאוּ כָּל־אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר־נָשָׂאוֹ לִבּוֹ וְכֹל אֲשֶׁר נָדְבָה רוּחוֹ אֹתוֹ הֵבִיאוּ)

Here, **heart** and **spirit** both refer to a person's will, their desire to do something. Many languages will have similar expressions, perhaps using different body and spirit words or concepts which you can use. If your language would not express a person's will in this way, you could translate the meaning. Alternate translation: [And every man whose will lifted him came, and all who felt impelled brought]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **whose heart lifted him**

UST who wished to

(אֲשֶׁר־נָשָׂאוֹ לִבּוֹ)

Here, **heart lifted** is a metaphor for being willing or excited. Many languages will have similar expressions, perhaps using a different body part or a different action. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who was excited]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **every man whose heart lifted him … And all whose spirit impelled him**
UST Everyone who wished to
(כָּל־אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר־נְשָׂאוֹ לִבּוֹ וְכֹל אֲשֶׁר נָדְבָה רוּחוֹ אֹתוֹ)

Here, **man, whose**, and **him** all refer to men and women in a general way. This is made explicit in the next verse. If it would be helpful in your language, you may use terms that include men and women.

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **and for the clothing of holiness**
UST and the sacred vestments for the priests
(וּלְבִגְדֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **holiness** in another way. See how you translated this in 28:2. Alternate translation: [and for the holy clothing]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
spirit	wished to
Yahweh	to Yahweh
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent
its service	the other items for rituals
holiness	and the sacred vestments for the priests

Exodus 35:22

ULT	UST
And men along with women came, all impelled of heart. They brought brooches and earrings and rings and ornaments, all of the things of gold. And every man that raised {did} as a raised offering of gold to Yahweh.	*All the men and women who wished to brought necklaces, earrings, rings, gold ornaments—all sorts of things made from gold. Then they lifted them up high to dedicate them to Yahweh.*

ULT **all impelled of heart**
UST All … who wished to
(כָּל ו נְדֵיב לֵּב)

Here, **heart** refers to a person's will, their desire to do something. It is spoken of as causing a person to bring these gifts to Yahweh. This is a shortening and combining of the figure used in the previous verse: **heart** and **impelled** are brought together. See how you translated these ideas in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [anyone whose will impelled him]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **all impelled of**
UST All … who wished to
(כָּל ו נְדֵיב)

Alternate translation: [who were impelled of]

ULT **brooches and earrings and rings and ornaments, all of the things of gold**
UST necklaces, earrings, rings, gold ornaments—all sorts of things made from gold
(חָ֚ח וָנֶ֔זֶם וְטַבַּעַת֙ וְכוּמָ֔ז כָּל־כְּלֵ֖י זָהָ֑ב)

These are different kinds of jewelry. The exact identity of each object is not known. The phrase **all of the things of gold** could either modify the whole list, meaning "all these items were made of gold," or could mean "many other gold things." If taken as a summary statement, in some languages it may be clearer to move it to the front of the list. Alternate translation: [all kinds of gold jewelry including necklaces, nose rings, signet rings, and gold ornaments]

Support Reference: Litany

ULT **And every man**
UST Then they
(וְכָל־אִ֣ישׁ)

Although the term **men** is used, the word here is used in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: [And every person]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
as a raised offering of	lifted … up high to dedicate them to
gold	them
to Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 35:23

ULT	UST
And every man with whom was found blue and purple and worm of scarlet and fine linen and goats' hair and reddened ram skins and hides of sea-cows brought {them}.	*Many people who had blue, purple, or bright red {cloth}, or fine linen, or {cloth made from} goats' hair, or red rams' skins, or fine leather hides brought some of these things.*

ULT **And every man with whom was found … brought {them}**
UST Many people who had … brought some of these things
(וְכָל־אִ֗ישׁ אֲשֶׁר־נִמְצָא אִתּוֹ֙ & הֵבִיאוּ)

See how you translated many of these words in Exodus 25:4–5.

ULT **And every man with whom was found**
UST Many people who had
(וְכָל־אִ֗ישׁ אֲשֶׁר־נִמְצָא אִתּוֹ֙)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Also, the meaning of this phrase is simple possession. Alternate translation: [And every man who owned] or [And every man having]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And every man**
UST Many people
(וְכָל־אִ֗ישׁ)

Here **man** includes both men and women. Alternate translation: [And every person]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **And every man**
UST Many people
(וְכָל־אִ֗ישׁ)

The phrase **every man** is used here without the restriction, "who was willing," from previous verses. The exaggeration is used to emphasize what a large portion of the Israelites gave willingly. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your language that expresses a large number or a majority. Alternate translation: [And very many people]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and purple	purple
ram	rams

Exodus 35:24

ULT	UST
All of the presenters {of} a contribution of silver and of bronze brought the contribution of Yahweh, and all with whom wood of acacias was found for all the work of the service brought {it}.	*Everyone who {desired to} offer silver or bronze gifts brought them to Yahweh. Anyone owning wood from acacia trees brought it for any part of the building work.*

ULT **and all with whom … was found**
UST Anyone owning
(וְכֹ֗ל אֲשֶׁר֙ נִמְצָ֣א אִתּ֔וֹ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Also, the meaning of this phrase is simple possession. Alternate translation: [and everyone who owned] or [and everyone having]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **All of the presenters {of}**
UST Everyone who {desired to} offer
(כָּל־מֵרִ֤ים)

Here, **all** is limited by **presenters**, meaning only everyone who brought contributions. Avoid implying that every single Israelite did this (though very many did). Alternate translation: [All who decided to offer]

ULT **and all**
UST Anyone
(וְכֹ֗ל)

The phrase **all** is used here without the restriction, “who were willing,” from previous verses. The exaggeration is used to emphasize what a large portion of the Israelites gave willingly. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your language that expresses a large number or a majority. Alternate translation: [and very many people]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **for all the work of the service**
UST for any part of the building work
(לְכָל־מְלֶאכֶת הָעֲבֹדָה)

Here, **service** refers to worshiping Yahweh, and the phrase **work of the service** refers to building the Dwelling as a place for worshiping Yahweh. Alternate translation: [for any of the building of a place for worship]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	silver or
and … bronze	bronze
Yahweh	to Yahweh

Exodus 35:25

ULT	UST
And every woman skilled of heart spun with her hands, and they brought the spun items, the blue and the purple the worm of scarlet and the fine linen.	*All the women who were skilled {at making cloth} brought blue, purple, or red woolen yarn and fine linen thread that they had made by hand-spinning.*

> ULT **skilled of heart**
> UST who were skilled {at making cloth}
> (חַכְמַת־לֵֽב)

Here, **heart** is referring to something innately possessed by a person, that is, a trait of a person. The phrase essentially means “a talented craftswoman.” If this is unclear to your readers you may consider making it more explicit. See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 28:3. Alternate translation: [who possessed the skill]

Support Reference: Metonymy

> ULT **the blue and the purple the worm of scarlet**
> UST blue, purple, or red woolen yarn
> (אֶת־הַתְּכֵלֶת וְאֶת־הָאַרְגָּמָן אֶת־תּוֹלַעַת הַשָּׁנִי)

This could mean: (1) “material that is dyed blue, purple, and scarlet,” probably wool yarn, or (2) “blue, purple and scarlet dye” to dye the linen. See how you translated a similar phrase in Exodus 25:4.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
skilled of	who were skilled {at making cloth}
the purple	purple

Exodus 35:26

ULT	UST
All the women with skill whose hearts lifted them spun goats' hair.	*All the skilled women who wanted to made {thread} from goats' hair by spinning.*

> **ULT whose hearts lifted them**
> UST who wanted to
> (אֲשֶׁר נָשָׂא לִבָּן אֹתָנָה)

Here, **heart** refers to a persons' will, their desire to do something. It is spoken of as causing a person to use her skills for Yahweh. This is the same as the first phrase in 35:21. Alternate translation: [whose wills impelled them]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

Exodus 35:27

ULT	UST
And the leaders brought the onyx stones and precious stones of setting for the ephod and for the breastpiece	*The leaders brought onyx stones and other fine stones for fastening to {Aaron's} sacred apron and sacred pouch,*

ULT And the leaders brought … and for the breastpiece

UST The leaders brought … and sacred pouch

(וְהַנְּשִׂאִם הֵבִיאוּ & וְלַחֹשֶׁן)

Beginning with **onyx**, this verse is almost identical to Exodus 25:7.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for the ephod	to … sacred apron
and for the breastpiece	and sacred pouch

Exodus 35:28

ULT	UST
and spice and the oil for light and for the oil of anointing and for the incense of fragrance.	*and spices and oil to use for the lamps, anointing oil, and sweet-smelling incense.*

ULT spice and the oil for light and for the oil of anointing and for the incense of fragrance

UST spices and oil to use for the lamps, anointing oil, and sweet-smelling incense
(הַבֹּשֶׂם וְאֶת־הַשָּׁמֶן לְמָאוֹר וּלְשֶׁמֶן הַמִּשְׁחָה וְלִקְטֹרֶת הַסַּמִּים)

Exodus 25:6 has almost identical words, arranged slightly differently.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the oil	oil
and for … oil of	oil
the … anointing	anointing
and for … incense of	and … incense

Exodus 35:29

ULT	UST
The sons of Israel brought a freewill offering to Yahweh, every man and woman whose heart impelled them to bring {something} for all of the work which Yahweh had commanded {them} to do by the hand of Moses.	*All the Israelite men and women who wanted to bring these things freely offered them to Yahweh for doing the work that he had commanded Moses tell them to do.*

Note:

The order of clauses in the ULT is reversed from the original because of required English sentence structure. In the original, **The sons of Israel brought a freewill offering to Yahweh** is at the end of the verse. Other languages may be able to retain the original order.

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **whose heart impelled them**
UST who wanted
(אֲשֶׁר נָדַב לִבָּם אֹתָם)

Here, **heart** refers to a persons' will, their desire to do something. It is spoken of as causing a person to bring these gifts to Yahweh. See how you translated this in 25:2 and 35:22. Alternate translation: [whose will impelled them]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **which Yahweh had commanded {them} to do by the hand of Moses**
UST that he had commanded Moses tell them to do
(אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה יְהוָה לַעֲשׂוֹת בְּיַד־מֹשֶׁה)

Here, **by the hand of Moses** refers to Moses as a messenger for Yahweh's commands, not to Moses being the one who would build all these things. If this imagery of carrying a message would be misunderstood in your language, you may use another figure or translate the meaning. Alternate translation: [which Yahweh had told Moses to tell them to do]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	the Israelite
a freewill offering	freely offered them
to Yahweh	to Yahweh
Yahweh	he
Moses	Moses

Exodus 35:30

ULT	UST
And Moses said to the sons of Israel, "See, Yahweh has called by name on Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur, from the tribe of Judah.	*Moses said to the Israelites, "Listen carefully. Yahweh has chosen a man named Bezalel, son of Uri and grandson of Hur, from the tribe descended from Judah.*

ULT on Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur, from the tribe of Judah
UST Bezalel, son of Uri and grandson of Hur, from the tribe descended from Judah
(בְּצַלְאֵ֗ל בֶּן־אוּרִי֙ בֶּן־חֻ֔ר לְמַטֵּ֖ה יְהוּדָֽה)

What Moses says in this verse is a quote from Exodus 31:2

ULT on Bezalel … of Uri … Hur
UST Bezalel … Uri … Hur
(בְּצַלְאֵ֗ל & אוּרִי֙ & חֻ֔ר)

These are men's names. See 31:2.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Israel	the Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh
has called	has chosen
from the tribe of	from the tribe descended from
Judah	Judah

Exodus 35:31

ULT	UST
And he has filled him with the Spirit of God, with skill and with understanding and with knowledge and with all kinds of craftsmanship	*Yahweh has caused his Spirit to teach him to know how to make all kinds of fine goods wisely and intelligently.*

ULT **And he has filled him … craftsmanship**
UST Yahweh has caused … to teach him … fine goods
(וַיְמַלֵּא אֹתוֹ & מְלָאכָה)

This verse is a quote from Exodus 31:3

ULT **And he has filled him with the Spirit of God**
UST Yahweh has caused his Spirit to teach him
(וַיְמַלֵּא אֹתוֹ רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים)

Yahweh speaks of giving Bezalel his spirit as if Bezalel were a container and God's spirit were a liquid. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he has given his spirit to Bezalel]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **with skill**
UST wisely
(בְּחָכְמָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **skill** in another way. Alternate translation: [so he can work skillfully]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and with understanding**
UST and intelligently
(בִּתְבוּנָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **understanding** in another way. Alternate translation: [and so he can understand his work]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and with knowledge**
UST to know how to make
(וּבְדַעַת)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **knowledge** in another way. Alternate translation: [and so he knows his work well]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and with all kinds of craftsmanship**
UST all kinds of fine goods
(וּבְכָל־מְלָאכָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for **craftsmanship**, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun in another way. Alternate translation: [and for making all kinds of crafts] or [and so that he can make all kinds of things]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
with the Spirit of	his Spirit
God	his Spirit
and with understanding	and intelligently
and with knowledge	to know how to make

Exodus 35:32

ULT	UST
and to design designs, to work in gold and in silver and in bronze	*He can engrave skillful designs in gold, silver, and bronze.*

ULT and to design designs … and in bronze

UST He can engrave skillful designs … and bronze

(וְלַחְשֹׁב מַחֲשָׁבֹת & וּבַנְּחֹשֶׁת)

This verse is identical to Exodus 31:4, except for the first **and**.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in gold	in gold
and in silver	silver
and in bronze	and bronze

Exodus 35:33

ULT	UST
and in carving of precious stones for setting and in carving of wood, to do all kinds of craftsmanship of invention.	*He can cut jewels and enclose them in tiny gold settings. He can carve things from wood and do other inventive, skilled work.*

ULT and in carving of precious stones for setting … craftsmanship of

UST He can cut jewels and enclose them in tiny gold settings … skilled work

(וּבַחֲרֹ֣שֶׁת אֶ֔בֶן לְמַלֹּאת & מְלֶאכֶת)

This verse is identical to Exodus 31:5 except for the final **of invention**.

Exodus 35:34

ULT	UST
And he has put {it} in his heart to teach, he and Oholiab the son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan.	*Yahweh has also made Bezalel and Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan, able to teach {others what they do}.*

ULT And he has put {it} in his heart to teach
UST Yahweh has also made … able to teach {others what they do}
(וּלְהוֹרֹת נָתַן בְּלִבּוֹ)

Here, **put in his heart** is an idiom referring to ability and desire. These are spoken of as if they are something that could be placed in a heart. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [And he gave to them the ability and desire to teach]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT and Oholiab … Ahisamak
UST and Oholiab … Ahisamak
(וְאָהֳלִיאָב & אֲחִיסָמָךְ)

These are names of men. See how you translated these names in Exodus 31:6.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from the tribe of Dan	from the tribe of Dan

Exodus 35:35

ULT	UST
He has filled them {with} skill of heart to do all of the work of a craftsman and of a skillful workman and of an embroiderer in the blue and in the purple and in the worm of scarlet and in the fine linen and of a weaver. {They are} doers of all work and designers of design.	*He has enabled them to skillfully do all kinds of crafts-work—those who create artistic things, those who embroider designs using blue, purple, or red woolen yarn with linen cloth, and those who make the cloth. They are able to plan and do many kinds of artistic work.*

Note:

This verse summarizes and pulls together many previously mentioned things. See 28:3 (**skill of heart**), 25:4 (for materials), 26:36 (**embroiderer**), 28:32 (**weaver**), 26:31 (**skillful workman**), 31:3 (**craftsman**), 28:6 (**designer of designs**).

ULT **He has filled them {with} skill of heart**
UST He has enabled them … skillfully
(מִלֵּא אֹתָם חָכְמַת־לֵב)

Here, **skill** to create beautiful objects is spoken of as if it were something that could fill up a person. If your readers would not understand what this image means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [He has made them very skillful]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **{with} skill of heart**
UST skillfully
(חָכְמַת־לֵב)

Here, **of heart** refers to possessing something, in this case ability or skill. Some languages will use a different body part for this image. Alternate translation: [with ability]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and in the purple	purple

Exodus 36

Exodus 36 General Notes

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1: finish Moses' instruction
- v. 2–7: craftsmen collect materials from Moses, inform him the people should stop bringing things because they have too much already -v. 8–38: construction of the Dwelling, verse-by-verse quotations marked below
    - v. 8–18: quote Exodus 26:1–11
    - v. 19–34: quote Exodus 26:14–29
    - v. 35–36: quote 26:31–32
    - v. 37–38: quote 26:36–37

Translation Issues in This Chapter

- The first verse of this chapter goes with the last chapter.
- Most of this chapter exactly quotes chapter 26 with a shift from instruction to past narrative form on the verbs and a few other minor changes; some are Hebrew word order that will be invisible here. Be sure to consult your previous work for consistency.
- Throughout verses 8–38 the word **he** is used. This is a generic noun referring to any of the team of skilled craftsmen. You could also change it to "they" if that would be understood better in your language. (See: Generic Noun Phrases; and First, Second or Third Person)

Exodus 36:1

ULT	UST
And Bezalel and Oholiab and every man skilled of heart to whom Yahweh has given skill and understanding to know {how} to do all of the work of the service of the Holy Place shall do according to all that Yahweh has commanded."	*Bezalel and Oholiab will do this work along with all the other skillful people. Yahweh has made them skillful and able to know how to follow his instructions to build the sacred place."*

Note:

This verse is the end of a quotation from Moses that begin in 35:30. It should be connected as visually as possible to the previous verses, as the chapter break here is poorly placed.

ULT **Bezalel and Oholiab**
UST Bezalel and Oholiab
(בְּצַלְאֵל וְאָהֳלִיאָב)

Bezalel and Oholiab are the names of men. See how you translated this in Exodus 31:2 and 31:6 as well as in the end of chapter 35.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **man**
UST the other … people
(אִישׁ)

We know from 35:25 that women were included in the skilled workers, so **man** means every person. Alternate translation: [person]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **skilled of heart**
UST skillful
(חֲכַם־לֵב)

Here, **of heart** refers to innately possessing something, in this case ability or skill. Some languages will use a different body part for this image. Alternate translation: [with innate ability]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **skill**
UST skillful
(חָכְמָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **skill** in another way. See 35:31. Alternate translation: [the ability to work skillfully]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and understanding**
UST and able
(וּתְבוּנָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the idea behind the abstract noun **understanding** in another way. See 35:31. Alternate translation: [and so he can understand his work]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the work of the service of the Holy Place**
UST this work … the sacred place
(מְלֶאכֶת עֲבֹדַת הַקֹּדֶשׁ)

Here, **service** refers to worshiping Yahweh, and the phrase **work of the service** refers to building the Dwelling (**Holy Place**) where the Israelites would worship Yahweh. See 35:24. Alternate translation: [the building of the Holy Place for worship]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
skilled of	skillful
Yahweh	Yahweh
skill	skillful
and understanding	and able
to know	to know how
the Holy Place	the sacred place
Yahweh	his

Exodus 36:2

ULT	UST
And Moses called to Bezalel and to Oholiab and to every man skilled of heart in whose heart Yahweh had put skill, all whose heart lifted him to come near to the work to do it,	*So Moses summoned Bezalel and Oholiab and all the other people that Yahweh had made skillful who wished to come do some of the work.*

ULT **to Bezalel and to Oholiab and to every man skilled of heart in whose heart Yahweh had put skill**

UST Bezalel and Oholiab and all the other people that Yahweh had made skillful

(אֶל־בְּצַלְאֵל וְאֶל־אָהֳלִיאָב וְאֶל כָּל־אִישׁ חֲכַם־לֵב אֲשֶׁר נָתַן יְהוָה חָכְמָה בְּלִבּוֹ)

See how you translated this in the previous verse.

ULT **skill**

UST skillful

(חָכְמָה)

See how you translated **skill** in the previous verse.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **all whose heart lifted him**

UST who wished

(כֹּל אֲשֶׁר נָשָׂאוֹ לִבּוֹ)

See how you translated this in 35:21.

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
And … called	So … summoned
skilled of	skillful
Yahweh	Yahweh
skill	skillful

Exodus 36:3

ULT	UST
and they took from before the face of Moses all of the contributions that the sons of Israel had brought for doing the work of the service of the Holy Place. And they continually brought a freewill offering to him in the morning in the morning.	*They took all the gifts for building the sacred tent from Moses that the Israelites had brought to him. But the Israelites continued gladly bringing more gifts every morning.*

ULT **and they took**
UST They took
(וַיִּקְח֣וּ)

Alternate translation: [and the craftsmen took]

ULT **from before the face of**
UST from
(מִלִּפְנֵ֣י)

Here, **before the face** means with Moses. Moses had received and kept the building materials. Alternate translation: [from the custody of]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **in the morning in the morning**
UST every morning
(בַּבֹּ֥קֶר בַּבֹּ֖קֶר)

This is an idiom meaning every morning or every day. Use a similar expression or translate the meaning. Alternate translation: [morning by morning]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Israel	the Israelites
the Holy Place	the sacred tent
a freewill offering	gladly

Exodus 36:4

ULT	UST
So all the skilled doing all the work of the Holy Place came, every single man from the work that they were doing,	*As a result, each and every skillful craftsman who was working to make the sacred tent left their work and came to Moses.*

ULT **the skilled**
UST skillful craftsman
(הֶחָכְמִ֔ים)

Here the adjective **skilled** is used as a noun in order to describe the group of craftsmen. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this with a noun phrase. Alternate translation: [the skilled workers]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **every single man**
UST each and every
(אִ֥ישׁ־אִ֛ישׁ)

Here, **every single man** translates an idiom that cannot be rendered literally and sensibly in English. The original is “a man a man.” If your language would use repetition to emphasize that each and every man came to see Moses, you could follow the original; otherwise use a phrase or structure that emphasizes that they all came. Alternate translation: [every man without exception]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **every single man**
UST each and every
(אִ֥ישׁ־אִ֛ישׁ)

As previously, noted, there were some women who contributed (particularly in the cloth crafts) so this use of **man** may include women. Alternate translation: [every single worker]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the skilled	skillful craftsman
the Holy Place	the sacred tent

Exodus 36:5

ULT	UST
and they said to Moses, saying, “The people {are} bringing much more than enough for the service of the work that Yahweh has commanded {us} to do.”	*The craftsmen told him, “The Israelites are bringing many times more than we need to build as Yahweh has commanded us!”*

ULT **and they said to Moses, saying, “The people {are} bringing much more than enough for the service of the work that Yahweh has commanded {us} to do**

UST The craftsmen told him, “The Israelites are bringing many times more than we need to build as Yahweh has commanded us

(וַיֹּאמְרוּ אֶל־מֹשֶׁה לֵאמֹר מַרְבִּים הָעָם לְהָבִיא מִדֵּי הָעֲבֹדָה לַמְּלָאכָה אֲשֶׁר־צִוָּה יְהוָה לַעֲשֹׂת אֹתָהּ)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [The craftsmen told Moses that the people were bringing much more than enough for doing the work that Yahweh has commanded them to do]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	him
much	many times
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 36:6

ULT	UST
And Moses commanded, and they caused a sound to pass through in the camp, saying, "A man and a woman shall not make any more work for the contribution of the Holy Place." And the people were restrained from bringing.	*So Moses told them to proclaim a message throughout the camp, "Everyone should stop making and bringing material gifts for the sacred tent!" So the people stopped bringing gifts.*

ULT **A man and a woman shall not make any more work for the contribution of the**
UST Everyone should stop making and bringing material gifts for the sacred tent
(אִישׁ וְאִשָּׁה אַל־יַעֲשׂוּ־עוֹד מְלָאכָה לִתְרוּמַת הַקֹּדֶשׁ)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [that no one should bring any more contributions for the work of the Holy Place]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **and they caused a sound to pass through**
UST to proclaim a message
(וַיַּעֲבִירוּ קוֹל)

Here, **sound** refers to the message. This means they spread Moses' message orally. Alternate translation: [everyone to share this message]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **A man and a woman shall not make**
UST Everyone should stop making and bringing
(אִישׁ וְאִשָּׁה אַל־יַעֲשׂוּ)

Here, **man and woman** is intended to mean everyone, or in this case because of the negation, no one. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [No one shall make]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **work**
UST material
(מְלָאכָה)

Here, **work** means the sorts of crafted items listed in the previous chapter.

ULT **from bringing**
UST bringing gifts
(מֵהָבִיא)

In some languages you may need to provide an object for this sentence. Alternate translation: [from bringing contributions]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
the	for the sacred tent

Exodus 36:7

ULT	UST
And the work was sufficient for doing all their work, and there was excess.	*They had more than enough materials for all the work.*

ULT **And the work**

UST materials

(וְהַמְּלָאכָה)

Here, **work** means the sorts of crafted items listed in the previous chapter.

Exodus 36:8

ULT	UST
And every skilled of heart among the doers of the work made the Dwelling with ten curtains: twisted fine linen and blue and purple and worm of scarlet; cherubim—the work of a skilled craftsman he made them.	*All the most skilled men among the workmen made the sacred tent, using ten long strips of finely twisted linen. A skilled craftsman took blue, purple, and red thread, and embroidered these strips with designs that represent the winged creatures that are above the chest.*

Note:

Except for tense and the addition of **every skilled of heart among the doers of the work**, this verse is identical to Exodus 26:1.

ULT **every skilled of heart**
UST All the most skilled men
(כָּל־חֲכַם־לֵּב)

See how you translated this in 35:21.

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **he made**
UST A skilled craftsman took … and embroidered
(עָשָׂה)

Throughout verses 8–38 the word **he** used. This is a generic noun referring to any of the team of skilled craftsmen. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: [they made] or [a craftsman made]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
skilled of	the most skilled men
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
curtains	long strips of … these strips
and purple	purple
cherubim	with designs that represent the winged creatures that are above the chest

Exodus 36:9

ULT	UST
The length of each curtain {was} 28 cubits and the width of each curtain {was} four cubits. All of the curtains {were} one size.	*Each strip was 14. 5 meters long and two meters wide. They were all the same size.*

> **Note:** (36:9-18)

These verses are almost identical to Exodus 26:2–10. Tense is implied.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curtain	strip was
curtain	strip was
the curtains	They

Exodus 36:10

ULT	UST
And five of the curtains were joined each to another, and five of the curtains were joined each to another.	*He sewed five strips together {as one set}, and sewed the other five strips together {as another set}.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the curtains	strips
the curtains	strips

Exodus 36:11

ULT	UST
And he made loops of blue on the edge of the first curtain from the edge in the set. And he did thus along the edge of the end curtain in the second set.	*For each set, he made loops of blue cloth and fastened them along the outer edge of the strip, at the end of each set.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the … curtain	the strip
the … curtain	the strip

Exodus 36:12

ULT	UST
He made 50 loops on the first curtain, and he made 50 loops on the end of the curtain which is in the second set. The loops were opposite one to one.	*He put 50 loops on the edge of the first set, and 50 loops at the edge of the second set so that the loops were opposite each other.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
on the … curtain	on the edge of the … set
the curtain	the … set

Exodus 36:13

ULT	UST
And he made 50 clasps of gold and joined the curtains one to one with the clasps, and the Dwelling was one.	*He made 50 gold fasteners and fastened both of the sets together with them to make the sacred tent one unit.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
the curtains	both of the sets
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 36:14

ULT	UST
And he made curtains of goats' hair for a tent over the Dwelling. He made 11 of these curtains.	*He made a cover for the sacred tent from 11 pieces of cloth made from goats' hair.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curtains of	from … pieces of cloth
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
He … curtains	from … pieces of cloth

Exodus 36:15

ULT	UST
The length of each curtain {was} 30 cubits, and the width of each curtain {was} four cubits. The 11 curtains {were} the same size.	*Each of the 11 pieces of cloth was the same dimensions: 15 meters long and two meters wide.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curtain	pieces of cloth
curtain	pieces of cloth
The … curtains	pieces of cloth

Exodus 36:16

ULT	UST
And he joined five curtains to each other and six curtains to each other.	*He sewed five of these pieces of cloth together {to make one set}, and he sewed the other six pieces of cloth together {to make another set}.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curtains	pieces of cloth
curtains	pieces of cloth

Exodus 36:17

ULT	UST
And he made 50 loops on the edge of the end curtain in the joined set, and he made 50 loops on the edge of the curtain in the second joined set.	*He made {100 loops of blue cloth,} and fastened 50 of them to the outer edge of a set and fastened 50 to the outer edge of the other set.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the … curtain	a set
the curtain	the other set

Exodus 36:18

ULT	UST
And he made 50 clasps of bronze to join the tent to be one.	*He made 50 bronze clasps for connecting the tent into one big piece.*

> **Note:**

This verse is similar to Exodus 26:11. The difference is the absence of the middle clause from 26:11.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bronze	bronze

Exodus 36:19

ULT	UST
And he made a covering for the tent of reddened hides of rams and a covering of hides of sea-cows above that.	*He made another cover from red rams' skins to go over the tent, and a top cover from fine leather hides.*

> **Note:** (36:19-20)

These verses are almost identical to Exodus 26:14–15.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
rams	rams

Exodus 36:20

ULT	UST
And he made upright frames for the Dwelling from wood of acacias.	*He made a standing framework from acacia wood for the sacred tent.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for the Dwelling	for the sacred tent

Exodus 36:21

ULT	UST
The length of a frame {was} ten cubits, and the width of one frame {was} a cubit and a half of a cubit.	*Each frame was five meters long and three-quarters of a meter wide.*

Note:

This verse is identical to Exodus 26:16.

Exodus 36:22

ULT	UST
{There were} two tenons in each frame for joining one to one. Thus he made all of the frames of the Dwelling.	*He made two pegs {at the bottom of} each frame to fasten them together. He made each frame for the tabernacle this way.*

> **Note:** (36:22-25)

These verses are almost identical to Exodus 26:17–20.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	for the tabernacle

Exodus 36:23

ULT	UST
And he made the frames for the Dwelling: 20 frames for the south side.	*He made 20 frames for the south side of the sacred tent.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for the Dwelling	of the sacred tent

Exodus 36:24

ULT	UST
And he made 40 bases of silver under the 20 frames: two bases under one frame for its two tenons, and two bases under one frame for its two tenons.	*He made 40 silver bases to go underneath the 20 frames. He put two bases under each frame and fit their two pegs into the bases.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	silver

Exodus 36:25

ULT	UST
And for the second side of the Dwelling, on the north side, he made 20 frames	*For the other side—{that is,} the north side—of the sacred tent he made 20 frames*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 36:26

ULT	UST
and their 40 silver bases: two bases under one frame, and two bases under one frame.	*and 40 silver bases for them. {They put} two bases under each frame.*

> **Note:**

This verse is identical to Exodus 26:21.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	silver

Exodus 36:27

ULT	UST
And he made six frames for the back side of the Dwelling, toward the west.	*For the rear of the sacred tent, on the west side, he made six frames.*

> **Note:** (36:27-28)

These verses are almost identical to Exodus 26:22–23.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 36:28

ULT	UST
And he made two frames for the back corners of the Dwelling.	*They made two frames for the rear corners of the sacred tent.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 36:29

ULT	UST
And they were a pair at the bottom, and they were completely together at the top to one ring. Thus he did for both as the two corners.	*He matched them to each other at the bottom and top. He secured the tops together with a ring. He did this for both, making them the corner pieces.*

> **Note:** (36:29-30)

These verses are very similar to Exodus 26:24–25.

Exodus 36:30

ULT	UST
And there were eight frames and their silver bases, sixteen bases: two bases, two bases under one frame.	*He made eight frames and 16 silver bases, two bases under each frame.*

ULT two bases, two bases under one frame
UST two bases under each frame
(שְׁנֵי אֲדָנִים שְׁנֵי אֲדָנִים תַּחַת הַקֶּרֶשׁ הָאֶחָד)

The list formula from 26:25 is strangely shortened here but has the same meaning. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	silver

Exodus 36:31

ULT	UST
And he made crossbars of wood of acacias—five for the frames of the one side of the Dwelling,	*He made crossbars from acacia wood. He made five crossbars for the frames on the {north} side of the sacred tent,*

Note: (36:31-32)

These verses are almost identical to Exodus 26:26–27.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 36:32

ULT	UST
and five crossbars for the frames of the second side of the Dwelling, and five crossbars for the frames for the back of the Dwelling to the west.	*five crossbars for the frames on the {south} side of the sacred tent, and five crossbars for the frames at the rear of the sacred tent, on the west.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 36:33

ULT	UST
And he made the middle crossbar in the center of the frames to pass through from end to end.	*He made the center crossbar, right in the middle of the frames, reach all the way from edge to edge.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 26:28.

Exodus 36:34

ULT	UST
And he covered the frames with gold. And he made their rings of gold, the holders for the crossbars. And he covered the bars with gold.	*He covered the frames and crossbars with gold. He made the rings for fastening the crossbars to the frames from gold.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 26:29.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
with gold	with gold
gold	from gold
with gold	with gold

Exodus 36:35

ULT	UST
And he made a curtain of blue and purple and worm of scarlet and of twisted fine linen. He made cherubim, the work of a skillful workman.	*He made a curtain from fine linen. A skilled craftsman embroidered it with blue, purple, and red yarn, making designs to represent the winged creatures that are above the sacred chest.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 26:31.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a curtain of	a curtain from
and purple	purple
cherubim	making designs to represent the winged creatures that are above the sacred chest

Exodus 36:36

ULT	UST
And he made for it four pillars of acacia wood, and he covered them {with} gold and their hooks with gold. And he cast for them four bases of silver.	*He made four posts from acacia wood for the curtain. He covered them and their hooks with gold. He formed four silver bases for the posts.*

Note:

Aside from some verbal differences, this verse is very similar to Exodus 26:32.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pillars of	posts
{with} gold	with gold
with gold	with gold
silver	silver

Exodus 36:37

ULT	UST
And he made a curtain for the entrance of the tent: of blue and purple and worm of scarlet and of twisted fine linen, the work of an embroiderer,	*He made a curtain as the tent entrance. A skilled weaver made it from fine linen with blue, purple, and red yarn.*

> **Note:**

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 26:36.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a curtain	a curtain … it
and purple	purple

Exodus 36:38

ULT	UST
and its five pillars and their hooks. And he covered their tops and their rings {with} gold. And their five bases {were} bronze.	*{He also made} five posts with hooks on them. He covered the tops of the posts and their connectors with gold and {made} a bronze base for each of those posts.*

Note:

See how you translated many of these words in Exodus 26:37.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
its … pillars	posts
{with} gold	with gold
{were} bronze	bronze

Exodus 37

Exodus 37 General Notes

Structure and Formatting

- v. 1–9 Making the ark, see Exodus 25:10–20
- v. 10–16 Making the table, see Exodus 25:23–29
- v. 17–24 Making the lampstand, see Exodus 25:31–39
- v. 25–28 Making the altar for incense, see Exodus 30:1–5
- v. 29 Making the oil and incense, see Exodus 30:22–38

Translation Issues in This Chapter

- This chapter continues the record of the construction of the Dwelling and the items for it in almost exact repetition of Yahweh's instructions.

Be sure to consult your previous work for consistency.

- Throughout the chapter the word **he** is used. This is a generic noun referring to any of the team of skilled craftsmen. You could also change it to "they" if that would be understood better in your language. (See: Generic Noun Phrases; and First, Second or Third Person)

Exodus 37:1

ULT	UST
And Bezalel made the box of wood of acacias —its length {was} two cubits and a half, and its width {was} one cubit and a half, and its height {was} one cubit and a half.	*Then Bezalel made the sacred chest from acacia wood. He made it 125 centimeters long, 75 centimeters wide, and 75 centimeters high.*

> **Note:**

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 25:10.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the box of	the sacred chest from … it

Exodus 37:2

ULT	UST
And he overlaid it {with} pure gold, inside and outside, and for it he made a border of gold around {it}.	*He covered the chest with pure gold inside and outside and made a gold molding for all around it.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 25:11.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	pure
with … gold	with … gold
gold	gold

Exodus 37:3

ULT	UST
And he cast four rings of gold for it on its four feet: two rings on its one side and two rings on its second side.	*He made four rings from gold and fastened them to the four legs of the chest. He put two of the rings on each side of the chest.*

> **Note:** (37:3-5)

These verses are almost identical to Exodus 25:12–14.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold

Exodus 37:4

ULT	UST
And he made poles of wood of acacias and overlaid them {with} gold.	*He made two poles from acacia wood, and covered them with gold.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{with} gold	with gold

Exodus 37:5

ULT	UST
And he put the poles into the rings on the sides of the box, to carry the box.	*He put the poles into the rings on the sides of the chest so that {the Levites} could carry it.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the box	the chest
the box	it

Exodus 37:6

ULT	UST
And he made an atonement lid of pure gold. Its length {was} two cubits and a half, and its width {was} a cubit and a half.	*He made a lid for the chest from pure gold. It was 125 centimeters long and 75 centimeters wide.*

Note: (37:6-9)

These verses are almost identical to Exodus 25:17–20.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an atonement lid of	a lid for the chest
pure	pure
gold	from … gold

Exodus 37:7

ULT	UST
And he made two gold cherubim; he made them of hammered work from the two ends of the atonement lid.	*He hammered {a large lump of} gold into the form of two creatures that have wings for the two ends of the lid.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	{a large lump of} gold
cherubim	into the form of … creatures that have wings
the atonement lid	the lid

Exodus 37:8

ULT	UST
One cherub {was} from this end and one cherub from this end. He made the cherubim from the atonement lid from its two ends.	*He made the winged creatures {from the gold} from each end of the sacred chest's lid, one at one end and the other at the other end.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cherub	one
and … cherub	and the other
the cherubim	the winged creatures
the atonement lid	of the sacred chest's lid

Exodus 37:9

ULT	UST
And the cherubim were spreading out their wings upward, covering over the atonement lid with their wings, and their faces {were} each toward his brother. The faces of the cherubim were toward the atonement lid.	*The creature's wings spread out and reached up to cover the lid. They faced each other, facing the chest's lid that was between them.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the cherubim	The creature's
the atonement lid	the lid
the cherubim	them
the atonement lid	the chest's lid

Exodus 37:10

ULT	UST
And he made the table from wood of acacias. Its length {was} two cubits, and its width {was} a cubit, and its height {was} a cubit and a half.	*He made a table from acacia wood. It was one meter long, one-half of a meter wide, and three-quarters of a meter high.*

> **Note:** (37:10-14)

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 25:23–27.

Exodus 37:11

ULT	UST
And he overlaid it {with} pure gold and made for it a border of gold around {it}.	*He covered the table with pure gold and put a gold molding all around it.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	pure
with … gold	with … gold
gold	a gold

Exodus 37:12

ULT	UST
And he made a rim for it, a handbreadth all around, and he made a border of gold around its rim.	*He made a rim all around it, eight centimeters wide, and made a gold molding around the rim.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold

Exodus 37:13

ULT	UST
And he cast four rings of gold for it and put the rings on the four corners, where its four legs are.	*He molded four rings from gold. He fastened them to the four corners of the table. Each ring was close to each table leg*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold

Exodus 37:14

ULT	UST
The rings were close to the rim to house the poles to carry the table.	*near the rim. They held poles for carrying the table.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

Exodus 37:15

ULT	UST
And he made the poles {out of} wood of acacias and covered them {with} gold to carry the table.	*He made two poles from acacia wood and covered them with gold. They were for carrying the table.*

> **Note:** (37:15-16)

These verses are very similar to Exodus 25:28–29.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{with} gold	with gold

Exodus 37:16

ULT	UST
And he made the objects that {would be} on the table—its plates, and its pans, and its bowls, and its pitchers with which it will be poured out—{from} pure gold.	*He made all the utensils for the table from pure gold—dishes, cups, bowls, and jars {for the priests to use} to pour out {wine to offer to Yahweh}.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	from pure
from … gold	gold

Exodus 37:17

ULT	UST
And he made the lampstand of pure gold. The lampstand—its base and its shaft—were made of hammered work. Its cups, its buds, and its blossoms were from it.	*He made the lampstand from pure gold. He hammered {one large lump of gold} to make its base and its shaft. He made the cups, with the flower buds and petals {that decorate them}, from that same lump.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 25:31.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the lampstand of	the lampstand
pure	pure
gold	from … gold
The lampstand	its … its

Exodus 37:18

ULT	UST
And six branches were going out from its sides, three branches of the lampstand from the one side and three branches of the lampstand from the second side.	*There were six branches on the lampstand, three on each side of the shaft.*

> **Note:** (37:18-20)

These verses are identical to Exodus 25:32–34.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the lampstand	the lampstand
the lampstand	the lampstand

Exodus 37:19

ULT	UST
Three cups, shaped like almond blossoms, {were} on the one branch, a bulb and a blossom, and three cups, shaped like almond blossoms, were on the one branch, a bulb and a blossom; thus for the six branches going out from the lampstand.	*Each branch had three gold cups that looked like almond flowers on it. The flowers had buds and petals. It was the same for all six branches of the lampstand.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the lampstand	the lampstand

Exodus 37:20

ULT	UST
And on the lampstand {there were} four cups shaped like almond blossoms {with} its bulbs and its blossoms,	*On {the shaft of} the lampstand there were four cups that also looked like almond blossoms, each one with flower buds and petals.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And on the lampstand	On {the shaft of} the lampstand

Exodus 37:21

ULT	UST
And a bulb {was} under two of the branches from it, and a bulb {was} under two of the branches from it, and a bulb {was} under two of the branches from it—for all six branches extending out from it.	*He made one flower bud beneath every two branches. He attached it to each pair of branches {as if they were growing} from it. He made all six lampstand branches like this.*

> **Note:** (37:21-22)

These verses are almost identical to Exodus 25:35–36.

Exodus 37:22

ULT	UST
Their bulbs and their branches from it were all one piece of hammered work of pure gold.	*He hammered all these buds and branches{, along with the shaft,} from one {large lump} of pure gold.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	pure
gold	gold

Exodus 37:23

ULT	UST
And he made its seven lamps and its tongs and its trays of pure gold.	*He made from pure gold: seven lamps, tongs {to remove the burned wicks}, and trays {in which to put the burned wicks}.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical with Exodus 25:37–38, excluding the purpose clause in v. 37 (“and it will hold up its lamps, and it will make light on the side of its face”).

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	pure
gold	gold

Exodus 37:24

ULT	UST
He made it and all its items from a talent of pure gold.	*He used 33 kilograms of pure gold to make the lampstand, the tongs, and the trays.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 25:39.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	pure
gold	gold

Exodus 37:25

ULT	UST
And he made the altar of incense of wood of acacias. Its length {was} one cubit, and its width one cubit. It {was} square, and its height {was} two cubits. Its horns were part of it.	*He made the altar for burning incense from acacia wood. It was square, one-half meter on each side and one meter high. There were {projections that looked like} horns on the same block of wood as the altar.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 30:1–2.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar of	the altar for burning
incense of	incense
Its horns	{projections that looked like} horns on the same block of wood as the altar

Exodus 37:26

ULT	UST
And he overlaid it {with} pure gold—its top and all around its sides and its horns—and he made for it a border of gold around {it}.	*He covered the top and the four sides, including the projections, with pure gold. He put a gold molding all around it.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 30:3.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	pure
with … gold	with … gold
its horns	the projections
gold	a gold

Exodus 37:27

ULT	UST
And he made two rings of gold for it under its border on its two sides, on its two sides; for housings for the poles for carrying it with them.	*He made two gold rings and attached them to the altar below the molding, one on each side of the altar. These rings were to hold the poles for carrying the altar.*

> **Note:**

This verse is very similar to Exodus 30:4.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold

Exodus 37:28

ULT	UST
And he made the poles of wood of acacias, and he overlaid them {with} gold.	*He made those two poles from acacia wood and covered them with gold.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 30:5.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{with} gold	with gold

Exodus 37:29

ULT	UST
And he made the oil of anointment of holiness and the pure incense of fragrance, the work of an ointment maker.	*He made the sacred oil for anointing and the pure sweet-smelling incense. A perfumer mixed the incense together.*

Note:

For the **oil**, see Exodus 30:25, and for the **incense** see 25:6 and 30:35.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the oil of … the	the … oil
holiness	sacred
pure	pure
incense of	the … incense

Exodus 38

Exodus 38 General Notes

- This chapter continues the record of the construction of the Dwelling and the items for it in almost exact repetition of Yahweh's instructions.

Be sure to consult your previous work for consistency. Verses 1–20 of this chapter follow Exodus 27:1–19 almost verse for verse.

- Throughout the chapter the word **he** is used. This is a generic noun referring to any of the team of skilled craftsmen. You could also change it to "they" if that would be understood better in your language. (See: Generic Noun Phrases; and First, Second or Third Person)

Exodus 38:1

ULT	UST
And he made the altar of the burnt offering of wood of acacias. Its length {was} five cubits and its breadth {was} five cubits—a square—and its height {was} three cubits.	*Bezalel made the altar for burning sacrifices from acacia wood. It was square, two and a half meters long on each side, and one and a half meters tall.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 27:1.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar of	the altar for burning sacrifices
the burnt offering of	the altar for burning sacrifices

Exodus 38:2

ULT	UST
And he made its horns on its four corners; its horns were part of it. And he overlaid it {with} bronze.	*He made a {projection that looks like a} horn on each of the top corners from the same block of wood as the altar. He covered the whole altar with bronze.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 27:2.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
its horns	a {projection that looks like a} horn
its horns	from the same block of wood as the altar
{with} bronze	with bronze

Exodus 38:3

ULT	UST
And he made all of the equipment of the altar: the pots and the shovels and the basins, the meat forks and the firepans. He made all of its equipment {of} bronze.	*He made all the implements for the altar: the pans, shovels, basins, forks for working with cooking meat, and buckets for carrying hot coals. He made all of these implements from bronze.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 27:3.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar	the altar
{of} bronze	from bronze

Exodus 38:4

ULT	UST
And he made a grate for the altar, a work of a network of bronze under its ledge, from below to its middle.	*He made a bronze lattice grating {to hold the wood and burning coals}. He put the grating under the rim {that was around the altar}. He made it so that it was inside the altar, halfway down.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 27:4 and Exodus 27:5. One part of 27:4 is rearranged into 38:5.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for the altar	the rim {that was around the altar}
bronze	a bronze lattice

Exodus 38:5

ULT	UST
And he cast four rings on the four ends for the grate of bronze, as holders for the poles.	*He molded four bronze rings in which to put the poles for the lattice and fastened them to its four corners.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to the second half of Exodus 27:4.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bronze	bronze

Exodus 38:6

ULT	UST
And he made the poles of wood of acacias, and overlaid them {with} bronze.	*He made the poles from acacia wood and covered them with bronze.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 27:6.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{with} bronze	with bronze

Exodus 38:7

ULT	UST
And he put the poles into the rings on the sides of the altar, to carry it with them. He made it hollow, of planks.	*He put the poles for carrying the altar through the rings on each side of the altar. He made the altar from boards; it was hollow in the middle.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 27:7 and the first part of 27:8.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar	the altar

Exodus 38:8

ULT	UST
And he made a basin of bronze and its base of bronze with the mirrors of the serving {women} who served at the entrance of the tent of meeting.	*He made the bronze washbasin and the bronze base for it. The bronze was from the mirrors that belonged to the women who worked at the entrance of the sacred tent.*

ULT **And he made a basin of bronze and its base of bronze**
UST He made the bronze washbasin and the bronze base for it
(וַיַּעַשׂ אֶת הַכִּיּוֹר נְחֹשֶׁת וְאֵת כַּנּוֹ נְחֹשֶׁת)

This portion is almost identical to Exodus 30:18.

ULT **with the mirrors of**
UST The bronze was from the mirrors that belonged to
(בְּמַרְאֹת)

The **bronze** came from the **mirrors**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: [from the bronze mirrors]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bronze	the bronze
bronze	bronze
the serving {women}	the women
served	worked
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Exodus 38:9

ULT	UST
And he made the courtyard. For the south side, the curtains of the courtyard {were} 100 cubits of fine twisted linen,	*He made a courtyard {around the sacred tent}. On the south side, he hung a fine linen curtain 50 meters long*

Note:

This verse is similar to Exodus 27:9.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the curtains of	a … curtain

Exodus 38:10

ULT	UST
{with} their 20 pillars and their 20 bronze bases, the hooks of the pillars and their rings of silver.	*from 20 {bronze} posts that had 20 bronze bases for the posts and hooks on them and silver connectors.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 27:10.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{with} their … pillars	from … posts
bronze	bronze … bronze
the pillars	on them
silver	silver

Exodus 38:11

ULT	UST
And for the north side, 100 cubits {with} their 20 pillars and their 20 bases of bronze. The hooks of the pillars and their rings {were} of silver.	*For the north side {of the courtyard}, he hung 50 meters of curtains from 20 posts, each with their bronze bases, hooks, and silver connectors.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 27:11.

ULT **100 cubits**
UST he hung 50 meters of curtains
(מֵאָה בָּאַמָּה)

Here, “the curtains of the courtyard” and “long” are both omitted. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: [the curtains of the courtyard were 100 cubits long]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{with} their … pillars	from … posts
bronze	bronze
the pillars	hooks, and
silver	silver

Exodus 38:12

ULT	UST
And the curtains for the side of the west {were} 50 cubits, with their ten pillars and their ten bases. The hooks of the pillars and rings {were} of silver.	*For the west side {of the courtyard}, he hung 25 meters of curtains from ten posts, each with their bases, hooks, and silver connectors.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 27:12.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the curtains	of curtains
with their … pillars	from … posts
the pillars	hooks
silver	silver

Exodus 38:13

ULT	UST
And for the east side 50 cubits.	*The east side also was 25 meters wide.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 27:13.

Exodus 38:14

ULT	UST
The curtains to the side {were} fifteen cubits {with} their three pillars and their three bases.	*{He made} a curtain seven and a half meters long for one side {of the entrance}, with three posts and bases.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 27:14.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The curtains	{He made} a curtain
{with} their … pillars	with … posts

Exodus 38:15

ULT	UST
And for the second side from this, and from this to the gate of the courtyard, the curtains {were} fifteen cubits {with} their three pillars and their three bases.	*On the other side, opposite from the entrance to the courtyard, {he made} a curtain seven and a half meters long, also with three posts and bases.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 27:15.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to the gate of	entrance
the curtains	{he made} a curtain
{with} their … pillars	also with … posts

Exodus 38:16

ULT	UST
All of the curtains of the courtyard all around {were} fine twisted linen.	*There were fine linen curtains all around the courtyard.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curtains of	curtains

Exodus 38:17

ULT	UST
And the bases for the pillars {were} bronze. The hooks of the pillars and their rings {were} silver, and the plating of their tops {was} silver. And all of the pillars of the courtyard {were} filleted {with} silver.	*All the posts' bases were bronze. They covered the tops with silver. The pillars' hooks and loops were silver. The ends of the courtyard's pillars had a rounded silver finish.*

Note:

See how you translated many of these words in Exodus 27:17.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for the pillars	All the posts' bases
{were} bronze	were bronze
the pillars	The pillars
{were} silver	were silver
{was} silver … {with} silver	with silver … silver
silver … with	silver
the pillars of	the courtyard's pillars

Exodus 38:18

ULT	UST
And the curtain of the gate of the courtyard {was the} work of an embroiderer, blue and purple and worm of scarlet and twisted fine linen. And the length {was} twenty cubits and the height in width {was} five cubits, just as the curtains of the courtyard,	*For the entrance of the courtyard, {they made} a curtain from finely twined linen, and a skilled weaver embroidered it with blue, purple, and red yarn. The curtain was ten meters long and two and a half meters high, just like the other curtains around the courtyard.*

Note:

See how you translated many of these words in Exodus 27:16 and 18.

ULT **And … {was} twenty … {was} five**
UST The curtain was ten … two and a half
(וְעֶשְׂרִים & חָמֵשׁ)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote. A cubit is approximately 46cm. For your reference, a more precise conversion to metric is: 9.2m … 2.3m

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT **and the height in width {was} five cubits**
UST meters … and two and a half … high
(וְקוֹמָה בְּרֹחַב חָמֵשׁ אַמּוֹת)

This probably refers to the general dimensions (20 cubits long by 5 cubits wide) but clarifies that the **width** would become the **height** of the curtain when the craftsmen or Levites set up the Dwelling. Alternate translation: [and the width, which corresponded to the height when hung, was five cubits]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And the curtain of	For … {they made} a curtain
the gate of	the entrance of
and purple	purple
the curtains of	the other curtains around

Exodus 38:19

ULT	UST
with their four pillars and their four bases {which were} bronze, and their hooks {which were} silver, and the plating of their tops and its rings {which were} silver.	*It had four posts, each with a bronze base. They covered the tops of the posts and their hooks with silver. The loops were silver.*

Note:

See how you translated many of these words in Exodus 27:17.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
with their … pillars	It had … posts
{which were} bronze	bronze
{which were} silver	were silver
{which were} silver	with silver

Exodus 38:20

ULT	UST
And all the tent pegs for the Dwelling and for the courtyard all around {were} bronze.	*They made all the tent pegs to hold the sacred tent and the curtains around the courtyard of bronze.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to the second half of Exodus 27:19.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for the Dwelling	to hold the sacred tent
{were} bronze	They made … of bronze

Exodus 38:21

ULT	UST
These {are} the records of the Dwelling, the Dwelling of the Testimony which was recorded according to the mouth of Moses, the work of the Levites by the hand of Ithamar the son of Aaron the priest.	*This is a list of all the materials that the craftsmen used to make the sacred tent where the Ten Commandments were. Moses instructed some men from the tribe of Levi to write the list. Ithamar, son of Aaron the priest, supervised the men who wrote it.*

ULT **which was recorded**
UST to write the list
(אֲשֶׁר פֻּקַּד)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [which the Levites recorded]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **according to the mouth of Moses**
UST Moses instructed
(עַל־פִּי מֹשֶׁה)

This is an idiom referring to Moses telling them to make these records. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [following Moses' instructions]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **by the hand of Ithamar the son of Aaron the priest**
UST Ithamar, son of Aaron the priest, supervised the men
(בְּיַד֙ אִיתָמָ֔ר בֶּן־אַהֲרֹ֖ן הַכֹּהֵֽן)

Here, **by the hand of** could mean: (1) Ithamar was in charge of the group that recorded these records (2) Ithamar was the scribe who actually wrote these records. Alternate translation: [under the direction of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest] or [written down by Ithamar son of Aaron the priest]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Ithamar**
UST Ithamar
(אִיתָמָר)

Ithamar is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in Exodus 6:23.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
the Dwelling of	the sacred tent
the Testimony	where the Ten Commandments were
Moses	Moses
the Levites	some men from the tribe of Levi
Aaron	Aaron
the priest	the priest

Exodus 38:22

ULT	UST
And Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur, from the tribe of Judah, made everything that Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*Bezalel of the tribe of Judah, son of Uri and grandson of Hur made all the things that Yahweh had commanded Moses to make.*

ULT And Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur
UST Bezalel … son of Uri and grandson of Hur
(וּבְצַלְאֵל בֶּן־אוּרִי בֶן־חוּר)

Bezalel, **Uri**, and **Hur** are the names of men. See how you translated these in Exodus 31:2.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT Moses
UST Moses
(אֶת־מֹשֶׁה)

This sentence leaves out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words. Alternate translation: [Moses to do]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from the tribe of	of the tribe
Judah	of Judah
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 38:23

ULT	UST
And Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan, an engraver and a designer and an embroiderer in blue and in purple and in scarlet and in fine linen, {was} with him.	*Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan worked with Bezealel. Oholiab was a skilled engraver who made artistic things. He embroidered designs using blue, purple, and red woolen yarn, and linen.*

ULT **Oholiab son of Ahisamak**

UST Oholiab son of Ahisamak

(אָהֳלִיאָ֖ב בֶּן־אֲחִיסָמָ֑ךְ)

Oholiab and **Ahisamak** are names of men. See how you translated these in Exodus 31:6.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **an engraver and a designer and an embroiderer in blue and in purple and in scarlet and in fine linen**

UST Oholiab was a skilled engraver who made artistic things. He embroidered designs using blue, purple, and red woolen yarn, and linen

(חָרָ֣שׁ וְחֹשֵׁ֔ב וְרֹקֵ֖ם בַּתְּכֵ֣לֶת וּבָאַרְגָּמָ֑ן וּבְתוֹלַ֥עַת הַשָּׁנִ֖י וּבַשֵּֽׁשׁ)

This is very similar to part of Exodus 35:35.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from the tribe of	from the tribe of
Dan	Dan
and in purple	purple

Exodus 38:24

ULT	UST
All the gold used for the work, in all the work of the sanctuary—it was the gold from the raised offering—{was} 29 talents and 730 shekels, by the shekel of the sanctuary.	*All the gold that they used to make the sacred tent weighed 965 kilograms. They used the official standard when they weighed the gold that the people dedicated to Yahweh.*

ULT **All the gold used**
UST All the gold that they used
(כָּל־הַזָּהָב עֲשׂוּי)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [All the gold that the craftsmen used]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **{was} 29 talents and 730 shekels, by the shekel of the sanctuary**
UST weighed 965 kilograms. They used the official standard when they weighed
(תְּשַׁע וְעֶשְׂרִים כִּכָּר וּשְׁבַע מֵאוֹת וּשְׁלֹשִׁים שֶׁקֶל בְּשֶׁקֶל הַקֹּדֶשׁ)

A talent is about 34 kilograms, and a shekel is about 11 grams. There were evidently shekels of more than one weight at the time; **by the shekel of the sanctuary** specified which one was to be used. See how you translated this in Exodus 30:13. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote.

Support Reference: Biblical Weight

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the gold	the gold
the sanctuary	the sacred tent
the gold	the gold
the sanctuary	They used the official standard when they weighed

Exodus 38:25

ULT	UST
And the silver of the counted of the congregation {was} 100 talents and 1, 775 shekels, by the shekel of the sanctuary,	*All the silver that the people {contributed when the leaders took the} census weighed 3, 420 kilograms. They also used the official standard when they weighed the silver.*

ULT **{was} 100 talents and 1, 775 shekels, by the shekel of the sanctuary**
UST weighed 3, 420 kilograms. They also used the official standard when they weighed the silver
(מְאַ֤ת כִּכָּר֙ וְאֶ֣לֶף וּשְׁבַ֣ע מֵא֔וֹת וַחֲמִשָּׁ֖ה וְשִׁבְעִ֑ים שֶׁ֖קֶל בְּשֶׁ֥קֶל הַקֹּֽדֶשׁ)

A talent is about 34 kilograms, and a shekel is about 11 grams. There were evidently shekels of more than one weight at the time, **by the shekel of the sanctuary** specified which one was to be used. See the previous verse. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote.

Support Reference: Biblical Weight

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And the silver of	All the silver that
the congregation	the people
the sanctuary	They also used the official standard when they weighed the silver

Exodus 38:26

ULT	UST
a beka for a head (half a shekel), by the shekel of the sanctuary, from every passer over to the counted ones from a son of 20 years and older—from 603, 550.	*They had counted all the men who were at least twenty years old, and each man had paid a silver coin that weighed about five grams, according to the official standard. That was a total of 603, 550 men.*

Note:

See how you translated many of the same things in Exodus 30:13–14.

ULT **a beka for a head (half a shekel), by the shekel of … sanctuary**
UST and each man had paid a silver coin that weighed about five grams, according to the official standard
(בֶּקַע לַגֻּלְגֹּלֶת מַחֲצִית הַשֶּׁקֶל בְּשֶׁקֶל הַקֹּדֶשׁ)

A beka is 1/2 a shekel. A shekel is 11 grams. There were evidently shekels of more than one weight at the time; **by the shekel of the sanctuary** specified which one was to be used. See 38:24. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote. Alternate translation: [five and a half grams] or [5 1/2 grams]

Support Reference: Biblical Weight

ULT **half a shekel), by … shekel of**
UST a silver coin that weighed about five grams, according to the official standard
(מַחֲצִית הַשֶּׁקֶל בְּשֶׁקֶל)

A **half** means one part out of two equal parts.

Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **the … from every passer over to the counted ones from a son of 20 years and older —from 603, 550**
UST They had counted all the men who were at least twenty years old … That was a total of 603, 550 men
(לְכֹל֙ הָעֹבֵ֣ר עַל־הַפְּקֻדִ֔ים מִבֶּ֥ן עֶשְׂרִ֖ים שָׁנָ֑ה וַֽיִּהְי֗וּ לְשֵׁשׁ־מֵא֤וֹת אֶ֙לֶף֙ וּשְׁלֹ֣שֶׁת אֲלָפִ֔ים וַחֲמֵ֥שׁ מֵא֖וֹת וַחֲמִשִּׁ֥ים)

Here the account leaves out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. The idea that this silver was "received" **from** these "men" is left out. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: [received from every passer over to the counted ones from a son of 20 years and older—received from 603,550 men]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **from a son of 20 years**
UST who were … twenty years old
(מִבֶּ֥ן עֶשְׂרִ֖ים שָׁנָ֑ה)

This is an idiom meaning 20 years old. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [from those 20 years old]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the … sanctuary	according to the official standard

Exodus 38:27

ULT	UST
And 100 talents of silver were cast for the bases of the sanctuary and the bases of the curtain—100 bases for the 100 talents, a talent for a base.	*It took 3, 400 kilograms of silver to make the bases under the posts that supported the sacred tent's curtains. They used 34 kilograms for each of the 100 bases.*

ULT **100 talents of**

UST 3, 400 … of … kilograms

(מֵאַת כִּכַּר)

A talent is about 34 kilograms. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote.

Support Reference: Biblical Weight

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	silver
the sanctuary	the sacred tent's
the curtain	curtains

Exodus 38:28

ULT	UST
And he made hooks for the pillars with the 1, 775. And he overlaid their tops and filleted them.	*With the remaining the 20 kilograms of silver, they made the hooks for the posts, covered the tops of the posts, and made rounded corners.*

> ULT **the 1, 775**
> UST the remaining … 20 kilograms of silver
> (הָאֶ֔לֶף וּשְׁבַ֥ע מֵא֖וֹת וַחֲמִשָּׁ֑ה וְשִׁבְעִֽים)

Here the words **shekels of silver** have been omitted because they are understood from 38:25. If it would be helpful in your language, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: [the 1,775 shekels of silver]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

> **Note:**

See how you translated some of these in Exodus 27:17.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for the pillars	for the posts

Exodus 38:29

ULT	UST
And the bronze of the raised offering {was} 70 talents and 2, 400 shekels.	*The people had contributed about 2, 400 kilograms of bronze.*

ULT {was} 70 talents and 2, 400 shekels
UST about 2, 400 kilograms of
(שִׁבְעִים כִּכָּר וְאַלְפַּיִם וְאַרְבַּע־מֵאוֹת שָׁקֶל)

A talent is about 34 kilograms, and a shekel is about 11 grams. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote.

Support Reference: Biblical Weight

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And the bronze of	bronze

Exodus 38:30

ULT	UST
And with it he made the bases of the entrance of the tent of meeting and the altar of bronze and its grate of bronze and all the equipment of the altar	*With the bronze he made the bases to support the posts at the entrance of the sacred tent, the altar {for burning sacrifices} with its grate and its tools,*

ULT **grate of**
UST grate
(מִכְבָּר)

A **grate** is a frame of crossed bars for holding wood when burning. See how you translated this in Exodus 27:4.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
of the tent of meeting	the sacred tent
the altar	the altar {for burning sacrifices}
of bronze	the altar {for burning sacrifices}
bronze	grate
the altar	its

Exodus 38:31

ULT	UST
and the bases of the surrounding courtyard and the bases of the entrance of the courtyard and all of the tent pegs of the Dwelling and all of the tent pegs of the surrounding courtyard.	*the bases {for the posts that supported the curtains} that surrounded the courtyard, the bases for the entrance to the courtyard, and the pegs for the sacred tent and for the curtains around the courtyard.*

ULT **the tent pegs of … the tent pegs of**
UST the pegs
(יִתְּדֹת & יִתְּדֹת)

These are sharp bronze stakes that were used to secure the corners of a tent to the ground.

See how you translated this in Exodus 27:19.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the entrance of	for the entrance
the Dwelling	for the sacred tent

Exodus 39

Exodus 39 General Notes

- This chapter continues the record of the construction in almost exact repetition of Yahweh's instructions. The special, holy clothing mentioned in previous chapters is produced to the correct specifications in this chapter. (See: holy, holiness, unholy, sacred)

Be sure to consult your previous work to maintain consistency. Verses 1–31 of this chapter follow Exodus 28:1–37 with some differences. Verses 33–41 follow 35:10–19.

- Throughout the chapter the people making the items are referred to interchangeably as **he** or **they**. Both are generic nouns referring to any of the team of skilled craftsmen. You could change all instances to "they" or "he" if that would be understood better in your language. (See: Generic Noun Phrases; and First, Second or Third Person)

Exodus 39:1

ULT	UST
And from the blue and the purple and the worm of scarlet they made finely-woven clothes for service in the Holy Place. And they made the clothes of holiness which {were} for Aaron, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*Bezalel, Oholiab, and the other skilled workmen made the beautiful holy vestments for Aaron to wear while he served Yahweh as a priest in the Holy Place. They made them from blue, purple, and red woolen cloth, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.*

Note:

See how you translated similar instructions in Exodus 28:4–5.

ULT **the clothes of holiness**
UST holy vestments
(אֶת־בִּגְדֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **holiness**, you can express the same idea in another way. See how you translated this in 28:2. Alternate translation: [the holy clothes]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and the purple	purple
for service	while he served Yahweh as a priest
in the Holy Place	in the Holy Place
holiness	holy
for Aaron	for Aaron to wear
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 39:2

ULT	UST
And he made the ephod from gold, blue, and purple, worm of scarlet, and twisted fine linen.	*He made the sacred apron from finely twisted linen, blue, purple, and red thread, and with {fine} gold {wire}.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 28:6.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ephod	the sacred apron
from gold	from … and with {fine} gold {wire}
and purple	purple

Exodus 39:3

ULT	UST
And they hammered the thin plates of gold, and he cut {them} into threads to work among the blue and among the purple and among the worm of scarlet and among the fine linen, the work of a skillful craftsman.	*They hammered some thin sheets of gold and cut them into thin strips that they embroidered into the fine linen and into the blue, purple, and red cloth.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
the purple	purple

Exodus 39:4

ULT	UST
They made joined shoulder pieces for it. It was joined on its two corners.	*They made shoulder straps to attach the two sides of the ephod together.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to 28:7.

Exodus 39:5

ULT	UST
And the skillfully crafted sash of the ephod which is on it was from it, of like workmanship, of gold, blue, and purple and worm of scarlet and twined fine linen, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*{They made} a carefully woven belt that matched the sacred apron. They made it from the same piece of cloth as the apron. (That cloth was finely twisted linen with {skillfully embroidered} blue, purple, red thread, and {fine} gold {thread}.) {They sewed it} onto the apron, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 28:8.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
of gold	and {fine} gold {thread}
and purple	purple
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 39:6

ULT	UST
And they made the stones of onyx {with} ornamental settings of gold surrounding {them}. The names of the sons of Israel {were} engraved on {them like} the engravings of a signet.	*They cut two onyx stones and mounted them in decorative gold settings. They engraved the names of the 12 sons of Jacob on the stones like someone engraves a signet ring.*

> **Note:**

See how you translated many of these words in Exodus 28:9 and especially Exodus 28:11. Here, as there, the **sons of Israel** literally means the twelve sons, Rueben through Benjamin, not the Israelite nation.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
Israel	Jacob

Exodus 39:7

ULT	UST
And he put them on the shoulder pieces of the ephod as stones of reminder for the sons of Israel, as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*They fastened the stones onto the shoulder straps of the sacred apron to memorialize the names of the 12 tribes of Israel, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to the first half of Exodus 28:12.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ephod	the sacred apron
Israel	the names of the 12 tribes of Israel
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 39:8

ULT	UST
And he made the breastpiece, the work of a skillful craftsman, like the work of the ephod, from gold, blue, and purple and worm of scarlet and twisted fine linen.	*He made the sacred pouch of the same materials as the sacred apron and skillfully embroidered it in the same way with gold, blue, purple, and red finely twisted linen.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 28:15; a few words are omitted here.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the breastpiece	the sacred pouch
the ephod	as the sacred apron
from gold	with gold
and purple	purple

Exodus 39:9

ULT	UST
It was square, folded double. They made the breastpiece, its length: a span; and its width: a span folded double.	*They folded the material double so that they made the pouch a double-folded square 23 centimeters long and 23 centimeters wide.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 28:16; a few words are added or repeated here.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the breastpiece	the pouch

Exodus 39:10

ULT	UST
And they set in it four rows of precious stones. The first row {was} a row of a ruby, of a topaz, and of a garnet.	*They fastened four rows of valuable stones onto the pouch. In the first row, they put a red ruby, a yellow topaz, and a red garnet.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 28:17.

Exodus 39:11

ULT	UST
And the second row: an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond.	*They put a green emerald, a blue sapphire, and a white diamond in the second row.*

ULT an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond

UST a green emerald, a blue sapphire, and a white diamond

(נֹ֚פֶךְ סַפִּ֔יר וְיָהֲלֹֽם)

This verse is identical to Exodus 28:18.

Exodus 39:12

ULT	UST
And the third row: a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst.	*They put a red jacinth, a white agate, and a purple amethyst in the third row.*

ULT a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst
UST a red jacinth, a white agate, and a purple amethyst
(לֶשֶׁם שְׁבוֹ וְאַחְלָמָה)

This verse is identical to Exodus 28:19.

Exodus 39:13

ULT	UST
And the fourth row: a beryl, an onyx, and a jasper. {The stones were} surrounded by ornamental gold settings.	*They put a yellow beryl, an onyx, and a green jasper in the fourth row. They put tiny gold frames around each of the stones.*

ULT a beryl, an onyx, and a jasper

UST a yellow beryl, an onyx, and a green jasper

(תַּרְשִׁישׁ שֹׁהַם וְיָשְׁפֵּה)

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 28:20.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	They put tiny gold frames around each of the stones

Exodus 39:14

ULT	UST
And the precious stones {were} according to the names of the sons of Israel—they {were} according to their 12 names. Each {was like} the engraving of a signet according to its name—for the 12 tribes.	*{They carved} the name of one of the 12 sons of Jacob into each of these stones like they were making signet rings. These name-stones represented the 12 tribes of Israel.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 28:21.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Jacob
tribes	tribes of Israel

Exodus 39:15

ULT	UST
And they made twisted chains on the breastpiece, as a work of rope—pure gold.	*They attached two chains that they made from purified gold and braided like cords to the sacred pouch.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 28:22.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the breastpiece	the sacred pouch
pure	purified
gold	that they made from … gold

Exodus 39:16

ULT	UST
And they made two ornamental settings of gold and two rings of gold and put the two rings on the two ends of the breastpiece.	*They made two decorative gold settings and two gold rings and attached them to the upper corners of the sacred pouch.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 28:23–24.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
gold	gold
the breastpiece	the sacred pouch

Exodus 39:17

ULT	UST
And they attached the two chains of gold to the rings on the two ends of the breastpiece.	*They fastened one end of each gold cord to one of the rings on the top corner of the pouch.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 28:24.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	one end of each gold cord
the breastpiece	the pouch

Exodus 39:18

ULT	UST
And they attached two of the ends of the two chains to the two ornamental settings. And they attached those to the shoulder pieces of the ephod at the front of its face.	*They fastened the other end of each cord to the two decorative settings that enclose the stones. Then they put those on the front side of the shoulder straps of the sacred apron.*

Note:

This verse is identical to Exodus 28:25 except for verb tense.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ephod	the sacred apron

Exodus 39:19

ULT	UST
And they made two rings of gold, and put them on the two ends of the breastpiece, on the edge which is toward the inner side of the ephod.	*Then they made two more gold rings and attached them to the lower corners of the sacred pouch on the inside edges next to the sacred apron.*

Note:

This verse is identical to Exodus 28:26 except for verb tense.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
the breastpiece	the sacred pouch
the ephod	the sacred apron

Exodus 39:20

ULT	UST
And they made two rings of gold, and put them on the two shoulder pieces of the ephod on the bottom of the front of its face, close to its joining above the skillfully crafted waistband of the ephod.	*They made two more gold rings and attached them to the lower part of the front of the shoulder straps near where the shoulder straps join with the sacred apron just above the sash.*

Note:

This verse is identical to Exodus 28:27 except for verb tense.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
the ephod	the sacred apron
the ephod	the sacred apron

Exodus 39:21

ULT	UST
And they tied the breastpiece by its rings to the rings of the ephod with a cord of blue to be on the finely crafted waistband of the ephod, so the breastpiece could not become detached from {being} with the ephod just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*They tied the rings on the sacred pouch to the rings on the sacred apron with a blue cord, so that the sacred pouch was above the sash and would not come loose from the sacred apron. They did these things exactly as Yahweh had instructed Moses to do.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to Exodus 28:28 except for the note about Yahweh's command.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the breastpiece	the rings on the sacred pouch
of the ephod	on the sacred apron
the ephod	the sash
the breastpiece	the sacred pouch
the ephod	the sacred apron
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 39:22

ULT	UST
And he made the robe of the ephod entirely of blue, the work of a weaver.	*Bezalel had a weaver make the robe {that Aaron would wear underneath his} sacred apron from only blue material.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to most of Exodus 28:31–32.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the robe	the robe {that Aaron would wear underneath his}
of the ephod	sacred apron

Exodus 39:23

ULT	UST
The opening of the robe {was} in the middle of it like an opening of a garment. The edge for its opening was all around so that it could not tear.	*It had an opening in the middle like other clothing. They made a border around this opening to prevent the material from tearing.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 28:32.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the robe	It

Exodus 39:24

ULT	UST
On the bottom hem of the robe they made pomegranates of twisted blue, purple, and scarlet yarn.	*At the lower edge of the robe they fastened decorations that resembled pomegranate fruit. They wove the decorations from blue, purple, and red woolen yarn.*

Note:

This verse is similar to part of Exodus 28:33.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the robe	robe
pomegranates	decorations that resembled pomegranate fruit
purple	purple

Exodus 39:25

ULT	UST
And they made bells of pure gold, and they put the bells between the pomegranates all around on the bottom edge of the robe, between the pomegranates—	*They made bells from purified gold and fastened them between each of the decorative pomegranates all around the bottom of the robe.*

Note:

This verse is similar to parts of Exodus 28:33.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
of pure	from purified
gold	gold
the robe	the robe

Exodus 39:26

ULT	UST
a bell and a pomegranate, a bell and a pomegranate—all around on the hem of the robe for serving, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*So the pattern was bell, pomegranate, bell, pomegranate, and so on all around the bottom of the robe. {The robe was} for {Aaron to wear while he} worked as a priest, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.*

Note:

The first part of this verse is almost identical to the first part of Exodus 28:34.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the robe	the robe
for serving	{The robe was} for {Aaron to wear while he} worked as a priest
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 39:27

ULT	UST
And they made the tunics of fine linen for Aaron and for his sons, the work of a weaver,	*For Aaron and his sons, a skilled weaver made long-sleeved tunics from fine linen,*

Note:

Verses 27–29 reflect Exodus 28:39, 40, and 42 but in a different order.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the tunics of	long-sleeved tunics
for Aaron	For Aaron

Exodus 39:28

ULT	UST
and the fine linen turban and the fine linen ornate headbands and the linen undergarments of fine twisted linen	*the turban and the caps from fine linen, the undershorts from very finely twined linen,*

Note:

Verses 27–29 reflect Exodus 28:39, 40, and 42 but in a different order.

Exodus 39:29

ULT	UST
and the sash of fine linen and of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, the work of an embroiderer, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*and the sash from fine linen with blue, purple, and red woolen embroidery, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.*

Note:

Verses 27–29 reflect Exodus 28:39, 40, and 42 but in a different order.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
purple	purple
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 39:30

ULT	UST
And they made the rosette of the crown of holiness of pure gold and inscribed an inscription on it, like the engraving on a signet, “Holy to Yahweh.”	*They made a sacred ornamental decoration from purified gold and etched into it the words, “Dedicated to Yahweh,” just like carving a signet ring.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical Exodus 28:36. See 29:6 for the **crown of holiness**.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holiness of	a sacred ornamental decoration
pure	from purified
gold	gold
Holy	Dedicated
to Yahweh	to Yahweh

Exodus 39:31

ULT	UST
And they put a cord of blue on it to attach it on the top of the turban, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*They attached a blue cord to this for fastening it to the top of the turban, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.*

Note:

This verse is very similar to Exodus 28:37.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 39:32

ULT	UST
And all the service of the Dwelling, the tent of meeting, was finished. And the sons of Israel did according to all that Yahweh had commanded Moses; thus they did.	*{After this,} they had finished all the work on the sacred tent where they would meet with Yahweh. The Israelites had done everything in exactly the way that Yahweh had commanded Moses to have it done.*

Note:

This verse marks the end of the narrative of the construction of the Dwelling. More precisely, it seems to mark the beginning of an ending section. Use the natural form in your language for expressing the conclusion of a story.

Support Reference: End of Story

ULT **the Dwelling, the tent of meeting**
UST the sacred tent where they would meet with Yahweh
(מִשְׁכַּן אֹהֶל מוֹעֵד)

The **tabernacle** and **tent of meeting** are the same thing. The two interchangeable terms are brought together here in a poetic doubling to bring this part of the narrative to a close. If your readers would find this confusing you may need to simplify to one or expand in explanation like in the UST. Alternate translation: [holy meeting tent]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **And the sons of Israel did according to all that Yahweh had commanded Moses; thus they did**
UST The Israelites had done everything in exactly the way that Yahweh had commanded Moses to have it done
(וַיַּעֲשׂוּ בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל ׀ כְּכֹל אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה יְהוָה אֶת־מֹשֶׁה כֵּן עָשׂוּ)

Here, **thus they did** parallels the whole rest of the sentence. Like the doubling of the terms for **tabernacle** this brings the narrative of building to an emphatic conclusion. If this sort of parallelism would convey a meaning other than this emphatic conclusion in your language you may need to use another natural way to close the narrative with emphasis on the Israelites complete obedience. Alternate translation: [And the sons of Israel faithfully did exactly according to all that Yahweh had commanded Moses]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **And all the service of the Dwelling, the tent of meeting, was finished. And the sons of Israel did according to all that Yahweh had commanded Moses; thus they did**
UST {After this,} they had finished all the work on the sacred tent where they would meet with Yahweh. The Israelites had done everything in exactly the way that Yahweh had commanded Moses to have it done
(וַתֵּכֶל כָּל־עֲבֹדַּת מִשְׁכַּן אֹהֶל מוֹעֵד וַיַּעֲשׂוּ בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל ׀ כְּכֹל אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה יְהוָה אֶת־מֹשֶׁה כֵּן עָשׂוּ)

This verse starts a short narrative of the Israelites bringing and presenting the items for the Dwelling to Moses for inspection. It is a summary of the construction and extended conclusion to the last few chapters. Your team may need to decide how to group verse 32, as it both closes the construction narrative and introduces this next section, which ends with a very similar summary statement in 39:42–43.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent where they would meet with Yahweh
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent where they would meet with Yahweh
Israel	The Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 39:33

ULT	UST
And they brought the Dwelling to Moses: the tent and all its equipment and its clasps and its frames and its bars and its pillars and its bases;	*The craftsmen brought Moses the whole sacred tent structure: the tent and all its equipment, the fasteners, frames, crossbars, posts, bases,*

Note:

This verse, especially the list of items, is very similar to 35:11.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the whole sacred tent structure
Moses	Moses
the tent	the tent
and its pillars	posts

Exodus 39:34

ULT	UST
and the covering of reddened hides of rams and the covering of hides of sea-cows and the curtain of covering;	*the red rams' skin and fine leather hide coverings {for the sacred tent}, the curtain for hiding {the holiest place},*

ULT and the covering of reddened hides of rams and the covering of hides of sea-cows
UST the red rams' skin and fine leather hide coverings {for the sacred tent}
(וְאֶת־מִכְסֵּה עוֹרֹת הָאֵילִם הַמְאָדָּמִים וְאֶת־מִכְסֵה עֹרֹת הַתְּחָשִׁים)

See how you translated similar phrases to this in Exodus 26:14.

ULT the curtain of covering
UST the curtain for hiding {the holiest place}
(פָּרֹכֶת הַמָּסָךְ)

See how you translated similar phrases to this in 35:12.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
rams	rams
the curtain of	the curtain
covering	for hiding {the holiest place}

Exodus 39:35

ULT	UST
the Box of the Testimony and the poles and the atonement lid;	*the sacred chest, the poles, the chests' lid,*

Note:

See how you translated similar phrases to this in 35:12.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Box of the Testimony	the sacred chest
the atonement lid	the chests' lid

Exodus 39:36

ULT	UST
the table with all of its equipment and the bread of the faces;	*the table and all its utensils, the sacred bread to present before God,*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to 35:13.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the bread of	the sacred bread

Exodus 39:37

ULT	UST
the pure lampstand with its lamps, lamps of the row, and all its accessories and the oil of the light;	*the pure {gold} lampstand with all its lamps in a line, and its utensils, and the oil to burn for light,*

> **Note:** (39:37-38)

These verses are very similar to 35:14–15.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	pure {gold}
the … lampstand	the … lampstand
its lamps	all its lamps
the oil of	the oil to burn for

Exodus 39:38

ULT	UST
and the altar of gold and the oil of anointing and the incense of fragrance and the curtain of the entrance of the tent;	*the golden altar {for burning incense}, the oil for anointing, the sweet-smelling incense, the curtain for the entrance to the sacred tent,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar of	altar {for burning incense}
gold	golden
the oil of	the oil
anointing	for anointing
the curtain of	the curtain for
the tent	the sacred tent

Exodus 39:39

ULT	UST
the altar of bronze and the grate of bronze that {is} for it, its poles and all of its utensils, the basin and its base;	*the bronze altar and its bronze grating, the poles, and all its implements, the washbasin and its base,*

Note:

This verse is almost identical with 35:16.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar of	the … altar
bronze	bronze
bronze	bronze

Exodus 39:40

ULT	UST
the curtains of the courtyard, its pillars and bases and the curtain of the gate of the courtyard, its ropes and its tent pegs and all the items of the service of the Dwelling for the tent of meeting;	*the curtains to surround the courtyard and the posts and bases, the curtain for the entrance to the courtyard, the ropes and pegs and all the things for serving in the sacred tent where they would meet Yahweh,*

Note:

This verse is almost identical with 35:17 and parts of 35:18.

ULT **the Dwelling for the tent of meeting**
UST in the sacred tent where they would meet Yahweh
(הַמִּשְׁכָּן לְאֹהֶל מוֹעֵד)

These refer to the same place. See how you translated the doubling in 39:32. Alternate translation: [the Dwelling, that is the tent of meeting]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **the Dwelling for the tent of meeting**
UST in the sacred tent where they would meet Yahweh
(הַמִּשְׁכָּן לְאֹהֶל מוֹעֵד)

This verse is identical to 35:19.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the curtains of	the curtains to surround
its pillars	the posts
the curtain of	the curtain
the gate of	for the entrance
the Dwelling	in the sacred tent where they would meet Yahweh
for the tent of meeting	in the sacred tent where they would meet Yahweh

Exodus 39:41

ULT	UST
finely-woven clothing for serving in the Holy Place, the clothing of holiness for Aaron the priest, and the clothing of his sons, to {be} priests.	*and the beautiful, sacred vestments for Aaron and his sons to wear when they work as priests in the Holy Place.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in the Holy Place	in the Holy Place
holiness	sacred
for Aaron	for Aaron
the priest	to wear when … as priests
to {be} priests	to wear when … as priests

Exodus 39:42

ULT	UST
Thus the sons of Israel did all the work according to all that Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*The Israelites had done all the work in exactly the way that Yahweh had commanded Moses to have it done.*

Note:

This verse is almost identical to the second half of 39:32.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	The Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 39:43

ULT	UST
And Moses saw all of the work, and behold, they had done it. Just as Yahweh had commanded, thus they had done. And Moses blessed them.	*Then Moses examined everything they had made. Truly, they had done everything exactly as Yahweh had commanded them to do it. Then Moses blessed the workmen.*

ULT and behold
UST Truly
(וְהִנֵּה)

Here, the word **behold** draws attention to the information that follows. Use a word or marking in your language that draws attention to the next information.

ULT Just as Yahweh had commanded, thus they had done
UST exactly as Yahweh had commanded them to do it
(כַּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּה יְהוָה כֵּן עָשׂוּ)

This (and really verse 42) is the end of the conclusion of the construction of materials portion of the story. The ending began in 39:32. If your language has specific features that should be part of the end of a section like this, consider using them here.

Support Reference: End of Story

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
And … blessed	Then … blessed

Exodus 40

Exodus 40 General Notes

Structure and Formatting

- In this chapter, **just as Yahweh commanded Moses** is repeated seven times, as in the previous chapter, to show that Moses was obedient to every detail of Yahweh's command.
- This chapter is repetitive both internally and with other parts of the book. Verses 17–33 parallel verses 2–8 in an expanded way.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

- The **Dwelling** and **tent of meeting** are the same thing, but both appear next to each other many times in this chapter. The two interchangeable terms are brought together throughout this chapter in a poetic doubling to bring book to a close. If your readers would find this confusing, you may need to simplify to one or expand in explanation like in the UST.
- This chapter says that Moses did all these things. Just like with Bezalel in earlier chapters, it would have been impossible for him to do all this personally. The people helped him set up the Dwelling. In many translations this will more clear if you make this explicit.
- "the glory of Yahweh filled the Dwelling": This phrase indicates that Yahweh began to dwell within the Dwelling, among Israel, in a special way. (See: glory, glorious, glorify; and tabernacle)

Exodus 40:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Then Yahweh said to Moses,*

Note:

There is a transition to a new event at the beginning of this chapter. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 40:2

ULT	UST
"On the first day of the month, in the first month, you shall raise up the Dwelling of the tent of meeting.	*"Set up the sacred tent where you will meet with me on the first day of the first month of the year.*

ULT On the first day of the month, in the first month
UST on the first day of the first month of the year
(בְּיוֹם־הַחֹדֶשׁ הָרִאשׁוֹן בְּאֶחָד לַחֹדֶשׁ)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here. Alternate translation: [On day one of the month, in month one]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT the Dwelling of the tent of meeting
UST the sacred tent where you will meet with me
(אֶת־מִשְׁכַּן אֹהֶל מוֹעֵד)

These refer to the same place. See how you translated the doubling in 39:32. Alternate translation: [the Dwelling, that is the tent of meeting]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT month
UST month of the year
(לַחֹדֶשׁ)

Here, the new or next year is omitted because it can be inferred from context. However, if that would be misunderstood by your readers (perhaps they would think it just meant "next month" or something), you could add a phrase to make it clear that it is the first month of the year. This refers to exactly one year after God rescued his people from Egypt. See Exodus 12:2. Alternate translation: [month of the year]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
On … day of	on the
the month	day of
month	month of the year
the Dwelling of	the sacred tent where you will meet with me
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent where you will meet with me

Exodus 40:3

ULT	UST
And you shall place the Box of the Testimony there, and you shall cover over the box with the curtain.	*Put inside it the sacred chest containing the stone slabs with the Ten Commandments. Hide it by hanging its curtain in front of it.*

ULT and you shall cover over

UST Hide it by hanging its curtain in front of it

(וְסַכֹּתָ עַל)

Alternate translation: [and you shall conceal]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Box of the Testimony	the sacred chest containing the stone slabs with the Ten Commandments
the box	by hanging its curtain in front of it
the curtain	by hanging its curtain in front of it

Exodus 40:4

ULT	UST
And you shall bring in the table and arrange its arrangement. And you shall bring in the lampstand and set up its lamps.	*Bring the table into the sacred tent and neatly organize on it all the things that they made for it. Then bring in the lampstand and put the lamps up into it.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the lampstand	the lampstand

Exodus 40:5

ULT	UST
And you shall put the altar of gold for incense before the face of the Box of the Testimony, and you shall place the curtain of the gate to the Dwelling.	*Put the gold altar for burning incense in front of the sacred chest, and set up the curtain at the entrance of the sacred tent.*

> ULT **before the face of**
> UST in front of
> (לִפְנֵי)

Alternate translation: [in front of]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar of	altar
gold	the gold
the Box of the Testimony	the sacred chest
the curtain of	the curtain
to the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 40:6

ULT	UST
And you shall put the altar of the burnt offering before the face of the gate of the Dwelling, the tent of meeting.	*Put the altar for burning sacrifices in front of the entrance to the sacred tent where you will meet with me.*

ULT before the face of
UST in front of
(לִפְנֵי)

Alternate translation: [in front of]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT the Dwelling, the tent of meeting
UST to the sacred tent where you will meet with me
(מִשְׁכַּן אֹהֶל־מוֹעֵד)

These refer to the same place. See how you translated the doubling in 39:32. Alternate translation: [the Dwelling, that is the tent of meeting]

Support Reference: Doublet

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar of	the altar for burning sacrifices
the burnt offering	the altar for burning sacrifices
the Dwelling	to the sacred tent where you will meet with me
the tent of meeting	to the sacred tent where you will meet with me

Exodus 40:7

ULT	UST
And you shall put the basin between the tent of meeting and the altar and put water there.	*Put the washbasin between the sacred tent and the altar, and fill it with water.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent
the altar	the altar

Exodus 40:8

ULT	UST
And you shall set up the courtyard around it, and set up the curtain of the gate of the courtyard.	*Hang the curtains around the outside to make the courtyard, and also hang up the courtyard's entrance curtain.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the curtain of	curtain
the gate of	entrance

Exodus 40:9

ULT	UST
And you shall take the oil of anointing and anoint the Dwelling and everything that is in it. And you shall set apart it and all its furnishings, and it will be holy.	*Then take the oil for anointing and put it on the sacred tent and everything that is in it, to consecrate it all to me. Then it will be dedicated to me.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the oil of	the oil for anointing
anointing	the oil for anointing
and anoint	and put it on
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
holy	dedicated to me

Exodus 40:10

ULT	UST
And you shall anoint the altar of the burnt offering and all its utensils. And you shall set apart the altar, and the altar will be a holiest holy thing.	*Also put some of the oil on the altar on which the priests will burn the sacrifices and on all the things that they will use at the altar. This will consecrate the altar to me. Then it will be scared, dedicated to me.*

ULT **a holiest holy thing**
UST be scared, dedicated to me
(קֹ֣דֶשׁ קָדָשִׁ֔ים)

Here, **holiest holy** means extremely or uniquely holy. If this form would not express that this item would become uniquely holy in your language you may need to find another way to express this idea. See how you translated this in Exodus 29:37. Alternate translation: [a most holy thing] or [extraordinarily holy]

Support Reference: Possession

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar of	on the altar
the burnt offering	on which the priests will burn the sacrifices
the altar	the altar
the altar	it
holiest	be scared, dedicated to me
a … holy thing	be scared, dedicated to me

Exodus 40:11

ULT	UST
And you shall anoint the basin and its base and set it apart.	*Also put some of the oil on the washbasin and its base, to consecrate them to me.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

Exodus 40:12

ULT	UST
And you shall bring Aaron and his sons to the gate of the tent of meeting and wash them with water.	*Then bring Aaron and his sons to the entrance of the sacred tent and wash them with water.*

Note:

Verses 12–15 are similar to Exodus 29:4–9.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Exodus 40:13

ULT	UST
And you shall clothe Aaron with the garments of holiness and anoint him and set him apart, and he will serve as a priest to me.	*Then set Aaron apart for serving me as a priest by putting his sacred vestments on him and by pouring oil on him.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	him
holiness	his sacred vestments
and he will serve as a priest	for serving … as a priest

Exodus 40:14

ULT	UST
And you shall bring his sons and clothe them {with} tunics.	*Also bring Aaron's sons and put their special tunics on them,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{with} tunics	their special tunics

Exodus 40:15

ULT	UST
And you shall anoint them just as you anointed their father, and they will serve as priests to me. And their anointing will cause them to be a priesthood forever throughout their generations.”	*then pour oil on them just as you did on their father. This will consecrate them to serve me as priests. By pouring oil on them, you will cause them and their descendants to be priests throughout all their future generations.”*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And you shall anoint	then pour oil on
you anointed	you did on
and they will serve as priests	This will consecrate them to serve … as priests
their anointing	By pouring oil on them
a priesthood	priests
forever	throughout all their future generations
throughout their generations	throughout all their future generations

Exodus 40:16

ULT	UST
And Moses did according to all that Yahweh had commanded him. Thus he did.	*Moses did all these things exactly as Yahweh had commanded him to do.*

Note:

This statement starts a new section in which Moses does all the things **just as Yahweh had commanded**; this poetic obedience statement was seen so often in the previous chapter. You may wish to mark this transition and poetic statement in a particular way in your language that is similar to how you did in the last chapter. See 39:32.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh

Exodus 40:17

ULT	UST
And it was in the first month, the second year, on the first of the month {that} the Dwelling was raised up.	*On the first day of the first month of Israel's second year, the people set up the sacred tent.*

ULT {that} the Dwelling was raised up
UST the people set up the sacred tent
(הוּקַם הַמִּשְׁכָּן)

The use of the passive here indicates that the important thing is the completion of the task of setting up the tent on the specific date Yahweh had commanded. If your language would show that focus in a different way, use a natural form to do that. Alternate translation: [that they set up the Dwelling]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT in the first month, the second year, on the first of the month
UST On the first day of the first month of Israel's second year
(בַּחֹדֶשׁ הָרִאשׁוֹן בַּשָּׁנָה הַשֵּׁנִית בְּאֶחָד לַחֹדֶשׁ)

This refers to exactly one year after God rescued his people from Egypt. See Exodus 12:2.

ULT in the first month, the second year, on the first of
UST On the first day of the first month of Israel's second year
(בַּחֹדֶשׁ הָרִאשׁוֹן בַּשָּׁנָה הַשֵּׁנִית בְּאֶחָד)

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers here. Alternate translation: [in month one, year two, on day one of]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in … month	of … month
the month	On the first day
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 40:18

ULT	UST
And Moses raised up the Dwelling and placed its bases and set up its frames and placed its bars and set up its pillars.	*Moses set up the sacred tent, and its bases, frames, crossbars, and posts.*

ULT And Moses raised up the Dwelling and placed its bases

UST Moses set up the sacred tent, and its bases

(וַיָּקֶם מֹשֶׁה אֶת־הַמִּשְׁכָּן וַיִּתֵּן אֶת־אֲדָנָיו)

Moses was the leader. It would have been impossible for him to do all this personally; the people helped him set up the Dwelling. All references to Moses from here to all the Dwelling assembly listing through 40:33 can be understood this way. Alternate translation: [And Moses directed the people to raise up the Dwelling, and they placed its bases]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
its pillars	and posts

Exodus 40:19

ULT	UST
And he spread the tent over the Dwelling and put the covering of the tent over it on the top, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*He spread out the two layers of coverings over the sacred tent, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 40:20

ULT	UST
And he took the testimony and put {it} into the box. And he put the poles on the box and put the atonement lid on the top of the box.	*Then Moses took the two stone slabs on which Yahweh had written his commandments and put them into the sacred chest. He put the carrying poles into the rings on the chest and put the lid on top of it.*

ULT **And he took … And he put**
UST Then Moses took … He put
(וַיִּקַּח & וַיָּשֶׂם)

In this verse and the next, there may be an exception to the word **he** meaning someone who was helping Moses, because these items were especially sacred. If you have been using a form that indicates that people are helping Moses construct the Dwelling, you may consider switching to “Moses” here.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the testimony	the two stone slabs on which Yahweh had written his commandments
the box	the sacred chest
the box	the chest
the atonement lid	the lid
the box	it

Exodus 40:21

ULT	UST
And he brought the box into the Dwelling. And he set up the curtain of covering, and he covered over the Box of the Testimony, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*Then Moses took the chest into {the Holy Place inside} the sacred tent. He hung the thick curtain to conceal the chest containing the commandments, exactly as Yahweh had commanded him.*

ULT **And he brought … And he set up**
UST Then Moses took … He hung
(וַיָּבֵא & וַיָּשֶׂם)

In this verse and the previous verse, there may be an exception to the word **he** meaning someone who was helping Moses, because these items were especially sacred. If you have been using a form that indicates that people are helping Moses construct the Dwelling, you may consider switching to “Moses” here.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the box	the chest
the Dwelling	{the Holy Place inside} the sacred tent
the Box of the Testimony	the chest containing the commandments
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	him

Exodus 40:22

ULT	UST
And he put the table into the tent of meeting, on the north side of the Dwelling, outside of the curtain.	*He set the table inside the sacred tent, on its north side, outside the curtain {that hid the sacred chest}.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
into the tent of meeting	inside the sacred tent
the Dwelling	its
the curtain	curtain {that hid the sacred chest}

Exodus 40:23

ULT	UST
And he arranged on it the arrangement of bread before the face of Yahweh, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*He laid out the bread neatly on the table to display it before Yahweh, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses to do.*

ULT before the face of
UST to display it before
(לִפְנֵי)

Alternate translation: [in the presence of]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bread	the bread
Yahweh	Yahweh
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 40:24

ULT	UST
And he put the lampstand into the tent of meeting, across from the table, on the south side of the Dwelling.	*He set the lampstand inside the sacred tent, on the south side, on the opposite side from the table.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the lampstand	the lampstand
into the tent of meeting	inside the sacred tent
the Dwelling	inside the sacred tent

Exodus 40:25

ULT	UST
And he lifted up the lamps before the face of Yahweh, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*Then he set the lamps on the lampstand in Yahweh's presence, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.*

ULT before the face of
UST in … presence
(לִפְנֵי)

Alternate translation: [in the presence of]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh's
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 40:26

ULT	UST
And he put the altar of gold into the tent of meeting in front of the face of the curtain.	*He set the gold altar {for burning incense} inside the sacred tent, in front of the curtain {that hid the Most Holy Place}.*

ULT in front of the face of
UST in front of
(לִפְנֵי)

Alternate translation: [in front of]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar of	the … altar {for burning incense}
gold	gold
into the tent of meeting	inside the sacred tent
the curtain	the curtain {that hid the Most Holy Place}

Exodus 40:27

ULT	UST
And he caused smoke on it, incense of fragrance, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*He burned some sweet-smelling incense on it, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.*

Note:

See 30:7.

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
incense of	some … incense
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 40:28

ULT	UST
And he set up the curtain of the gate of the Dwelling.	*He hung the curtain at the entrance to the sacred tent.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the curtain of	the curtain
the Dwelling	to the sacred tent

Exodus 40:29

ULT	UST
And he put the altar of the burnt offering at the gate of the Dwelling, the tent of meeting, and offered up on it the burnt offering and the grain offering, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*At the entrance to the sacred tent where they would meet with Yahweh, he placed the altar for burning sacrifices. Then he sacrificed meat and flour by burning them on it, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the altar of	the altar
the burnt offering	for burning sacrifices
the Dwelling … of	to the sacred tent where they would meet with Yahweh
the tent … meeting	to the sacred tent where they would meet with Yahweh
the burnt offering	meat
the grain offering	flour
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 40:30

ULT	UST
And he placed the basin between the tent of meeting and the altar, and he put water for washing there.	*He set the washbasin between the sacred tent and the bronze altar, and filled the washbasin with water.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent
the altar	the bronze altar

Exodus 40:31

ULT	UST
And Moses, and Aaron, and his sons would wash their hands and their feet from it.	*Moses, Aaron, and his sons would wash their hands and feet in the washbasin.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
and Aaron	Aaron, and

Exodus 40:32

ULT	UST
Whenever they went into the tent of meeting and whenever they went close to the altar, they washed themselves, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*Whenever they went into the sacred tent and whenever they came close to the altar, they would wash themselves, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent
the altar	the altar
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Exodus 40:33

ULT	UST
And he raised up the courtyard around the Dwelling and the altar. And he set up the curtain of the gate of the courtyard. And Moses finished the work.	*He hung up {the curtains that} surrounded the sacred tent and the altar and the curtain at the entrance to the courtyard. Then Moses was finished building the sacred tent complex.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
and the altar	and the altar
the curtain of	the curtain
the gate of	at the entrance
Moses	Moses

Exodus 40:34

ULT	UST
And the cloud covered the tent of meeting, and the glory of Yahweh filled the Dwelling.	*Then the tall cloud covered the sacred tent, and Yahweh's power and brilliant light filled the sacred tent.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent
and the glory of	and … power and brilliant light
Yahweh	Yahweh's
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Exodus 40:35

ULT	UST
And Moses was not able to go into the tent of meeting, because the cloud had settled on it and the glory of Yahweh had filled the Dwelling.	*Because the cloud covered it and Yahweh's light was very bright, Moses was not able to enter the sacred tent.*

ULT **And Moses was not able to go into the tent of meeting, because the cloud had settled on it and the glory of Yahweh had filled the Dwelling**

UST Because the cloud covered it and Yahweh's light was very bright, Moses was not able to enter the sacred tent

(וְלֹא־יָכֹל מֹשֶׁה לָבוֹא אֶל־אֹהֶל מוֹעֵד כִּי־שָׁכַן עָלָיו הֶעָנָן וּכְבוֹד יְהוָה מָלֵא אֶת־הַמִּשְׁכָּן)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [Because the cloud had settled on it and the glory of Yahweh had filled the Dwelling, Moses was not able to go into the tent of meeting.]

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
the tent of meeting	the sacred tent
and the glory of	and … light
Yahweh had	Yahweh's
the Dwelling	was very bright … the sacred tent

Exodus 40:36

ULT	UST
And whenever the cloud was taken up from over the Dwelling, the sons of Israel would set out on all their travels,	*{From that day,} whenever Yahweh's cloud moved off of the sacred, tent the Israelites would {pack their camp} and start traveling.*

ULT And whenever the cloud was taken up
UST {From that day,} whenever Yahweh's cloud moved
(וּבְהֵעָלוֹת הֶעָנָן)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Whenever Yahweh's cloud moved]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred, tent
Israel	the Israelites

Exodus 40:37

ULT	UST
but if the cloud was not taken up, then they would not set out until the day it was taken up.	*But if the cloud did not move, they stayed where they were and waited for a day that the cloud moved.*

ULT but if the cloud was not taken up, then they would not set out until the day it was taken up

UST But if the cloud did not move, they stayed where they were and waited for a day that the cloud moved

(וְאִם־לֹ֣א יֵעָלֶ֣ה הֶעָנָ֔ן וְלֹ֥א יִסְע֖וּ עַד־י֣וֹם הֵעָלֹתֽוֹ)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [but if Yahweh did not take up the cloud, then they would not set out until the day he took it up.]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Exodus 40:38

ULT	UST
For the cloud of Yahweh {was} over the Dwelling by day, and fire was on it by night, before the eyes of all the house of Israel in all their travels.	*Wherever the Israelites traveled, Yahweh's cloud was above the sacred tent during the day, and his fire was over it at night. The Israelites could always see {that Yahweh was with them}.*

ULT **before the eyes of all the house of Israel**
UST The Israelites could always see {that Yahweh was with them}
(לְעֵינֵי כָל־בֵּית־יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Here, **before the eyes of** refers to being able to see. All the Israelites could see the cloud and fire. Alternate translation: [and all the house of Israel could see it]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the house of Israel**
UST The Israelites
(בֵּית־יִשְׂרָאֵל)

Here, **house** represents a people group, the Israelites, who were descended from Jacob, who was also named Israel. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a metaphor from your language or translate the meaning. This is a common biblical metaphor, so you may want to check other places this occurs. The **house of Israel** is equivalent to "sons of Israel" or "Israelites."

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh's
Dwelling	the sacred tent
the house of	The Israelites
Israel	The Israelites

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy - Exodus

v91

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, “I believe in the forgiveness of sin.” But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns “forgiveness” and “sin,” but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, “I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned,” by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, “What is its **weight**?” could be expressed as “How much does it **weigh**?” or “How **heavy** is it?”

Examples From the Bible

> From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun “childhood” refers to when someone was a child.

> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

> He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

> … from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)
>
> > Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.
>
> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)
>
> > But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.
>
> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)
>
> > Today the people in this house **have been saved** … Today God **has saved** the people in this house …
>
> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

> > The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.
>
> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)
>
> > He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

Exodus References:

1:7; 1:12; 1:13; 1:14; 1:14; 2:4; 3:3; 3:7; 3:7; 3:9; 3:17; 3:20; 8:23; 12:12; 12:13; 12:16; 14:13; 15:7; 15:11; 15:13; 16:23; 20:4; 20:6; 22:31; 23:1; 28:2; 28:4; 29:6; 29:29; 30:25; 30:31; 31:3; 31:3; 31:3; 31:3; 32:30; 32:31; 33:12; 33:18; 33:19; 33:22; 34:6; 34:7; 34:7; 35:21; 35:31; 35:31; 35:31; 35:31; 36:1; 36:1; 36:2; 39:1

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

> Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
(3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)
>
> > **The king’s servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)
>
> > It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.
> > It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)
>
> > He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Exodus References:

1:7; 3:16; 4:intro; 5:14; 5:16; 5:16; 5:18; 6:3; 8:24; 10:7; 10:8; 10:26; 12:13; 12:15; 12:16; 12:16; 12:16; 12:19; 12:34; 12:39; 12:46; 12:48; 13:3; 13:7; 13:7; 13:7; 14:4; 14:5; 14:5; 14:17; 14:18; 14:21; 15:8; 15:9; 19:12; 19:13; 20:24; 20:26; 21:intro; 21:8; 21:12; 21:15; 21:16; 21:17; 21:20; 21:22; 21:28; 21:28; 21:29; 21:29; 21:30; 21:32; 21:36; 22:intro; 22:2; 22:2; 22:3; 22:4; 22:6; 22:7; 22:7; 22:8; 22:10; 22:11; 22:12; 22:13; 22:14; 22:15; 22:19; 22:20; 23:12; 23:13; 23:21; 25:15; 25:28; 25:29; 25:31; 25:40; 26:3; 26:30; 27:7; 27:17; 28:7; 28:20; 28:28; 28:32; 28:35; 29:2; 29:34; 29:43; 30:32; 31:14; 31:15; 31:17; 31:18; 32:15; 33:12; 33:16; 33:23; 34:34; 35:2; 35:2; 35:23; 35:24; 38:21; 38:24; 40:17; 40:36; 40:37

Aside

Description

An aside is a figure of speech in which someone who is speaking to a person or group pauses to speak confidentially to himself or someone else about those to whom he had been speaking. The speaker does this to indicate in a strong way his thoughts or feelings about that person or group.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use asides, and readers could be confused by them. They may wonder why the speaker suddenly starts talking to himself or someone else about the people he is speaking with.

Examples From the Bible

> All the men of your covenant are sending you away as far as the border.
> The men of your peace are deceiving you and are prevailing against you.
> They of your bread will set a trap under you.
> **There is no understanding in him.** (Obadiah 1:7 ULT)

In the first three lines, Yahweh is telling the people of Edom what will happen to them because they did not help the people of Judah. In the fourth line, Yahweh says something about Edom to himself.

> And I purified them from everything foreign. And I caused the service watches to stand: for the priests and for the Levites, a man in his work; and for the offering of pieces of wood at the appointed times; and for the firstfruits. **Remember me, my God, for good.** (Nehemiah 13:30-31 ULT)

Nehemiah is speaking to the readers of his account and describing some of the many things he did to restore true worship in Judah after the people returned from exile. But he suddenly turns aside and addresses God, asking God to bless him for what he, Nehemiah, has done for those people.

Translation Strategies

(1) If an aside would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing, let the speaker continue speaking to the people who are listening to him, but make clear that he is now expressing his thoughts and feelings about them.
(2) If a person speaks a prayer to God as an aside, you can put the prayer in quotation marks to indicate that.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1)

> All the men of your covenant are sending you away as far as the border.
> The men of your peace are deceiving you and are prevailing against you. They of your bread will set a trap under you. **There is no understanding in him.** (Obadiah 1:7 ULT)

All the men of your covenant are sending you away as far as the border. The men of your peace are deceiving you and are prevailing against you. They of your bread will set a trap under you. **You do not understand any of this.**

(2)

> And I purified them from everything foreign. And I caused the service watches to stand: for the priests and for the Levites, a man in his work;
> 31 and for the offering of pieces of wood at the appointed times; and for the firstfruits. **Remember me, my God, for good.** (Nehemiah 13:30-31 ULT)

And I cleansed them from everything foreign, and I made assignments for the priests and for the Levites, a man to his own work. And the wood offering at the stated time, and the firstfruits. **“Remember me, my God, for good.”**

Exodus References:

2:14; 5:5; 11:3

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

> Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

> Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes to live in**,
> and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but

> > the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep.”
>
> It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

> > At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon,** than for you.
>
> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

> > Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

> Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

> > Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live**.”
>
> It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

> > At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you**.
> > or:
> > At the day of judgment, God will **punish you**

> **more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Exodus References:

1:22; 2:3; 2:9; 2:12; 3:intro; 3:7; 4:17; 4:20; 4:20; 7:20; 8:6; 8:6; 8:6; 8:8; 8:24; 9:6; 9:19; 9:20; 10:6; 10:17; 10:28; 11:8; 11:8; 12:4; 12:11; 12:27; 12:33; 13:13; 14:intro; 14:4; 15:1; 15:14; 15:17; 15:21; 16:8; 18:2; 18:11; 18:14; 18:25; 19:8; 20:26; 21:3; 21:13; 21:19; 21:21; 21:23; 21:24; 21:29; 21:30; 21:32; 21:34; 21:34; 21:36; 21:36; 22:15; 22:21; 23:11; 23:24; 23:29; 24:1; 24:8; 24:8; 24:9; 24:12; 25:4; 25:40; 26:19; 26:21; 26:25; 27:5; 28:25; 28:35; 29:9; 29:20; 29:21; 29:31; 29:40; 30:20; 32:intro; 32:5; 32:5; 32:18; 32:29; 32:32; 32:35; 33:5; 33:6; 33:9; 33:14; 34:7; 34:15; 34:20; 34:25; 35:6; 36:30; 38:8

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day**. **Peter was the best hunter in the village.He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story

- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story

> - Setting includes:
> - where the story takes place
> - when the story takes place
> - who is present when the story begins
> - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

> And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son (as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces a section of background information about Jesus' age and ancestors (Luke 3:23-38). The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

> Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain**, **rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said …
> (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said …."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

> **And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son **(as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word “and” to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb “was” shows that it is background information. A set of parentheses is also a way to mark background information. Here, “as it was assumed” gives background information to the phrase, “He was the son.” People assumed that Joseph was Jesus‘ father, although his true father was God.

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb “had” in “had done” shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

> Hagar gave birth to Abram’s son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. **Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram**. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)
>
> > “**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael.”

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John’s rebuke and Herod’s actions.

> > “Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother’s wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.”

Exodus References:

1:1; 1:20; 2:16; 2:23; 3:1; 6:14; 7:7; 9:31; 13:17; 16:34

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong," which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."

5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

> They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > “They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width

> will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> > “They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**.”

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> > “They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; [1] its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; [2] and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

> > “They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; [1] its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; [2] and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

> > [1] two and a half cubits
> > [2] one cubit and a half

Exodus References:

25:10; 25:17; 25:23; 25:25; 26:2; 26:8; 26:13; 26:16; 27:1; 27:9; 27:11; 27:12; 27:13; 27:14; 27:15; 27:16; 27:18; 28:16; 30:2; 38:18

Biblical Money

Description

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals, such as silver and gold, and would pay a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later, people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
(4) Use the biblical term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.
(5) Use the biblical term and explain it in a footnote.

Translation Strategies Applied

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

> The one owed 500 denarii, and the other, 50. (Luke 7:41b ULT)

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > “The one owed **500 denali**, and the other, **50**.”

1. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

> > "The one owed **500 silver coins**, and the other, **50**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

> > "The one owed **500 days' wages**, and the other, **50**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

> > "The one owed **500 denarii** 1, and the other owed **50 denarii**. 2"

The footnotes would look like:

> > [1] 500 days' wages [2] 50 days' wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

> > “The one owed **500 denarii**,1 and the other, **50**.”
> > (Luke 7:41 ULT)

> > [1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Exodus References:

21:32; 30:13; 30:15

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers

might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”

- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

> For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > “For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**,
> > and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**.”

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> > “For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters**
> > and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**.”

> > “For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and
> > **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**.”

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> > “For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**.”

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> > “For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**.”

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

> > “For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters[1], and 220 liters[2] of seed will yield only 22 liters[3].”

The footnotes would look like:

> [1] one bath
> [2] one homer
> [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word "measure."

> When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
(2) Use a generic word like "measure" or "quantity" or "amount."
(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as "basket" for grain or "jar" for wine.
(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

> When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

> > When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

(2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”

> > When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

> > When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

> > When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to

> the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Exodus References:

16:16; 16:36; 29:40; 30:24

Biblical Weight

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise, it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this, you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

> The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > “The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 sekeles**.”

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> > "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> > "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> > "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents (2,380 kilograms)** and **2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> > “The bronze from the offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. 1”

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Exodus References:

25:39; 30:13; 30:24; 38:24; 38:25; 38:26; 38:27; 38:29

Blessings

Description

Blessings are short sayings that people use to ask God to do something good for another person. In the Bible, the person saying the blessing speaks or writes directly to the person who will receive the blessing. The person who says the blessing does not directly speak to God, but it is understood that God is the one who will do the good thing mentioned. It is also understood that God hears the blessing, whether he is mentioned by name or not.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying blessings. There are many blessings in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say blessings in your language, so that people recognize them as blessings and understand what one person wants God to do for another.

Examples From the Bible

In the Bible, people often said a blessing when they met someone or when they were leaving someone or sending someone off.

In the book of Ruth, when Boaz meets his workers in the fields, he greets them with a blessing:

> Then behold, Boaz coming from Bethlehem! And he said to the reapers, “Yahweh be with you.” And they said to him, “May Yahweh bless you.” (Ruth 2:4 ULT)

Similarly, when Rebekah leaves her family, they say farewell with a blessing:

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

In a similar way, the writers of letters in the New Testament often wrote a blessing at the beginning of their letters as well as at the end. Here are examples from the beginning and end of Paul's second letter to Timothy:

> Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord. (2 Tim 1:2 ULT)
> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Find out how people say blessings in your language. Collect a list of common blessings, noting the form of the verb, the use of certain words, and the words that are not used in a blessing but would normally be in a sentence. Also find out what differences there might be between blessings that people use when they are speaking to each other and when they are writing to each other.

If translating a blessing literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Add a verb if that is natural in your language.
2. Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.
3. Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add a verb if that is natural in your language.

> The Lord with your spirit. The grace with you. (2 Tim 4:22, literal from the Greek)

In the Greek of this verse, there is no verb 'be.' However, in blessings in English, it is natural to use a verb. The idea that the 'grace' from God will be or remain with the person is implied in Greek.

The Lord **be** with your spirit. Grace **be** with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

(2) Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.

If people expect a blessing to refer to God in your language, you might have to provide ‘God’ as the subject or as the source of the blessing. In Greek and Hebrew, usually God is not explicitly mentioned in the blessing, but it is implied that God is the one acting to show his kindness to the person being addressed.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

The Lord be with your spirit. **May God give** grace to you.

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may **God grant that** you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may **God empower** your descendants **to** possess the gate of those who hate them.”

(3) Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a blessing in their language.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

May the Lord be with your spirit. May God cause his grace to be with you.

May you have God’s presence with you. May you experience grace from God.

> “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

“Our sister, we pray to God that you may be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and appeal to him that your descendants may possess the gate of those who hate them.”

“Our sister, by God’s power you will be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and your descendants will possess the gate of those who hate them.”

Exodus References:

4:18

Collective Nouns

Description

A collective noun is a singular noun that refers to a group of something. Examples: a **family, clan,** or **tribe** is a group of people who are related to each other; a **flock** is a group of birds or sheep; a **fleet** is a group of ships; and an **army** is a group of soldiers.

Many collective nouns are used exclusively as a singular replacement for a group as in the examples above. Frequently in the Bible the name of an ancestor is used, through a process of metonymy, as a collective noun referencing the group of his descendants. In the Bible, sometimes the singular noun will take a singular verb form, other times it will take a plural verb form. This may depend on how the author is thinking about the group, or whether the action is being done as a group or as individuals.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

There are several issues that require care when translating collective nouns. Further care is needed because the language you are translating into may not use collective nouns in the same way as the language you are translating from. Issues include:

1. The source language may have a collective noun for a group that the target language does not and vice-versa. You may have to translate a collective noun with a plural noun in your language, or you may need to translate a plural noun with a collective noun in your language.
2. Subject-verb agreement. Different languages or dialects may have different rules about using singular or plural verbs with collective nouns. Examples (from Wikipedia):
    - a singular noun with a singular verb: The team *is* in the dressing room.
    - a singular noun with a plural verb which is correct in British, but not American, English: The team *are* fighting among themselves. The team *have* finished the project.
3. Pronoun agreement. Similar to the previous, care needs to be taken to use the correct pronoun plurality and possibly gender or noun class to agree with the number/gender/class of the noun used. See the biblical examples below.
4. Clarity of referent. Especially if there is a mismatch in your translation between the verb and noun or pronoun concerning any of the factors above, readers may be confused about who or what is being referenced.

Examples from the Bible

> And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

The word in bold is written in singular form in both Hebrew and English, but it refers to a group of warriors that fight together.

> and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

The word in bold is singular and refers to a group of sheep.

> And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

Note in this example that the noun is singular but the pronoun is plural. This may or may not be allowed or natural in your language.

> Do not let **your heart** be troubled. **You** believe in God; believe also in me. (John 14:1 ULT)

In this verse, the words translated “your” and “you” are plural, referring to many people. The word “heart” is singular in form, but it refers to all of their hearts as a group.

> And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

The word **hair** is singular, but it refers to many hairs, not just one.

> And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

Here, “Israel” is singular, but means “the Israelites” by metonymy.

Translation Strategies

If your language has a collective (singular) noun that refers to the same group as referenced by the collective noun in the source text, then translate the word using that term. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

(1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.
(2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.
(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.
(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.

> And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the Israelites** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the Israelites** go.”

> And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

And he shall take the **hairs** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **them** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings.

(2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.

> And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

And Joab and all the **army men who were** with him arrived

> And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **people of the crowd were** coming to him, and he was teaching **them**.

(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.

> and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

and though the **group of sheep** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls.

> And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the people of Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the people of Israel** go.”

(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

> Now this John had his clothing from the **hairs** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist (Matthew 3:4a ULT)

Now this John had his clothing from the **hair** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist

> You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that {is} in **the heavens** above, or that {is} in the earth beneath, or that {is} in **the waters** under the earth. (Deuteronomy 5:8 ULT)

You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that is in **heaven** above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in **the water** under the earth.

Exodus References:

1:10; 3:7; 3:8; 3:18; 4:22; 5:2; 8:6; 8:21; 8:22; 9:3; 9:4; 9:7; 9:8; 9:10; 10:4; 10:5; 10:12; 10:12; 10:13; 10:14; 10:15; 10:19; 10:19; 12:15; 14:5; 14:19; 14:20; 14:30; 14:31; 15:22; 17:8; 22:5; 23:28; 32:9; 32:25; 34:12; 34:13; 34:15

Connect — Background Information

Time Relationship

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Background Clause

Description

A background clause is one that describes something that is ongoing. Then, in the same sentence, another clause indicates an event that begins to happen during that time. These events are also simultaneous events, but they have the further relationship of background event and main event because the event that is already happening serves as the background for the other event, the one that is in focus. The background event simply provides the time frame or other context for the main event or events.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate a shift in time in different ways. You (the translator) need to understand how these shifts in time are indicated in the original languages in order to communicate them clearly in your own language. Background clauses often indicate a time that began long before the event that is in focus. Translators need to understand how both the source language and the target language communicate background events. Some English words that indicate background events are “now,” “when,” “while,” and “during.” Those words can also indicate simultaneous events. To tell the difference, ask yourself if all of the events seem to be equal in importance and started at about the same time. If so, they are probably simultaneous events. But if an event(s) is ongoing and another event(s) just started, then the ongoing event(s) is probably background to the other event(s). Some common phrases that indicate background events are “in those days” and “at that time.”

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> **When** Solomon was old, he also worshiped their gods. (OBS Story 18 Frame 3)

Solomon began to worship foreign gods at a time when he was old. Being old is the background event. Worshiping other gods is the main event.

> And his parents went **every year** to Jerusalem to the Feast of the Passover. And when he was 12 years old, they went up according to the custom of the feast. (Luke 2:41-42 ULT)

The first event—going to Jerusalem—is ongoing and started long ago. We know this because of the words "every year." Going to Jerusalem is the background event. Then an event begins that started during the time "when he was twelve years old." So the main event is the specific time Jesus and his family traveled to Jerusalem for the Passover festival **when he was twelve years old.**

> And it came about that, **while** they were there, the days were fulfilled for her to give birth. (Luke 2:6 ULT)

Being in Bethlehem is the background event. The birth of the baby is the main event.

> And in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John, the son of Zechariah, in the wilderness. (Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

This example begins with five background clauses (marked by commas), signalled as background by the words "while" and "during." Then the main event happens: "the word of God came to John."

Translation Strategies

If the way that the Background Clauses are marked is also clear in your language, then translate the Background Clauses as they are.

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a Background Clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.
(2) If your language marks Background Clauses in a different way than using connecting words (such as by using different verb forms), then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> And in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John, the son of Zechariah, in the wilderness. (Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a background clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.

> **It happened during the time that** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, **and during the time that** Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, **and during the time that** his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, **and during the time that** Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **and also during the time that** Annas and Caiaphas were high priests—**that** the word of God came to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.

(2) If your language marks background clauses in a different way than using connecting words, such as with different verb forms, then use that way.

> Pontius Pilate **was governing** Judea, and Herod **was ruling over** Galilee, and his brother Philip **was ruling over** the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias **was ruling over** Abilene, and Annas and Caiaphas **were being** high priests—the word of God **came** to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.

Example of Differences in Time Relationship Connecting Words:

Category	Example
Background setting	Yahweh's word was rare **in those days**;
Background repeated	there was no frequent prophetic vision.
Introduction of main event	**At that time**, **when** Eli
Background	**whose** eyesight had begun to grow dim so that he could not see well,
Simultaneous background	was lying down in his own bed.
Simultaneous background	The lamp of God **had not yet** gone out,
Simultaneous background	**and** Samuel was lying down to sleep in the temple of Yahweh,
Simultaneous background	where the ark of God was.
Main event	**Yahweh called to Samuel**,
Sequential event	who said, "Here I am." (1 Sam 3:1-4 ULT)

In the above example, the first two lines talk about a condition that was going on for a long time. This is the general, long-term background. We know this from the phrase "in those days." After the introduction of the main event ("At that time,"), there are several lines of simultaneous background. The first one is introduced by "when," and then three more follow, with the last connected by "and." The background clause introduced by "where" explains a little more about the background clause before it. Then the main event happens, followed by more events. Translators will need to think about the best way to show these relationships in their language.

Exodus References:

33:7; 34:34

Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions

Conditional Relationships

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words, “if … then.” Often, however, the word “then” is not stated.

Contrary-to-Fact Conditions

Description

A Contrary-to-Fact Condition is a condition that sounds hypothetical, but the speaker is already certain that it is NOT true.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Usually there are no special words that indicate a Contrary-to-Fact Condition. The writer assumes that the reader knows that it is NOT a true condition. For this reason it often requires knowledge of implied information to know that it is not true. If this kind of condition is difficult for translators to communicate, they may want to consider using the same strategies that they used for Rhetorical Questions or Implied Information.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> But **if Baal is God**, worship him! (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> Elijah came near to all the people and said, “How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, follow him. But **if Baal is God**, then follow him.” Yet the people did not answer him a word. (1 Kings 18:21 ULT)

Baal is not God. Elijah is not suggesting that Baal might be God, and he does not want the people to follow Baal. But Elijah used a conditional statement to show them that what they were doing was wrong. In the example above, we see two conditions that have the same construction. The first one, “If Yahweh is God,” is a Factual Condition because Elijah is

certain that it is true. The second one, “if Baal is God,” is a Contrary-to-Fact Condition because Elijah is certain that it is not true. You will need to consider if people would say both of these in the same way in your language or if they would say them in different ways.

> But his wife replied to him, “**If Yahweh had desired to kill us**, he would not have taken from our hand the whole burnt offering and the offering. He would not have shown us all these things, and at this time would he have not allowed us to hear about this.” (Judges 13:23 ULT)

Manoah’s wife thinks that the second part of her conditional statement is not true, therefore the first part is also not true. God received their burnt offering; therefore, He does not want to kill them.

>

> “**If only we had died** by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt, sitting by a pot of meat and eating bread to the full.” (Exodus 16b:3 ULT)

Of course the people speaking here did not die in Egypt, and so this is a Contrary-to-Fact condition that is used to express a wish.

> “Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

The English reader knows that these last two examples are Contrary-to-Fact conditions because of the past-tense verbs used in the first part (they are not things that might happen). The last example also has a second part that uses “would have.” These words also signal something that did not happen.

Translation Strategies

If Contrary-to-Fact conditions are clear in your language, then use them as they are.

(1) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker believes something that is false, then restate the condition as something that others believe.
(2) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker is suggesting that the first part is true, then restate it as a statement that it is not true.
(3) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen but the speaker wanted it to happen, restate it as a wish.
(4) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen, restate it as a negative statement.
(5) Often Factual and Contrary-to-Fact conditions are used to make reasoned arguments for a change in behavior. If translators are struggling to know the best way to translate them, it could be helpful to discuss how this is done in their language community. If someone is trying to convince people to change their behavior, how do they do that? It may be possible to adapt similar strategies when translating these conditions.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker believes something that is false, then restate the condition as something that others believe.

> But **if Baal is God**, worship him! (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> > If you believe that Baal is God, then worship him!

(2) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker is suggesting that the first part is true, then restate it as a statement that it is not true.

> > If Baal is not God, then you should not worship him!

But his wife replied to him, "**If Yahweh had desired to kill us**, he would not have taken from our hand the whole burnt offering and the offering. He would not have shown us all these things, and at this time would he have not allowed us to hear about this." (Judges 13:23 ULT)

> > "**Yahweh does not want to kill us**, or he would not have received the burnt offering and the offering we gave him."

(3) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen but the speaker wanted it to happen, restate it as a wish.

> "**If only we had died** by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt, sitting by a pot of meat and eating bread to the full." (Exodus 16b:3 ULT)
>
> > "**I wish we had died** by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt…"

(4) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen, restate it as a negative statement.

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

> > “Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! The mighty deeds which were done in you **were not done** in Tyre and Sidon. But **if they had been done there, those people would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.”

(5) Often Factual and Contrary-to-Fact Conditions are used to make reasoned arguments for a change in behavior. If translators are struggling to know the best way to translate them, it could be helpful to discuss how this is done in their language community. If someone is trying to convince people to change their behavior, how do they do that? It may be possible to adapt similar strategies when translating these conditions.

> But **if Baal is God**, worship him! (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> > Is Baal the one who is truly God? Should you worship him?

> “Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

> > “Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! You think that you are better than Tyre and Sidon, but you are not! **They would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes at seeing the mighty deeds that you have seen! **You should be like them**!”

Exodus References:

9:30

Connect — Contrast Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Contrast Relationship

Description

A contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, many events did not happen as the people involved intended or expected them to happen. Sometimes people acted in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it was God at work, changing the events. These events were often pivotal. It is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English, contrast relationships are often indicated by the words “but,” “although,” “even though,” “though,” “yet,” or “however.”

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph’s brothers’ evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God’s good plan to save many people. The word “but” marks the contrast.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at the table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave with the humble way that he behaves. The contrast is marked by the word “yet.”

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

It was unexpected that the Israelites, who had been slaves in Egypt, would be able to conquer and lay claim to the promised land.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses contrast relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.
(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.
(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)
>
> > For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines

> > at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)
>
> > The hill country will also be yours. It is a forest, **but** you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders. They have chariots of iron, and they are strong, **but** you will drive out the Canaanites.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

> {David} found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)
>
> > [David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **Even though**

> **Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands.

Exodus References:

1:12; 1:17; 2:17; 3:2; 4:21; 5:2; 5:10; 5:11; 7:12; 13:17; 24:11; 33:23; 34:13

Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

Description

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are “in order to,” “in order that” or “so that.” It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> She became angry and falsely accused Joseph **so that he was arrested and sent to prison**. (Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The goal or purpose of the woman’s false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

> Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress **in order to hide from the presence of Midian**. (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with “in order to.”

> Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways **so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes**. Remember that this nation is your people. (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God’s ways for the goal or purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

> Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her! (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The goal or purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

> The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

> “… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17b ULT)

The goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

> Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may bewise** in everything in which you walk. (Joshua 1:7c ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be wise.

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with "and." Then the word "so" marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the goal or purpose) is not stated.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.
(2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the construction of the goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

> "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her!" (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

> > "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her!"

> The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)
>
> > The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us."

(2) If the order of the statements makes the goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

> "… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments." (Matthew 19:17bULT)
>
> > "… keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**." or: "… keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**."

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.'

> So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

> > But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance**.

Exodus References:

2:4; 2:7; 6:27; 7:5; 7:18; 8:10; 8:20; 8:22; 8:22; 9:16; 12:48; 29:36; 30:10; 30:20; 33:5

Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

Conditional Relationships

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words “if … then.” Often, however, the word “then” is not stated.

Hypothetical Condition

Description

A Hypothetical Condition is a condition in which the second event (the “then” clause) will only take place if the first event (the “if” clause) takes place or is fulfilled in some way. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

It is important that translators understand whether or not something is a Hypothetical Condition so that they translate it in the correct way. For example, some of God’s promises to Israel were conditional, based on whether or not Israel obeyed God. However, many of God’s promises to Israel were not conditional; God would keep these promises whether or not the Israelites obeyed. It is important that you (the translator) know the difference between these two types of promises and communicate each one accurately in your own language. Also, sometimes conditions are stated in an order different than the order in which they would happen. If the target language would state the clauses in a different order, then you will need to make that adjustment.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

There are two hypothetical conditions in this frame. In both of these conditions, the first event (the “if clause”) is stated after the “then” clause. If this is unnatural or confusing, the clauses can be restated in the more natural order. The first hypothetical condition is: if the

Israelites obeyed God, then God would bless and protect them. The second hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites did not obey God, then God would punish them.

> If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? (Genesis 4:7a ULT)

If Cain does what is right, then he will be accepted. The only way for Cain to be accepted is by doing what is right.

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them. (Acts 5:38b-39aULT)

There are two hypothetical conditions here: (1) If it is true that this plan is of men, then it will be overthrown; (2) If it is true that this plan is of God, then it cannot be overthrown.

Translation Strategies

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like “then.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

> God promised to bless the people and protect them **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

> > If the people obeyed these laws, God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did

> not obey these laws, God said that he would punish them.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like “then.”

> God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

> If the people obeyed these laws, **then** God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, **then** God said that he would punish them.

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them; (Acts 5:38b-39a ULT)

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, **then** it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, **then** you will not be able to overthrow them;

Exodus References:

1:10; 1:16; 3:13; 3:13; 12:44; 12:48; 21:intro; 21:2; 22:intro; 22:1; 33:5; 33:15; 34:12; 34:16

Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Reason-and-Result Relationships

Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward — "I did Y because I wanted X to happen." But usually it is looking backward — "X happened, and so I did Y." Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are "because," "so," "therefore," and "for." Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a Verse Bridge.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus! (Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul — that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. “Because” connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by “so that.” Notice that the term “so that” often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

> “Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God.” (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

> But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised, **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.

(2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.

(3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

> Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

(1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.

(2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.

(3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

(1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.

(2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.

(3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

> **Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

(1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.

(2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

Exodus References:

1:19; 1:20; 1:21; 1:21; 2:2; 2:6; 3:5; 3:6; 3:8; 3:10; 3:20; 4:14; 4:21; 4:26; 5:19; 6:6; 6:9; 6:12; 7:5; 7:18; 9:14; 13:21; 23:21; 30:32; 32:10; 32:24; 32:34; 32:35; 33:17; 34:15; 34:16; 34:30

Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Sequential Clause

Description

A sequential clause is a time relation that connects two events in which one happens and then the other happens.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate sequences of events in different ways; some use ordering, some use connecting words, some even use relative tense (Relative tense is a tense that refers to a time in relation to a reference point in the context.) Connecting words that may indicate sequence are words such as “then,” “later,” “after,” “afterward,” “before,” “first,” and “when.” Translators need to be certain that they communicate the order of the events in a way that is natural in their language. This may require ordering clauses differently than in the original languages.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> **When** Joseph came to his brothers, they kidnapped him and sold him to some slave traders. (OBS Story 8 Frame 2)

First Joseph came to his brothers, and then they kidnapped and sold him. We know this because of the connecting word “**when**.” The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> It was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but **after** I ate it, my stomach became bitter. (Revelation 10:10b ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs first, and the event of the last clause occurs later. We know this because of the connecting word "**after**." The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs after the event of the second clause. First the land they dread will be desolate, and then the child will know to refuse evil and choose good. We know this because of the connecting word "**before**." However, stating the clauses in this order may communicate the wrong order of events in your language. The translator may have to change the order so that the clauses come in the order that they happen. Or it may be possible to keep the order of the original language text and mark the ordering of sequence so that it is clear to the readers. You (the translator) need to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Here the general connector "**and**" connects four events. These are sequential events—each happens after the one before it. We know this because that is the only way that these events would happen. So in English, the general connector "and" is enough to make the sequence clear for events such as these. You will need to decide if this also communicates this sequence clearly and correctly in your language.

Translation Strategies

If the sequence of events is clear in your language, then translate the sequence as it is.

(1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.
(2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.

> Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)
>
> > Then Mary arose in those days. **Then** she quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah. **Then** she entered into the house of Zechariah, **and then** she greeted Elizabeth.

> For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)
>
> > For the time will come when the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, **but even before that time**, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate.

(2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

> For the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good.

For more about sequences of events, see Sequence of Events.

Exodus References:

1:6; 2:10; 2:11; 3:20; 4:4; 4:19; 4:20; 5:1; 6:1; 11:1; 24:14

Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Simultaneous Clause

Description

A simultaneous clause is a time relationship that connects two or more events that occur at the same time.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate in many different ways that events occur simultaneously. These ways may vary based on whether or not something is causing the events to occur simultaneously. Connecting words that may indicate simultaneous events are words such as “while,” “as,” and “during.” Often the Bible does not state a relationship between the events but simply says they occurred at the same time. It is important that you (the translator) know when a time relationship is implied and when it is not implied so that you can communicate it clearly. A simultaneous clause communicates that events happened at the same time but it does not indicate that one event caused the other. That would be a reason-and-result relationship.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> Joseph served his master well, **and** God blessed Joseph. (OBS Story 8 Frame 4)

Two events happened while Joseph was a slave to a wealthy government official: Joseph served well, and God blessed Joseph. There is no indication of a reason-and-result (cause and effect) relationship between the two, or that the first event happened, and then the second event happened.

> But in truth I say to you that there were many widows in Israel **during** the days of Elijah. (Luke 4:25b ULT)

The connecting word "**during**" tells us clearly that two things happened at the same time, but one event did not cause the other.

> And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

The people were both waiting and wondering at the same time. The general connector "**and**" indicates this.

> **While** they were looking intensely into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

Three events happened at the same time — the disciples looking, Jesus going up, and two men standing. The connector words "**while**" and "**as**" tell us this.

Translation Strategies

If the way that the simultaneous clauses are marked also is clear in your language, then translate the simultaneous clauses as they are.

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that the simultaneous clauses are happening at the same time, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.
(2) If it is not clear which clause the simultaneous clause is connected to, and that they are happening at the same time, mark all of the clauses with a connecting word.
(3) If your language marks events as simultaneous in a different way than using connecting words, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Below, each Bible verse will be restated in three different ways, according to the translation strategies in the list above. Each restatement will have the same number as the translation strategy that it is using.

> And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

(1) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were wondering at his delaying in the temple.

(2) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were **also** wondering at his delaying in the temple.

(3) Now the people were waiting for Zechariah, wondering at his delaying in the temple.

> **While** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

(1) And **during the time** they were looking intently into heaven **while** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing.

(2) And **while** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, **at that same time** two men stood by them in white clothing.

(3) They were looking intently into heaven; he was going up **when** they saw two men standing by them in white clothing.

Exodus References:

2:10; 8:25; 29:10; 29:15; 32:intro

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. We usually want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting words and phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the Connecting Words in bold type:

- It was raining, **so** I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, **but** I did not have an umbrella. **So** I got very wet.

Connecting words or phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after the connecting word. Very often, the connecting words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

> It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella, so I got very wet.
>
> **Now** I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word **now** connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the context to help the readers understand the relationship between the thoughts. Some languages do not use connecting words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using connecting words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how connecting words and phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that they are connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different connecting words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the right connecting word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information, simply click the colored, hyperlinked word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause — a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause — a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause — a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- **Exceptional Relationship** — one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition — the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- **Factual Condition** — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true, so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary-to-Fact Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: Hypothetical Statements.
- Goal Relationship — a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship — a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, the result.

- Contrast Relationship — one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT)

The word "instead" introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word "then" introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

> **Therefore,** whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word "therefore" links this section with the section before it, signaling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. "Therefore" usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word "and" links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word "but" contrasts what one group of people will be called in God's kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

> We place nothing as a stumbling block in front of anyone, **so that** our ministry might not be discredited. **Instead**, we commend ourselves in everything as God's servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the words "so that" connect what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry

brought into disrepute. “Instead” contrasts what Paul does (prove by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (place stumbling blocks).

General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
(3) Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

> Jesus said to them, “Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men.” Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word “so.”

> Jesus said to them, “Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men.” **So**, immediately they left the nets and followed him.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one, and if people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

> > Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT) (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words “instead” or “then” here. They might translate like this:

> > I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I

> went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

> **Because of that**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **And** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

Exodus References:

5:5

Copy or Borrow Words

Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and for which your language may not have a word. The Bible also includes people and places for which you may not have names.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible in a familiar language and use it in your translation in your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See Translate Unknowns.)

Examples From the Bible

> Seeing one fig tree along the roadside, he went to it. (Matthew 21:19a ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

> Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

> The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

> צְפַנְיָה — A man’s name in Hebrew letters.
>
> > “Zephaniah” — The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

> Zephaniah — This is a man's name.
>
> > "Zephaniah" — The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

> Zephaniah — If your language does not have the "z," you could use "s." If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f." Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay."
>
> > "Sefania"
> >
> > "Sefanaia"
> >
> > "Sefanaya"

Exodus References:

6:3; 28:30

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "**I** do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

> And he commanded him to tell no one, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, “**Go, show yourself to the priest …**”

> And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, “The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, ‘Look, here it is!’ or ‘There it is!’ For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.” (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming,**
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, “**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, ‘Look. here it is!’ or ‘There it is!’ For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**”
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, ‘**Look, here it is!**’ or, ‘**There it is!**’

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

> And he commanded him to tell no one, but, “**Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

> > He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them**.

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

> And he commanded him **to tell no one,** but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)
>
> > He commanded him, "**Tell no one**. But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Exodus References:

1:18; 1:22; 2:10; 2:14; 2:18; 4:23; 4:26; 5:10; 6:4; 6:11; 7:2; 7:9; 8:1; 8:5; 8:8; 8:16; 8:20; 9:13; 10:3; 14:2; 14:3; 14:12; 14:26; 25:2; 32:26; 33:5; 33:12; 35:4; 36:5; 36:6

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of "not." Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning "not." Examples in English are "no," "not," "none," "no one," "nothing," "nowhere," "never," "nor," "neither," and "without." Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean "not," such as the bolded parts of these words: "**un**happy," "**im**possible," and "use**less**." Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as "lack" or "reject," or even "fight" or "evil."

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

> We did this **not** because we have **no** authority … (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)
>
> And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)
>
> Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, "He is not unintelligent" means "He is intelligent."
- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, "No vi a nadie," literally says "I did not see no one." It has both the word 'no' next to the verb and 'nadie,' which means "no one." The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, "I did not see anyone."
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" means, "He is somewhat intelligent."
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, "He is not

unintelligent" can mean "He is very intelligent." In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called litotes.

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
>
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.
or:
Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means "in order to be fruitful."

> A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means "a prophet is honored."

> I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means "I want you to be knowledgeable."

Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.
(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

> For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)
>
> > "For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)
>
> > "… so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
>
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

> > Without me, you can do **nothing**.
> >
> > or:
> > Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

> …ἰῶτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)
>
> …iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

> > …**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law
> >
> > or:
> > …**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

Exodus References:

3:21; 5:11; 8:29; 12:30; 12:48; 20:7; 21:10; 22:22; 22:29; 23:15; 23:26; 28:28; 34:20

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike **Hendiadys**, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

> He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

> … like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **“Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of “Master” means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

> > "You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)
>
> > "He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

> … like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)
>
> • English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
>
> > "… like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

> Then they approached {and} woke him up,
> **urgently shouting, "Master!** We are perishing!"

Exodus References:

1:7; 1:20; 4:10; 7:3; 15:16; 23:7; 32:11; 32:30; 32:31; 34:6; 34:6; 34:8; 34:9; 39:32; 39:40; 40:2; 40:6

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis[^1] occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous**. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[^1]: English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (…) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes**
> Sirion **skip** like a young ox.
>
> Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

> > Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

> > “Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”
>
> To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

> > To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinners in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)
>
> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.
>
> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)
>
> > Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)
>
> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Exodus References:

4:intro; 4:5; 8:2; 14:4; 14:17; 14:18; 20:5; 20:6; 23:2; 27:11; 27:18; 30:23; 32:32; 34:7; 34:15; 35:5; 35:10; 36:6; 38:11; 38:22; 38:26; 38:28; 40:2

End of Story

Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

The following are purposes for end of story information:

- to summarize the story
- to give a conclusion about what the story means or what is important about it
- to connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- to tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- to tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- to tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If you (the translator) do not use your language's ways of doing this, readers may not know:

- that this information is ending the story
- what the purpose of the information is
- how the information is related to the story

Translation Strategies

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

Examples From the Bible

- To summarize the story

> Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. **In this way it happened that all of us were brought safely to the land.** (Acts 27:44 ULT)

- To give a conclusion about what the story means or what is important about it

> Many of those who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. Then they counted the value of them, and found it was 50,000 pieces of silver. **So the word of the Lord was spreading and prevailing with power.** (Acts 19:19-20 ULT)

- To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

> And Mary said, "My soul magnifies the Lord, and my spirit rejoiced in God my savior." **And Mary stayed with her about three months and then returned to her house.** (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULT)

- To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

> All who those who heard it were amazed concerning the things that were spoken to them by the shepherds. **But Mary kept all the things, pondering them in her heart.** (Luke 2:18-19 ULT)

- To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

> "Woe to you, experts in the Jewish law, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering." **After he went from there, the scribes and the Pharisees began to fiercely oppose him and argued against him**

> **about many things, lying in wait to trap him in something from his mouth.** (Luke 11:52-54 ULT)

Exodus References:

11:10; 39:32; 39:43

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

> … they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons "were dead." It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

> But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
>
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**"
> >
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**"
>
> But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)
>
> > But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man**?"

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

> They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

> > “They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa.”

Exodus References:

4:25; 5:16; 19:15; 19:21; 21:10; 22:16; 22:19; 28:42; 32:6

Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

> Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

> When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, “This has never been seen before in Israel!” (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have “Oh” and “Ah.” The word “oh” here shows the speaker’s amazement.

> **Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word “Alas” below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

> When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)
>
> Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.
>
> **How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."
(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)
>
> > "You **are** such a worthless person!"

> Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)
>
> > "Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!"

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word "wow" shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression "Oh no" shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

> They were extremely astonished, saying, "He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak." (Mark 7:37 ULT)
>
> > "They were extremely astonished, saying, '**Wow**! He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.'"
>
> Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)
>
> > "**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

> "**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

> > “Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me**? For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”
> > “**Help**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

> How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)
>
> > “His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

> When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, “**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)
>
> > Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, “**Alas**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

Exodus References:

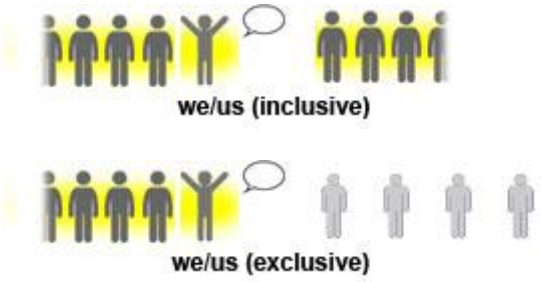
1:9; 2:6; 2:13; 3:9; 4:6; 4:7; 5:17

Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we,” then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

> They said, “There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

> **We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

> The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

> Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Exodus References:

1:10; 3:18; 5:3; 8:10; 8:26; 8:27; 10:9; 10:25; 10:26

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

> But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
> “… Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

> Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

> But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)
>
> > But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?" (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)
>
> > Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?"
>
> So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)
>
> > So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Exodus References:

4:10; 4:20; 5:3; 5:15; 5:16; 8:29; 9:3; 9:4; 9:5; 15:26; 23:25; 24:1; 24:2; 25:intro; 25:9; 27:8; 27:8; 28:35; 28:38; 29:24; 30:15; 32:4; 32:8; 32:22; 34:6; 34:7; 36:intro; 37:intro; 38:intro; 39:intro

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he or she is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- **Forms of "You" — Formal or Informal**

Masculine and Feminine

Some languages have a **masculine** form and a **feminine** form of the word for "you." People use the **masculine** form when speaking to a man or boy and the **feminine** form when speaking to a woman or girl.

English does not make any of the above distinctions, so they are absent in the ULT. Please be aware of this and use the appropriate forms of "you" if your language does make any of these distinctions.

Exodus References:

30:12; 30:26; 30:36

Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural

Description

Some languages have a singular form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a plural form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a dual form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to only two people. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have a singular form of “you” and a plural form of “you.” When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person. However, they do not show us whether it refers to only two people or more than two people. When the pronouns do not show us how many people the word “you” refers to, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular, dual, and plural forms of “you” will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning “you,” translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know how many people the speaker was addressing.

Examples From the Bible

> Then **James and John**, the sons of Zebedee, came up to him, saying to him, “Teacher, we desire that you to do for us whatever we ask you.”

> 36 So he said to them, “What do **you** want me to do for **you**?” (Mark 10:35-36 ULT)

Jesus is asking the two, James and John, what they want him to do for them. If the target language has a dual form of “you,” use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

> Jesus sent out two of his disciples and said to them, “Go into the village opposite us. As soon as **you** enter it, **you** will find a colt tied there, on which no one has yet sat. Untie it and bring it to me.” (Mark 11:1b-2 ULT)

The context makes it clear that Jesus is addressing two people. If the target language has a dual form of “you,” use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

> James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes who are in the dispersion: Greetings. Consider it all joy, my brothers, when **you** experience various troubles. You know that the testing of **your** faith produces endurance. (James 1:1-3 ULT)

James wrote this letter to many people, so the word “you” refers to many people. If the target language has a plural form of “you,” it would be best to use it here.

Strategies for finding out how many people “you” refers to

(1) Look at the translationNotes to see if they tell whether “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
(2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
(3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes “you” singular from “you” plural, see which form of “you” that Bible has in that sentence.
(4) Look at the context to see who the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youdual.

Exodus References:

1:16; 1:18; 1:22; 3:12; 3:16; 3:18; 3:20; 3:21; 3:22; 4:15; 5:4; 5:5; 5:7; 5:8; 5:10; 5:11; 5:14; 5:17; 5:18; 5:21; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8; 7:4; 7:9; 8:25; 8:28; 9:3; 9:8; 10:16; 10:17; 10:24; 11:1; 11:7; 12:intro; 12:3; 12:31; 14:2; 19:4; 25:2; 25:9; 30:1; 30:36; 30:37; 34:10

Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

Description

Some languages have a **singular** form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a **plural** form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have both a singular form of “you” and a plural form of “you.” When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. When we read the Bible in a language that does not have different forms of you, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular and plural forms of “you” will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning “you,” translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know the number of people the speaker was speaking to. Sometimes Greek and Hebrew speakers used the singular form of “you” even though they were speaking to a group of people. (See Forms of ‘You’ — Singular to a Crowd.)

Examples From the Bible

> But he said, “All these things **I** have kept from my youth.” But when he heard this, Jesus said to him, “One thing is still lacking to **you**. All things, as much as **you** have, **sell** all and **distribute** to the poor, and

> **you** will have treasure in heaven—and **come**, **follow** me." (Luke 18:21-22 ULT)

The ruler was speaking about just himself when he said "I." This shows us that when Jesus said "you" he was referring only to the ruler and he used the singular form. So languages that have singular and plural forms of "you" need the singular form here, as well as for the verbs "sell," distribute," "come," and "follow."

> The angel said to him, "**Dress yourself** and **put on your** sandals." So he did that. He said to him, "**Put on your** outer garment and **follow** me." (Acts 12:8 ULT)

The angel used singular forms here and the context makes it clear that he was speaking to one person and that only one person did what the the angel commanded. So languages that have singular and plural forms of "you" would need the singular form here for "yourself" and "your." Also, if verbs have different forms for singular and plural subjects, then the verbs "dress," "put on," and "follow" need the form that indicates a singular subject.

> All the ones {who are} with me greet **you**. **Greet** the ones loving us in faith. Grace {be} with all of **you**. (Titus 3:15 ULT)

Paul wrote this letter to one person, Titus, so most of the time the word "you" in this letter is singular and refers only to Titus. In this verse, the first "you" is singular, so the greeting is for Titus, as well as the instruction to greet the others there. The second "you," however, is plural, so the blessing is for Titus and for all of the believers there in Crete.

> "Having gone, **search** carefully for the young child, and after **you** have found him, **report** to me so that I also, having come, might worship him." (Matthew 2:8 ULT)

Since Herod is speaking to all of the learned men, the word "you" and the commands "search" and "report" are plural.

Strategies for finding out how many people “you” refers to

(1) Look at the notes to see if they tell whether “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
(2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
(3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes “you” singular from “you” plural, see which form of “you” that Bible has in that sentence.
(4) Look at the context to see how many people the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Exodus References:

12:44; 25:9; 25:22; 26:1; 28:1; 28:3; 30:6; 33:14; 33:17

Fractions

Description

A fraction is a number that represents part of a whole. When an item is divided into several equal parts, a fraction refers to one or more of those parts.

For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7a ULT)

A hin is a container of a set size which is used for measuring wine and other liquids. The people were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts, filling up only one of those parts and offering that amount.

> … **a third** of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9b ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have the letters “th” added to the end of the number, such as fourth, sixth, ninth, tenth.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | -------- | -------- | | four | fourth | | ten | tenth | | one hundred | one hundredth | | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | -------- | -------- | | two | half | | three | third | | five | fifth |

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many parts are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

> Now to the **half-tribe** of Manasseh, Moses had given a possession in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave a possession among their brothers across the Jordan on the west. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “the half-tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

> So the four angels who had been prepared for that hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released so that they would kill **a third** of mankind. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

> You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

(1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
(2) For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
(3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

> **A third** of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)
>
> > It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.
>
> Then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of **three-tenths** of an ephah of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)
>
> > … then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

(2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> … **two-thirds of a shekel** … (1 Samuel 13:21b ULT)
>
> … **eight grams** of silver … (1 Samuel 13:21b UST)
>
> … **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)

> … **six and one-half liters** of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9b UST)

(3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> … **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)
>
> > **six quarts** of fine flour mixed with **two quarts** of oil.

Exodus References:

16:36; 25:10; 25:17; 25:23; 26:12; 26:16; 29:40; 30:13; 38:26

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

> Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
> So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife**;
> **the one who touches her** will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

> People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
(3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
(4) Use the plural form, as in “people.”
(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)
>
> > “Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**.” (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

> > “People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > “People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > “People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > “People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain.”

Exodus References:

15:1; 16:19; 36:intro; 36:6; 36:8; 37:intro; 38:intro; 39:intro

Go and Come

Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words “go” or “come” and whether to use the words “take” or “bring” when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say “I am coming,” while Spanish speakers say “I am going.” You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words “go” and “come” (and also “take” and “bring”), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words “go” and “come” or “take” and “bring” differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples From the Bible

> Yahweh said to Noah, “**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark.” (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

> But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham’s relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

> When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it … (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land …"

> They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

> Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

(1) Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.
(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

> But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)
>
> > But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)
>
> > What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

> When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it … (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)
>
> > “When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it …”

> Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark …" (Genesis 7:1 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh said to Noah, "**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark …"

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)
>
> > What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

Exodus References:

1:1; 2:5; 2:8; 2:11; 2:13; 2:16; 2:17; 2:18; 2:18; 3:1; 3:8; 3:13; 3:21; 4:14; 4:18; 5:1; 5:15; 8:24; 15:17; 19:13; 19:20

Hebrew Months

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Aviv, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Aviv — (This month was called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Aviv 10; the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv — This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars.

Sivan — This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz — This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars.

Ab — This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars.

Elul — This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars.

Ethanim — This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul — This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars.

Kislev — This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on Western calendars.

Tebeth — This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars.

Shebat — This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rainfall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars.

Adar — This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples From the Bible

> Today you are going out, in **the month of Aviv**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

> You must eat unleavened bread from evening of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until evening of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information.)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
(2) Use the names for months that people know.
(3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.
(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the Hebrew name of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

> At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of Aviv**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15b ULT)

> It will always be a statute for you that in **the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month,** you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29a ULT)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

> > At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this

> > purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

(2) Use the months that people know.

> > At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

> > It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(3) State clearly what season the month occurs in.

> > It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month,** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

> > It will always be a statute for you that in **the day I choose in early autumn**[1] you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

Exodus References:

12:2; 12:14; 12:18; 12:18; 13:4; 16:1; 23:15; 34:18

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.

- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beer Lahai Roi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me."

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

> **Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)
>
> But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
(5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)
>
> > You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites.**
>
> At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

> > At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)
>
> > She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’),** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

> She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)
>
> > She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or

when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

> … a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)
>
> > … a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

> a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)
>
> > a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

> It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

> It came about in Iconium that **Paul**[1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

> [1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Exodus References:

front:intro; 1:1; 1:15; 2:18; 2:21; 2:22; 4:25; 6:14; 6:15; 6:16; 6:17; 6:18; 6:19; 6:20; 6:20; 6:21; 6:22; 6:23; 6:23; 6:24; 6:24; 6:25; 12:37; 13:20; 14:2; 14:9; 15:22; 15:23; 15:27; 16:intro; 16:1; 17:intro; 17:1; 17:1; 17:7; 17:7; 17:8; 17:10; 18:3; 18:4; 19:2; 24:1; 24:9; 24:14; 28:1; 31:2; 31:6; 34:11; 35:30; 35:34; 36:1; 38:21; 38:22; 38:23

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

> They will not leave **stone upon stone in you.** (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

> Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians.** (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

> The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame,**
> but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

> And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

> If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed … (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

> But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

> When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

> Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

> One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

> **A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches.** (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

> Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
> and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)
>
> > The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

> **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)
>
> > **In general,** the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

> When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do,** for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)
>
> > And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)
>
> > **Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.
> > or:
> >
> > **Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

> The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

Exodus References:

5:12; 7:24; 8:17; 8:31; 9:6; 10:6; 15:20; 16:2; 17:14; 32:3; 34:7; 35:23; 35:24

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining …” “What if the sun stopped shining …” “Suppose the sun stopped shining …” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples From the Bible

Hypothetical Situations in the Past

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

> Martha then said to Jesus, "Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died**." (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

Hypothetical Situations in the Present

> And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed**. (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that

there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

> Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out**?” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical Situation in the Future

> **Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved**. But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

> The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

> I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

Exodus References:

8:8; 9:15; 13:17; 16:3; 34:12; 34:15

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

> Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

> The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

> the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
(2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)
>
> > Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

> Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)
>
> > He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

> I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)
>
> > I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

> Put these words **into your ears.** (Luke 9:44a ULT)

> **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

> My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)
>
> > I am crying my **eyes out**

Exodus References:

1:7; 2:1; 2:19; 2:24; 3:7; 3:16; 3:16; 3:17; 3:18; 3:21; 4:14; 4:14; 4:18; 5:7; 5:8; 5:9; 5:14; 5:23; 7:7; 7:23; 7:25; 8:28; 10:28; 10:29; 11:3; 11:3; 11:7; 11:8; 12:36; 15:26; 15:26; 15:26; 17:12; 22:8; 22:24; 23:1; 23:26; 23:27; 24:3; 24:14; 24:17; 25:2; 25:27; 26:5; 26:6; 26:17; 28:41; 29:1; 29:9; 29:29; 29:33; 29:35; 29:38; 29:39; 29:41; 30:4; 30:8; 30:12; 30:13; 30:14; 30:14; 31:2; 31:6; 32:1; 32:10; 32:11; 32:12; 32:12; 32:19; 32:22; 32:22; 32:26; 32:29; 33:12; 33:12; 33:16; 33:17; 33:17; 34:6; 34:9; 34:10; 34:12; 34:15; 34:27; 35:5; 35:34; 36:3; 36:4; 38:21; 38:26

Information Structure

Description

Different languages arrange the parts of the sentence in different ways. In English, a sentence normally has the subject first, then the verb, then the object, then other modifiers, like this: Peter painted his house yesterday.

Many other languages normally put these things in a different order such as: Painted yesterday Peter his house.

Although all languages have a normal order for parts of a sentence, this order can change depending on what information the speaker or writer considers to be the most important.

Suppose that someone is answering the question, “What did Peter paint yesterday?” The person asking the question already knows all of the information in our sentence above except for the object, “his house.” Therefore, that becomes the most important part of the information, and a person answering in English might say “His house is what Peter painted (yesterday).”

This puts the most important information first, which is normal for English. Many Other Languages would normally put the most important information last. In the flow of a text, the most important information is usually what the writer considers to be new information for the reader. In some languages the new information comes first, and in others it comes last.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Different languages arrange the parts of a sentence in different ways. If you (the translator) copy the order of the parts of a sentence from the source, it may not make sense in your language.
- Different languages put important or new information in different places in the sentence. If you keep the important or new information in the same place that it had in the source language, it may be confusing or give the wrong message in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> They all ate until they were satisfied. (Mark 6:42 ULT)

The parts of this sentence were in a different order in the original Greek source language. They were like this: And they ate all and they were satisfied.

In English, this means that the people ate everything. But the next verse says that they took up twelve baskets full of leftover pieces of food. In order for this to not be so confusing, the translators of the ULT put the parts of the sentence in the right order for English.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in an desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

In this verse, what the disciples say to Jesus puts the important information first, that he should send the crowd away. In languages that put the important information last, people would understand that the reason that they gave, being in an isolated place, is the most important part of their message to Jesus. They might then think that the disciples are afraid of the spirits in that place, and that sending the people to buy food is a way to protect them from the spirits. That is the wrong message.

> Woe to you when all men speak well of you, for their fathers treated the false prophets in the same way. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

In this verse, the most important part of the information is first, that “woe” is coming on the people for what they are doing. The reason that supports that warning comes last. This could be confusing for people who expect the important information to come last.

Translation Strategies

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.
(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information, and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.

This is the verse in the original Greek order:

> And he went out from there and came to the hometown his, and they followed him the disciples his. (Mark 6:1)

The ULT has put this into the normal order for English:

> Now Jesus went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him. (Mark 6:1 ULT)

(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came and said to him, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in a desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> > Now the day was about to come to an end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Because we are here in an desolate place, send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food.”
>
> Woe to you, when all men speak well of you, for that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> > When all men speak well of you, which is just as people's ancestors treated the false prophets, then woe to you!

Exodus References:

32:16; 33:16; 34:1; 34:13; 34:29; 34:29; 35:29

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> **In the days of Herod**, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

> **And it happened that** in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

> **The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.** His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

> **Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king**, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

> **Now in those days** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

> **Then** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

> Now there was **a man from thePharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

> 6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
(2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

> Now there was **a man from thePharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

> There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

> One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him … (Mark 2:14a ULT)

> As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and and said to him …

> As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him …

> > As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him …

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as "another time," or "someone."

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.
>
> > **After that**, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

> **Again he began** to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.
>
> > **Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.

> > Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)
>
> > **Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.

> > **This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

> **Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come**.

Exodus References:

1:8; 1:15; 2:1; 2:11; 2:16; 2:23; 3:1; 4:24; 4:27; 4:29; 5:1; 5:10; 5:15; 5:20; 6:2; 6:28; 7:8; 7:14; 7:25; 8:12; 8:16; 8:20; 8:24; 8:30; 9:1; 9:8; 9:13; 9:22; 9:27; 10:12; 10:21; 12:21; 13:17; 16:22; 17:1; 17:8; 18:13; 24:1; 24:3; 24:9; 29:1; 32:1; 32:7; 33:12; 34:29; 39:32; 40:1; 40:16

Introduction of New and Old Participants

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

> Now **there was a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus** … **This man** came to Jesus at night … Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a)

The first bolded phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. After being introduced, he is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he has become an old participant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples From the Bible

New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man,” as in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who is family was, and what his name was.

> **Now there was a man** from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2a ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important participant is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah's wife is simply referred to as "his wife." This phrase shows her relationship to him.

> Now there was one man from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. **His wife** was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

> Now King David was old, he had advanced in the days, and they covered him with the garments, but it was not warm enough for him. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun "his," and his wife is referred to with the pronoun "she."

> **His wife** was barren and **she** had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to by the noun phrase "the wife."

> The angel of Yahweh appeared to **the wife** and he said to her … (Judges 13:3a ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to by his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

> Then **Manoah** prayed to Yahweh. (Judges 13:8a ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages, people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

Translation Strategies

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
(2) If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

> Then Joseph, who was called Barnabas by the apostles (which is translated as Son of Encouragement), a Levite from Cyprus by birth … (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) — Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.
>
> > There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of Encouragement). There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The

> > apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

(2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

> And it happened that when he was praying in a certain place, when he stopped, one of his disciples said to him, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John also taught his disciples.” (Luke 11:1 ULT) — Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who “he” refers to.
>
> > It happened when **Jesus** finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.”

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

> Joseph’s master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king’s prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20) — Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might prefer the pronoun.
>
> > Joseph’s master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king’s prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Exodus References:

1:8; 1:15; 2:1; 2:5; 2:5; 2:9; 2:16; 2:17; 2:18; 4:18; 4:25; 4:27; 5:1; 5:13; 17:8; 17:9; 17:10; 24:13; 32:17; 33:11

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

> Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "the righteous," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples From the Bible

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

> "Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled**." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
> Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
> **You know, for you were born then,and the number of your days is many!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

> Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) Translate the irony in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. (Remember: The true meaning of the irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)
>
> > **You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!
> > or:
> > **You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!
>
> I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)
>
> > I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call people who know that they are sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

> **You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "**Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen**, so we may know these things well. **Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled**." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

> 'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. **Can your idols bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well? **No!** We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
You know, for you were born then,
and the number of your days is many! (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and**

> **darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Exodus References:

2:14; 8:9

Kinship

Description

Kinship terms refer to those words used to describe people related to one another in familial relationships. These terms vary widely in their specificity from language to language. They range from the (Western) nuclear or immediate family (father-son, husband-wife) out to broad clan relationships in other cultures.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Depending on the language translators may need to use specific terms to designate the accurate kinship relationship. In some languages a different term may be used based on siblings' birth order. In others, the side of the family (father's or mother's), age, marital status, etc. may determine the term used. Different terms may be used based on the gender of the speaker and/or addressee. Translators may need to make sure they know the exact relationship between two related people in the Bible to find the correct term. Sometimes these terms are difficult even for native speakers to remember and translators may need to seek community help in finding the correct term. Another complicating issue is that the Bible may not give enough information about the relationship for translators to determine the correct term in the language being translated into. In this case, translators will have to use a more general term or simply pick a satisfactory term based on the limited information available.

Sometimes terms that seem like kinship terms are used for people who are not necessarily related. For instance, an older person may refer to a younger man or woman as "my son" or "my daughter."

Examples from the Bible

> Then Yahweh said to Cain, "Where is Abel **your brother**?" He said, "I do not know. Am I **my brother's** keeper?" (Genesis 4:9 ULT)

Abel was Cain's younger brother.

> Jacob sent and called Rachel and Leah to the field to his flock and said to them, “I see **your father’s** attitude toward me has changed, but the God of my father has been with me.” (Genesis 31:4-5 ULT)

Jacob is referring here to his father-in-law. In some languages there may be a specific term for a man’s father-in-law, however, in this case it is better to retain the form **your father** as Jacob may be using it to distance himself from Laban.

> And Moses was shepherding the flock of Jethro **his father-in-law**, the priest of Midian. (Exodus3:1a ULT)

Unlike the previous instance, if your language has a term for a man’s father-in-law this is a good place to use it.

> And **his sister** stationed herself at a distance to know what would be done to him. (Exodus 2:4 ULT)

From context we know that this was Miriam, Moses’s older sister. In some languages this may require a specific term. In others, the term for older sister may be only used when the younger sibling is addressing and/or referring to his or her sister.

> Then she and **her daughters-in-law** arose to return from the fields of Moab (Ruth 1:6a ULT)

Ruth & Orpah are Naomi’s daughters-in-law.

> Then she said, “Look, your sister-in-law has turned back to her people and to her gods.” (Ruth 1:15 ULT)

Orpah had been the wife of Ruth’s husband’s brother. This may be a different term in your language than if she had been Ruth’s husband’s sister.

> Then Boaz said to Ruth, “Will you not listen to me, **my daughter**?” (Ruth 2:8a ULT)

Boaz is not Ruth’s father; he is simply using the term to address a younger woman.

> And behold, **your relative** Elizabeth—she also has conceived a son in her old age, and this is the sixth month for her who was called barren. (Luke 1:36 ULT)

While the KJV translated this as **cousin**, the term simply means a related woman.

Translation Strategies

(1) Find out the exact relationship specified and translate using the term your language uses.

(2) If the text does not specify the relationship as clearly as your language would, either:

(a) settle on a more general term.

(b) use a specific term if required by your language, choosing the one that is most likely to be correct.

Translation Strategies Applied

This is not an issue in English, so the following illustrations draw on other languages.

In Korean, there are several terms for brother and sister, the use of them depends on the speaker’s (or referent’s) sex and birth order. Examples are from the Korean Living Bible, found on biblegateway.com

> Genesis 30:1 Rachel is jealous of her “eonni,” which is the term a woman uses for her older sister.
>
> Genesis 34:31 Simeon and Levi refer to Dinah as “nui,” a general term for sister.

> Genesis 37:16 Joseph refers to his brothers as “hyeong,” which is the term a man uses for his older brother(s).
>
> Genesis 45:12 Joseph refers to Benjamin as “dongsaeng,” which roughly means sibling, usually younger.

In Russian, in-law terms are complex. For instance, “nevéstka” is the term for a brother’s (or brother-in-law’s) wife; a woman uses the same term for her daughter-in-law but her husband would call the same daughter-in-law “snoxá.” Examples from the Russian Synodal Version.

> Genesis 38:25 Tamar sends a message to her father-in-law, Judah. The term used is “svekor.” This is used for a woman’s husband’s father.
>
> Exodus 3:1 Moses is watching his father-in-law’s herd. The term used is “test’.” This is used for a man’s wife’s father.

Exodus References:

1:6; 2:4; 4:14; 4:18; 6:20; 7:2; 18:intro; 18:1; 28:1; 28:41

Litany

Description

A litany is a figure of speech in which the various components of a thing are listed in a series of very similar statements. The speaker does this to indicate that what he is saying should be understood as comprehensive and without exceptions. In a sense, the speaker is describing an overwhelming situation by overwhelming his audience with an excessive series of statements.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use litanies, and readers could be confused by them. They may wonder why the speaker seems to be saying the same thing over and over again.

Examples From the Bible

> Though they dig into Sheol, there my hand will take them. Though they climb up to heaven, there I will bring them down. Though they hide on the top of Carmel, there I will search and take them. Though they are hidden from my sight in the bottom of the sea, there will I give orders to the serpent, and it will bite them. Though they go into captivity, driven by their enemies before them, there will I give orders to the sword, and it will kill them. (Amos 9:2-4 ULT)

In this passage Yahweh is telling the people of Israel that when he punishes them, none of them will escape.

> But you should not have looked on the day of your brother, on the day of his misfortune. And you should not have rejoiced over the sons of Judah in the day of their perishing. And you should not have made your mouth great in a day of distress. You should not have entered the gate of my people in the day of their calamity. Yes, you! You should not have looked on his evil in the day of his calamity. And you women should not have looted his wealth in the day of his calamity. And you should not have stood at the crossroads to cut down his fugitives. And

> you should not have delivered up his survivors in a day of distress. (Obadiah 1:12–14)

In this passage Yahweh is telling the people of Edom that they should have helped the people of Judah when they were conquered by the Babylonians.

Translation Strategies

If the litany is understood as it is in the ULT, then translate the litany as it is. If it is not understood, then try one or more of the following strategies.

(1) Often in the Bible there will be a general statement at the beginning or end of a litany that sums up its overall meaning. You can format that statement in a way that will show that it is a summary statement that gives the meaning of the litany.
(2) You can put each sentence of the litany on a separate line. Also, if each sentence in the litany has two parts, you can format the litany so that the equivalent parts of each sentence line up. Use this or any other type of formatting that will show that each sentence is reinforcing the same meaning.
(3) You can eliminate words like “and,” “but,” and “or” at the beginning of sentences so that it will be clearer that the component parts of the litany are all being listed in a row.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) combined with (3):
Often in the Bible there will be a general statement at the beginning or end of a litany that sums up its overall meaning. You can format that statement in a way that will show that it is a summary statement that gives the meaning of the litany;
You can eliminate words like “and,” “but,” and “or” at the beginning of sentences so that it will be clearer that the component parts of the litany are all being listed in a row.

> > You did nothing to help the Israelites when strangers carried away their wealth. They conquered all the cities of Judah, and they even plundered Jerusalem. And you were just as bad as those foreigners, because you did nothing to help:

> You should not have looked on the day of your brother, on the day of his misfortune. You should not have rejoiced over the sons of Judah in the day of their perishing. You should not have made your mouth great in a day of distress. You should not have entered the gate of my people in the day of their calamity. Yes, you! You should not have looked on his evil in the day of his calamity. You women should not have looted his wealth in the day of his calamity. You should not have stood at the crossroads to cut down his fugitives. You should not have delivered up his survivors in a day of distress. (Obadiah 1:11-14)

In the above example, verse 11 provides the summary and meaning for the litany that follows in verses 12-14.

(1) combined with (2):
Often in the Bible there will be a general statement at the beginning or end of a litany that sums up its overall meaning. You can format that statement in a way that will show that it is a summary statement that gives the meaning of the litany;
You can put each sentence of the litany on a separate line. Also, if each sentence in the litany has two parts, you can format the litany so that the equivalent parts of each sentence line up. Use this or any other type of formatting that will show that each sentence is reinforcing the same meaning.

> > Not one of them will get away, not one of them
> > will escape:
>
> Though they dig into Sheol, there my hand will take them.
>
> Though they climb up to heaven, there I will bring them down.
> Though they hide on the top of Carmel, there I will search and take them.
> Though they are hidden from my sight in the bottom of the sea, there will I give orders to the serpent, and it will bite them.
> Though they go into captivity, driven by their enemies before them,

> there will I give orders to the sword, and it will kill them. (Amos 9:1b–4 ULT)

In the above example, the sentence before the litany explains its overall meaning. That sentence can be placed as an introduction. The second half of each sentence can be formatted in a descending staircase pattern as above, or lined up evenly like the first half of each sentence, or in another way. Use whatever format best shows that these sentences are all communicating the same truth, that it is not possible to escape from God.

Exodus References:

34:7; 35:22

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by negating a word or phrase that means the opposite of the meaning that he intends. For example, someone could intend to communicate that something is extremely good by describing it as "not bad." The difference between a litotes and a double negative is that a litotes heightens the positive meaning beyond what a plain positive statement would do, and a double negative does not. In the example above, the literal meaning of "not bad," taken as a plain double negative, would be "acceptable" or even "good." But if the speaker intended it as a litotes, then the meaning is "very good" or "extremely good."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples From the Bible

> For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

> Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

> But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
> are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,
> for from you will come a ruler
> who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

> For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)
>
> > "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**."

> Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)
>
> > "Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
> >
> > or:

> > “Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter.”

Exodus References:

3:21; 9:6; 9:7; 9:28; 14:28

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

> "I am **the alpha and the omega**," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8 ULT)
>
> I am **the alpha and the omega**, **the first and the last**, **the beginning and the end**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

> … I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** …, (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples From the Bible

> **From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

> He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)
>
> > I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

> **From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)
>
> > **In all places**, people should praise Yahweh’s name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)
>
> > I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

> He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)
>
> > He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

Exodus References:

2:12; 3:15; 4:10; 7:19; 8:3; 8:5; 8:9; 8:11; 8:13; 8:21; 8:24; 8:29; 8:31; 9:3; 9:25; 11:5; 11:6; 12:29; 13:10; 13:15; 20:4; 23:25

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison** (**Idea**) between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about

the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**," "family **tree**," "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in a book), or the word "crane" (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word "hand" to represent "power," using the word "face" to represent "presence," and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were "clothing."

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction "up" (the Image) often represents the concepts of "more" or "better" (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going **up**," "A **highly** intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The temperature is going **down**," and "I am feeling very **low**."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat **up**." More is spoken of as up.
- "Let us **go ahead** with our debate." Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- "You **defend** your theory well." Argument is spoken of as war.
- "A **flow** of words." Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see **Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns** and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. (Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> And he said to them, "Go and tell that fox …" (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator’s special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

> Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is “I” (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is “bread.” Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is “life.” In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.

- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

> Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

> Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See Simile.
(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.

(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

> Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)
>
> > Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

> But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)
>
> > It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)
>
> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”
> > “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the

> > **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
>
> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

> I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)
>
> > I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
> > Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see **Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns**.

Exodus References:

1:7; 1:14; 2:5; 3:8; 3:8; 3:17; 4:15; 4:21; 4:21; 4:22; 4:23; 4:25; 5:21; 6:6; 6:12; 6:30; 7:1; 7:1; 7:3; 7:13; 7:14; 7:22; 8:6; 8:15; 8:19; 8:32; 9:3; 9:7; 9:12; 9:15; 9:17; 9:21; 9:34; 9:35; 9:35; 10:1; 10:20; 10:21; 10:27; 11:8; 11:10; 12:15; 12:19; 12:19; 13:3; 13:9; 13:9; 13:14; 13:15; 14:4; 14:8; 14:17; 14:27; 15:1; 15:2; 15:2; 15:2; 15:3; 15:4; 15:6; 15:7; 15:7; 15:8; 15:10; 15:12; 15:15; 15:16; 15:17; 15:17; 15:21; 16:intro; 16:4; 16:29; 17:14; 18:8; 18:18; 18:19; 18:19; 18:20; 18:21; 18:22; 18:22; 18:25; 18:26; 19:intro; 19:4; 19:6; 19:7; 19:21; 19:22; 19:24; 19:24; 20:2; 20:20; 23:2; 23:7; 23:8; 23:16; 23:33; 28:38; 30:14; 30:33; 30:33; 30:38; 30:38; 31:3; 31:13; 31:14; 31:16; 32:1; 32:8; 32:9; 32:21; 33:3; 33:3; 33:5; 33:11; 33:12; 33:13; 33:19; 33:22; 34:7; 34:9; 34:14; 34:15; 34:16; 34:16; 34:22; 35:21; 35:31; 35:35; 36:2; 40:38

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

> … and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

> The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. “Throne” is a metonym for “kingly authority,” “kingship,” or “reign.” This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

> Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

(2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

> And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

> > He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

> The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)
>
> > "The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David."
> > or:
> > "The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David."
>
> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)
>
> > "Who warned you to flee from God's coming **punishment**?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see **Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies**.

Exodus References:

1:1; 1:5; 1:7; 1:8; 1:8; 1:12; 1:16; 2:15; 2:19; 3:2; 3:7; 3:8; 3:8; 3:8; 3:13; 3:15; 3:16; 3:16; 3:17; 3:17; 3:17; 3:18; 3:19; 3:20; 3:20; 4:1; 4:3; 4:9; 4:10; 4:12; 4:14; 4:15; 4:18; 4:21; 4:22; 4:30; 5:2; 5:3; 5:10; 5:21; 5:23; 6:1; 6:1; 6:12; 6:14; 6:25; 6:30; 7:4; 7:4; 7:5; 7:9; 7:10; 7:20; 8:20; 8:24; 8:26; 9:3; 9:4; 9:4; 9:6; 9:7; 9:8; 9:10; 9:11; 9:11; 9:13; 9:15; 9:16; 9:19; 9:21; 9:30; 10:3; 10:10; 10:11; 10:17; 10:23; 10:25; 10:25; 12:13; 12:48; 13:3; 13:5; 13:9; 13:9; 13:11; 13:14; 13:16; 13:21; 13:22; 14:5; 14:19; 14:25; 14:27; 14:30; 14:31; 15:6; 15:9; 15:12; 15:16; 15:17; 15:26; 16:3; 16:33; 16:34; 17:1; 17:6; 17:8; 17:13; 17:14; 18:4; 18:8; 18:9; 18:10; 18:12; 18:14; 19:5; 19:7; 19:8; 19:9; 19:11; 19:13; 19:19; 20:6; 20:10; 20:24; 21:1; 21:6; 22:8; 22:9; 22:24; 23:1; 23:13; 23:13; 23:17; 23:20; 23:21; 23:21; 23:21; 23:22; 23:23; 23:27; 23:28; 23:29; 23:30; 23:31; 24:11; 24:16; 25:30; 25:30; 25:37; 25:40; 26:9; 27:21; 28:3; 28:12; 28:25; 28:27; 28:30; 28:35; 28:37; 28:38; 29:10; 29:23; 29:24; 29:42; 30:6; 30:16; 30:36; 30:36; 32:1; 32:5; 32:11; 32:12; 32:32; 32:33; 33:3; 33:9; 33:14; 33:15; 33:19; 34:3; 34:5; 34:7; 34:7; 34:7; 34:7; 34:11; 34:14; 34:15; 34:23; 34:28; 35:10; 35:13; 35:20; 35:24; 35:25; 35:29; 36:1; 36:3; 36:6; 38:21; 40:5; 40:6; 40:18; 40:23; 40:25; 40:26; 40:38

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

> **The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

> **He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

> **The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples From the Bible

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

"The righteous" here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

"The meek" here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)
>
> > The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

> Blessed are **people who are meek**.

Exodus References:

36:4

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

> Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

> That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples From the Bible

> When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the

> father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

> Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands.** (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

(1) Write numbers using numerals.
(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
(4) Combine words for large numbers.
(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

> Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand**

> talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents)**, **ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

> When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Exodus References:

2:2; 2:16; 3:18; 6:16; 6:18; 6:20; 7:7; 7:25; 10:22; 10:23; 12:37; 12:40; 12:41; 13:6; 13:7; 14:7; 15:27; 18:21; 18:25; 22:1; 22:30; 23:10; 23:12; 23:14; 23:15; 24:1; 24:4; 24:16; 24:18; 26:7; 26:8; 26:16; 28:9; 28:10; 29:35; 31:15; 32:28; 34:18; 35:2

Order of Events

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

Examples From the Bible

> He even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

> Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, and the ark of the covenant of Yahweh followed after them. But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

> Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

(1) If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)
(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See Verse Bridges.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

> 20 he even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)
>
> > 20 But then Herod … had John locked up in prison. 21 **Before John was put in prison,** while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.
>
> Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)
>
> > Who is worthy to open the scroll **after** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

> Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)
>
> > 8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets 10 But Joshua **had commanded** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

> 8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)
>
> > 8,10 Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of

> > rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets…
>
> Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)
>
> > Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_events.

Exodus References:

33:5

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

> And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have "-th" added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples From the Bible

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

> You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

(1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

> The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim … the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)
>
> > There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim … **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.
> >
> > There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim … **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

> A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)
>
> > A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)
>
> > They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim … Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Exodus References:

2:13; 12:16; 12:18; 12:18; 13:6; 16:1; 16:5; 16:22; 16:26; 16:29; 19:1; 20:5; 20:11; 22:30; 23:11; 23:12; 24:16; 26:4; 28:18; 28:19; 28:20; 31:15; 34:21; 35:2; 40:2; 40:17

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

> Your word is a lamp to my feet
>
> and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
>
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

> Yahweh sees everything a person does
>
> and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything…does" corresponds to "all the paths…takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

> Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
>
> exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
>
> and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely,” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

> > Until now you have deceived me with your lies.

> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

> > Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.
>
> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

> > For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.
>
> You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

> > You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)
>
> > All you have done is lie to me.
>
> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Exodus References:

3:8; 3:9; 6:1; 6:4; 7:6; 9:2; 10:5; 10:15; 12:2; 13:9; 13:16; 15:2; 15:4; 15:5; 15:6; 15:7; 15:8; 15:13; 15:14; 19:3; 23:13; 23:22; 25:15; 28:3; 29:18; 32:18; 33:10; 33:19; 35:21; 39:32

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

> You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

> **Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

> > **Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you.**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

> > Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person.**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

> Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
>
> > He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Exodus References:

2:23; 3:9; 4:8; 7:12; 14:3; 15:7; 15:8; 15:12; 15:14; 15:15; 23:8; 24:10; 33:22; 33:23

Poetry

Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

In poetry we commonly find:

- many figures of speech such as Apostrophe
- arrangements of clauses into particular patterns such as:
  - parallel lines (See Parallelism)
  - acrostics (beginning lines with successive letters of the alphabet)
  - chiasms (in which the first line relates to the last line, the second to the next-to-last line, etc.):

> You should not give what is holy to the dogs,
>
> > and should not throw your pearls in front of the
> > pigs.
> >
> > Otherwise they will trample them under their feet,
>
> and having turned, they might tear you to pieces. (Matt 7:6 ULT)

- repetition of some or all of a line:

> Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his hosts. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars. (Psalm 148:2-3 ULT)

- lines of similar length:

> Listen to my call to you,
>
> Yahweh; think about my groanings.
>
> Listen to the sound of my call, my King and my God,
>
> for it is to you that I pray. (Psalm 5:1-2 ULT)

- the same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines:

> "Twinkle, twinkle little **star**. How I wonder what you **are**." (from an English rhyme)

- the same sound repeated many times:

> "Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater" (from an English rhyme)

- The same root word used as both a verb and as a noun:

> Your old men will **dream dreams** (Joel 2:28 ULT)

> Yahweh,…**light lightning** and scatter them (Psalm 144:5-6 ULT)

We also find:

- old words and expressions
- dramatic imagery
- different use of grammar — including:
  - incomplete sentences
  - lack of connective words

Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors

3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language, you may need to write it without the poetry.
- Different languages use different poetic devices. A poetic device that conveys elegance or emotion in a biblical language may be confusing or misunderstood in another language.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples From the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely made up of poetry.

> … for you saw my affliction; you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7b ULT)

This example of Parallelism has two lines that mean the same thing.

> Yahweh, judge the nations; vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High. (Psalm 7:8 ULT)

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See Parallelism.)

> Keep your servant also from arrogant sins; let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13a ULT)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See Personification.)

> Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good,
>
> for his covenant faithfulness endures forever. Oh, give thanks to the God of gods, for his co
>
> (Psalm 136:1-3 ULT)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked, or stand in the pathway with sinners, or sit in the assembly of mockers. But his delight is in the law of Yahweh, and on his law he meditates day and night. (Psalm 1:1-2 ULT)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1-2.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

> > "Happy is the person not encouraged **to sin**,
> > Disrespect for God he will not **begin**, To those
> > who laugh at God he is **no kin.** God is his
> > constant **delight**, He does what God says **is right**,
> > He thinks of it all day **and night**."

(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

> > This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people nor stop along the road to speak with sinners nor join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather, he takes great joy in Yahweh's law, and he meditates on it day and night.

(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

> > The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or join with those who do not respect God. Instead, they

> love to obey Yahweh’s law, and they think about it all the time.

Exodus References:

32:18

Possession

Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word "**of**," by using **an apostrophe and the letter "s"**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my **grandfather's** house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.

> The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own

- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.

> The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John

> A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel

- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.

> The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing

> the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord

- Contents — Something has something in it.

> a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes

- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.

> my head — the head that is part of my body

> the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession.** This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language. In languages that mark the difference, the expression of inalienable possession and alienable possession will be different.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples From the Bible

Ownership — In the example below, the son owned the money.

> The younger son … wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

Social Relationship — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

> Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

Association — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

> Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

Material — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)

Contents — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

> For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

> But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace.** (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

Part of a group — In the example below, "us" refers to the whole group and "each one" refers to the individual members.

> Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

> The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

> Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

Object — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

> For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

Instrument — Sometimes the word after "of" tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

> Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

Representation — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

> John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

(1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
(2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
(3) See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)
>
> > “On their heads were **gold crowns**”

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

> Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)
>
> > Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink … will not lose his reward.
>
> Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath.** (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)
>
> > Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.
> > or:
> > Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, "punishment of Yahweh" and "your God.")

> Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God.** (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)
>
> > Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.
>
> You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

> > You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.
>
> You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)
>
> > You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you**.

Exodus References:

1:9; 1:11; 3:1; 3:1; 3:7; 3:7; 3:8; 3:18; 3:21; 4:27; 7:16; 7:19; 26:33; 26:34; 29:37; 30:10; 30:29; 30:36; 34:10; 40:10

Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use instead of using a noun when referring to someone or something. Some examples are “I,” “you,” “he,” “it,” “this,” “that,” “himself,” “someone,” and others. The personal pronoun is the most common type of pronoun.

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show whether the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may provide. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person — The speaker and possibly others (I, me, we, us)
    - Exclusive and Inclusive “We”
- Second Person — The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
    - Forms of You
- Third Person — Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular — one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural — more than one (we, you, they)
    - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual — two (Some languages have pronouns specifically for two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine — he
- Feminine — she
- Neuter — it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw **himself** in the mirror. The word “himself” refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: what, which, who, whom, whose.

- **Who** built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. The relative pronouns, who, whom, whose, which and that give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence. Sometimes, the relative adverbs when and where can also be used as relative pronouns.

- I saw the house **that John built**. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man **who built the house**. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these, that, and those.

- Have you seen **this** here?
- Who is **that** over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to. The indefinite pronouns are: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, and some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to **anyone**.
- **Someone** fixed it, but I do not know who.
- **They** say that **you** should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

Exodus References:

4:23

Pronouns — When to Use Them

Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

> Now there was **a man from thePharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase “this man.” Then he is referred to with the pronoun “him.”

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See Verbs.) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

> Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom "he" in the second sentence refers to.

> Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.
(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

> Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)
>
> > Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **Jesus** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and

> the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

> > At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **he** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

Exodus References:

1:7; 1:14; 1:14; 2:5; 2:20; 3:18; 3:20; 4:2; 4:5; 4:5; 4:8; 4:9; 4:14; 4:18; 4:18; 4:24; 4:24; 4:26; 4:26; 4:28; 4:30; 5:16; 5:20; 8:19; 14:9; 14:26; 18:21; 20:5; 21:31; 22:17; 24:2; 29:1; 29:1; 29:1; 29:3; 29:8; 29:24; 31:11; 32:2; 32:4; 32:10; 34:5; 34:28; 40:20; 40:21

Quotations and Quote Margins

Description

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the quote margin. What the person said is the quotation. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are bolded below.

- **She said**, “The food is ready. Come and eat.”
- “The food is ready. Come and eat,” **she said**.
- “The food is ready,” **she said.** “Come and eat.”

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning “said.”

> But his mother **answered** and **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (“ ”). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning “said.”
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

Examples From the Bible

Quote margin before the quote

> **Then Zechariah said to the angel**, “How will I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days.” (Luke 1:18 ULT)

> Then tax collectors also came to be baptized, and **they said to him**, “Teacher, what should we do?” (Luke 3:12 ULT)

> So **he said to them**, “Collect nothing more than what you have been ordered.” (Luke 3:13 ULT)

Quote margin after the quote

> Yahweh relented concerning this. “It will not happen,” **he said**. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

Quote margin between two parts of the quote

> “I will hide my face from them,” **he said,** “and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful.” (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

> For look, days are coming—**this is Yahweh’s declaration**—when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel and Judah. (Jeremiah 30:3a ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.
(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

> **He said**, “Therefore, those among you who are leaders should go down with us. If there is something wrong with the man, let them accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULT)
>
> > “Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” **he said**. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

> > “Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” **he said**.

> > “Therefore, those who can,” **he said**, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

> But his mother **answered and said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)
>
> > But his mother **replied**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”
>
> > But his mother **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”
>
> > But his mother **answered** like this. “No. Rather, he will be called John,” she **said**.

Exodus References:

33:20; 33:21; 34:1

Quote Markings

Description

Some languages use quotation marks to mark off direct quotes from the rest of the text. English uses the mark “ immediately before a quote and ” immediately after it.

- John said, “I do not know when I will arrive.”

Quotation marks are not used with indirect quotes.

- John said that he did not know when he would arrive.

When there are several layers of quotations inside of other quotations, it might be hard for readers to understand who is saying what. Alternating two kinds of quotation marks can help careful readers to keep track of them. In English, the outermost quotation has double quote marks, and the next quotation within it has single marks. If there is a third embedded quote, that quotation again has double quotation marks.

- Mary said, “John said, ‘I do not know when I will arrive.’ ”
- Bob said, “Mary told me, ‘John said, “I do not know when I will arrive.” ’ ”

Some languages use other kinds of quotation marks: Here are some examples: , ‘ ’ „ “ ” ‹ › « » ׳ — .

Examples From the Bible

The examples below show the kind of quotation markings used in the ULT.

A quotation with only one layer

A first layer direct quote has double quotation marks around it.

> So the king replied, “That is Elijah the Tishbite.” (2 Kings 1:8b ULT)

Quotations with two layers

A second layer direct quote has single quotation marks around it. We have printed it and the phrase in bold type for you to see them clearly.

> They asked him, “Who is the man who said to you, **‘Pick it up and walk’**?” (John 5:12 ULT)
>
> He sent two of the disciples, saying, “Go into the village ahead of you. As you enter, you will find a colt that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it to me. If any one asks you, **‘Why are you untying it?’** you will say thus, **‘The Lord has need of it.’**” (Luke 19:29b-31 ULT)

A quotation with three layers

A third layer direct quote has double quotation marks around it. We have printed it in bold type for you to see them clearly.

> Abraham said, “Because I thought, ‘Surely there is no fear of God in this place, and they will kill me because of my wife.’ Besides, she is indeed my sister, the daughter of my father, but not the daughter of my mother; and she became my wife. When God caused me to leave my father’s house and travel from place to place, I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, “**He is my brother**.”’” (Genesis 20:11-13 ULT)

A quotation with four layers

A fourth layer direct quote has single quotation marks around it. We have printed it in bold for you to see it clearly.

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: **‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’** ” ’ ” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

Quote Marking Strategies

Here are some ways you may be able to help readers see where each quote starts and ends so they can more easily know who said what.

(1) Alternate two kinds of quote marks to show layers of direct quotation. English alternates double quote marks and single quote marks.
(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes in order to use fewer quote marks, since indirect quotes do not need them. (See Direct and Indirect Quotations.)
(3) If a quotation is very long and has many layers of quotation in it, indent the main overall quote, and use quote marks only for the direct quotes inside of it.

Examples of Quote Marking Strategies Applied

(1) Alternate two kinds of quotation marks to show layers of direct quotation as shown in the ULT text below.

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

(2) Translate one or more of the quotes as indirect quotes in order to use fewer quotation marks, since indirect quotes do not need them. In English, the word “that” can introduce an indirect quote. In the example below, everything after the word “that” is an indirect quote of what the messengers said to the king. Within that indirect quote, there are some direct quotes marked with double and single quotation marks.

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

> > They told him **that** a man came to meet them who said to them, “Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, ‘Yahweh says this: “Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.”’”

(3) If a quotation is very long and has many layers of quotation in it, indent the main overall quote, and use quote marks only for the direct quotes inside of it.

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

> > They said to him,
> >
> > > A man came to meet us who said to us, “Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, ‘Yahweh says this: “Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you

> > > will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.”””

Exodus References:

1:9; 2:6; 2:22; 3:3; 3:6; 3:7; 3:15; 3:16-17; 3:16; 3:17; 3:22; 4:1; 4:5; 4:21; 4:22; 4:23; 4:23; 4:26; 5:1; 5:17; 6:1; 7:1; 7:9; 7:18; 8:4; 8:5; 8:20; 8:23; 9:1; 9:19; 10:3; 11:1; 12:2; 13:2; 14:2; 25:2; 30:10; 31:13; 31:14; 32:8

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I," the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples From the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

> But Paul said, "I, however, was indeed born a citizen." (Acts 22:28b ULT)

Quotations with two layers

> Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." (Matthew 24:4-5 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

> Jesus answered, “You say that I am a king.” (John 18:37b ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

> Abraham said, “… I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **“He is my brother.”**’” (Genesis 20:11a, 13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham responded to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have bolded the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: **‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal- Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’**”’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have bolded the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See Direct and Indirect Quotations.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have bolded the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

> Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul, saying, "There is a certain man was left here as a prisoner by Felix. So I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked **if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and there to be judged concerning these things**. But when Paul appealed **to keep him in custody for the decision of the emperor**, I ordered him **to be held in custody until when I could send him to Caesar**." (Acts 25:14b, 20-21 ULT)
>
> > Festus presented Paul's case to the king. He said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. I was uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there concerning these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept in custody for the emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him in custody until when I can send him to Caesar.'**"

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is bolded in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also bolded.

> And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Speak to them and say, 'During the evenings you

will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.'" (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

> And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Tell them **that** during the evenings **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be satisfied with bread. And **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God.'"

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

> They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Exodus References:

3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:17; 4:1; 4:22; 5:10; 7:16; 7:17; 8:1; 8:1; 9:1; 12:26; 13:8; 13:14; 16:9; 19:12; 19:23; 32:8; 32:12; 32:23; 32:24; 33:1

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: “myself,” “yourself,” “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” “ourselves,” “yourselves,” and “themselves.” In English, these pronouns can also be used to emphasize the person to whom they refer. Other languages may have other ways to do both of these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone or something did something alone or was alone

Examples From the Bible

To show that the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence

> If **I** testify about **myself**, my testimony is not true. (John 5:31 ULT)

> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence

> **Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

> So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

> Then Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea but that **he himself** was about to depart soon. (Acts 25:4 ULT)

To show that someone did something alone, or that something was alone

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a

special place in the sentence.
(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."
(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

> If I testify about **myself**, my testimony is not true. (John 5:31)
>
> > "If I **self-testify**, my testimony is not true."

> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)
>
> > "Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**."

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

> **He himself** took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

> > "**The one who** took our sickness and bore our diseases **was Jesus**."

> **Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)
>
> > "**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples."

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.

> But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)
>
> > But Jesus said this to test Philip, for, **as for him, he** knew what he was going to do.

> Then Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea but that **he himself** was about to depart soon. (Acts 25:4 ULT)
>
> > Then Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea but that, **for his part, he** was about to depart soon.

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)
>
> > "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain."

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)
>
> > "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in it's own place**."

Exodus References:

5:11; 5:19; 7:18; 9:17; 10:28; 14:14; 32:1; 32:7; 32:24; 33:6; 34:8; 34:12

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> But those who stood by said, "**Are you insulting the high priest of God?**"(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above **to remind** King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order **to rebuke** him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above **to remind** his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then **rebuked** his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

> But you, why do you judge your brother? And you also, why do you despise your brother? (Romans 14:10 ULT)

Paul used these rhetorical questions **to rebuke** the Romans for doing what they should not do.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above **to show deep emotion**. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above **to show how surprised and happy she was** that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to remind** the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on **to teach them** about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question **to teach** the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden … (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to introduce what he was going to talk about**. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to express surprise or other emotion? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

(1) Add the answer after the question.
(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
>
> > Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?
> > **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me
> > for days without number!

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)
>
> > **This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed …

> **Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)
>
> > **You should not insult God's high priest!**

> **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)
>
> > **I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

> **And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)
>
> > **How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

> **Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)
>
> > You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
>
> > If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone**?

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
>
> > **What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils**? Yet my

> people have forgotten me for days without number!

> But you, **why do you judge your brother**? And you also, **why do you despise your brother**? (Romans 14:10 ULT)
>
> > Do you think it is good to judge your brother? Do you think it is good to despise your brother?

Exodus References:

2:14; 2:14; 2:20; 3:11; 4:11; 4:11; 4:11; 4:14; 5:4; 5:14; 5:22; 6:12; 6:30; 8:26; 10:7; 10:7; 14:intro; 14:5; 14:11; 14:11; 14:12; 14:15; 15:11; 15:11; 16:7; 16:8; 16:28; 17:intro; 17:2; 17:3; 18:14; 18:14; 22:27; 32:11; 32:12; 33:16

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as," or "than."

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.

- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves.** (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
>
> > See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.
>
> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)
>
> > For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
>
> > See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)
>
> > How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!
>
> If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** … (Matthew 17:20)
>
> > If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
>
> > See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.
>
> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)
>
> > How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Exodus References:

4:6; 4:16; 4:16; 15:5; 15:7; 15:10; 15:16; 16:14; 19:18; 24:10; 24:17; 33:11; 34:12

Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups

Description

The Bible was written in Hebrew, Aramaic and Greek. These languages have a singular form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a plural form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. However, sometimes speakers in the Bible used the singular form of “you” even though they were speaking to a group of people. This is not obvious when you read the Bible in English because English does not have different forms that indicate where “you” is singular and where “you” is plural. But you may see this if you read a Bible in a language that does have distinct forms.

Also, speakers and writers of the Old Testament often referred to groups of people with the singular pronoun “he,” rather than with the plural pronoun “they.”

Finally, Old Testament speakers and writers sometimes referred to actions that they performed as part of a group by saying ‘I’ did it when, really, the whole group was involved.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- For many languages, a translator who reads a Bible with a general form of “you” will need to know whether the speaker was speaking to one person or to more than one.
- In some languages, it might be confusing if a speaker uses a singular pronoun when speaking to or about more than one person.

Examples From the Bible

> 1 Now take heed that **you** do not do **your** acts of righteousness before people to be seen by them, otherwise **you** will not have a reward with **your** Father who is in heaven. 2 So when **you** give alms, do not sound a trumpet before **yourself** as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, so that they may have the praise of people. Truly I say to **you**, they have received their reward. (Matthew 6:1-2 ULT)

Jesus said this to a crowd. He used “you” plural in verse 1, and “you” singular in the first sentence of verse 2. Then, in the last sentence, he used the plural again.

> God spoke all these words: “I am Yahweh, **your** God, who brought **you** out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery. **You** must have no other gods before me.” (Exodus 20:1-3 ULT)

God said this to all the people of Israel. He had taken them all out of Egypt and he wanted them all to obey him, but he used the singular form of you here when speaking to them.

> This is what Yahweh says,
> “For three sins of Edom,
> even for four,
> I will not turn away punishment,
> because **he** pursued **his** brother with the sword
> and cast off all pity.
> **His** anger raged continually,
> and **his** wrath lasted forever.” (Amos 1:11 ULT)

Yahweh said these things about the nation of Edom, not about only one person.

> And I arose in the night, myself and a few men with me. And I was going up by the wadi at night, and I was looking intently at the wall. And I turned back, and I entered by the gate of the valley, and I returned. (Nehemiah 2:12a,15 ULT)

Nehemiah makes clear that he brought other people with him on his inspection tour of the wall of Jerusalem. But as he describes the tour, he just says “I” did this and that.

Translation Strategies

If the singular form of the pronoun would be natural when referring to a group of people, consider using it.

(1) If using the singular form of the pronoun when referring to a group of people would not be natural in your language, use the plural form of the pronoun.

- Whether you can use use the singular form of the pronoun may depend on who the speaker is and who the people are that he is talking about or talking to.

• It may also depend on what the speaker is saying.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If using the singular form of the pronoun when referring to a group of people would not be natural in your language, use the plural form of the pronoun.

> This is what Yahweh says,
> “For three sins of Edom,
> even for four,
> I will not turn away punishment,
> because **he** pursued **his** brother with the sword
> and cast off all pity.
> **His** anger raged continually,
> and **his** wrath lasted forever.” (Amos 1:11 ULT)

> > This is what Yahweh says,
> > “For three sins of Edom,
> > even for four,
> > I will not turn away punishment,
> > because **they** pursued **their brothers** with the sword
> > and cast off all pity.
> > **Their** anger raged continually,
> > and **their** wrath lasted forever.”

> And I arose in the night, myself and a few men with me. And **I** was going up by the wadi at night, and **I** was looking intently at the wall. And **I** turned back, and **I** entered by the gate of the valley, and **I** returned. (Nehemiah 2:12a,15 ULT)

> And I arose in the night, myself and a few men with me. … And **we** were going up by the wadi at night and **we** were looking intently at the wall. And **we** turned back and **we** entered by the gate of the valley, and **we** returned.

Exodus References:

12:24; 12:46; 12:48; 16:28; 20:intro; 25:intro

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

> And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

> Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
> > Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

> > Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
> > Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
>
> > Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

> > Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Exodus References:

4:27; 4:31; 6:8; 9:29; 9:33; 11:8; 18:7; 18:13; 29:24; 29:26; 29:27; 34:14

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> So **the Pharisees** said to him, "Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?" (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

> "**My soul** magnifies the Lord." (Luke 1:46b ULT)
>
> > "**I** magnify the Lord."
>
> So **the Pharisees** said to him … (Mark 2:24a ULT)
>
> > **Arepresentative of the Pharisees** said to him …
>
> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)
>
> > I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

Exodus References:

1:19; 2:20; 3:18; 4:13; 5:14; 6:6; 6:7; 8:6; 8:19; 9:14; 10:26; 10:28; 10:29; 12:23; 14:10; 17:10; 17:11; 27:21; 34:15; 35:21; 35:22; 35:26; 35:29; 35:35; 36:1; 36:8

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT New Testament on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. The ULT Old Testament is based on the Westminster Leningrad Codex, which is considered to be the best representative of the ancient copies. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

> 10 See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you
> that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is
> in heaven. 11 [1]

> [1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest copies. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

> 53 [Then everyone went to his own house … 11 She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more.”] [2]
>
> [2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

Psalm 100:3 ULT follows the Westminster Leningrad Codex. It says:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and not we**,

There are some other ancient copies that say:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and we are his**,

There is an unfoldingWord® Translation Note at that place to tell the translator about this other reading and that either one is an acceptable choice.

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include a footnote about the alternate reading such as the one that the ULT provides or one in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

> 14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” 16 [1]
>
> [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

> 14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” 16 [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

> 14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the

> man are the things that defile the man. 16 If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Exodus References:

8:23

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

> So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)
>
> > Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow.** (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
>
> > Your sins … will be white like **milk**.
> >
> > Your sins … will be white like **the moon**.

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
>
> > Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is

> if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
>
> > We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)
>
> > I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

> to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Exodus References:

1:14; 1:14; 2:3; 2:3; 2:3; 2:3; 2:3; 2:16; 4:25; 4:25; 5:8; 5:12; 6:26; 7:22; 8:7; 8:16; 8:17; 8:18; 8:18; 8:19; 8:21; 8:22; 8:24; 8:29; 8:31; 9:9; 9:10; 9:11; 9:31; 9:31; 9:32; 12:17; 12:22; 12:41; 12:51; 14:24; 15:20; 16:13; 16:14; 16:31; 22:6; 22:6; 23:11; 23:28; 24:7; 24:10; 25:4; 25:5; 25:5; 25:5; 25:6; 25:7; 25:10; 25:12; 25:13; 25:29; 25:33; 26:1; 26:1; 26:11; 26:14; 26:14; 26:15; 26:15; 26:17; 26:25; 26:26; 26:33; 26:36; 26:36; 27:9; 27:19; 28:4; 28:4; 28:5; 28:5; 28:6; 28:9; 28:11; 28:11; 28:11; 28:13; 28:17-21; 28:17; 28:18; 28:18; 28:19; 28:20; 28:20; 28:21; 28:22; 28:27; 28:30; 28:32; 28:32; 28:33; 28:36; 28:36; 28:37; 28:39; 28:39; 28:39; 28:40; 28:40; 28:42; 29:2; 29:5; 29:6; 29:6; 29:7; 29:9; 29:9; 29:9; 29:12; 29:13; 29:17; 29:22; 30:2; 30:18; 30:23; 30:23; 30:23; 30:24; 30:25; 30:34; 32:4; 33:4; 35:6; 35:7; 35:7; 35:7; 35:8; 35:9

Verse Bridges

Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

> 29 These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and
> Anah, 30 Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites,
> according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 ULT)

> 29-30 The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir
> land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah,
> Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

Examples From the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

> 4-5 Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you.
> If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I
> am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you.
> (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UST)

> [4] However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), [5] if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULT)

> [16-17] But Yahweh said to him, “I will not permit you to eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are good to do and what actions are evil to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on the day you eat it you will surely die. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the park.” (Genesis 2:16-17 UST)

> [16] Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, “From every tree in the garden you may freely eat. [17] But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die.” (Genesis 2:16-17 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

(1) If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in translationStudio.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

> 2 You must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. 3 You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 ULT)
>
> 2-3 You must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

Exodus References:

33:4

When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men,” “brothers,” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says “brothers” when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

> A wise son makes **his** father rejoice
> but a foolish son brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples From the Bible

> Now we want you to know, **brothers**, the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

> Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The words below are specifically about men.

> Moses said, ‘If **someone** dies, not having children, **hisbrother** must marry **his** wife and have children for **hisbrother**.’ (Matthew 22:24 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

(1) Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

> The wise **man** dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16b ULT)

> > “The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies.”
> > “Wise **people** die just like fools die.”

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

> For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) — Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
>
> > “For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia.”

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

> “If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

> > “If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me.”

Exodus References:

8:17; 8:18; 9:9; 9:10; 9:19; 9:22; 9:25; 10:7; 10:23; 12:4; 12:22; 12:24; 12:26; 33:4; 35:21; 35:22; 35:23; 36:1; 36:4

When to Keep Information Implicit

Description

Sometimes it is better not to state assumed knowledge or implicit information explicitly. This page gives some direction about when not to do this.

Translation Principles

- If a speaker or author intentionally left something unclear, do not try to make it more clear.
- If the original audience did not understand what the speaker meant, do not make it so clear that your readers would find it strange that the original audience did not understand.
- If you need to explicitly state some assumed knowledge or implicit information, try to do it in a way that does not make your readers think that the original audience needed to be told those things.
- Do not make implicit information explicit if it confuses the message or leads the reader to forget what the main point is.
- Do not make assumed knowledge or implicit information explicit if your readers already understand it.

Examples From the Bible

> From the eater came forth food;
> and from the strong one came forth sweetness. (Judges 14:14 ULT)

This was a riddle. Samson purposely said this in a way that it would be hard for his enemies to know what it meant. Do not make it clear that the eater and the strong thing was a lion and that the sweet thing to eat was honey.

> Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” They reasoned among themselves saying, “It is because we did not take bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Some possible implicit information here is that the disciples should beware of the false teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. But Jesus’ disciples did not understand this. They thought that Jesus was talking about real yeast and bread. So it would not be appropriate to

state explicitly that the word “yeast” here refers to false teaching. The disciples did not understand what Jesus meant until they heard what Jesus said in Matthew 16:11.

> “How is it that you do not understand that I was not speaking to you about bread? Beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” Then they understood that he was not telling them to beware of yeast in bread, but to beware of the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. (Matthew 16:11-12 ULT)

Only after Jesus explained that he was not talking about bread did they realize that he was talking about the false teaching of the Pharisees. Therefore, it would be wrong to explicitly state the implicit information in Matthew 16:6.

Translation Strategies

Because we recommend that translators not change this kind of passage to make it more clear, this page does not have any translation strategies.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Because we recommend that translators not change this kind of passage to make it more clear, this page does not have any translation strategies applied.

Exodus References:

4:20

unfoldingWord® Translation Words - Exodus

v91

Aaron

Definition:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priest priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: priest, Moses, Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 7:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 1:5
- Numbers 16:45

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 9:15 God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- 10:5 Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- 13:9 God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- 13:11 So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- 14:7 They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0175, G00020

Exodus References:

4:14; 4:27; 4:28; 4:29; 4:30; 5:1; 5:4; 5:20; 6:13; 6:20; 6:23; 6:25; 6:26; 6:27; 7:1; 7:2; 7:6; 7:7; 7:8; 7:9; 7:10; 7:12; 7:19; 7:20; 8:5; 8:6; 8:8; 8:12; 8:16; 8:17; 8:25; 9:8; 9:27; 10:3; 10:8; 10:16; 11:10; 12:1; 12:28; 12:31; 12:43; 12:50; 15:20; 16:2; 16:6; 16:9; 16:10; 16:33; 16:34; 17:10; 17:12; 18:12; 19:24; 24:1; 24:9; 24:14; 27:21; 28:1; 28:2; 28:3; 28:4; 28:12; 28:29; 28:30; 28:35; 28:38; 28:40; 28:41; 28:43; 29:4; 29:5; 29:9; 29:10; 29:15; 29:19; 29:20; 29:21; 29:24; 29:26; 29:27; 29:28; 29:29; 29:32; 29:35; 29:44; 30:7; 30:8; 30:10; 30:19; 30:30; 31:10; 32:1; 32:2; 32:3; 32:5; 32:21; 32:22; 32:25; 32:35; 34:30; 34:31; 35:19; 38:21; 39:1; 39:27; 39:41; 40:12; 40:13; 40:31

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and did not want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, desolate, false god, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Ezra 9:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 1:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G09460

Exodus References:

8:26

Abraham, Abram

Definition:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 4:6 When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- 5:4 Then God changed **Abram**'s name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- 5:5 About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- 5:6 When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."

- 6:1 When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- 6:4 After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- 21:2 God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

Exodus References:

2:24; 3:6; 3:15; 3:16; 4:5; 6:3; 6:8; 32:13; 33:1

admonish, warned, aware

Definition:

The term “admonish” means to firmly warn or advise someone.

- Usually “admonish” means to advise someone not to do something.
- In the body of Christ, believers are taught to admonish each other to avoid sin and to live holy lives.
- The word “admonish” could be translated as “encourage not to sin” or “urge someone to not sin.”

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 9:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2094, H5749, G35600, G38670, G55370

Exodus References:

21:29

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: euphemism)

(See also: commit, covenant, sexual immorality, faithful)

Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 4:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 5:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 2:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:6 “Do not commit **adultery**.”
- 28:2 Do not commit **adultery**.
- 34:7 “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men-such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5003, H5004, G34280, G34290, G34300, G34310, G34320

Exodus References:

20:14

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

Exodus References:

15:6; 15:9; 23:4; 23:22; 23:27

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

Exodus References:

18:19

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.
- In some Old Testament contexts, the idea of “afflicting oneself” or “afflicting one’s soul” means to abstain from eating food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “afflict” someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:6
- Amos 5:12
- Colossians 1:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G23460, G23470, G38040

Exodus References:

1:11; 1:12; 3:7; 3:17; 4:31; 5:19; 5:22; 5:23; 22:22; 22:23

age, era, time

Definition:

Used in this sense the term “age” refers to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience toward God fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign in a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could be translated as “era” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”
- The phrase “end of the age” (used in Jesus’ words in Matthew 28:20) means “end of this period of history” or “end of this present age” and refers to the end of this present age at Jesus’ second coming.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2165, H6256, H6471, G21190, G21210, G22350, G25400, G35680, G41830, G42180, G44550, G51190, G55500, G55510, G56100

Exodus References:

9:14; 9:27; 18:22; 18:26

alien, foreigner, sojourn

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.” To sojourn is to live temporarily as a foreigner.

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- A sojourner is another word for a temporary foreign resident.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:17
- Acts 7:29-30
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0312, H0628, H0776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G02410, G02450, G05260, G09150, G18540, G35810, G39270, G39410

Exodus References:

2:22; 6:4; 12:19; 12:43; 12:45; 12:48; 12:49; 18:3; 20:10; 21:8; 22:21; 23:9; 23:12

Almighty

Definition:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful.” In the Bible, this term always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord)

Bible References:

- Exodus 6:2-5
- Genesis 17:1
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 8:3
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 1:7-8
- Ruth 1:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7706, G38410

Exodus References:

6:3

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 3:14 After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- 5:8 When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- 13:9 A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- 16:6 He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

Exodus References:

17:15; 20:24; 20:25; 20:26; 21:14; 24:4; 24:6; 27:1; 27:5; 27:6; 27:7; 28:43; 29:12; 29:13; 29:16; 29:18; 29:20; 29:21; 29:25; 29:36; 29:37; 29:38; 29:44; 30:1; 30:18; 30:20; 30:27; 30:28; 31:9; 32:5; 34:13; 35:16; 37:25; 38:1; 38:3; 38:4; 38:7; 38:30; 39:39; 40:5; 40:6; 40:7; 40:10; 40:26; 40:29; 40:30; 40:32; 40:33

altar of incense, incense altar

Definition:

The altar of incense was a piece of furniture on which a priest would burn incense as an offering to God. It was also called the golden altar.

- The altar of incense was made of wood, and its top and sides were covered with gold. It was about a half meter long, a half meter wide, and one meter tall.
- At first it was kept in the tabernacle. Then it was kept in the temple.
- Every morning and evening a priest would burn incense on it.
- This can also be translated as “altar for burning incense” or “golden altar” or “incense burner” or “incense table.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: incense)

Bible References:

- Luke 1:11-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4196, H7004, G23680, G23790

Exodus References:

35:15; 39:38

Amalek, Amalekite

Definition:

The Amalekites were a nomadic people group who lived throughout the southern part of Canaan, from the Negev desert to the country of Arabia. This people group was descended from Amalek, the grandson of Esau.

- The Amalekites were bitter enemies of Israel from the time when Israel first came to live in Canaan.
- Sometimes the term “Amalek” is used figuratively to refer to all the Amalekites. (See: synecdoche)
- In one battle against the Amalekites, when Moses held up his hands, the Israelites were winning. When he got tired and his hands came down, they started losing. So Aaron and Hur helped Moses keep his hands up until the Israelite army had defeated the Amalekites.
- Both King Saul and King David led military expeditions against the Amalekites.
- After one victory over the Amalekites, Saul disobeyed God by keeping some of the plunder and by not killing the Amalekite king as God had commanded him to do.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: **Arabia**, **David**, **Esau**, **Negev**, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 4:43**
- **2 Samuel 1:8**
- Exodus 17:10
- **Numbers 14:23-25**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6002, H6003

Exodus References:

17:8; 17:9; 17:10; 17:11; 17:13; 17:16

Amorite

Definition:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who inhabited the land of Canaan and lived on both sides of the Jordan River.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The book of Genesis reports that the Amorites were descended from Canaan, the grandson of Noah.
- The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 2:9
- Ezekiel 16:3
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 9:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:7 Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- 15:8 In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- 15:9 God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- 15:10 God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0567

Exodus References:

3:8; 3:17; 13:5; 23:23; 33:2; 34:11

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, servant)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16

- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 2:12 God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- 22:3 The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- 23:6 Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- 23:7 Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- 25:8 Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- 38:12 Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- 38:15 “I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

Exodus References:

3:2; 23:20; 23:23; 32:34; 33:2

anguish

Definition:

The term “anguish” refers to severe pain or distress.

- Anguish can be physical or emotional pain or distress.
- Often people who are in extreme anguish will show it in their face and behaviors.
- For example, a person in severe pain or anguish might grit his teeth or cry out.
- The term “anguish” could also be translated as “emotional distress” or “deep sorrow” or “severe pain.”

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 6:24
- Jeremiah 19:9
- Job 15:24
- Luke 16:24
- Psalms 116:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2342, H2470, H2479, H3708, H4164, H4689, H4691, H5100, H6695, H6862, H6869, H7267, H7581, G09280, G36000, G49280

Exodus References:

3:7

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil. Often this was a Symbolic Action, representing God empowering that person with the Holy Spirit for special service to him.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship.
- People prepared dead bodies for burial by anointing them with perfumed oils and spices.
- In the New Testament, receiving the Holy Spirit is described as anointing.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour/put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring oil on” or “consecrate” or “appoint.”
- Depending on the context, to “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated” or “be given the Holy Spirit.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28

- **Amos 6:5-6**
- Exodus 29:5-7
- **James 5:13-15**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

Exodus References:

25:6; 29:7; 29:21; 29:29; 29:36; 30:25; 30:30; 30:31; 31:11; 35:8; 35:28; 39:38; 40:9; 40:15

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

Exodus References:

9:5; 9:16; 13:10; 18:21; 18:25; 21:8; 21:13; 23:15; 33:22; 34:18

ark

Definition:

The term “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: ark of the covenant, basket)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:6
- Genesis 8:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0727, H8392, G27870

Exodus References:

2:3; 2:5

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, covenant, atonement, holy place, testimony)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 9:5
- Judges 20:27
- Numbers 7:89
- Revelation 11:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H1285, H3068

Exodus References:

25:10; 25:14; 25:15; 25:16; 25:21; 25:22; 26:33; 26:34; 30:6; 30:26; 31:7; 35:12; 37:1; 37:5; 39:35; 40:3; 40:5; 40:20; 40:21

Asher

Definition:

Asher was Jacob's eighth son. He was Zilpah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Asher" or "Asher."
- His name sounds similar to a Hebrew word meaning "blessed, happy."
- The tribe of Asher settled in the northwest corner of Canaan, on the Mediterannean Sea. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Asher" refers to the land given to the tribe of Asher.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Zilpah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:13
- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 4:16
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0836

Exodus References:

1:4

Asherah, Asherah pole, Ashtoreth

Definition:

Asherah was the name of a goddess that was worshiped by Canaanite people groups during Old Testament times. “Ashtoreth” may be another name for “Asherah,” or it could be the name of a different goddess that was very similar.

- The term “Asherah poles” refers to carved wooden images or carved trees that were made to represent this goddess.
- Asherah poles were often set up near altars of the false god Baal, who was thought of as Asherah’s husband. Some people groups worshiped Baal as the sun god and Asherah or Ashtoreth as the moon goddess.
- God commanded the Israelites to destroy all the carved images of Asherah.
- Some Israelite leaders such as Gideon, King Asa, and King Josiah obeyed God and led the people in destroying these idols.
- But other Israelite leaders such as King Solomon, King Manasseh, and King Ahab did not get rid of the Asherah poles and influenced the people to worship these idols.

(See also: false god, Baal, Gideon, image, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- 2 Kings 21:3
- Isaiah 27:9
- Judges 3:7-8
- Micah 5:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0842, H6252, H6253

Exodus References:

34:13

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: hyperbole)
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21

- **Nehemiah 8:1-3**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

Exodus References:

3:16; 4:29; 12:3; 12:6; 12:16; 12:19; 12:47; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:9; 16:10; 16:22; 17:1; 34:31; 35:1; 35:4; 38:25

atonement lid

Definition:

The “atonement lid” was a slab of gold that was used to cover the top of the ark of the covenant. In many English translations, it is also referred to as an “atonement cover.”

- The atonement lid was about 115 centimeters in length and 70 centimeters in width.
- Above the atonement lid were two gold cherubim with their wings touching.
- Yahweh said that he would meet with the Israelites above the atonement lid, under the outstretched wings of the cherubim. Only the high priest was permitted to meet with Yahweh in this way, as the representative of the people.
- Sometimes this atonement lid has been referred to as a “mercy seat” because it communicates God’s mercy in coming down to redeem sinful human beings.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “ark covering where God promises to redeem” or “place where God atones” or “lid of ark where God forgives and restores.”
- Can also mean “place of propitiation.”
- Compare this term with how you translated “atonement,” “propitiation,” and “redemption.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, atonement, cherubim, **propitiation**, redeem)

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:17
- Exodus 30:6
- Exodus 40:17-20
- **Leviticus 16:1-2**
- **Numbers 7:89**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3727, G24350

Exodus References:

25:17; 25:18; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 26:34; 30:6; 31:7; 35:12; 37:6; 37:7; 37:8; 37:9; 39:35; 40:20

atonement, atone, atoned

Definition:

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: atonement lid, forgive, **propitiation**, **reconcile**, redeem)

Bible References:

- **Ezekiel 43:25-27**
- **Ezekiel 45:18-20**
- **Leviticus 4:20**
- **Numbers 5:8**
- **Numbers 28:22**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3722, H3725, G26430

Exodus References:

29:33; 29:36; 30:intro; 30:10; 30:16; 32:30

authority

Definition:

The term “authority” usually refers to a position of influence, responsibility, or rule over another person.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: dominion, king, ruler, power)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:10
- Esther 9:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 3:6-7
- Luke 12:5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 1:22
- Matthew 8:9
- Matthew 28:19

- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8633, G08310, G14130, G18490, G18500, G20030, G27150, G52470

Exodus References:

21:8

avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, just, righteous)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 18:47
- Romans 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G15560, G15570, G15580, G37090

Exodus References:

21:20; 21:21

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: grain, thresh, wheat)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 7:14
- Numbers 5:15
- Revelation 6:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8184, G29150, G29160

Exodus References:

9:31

barren, dry

Definition:

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:5
- Galatians 4:27
- Genesis 11:30
- Job 3:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G06920, G47230

Exodus References:

23:26

bear, bearer, bore, borne, produce, produced

Definition:

Used in this sense, the term “bear” means to “produce” or “give birth to.”

- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit”
- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child
- Depending on context, this term could be translated as “produce” or “give birth to.”

(Translation suggestions: fruit)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3205, H3209, H3211, H5375, G01420, G03990, G04300, G09410, G10800, G41600, G47220, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090

Exodus References:

6:20; 6:23; 6:25; 18:22

beast

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: Metaphor)
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, livestock, nation, power, reveal, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 7:21
- Psalms 49:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0338, H0929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G22260, G23410, G23420, G29340, G49680, G50740

Exodus References:

8:17; 8:18; 9:9; 9:10; 9:19; 9:22; 9:25; 11:5; 11:7; 12:12; 12:29; 13:2; 13:12; 13:15; 19:13; 22:10; 22:19

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”

- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: believe, **apostle**, **Christian**, **disciple**, faith, trust)

Bible References:

- **Genesis 15:6**
- **Genesis 45:26**
- **Job 9:16-18**
- **Habakkuk 1:5-7**
- **Mark 6:4-6**
- **Mark 1:14-15**
- **Luke 9:41**
- **John 1:12**
- **Acts 6:5**
- **Acts 9:42**
- **Acts 28:23-24**
- **Romans 3:3**
- **1 Corinthians 6:1**
- **1 Corinthians 9:5**
- **2 Corinthians 6:15**

- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 3:4 Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- 4:8 Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- 11:2 God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- 11:6 But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- 37:5 Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- 43:1 After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- 43:3 While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- 43:13 Every day, more people became **believers**.
- 46:6 That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- 46:1 Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- 46:9 Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- 46:9 It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- 47:14 They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

Exodus References:

4:1; 4:5; 4:8; 4:9; 4:31; 14:31

Benjamin, Benjaminite

Definition:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Rachel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

Exodus References:

1:3

blemish, unblemished, defect

Definition:

The term “blemish” refers to a physical defect or imperfection on an animal or person. It can also refer to spiritual imperfections and faults in people.

- For certain sacrifices, God instructed the Israelites to offer an animal with no blemishes or defects.
- This is a picture of how Jesus Christ was the perfect sacrifice, without any sin.
- Believers in Christ have been cleansed from their sin by his blood and are considered to be without blemish.
- Ways to translate this term could include “defect” or “imperfection” or “sin,” depending on the context.

(See also: believe, clean, sacrifice, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:19
- 2 Peter 2:13
- Deuteronomy 15:19-21
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Song of Songs 4:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3971, H8400, H8549, G34700

Exodus References:

29:1

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25

- **Luke 6:20**
- **Matthew 26:26**
- **Nehemiah 9:5**
- **Romans 4:9**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

Exodus References:

12:32; 18:10; 20:11; 20:24; 23:25; 32:29; 39:43

bloodshed

Definition:

The term “bloodshed” refers to the death of human beings due to murder, war, or some other violent act.

- This term literally means “shedding of blood,” which refers to when blood comes out of a person’s body from an open wound.
- The term “bloodshed” is often used to refer to widespread killing of people.
- It is also used as a general reference to the sin of murder.

Translation Suggestions:

- “The bloodshed” could be translated as “the killing of people” or “the many people who were killed.”
- “Through bloodshed” could also be translated as “by killing people.”
- “Innocent bloodshed” could be translated as “killing innocent people.”
- “Bloodshed follows bloodshed” could be translated as “they keep killing people” or “the killing of people goes on and on” or “they have killed many people and continue to do that” or “people keep killing other people.”
- Another figurative use, “bloodshed will pursue you,” could be translated as “your people will continue to experience bloodshed” or “your people will keep being killed” or “your people will continue to be at war with other nations and people will keep dying.”

(See also: blood; slaughter)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 22:6-8
- Genesis 9:5-7
- Hebrews 9:21-22
- Isaiah 26:21
- Matthew 23:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818

Exodus References:

22:2; 22:3

blot out, wipe out

Definition:

The terms “blot out” and “wipe out” are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

- These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God “blots out” sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
- It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God “blots out” or “wipes out” a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
- The Bible talks about a person’s name being “blotted out” or “wiped out” of God’s Book of Life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as “get rid of” or “remove” or “completely destroy” or “completely remove.”
- When referring to blotting someone’s name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as “removed from” or “erased.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 29:20
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Genesis 7:23
- Psalm 51:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4229, H8045, G18130

Exodus References:

17:14; 32:32; 32:33

Book of Life

Definition:

The term “Book of Life” is used to refer to where God has written the names of all the people whom he has redeemed and given eternal life to.

- Revelation refers to this book as “the Lamb’s Book of Life.” This could be translated as “the book of life belonging to Jesus, the Lamb of God.” The sacrifice of Jesus on the cross paid the penalty for people’s sins so that they can have eternal life through faith in him.
- The word for “book” can also mean “scroll” or “letter” or “writing” or “legal document.” It may be literal or figurative.

(See also: everlasting, lamb, life, sacrifice, scroll)

Bible References:

- Philippians 4:3
- Psalms 69:28-29
- Revelation 3:5-6
- Revelation 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2416, H5612, G09760, G22220

Exodus References:

32:32; 32:33

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

Exodus References:

4:31; 11:8; 12:27; 18:7; 20:5; 23:24; 32:8; 33:10; 34:8; 34:14

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called "unleavened bread" in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate "unleavened bread" during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche) Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."
- The phrase "bread of the presence" refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
- The term "bread from heaven" refers to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

Exodus References:

2:20; 8:3; 16:intro; 16:3; 16:4; 16:8; 16:12; 16:15; 16:22; 16:29; 16:32; 18:12; 23:25; 25:30; 29:2; 29:23; 29:32; 29:34; 34:28; 35:13; 39:36; 40:23

breastplate, breastpiece

Definition:

The term “breastplate” refers to a piece of armor covering the front of the chest to protect a soldier during battle. The term “breastpiece” refers to a special piece of clothing that the Israelite high priest wore over the front part of his chest.

- A “breastplate” used by a soldier could be made of wood, metal, or animal skin. It was made to prevent arrows, spears, or swords from piercing the chest of the soldier.
- The “breastpiece” worn by the Israelite high priest was made of cloth and had valuable gems attached to it. The priest wore this when he was performing his duties of service to God in the temple.
- Other ways to translate the term “breastplate” could include “metal protective chest covering” or “armor piece protecting the chest.”
- The term “breastpiece” could be translated with a word that means “priestly clothing covering the chest” or “priestly garment piece” or “front piece of priest’s clothing.”

(See also: armor, high priest, pierce, priest, temple, warrior)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:8
- Exodus 39:14-16
- Isaiah 59:17
- Revelation 9:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2833, H8302, G23820

Exodus References:

25:7; 28:4; 28:15; 28:22; 28:23; 28:24; 28:26; 28:28; 28:29; 28:30; 29:5; 35:9; 35:27; 39:8; 39:9; 39:15; 39:16; 39:17; 39:19; 39:21

bribe, bribery, payoff, payoffs

Definition:

To “bribe” means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

- The soldiers who guarded Jesus’ empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
- Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
- The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
- The term, “bribe” could be translated as “dishonest payment” or “payment for lying” or “price for breaking the rules.”
- To “bribe” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, to “pay to influence (someone)” or to “pay to have a dishonest favor done” or to “pay for a favor.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:1-3
- Ecclesiastes 7:7
- Isaiah 1:23
- Micah 3:9-11
- Proverbs 15:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3724, H4979, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7966, H8021, H8641, G52600

Exodus References:

23:8

bridegroom, groom

Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom, also called the groom, is the **man** who will marry the bride (the **woman**).

Translation Suggestions:

You could use the term that your language uses to refer to the man who is getting married in a marriage ceremony or if you do not have a term for this in your language you could use a descriptive phrase to describe what a bridegroom is. Depending on the context you could translate the terms “bridegroom” and “groom” with descriptive phrases such as “a man getting married” or “a man who is being married” or “the man getting married.”

(See also: bride, marriage)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 2:15-16
- John 3:30
- Luke 5:35
- Mark 2:19
- Mark 2:20
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2860, G35660

Exodus References:

4:25; 4:26

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: armor, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 2:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 1:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

Exodus References:

25:3; 26:11; 26:37; 27:2; 27:3; 27:4; 27:6; 27:10; 27:11; 27:17; 27:18; 27:19; 30:18; 31:4; 35:5; 35:16; 35:24; 35:32; 36:18; 36:38; 38:2; 38:3; 38:4; 38:5; 38:6; 38:8; 38:10; 38:11; 38:17; 38:19; 38:20; 38:29; 38:30; 39:39

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, atonement, ox, priest, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- **Genesis 8:20**
- **Genesis 22:1-3**
- **Leviticus 3:5**
- **Mark 12:33**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G36460

Exodus References:

10:25; 18:12; 20:24; 24:5; 29:18; 29:25; 29:42; 30:9; 30:28; 31:9; 32:6; 35:16; 38:1; 40:6; 40:10; 40:29

call, called, call out, called out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out,” in this sense, mean to speak loudly.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- In some contexts the terms “call” and “call out” mean to loudly ask for help.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.

(See also: pray, cry, call to summon, call name)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

Exodus References:

1:18; 2:7; 2:8; 2:10; 2:20; 2:22; 3:4; 8:8; 8:25; 9:27; 10:16; 10:24; 12:21; 12:31; 17:7; 17:15; 19:3; 19:7; 19:20; 24:16; 31:2; 33:7; 34:31; 35:30; 36:2

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: **burden**, **clean**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 5:21**
- **2 Chronicles 9:1-2**
- Exodus 9:1-4
- **Mark 10:25**
- **Matthew 3:4**
- **Matthew 19:23-24**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G25740

Exodus References:

9:3

Canaan, Canaanite

Definition:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 9:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 47:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 4:5 He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- 4:6 When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- 4:9 "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- 5:3 "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- 7:8 After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G54780

Exodus References:

3:8; 3:17; 6:4; 6:15; 13:5; 13:11; 15:15; 16:35; 23:23; 23:28; 33:2; 34:11

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: **Babylon**, **exile**, **prison**, seize)

Bible References:

- **2 Corinthians 10:5**
- **Isaiah 20:4**
- **Jeremiah 43:3**
- **Luke 4:18**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

Exodus References:

12:29

cast out, driving out, throw out

Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”
- To “cast out” someone from a synagog or church could be translated as “banish them” or “put them out.”

(See also: demon, demon-possessed, lots)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:17-19
- Mark 3:13-16
- Mark 9:29
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 12:24
- Matthew 17:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G15440

Exodus References:

2:17; 6:1; 10:11; 11:1; 12:39; 34:24

chariot, charioteer

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Egypt, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 8:29
- Acts 8:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:10 So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G07160, G44800

Exodus References:

14:6; 14:7; 14:9; 14:17; 14:18; 14:23; 14:25; 14:26; 14:28; 15:4; 15:19

cherub, cherubim

Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: angel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:6
- 1 Kings 6:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Genesis 3:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3742, G55020

Exodus References:

25:18; 25:19; 25:20; 25:22; 26:1; 26:31; 36:8; 36:35; 37:7; 37:8; 37:9

chief, leader

Definition:

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: **head**, **chief priests**, priest, **tax collector**)

Bible References:

- **Daniel 1:11-13**
- **Ezekiel 26:15-16**
- **Luke 19:2**
- **Psalm 4:1**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G07490, G07500, G07540, G44100, G44130, G55060

Exodus References:

15:15; 16:22

chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: appoint, Christ)

Bible References:

- 2 John 1:1
- Colossians 3:12
- Ephesians 1:3-4

- **Isaiah 65:22-23**
- **Luke 18:7**
- **Matthew 24:19-22**
- **Romans 8:33**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0970, H0972, H0977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G01380, G01400, G15860, G15880, G15890, G19510, G37240, G44000, G44010, G47580, G48990, G55000

Exodus References:

4:intro

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”

- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Abraham, covenant)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 5:3
- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 1:20
- Jeremiah 9:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:3
- Acts 15:1
- Acts 11:3
- Romans 2:27
- Galatians 5:3
- Ephesians 2:11
- Philippians 3:3
- Colossians 2:11

- Colossians 2:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 5:3 “You must **circumcise** every male in your family.”
- 5:5 That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G02030, G05640, G19860, G40590, G40610

Exodus References:

4:intro; 4:26; 6:12; 6:30; 12:44; 12:48

clan

Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- The term “clan” might also be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: family, Jethro, tribe)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:33-35
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 3:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0441, H1004, H4940

Exodus References:

6:14; 6:15; 6:17; 6:19; 6:24; 6:25

column, pillar

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, false god, image)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:9
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 9:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H0547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G47690

Exodus References:

13:21; 13:22; 14:19; 14:24; 26:32; 26:37; 27:10; 27:11; 27:12; 27:14; 27:15; 27:16; 27:17; 33:9; 33:10; 35:11; 35:17; 36:36; 36:38; 38:10; 38:11; 38:12; 38:14; 38:15; 38:17; 38:19; 38:28; 39:33; 39:40; 40:18

companion, fellow worker, friend

Definition:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage. The term “fellow worker” refers to someone who works with another person.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with” or “person who works with.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 37:16
- Hebrews 1:9
- Proverbs 2:17
- Psalms 38:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H0441, H2269, H2270, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H7453, H7462, H7464, G28440, G33530, G48980, G49040

Exodus References:

2:13; 32:27

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “deep caring” or “pity” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 5:9-11
- Jonah 4:1-3
- Mark 1:41
- Romans 9:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G16530, G33560, G36270, G46970, G48340, G48350

Exodus References:

2:6; 33:19; 34:6

conceive, conceived, conception

Definition:

Used in this sense, the terms “conceive” and “conception” usually refer to a woman becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase “conceive a child” could be translated as “become pregnant” or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term “conception” could be translated as “beginning of a pregnancy” or “moment of becoming pregnant.”
- Depending on context, the term “conceived” could be translated as “became pregnant” or “became pregnant with.”

(See also: create, womb)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:1-4
- Hosea 2:4-5
- Job 15:35
- Luke 1:24-25
- Luke 2:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G10800, G17220, G28450, G48150

Exodus References:

2:2

consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: holy, pure, sanctify)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 4:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G14570, G50480

Exodus References:

28:38; 29:intro; 29:22; 29:26; 29:27; 29:31; 29:34

consume, devour

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: devour, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Jeremiah 3:23-25
- Job 7:9
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G03550, G26180, G26540, G27190, G53150

Exodus References:

3:2; 22:6

contempt, contemptible, not worth listening to

Definition:

The term “contempt” refers to a deep disrespect and dishonor that is shown toward something or someone. Something that is greatly dishonorable is called “contemptible.”

- A person or behavior that shows open disrespect for God is also called “contemptible” and could be translated as “greatly disrespectful” or “completely dishonorable” or “deserving scorn.”
- To “hold in contempt” means to regard someone as having less value or to judge someone as less worthy than oneself.
- The following expressions have a similar meaning: “have contempt for” or “show contempt for” or “be in contempt of” or “treat with contempt.” These all mean to “strongly disrespect” or “strongly dishonor” something or someone by what is said and done.
- When King David sinned by committing adultery and murder, God said that David had “shown contempt for” God. It means he had greatly disrespected and dishonored God by doing that.

(See also: dishonor)

Bible References:

- Daniel 12:1-2
- Proverbs 15:5-6
- Psalms 31:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0936, H0937, H0959, H0963, H1860, H7043, H7589, H5006, G18480

Exodus References:

21:17; 22:28

corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness

Definition:

The terms “false witness” and “corrupt witness” refer to a person who says untrue things about a person or an event, usually in a formal setting such as a court.

- A “false testimony” or “false report” is the actual lie that is told.
- To “bear false witness” means to lie or give a false report about something.
- The Bible gives several accounts in which false witnesses were hired to lie about someone in order to have that person punished or killed.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bear false witness” or “give a false testimony” could be translated as “testify falsely” or “give a false report about someone” or “speak falsely against someone” or “lie.”
- When “false witness” refers to a person, it could be translated as “person who lies” or “one who testifies falsely” or “someone who says things that are not true.”

(See also: testimony, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:19
- Exodus 20:16
- Matthew 15:18-20
- Matthew 19:18-19
- Proverbs 14:5-6
- Psalms 27:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5707, H6030, H7650, H8267, G19650, G31440, G55710, G55750, G55760, G55770

Exodus References:

20:16

corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: evil)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 6:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 14:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G08610, G13110, G27040, G53510, G53560

Exodus References:

32:7

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”

- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- **Genesis 9:12**
- **Genesis 17:7**
- **Genesis 31:44**
- Exodus 34:10-11
- **Joshua 24:24-26**
- **2 Samuel 23:5**
- **2 Kings 18:11-12**
- **Mark 14:24**
- **Luke 1:73**
- **Luke 22:20**
- **Acts 7:8**
- **1 Corinthians 11:25-26**
- **2 Corinthians 3:6**
- **Galatians 3:17-18**
- **Hebrews 12:24**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”

- 6:4 After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- 7:10 "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- 13:2 God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- 13:4 Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- 15:13 Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- 21:5 Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- 21:14 Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- 38:5 Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- 48:11 But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

Exodus References:

1:intro; 2:24; 6:intro; 6:4; 6:5; 16:intro; 16:34; 19:5; 20:intro; 23:32; 24:intro; 24:7; 24:8; 31:16; 34:10; 34:12; 34:15; 34:27; 34:28

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as “covenant faithfulness” was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms “covenant” and “faithfulness” are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: “faithful love;” “loyal, committed love;” or “loving dependability.”

(See also: covenant, faithful, grace, Israel, people of God, promise)

Bible References:

- Ezra 3:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2617

Exodus References:

15:13; 20:intro; 20:6; 34:6; 34:7

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11

- **Matthew 22:4**
- **Luke 13:15**
- **Luke 14:5**
- **Hebrews 9:13**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

Exodus References:

9:3; 12:32; 20:17; 20:24; 21:28; 21:29; 21:32; 21:33; 21:35; 21:36; 22:1; 22:4; 22:9; 22:10; 22:30; 23:4; 23:12; 24:5; 29:1; 29:3; 29:10; 29:11; 29:12; 29:14; 29:36; 32:4; 32:8; 32:19; 32:20; 32:24; 32:35; 34:19

create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: God, good news, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- Colossians 1:15

- Galatians 6:15
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G20410, G26020, G26750, G29360, G29370, G29390, G41600, G54800

Exodus References:

34:10

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- The terms “cry” or “cry out” can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: call speak loudly, plead, pray)

Bible References:

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

Exodus References:

2:6; 2:23; 3:7; 3:9; 5:8; 5:15; 8:12; 11:6; 14:10; 14:15; 15:25; 17:4; 22:23; 22:27

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 2:9 God said to the snake, “You are **cursed**!”
- 2:11 “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- 4:4 “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- 39:7 Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- 50:16 Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

Exodus References:

22:28

curtain

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: holy place, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:20
- Leviticus 4:17
- Luke 23:45
- Matthew 27:51
- Numbers 4:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G26650

Exodus References:

26:1; 26:2; 26:3; 26:4; 26:5; 26:6; 26:7; 26:8; 26:9; 26:10; 26:12; 26:13; 26:31; 26:33; 26:35; 26:36; 26:37; 27:9; 27:11; 27:12; 27:14; 27:15; 27:16; 27:21; 30:6; 35:12; 35:15; 35:17; 36:8; 36:9; 36:10; 36:11; 36:12; 36:13; 36:14; 36:15; 36:16; 36:17; 36:35; 36:37;

38:9; 38:12; 38:14; 38:15; 38:16; 38:18; 38:27; 39:34; 39:38; 39:40; 40:3; 40:5; 40:8; 40:22; 40:26; 40:28; 40:33

Dan

Definition:

Dan was Jacob's fifth son. He was Bilhah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "judge."
- The tribe of Dan settled in the northern part of Canaan. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Dan" refers to the land given to the tribe of Dan.
- "Dan" was also the name an Israelite city located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem. In the Old Testament times, the city of Dan served as a landmark for the northern boundary of the country of Israel, opposite the city of Beersheba as a landmark for the southern boundary.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Bilhah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 12:35
- 1 Kings 4:25
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 14:14
- Genesis 30:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1835, H1839, H2051

Exodus References:

1:4; 31:6; 35:34; 38:23

day

Definition:

The term “day” generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- “Day” is sometimes used in contrast to “night.” In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as “today.”
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.” Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” non-figuratively.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as “day” or “daytime” using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of “day” could include “daytime,” “time,” “season,” “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: time, judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

Exodus References:

2:11; 2:13; 2:23; 3:18; 5:3; 5:6; 5:13; 5:14; 5:19; 6:28; 7:25; 8:22; 8:27; 9:18; 10:6; 10:13; 10:22; 10:23; 10:28; 12:6; 12:14; 12:15; 12:16; 12:17; 12:18; 12:19; 12:41; 12:51; 13:3; 13:4; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:10; 13:21; 13:22; 14:13; 14:30; 15:22; 16:1; 16:4; 16:5; 16:22; 16:25; 16:26; 16:27; 16:29; 16:30; 19:1; 19:10; 19:11; 19:15; 19:16; 20:8; 20:9; 20:10;

20:11; 20:12; 21:21; 22:30; 23:12; 23:15; 23:26; 24:16; 24:18; 29:30; 29:35; 29:36; 29:37; 29:38; 31:15; 31:17; 32:28; 32:29; 32:34; 34:11; 34:18; 34:21; 34:28; 35:2; 35:3; 40:2

deceive, lie, deception, illusion

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a “lie.” The act of deceiving someone is called “lying,” “deceit,” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To “lie” is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: **true**)

Bible References:

- **1 John 1:8**
- **1 Timothy 2:14**
- **2 Thessalonians 2:3-4**
- **Genesis 3:12-13**
- **Genesis 31:26-28**
- **Leviticus 19:11-12**
- **Matthew 27:64**

- **Micah 6:11**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

Exodus References:

5:9; 23:7

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: preach, decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

Exodus References:

32:5; 33:19; 34:5; 34:6

defile, defiled, desecrate

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: profane, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 7:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G28390, G28400, G33920, G34350

Exodus References:

20:25

deliver, deliverer, deliverance, delivered

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: judge, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 16:3 Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- 16:16 They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- 16:17 Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

Exodus References:

2:19; 3:8; 5:23; 6:6; 12:27; 18:4; 18:8; 18:9; 18:10

descend, descendant

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: Abraham, ancestor, Jacob, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 2:9 “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- 4:9 “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- 5:10 “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- 17:7 “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!”
- 18:13 The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- 21:4 God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- 48:13 God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G10740, G10850, G46900

Exodus References:

16:32; 16:33

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

Exodus References:

3:1; 3:18; 4:27; 5:1; 5:3; 7:16; 8:27; 8:28; 13:18; 13:20; 14:3; 14:11; 14:12; 15:22; 16:2; 16:3; 16:10; 16:14; 16:32; 17:1; 18:5; 19:1; 19:2; 23:31

desolate, desolated, desolation, deserted, desolator

Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation,” when used to refer to a place or location, refer to the state or condition of being ruined and left fully or partially uninhabited. The term “desolate,” when referring to a person or group of people, describes a state or condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.

- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land that is partially deserted or abandoned and therefore has few people living there.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- Depending on the context, this term, when referring to a city or region, could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “abandoned” or “deserted.”
- Depending on the context, this term, when referring to a person or people group, could be translated as “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”
- A “desolator” is one who causes desolation.

(See also: desert, devastate, ruin, waste)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 1:20
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Lamentations 3:11
- Luke 11:17
- Matthew 12:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0490, H0816, H0910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G20480, G20490, G20500, G34430

Exodus References:

23:29

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term “destroy” means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term “destroyer” means “a person who destroys.”
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, Egypt, firstborn, Passover)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

Exodus References:

9:15; 12:13; 12:23; 21:26; 22:20; 23:23; 32:10; 32:12; 33:3; 33:5

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: consume)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

Exodus References:

10:5; 10:12; 10:15; 15:7; 24:17

disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed

Definition:

The terms “disperse” and “dispersion” refer to the scattering of people or things into many different directions.

- In the Old Testament, God talks about “dispersing” people, causing them to have to separate and live in different places apart from each other. He did this to punish them for their sin. Perhaps being dispersed would help them repent and start worshiping God again.
- The term “dispersion” is used in the New Testament to refer to Christians who had to leave their homes and move to many different locations to escape persecution.
- The phrase “the dispersion” could be translated as “believers in many different places” or “the people who moved away to live in different nations.”
- The term “disperse” could be translated as “send away into many different places” or “scatter abroad” or “cause to move away to live in different countries.”

(See also: believe, persecute, captive, exile)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:1
- Ezekiel 12:15
- Ezekiel 30:23
- Psalms 18:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2219, H5310, H6327, H6340, H6504, H8600, G12870, G12900, G46500

Exodus References:

5:12

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:32-34
- 1 Samuel 9:4
- 2 Kings 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G36780, G36880, G52680

Exodus References:

4:20; 9:3; 13:13; 20:17; 21:33; 22:4; 22:9; 22:10; 23:4; 23:5; 23:12; 34:20

doorpost

Definition:

The “doorpost” is a vertical beam on either side of a door, which supports the top of the door frame.

- Just before God helped the Israelites escape from Egypt, he instructed them to kill a lamb and put its blood on their doorposts.
- In the Old Testament, a slave who desired to serve his master the rest of his life would place his ear on the doorpost of his master’s house to have a nail hammered through his ear into the doorpost.
- This could also be translated as “wooden post on either side of a door” or “sides of a wooden doorframe” or “wood beams on the sides of a doorway.”

(See also: Egypt, Passover)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:31-32
- Deuteronomy 11:20
- Exodus 12:7
- Isaiah 57:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H4201

Exodus References:

12:7; 12:22; 12:23

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: burnt offering, grain offering)

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:29
- **Ezekiel 45:16-17**
- **Genesis 35:14**
- **Jeremiah 7:16-18**
- **Numbers 5:15**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

Exodus References:

29:40; 29:41; 30:9

earth, land

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of a people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: world, heaven)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

Exodus References:

1:7; 1:10; 2:22; 3:8; 3:17; 4:3; 4:20; 5:5; 5:12; 6:1; 6:4; 6:8; 6:11; 6:13; 6:26; 6:28; 7:2; 7:3; 7:4; 7:19; 7:21; 8:5; 8:6; 8:7; 8:14; 8:16; 8:17; 8:22; 8:24; 8:25; 9:5; 9:9; 9:14; 9:15; 9:16; 9:22; 9:23; 9:24; 9:25; 9:26; 9:29; 9:33; 10:5; 10:6; 10:12; 10:13; 10:14; 10:15; 10:21; 10:22; 11:3; 11:5; 11:6; 11:9; 11:10; 12:1; 12:12; 12:13; 12:17; 12:19; 12:25; 12:29; 12:33; 12:41; 12:42; 12:48; 12:51; 13:5; 13:11; 13:15; 13:17; 13:18; 14:3; 15:12; 16:1; 16:3; 16:6; 16:14; 16:32; 16:35; 18:3; 18:27; 19:1; 19:5; 20:2; 20:4; 20:11; 20:12; 22:21; 23:9; 23:10; 23:26; 23:29; 23:30; 23:31; 23:33; 29:46; 31:17; 32:1; 32:4; 32:7; 32:8; 32:11; 32:12; 32:13; 32:23; 33:1; 33:3; 33:16; 34:8; 34:10; 34:12; 34:15; 34:24

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Definition:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as "Edom" and later, "Idumea." The "Edomites" were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it "Idumea."
- The name "Edom" means "red," which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: adversary, birthright, Esau, Obadiah, prophet)

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:30
- Genesis 32:3
- Genesis 36:1
- Isaiah 11:14-15
- Joshua 11:16-17
- Obadiah 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0123, H0130, H8165, G24010

Exodus References:

15:15

Egypt, Egyptian

Definition:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan.

An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: **Herod the Great**, **Joseph (NT)**, Nile River, **patriarchs**)

Bible References:

- **1 Samuel 4:7-9**
- **Acts 7:10**
- Exodus 3:7
- **Genesis 41:29**
- **Genesis 41:57**
- **Matthew 2:15**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to __Egypt __ to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

Exodus References:

1:1; 1:5; 1:8; 1:13; 1:15; 1:17; 1:18; 1:19; 2:11; 2:12; 2:14; 2:19; 2:23; 3:7; 3:8; 3:9; 3:10; 3:11; 3:12; 3:16; 3:17; 3:18; 3:19; 3:20; 3:21; 3:22; 4:18; 4:19; 4:20; 4:21; 5:4; 5:12; 6:5; 6:6; 6:7; 6:11; 6:13; 6:26; 6:27; 6:28; 6:29; 7:3; 7:4; 7:5; 7:11; 7:18; 7:19; 7:21; 7:22; 7:24; 8:5; 8:6; 8:7; 8:16; 8:17; 8:21; 8:24; 8:26; 9:4; 9:6; 9:9; 9:11; 9:18; 9:22; 9:23; 9:24; 9:25; 10:2; 10:6; 10:7; 10:12; 10:13; 10:14; 10:15; 10:19; 10:21; 10:22; 11:1; 11:3; 11:4; 11:5; 11:6; 11:7; 11:9; 12:1; 12:12; 12:13; 12:17; 12:23; 12:27; 12:29; 12:30; 12:33; 12:35; 12:36; 12:39; 12:40; 12:41; 12:42; 12:51; 13:3; 13:8; 13:9; 13:14; 13:15; 13:16; 13:17; 13:18; 14:4; 14:5; 14:7; 14:8; 14:9; 14:10; 14:11; 14:12; 14:13; 14:17; 14:18; 14:20; 14:23; 14:24; 14:25; 14:26; 14:27; 14:30; 14:31; 15:26; 16:1; 16:3; 16:6; 16:32; 17:3; 18:1; 18:8; 18:9; 18:10; 19:1; 19:4; 20:2; 22:21; 23:9; 23:15; 29:46; 32:1; 32:4; 32:7; 32:8; 32:11; 32:12; 32:23; 33:1; 34:18

elder

Definition:

The term “elder” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community and to be respected for their wisdom and experience.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “respected leaders” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

Exodus References:

3:16; 3:18; 4:29; 12:21; 17:5; 17:6; 18:12; 19:7; 24:1; 24:14

Eleazar

Definition:

Eleazar was the name of several men in the Bible.

1. Eleazar was the third son of Moses' brother Aaron. After Aaron died, Eleazar became the high priest in Israel.
2. Eleazar was also the name of one of David's "mighty men."
3. Another Eleazar was one of Jesus' ancestors.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aaron, high priest, David, mighty)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:3
- Judges 20:27-28
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 34:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0499, G16480

Exodus References:

6:23; 6:25; 28:1

Enoch

Definition:

Enoch was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
- This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven while he was still alive.
- A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, Seth)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:3
- Genesis 5:18-20
- Genesis 5:24
- Jude 1:14
- Luke 3:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2585, G18020

Exodus References:

6:14

ephod

Definition:

An ephod was an apron-like garment worn by the Israelite priests. It had two parts, front and back, that were joined together at the shoulders and tied around the waist with a cloth belt.

- One kind of ephod was made of plain linen and was worn by the ordinary priests.
- The ephod worn by the high priest was specially embroidered with gold, blue, purple, and red yarn.
- The breastpiece of the high priest was attached to the front of the ephod. Behind the breastpiece were stored the Urim and Thummim, which were stones used for asking God what his will was in certain matters.
- The judge Gideon foolishly made an ephod out of gold and it became something that the Israelites worshiped as an idol.

(See also: priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:18-19
- Exodus 28:4-5
- Hosea 3:4
- Judges 8:27
- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0641, H0642, H0646

Exodus References:

25:7; 28:4; 28:6; 28:8; 28:12; 28:15; 28:25; 28:26; 28:27; 28:28; 28:31; 29:5; 35:9; 35:27; 39:2; 39:7; 39:8; 39:18; 39:19; 39:20; 39:21; 39:22

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”

- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, life)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 27:1 One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- 28:1 One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”

- 28:10 Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

Exodus References:

3:15; 12:14; 12:17; 12:24; 14:13; 15:18; 19:9; 21:6; 27:21; 28:43; 29:9; 29:28; 31:16; 31:17; 32:13; 40:15

Euphrates River, the River

Definition:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 2:13-14
- Isaiah 7:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5104, H6578, G21660

Exodus References:

23:31

evil, wicked, wickedness, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 2:4 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- 3:1 After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- 3:2 But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- 4:2 God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- 8:12 “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- 14:2 They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- 17:1 But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- 18:11 In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- 29:8 The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- 45:2 They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- 50:17 He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

Exodus References:

7:intro; 10:10; 23:2; 23:7; 32:12; 32:14; 32:22; 33:4

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 9:12 One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- 17:2 David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- 30:3 To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.

- 38:8 Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

Exodus References:

12:5; 20:24; 22:1; 22:4; 22:9; 22:10; 22:30; 25:5; 26:14; 29:1; 29:3; 29:15; 29:16; 29:17; 29:18; 29:19; 29:20; 29:22; 29:26; 29:27; 29:31; 29:32; 34:19; 35:7; 35:23; 36:19; 39:34

exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, worship, glory, boast, proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 5:31
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 18:46

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G18690, G52290, G52510, G53110, G53120

Exodus References:

9:17; 15:2

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: abstractnouns)
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: believe, faithful)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 5:6 When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's **faith** by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- 31:7 Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- 32:16 Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- 38:9 Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

Exodus References:

14:intro

faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: believe, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7

- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:5 Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- 14:12 Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- 15:13 The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- 17:9 David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- 35:12 “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- 49:17 But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- 50:4 “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

Exodus References:

18:21; 19:9

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

Exodus References:

16:3

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:7
- 2 Corinthians 1:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G11840, G36850, G43800, G43820, G54850, G54860

Exodus References:

3:21; 11:3; 12:36; 23:3; 33:12; 33:13; 33:16; 33:17; 33:19; 34:9

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms “fear” often refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect,” or “deep respect;” “revere,” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear Yahweh” could be translated as “reverence Yahweh” or “deeply respect Yahweh.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”

(See also: awe, Yahweh, Lord, marvel, power)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

Exodus References:

1:17; 1:21; 2:14; 3:6; 9:20; 9:30; 14:10; 14:13; 14:31; 15:11; 18:21; 20:20; 34:10; 34:30

festival, feast, celebrate

Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
  - Passover
  - Festival of Unleavened Bread
  - Firstfruits
  - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
  - Festival of Trumpets
  - Day of Atonement
  - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: feast)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 2 Chronicles 8:13
- Exodus 5:1
- John 4:45
- Luke 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G14560, G18580, G18590

Exodus References:

5:1; 10:9; 12:14; 13:6; 23:14; 23:15; 23:16; 23:18; 32:5; 34:18; 34:22; 34:25

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: inherit, sacrifice, **son**)

Bible References:

- **Colossians 1:15**
- **Genesis 4:3-5**
- **Genesis 29:26-27**
- **Genesis 43:33**
- **Luke 2:6-7**
- **Revelation 1:5**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G44160, G52070

Exodus References:

4:intro; 4:22; 4:23; 6:14; 11:5; 12:12; 12:29; 13:2; 13:13; 13:15; 22:29; 34:20

firstfruit, firstfruits

Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 1:18
- Jeremiah 2:3
- Psalms 105:36

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1061, H6529, H7225, G05360

Exodus References:

23:16; 23:19; 34:22; 34:26

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: goat, cow, pig, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

Exodus References:

2:16; 2:17; 2:19; 3:1; 9:3; 10:9; 10:24; 12:32; 12:38; 34:3

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate “pardon.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 5:17-19
- Psalms 25:11

- Psalms 25:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:2
- Luke 5:21
- Acts 8:22
- Ephesians 4:31-32
- Colossians 3:12-14
- 1 John 2:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 7:10 But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- 13:15 Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- 17:13 David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- 21:5 In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- 29:1 One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- 29:8 I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- 38:5 Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G85900, G86300, G54830

Exodus References:

32:32; 34:9

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

Exodus References:

2:20

foundation, founder, founded

Definition:

Used in this sense, the verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, create)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0134, H0787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G23100, G23110, G26020

Exodus References:

9:18

fountain, source, spring

Definition:

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: flood)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:17
- Genesis 7:11
- Genesis 8:2
- Genesis 24:13
- Genesis 24:42
- James 3:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0953, H1530, H1543, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H8444, H8666, G02420, G40770

Exodus References:

15:27

frankincense

Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: **Bethlehem**, **learned men**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 9:28-29**
- Exodus 30:34-36
- **Matthew 2:11-12**
- **Numbers 5:15**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3828, G30300

Exodus References:

30:34

free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage.

Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: bind, enslave, servant)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26
- Galatians 5:1
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 6:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G04250, G05250, G05580, G06290, G06300, G08590, G13440, G14320, G16570, G16580, G16590, G18490, G30890, G39550, G45060, G54830

Exodus References:

21:2; 21:5; 21:11; 21:26; 21:27

freewill offering

Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: burnt offering, **Ezra**, **feast**, grain offering, **guilt offering**, law, **sin offering**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 29:6**
- **2 Chronicles 35:7-9**
- **Deuteronomy 12:17**
- Exodus 36:2-4
- **Leviticus 7:15-16**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

Exodus References:

35:29; 36:3

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” produces a lot of fruit. Something that is “unfruitful” does not produce fruit.

- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the phrase “the fruit of every tree” refers to the fruit that comes from these trees.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.

Translation Suggestions:

- When the term “fruit” refers to what a specific plant produces, the specific term for the fruit of that plant can be used, otherwise, use a general word for the edible things that plants produce, if possible. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- When used literally, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much fruit.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When used literally, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Genesis 1:11
- Matthew 7:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

Exodus References:

1:7; 10:15; 23:30

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: prophet, Christ, minister, call)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:4 John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- 40:3 The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- 42:7 Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”

- 43:5 “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- 43:7 “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- 44:5 “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

Exodus References:

1:intro

furnace

Definition:

A furnace was a very large oven used for heating objects to a high temperature.

- In ancient times, most furnaces were used for melting metals to make objects such as cooking pots, jewelry, weapons, and idols.
- Furnaces were also used in the making of clay pottery.
- Sometimes a furnace is referred to figuratively to explain that something is very hot.

(See also: false god, image)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51
- Genesis 19:28
- Proverbs 17:3
- Psalms 21:9
- Revelation 9:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0861, H3536, H3564, H5948, H8574, G25750

Exodus References:

9:8; 9:10; 19:18

Gad

Definition:

Gad was Jacob's seventh son. He was Zilpah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Gad" or "Gad" or "Gad."
- The name Gad is similar to the Hebrew word for "good fortune."
- The tribe of Gad settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River between the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea. This was to the north of Reuben and south of half of the tribe of Manasseh. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Gad" refers to the land given to the tribe of Gad.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Zilpah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 1:12
- Joshua 21:38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G10450

Exodus References:

1:4

gate, gate bar, gatekeeper, gatepost, gateway

Definition:

The term “gate” refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A “bar” for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

Exodus References:

20:10; 27:16; 32:26; 32:27; 35:17; 38:15; 38:18; 38:31; 39:40; 40:8; 40:33

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” in this sense refers to a period of time approximately equal to the lifetime of a person. This could be as long as 100 years. This period of time also came to be measured by the time between the adulthood of one person and the adulthood of his or her offspring, or a 30–40-year time span.

Translation Suggestions

- When referring to the past, “generations” could be translated as “during the times of our ancestors” or “when people lived before us.”
- When referring to the future, “generations” could be translated as “lifespans” or “times of people who will come afterwards” or “when our descendants are living.”
- The phrase “in his own generation” could be translated as “while he lived” or “during his time”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “from the time of people living now and for always” or “as long as people live on the earth” or “from now to all future time periods” or “for all time.”

(See also: descendant, ancestor)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1755, H8435, G01650, G10740

Exodus References:

1:6; 3:15; 12:14; 12:17; 12:42; 17:16; 27:21; 29:42; 30:8; 30:10; 30:21; 30:31; 31:13; 31:16; 40:15

gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Definition:

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or “wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- Job 38:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0640, H0247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G03280, G12410, G40240

Exodus References:

12:11

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”

- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 23:7 Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- 25:6 Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- 37:1 When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- 37:8 Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

Exodus References:

8:9; 14:4; 14:17; 14:18; 16:7; 16:10; 24:16; 24:17; 28:2; 28:40; 29:43; 33:18; 33:22; 40:intro; 40:34; 40:35

goat, goatskin, scapegoat, kid

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
  - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
  - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
  - Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: flock, sacrifice, sheep, righteous, wine)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- **Genesis 30:32**
- **Genesis 31:10**
- **Genesis 37:31**
- **Leviticus 3:12-14**
- **Matthew 25:33**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0689, H1423, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G01220, G20550, G20560, G51310

Exodus References:

12:5; 23:19; 34:26

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.” NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7

- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 1:1 **God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- 1:15 **God** made man and woman in his own image.
- 5:3 "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- 9:14 **God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- 10:2 Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- 16:1 The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- 22:7 "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- 24:9 There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- 25:7 "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- 28:1 "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."

- 49:9 But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- 50:16 But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

Exodus References:

1:17; 1:20; 1:21; 2:23; 2:24; 2:25; 3:1; 3:4; 3:6; 3:11; 3:12; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:16; 3:18; 4:5; 4:16; 4:20; 4:27; 5:1; 5:3; 5:8; 6:2; 6:3; 6:7; 7:1; 7:16; 8:10; 8:19; 8:25; 8:26; 8:27; 8:28; 9:1; 9:13; 9:28; 9:30; 10:3; 10:7; 10:8; 10:16; 10:17; 10:25; 10:26; 12:12; 13:17; 13:18; 13:19; 14:19; 15:2; 15:26; 16:12; 17:9; 18:1; 18:4; 18:5; 18:11; 18:12; 18:15; 18:16; 18:19; 18:21; 18:23; 19:3; 19:17; 19:19; 20:1; 20:2; 20:3; 20:5; 20:7; 20:10; 20:12; 20:19; 20:20; 20:21; 20:23; 21:6; 21:13; 22:8; 22:9; 22:20; 22:28; 23:13; 23:19; 23:24; 23:25; 23:32; 23:33; 24:10; 24:11; 29:45; 29:46; 31:3; 31:18; 32:1; 32:4; 32:8; 32:11; 32:16; 32:23; 32:27; 32:31; 34:6; 34:14; 34:15; 34:16; 34:17; 34:23; 34:24; 34:26; 35:31

godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: nominaladj)
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”
- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”

- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also evil, honor, obey, righteous)

Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:9
- Acts 3:12
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 1 Timothy 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 4:18
- Jude 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G05160, G07630, G07640, G07650, G21240, G21500, G21520, G21530, G23160, G23170

Exodus References:

18:intro

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects.

It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, **false god**, silver, tabernacle, **temple**)

Bible References:

- **1 Peter 1:7**
- **1 Timothy 2:8-10**
- **2 Chronicles 1:15**
- **Acts 3:6**
- **Daniel 2:32**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

Exodus References:

3:22; 11:2; 12:35; 20:23; 25:3; 25:11; 25:12; 25:13; 25:17; 25:18; 25:24; 25:25; 25:26; 25:28; 25:29; 25:31; 25:36; 25:38; 25:39; 26:6; 26:29; 26:32; 26:37; 28:5; 28:6; 28:8; 28:11; 28:13; 28:14; 28:15; 28:20; 28:22; 28:23; 28:24; 28:26; 28:27; 28:33; 28:34; 28:36; 30:3; 30:4; 30:5; 31:4; 32:2; 32:3; 32:24; 32:31; 35:5; 35:22; 35:32; 36:13; 36:34; 36:36; 36:38; 37:2; 37:3; 37:4; 37:6; 37:7; 37:11; 37:12; 37:13; 37:15; 37:16; 37:17; 37:22; 37:23; 37:24; 37:26; 37:27; 37:28; 38:24; 39:2; 39:3; 39:5; 39:6; 39:8; 39:13; 39:15; 39:16; 39:17; 39:19; 39:20; 39:25; 39:30; 39:38; 40:5; 40:26

good, right, pleasant, better, best, goodness

Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: righteous, prosper, evil)

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 1:4 God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- 1:11 God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- 1:12 Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- 2:4 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- 8:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- 14:15 Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 18:13 Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- 28:1 “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

Exodus References:

1:20; 2:2; 3:8; 14:12; 18:9; 18:17; 33:19

Goshen

Definition:

Goshen was the name of a fertile region of land located along the Nile River in the northern part of Egypt.

- When Joseph was a ruler in Egypt, his father and brothers and their families came to live in Goshen to escape a famine in Canaan.
- They and their descendants lived well in Goshen for over 400 years, but then they were forced into slavery by the Egyptian pharaoh.
- Finally God sent Moses to help the people of Israel leave the land of Goshen and escape this slavery.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, famine, Moses, Nile River)

Bible References:

- Exodus 8:22-24
- **Genesis 45:11**
- **Genesis 47:2**
- **Genesis 50:7-9**
- **Joshua 10:40-41**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1657

Exodus References:

8:22; 9:26

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it.

The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

Exodus References:

22:27; 34:6

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: burnt offering, guilt offering, sacrifice, sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 2:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

Exodus References:

29:41; 30:9; 40:29

grave, gravedigger, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: **bury**, **death**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 2:29-31**
- **Genesis 23:6**
- **Genesis 50:5**
- **John 19:41**
- **Luke 23:53**
- **Mark 5:1-2**
- **Matthew 27:53**
- **Romans 3:13**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.

- 41:4 He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- 41:5 When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

Exodus References:

14:11

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: innocent, iniquity, **punish**, sin)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- **Isaiah 6:7**
- **James 2:10-11**
- **John 19:4**
- **Jonah 1:14**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty**!”
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.”
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0816, H0817, H0818, H5352, H5355, H7563, G03380, G17770, G37840, G52670

Exodus References:

2:13; 9:27; 22:9

hail, hailstone, hailstorm

Definition:

This term usually refers to lumps of frozen water that fall from the sky. Although spelled the same way in English, a different word, “hail” is used in greeting someone and can mean, “hello” or “greetings to you.”

- Hail that comes down from the sky is in the form of balls or chunks of ice called “hailstones.”
- Usually hailstones are small (only a few centimeters wide), but sometimes there are hailstones that are as big as 20 centimeters wide and that weigh over a kilogram.
- The book of Revelation in the New Testament describes enormous hailstones weighing 50 kilograms that God will cause to fall on earth when he judges people for their wickedness in the end times.
- The word “hail” that is a formal greeting in older English literally means “rejoice” and could be translated as “Greetings!” or “Hello!”

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

Bible References:

- Matthew 27:29
- Matthew 28:8-10
- Psalms 78:48
- Psalms 148:8
- Revelation 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0068, H0417, H1258, H1259, G54630, G54640

Exodus References:

9:18; 9:19; 9:22; 9:23; 9:24; 9:25; 9:26; 9:28; 9:29; 9:33; 9:34; 10:5; 10:12; 10:15

hard, harder

Definition:

The term “hard” generally refers to something that is difficult, challenging, or requires great diligence and persistence to be done.

- When used as a modifier, its meaning is similar to “great effort.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “persistent” or “diligently” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- Depending on context the term “harder” could also be translated as “more difficult” or “more diligently”
- In some contexts “hard” could be translated as “heavy” or “heavily.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2388, H3515, H6381, H7185, H7186, G03180, G14190, G14220, G14230, G25320, G28730, G44560, G44570, G46410, G46420, G46430, G46450, G49120

Exodus References:

1:14; 6:9; 7:3; 13:15; 18:18; 18:26

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: firstfruits, festival, **good news**)

Bible References:

- **1 Corinthians 9:9-11**
- **2 Samuel 21:7-9**
- **Galatians 6:9-10**
- **Isaiah 17:11**
- **James 5:7-8**
- **Leviticus 19:9**
- **Matthew 9:38**
- **Ruth 1:22**
- **Galatians 6:9-10**
- **Matthew 6:25-26**
- **Matthew 13:30**
- **Matthew 13:36-39**

- **Matthew 25:24**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G02700, G23250, G23260, G23270

Exodus References:

22:29; 23:16; 34:21; 34:22

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we cannot directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: **kingdom of God**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 8:22-24**
- **1 Thessalonians 1:8-10**
- **1 Thessalonians 4:17**
- **Deuteronomy 9:1**
- **Ephesians 6:9**
- **Genesis 1:1**
- **Genesis 7:11**
- **John 3:12**
- **John 3:27**
- **Matthew 5:18**
- **Matthew 5:46-48**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 4:2 They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- 14:11 He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- 23:7 Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- 29:9 Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- 37:9 Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- 42:11 Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

Exodus References:

9:8; 9:10; 9:22; 9:23; 10:21; 10:22; 16:4; 17:14; 20:4; 20:11; 20:22; 24:10; 31:17; 32:13

Hebrew

Definition:

The term “Hebrew” refers in a very general sense to the people group descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob.

- The specific word “Hebrew” can refer either to a individual person in the people group or to the language spoken by that people group.
- The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the language called “Hebrew.” However, in most cases in the New Testament, the specific term “Hebrew” probably refers to the Aramaic language rather than the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Israelites” or “Jews.” When translating, it is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, **Jew**, **Jewish leaders**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 26:12-14**
- **Genesis 39:13-15**
- **Genesis 40:15**
- **Genesis 41:12-13**
- **John 5:1-4**
- **John 19:13**
- **Jonah 1:8-10**
- **Philippians 3:5**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5680, G14440, G14450, G14460, G14470

Exodus References:

1:15; 1:16; 1:19; 2:6; 2:7; 2:11; 2:13; 3:18; 5:3; 7:16; 9:1; 9:13; 10:3; 21:2

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, **Esau**, foreigner, **Ham**, mighty, **Solomon**, **Uriah**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 9:20-21**
- Exodus 3:7-8
- **Genesis 23:11**
- **Genesis 25:10**
- **Joshua 1:4-5**
- **Nehemiah 9:8**
- **Numbers 13:27-29**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

Exodus References:

3:8; 3:17; 13:5; 23:23; 23:28; 33:2; 34:11

Hivite

Definition:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, **Hamor**, **Noah**, **Shechem**)

Bible References:

- **2 Chronicles 8:7-8**
- Exodus 3:7-8
- **Genesis 34:2**
- **Joshua 9:1-2**
- **Judges 3:1-3**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2340

Exodus References:

3:8; 3:17; 13:5; 23:23; 23:28; 33:2; 34:11

holy place

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term “most holy place” could be translated as “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: altar of incense, ark of the covenant, bread, consecrate, **courtyard**, curtain, holy, **set apart**, tabernacle, **temple**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 6:16-18**
- **Acts 6:12-15**
- Exodus 26:33
- Exodus 31:10-11
- **Ezekiel 41:1**
- **Ezra 9:8-9**
- **Hebrews 9:1-2**
- **Leviticus 16:18**
- **Matthew 24:15-18**

- **Revelation 15:5**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G00400, G00400, G34850, G51170

Exodus References:

15:17; 26:33; 26:34; 28:29; 28:35; 28:43; 35:19; 36:1; 36:3; 36:4; 36:6

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often said to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”

- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6
- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 1:16 He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- 9:12 “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- 13:2 “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- 13:5 “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- 22:5 “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- 50:2 As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

Exodus References:

3:intro; 3:5; 12:intro; 12:16; 15:11; 15:13; 16:23; 19:intro; 19:6; 19:14; 19:22; 22:31; 24:intro; 26:intro; 28:intro; 28:2; 28:4; 28:36; 28:38; 29:intro; 29:6; 29:29; 29:30; 29:31; 30:intro; 30:10; 30:25; 30:29; 30:31; 30:32; 30:35; 30:36; 30:37; 31:10; 31:11; 31:14; 31:15; 35:2; 35:19; 35:21; 37:29; 39:intro; 39:1; 39:30; 39:41; 40:9; 40:10; 40:13

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar.

Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: Simile, Metaphor)
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 5:6
- Proverbs 5:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G31920

Exodus References:

3:8; 3:17; 13:5; 16:31; 33:3

honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, glory, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

Exodus References:

20:12

horn, horned, shofar

Definition:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a “ram’s horn” or “shofar,” which was blown for special events such as religious festivals or to call men for battle.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet, which is usually made of metal.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called “horns,” they were not actually animal horns.
- The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.

(See also: authority, cow, deer, goat, power, royal, sheep, trumpet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 1:39
- 2 Samuel 22:3
- Jeremiah 17:1
- Psalms 22:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G27680

Exodus References:

19:13; 19:16; 19:19; 20:18; 27:2; 30:2; 30:10; 37:25; 37:26; 38:2

horse, warhorse, horseback, stallion, steed, mare

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for war and for transporting people. A stallion is a male horse and a mare is a female horse. “Steed” is a poetic word referring to a horse that is powerful or fast.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon’s great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.

(See also: chariot, donkey, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:4
- 2 Kings 2:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 6:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G24620

Exodus References:

9:3; 14:9; 14:23; 15:1; 15:19; 15:21

horseman

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- Yahweh commanded the Israelites not to have many horsemen because having a strong army would cause them to trust their own strength rather than Yahweh in battle.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: chariot, horse)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:5
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6571, H7395, G24600

Exodus References:

14:9; 14:17; 14:18; 14:23; 14:26; 14:28; 15:19

house

Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps.

- When referring to a building where people live and sleep the term “house” could be translated as “dwelling place” or “dwelling structure” or with another term that expresses the meaning.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, H1035, H1397, G36140, G36240

Exodus References:

1:1; 1:21; 2:1; 3:22; 6:14; 8:3; 8:9; 8:11; 8:13; 8:21; 8:24; 9:19; 9:20; 10:6; 12:3; 12:4; 12:7; 12:13; 12:15; 12:19; 12:22; 12:23; 12:27; 12:29; 12:30; 12:46; 13:3; 13:14; 16:31; 19:3; 20:2; 20:17; 22:7; 22:8; 23:19; 34:26; 40:38

humble, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “do not be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- James 1:21
- James 3:13
- James 4:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:4
- Matthew 23:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:2 David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 34:10 “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G08580, G42360, G42390, G42400, G50110, G50120, G50130, G53910

Exodus References:

10:3

I am Yahweh

Definition:

The statement “I am Yahweh” is used to mark out a command, historical event, promise, or prophecy as something that is particularly important, as something that happened by Yahweh’s power, or as something that will happen regardless of circumstances. This certainty is based on Yahweh’s character and strength as the all-powerful ruler over all things. At the same time, the statement is used to give Yahweh’s people understanding of who he is and what his name means. By reflecting on the command, historical event, promise, or prophecy so marked, the listener will understand more of who Yahweh is. Leviticus 11:44-45 makes it clear that by adhering to the holiness laws that follow, the people will become holy like Yahweh. There are four primary ways or forms in which this statement occurs:

1. As “I am Yahweh” or “I am Yahweh your God”
2. As the statement “[someone] will know that I am Yahweh” (often followed by “when [I do something]”). This is the most common use.
3. Followed by an example of what he is going to do or has done that validates his character and power
4. Followed by an attribute

These uses can be combined, such as in Leviticus 19:2

- 19:36, and 20:24.

Translation Suggestions:

- As much as possible, translate this statement fairly literally. This will probably not be difficult for the second and third forms above.
- Ezekiel 20:5 and Hebrews 6:13 indicate that in at least some instances (Genesis 28:13
- Exodus 6:2
- 6:6

- 6:8, etc.), “I am Yahweh” should be viewed as an oath formula. In these instances (primarily form one above) you may need to include an explanatory comment in your translation.
    - If Yahweh is making a promise, you may need to make this explicit, using an example such as: “I am Yahweh who swears to you.”
    - In Leviticus especially, the statement appears connected to many commands and you may need to make this explicit with a statement, such as: “I am Yahweh who commands this.” You could also use a slightly longer statement, such as: “I am Yahweh, and I bind you to this with an oath.” However, a statement this long may be tedious, so you could consider only using it the first (and possibly the last) time that “I am Yahweh” occurs in a series.
- Some languages will use “the Lord” in place of Yahweh; see Yahweh for more.

(See also: Lord

- **Lord Yahweh**
- Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Exodus 6:2
- Exodus 6:6
- Exodus 6:8
- Exodus 12:12
- **Leviticus 18-26** throughout
- **Numbers 3:13**
- Exodus 7:17
- Exodus 8:18
- 14:4
- **1 Kings 20:13**
- **1 Kings 20:28**
- **Ezekiel 6:7**
- **Ezekiel 6:13**
- **Ezekiel 12:15**
- **Ezekiel 28:22**
- Exodus 6:6
- Exodus 20:2
- **Leviticus 20:24**
- **Ezekiel 6:7** throughout
- **Ezekiel 6:13**

- **Ezekiel 12:15**
- **Ezekiel 17:24**
- **20:5-7**
- **Hosea 12:10**
- **Hosea 13:4**
- **Zechariah 10:6**
- **Psalm 81:11**
- **Isaiah 44:24**
- Exodus 15:26
- Exodus 20:5
- **Deuteronomy 5:9**
- **Isaiah 43:3**
- **Isaiah 43:15**
- **Jeremiah 9:23**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0589, H3068, H3069, H3070, H3071, H3072, H3073, H3074, G06380, G33780

Exodus References:

6:2; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8; 6:29; 7:5; 7:17; 8:22; 10:2; 12:12; 14:4; 14:18; 15:26; 16:12; 20:2; 20:5; 29:46; 31:13

image, carved image, cast metal image, figure, carved figure, statue

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: false god, God, false god, image of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 7:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G15040, G51790

Exodus References:

20:4

incense

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: altar of incense, burnt offering, frankincense)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:4
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 1:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2553, H3828, H4196, H4289, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G23680, G23690, G23700, G23790, G30310

Exodus References:

25:6; 30:1; 30:7; 30:8; 30:9; 30:27; 30:35; 30:37; 31:11; 35:8; 35:15; 35:28; 37:25; 37:29; 40:27

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land, possess)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29

- Psalm 79:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 4:6 When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- 27:1 One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- 35:3 “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

Exodus References:

34:9

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 3:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

Exodus References:

20:5; 28:38; 28:43; 34:7; 34:9

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:4
- 1 Samuel 19:5
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:7
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 9:23
- Romans 16:18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:6 After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- 40:4 One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”

- 40:8 When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G01210

Exodus References:

21:28; 23:7

inquire, inquiry

Definition:

The term “inquire” means to ask someone for information. The expression “inquire of” is often used to refer to asking God for wisdom or help.

- The Old Testament records several instances where people inquired of God.
- The word can also be used of a king or government official making a search through official written records.
- Depending on the context, “inquire” could be translated as “ask” or “ask for information.”
- The expression “inquire of Yahweh” could be translated as “ask Yahweh for guidance” or “ask Yahweh what to do.”
- To “inquire after” something could be translated as “ask questions about” or “ask for information about.”
- When Yahweh says “I will not be inquired of by you,” this could be translated as “I will not allow you to ask me for information” or “you will not be permitted to seek help from me.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:18
- Ezekiel 20:1
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezra 7:14
- Job 10:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1240, H1245, H1875, G18300

Exodus References:

18:15

instruct, instruction, instructor

Definition:

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: **command**, **decree**, **teach**)

Bible References:

- Exodus 14:4
- **Genesis 26:5**
- **Hebrews 11:22**
- **Matthew 10:5**
- **Matthew 11:1**
- **Proverbs 1:30**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0241, H0376, H0559, H0631, H1004, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6310, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G12560, G12990, G13190, G13210, G13780, G17810, G17850, G27270, G27530, G35590, G35600, G38110, G38520, G38530, G42640, G43670, G48220

Exodus References:

16:24

Isaac

Definition:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, descendant, eternity, fulfill, Jacob, **Sarah**, **twelve tribes of Israel**)

Bible References:

- **Galatians 4:28-29**
- **Genesis 25:9-11**
- **Genesis 25:19**
- **Genesis 26:1**
- **Genesis 26:8**
- **Genesis 28:1-2**
- **Genesis 31:18**
- **Matthew 8:11-13**
- **Matthew 22:32**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:4** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**."

- 5:6 When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham's faith by saying, "Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- 5:9 God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- 6:1 When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac.**
- 6:5 **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- 7:10 Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3327, H3446, G24640

Exodus References:

2:24; 3:6; 3:15; 3:16; 4:5; 6:3; 6:8; 32:13; 33:1

Israel, Israelites

Definition:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means “He struggles with God.”
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “sons of Israel” or the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:15 The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- 9:3 The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- 9:5 A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.

- 10:1 They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- 14:12 But despite all this, the people of __Israel __ complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- 15:9 God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- 15:12 After this battle, God gave each tribe of __Israel __ its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- 16:16 So God punished __Israel __ again for worshiping idols.
- 43:6 “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

Exodus References:

1:1; 1:7; 1:9; 1:12; 1:13; 2:23; 2:25; 3:9; 3:10; 3:11; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:16; 3:18; 4:22; 4:29; 4:31; 5:1; 5:2; 5:14; 5:15; 5:19; 6:5; 6:6; 6:9; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 6:14; 6:26; 6:27; 7:2; 7:4; 7:5; 9:4; 9:6; 9:7; 9:26; 9:35; 10:20; 10:23; 11:7; 11:10; 12:3; 12:6; 12:15; 12:19; 12:21; 12:27; 12:28; 12:31; 12:35; 12:37; 12:40; 12:42; 12:47; 12:50; 12:51; 13:2; 13:18; 13:19; 14:2; 14:3; 14:5; 14:8; 14:10; 14:15; 14:16; 14:19; 14:20; 14:22; 14:25; 14:29; 14:30; 14:31; 15:1; 15:19; 15:22; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:6; 16:9; 16:10; 16:12; 16:15; 16:17; 16:31; 16:35; 17:1; 17:5; 17:6; 17:7; 17:8; 17:11; 18:1; 18:8; 18:9; 18:12; 18:25; 19:1; 19:2; 19:3; 19:6; 20:22; 24:1; 24:4; 24:5; 24:9; 24:10; 24:11; 24:17; 25:2; 25:22; 27:20; 27:21; 28:1; 28:9; 28:11; 28:12; 28:21; 28:29; 28:30; 28:38; 29:28; 29:43; 29:45; 30:12; 30:16; 30:31; 31:13; 31:16; 31:17; 32:4; 32:8; 32:13; 32:20; 32:27; 33:5; 33:6; 34:23; 34:27; 34:30; 34:32; 34:34; 34:35; 35:1; 35:4; 35:20; 35:29; 35:30; 36:3; 39:6; 39:7; 39:14; 39:32; 39:42; 40:36; 40:38

Issachar

Definition:

Issachar was Jacob's ninth son. He was Leah's fifth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Issachar" or "Issachar."
- The meaning of the name is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word meaning "reward, hire."
- The tribe of Issachar settled in central Canaan, southwest of the Sea of Galilee. Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Joshua 17:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G24660

Exodus References:

1:3

Jacob, Israel

Definition:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to "Israel." His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob's twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "heel." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person's body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which probably means "He struggles with God."
- The name Jacob is often used to represent the nation of Israel.
- Jacob married Laban's two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, twelve tribes of Israel, Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, Bilhah, deceive, Esau, Isaac, Rebekah, Laban)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 7:1 As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- 7:7 **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- 7:8 After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- 7:10 The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- 8:1 Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G23840

Exodus References:

1:1; 1:5; 2:24; 3:6; 3:15; 3:16; 4:5; 6:3; 6:8; 19:3; 33:1

jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” in this sense refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone (See Numbers 11:29).

- The term “jealous” is used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward their spouse when they suspect that their spouse has been unfaithful in their marriage (See Numbers 5:14).
- The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” are often used to describe God’s strong desire that his covenant people love him, remain spiritually faithful to him, and keep him foremost in their affections.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is “jealous” for his glory, desiring that he be treated with honor and reverence.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful or envious of someone else.

(See also: envy)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G22050, G22060, G38630

Exodus References:

20:5; 34:14

Jebus, Jebusite

Definition:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, **Ham**, **Jerusalem**, **Melchizedek**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 1:14**
- **1 Kings 9:20-21**
- Exodus 3:7-8
- **Genesis 10:16**
- **Joshua 3:9-11**
- **Judges 1:20-21**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

Exodus References:

3:8; 3:17; 13:5; 23:23; 33:2; 34:11

Jethro, Reuel

Definition:

The names “Jethro” and “Reuel” both refer to the father of Moses’ wife, Zipporah. There were also two other men named “Reuel” in the Old Testament.

- When Moses was a shepherd in the land of Midian, he married the daughter of a Midianite man named Reuel.
- Later on Reuel is referred to as “Jethro, the priest of Midian.” It could be that “Reuel” was his clan name.
- When God spoke to Moses from a flaming bush, Moses was tending Jethro’s sheep,
- Some time later, after God had rescued the Israelites from Egypt, Jethro came out to the Israelites in the wilderness and gave Moses good advice about judging the affairs of the people.
- He believed in God when he heard about all the miracles God had done for the Israelites in Egypt.
- One of Esau’s sons was named Reuel.
- Another man named Reuel is mentioned in the genealogy of the Israelites who returned to resettle in Judah after their captivity in Babylon had ended.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: captive, clan, desert, Egypt, Esau, miracle, Moses, desert)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:34-37
- Exodus 2:18-20
- Exodus 3:1-3
- Exodus 18:3
- Numbers 10:29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3503, H7467

Exodus References:

2:18; 3:1; 4:18; 18:1; 18:2; 18:5; 18:6; 18:9; 18:10; 18:12

Joseph (OT)

Definition:

Joseph was Jacob's eleventh son. He was Rachel's first son. The descendants of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the tribes of Israel.

- The Hebrew name Joseph is similar to both the Hebrew word meaning "to add, increase" and the Hebrew word meaning "to gather, take away."
- A large portion of the book of Genesis is dedicated to the story of Joseph, how he remained faithful to God throughout his many difficulties and forgave his brothers who had sold him to be a slave in Egypt.
- Eventually God raised Joseph to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save the people of Egypt and the surrounding nations in a time when there was little food. Joseph helped save his own family from starving and brought them to live with him in Egypt.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Ephraim, Manasseh, Jacob, Rachel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 4:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:2 **Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- 8:4 The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- 8:5 Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- 8:7 God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- 8:9 **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- 9:2 The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G25000, G25010

Exodus References:

1:5; 1:6; 1:8; 13:19

Joshua

Definition:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jehozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Haggai, Jericho, Moses, Promised Land, Zechariah (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 7:25-27
- Deuteronomy 3:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 1:3
- Numbers 27:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 14:4 When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- 14:6 Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"

- 14:8 “Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land.”
- 14:14 Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- 14:15 **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 15:3 After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3091, G24240

Exodus References:

17:9; 17:10; 17:13; 17:14; 24:13; 32:17; 33:11

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2

- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 33:7 "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- 34:4 "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field… Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- 41:7 The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

Exodus References:

4:14; 18:9

Judah

Definition:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), Jew, Judea, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

Exodus References:

1:2; 31:2; 38:22

Judea, Judah

Definition:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Edom, Judah, Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24530

Exodus References:

35:30

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: **decree**, **judge**, **judgment day**, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- **1 John 4:17**
- **1 Kings 3:9**
- **Acts 10:42-43**
- **Isaiah 3:14**
- **James 2:4**

- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 19:16 The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- 21:8 A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- 39:4 The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”
- 50:14 But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

Exodus References:

2:14; 5:21; 6:6; 7:4; 12:12; 18:13; 18:16; 18:22; 18:26; 21:22; 28:15; 28:29; 28:30

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."

- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: abstractnouns)
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, judge, righteous, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8

- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:9 David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- 18:13 Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- 19:16 They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- 50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

Exodus References:

23:6; 23:7

king, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God is as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:6 One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- 16:1 The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- 16:18 Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.

- 17:5 Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- 21:6 God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- 48:14 David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

Exodus References:

1:8; 1:15; 1:17; 1:18; 2:23; 3:18; 3:19; 5:4; 6:11; 6:13; 6:27; 6:29; 14:5; 14:8

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, **kingdom of God**, **kingdom of Israel**, Judah, **Judah**, priest)

Bible References:

- **1 Thessalonians 2:12**
- **2 Timothy 4:17-18**
- **Colossians 1:13-14**
- **John 18:36**
- **Mark 3:24**

- **Matthew 4:7-9**
- **Matthew 13:19**
- **Matthew 16:28**
- **Revelation 1:9**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

Exodus References:

19:6

kiss

Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G27050, G53680, G53700

Exodus References:

4:27; 18:7

know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

Used in this sense the term “know” and “knowledge” mean generally to understand something. It can also mean to be aware of a fact. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with that person. The word for knowing facts should be used when translating this sense of the word “know.”

(See also: know-relationship, law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1844, H1847, H3045, H3046, H3318, G00500, G00560, G03190, G10970, G11070, G11080, G11100, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G42670

Exodus References:

1:8; 2:4; 2:14; 2:25; 3:7; 3:19; 4:14; 5:2; 6:3; 6:7; 7:5; 7:17; 8:10; 8:22; 9:14; 9:29; 9:30; 10:2; 10:7; 10:26; 11:7; 14:4; 14:18; 16:6; 16:12; 16:15; 18:11; 18:16; 18:20; 21:36; 23:9; 29:46; 31:3; 31:13; 32:1; 32:22; 32:23; 33:5; 33:12; 33:13; 33:16; 33:17; 34:29; 35:31; 36:1

Korah, Korahite

Definition:

Korah was the name of three men in the Old Testament.

1. Korah was a descendant of Levi and so served in the tabernacle as a priest. He became jealous of Moses and Aaron and led a group of men to rebel against them.
2. One of the sons of Esau was named Korah. He became a leader in his community.
3. A third man named Korah is listed as a descendant of Judah.

(See also: Aaron, authority, Caleb, descendant, Esau, Judah, priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:34-37
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Psalm 42:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7141

Exodus References:

6:21; 6:24

labor, labors, labored, laboring, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “toil” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3021, H4399, H4522, H4639, H5647, H5656, H5998, H6001, H6089, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730

Exodus References:

5:13; 5:18; 18:20; 20:9; 23:16; 34:21

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:3
- Ezra 8:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 1:29
- John 1:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4

- Luke 10:3
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 5:7 As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- 11:2 God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- 24:6 The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- 45:8 He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.”
- 48:8 When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- 48:9 When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7716, G07210, G23160

Exodus References:

12:3; 12:4; 12:5; 12:21; 13:13; 29:38; 29:39; 29:40; 29:41; 34:20

lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: lampstand, **life**, **light**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 11:36**
- Exodus 25:3-7
- **Luke 8:16-18**
- **Matthew 5:15**
- **Matthew 6:22**
- **Matthew 25:3**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G29850, G30880

Exodus References:

30:7; 30:8; 35:14; 39:37

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- The lampstand would be tall enough so that the light of the lamp could shine throughout the room.
- The lampstand could be made of wood or metal and could hold one or more lamps.
- Ordinary lamps were made of clay, and lamps for special purposes, such as for the temple, were made of metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- The lamps were in the shape of a bowl with a raised lip on one side that held a wick. The lamps were filled with olive oil that soaked the wick and burned when the wick was lighted.
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand that had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: bronze, gold, lamp, **light**, silver, **temple**)

Bible References:

- **Daniel 5:5-6**
- Exodus 37:17
- **Mark 4:21-23**
- **Matthew 5:15-16**
- **Revelation 1:12-13**
- **Revelation 1:20**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4501, G30870

Exodus References:

25:31; 25:32; 25:33; 25:34; 25:35; 26:35; 30:27; 31:8; 35:14; 37:17; 37:18; 37:19; 37:20; 39:37; 40:4; 40:24

law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43

- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:7 God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- 13:9 Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- 15:13 Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- 16:1 After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- 21:5 In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- 27:1 Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- 28:1 Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

Exodus References:

front:intro; 12:49; 13:9; 15:intro; 16:4; 18:20; 19:intro; 31:intro

law, principle

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior, and is usually not written down or enforced. However, sometimes the term “law” is used to mean a “principle.”

- A “law” is similar to a “decree,” but the term “law” is generally used to refer to something written rather than spoken.
- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: law of Moses, **decree**, **command**, declare)

Bible References:

- **Deuteronomy 4:2**
- **Esther 3:8-9**
- Exodus 12:12-14
- **Genesis 26:5**
- **John 18:31**
- **Romans 7:1**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G17850, G35480, G35510, G47470

Exodus References:

15:26; 16:28; 18:16; 24:12

Levi, Levite

Definition:

Levi was Jacob's third son. He was Leah's third son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Levi" or the "Levites."
- The name Levi is similar to the Hebrew word for "join to."
- Unlike the other tribes, the tribe of Levi did not inherit a unified area of land in Canaan. Instead, they inherited various cities scattered throughout the regions belonging to the other tribes.
- The tribe of Levi was responsible for taking care of the tabernacle (and later, the temple) and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers for the Israelite people.
- In the Old Testament, it is not always clear whether the term "Levite" refers generally to a descendant of Levi or specifically to a person who served in the temple helping the priests.
- The Old Testament law prescribed that all priests were to be chosen from the tribe of Levi. The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus. Their names are listed in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, priest, sacrifice, temple, Jacob, Leah, Matthew)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 8:3-5
- Acts 4:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G30170, G30180, G30190, G30200

Exodus References:

1:2; 2:1; 4:14; 6:16; 6:19; 6:25; 32:26; 32:28; 38:21

livestock, animals

Definition:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cow, ox, donkey, goat, horse, sheep)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 3:15-17
- Genesis 30:29
- Joshua 1:14-15
- Nehemiah 9:36-37
- Numbers 3:41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0929, H4399, H4735

Exodus References:

9:3; 9:4; 9:6; 9:7; 9:19; 9:20; 9:21; 10:26; 12:38; 17:3; 20:10; 22:5; 34:3; 34:19

locust

Definition:

The term “locust” refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many other of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel’s disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: captive, Egypt, Israel, John (the Baptist), plague)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:28
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Exodus 10:3-4
- Mark 1:6
- Proverbs 30:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0697, H1357, H1462, H1501, H2284, H3218, H5556, H6767, G02000

Exodus References:

10:4; 10:12; 10:13; 10:14; 10:19

loins

Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: euphemism)
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: euphemism)
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: descendant, gird, children)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- 2 Chronicles 6:9
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G37510

Exodus References:

12:11; 28:42

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 25:5 But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- 25:7 Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- 26:3 This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- 27:2 The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- 31:5 Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- 43:9 “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- 47:3 By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- 47:11 Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

Exodus References:

4:10; 4:13; 5:22; 15:17; 21:4; 21:5; 21:6; 21:8; 21:32; 23:17; 32:22; 34:9; 34:23

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
    - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
    - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
    - In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
    - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
    - The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.
3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2
- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 27:2 The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- 33:8 "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- 36:5 As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- 39:10 "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- 47:1 She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- 48:1 When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- 49:3 He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- 49:4 He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- 49:7 Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.

- 49:9 But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- 49:13 God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

Exodus References:

20:6; 21:5

magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits

Definition:

The term “magic” refers to the practice of using supernatural power that does not come from God. A “magician” is someone who practices magic.

- In Egypt, when God did miraculous things through Moses, the Egyptian pharaoh’s magicians were able to do some of the same things, but their power did not come from God.
- Magic often involves casting spells or repeating certain words in order to make something supernatural happen.
- God commands his people to not do any of these practices of magic or divination.
- A sorcerer is a type of magician, usually one who uses magic to do harm to others.

(See also: divination, Egypt, Pharaoh, power, sorcery)

Bible References:

- Genesis 41:8
- Genesis 41:22-24
- Genesis 44:3-5
- Genesis 44:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2748, H2749, H3049, G30970

Exodus References:

7:11; 7:22; 8:7; 8:18; 8:19; 9:11

majesty

Definition:

The term “majesty” or “majestic” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: king)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- Daniel 4:36
- Isaiah 2:10
- Jude 1:25
- Micah 5:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1347, H1348, H1420, H1923, H1926, H1935, H7238, G31680, G31720

Exodus References:

15:6; 15:7; 15:10; 15:11

manna

Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they would not have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word “manna” means “what is it?”
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as “bread from heaven” and “grain from heaven.”

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include “thin white flakes of food” or “food from heaven.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: bread, desert, grain, heaven, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:3
- Exodus 16:27
- Hebrews 9:3-5
- John 6:30-31
- Joshua 5:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4478, G31310

Exodus References:

16:31; 16:33; 16:35

memorial, memorial offering

Definition:

The term “memorial” refers to an action or object that causes someone or something to be remembered.

- This word is also used as an adjective to describe something that is to remind them of something, as in a “memorial offering,” a “memorial portion” of a sacrifice or “memorial stones.”
- In the Old Testament memorial offerings were made so the Israelites would remember what God had done for them.
- God told the Israelite priests to wear special clothing that had memorial stones. These stones had the names of the twelve tribes of Israel engraved on them. These were perhaps to remind them of God’s faithfulness to them.
- In the New Testament, God honored a man named Cornelius because of his charitable deeds for the poor. These deeds were said to be a “memorial” before God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “lasting reminder.”
- A “memorial stone” could be translated as a “stone to remind them (of something).”

Bible References:

- Acts 10:4
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Isaiah 66:3
- Joshua 4:6-7
- Leviticus 23:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2142, H2146, G34220

Exodus References:

12:14; 13:9

messenger

Definition:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 2 Kings 1:1-2
- Luke 7:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

Exodus References:

14:19

Midian, Midianite

Definition:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. It is also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called “Midianites.”

- When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro’s daughters.
- Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
- Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
- Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also **Arabia**, Egypt, flock, **Gideon**, Jethro, Moses)

Bible References:

- **Acts 7:30**
- Exodus 2:16
- **Genesis 25:1-4**
- **Genesis 36:34-36**
- **Genesis 37:28**
- **Judges 7:1**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** But then the people forgot about God and started worshiping idols again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them.
- **16:4** The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the **Midianites** would not find them.
- **16:11** The man’s friend said, “This dream means that Gideon’s army will defeat the **Midianite** army!”
- **16:14** God confused the **Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4080, H4084, H4092

Exodus References:

2:15; 2:16; 3:1; 4:19; 18:1

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

Exodus References:

1:7; 1:9; 1:20

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, prophet, apostle, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3

- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 16:8 Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- 19:14 God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- 37:10 Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- 43:6 “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- 49:2 Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

Exodus References:

3:20; 4:21; 7:intro; 7:3; 7:9; 11:9; 11:10; 15:11; 34:10

Miriam

Definition:

Miriam was the older sister of Aaron and Moses.

- When she was young, Miriam was instructed by her mother to watch over her baby brother Moses who was in a basket among the reeds of the Nile River. When the pharaoh's daughter found the baby and needed someone to take care of him for her, Miriam brought her mother to do it.
- Miriam led the Israelites in a dance of joy and thanksgiving after they had escaped from the Egyptians by crossing the Red Sea.
- Years later as the Israelites were wandering in the desert, Miriam and Aaron began speaking badly about Moses because he had married a Cushite woman.
- Because of her rebellion in speaking against Moses, God caused Miriam to become sick with leprosy. But later God healed her when Moses interceded for her.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Aaron, Cush, intercede, Moses, Nile River, Pharaoh, rebel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:1-3
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Micah 6:4
- Numbers 12:2
- Numbers 20:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4813

Exodus References:

15:20; 15:21

Moab, Moabite

Definition:

The term “Moab” refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named “Moab,” who was the son of Lot’s elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a “Moabite woman” because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 1:1-2
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4124, H4125

Exodus References:

15:15

mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:4
- Acts 2:12-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 9:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:12 Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- 39:5 The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- 39:12 The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- 40:4 Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”

- 40:5 The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G15920, G17010, G17020, G17030, G23010, G26060, G34560, G55120

Exodus References:

32:25

month, monthly

Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about twenty-nine days. In this system there are twelve or thirteen months in a year. Despite the year being twelve or thirteen months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into twelve months, with the length of each month ranging from twenty-eight to thirty-one days.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, H3391, H3393, G33760

Exodus References:

2:2; 12:2; 12:3; 12:6; 12:18; 13:4; 13:5; 16:1; 19:1; 23:15; 34:18; 40:2; 40:17

Moses

Definition:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but did not get to live in it, because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 9:12 One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- 12:5 **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- 12:7 God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- 13:7 Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

Exodus References:

2:10; 2:11; 2:14; 2:15; 2:17; 2:21; 3:1; 3:3; 3:4; 3:6; 3:11; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 4:1; 4:3; 4:4; 4:10; 4:14; 4:18; 4:19; 4:20; 4:21; 4:27; 4:28; 4:29; 4:30; 5:1; 5:4; 5:20; 5:22; 6:1; 6:2; 6:9; 6:10; 6:12; 6:13; 6:20; 6:26; 6:27; 6:28; 6:29; 6:30; 7:1; 7:6; 7:7; 7:8; 7:10; 7:14; 7:19; 7:20; 8:1; 8:5; 8:8; 8:9; 8:12; 8:13; 8:16; 8:20; 8:25; 8:26; 8:29; 8:30; 8:31; 9:1; 9:8; 9:10; 9:11; 9:12; 9:13; 9:22; 9:23; 9:27; 9:29; 9:33; 9:35; 10:1; 10:3; 10:8; 10:9; 10:12; 10:13; 10:16; 10:21; 10:22; 10:24; 10:25; 10:29; 11:1; 11:3; 11:4; 11:9; 11:10; 12:1; 12:21; 12:28; 12:31; 12:35; 12:43; 12:50; 13:1; 13:3; 13:19; 14:1; 14:11; 14:13; 14:15; 14:21; 14:26; 14:27; 14:31; 15:1; 15:22; 15:24; 16:2; 16:4; 16:6; 16:8; 16:9; 16:11; 16:15; 16:19; 16:20; 16:22; 16:24; 16:25; 16:28; 16:32; 16:33; 16:34; 17:2; 17:3; 17:4; 17:5; 17:6; 17:9; 17:10; 17:11; 17:12; 17:14; 17:15; 18:1; 18:2; 18:5; 18:6; 18:7; 18:8; 18:12; 18:13; 18:14; 18:15; 18:17; 18:24; 18:25; 18:26; 18:27; 19:3; 19:7; 19:8; 19:9; 19:10; 19:14; 19:17; 19:19; 19:20; 19:21; 19:23; 19:25; 20:19; 20:20; 20:21; 20:22; 24:1; 24:2; 24:3; 24:4; 24:6; 24:8; 24:9; 24:12; 24:13; 24:15; 24:16; 24:18; 25:1; 30:11; 30:17; 30:22; 30:34; 31:1; 31:12; 31:18; 32:1; 32:7; 32:9; 32:11; 32:15; 32:17; 32:19; 32:21; 32:23; 32:25; 32:26; 32:28; 32:29; 32:30; 32:31; 32:33; 33:1; 33:5; 33:7; 33:8; 33:9; 33:11; 33:12; 33:17; 34:1; 34:4; 34:8; 34:27; 34:29; 34:30; 34:31; 34:33; 34:34; 34:35; 35:1; 35:4; 35:20; 35:29; 35:30; 36:2; 36:3; 36:5; 36:6; 38:21; 38:22; 39:1; 39:5; 39:7; 39:21; 39:26; 39:29; 39:31; 39:32; 39:33; 39:42; 39:43; 40:1; 40:16; 40:18; 40:19; 40:21; 40:23; 40:25; 40:27; 40:29; 40:31; 40:32; 40:33; 40:35

mourn, mourner, weeping

Definition:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

Exodus References:

33:4

multiply, multiplied, multiplication

Definition:

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:1
- Genesis 9:7
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 4:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G40520, G41290

Exodus References:

1:7; 1:10; 1:12; 1:20; 7:3; 11:9; 32:13; 36:5

myrrh

Definition:

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

- Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
- Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: frankincense, learned men)

Bible References:

- Exodus 30:22-25
- Genesis 37:25-26
- John 11:1-2
- Mark 15:23
- Matthew 2:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3910, H4753, G34640, G46660, G46690

Exodus References:

30:23

Naphtali

Definition:

Naphtali was Jacob's sixth son. He was Bilhah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Naphtali" or "Naphtali" or "Naphtalites."
- The name Naphtali is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to twist, wrestle."
- The tribe of Naphtali settled in the northern part of Canaan, between the tribes of Manassah and Asher. Its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Naphtali" refers to the land given to the tribe of Naphtali.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Bilhah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:8
- Judges 1:33
- Matthew 4:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G35080

Exodus References:

1:4

nation

Definition:

In the Bible, a nation is a large group of people who share a common identity and speak the same language. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- In the Bible, a nation could be a country with an extensive government structure and defined boundaries (such as Egypt or Ethiopia), but usually it is more general and refers to a people group.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- When used in the plural in a general way, the word translated as "nations" often referred to the people who were not Israelites, that is, to Gentiles, the people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "non-Jews."

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26

- **Acts 26:4**
- **Daniel 3:4**
- **Genesis 10:2-5**
- **Genesis 27:29**
- **Genesis 35:11**
- **Genesis 49:10**
- **Luke 7:5**
- **Mark 13:7-8**
- **Matthew 21:43**
- **Romans 4:16-17**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

Exodus References:

9:24; 19:6; 32:10; 33:13; 34:10; 34:24

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: adversary, **parable**, **people group**, **Samaria**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 7:26-28**
- **Ephesians 4:25-27**
- **Galatians 5:14**
- **James 2:8**
- **John 9:8-9**
- **Luke 1:58**
- **Matthew 5:43**
- **Matthew 19:19**
- **Matthew 22:39**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G10690, G20870, G40400, G41390

Exodus References:

3:22; 11:2; 12:4; 20:16; 22:8; 22:9; 32:27

Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile

Definition:

The Nile is a very long and wide river in northeastern Africa. It is especially well known as the main river of Egypt.

- The Nile River flows north through Egypt and into the Mediterranean Sea.
- Crops grow well in the fertile land on either side of the Nile River.
- Most Egyptians live near the Nile River since it is an important source of water for food crops.
- The Israelites lived in the land of Goshen, which was very fertile because it was located along the Nile River.
- When Moses was a baby, his parents placed him in a basket among the reeds of the Nile to hide him from Pharaoh's men.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Goshen, Moses)

Bible References:

- Amos 8:8
- Genesis 41:1-3
- Jeremiah 46:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:4 Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the **Nile River**.
- 9:4 Pharaoh saw that the Israelites were having many babies, so he ordered his people to kill all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the **Nile River**.
- 9:6 When the boy's parents could no longer hide him, they put him in a floating basket among the reeds along the edge of the **Nile River** in order to save him from being killed.
- 10:3 God turned the **Nile River** into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0216, H2975, H4714, H5104

Exodus References:

1:22; 2:3; 2:5; 4:9; 7:15; 7:17; 7:18; 7:20; 7:21; 7:24; 7:25; 8:3; 8:9; 8:11; 17:5

oath, vow, swear, swearing, swear by, sworn

Definition:

The term “oath” in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term “swear” means to make an oath. A “vow” is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word “swear” is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- To “swear” could be translated as to “formally promise” or to “pledge” or to “commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.
- Depending on the context, the term “vow” can be translated as “solemn promise” or “solemn oath” or “promise made to God.”

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72
- 1 Corinthians 7:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 1:14-16
- Jonah 2:9-10
- Proverbs 7:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280, H5087, H5088, G21710

Exodus References:

13:5; 13:11; 13:19; 22:11; 32:13; 33:1

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

Exodus References:

27:20; 29:2; 29:7; 29:21; 29:23; 30:24; 30:25; 30:31; 31:11; 35:14; 35:15; 35:28; 37:29; 39:37; 39:38; 40:9

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 8:11
- James 3:12
- Luke 16:6
- Psalms 52:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G00650, G16360, G16370, G25650

Exodus References:

23:11; 25:6; 27:20; 30:24; 35:8

ordinance, regulation, requirement, strict law, custom

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: command, decree, law, ordain, statute)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 8:31-33
- Malachi 3:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

Exodus References:

15:25; 21:1; 21:9; 21:31; 24:3; 29:28

oversee, overseer, keeper

Definition:

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people. In the Bible, often the term “keeper” means “overseer.”

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, elder, pastor, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 3:2
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G19830, G19840, G19850

Exodus References:

1:11

overtake

Definition:

The term “overtake” and “overtook” refer to gaining control over someone or something. It usually includes the idea of catching up to something after pursuing it.

- When military troops “overtake” an enemy, it means they defeat that enemy in battle.
- When a predator overtakes its prey, it means that it pursues and catches its prey.
- If a curse “overtakes” someone, it means that whatever was said in that curse happens to the person
- If blessings “overtake” people, it means that those people experience those blessings.
- Depending on the context, “overtake” could be translated as “conquer” or “capture” or “defeat” or “catch up to” or “completely affect.”
- The past action “overtook” can be translated as “caught up to” or “came alongside of” or “conquered” or “defeated” or “caused harm to.”
- When used in a warning that darkness or punishment or terrors will overtake people because of their sin, it means that those people will experience these negative things if they do not repent.
- The phrase “My words have overtaken your fathers” means that the teachings that Yahweh gave to their ancestors will now cause the ancestors to receive punishment because they failed to obey those teachings.

(See also: bless, curse, **prey**, **punish**)

Bible References:

- **2 Kings 25:4-5**
- **John 12:35**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H0935, H1692, H4672, H5066, H5381, G26380, G29830

Exodus References:

15:9

palace, house

Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: courtyard, high priest, king)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Daniel 5:5-6
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Psalms 45:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0759, H1002, H1004, H1055, H1406, H1964, H1965, G08330, G09330, G42320

Exodus References:

7:23; 8:3; 8:24

palm

Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: donkey, Jerusalem, peace)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:29-30
- Ezekiel 40:14-16
- John 12:12-13
- Numbers 33:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G54040

Exodus References:

15:27

Passover

Definition:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:7
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 6:21-22
- John 13:1
- Joshua 5:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 9:3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:14 God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.

- 38:1 Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- 38:4 Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- 48:9 When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- 48:10 Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G39570

Exodus References:

front:intro; 12:intro; 12:11; 12:21; 12:27; 12:43; 12:48; 34:25

peace offering

Definition:

A “peace offering” was one of several sacrificial offerings that God commanded the Israelites to make. It is sometimes called the “thanksgiving offering” or “fellowship offering.”

- This offering involved sacrificing an animal that had no defects, sprinkling the animal’s blood on the altar, and burning the animal’s fat, as well as the rest of the animal separately.
- Added to this sacrifice was an offering of both unleavened and leavened bread, which was burned on top of the burnt offering.
- The priest and one who offered the sacrifice were permitted to share in eating the food that was offered.
- This offering symbolizes the fellowship of God with his people.

(See also: burnt offering, fellowship, fellowship offering, grain offering, priest, sacrifice, unleavened bread)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:8-10
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Joshua 8:30-32
- Leviticus 9:3-5
- Proverbs 7:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8002

Exodus References:

20:24; 24:5; 29:28; 32:6

peace, peaceful, peacemaker

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:6 God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- 15:12 Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- 16:3 Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- 21:13 He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- 48:14 David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- 50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

Exodus References:

4:18; 18:23

Pentecost, Festival of Weeks

Definition:

The “Festival of Weeks” was a Jewish festival that took place fifty days after Passover. It was later referred to as “Pentecost.”

- The Feast of Weeks was seven weeks (fifty days) after the Feast of Firstfruits. In the New Testament times, this festival was called “Pentecost” which has “fifty” as part of its meaning.
- The Festival of Weeks was held to celebrate the beginning of the grain harvest. It was also a time to remember when God first gave the Law to the Israelites on the tablets of stone given to Moses.
- In the New Testament, the Day of Pentecost is especially significant because it was when the believers of Jesus received the Holy Spirit in a new way.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: festival, firstfruits, harvest, Holy Spirit, raise)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 8:12-13
- Acts 2:1
- Acts 20:15-16
- Deuteronomy 16:16-17
- Numbers 28:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2282, H7620, G40050

Exodus References:

34:22

people of God

Definition:

The concept of the "people of God" in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase "people of God" refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase "people of God" refers to the "Church," meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the "sons of God" or "children of God."
- When God uses the phrase "my people," he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God's people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "people of God" could be translated as "God's people" or "the people who worship God" or "people who serve God" or "people who belong to God."
- When God says "my people" other ways to translate it could include "the people I have chosen" or "the people who worship me" or "the people who belong to me."
- Similarly, "your people" could be translated as "the people who belong to you" or "the people you chose to belong to you."
- Also "his people" could be translated as "the people who belong to him" or "the people God chose to belong to himself."

(See also: Israel, people group)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:2
- Acts 7:34
- Acts 7:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Isaiah 2:5-6
- Jeremiah 6:20-22
- Joel 3:16-17
- Micah 6:3-5

- **Revelation 13:7-8**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H5971, G23160, G29920

Exodus References:

4:intro

perfect, complete

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws. Old Testament sacrifices needed to be “perfect” or “complete,” that is, without blemish.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

(See also: blemish)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:2
- James 3:2
- Matthew 5:46-48
- Psalms 19:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G01990, G26750, G26760, G36470, G50460, G50470, G50480, G50500

Exodus References:

12:5

perish

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of “Perish:”

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God’s punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “be lost from God’s people,” “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean “die physically” or “cease to exist.”

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:23
- 2 Corinthians 2:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 49:18-20
- Zechariah 9:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0008, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G05990, G06220, G06840, G08530, G13110, G27040, G48810, G53560

Exodus References:

10:7

Perizzite

Definition:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the "Perezites," was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 8:7-8
- Exodus 3:16-18
- Genesis 13:7
- Joshua 3:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6522

Exodus References:

3:8; 3:17; 23:23; 33:2; 34:11

perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, dishonest, distortion

Definition:

The term “perverse” is used to describe a person or action that is morally crooked or twisted. The term “perversely” means “in a perverse manner.” To “pervert” something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
- Any action which is against God’s standards or behavior is considered perverse.
- Ways to translate “perverse” could include “morally twisted” or “immoral” or “turning away from God’s straight path,” depending on the context.
- “Perverse speech” could be translated as “speaking in an evil way” or “deceitful talk” or “immoral way of talking.”
- “Perverse people” could be described as “immoral people” or “people who are morally deviant” or “people who continually disobey God.”
- The phrase “acting perversely” could be translated as “behaving in an evil way” or “doing things against God’s commands” or “living in a way that rejects God’s teachings.”
- The term “pervert” could also be translated as “cause to be corrupt” or “turn into something evil.”

(See also: corrupt, deceive, disobey, evil, turn)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:47
- 1 Samuel 20:30
- Job 33:27-28
- Luke 23:2
- Psalms 101:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1942, H2015, H3868, H4297, H5186, H5557, H5558, H5753, H5766, H5773, H5791, H6140, H6141, H8138, H8397, H8419, G12940

Exodus References:

23:8

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Definition:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as “Pharaoh.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: egypt, king)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 7:13
- Acts 7:21
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 40:7
- Genesis 41:25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:6 One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- 8:8 **Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- 9:2 So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- 9:13 “I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- 10:2 Through these plagues, God showed __Pharaoh __ that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt’s gods.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4428, H4714, H6547, G53280

Exodus References:

1:11; 1:19; 1:22; 2:5; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:10; 2:15; 3:10; 3:11; 4:21; 4:22; 5:1; 5:2; 5:5; 5:6; 5:10; 5:14; 5:15; 5:20; 5:21; 5:23; 6:1; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 6:27; 6:29; 6:30; 7:1; 7:2; 7:3; 7:4; 7:7; 7:9; 7:10; 7:11; 7:13; 7:14; 7:15; 7:20; 7:22; 7:23; 8:1; 8:8; 8:9; 8:12; 8:15; 8:19; 8:20; 8:24; 8:25; 8:28; 8:29; 8:30; 8:31; 8:32; 9:1; 9:7; 9:8; 9:10; 9:12; 9:13; 9:20; 9:27; 9:33; 9:34; 9:35; 10:1; 10:3; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8; 10:11; 10:16; 10:18; 10:20; 10:24; 10:27; 10:28; 11:1; 11:3; 11:5; 11:8; 11:9; 11:10; 12:29; 12:30; 13:15; 13:17; 14:3; 14:4; 14:5; 14:8; 14:9; 14:10; 14:17; 14:18; 14:23; 14:28; 15:4; 15:19; 18:4; 18:8; 18:10

Philistia

Definition:

Philistia is the name of a large region in the land of Canaan, located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea.

- The region was located along the very fertile coastal plain reaching from Joppa in the north to Gaza in the south. It was about 64 kilometers long and 16 kilometers wide.
- Philistia was occupied by the "Philistines," a powerful people group who were frequent enemies of the Israelites.

(See also: Philistines, Gaza, Joppa)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:9-10
- Joel 3:4
- Psalms 60:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776 H6429 H6430

Exodus References:

15:14

Philistines

Definition:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: **Ashdod**, **Ashkelon**, **David**, **Ekron**, **Gath**, **Gaza**, **Goliath**, **Salt Sea**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 18:9-11**
- **1 Samuel 13:4**
- **2 Chronicles 9:25-26**
- **Genesis 10:11-14**
- **Psalm 56:1-2**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6429, H6430

Exodus References:

13:17; 23:31

Phinehas

Definition:

Phineas was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One of Aaron's grandsons was a priest named Phinehas, who strongly opposed the worship of false gods in Israel.
- Phineas saved the Israelites from a plague that Yahweh had sent to punish them for marrying Midianite women and worshiping their false gods.
- On several occasions Phinehas went with the Israelite army to destroy the Midianites.
- The other Phinehas mentioned in the Old Testament was one of the evil sons of Eli the priest during the time of the prophet Samuel.
- Phinehas and his brother Hophni were both killed when the Philistines attacked Israel and stole the Ark of the Covenant.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: ark of the covenant, Jordan River, Midian, Philistines, Samuel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:4
- Ezra 8:2
- Joshua 22:13-14
- Numbers 25:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6372

Exodus References:

6:25

pit, pitfall, trench, cistern

Definition:

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- A “cistern” was a hole dug in order to hold water.
- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: **abyss**, **hell**, **prison**)

Bible References:

- **Genesis 37:21-22**
- **Job 33:18**
- **Luke 6:39**
- **Proverbs 1:12**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0875, H0953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G00120, G09990, G54210

Exodus References:

12:29; 21:33

plague

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: hail, Israel, Moses, Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:13-14
- Exodus 9:14
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Luke 21:11
- Revelation 9:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1698, H4046, H4194, H4347, H5061, H5062, H5063, G30610, G41270

Exodus References:

5:3; 9:3; 9:14; 9:15; 11:1; 12:13; 30:12; 32:35

plea, plead, please, beg, implore

Definition:

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 8:3-5
- Judges 6:31
- Luke 4:39
- Proverbs 18:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G11890, G17930, G20650, G38700

Exodus References:

2:23; 3:18

pledge

Definition:

The term “pledge” refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- To “pledge” could be translate as to “formally commit to” or to “strongly promise.”
- The term “pledge” can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- Ways to translate “a pledge” could include “a solemn promise” or “a formal commitment” or “a guarantee” or “a formal assurance,” depending on the context.

(See also: promise, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:4-5
- Exodus 22:26
- Genesis 38:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0781, H2254, H2258, H5667, H5671, H6148, H6161, H6162

Exodus References:

22:26

plow, plower, plowman, plowmen, plowshare, unplowed

Definition:

A “plow” is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

- Plows have sharp, pointed prongs that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
- In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
- Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.

(See also: bronze, ox)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:10-12
- Deuteronomy 21:4
- Luke 9:62
- Luke 17:7
- Psalm 141:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0406, H0855, H2758, H2790, H5215, H5647, H5656, H5674, H6213, H6398, G07220, G07230

Exodus References:

34:21

pomegranate

Definition:

A pomegranate is a kind of fruit that has a thick, tough skin filled with many seeds that are covered with edible red pulp.

- The outer rind is reddish in color and the pulp surrounding the seeds is shiny and red.
- Pomegranates are very commonly grown in countries with a hot, dry climate, such as Egypt and Israel.
- Yahweh promised the Israelites that Canaan was a land with abundant water and fertile soil so that food was plentiful there, including pomegranates.
- The construction of Solomon's temple included bronze decorations in the shape of pomegranates.

(See also: bronze, Canaan, Egypt, Solomon, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:16-17
- Deuteronomy 8:7-8
- Jeremiah 52:22-23
- Numbers 13:23-24
- Numbers 20:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7416

Exodus References:

28:33; 39:24

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Definition:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship, inherit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:70
- 1 Kings 9:17-19

- **Acts 2:45**
- **Deuteronomy 4:5-6**
- **Genesis 31:36-37**
- **Matthew 13:44**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0270, H0272, H0834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G11390, G21920, G26970, G27220, G29320, G29330, G29350, G40470, G52240, G55640

Exodus References:

6:8; 15:9; 15:17; 19:5; 23:30

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
- The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:13 The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.

- 17:8 When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- 22:7 Zechariah said, "**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!"
- 43:13 They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- 47:8 They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

Exodus References:

15:11

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 6:5 Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- 13:12 But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- 19:8 Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- 21:7 Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.

- 38:11 Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- 43:13 The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- 49:18 God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

Exodus References:

8:8; 8:9; 8:28; 8:29; 8:30; 10:17; 10:18

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: declare, **good news**, **Jesus**, **kingdom of God**)

Strong‘s for preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G12290, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27830, G27840, G29800, G42830

Strong‘s for proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G51800, G59100, G12290, G18610, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27840, G29800, G31420, G41350

Bible References:

- **2 Timothy 4:1-2**
- **Acts 8:4-5**
- **Acts 10:42-43**

- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:2 He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- 30:1 Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- 38:1 About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- 45:6 But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- 45:7 He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- 46:6 Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- 46:10 Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- 47:14 Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- 50:2 When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H7121, H7150, H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G12290, G20970, G26050,

G27820, G27830, G27840, G29800, G42830, G51800, G59100, G12290, G18610, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27840, G29800, G31420, G41350

Exodus References:

9:16; 10:2

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18

- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 4:7 "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- 13:9 Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- 19:7 So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- 21:7 An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

Exodus References:

2:16; 3:1; 18:1; 19:intro; 19:6; 19:22; 19:24; 28:intro; 28:1; 28:3; 28:4; 28:41; 29:intro; 29:1; 29:9; 29:30; 29:44; 30:30; 31:10; 35:19; 38:21; 39:41; 40:13; 40:15

profane, profaned

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: defile, holy, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:9
- Malachi 1:10-12
- Matthew 12:5
- Numbers 18:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G09520, G09530

Exodus References:

31:14

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 3:15 God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”Â
- 3:16 God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- 4:8 God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- 5:4 “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- 8:15 The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.

- 17:14 Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- 50:1 Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

Exodus References:

24:intro

Promised Land

Definition:

The term “Promised Land” only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Promised Land” can be translated as the “land that God said he would give to Abraham” or “land that God promised to Abraham” or “land God promised to his people” or “land of Canaan.”
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of “the land God promised.”

(See also: Canaan, promise)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Ezekiel 7:26-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:1 They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the **Promised Land**!
- 14:1 After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the **Promised Land**, which was also called Canaan.
- 14:2 God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the **Promised Land** to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- 14:14 Then God led the people to the edge of the **Promised Land** again.
- 15:2 The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the **Promised Land**.
- 15:12 After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the **Promised Land**.

- 20:9 This period of time when God's people were forced to leave the **Promised Land** is called the Exile.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H3068, H3423, H5159, H5414, H7650

Exodus References:

6:intro

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: **Baal**, **divination**, **false god**, **false prophet**, fulfill, law, **vision**)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- 17:13 God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- 19:1 Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- 19:6 All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- 19:17 Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- 21:9 The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- 43:5 "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- 43:7 "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- 48:12 Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

Exodus References:

7:1; 15:20

prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: euphemism)

(See also: adultery, **false god**, **sexual immorality**, **false god**)

Bible References:

- **Genesis 34:31**
- **Genesis 38:21**
- **Luke 15:30**
- **Matthew 21:31**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G42040

Exodus References:

34:15; 34:16

prostrate

Definition:

The term “prostrate” means to be lying face down, stretched out on the ground.

- To “fall prostrate” or to “prostrate oneself” before someone means to suddenly bow down very low or in front of that person.
- Usually this position of being prostrate is a response that shows shock, amazement, and awe because of something miraculous that happened. It also shows honor and respect for the person being bowed to.
- Being prostrate also was a way to worship God. People often responded this way to Jesus in thanksgiving and worship when he did a miracle or to honor him as a great teacher.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “prostrated” could include “bowed down low with the face to the ground” or “worshiped him by lying face down in front of him” or “bowed down low to the ground in amazement” or “worshiped.”
- The phrase “will not prostrate ourselves” could be translated as “will not worship” or “will not lie face down in worship” or “will not bow down and worship.”
- “Prostrate himself to” could also be translated as “worship” or “bow down in front of.”

(See also: awe, bow)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:36-38
- Genesis 43:28
- Revelation 19:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5307, H5457, H6440, H6915, H7812

Exodus References:

34:8

prostrate, bow down, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: bow, fear, sacrifice, praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:4 Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- 14:2 The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- 17:6 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.

- 18:12 All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- 25:7 Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- 26:2 On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- 47:1 There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- 49:18 God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

Exodus References:

4:31; 12:27; 24:1

proud, pride, prideful, boast, boastful, boasting

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “pride,” in this sense, refer to a person thinking too highly of themself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people. The term “boast,” when used with this sense, means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”
- The term “boastful” is always negative, and refers to a person who brags about themself or what they possess or have done or can do.
- Someone who is “boastful” frequently talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, proud positive sense)

Bible References:

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 4:2 They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- 34:10 Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1364, H1431, H2087, H2102, H3093, H4994, G51870, G52430, G52440, G53080, G53090, G54260, G54500

Exodus References:

18:11

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8
- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

Exodus References:

25:11; 25:17; 25:24; 25:29; 25:31; 25:36; 25:38; 25:39; 28:14; 28:22; 28:36; 29:14; 29:36; 30:3; 30:10; 30:35; 37:2; 37:6; 37:11; 37:16; 37:17; 37:22; 37:23; 37:24; 37:26; 37:29; 39:15; 39:25; 39:30; 39:37

purple

Definition:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: ephod, **Philippi**, **royal**, tabernacle, **temple**)

Bible References:

- **2 Chronicles 2:13-14**
- **Daniel 5:7**
- **Daniel 5:29-31**
- **Proverbs 31:22-23**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0710, H0711, H0713, G42090, G42100, G42110

Exodus References:

25:4; 26:1; 26:31; 26:36; 27:16; 28:5; 28:6; 28:8; 28:15; 28:33; 35:6; 35:23; 35:25; 35:35; 36:8; 36:35; 36:37; 38:18; 38:23; 39:1; 39:2; 39:3; 39:5; 39:8; 39:24; 39:29

ransom, ransomed

Definition:

The term “ransom” refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

- As a verb, to “ransom” means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of “buy back” is similar to the meaning of “redeem.”
- Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called “redemption” in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “ransom” could also be translated as to “pay to release” or to “pay a price to free” or to “buy back.”
- The phrase to “pay a ransom” could be translated as to “pay the price (of freedom)” or to “pay the penalty (to free people)” or to “make the required payment.”
- The noun “ransom” could be translated as “a buying back” or “a penalty paid” or “the price paid” (to free or buy back people or land).
- The terms a “ransom” and a “redemption” have the same meaning in English but are sometimes used slightly differently. Other languages may have only one term for this concept.
- Make sure this is translated differently from “atonement.”

(See also: atonement, redeem)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:6
- Isaiah 43:3
- Job 6:23
- Leviticus 19:20
- Matthew 20:28
- Psalms 49:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3724, H6299, H6306, G04870, G30830

Exodus References:

13:13; 13:15; 21:30; 30:12; 30:16; 34:20

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

Exodus References:

6:6; 15:13

reed

Definition:

The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Moses, Nile River)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 7:24
- Matthew 11:7
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 68:30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0098, H0100, H0260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G25630

Exodus References:

2:3; 2:5

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: kingdom)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

Exodus References:

15:18

remnant

Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” also implies that there were other people who did not remain or were not left over.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 9:12
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Genesis 45:7
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 4:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G26400, G30050, G30620

Exodus References:

10:5

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: forgive, sin, turn)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:19-20
- Luke 3:3
- Luke 3:8
- Luke 5:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 3:11
- Matthew 4:17
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 16:2 After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- 17:13 David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- 19:18 They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- 24:2 Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, "**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!"
- 42:8 "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins."
- 44:5 "So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5150, H5162, H5164, G02780, G33380, G33400, G33410

Exodus References:

13:17; 32:12; 32:14

report, reported, tell, reputation

Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as “Do not talk about this with anyone” or “Do not tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- Acts 5:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 5:15
- Luke 8:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8089, G01890, G01910, G03120, G05180, G09870, G12250, G13100, G18340, G20360, G21630, G30040, G30560, G31400, G33770

Exodus References:

23:1

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

Exodus References:

4:7; 22:26; 23:4

Reuben

Definition:

Reuben was Jacob's first son. He was Leah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the tribe of Reuben or the Reubenites.
- In Hebrew, the name Reuben means "Look, a son!"
- The tribe of Reuben settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River along with the tribe of Gad and half the tribe of Manasseh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:22
- Genesis 42:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G45020

Exodus References:

1:2; 6:14

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”

- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, **integrity**, just, law, law, **obey**, pure, righteous, sin, **unlawful**)

Bible References:

- **Deuteronomy 19:16**
- **Job 1:8**
- **Psalms 37:30**
- **Psalms 49:14**
- **Psalms 107:42**

- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 3:2 But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- 4:8 God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- 17:2 David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 23:1 Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- 50:10 Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

Exodus References:

9:27; 23:7; 23:8

robe, robed

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0145, H0155, H0899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G17460, G20670, G24400, G47490, G40160, G55110

Exodus References:

28:4; 28:31; 28:34; 29:5; 39:22; 39:23; 39:24; 39:25; 39:26

ruin, ruins, ruined

Definition:

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, to “ruin” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “spoil” or to “make useless” or to “break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

(See also: devastated)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Kings 19:25-26
- Acts 15:16
- Isaiah 23:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H1197, H1530, H1820, H1942, H2034, H2040, H2717, H2719, H2720, H2723, H2930, H3510, H3765, H3782, H3832, H4072, H4288, H4384, H4654, H4876, H4889, H5221, H5327, H5557, H5754, H5856, H7451, H7489, H7582, H7591, H7612, H7701, H7703, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8510, G26790, G26920, G36390, G44850

Exodus References:

8:24

rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, king, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:17-18
- Acts 7:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G07460, G07520, G07550, G07570, G07580, G09320, G09360, G10180, G12030, G12990, G17780, G17850, G18490, G22320, G22330, G25250, G25830, G28880, G29610, G35450, G38410, G41650, G41730, G42910

Exodus References:

2:14; 18:21; 18:25; 22:28; 34:31

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: rest)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 2:6
- Leviticus 19:3
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 2:27
- Matthew 12:2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:5 “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- 26:2 Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- 41:3 The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G43150, G45210

Exodus References:

16:intro; 16:23; 16:25; 16:26; 16:29; 20:8; 20:10; 20:11; 31:intro; 31:13; 31:14; 31:15; 31:16; 35:2; 35:3

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, **false god**, **fellowship offering**, freewill offeringpeace offering, priest, **sin offering**, worship)

Bible References:

- **2 Timothy 4:6**
- **Acts 7:42**
- **Acts 21:25**
- **Genesis 4:3-5**

- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 3:14 After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- 5:6 “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- 5:9 God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- 13:9 Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- 17:6 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- 48:6 Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- 48:8 But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- 49:11 Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

Exodus References:

3:18; 5:3; 5:8; 5:17; 8:8; 8:25; 8:26; 8:27; 8:28; 8:29; 10:25; 12:27; 13:15; 18:12; 20:24; 22:20; 23:18; 24:5; 29:18; 29:24; 29:25; 29:26; 29:27; 29:28; 29:36; 29:38; 29:39; 29:41; 30:9; 30:13; 30:14; 30:20; 32:8; 34:15; 34:25; 35:5; 35:22

sanctuary

Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: holy, Holy Spirit, holy, set apart, tabernacle, tax, temple)

Bible References:

- Amos 7:13
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Ezekiel 25:3
- Hebrews 8:1-2
- Luke 11:49-51
- Numbers 18:1
- Psalms 78:69

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4720, H6944, G00400

Exodus References:

25:8; 30:13; 30:24; 38:24; 38:25; 38:26; 38:27

sandal

Definition:

A sandal is a simple shoe with a flat sole that is held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- In ancient Israel, a sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property. One person would take off a sandal and give it to the other person to show that the transaction was legal and binding.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which was a normal task for the servant or slave with the lowest status in a Jewish household.

Bible References:

- Acts 7:33
- Deuteronomy 25:10
- John 1:27
- Joshua 5:15
- Mark 6:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G45470, G52660

Exodus References:

3:5; 12:11

Saul (OT)

Definition:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: king)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Samuel 9:1
- 2 Samuel 1:1-2
- Acts 13:22
- Psalm 18:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:1 **Saul** was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- 17:4 **Saul** became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**.
- 17:5 Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7586, G45490

Exodus References:

6:15

save, saved, safe, salvation, rescue

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 9:8 Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- 11:2 God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- 12:5 Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- 12:13 The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- 16:17 This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- 44:8 “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- 47:11 The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”
- 49:12 Good works cannot **save** you.
- 49:13 God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

Exodus References:

2:17; 14:13; 14:30; 15:2

Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

Definition:

The “Sea of Reeds” was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the “Red Sea.”

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as “Reed Sea.”

(See also: Arabia.Canaan, Egypt)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:35-37
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Joshua 4:22-24
- Numbers 14:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:4 When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh’s army and the **Red Sea**.
- 12:5 Then God told Moses, “Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**.”
- 13:1 After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3220, H5488, G20630, G22810

Exodus References:

10:19; 13:18; 15:4; 15:22; 23:31

seed

Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant.

- The term “seed” can also refer to what a man plants into a woman that allows them to reproduce.
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a man‘s or woman‘s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the seed of a plant, use a general term that can apply to all plants, if possible.
- When “seed” refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people.

(See also: children, descendant)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

Exodus References:

28:43; 30:21; 32:13; 33:1

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: just, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

Exodus References:

2:15; 4:19; 4:24; 10:11; 33:7

seize, seizure, capture

Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: euphemism)

Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 8:29
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G07240, G19490, G26380, G29020, G29830, G48150, G48840

Exodus References:

15:14; 15:15

serpent, snake, viper

Definition:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, deceive, disobey, Eden, evil, prey, Satan, sin, tempt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 3:3
- Genesis 3:4-6
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 3:7
- Matthew 23:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G21910, G20620, G37890

Exodus References:

4:3; 7:9; 7:10; 7:12; 7:15

servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women

Definition:

A “servant” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master’s direction. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- In the Bible the words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” which could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: enslave, works, obey, house, lord)

Bible References:

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 6:1 When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- 19:10 Then Elijah prayed, “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**.”
- 29:3 “Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.’”
- 35:6 “All my father’s **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving.”
- 47:4 The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, “These men are servants of the Most High God.”
- 50:4 Jesus also said, “A **servant** is not greater than his master.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s for Servant: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570

Strong’s for Serve: H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560

Exodus References:

1:13; 1:14; 2:5; 2:6; 2:23; 3:12; 4:10; 4:23; 5:9; 5:11; 5:15; 5:16; 5:21; 6:5; 6:6; 6:9; 7:10; 7:16; 7:20; 8:1; 8:3; 8:4; 8:9; 8:11; 8:20; 8:21; 8:24; 8:29; 8:31; 9:1; 9:13; 9:14; 9:20; 9:21; 9:30; 9:34; 10:1; 10:3; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8; 10:11; 10:24; 10:26; 11:3; 11:5; 11:8; 12:25; 12:26; 12:30; 12:31; 12:44; 12:45; 13:3; 13:5; 13:14; 14:5; 14:12; 14:31; 20:2; 20:5; 20:10; 20:17; 21:2; 21:5; 21:7; 21:20; 21:26; 21:27; 21:32; 23:12; 23:24; 23:25; 23:33; 24:13; 28:43; 29:30; 30:20; 32:13; 33:11; 35:21; 38:8; 39:1; 39:26

shepherd, herder, pastor

Definition:

A “shepherd” is a person who takes care of sheep. In the Old Testament, this word can also refer to a “herder” who takes care of other kinds of domestic livestock such as goats or cattle.

- As a verb, the term “shepherd” means to lead sheep (or other livestock) to places with good food and water, protect them from wild animals, keep them from getting lost and other duties necessary to keep livestock alive and healthy.
- In the Bible, this term is often used figuratively to refer to taking care of the needs of people (not only animals), both physical and spiritual.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of them. In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd,” and in other places Jesus is called the “great shepherd” of the Church.
- The term “shepherd” is also used in the New Testament to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” Elders and overseers are also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- The noun “shepherd” can be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When referring to someone who cares for livestock other than sheep, the term can be translated as “herder,” “tender of livestock” or “person who takes care of livestock.”
- When used as a verb, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- In some contexts, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- When used figuratively, the noun “shepherd” could be translated in different ways, including “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- When used figuratively, the verb “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”

(See also: sheep, livestock, pastor)

Bible References:

- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 49:24

- Luke 2:9
- Mark 6:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 9:11 Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- 17:2 David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- 23:6 That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- 23:8 The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- 30:3 To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G07500, G41650, G41660

Exodus References:

2:17; 2:19; 3:1

shrewd, cunning

Definition:

The term “shrewd” describes a person who is intelligent and clever, especially in practical matters.

- Often the term “shrewd” has a meaning that is partly negative since it usually also involves being selfish.
- A shrewd person is usually focused on helping himself, not others.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “cunning” or “crafty” or “smart” or “clever,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2450, H6175, G54290

Exodus References:

21:14

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
  - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
  - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, Christ, covenant, circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

Exodus References:

3:12; 4:8; 4:9; 4:17; 4:28; 4:30; 7:3; 8:23; 10:1; 10:2; 12:13; 13:9; 13:16; 31:13; 31:17

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made from silver include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.
- If your culture does not have silver you could translate this term as "precious metal"

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

Exodus References:

3:22; 11:2; 12:35; 12:44; 20:23; 21:11; 21:21; 21:32; 21:34; 21:35; 22:7; 22:17; 22:25; 25:3; 26:19; 26:21; 26:25; 26:32; 27:10; 27:11; 27:17; 30:16; 31:4; 35:5; 35:24; 35:32; 36:24; 36:26; 36:30; 36:36; 38:10; 38:11; 38:12; 38:17; 38:19; 38:25; 38:27

Simeon

Definition:

Simeon was Jacob's second son. He was Leah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Simeon."
- The name Simeon is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to hear."
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Simeon" refers to the land given to the tribe of Simeon.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.
- Another man named Simeon is mentioned in Luke's geneology of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:33
- Genesis 34:25
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- Luke 2:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8095, H8099, G48260

Exodus References:

1:2; 6:15

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws.

Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people do not know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who did not keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebelling against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people do not see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3

- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 3:15 God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children.”
- 13:12 God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- 20:1 The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- 21:13 The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people’s **sin**.
- 35:1 One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- 38:5 Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.”
- 43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**.”
- 48:8 We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- 49:17 Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

Exodus References:

5:16; 9:27; 9:34; 10:16; 10:17; 16:intro; 17:intro; 20:20; 23:33; 32:21; 32:30; 32:31; 32:32; 32:33; 32:34; 34:intro; 34:7; 34:9

Sinai, Horeb

Definition:

Mount Sinai, also called Mount Horeb, is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula, but the exact location of this mountain is not known.

- It is the place where God revealed his covenant to the Israelites and gave Moses the stone tablets on which he had written the ten commandments.
- It is also called the "mountain of God."
- It was also the place where God later told Moses to strike a rock to provide water for the Israelites as they were wandering in the desert.
- It was the place where Moses saw the burning bush when he was tending sheep.
- It is possible that "Horeb" was the actual name of the mountain and that "Mount Sinai" simply means "mountain of Sinai," referring to the fact that Mount Horeb was located in the desert of Sinai.

(See also: desert, Ten Commandments, covenant, Israel, Moses, Sinai)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:29-30
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Galatians 4:24
- Leviticus 27:34
- Numbers 1:17-19
- 1 Kings 8:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 1:2
- Exodus 3:1-3
- Psalms 106:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:1 After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called **Sinai**.
- 13:3 Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of **Mount Sinai** with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.

- 13:11 For many days, Moses was on top of **Mount Sinai** talking with God.
- 15:13 Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at **Sinai**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2722, H5514, G37350, G46140

Exodus References:

3:1; 19:1; 19:2; 19:11; 19:18; 19:20; 19:23; 24:13; 34:32

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, cow, disobey, Ezekiel, servant, slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

Exodus References:

12:6; 12:21; 22:1; 29:11; 29:16; 29:20

slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder

Definition:

To “slay” a person or animal means to kill it. Often it means to kill it in a forceful or violent way. If a man has killed an animal he has “slain” it.

- When referring to an animal or to a large number of people, the term “slaughter” is another term that is often used.
- An act of slaughtering is also called a “slaughter.”
- The phrase “the slain” could also be translated as “the slain people” or “the people who were killed.”

(See also: slaughter)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 28:23
- Isaiah 26:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2026, H2076, H2491, H2717, H2763, H2873, H2874, H4191, H4194, H5221, H6991, H6992, H7523, H7819, G03370, G06150, G13150, G23800, G26950, G49680, G49690, G54070

Exodus References:

2:12; 2:14; 2:15; 4:23; 4:24; 5:21; 20:13; 32:12

snare, ensnare, entrap, trap, trapped, pitfall

Definition:

The terms “snare” and “trap” refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. To “snare” or “ensnare” is to catch with a snare, and to “trap” or “entrap” is to catch with a trap. In the Bible, these terms were also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

- A “snare” is a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
- A “trap” is usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together, catching an animal so it can not get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
- Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
- The phrase “set a trap” means to get a trap ready to capture something.
- To “fall into a trap” refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
- A person who is starts sinning and cannot stop can be described as “ensnared by sin” in a figurative reference to the way an animal can be ensnared and cannot escape.
- Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.

(See also: free, prey, Satan, tempt)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 7:26
- Luke 21:34
- Mark 12:13
- Psalms 18:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2256, H3353, H3369, H3920, H3921, H4170, H4204, H4434, H4685, H4686, H4889, H5367, H5914, H6341, H6351, H6354, H6679, H6983, H7639, H7845, H8610, G00640, G23390, G23400, G38020, G38030, G39850, G46250

Exodus References:

10:7; 23:33; 34:12

soldier, warrior

Definition:

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: courage, crucify, Rome, tomb)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:5
- Acts 21:33
- Luke 3:14
- Luke 23:11
- Matthew 8:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H0510, H1368, H1416, H1995, H2389, H2428, H2502, H3715, H4421, H5971, H6518, H6635, H7273, H7916, G46860, G47530, G47540, G47570, G47580, G49610

Exodus References:

15:3

sorcerer, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft, magician

Definition:

"Sorcery" or "witchcraft" refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A "sorcerer" is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms "sorcery" and "witchcraft" could also be translated as "evil spirit power" or "casting spells."
- Possible ways to translated "sorcerer" could include "worker of magic" or "person who casts spells" or "person who does miracles using evil spirit power."
- Note that "sorcery" has a different meaning than the term "divination," which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: adultery, demon, divination, false god, magic, sacrifice, worship)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:9-11
- Exodus 7:11-13
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Revelation 9:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3784, H3785, H3786, H6049, G30950, G30960, G30970, G53310, G53320, G53330

Exodus References:

7:11; 22:18

soul, self

Definition:

The term “soul” can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person’s awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the “soul” can be spoken of as the part of a person that “relates to God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: spirit)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G55900

Exodus References:

1:5; 12:16; 12:19; 15:9; 23:9

sow, sower, plant, planted, replanted, transplanted

Definition:

To “sow” means to put seeds on top of or in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds. A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground.

- One method of sowing or planting seeds during biblical times was to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Farmers would often plow the ground on which they had sown seeds after they had sown the seeds. The reason farmers would plow the ground after they had sown the seed is so that the seed would be covered with soil.
- Sometimes farmers may have plowed the field that they sowed seeds in both before and after sowing seeds.

Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word or phrase you use to translate this term refers to, or can include, planting seeds by scattering them because this is the method of sowing that Jesus was referring to in his parable in Matthew 13:3-23, Mark 4:2-20, and Luke 8:4-8 where he describes a sower who sowed seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.

(See also: harvest)

Bible References:

- Luke 8:5
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:4
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G46870, G47030, G54520

Exodus References:

15:17; 23:10

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person’s spirit was closely related to the concept of a person’s breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.” Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person’s attitude or emotional state, such as “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, Holy Spirit, demon, breath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5

- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:3 Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- 40:7 Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- 45:5 As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my **spirit**.”
- 48:7 All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

Exodus References:

6:9; 15:10; 28:3; 31:3; 35:21; 35:31

splendor

Definition:

The term “splendor” refers to the extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

- Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
- The word “splendor” can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
- Certain cities are said to have splendor because of o their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of their people, which includes rich clothing, gold, and silver.
- Depending on the context, this word could be translated as “magnificent beauty” or “amazing majesty” or “kingly greatness.”

(See also: glory, king, majesty)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:27
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:7
- Luke 4:7
- Psalms 89:44-45
- Revelation 21:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1925, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2091, H2122, H2892, H3314, H3519, H6643, H7613, H8597

Exodus References:

28:2; 28:40

staff, clubs

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: Pharaoh, power, sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Exodus 4:1-3
- Exodus 7:9
- Luke 9:3
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6086, H6418, H7626, G25630, G35860, G44640

Exodus References:

4:2; 4:4; 4:17; 4:20; 7:9; 7:10; 7:12; 7:15; 7:17; 7:19; 7:20; 8:5; 8:16; 8:17; 9:23; 10:13; 12:11; 14:16; 17:5; 17:9; 21:19

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: command, decree, law, ordinance, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G13450

Exodus References:

12:14; 12:17; 12:24; 12:43; 15:25; 18:16; 18:20; 28:43; 29:9; 30:21

stone, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, commit, crime, death, Lystra, testimony)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:57-58
- Acts 7:59-60
- Acts 14:5
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 8:4-6
- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:6
- Matthew 23:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0068, H0069, H0810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G26420, G29910, G30340, G30350, G30360, G30370, G40740, G43480, G55860

Exodus References:

8:26; 17:4; 19:13; 21:28

Succoth

Definition:

Succoth was the name of two Old Testament cities. The word, “succoth” (or “sukkoth”) means “shelters.”

- One city called Succoth was located on the east side of the Jordan River.
- Jacob stayed at Succoth with his family and flocks, building shelters for them there.
- Hundreds of years later, Gideon and his exhausted men stopped at Succoth as they were chasing the Midianites, but the people there refused to give them any food.
- The other city called Succoth was located on the northern border of Egypt and was a place where the Israelites stopped after they crossed the Red Sea as they were escaping from slavery in Egypt.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:46
- Exodus 12:37-40
- Joshua 13:27-28
- Judges 8:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5523, H5524

Exodus References:

12:37; 13:20

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55

- **Revelation 1:16**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

Exodus References:

5:3; 5:21; 15:9; 17:13; 22:24; 32:27

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: altar, altar of incense, ark of the covenant, temple, tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 1:2-5
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 7:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G46330, G46340, G46360, G46380

Exodus References:

front:intro; 25:9; 26:intro; 26:1; 26:6; 26:7; 26:12; 26:13; 26:15; 26:17; 26:18; 26:20; 26:22; 26:23; 26:26; 26:27; 26:30; 26:35; 27:9; 27:19; 27:21; 33:7; 33:8; 33:9; 33:10; 33:11; 35:11; 35:15; 35:18; 35:21; 36:8; 36:13; 36:14; 36:20; 36:22; 36:23; 36:25; 36:27; 36:28; 36:31; 36:32; 38:8; 38:20; 38:21; 38:30; 38:31; 39:32; 39:33; 39:38; 39:40; 40:intro; 40:2; 40:5; 40:6; 40:7; 40:9; 40:12; 40:17; 40:18; 40:19; 40:21; 40:22; 40:24; 40:26; 40:28; 40:29; 40:32; 40:33; 40:34; 40:35; 40:36; 40:38

tent of meeting

Definition:

The term “tent of meeting” refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God’s presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term “tent of meeting” was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: Israel, Moses, pillar, tabernacle, tent)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:28-29
- Joshua 19:51
- Leviticus 1:2
- Numbers 4:31-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:8 God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain.
- 13:9 Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God.
- 14:8 God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**.
- 18:2 Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0168, H4150

Exodus References:

28:43; 29:4; 29:10; 29:11; 29:30; 29:32; 29:42; 29:44; 30:16; 30:18; 30:20; 30:36; 31:7; 40:30

tent, tentmaker

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: synecdoche)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, curtain, Paul, Sinai, tabernacle, tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:10
- Daniel 11:45
- Exodus 16:18
- Genesis 12:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0167, H0168, H2583, H3407, H6898

Exodus References:

35:11; 39:33

terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic

Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme or intense fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: adversary, fear, judge, plague, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 2:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:9
- Mark 6:48-50

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H0928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, G16290, G16300, G22580, G44220, G44260, G54010

Exodus References:

15:15; 15:16; 23:27

test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1
- 1 Thessalonians 5:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:1
- Isaiah 7:13
- James 1:12
- Lamentations 3:40-43

- **Malachi 3:10**
- **Philippians 1:10**
- **Psalm 26:2**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G12420, G12630, G13030, G13820, G19570, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G39840, G43030, G44510, G48280, G60200

Exodus References:

15:25; 16:4; 17:2; 17:7; 20:20

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- In some places in the Old Testament, “Testimony” refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God’s law more broadly.
- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”

- Ways to translate “Testimony” could include, “the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands” or “God’s law” or “God’s commands” or “the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33

- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 39:2 Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- 39:4 The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, “We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- 42:8 “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things.”
- 43:7 “We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

Exodus References:

20:16; 22:13; 23:1; 23:2; 25:16; 25:21; 27:21; 30:6; 30:36; 32:15; 38:21; 40:20

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea

Definition:

In the Bible, the "Great Sea" or "western sea" refers to what is now called the "Mediterranean Sea," which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

- The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by: Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
- This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
- Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the "western sea."

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, people group, prosper)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 47:15-17
- Ezekiel 47:18-20
- Joshua 15:3-4
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0314, H1419, H3220

Exodus References:

23:31

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, king, reign)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 1:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 5:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 1:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

Exodus References:

11:5; 12:29

tongue, language

Definition:

The term “tongue” refers to the organ inside a person’s mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean “language” or “speaking.” There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- In the book of Acts, the expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated as “language” or “supernatural language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, joy, praise, rejoice, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 3:18
- 2 Samuel 23:2
- Acts 2:26
- Ezekiel 36:3
- Philippians 2:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G11000, G12580, G20840

Exodus References:

4:10

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: disobey, sin, trespass, iniquity)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:6
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 32:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G04580, G04590, G38450, G38470, G38480, G39280

Exodus References:

23:21

tremble, shake, shaken, quake

Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: earth, fear, Lord)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

Exodus References:

15:14; 15:15; 19:16; 20:18

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, **people group**, **twelve tribes of Israel**)

Bible References:

- **1 Samuel 10:19**
- **2 Kings 17:16-18**
- **Genesis 25:16**
- **Genesis 49:17**
- **Luke 2:36-38**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

Exodus References:

24:4; 28:21; 31:2; 31:6; 35:30; 35:34; 38:22; 38:23; 39:14

trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Do not trouble her” could also be translated as “do not bother her” or “do not criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

Exodus References:

18:8

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.

- 17:2 David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- 34:6 Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

Exodus References:

16:intro

tunic

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “tunic” referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as “long shirt” or “long undergarment” or “shirt-like garment.” It could also be written in a similar way to “tunic,” with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See Also: robe)

Bible References:

- Daniel 3:21-23
- Isaiah 22:21
- Leviticus 8:12-13
- Luke 3:11
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2243, H3801, H6361, G55090

Exodus References:

28:4; 28:39; 28:40; 29:5; 29:8; 39:27; 40:14

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, know, wise)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

Exodus References:

31:3; 35:31; 36:1

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening.

This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: bread, Egypt, feast, Passover, servant, sin, yeast)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:3
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 6:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 6:21
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Luke 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G01060

Exodus References:

12:intro; 12:8; 12:15; 12:17; 12:18; 12:20; 12:39; 13:6; 13:7; 23:15; 29:2; 29:23; 34:18

veil, veiled, unveiled

Definition:

The term “veil” usually refers to a thin piece of cloth that is used as a head covering, to fully or partially cover the head or face.

- Moses covered his face with a veil after he had been in the presence of Yahweh, so that the brightness of his face would be hidden from the people.
- In the Bible, women wore a veil to cover their head, and often their face as well, when they were in public or in the presence of men.
- The veils that women in the Bible wore over their face may have been made of thin material which could be partly seen through and may have only covered part of the face so that the women’s eyes were not covered.
- The verb to “veil” means to cover something with a veil.
- In some English versions, the word “veil” is used to refer to the thick curtain that covered the entrance into the most holy place. But “curtain” is a better term in that context, since it refers to a heavy, thick piece of cloth.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “veil” could also be translated as “thin cloth covering” or “cloth covering” or “head covering” or “head covering.”
- In some cultures, there may already be a term for a veil for women. It may be necessary to find a different word when it is used for Moses.

(See also: Moses)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 3:12-13
- 2 Corinthians 3:16
- Ezekiel 13:18
- Isaiah 47:1-2
- Song of Songs 4:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4304, H4533, H4555, H6777, H6809, H7196, H7479, G03430, G25710, G25720

Exodus References:

34:33

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: Metaphor)
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: grape, Israel, vine)

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:20-21
- Luke 13:6
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:2
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G02900

Exodus References:

22:5; 23:11

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: Euphemism)

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 1:27
- Luke 1:35
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 25:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:9 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- 22:4 She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- 22:5 Mary replied, “How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?”
- 49:1 An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God’s Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1330, H1331, G39320, G39330

Exodus References:

22:16; 22:17

watch, guard, take heed, beware

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

Exodus References:

10:28; 19:12; 21:29; 21:36; 23:13; 23:21; 34:11; 34:12

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, grain, seed, thresh, winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H2406, G46210

Exodus References:

9:32; 29:2; 34:22

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: **grape**, **vine**, vineyard, **winepress**)

Bible References:

- **1 Timothy 5:23**
- **Genesis 9:21**
- **Genesis 49:12**
- **John 2:3-5**
- **John 2:10**
- **Matthew 9:17**
- **Matthew 11:18**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

Exodus References:

29:40

wise men, advisor

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wise men” is often a technical term referring to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king’s royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

Old Testament

- The “wise men” who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes “wise men” also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called “magi,” which is often translated as “wise men,” since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “wise men” could be translated using the term “wise” or with a phrase such as “gifted men” or “educated men” or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.

(See also: **Babylon**, **Daniel**, **divination**, magic, **Nebuchadnezzar**, ruler, wise)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 27:32-34**
- **Daniel 2:1-2**
- **Daniel 2:10-11**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G46800

Exodus References:

7:11; 31:6

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 2:5 She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- 18:1 When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.

- 23:9 Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- 45:1 He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

Exodus References:

1:10; 28:3; 35:10; 35:25; 36:1; 36:2; 36:4; 36:8

womb

Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: euphemism)
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 2:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G10640, G28360, G33880

Exodus References:

13:2; 13:12; 34:19

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”

- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, true, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 6:7
- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 25:7 In **God’s word** he commands his people, “Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- 33:6 So Jesus explained, “The seed is the **word of God**.”
- 42:3 Then Jesus explained to them what **God’s word** says about the Messiah.
- 42:7 Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in **God’s word** must be fulfilled.” Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God’s word**.
- 45:10 Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.

- 48:12 But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- 49:18 God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

Exodus References:

9:20; 9:21; 24:3; 24:4

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

Exodus References:

16:20

wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or “treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:5
- Luke 6:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 71:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G00910, G00920, G00930, G00950, G02640, G08240, G09830, G09840, G15360, G16260, G16510, G17270, G19080, G25560, G25580, G25590, G26070, G30760, G30770, G37620, G41220, G51950, G51960

Exodus References:

22:21

Yahweh, Yah

Definition:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show that this represents God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.
- “Yah” is a shortened form of the name Yahweh that occurs in poetry and praise (e.g. Hallelujah = “Praise Yah”), and in some Hebrew names (e.g. Zechariah = “Yah remembers”).

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “existing one” or “the one who is” or “he who is present.”
- This name could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled, or how it sounds in your language.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- In most cases it is good to keep the name Yahweh where it occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places to make the text more natural and clear.
- An introduction of a quote from Yahweh could be something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, Lord)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5
- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 9:14 God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”
- 13:4 Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- 13:5 “Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God.”
- 16:1 The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- 19:10 Then Elijah prayed, “O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

Exodus References:

3:intro; 3:2; 3:4; 3:7; 3:15; 3:16; 3:18; 4:1; 4:2; 4:4; 4:5; 4:6; 4:10; 4:11; 4:14; 4:19; 4:21; 4:22; 4:24; 4:27; 4:28; 4:30; 4:31; 5:1; 5:2; 5:3; 5:17; 5:21; 5:22; 6:1; 6:3; 6:10; 6:12; 6:13; 6:26; 6:28; 6:29; 6:30; 7:1; 7:6; 7:8; 7:10; 7:13; 7:14; 7:16; 7:17; 7:19; 7:20; 7:22; 7:25; 8:1; 8:5; 8:8; 8:10; 8:12; 8:13; 8:15; 8:16; 8:19; 8:20; 8:24; 8:26; 8:27; 8:28; 8:29; 8:30; 8:31; 9:1; 9:3; 9:4; 9:5; 9:6; 9:8; 9:12; 9:13; 9:22; 9:23; 9:27; 9:28; 9:29; 9:30; 9:33; 9:35; 10:1; 10:3; 10:7; 10:8; 10:9; 10:10; 10:11; 10:12; 10:13; 10:16; 10:17; 10:18; 10:19; 10:20; 10:21; 10:24; 10:25; 10:26; 10:27; 11:1; 11:3; 11:4; 11:7; 11:9; 11:10; 12:1; 12:11; 12:14; 12:23; 12:25; 12:27; 12:28; 12:29; 12:31; 12:36; 12:41; 12:42; 12:43; 12:48; 12:50; 12:51; 13:1; 13:3; 13:5; 13:6; 13:8; 13:9; 13:11; 13:12; 13:14; 13:15; 13:16; 13:21; 14:1; 14:8; 14:10; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 14:21; 14:24; 14:25; 14:26; 14:27; 14:30; 14:31; 15:1; 15:2; 15:3; 15:6; 15:11; 15:16; 15:17; 15:18; 15:19; 15:21; 15:25; 15:26; 16:3; 16:4; 16:6; 16:7; 16:8; 16:9; 16:10; 16:11; 16:15; 16:16; 16:23; 16:25; 16:28; 16:29; 16:32; 16:33; 16:34; 17:1; 17:2; 17:4; 17:5; 17:7; 17:14; 17:15; 17:16; 18:1; 18:8; 18:9; 18:10; 18:11; 19:3; 19:7; 19:8; 19:9; 19:10; 19:11; 19:18; 19:20; 19:21; 19:22; 19:23; 19:24; 20:7; 20:10; 20:11; 20:12; 20:22; 22:11; 22:20; 23:17; 23:19; 23:25; 24:1; 24:2; 24:3; 24:5; 24:7; 24:8; 24:12; 24:16; 24:17; 25:1; 27:21; 28:12; 28:29; 28:30; 28:35; 28:36; 28:38; 29:11; 29:18; 29:23; 29:24; 29:25; 29:26; 29:28; 29:41; 29:42; 30:8; 30:10; 30:11; 30:12; 30:13; 30:14; 30:15; 30:16; 30:17; 30:20; 30:22; 30:34; 30:37; 31:1; 31:12; 31:15; 31:17; 32:5; 32:7; 32:9; 32:11; 32:14; 32:26; 32:27; 32:29; 32:30; 32:31; 32:33; 32:35; 33:1; 33:5; 33:7; 33:11; 33:12; 33:17; 33:19; 33:21; 34:1; 34:4; 34:5; 34:6; 34:10; 34:14; 34:23; 34:24; 34:26; 34:27; 34:28; 34:32; 34:34; 35:1; 35:2; 35:4; 35:5; 35:10; 35:21; 35:22; 35:24; 35:29; 35:30; 36:1; 36:2; 36:5; 38:22; 39:1; 39:5; 39:7; 39:21; 39:26; 39:29; 39:30; 39:31; 39:32; 39:42; 39:43; 40:1; 40:16; 40:19; 40:21; 40:23; 40:25; 40:27; 40:29; 40:32; 40:34; 40:35; 40:38

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

Exodus References:

6:16; 6:18; 6:20; 12:2; 12:5; 12:40; 12:41; 23:16; 23:29; 29:38; 30:10; 34:22; 34:24

yeast, leaven, unleavened

Definition:

"Leaven" is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise.

"Yeast" is a specific kind of leaven.

- In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as "yeast," which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
- In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
- When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they did not have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.
- The term "leaven" or "yeast" is used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person's life or how sin can influence other people.
- It can also refer to false teaching which often spreads to many people and influences them.
- The term "leaven" is also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God's kingdom spreads from person to person.

Translation Suggestions

- This could be translated as "leaven" or "substance that causes dough to rise" or "expanding agent." The word "rise" could be expressed as "expand" or "get bigger" or "puff up."
- If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means "leavening," this would be the best term to use.

(See also: Egypt, Passover, unleavened bread)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:8
- **Galatians 5:9-10**
- **Luke 12:1**
- **Luke 13:21**
- **Matthew 13:33**
- **Matthew 16:8**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2556, H2557, H4682, H7603, G01060, G22190, G22200

Exodus References:

12:19; 12:20; 12:34; 12:39; 13:3; 13:7; 34:25

Zebulun

Definition:

Zebulun was Jacob's tenth son. He was Leah's sixth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Zebulun" or "Zebulun."
- The meaning of the name Zebulun is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word probably meaning "to honor" or "to dwell."
- The tribe of Zebulun settled in northwest Canaan, bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Issachar, Manasseh, and Asher.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:20
- Isaiah 9:1
- Judges 4:10
- Matthew 4:13
- Matthew 4:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2074, H2075, G21940

Exodus References:

1:3